FOREWORD

It is an honour for me to present to you the *South Africa Yearbook 2009/10*, especially as we prepare to host the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. Years of planning and countless hours of hard work and commitment will be rewarded when we welcome the people of the world for this prestigious tournament.

At the same time, we know that the massive investment made by our country into this tournament – the world-class stadia, infrastructure and other developments – are boosting our efforts to improve the lives of all South Africans. There can be no doubt that 2010 brings with it strong testimony of our growth since 1994, giving life to our clarion call that "working together we can do more".

In 2009, the people once again confirmed their commitment to a free and democratic South Africa. In April, millions of South Africans went out to cast their votes, participating in the country's fourth general election. The main focus of government over the next five years will be on creating decent work, education, health, rural development and the fight against crime.

The new administration that took shape following the elections has reorganised the structure and scope of government to achieve better alignment with the developmental challenges that need to be addressed in the country. The focus is on creating a state machinery that is more efficient and service-oriented and which will enable the achievement of visible and tangible socio-economic development within the next five years.

Notwithstanding the impact of the global economic slowdown, government remains steadfast in its commitment to build on the achievements of the first 15 years of democracy and to intensify its developmental agenda, in partnership with all sectors of society.

This edition of the *South Africa Yearbook* captures the essence of many of the fundamental developments in the history of our country over the past year. It gives an account of the programmes and policies of the South African Government and showcases the progress we have made together as a nation.

The South Africa Yearbook endeavours to be a factual and comprehensive information resource. As we reflect on the strides of 2009, there is still much more that needs to be done. I am confident that we can, and will, work towards achieving our vision of a better and more prosperous nation in 2010.

Jacob Zuma
President of the Republic of South Africa
January 2010

Chapter 1
The land and its people **1 – 24**
The people 2 – 5
The land 5 – 6
The provinces 6 – 22

Chapter 2
History **25 – 42**
The early inhabitants 26
The early colonial period 26
The British colonial era 27 – 29
The mineral revolution 29 – 30
The Anglo-Boer/South African War (October 1899 – May 1902) and its aftermath 30 – 31
Segregation 31 – 32
Apartheid 32 – 34
The end of apartheid 34 – 36
The First Decade of Freedom 36 – 38
Into the Second Decade of Freedom 38 – 39

Chapter 3
Agriculture, forestry and fisheries **43 – 78**
Agricultural economy 44
Genetically modified organisms 44 – 45
Sustainable resource management and use 45 – 47
Production 47 – 54
Veterinary services 54 – 55
Pest control 55
Marketing 55 – 56
Land settlement 56
Illima/Letsema Campaign 56 – 57
Food security 57 – 58
Risk management 58
Credit and assistance 58 – 63
Training and research 63
International relations 63 – 65
Import and export control 65 – 67
Forestry 67 – 75
Fisheries 75 – 77

Chapter 4
Arts and culture **79 – 106**
Arts and culture organisations and institutions 80 – 82
The Bureau of Heraldry 82 – 84
Languages 84 – 86
Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities 86
Community art centres 86
Other cultural organisations 86 – 87
Arts and Culture Trust 87
Arts and culture initiatives 87 – 89
Education and training 89
Cultural tourism 89 – 90
Cultural industries 90
International relations 90 – 91
Arts festivals 91 – 92
Theatre 92
Music 93 – 94
Dance 94
Visual arts 94 – 95
Photography 95
Architecture 95
Rock art 95 – 96
Crafts 96
Design 96 – 97
Literature 97 – 98
Film 98 – 100
Museums 100 – 102
Archives 102
Library and information services sector 102 – 104

Chapter 5
Communications **107 – 128**
Telecommunications 108
Policy and initiatives 108 – 110
Public entities and agencies reporting to the Minister of Communications 110 – 111
Presidential National Commission on Information, Society and Development 111
Internet 111
Telkom 111 – 112
Mobile communications 112 – 113
Liberalisation 113
The postal sector 113 – 114
The media 114 – 121
Media organisations and role players 121 – 126
Media diversity 126 – 127
Advertising 127

Chapter 6
Economy **129 – 160**
Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa 130 – 131
Economic indicators 131 – 133
Price inflation 133 – 134
Exchange rates 134
Foreign trade and payments 134 – 136

Department of Trade and Industry 136 – 148
Small, medium and micro-enterprises 148 – 150
Black Economic Empowerment 151
State-owned enterprises 151 – 153
Public works programmes 154 – 155
Labour programmes 155 – 158

Chapter 7
Education 161 – 180
National and provincial departments of education 162
Basic Education 162 – 165
Higher Education and Training 165 – 167
Statutory bodies 167 – 169
Equity in education expenditure 169
Education policy 169 – 170
Policy developments and programmes 170 – 173
Health promotion 173 – 174
Values 174
Education management and governance development 174
Educational infrastructure 174 – 175
Educational portal 175
Partnerships 175 – 176
Gender equity 176 – 177
Rural education 177
National Human-Resource Development Strategy 177 – 178
Libraries 178

Chapter 8
Energy 181 – 202
Policy and legislation 182 – 183
Energy and the economy 183
National Energy Regulator of South Africa 183
Central Energy Fund 183 – 184
Energy efficiency 184 – 187
Designated National Authority 187
Energy statistics 187
Integrated Energy Centre Programme 188
Energy demand and access 188 – 197
Ocean energy 197 – 198
Sustainable development on the African continent 198 – 199
Energy and the global environment 199 – 200

Chapter 9
Environmental affairs 203 – 230
Policy and legislation 204 – 205
World Summit on Sustainable Development 205
Biological diversity 205 – 208
Conserving biodiversity 208 – 217
Protected areas 217 – 221
Zoological gardens 221 – 222
Snake parks 222 – 223
Conservation challenges 223 – 227
International cooperation 227 – 229
Private-sector involvement 229

Chapter 10
Finance 231 – 258
Fiscal policy framework 232 – 234
Debt management 234
Legislation 234 – 235
National Treasury 235 – 237
Financial Intelligence Centre 237 – 238
Financial and Fiscal Commission 238
Budget Council 238
Public Investment Corporation 238 – 239
Macroeconomic strategy 239
South African Revenue Service 239 – 243
National Gambling Board 234 – 244
National Lotteries Board 244 – 245
Auditor-General of South Africa 245
Financial sector 245 – 249
The banking industry 249
The microlending industry 249 – 250
Other financial institutions 250
Financial Services Board 250 – 252
Financial markets 252 – 254
Exchange control 254 – 256
JSE Limited 256 – 257
Financial sector continuity planning 257

Chapter 11
Government system 259 – 286
The Constitution 260
Government 260 – 264
Department of Corporate Governance and Traditional Affairs 264 – 271
Disaster management 271 – 272
Cooperative governance 272
Government and communication 272 – 273
International Marketing Council 273 – 274
Elections 274
Public Service 274 – 279
Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy 279
Department of Home Affairs 279 – 284

Chapter 12
Health **287 – 306**
Statutory bodies 288
Health authorities 288
Legislation 289 – 290
National School Health Policy 290
National Health Insurance 290 – 291
2010 FIFA World Cup™ 291
Health professionals 291 – 294
Medical schemes 294 – 295
Primary healthcare, hospital services and emergency medical care 295 – 296
Health status 296 – 304
International relations 304

Chapter 13
Human settlements **307 – 320**
Sustainable human settlements 308 – 309
Legislation, policy and initiatives 309 – 313
Housing subsidies 313 – 314
Human-settlement planning 314 – 315
Stakeholder management 315 – 316
Housing institutions 316 – 319
International relations 319

Chapter 14
International relations and cooperation **321 – 358**
South Africa and Africa 322 – 336
Relations with Asia and the Middle East 336 – 342
Relations with the Americas 342 – 344
Relations with Europe 344 – 349
Multilateral diplomacy 349 – 354
Bilateral agreements 355 – 357

Chapter 15
Justice and correctional services **359 – 388**
2010 FIFA World Cup™ 360
Legislation 360 – 361
Judicial system 361 – 367
Transformation of the judiciary 367 – 369
Special Investigating Unit 369 – 370
National Prosecuting Authority of South Africa 370 – 372
Legal practitioners 372
Human rights 373
Crime prevention 373
Integrated justice system 373 – 376
Legislative development 376
State Legal Services 376
International legal relations 376 – 377
Legal structures 377 – 383
Department of Correctional Services 383 – 386

Chapter 16
Mineral resources **389 – 402**
Policy and legislation 390 – 391
Mine environmental management 391 – 393
Mining industry 393 – 396
Mineral wealth 396 – 399
Geology 399 – 402

Chapter 17
Police, defence and intelligence **403 – 426**
2010 FIFA World Cup™ 404
Secretariat for Safety and Security 404
Independent Complaints Directorate 404 – 405
South African Police Service 405 – 413
Business Against Crime South Africa 413 – 414
Defence 414 – 421
National Conventional Arms Control Committee 421 – 422
Public-sector South African defence industry 422 – 424
Intelligence services 424 – 426

Chapter 18
Rural development and land reform **427 – 434**
Rural development, food security and land reform 428 – 429
Land reform 429 – 433

Chapter 19
Science and technology **435 – 458**
Policy framework 436
Expenditure on research and development 436 – 437
Indigenous knowledge systems 437
Ten-Year Innovation Plan 437
Legislation 438
Science bodies 438 – 439
Tshumisano 439 – 440
Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy 440
Biotechnology 440
Astronomy 441 – 442
Nanotechnology 442
Information and communications technology 442 – 443
International science and technology cooperation 443 – 444
National Research Foundation 444 – 446
Science councils 446 – 453
Other scientific research organisations and structures 453 – 454
General research areas 454 – 456
Private-sector involvement 456

Chapter 20
Social development 459 – 476
Legislation 460 – 461
Sustainable livelihoods 461 – 463
Comprehensive social security 463 – 465
Improving community development and service delivery 465
Responding to the impact of HIV and AIDS 465 – 468
Promoting and protecting the rights of vulnerable groups 468 – 470
Social-crime prevention 470 – 471
Care and support to families 471 – 472
Prevention and treatment of substance and drug abuse 472
People with disabilities 472 – 473
Youth development 473 – 474
United Nations Population Fund Third Country Support Programme for South Africa 474
Welfare services 474
Funding of non-governmental organisations 474
Statutory bodies 474 – 475
Non-profit organisations 475

Chapter 21
Sport and recreation 477 – 490
Sport and Recreation South Africa 478 – 482
Legislation 482 – 483
2010 FIFA World Cup™ 483
Sports organisations 483 – 485
International relations 485
2009 sports highlights 485 – 489

Chapter 22
Tourism 491 – 528
Business tourism 492 – 493
Medical tourism 493
Adventure sports 493 – 494
Tourism policy and initiatives 494 – 495
Domestic tourism growth 495 – 496
International tourism 496
South African Tourism 496
2010 FIFA World Cup™ 496 – 498
Industry transformation 498
Infrastructure development programme 498
Tourism Enterprise Partnership 498 – 499
Tourism Indaba 499 – 500
Meetings Africa 500
Human-resource development 500
Research 501
Hints for the tourist 501 – 503
Tourism in the provinces 506 – 527

Chapter 23
Transport 529 – 552
Policy and initiatives 530 – 533
Public entities and other agencies 533 – 536
Transnet Limited 536 – 537
Road infrastructure 537 – 538
Public transport 538 – 544
Civil aviation 544 – 545
Ports 545 – 548
Pipelines 548
Maritime affairs 548 – 550

Chapter 24
Water affairs 553 – 570
Hydrological conditions 554
Water-resource management and development 555 – 560
Municipal Infrastructure Grant 560
Policy and legislation 561 – 563
Water-management institutions 563 564
Water-related research 564
Working for Water Programme 565
Flood and drought management 567
Regional and international cooperation and initiatives 567 – 568

Addendum 571 – 634

Index 635

South Africa
A winning nation!

From the moment South Africa was announced as the host of the FIFA 2010 World Cup™ on 15 May 2004, government, the private sector and citizens at large set in motion the hard work required to secure the success of the first FIFA World Cup tournament on African soil.

South Africa will deliver a world-class event that will forever change the perceptions of the international community, and also ensure a lasting legacy for the people of Africa.
– President Jacob Zuma

INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT

For government, hosting the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ has provided an opportunity to fast-track infrastructure development in the country and provide a catalyst for regional and continental exposure and growth.

Moses Mabhida Stadium, Durban

Royal Bafokeng Stadium, Rustenburg

Free State Stadium, Bloemfontein

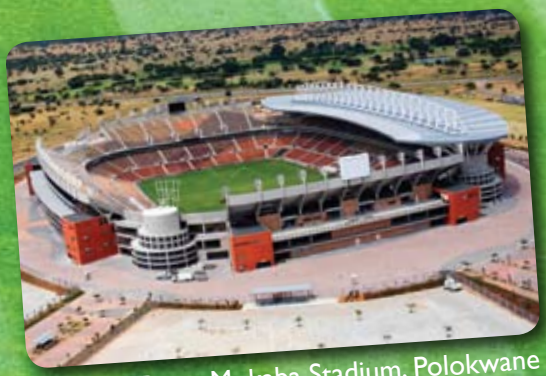
Green Point Stadium, Cape Town

Coca Cola Park Stadium, Johannesburg

Mbombela Stadium, Nelspruit

Nelson Mandela Bay Stadium, Port Elizabeth

Soccer City Stadium, Soweto



Peter Mokaba Stadium, Polokwane

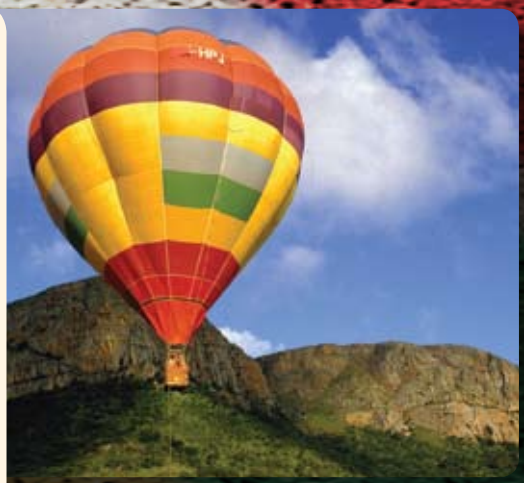
STADIUMS

The 64 football matches of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ will be played in nine South African cities – Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban, Port Elizabeth, Nelspruit, Polokwane, Bloemfontein, Rustenburg and Pretoria. Of the 10 stadiums, which seat more than 570 000 people in total, five were upgraded while the other five were constructed afresh.

TOURISM

South Africa offers visitors scenic beauty, magnificent outdoors, a sunny climate and unique cultural and biological diversity. The hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™, with an influx of an estimated 450 000 visitors to the country, has provided the impetus for expanding regional and local tourism sectors.

By October 2009, 46 972 rooms had been contracted by MATCH for official use by the FIFA family, delegates and affiliates. Of these, 31 371 were hotel rooms and 15 601 were non-hotel accommodation.



TRANSPORT

A total investment of R13,6 billion has been allocated to improve public transportation systems. This is part of an overall investment of R170 billion in the country's transport system over the five-year period from 2005/06 to 2009/10.

Improvements to the transport system include:

- procurement of an additional 1 500 buses
- refurbishment of more than 2 000 train coaches
- major infrastructure upgrades at airports in Cape Town, Johannesburg, Bloemfontein and Port Elizabeth, in addition to a brand-new, world-class international airport north of Durban.

The accelerated transport investments will yield a lasting legacy of quality transport services, infrastructure and systems in the country, benefiting millions of South Africans.

South Africa
A winning nation!

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

THE LAND AND ITS PEOPLE

The distinctive charm of South Africa comes from its history and also by moments of great change and strides of progress brought about by a people united in a diversity of religious beliefs, cultures and languages. The country's physical features range from bushveld through deserts and forests, up majestic mountain peaks down to wide unspoilt beaches and coastal wetlands.

South Africans are ready to become the centre of the world's attention, pulling out all the stops to showcase the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ and make it the best World Cup ever.

The people

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009,* that were released in July 2009, there were 49 320 500 people in South Africa, of which 52% were female.

Of the total population, 79,3% classified themselves as African; 9,1% as white; 9% as coloured; and 2,5% as Indian/Asian. Africans were in the majority with more than 39 million of the total South African population. The white population was estimated at 4,5 million, the coloured population at 4,4 million and the Indian/Asian population at 1,3 million.

Nearly one third (31,4%) of the population were younger than 15 years and 7,5% (3,7 million) were 60 years or older.

The South African population consists of the following groups: the Nguni (comprising the Zulu, Xhosa, Ndebele and Swazi people); Sotho-Tswana, who include the Southern, Northern and Western Sotho (Tswana people); Tsonga; Venda; Afrikaners; English; coloureds; Indians; and those who have immigrated to South Africa from the rest of Africa, Europe and Asia and who maintain a strong cultural identity. A few members of the Khoi and the San also live in South Africa.

Languages

According to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, everyone has the right to use the language and participate in the cultural life of his or her choice, but no one may do so in a manner that is inconsistent with any provision of the Bill of Rights. Each person has the right to instruction in his or her language of choice where this is reasonably practicable.

Official languages

The diversity of the unique cultures of South Africa means that there are 11 official languages. These are English, Afrikaans, isiXhosa, isiZulu, isiNdebele, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, siSwati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga. The Constitution also requires the Pan South African Language Board to promote the use of the Khoi, Nama and San languages, and sign language.

According to Census 2001, isiZulu is the mother tongue of 23,8% of the population, followed by isiXhosa (17,6%), Afrikaans (13,3%), Sesotho sa Leboa (9,4%) and English and Setswana (8,2% each).

The least-spoken indigenous language in South Africa is isiNdebele, which is spoken by 1,6% of the population.

Although English is the mother tongue of only 8,2% of the population, it is the language most widely understood, and the second language of the majority of South Africans. However, government is committed to promoting all the official languages.

Estimates by population group and gender

Population group	Male		Female		Total	
	Number	Percentage of total population	Number	Percentage of total population	Number	Percentage of total population
African	18 901 000	79,2	20 235 200	79,5	39 136 200	79,3
Coloured	2 137 300	9,0	2 295 800	9,0	4 433 100	9,0
Indian/Asian	635 700	2,6	643 400	2,5	1 279 100	2,6
White	2 194 700	9,2	2 277 400	9,0	4 472 100	9,1
Total	**23 868 700**	**100,0**	**25 451 800**	**100,0**	**49 320 500**	**100,0**

Source: *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*

Religion

Religious groups

According to the Constitution, everyone has the right to freedom of conscience, religion, thought, belief and opinion.

Almost 80% of South Africa's population follows the Christian faith. Other major religious groups are the Hindus, Muslims, Jews and Buddhists. A minority of South Africa's population do not belong to any of the major religions, but regard themselves as traditionalists of no specific religious affiliation.

Number of individuals by church

Churches	Number
Dutch Reformed	3 005 698
Zion Christian	4 971 932
Catholic	3 181 336
Methodist	3 305 404
Pentecostal/Charismatic	3 422 749
Anglican	1 722 076
Apostolic Faith Mission	246 190
Lutheran	1 130 987
Presbyterian	832 495
Bandla Lama Nazaretha	248 824
Baptist	691 237
Congregational	508 825
Orthodox	42 251
Other Apostolic churches	5 609 070
Other Zionist churches	1 887 147
Ethiopian type churches	880 414
Other Reformed churches	226 495
Other African independent churches	656 644
Other Christian churches	3 195 477
African Traditional Belief	125 903
Judaism	75 555
Hinduism	551 669
Islam	654 064
Other beliefs	269 200
No religion	6 767 165
Undetermined	610 971
Total	**44 819 778**

Source: Statistics South Africa (*Census 2001*)

Christian churches

There are various Christian churches throughout the country.

The Church of England in Southern Africa has congregations among all sections of the community. Church attendance in South Africa is favourable in both rural and urban areas, and churches are well served by a large number of clerics and officials.

On the whole, training for the church ministry is thorough and intensive.

Apart from the work of the churches, a number of Christian organisations (para-church organisations) operate in South Africa, doing missionary and evangelical work, and providing aid and training.

Regular religious programmes on radio and television, and the abundance of places of worship, reflect the importance of religion in South Africa. Many newspapers carry a daily scriptural message, and various religious magazines, newspapers and books are produced and sold in religious bookshops.

There are many official and unofficial ecumenical relations between the various churches.

One of the most important of these links is the South African Council of Churches (SACC), although it is not representative of all churches.

The major African indigenous churches, most of the Afrikaans churches, and the Pentecostal and charismatic churches are, as a rule, not members of the SACC, and usually have their own coordinating liaison bodies.

African independent churches (AICs)

The largest grouping of Christian churches is the AICs, represented by the Zionist or Apostolic churches. The Pentecostal movement also has its independent offshoots in this group.

The Zion Christian Church (ZCC) is the largest of these churches in South Africa and the largest church overall. The teaching is a syncretism between Christianity and African Traditional Religion. More than a million members gather twice a year at Zion City, Moria, east of Polokwane in Limpopo, at Easter and for the September festival.

Traditionally, Easter is the religious highlight of the year. The ZCC members, estimated to exceed four million, are not obliged to make the pilgrimage, but have loyally observed the tradition for more than 80 years.

The 4 000 or more independent churches have a membership of more than 10 million people, making this movement the most important religious group in South Africa.

The independent churches attract people from both rural and urban areas. There are, for example, hundreds of separate churches in rural KwaZulu-Natal, and at least 900 from all ethnic groups in the urban complex of Soweto alone. In northern KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga, these churches serve more than half the population.

Afrikaans churches

The Afrikaans churches are predominantly Protestant. Of these churches, the Dutch Reformed Church family of churches in South Africa is the largest and represents about 3,5 million people.

The Dutch Reformed Church, also known as the Nederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk, with its sister churches, the Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk and the Gereformeerde Kerk, have congregations countrywide.

The Dutch Reformed Church also has six fully fledged English-language congregations, one congregation for Dutch-speaking people, and four for Portuguese-speaking people. There are about 2 000 members in each of these congregations.

The Uniting Reformed Church in Southern Africa, the Dutch Reformed Church in Africa and the smaller Reformed Church in Africa, with predominantly Indian members, are some of the smaller churches.

Other churches with Afrikaans-speaking adherents, some with very large memberships, include the Apostolic Faith Mission and the Afrikaanse Protestantse Kerk.

Roman Catholic Church

The Roman Catholic Church has grown significantly in number and influence in recent years. It works closely with other churches on the socio-political front. The Southern African Catholic Bishops' Conference, founded more than 50 years ago, is the representative body of this church in southern Africa.

Other Christian churches

Other established churches in South Africa include the Anglican Church of Southern Africa, the Methodist Church, various Lutheran and Presbyterian churches, and the Congregational Church.

Although the different Baptist groups are not large, they represent a strong church tradition. Together, they form the nucleus of the SACC. The largest traditional Pentecostal churches are the Apostolic Faith Mission, the Assemblies of God and the Full Gospel Church, and there are numerous others. Many of them enjoy fellowship in groups such as the Church Alliance of South Africa, and operate in all communities.

Hundreds of independent charismatic churches have mushroomed across the country. The largest of these groups is the International Fellowship of Christian Churches (IFCC). Rhema Church, with its 32 000-member congregation, spearheads the movement. The IFCC, representing more than 400 churches, is also a member of the SACC.

Also active in South Africa, among the smaller groups, are the Greek Orthodox Church, the Seventh-Day Adventist churches, the Church of the Nazarenes, Church of Scientology and the Salvation Army.

African traditionalists

Because the traditional religion of the African people has a strong cultural base, the various groups have different rituals, but there are certain common features.

A supreme being is generally recognised, but ancestors are of far greater importance, being the deceased elders of the group. They are regarded as part of the community; indispensable links with the spirit world and the powers that control everyday affairs. These ancestors are not gods, but because they play a key part in bringing about either good or ill fortune, maintaining good relations with them is vital and they have to be appeased regularly through a variety of ritual offerings.

While an intimate knowledge of herbs and other therapeutic techniques and the use of supernatural powers can be applied for the benefit of the individual and the community, some practitioners are masters of black magic, creating fear among people. As a result of close contact with Christianity, many people find themselves in a transitional phase between African Traditional Religion and Christianity.

Other religions

The majority of Indians who originally came to South Africa were Hindu. They retained their Hindu religion and today some two thirds of South Africa's Indians are Hindus. The rest are Muslims and a minority are Christians.

The Muslim community in South Africa is small, but growing rapidly, with a number of people from South Africa's different cultural groups embracing the religion.

The Jewish population numbers less than 100 000. Of these, the majority are Orthodox Jews. Buddhism is barely organised in South Af-

rica. However, the Nan Hua Buddhist temple has been built at Bronkhorstspruit near Pretoria. The number of Parsees has decreased, while there is a small group of Jains in Durban. Followers of the Baha'i faith are establishing groups and temples in various parts of the country.

The land

South Africa occupies the southernmost tip of Africa with a coastline of about 3 000 km. The country stretches latitudinally from 22° to 35° S and longitudinally from 17° to 33° E.

Its surface area is 1 219 090 km^2. The country has common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana and Zimbabwe, while Mozambique and Swaziland lie to the north-east. Completely enclosed by South African territory in the south-east is the mountain kingdom of Lesotho.

To the west, south and east, South Africa borders on the Atlantic and Indian oceans. Isolated, some 1 920 km south-east of Cape Town in the Atlantic, lie the Prince Edward and Marion islands, annexed by South Africa in 1947.

The oceans

South Africa's biggest neighbours are the Atlantic and Indian oceans, which meet at the south-western corner of the continent.

The warm Mozambique-Agulhas current skirts the east and south coasts as far as Cape Agulhas, while the cold Benguela current flows northwards along the west coast as far as southern Angola.

The contrast in temperature between these two currents partly accounts for important differences in climate and vegetation between the east and west coasts of South Africa.

It also accounts for the differences in marine life. The cold waters of the west coast are much richer in oxygen, nitrates, phosphates and plankton than those of the east coast. Consequently, the South African fishing industry is centred on the west coast.

The coasts

The coastline itself is an even, closed one with few bays or indentations naturally suitable for harbours. The only ideal natural harbour along the coastline is Saldanha Bay on the west coast. However, the area lacks fresh water and does not offer natural lines of penetration to the interior.

Most river mouths are unsuitable as harbours because large sandbars block entry for most of the year. These bars are formed by the action of waves and currents, and by the intermittent flow, heavy sediment load and steep gradients of most South African rivers. Only the largest rivers, such as the Orange and Limpopo, maintain narrow permanent channels through the bars. For these reasons, the country has no navigable rivers.

Relief features

South Africa's surface area falls into two major physiographic categories: the interior plateau, and the land between the plateau and the coast.

Forming the boundary between these two areas is the Great Escarpment, the most prominent and continuous relief feature of the country. Its height above sea level varies from about 1 500 m in the dolerite-capped Roggeveld scarp in the south-west, to a height of 3 482 m in the KwaZulu-Natal Drakensberg.

Inland from the escarpment lies the interior plateau, which is the southern continuation of the great African plateau stretching north to the Sahara Desert.

The plateau itself is characterised by wide plains with an average height of 1 200 m above sea level.

The dissected Lesotho plateau, which is more than 3 000 m above sea level, is the most prominent. In general, the escarpment forms the highest parts of the plateau.

Between the Great Escarpment and the coast lies an area which varies in width from 80 km to 240 km in the east and south, and a mere 60 km to 80 km in the west. At least three major subdivisions are recognised: the eastern plateau slopes, the Cape folded belt and adjacent regions and the western plateau slopes.

Climatic features

Although the country is classified as semi-arid, it has considerable variation in climate. The subtropical location, on either side of 30° S, accounts for the warm temperate conditions so typical of South Africa, making it a popular destination for foreign tourists. Being in the southern hemisphere, the seasons in South Africa are opposite to those of Europe and North America.

The country also falls squarely within the subtropical belt of high pressure, making it dry, with an abundance of sunshine.

The wide expanses of ocean on three sides of South Africa have a moderating influence on its climate. More apparent, however, are the effects of the warm Agulhas and the cold Benguela currents along the east and west coasts respectively. While Durban (east coast) and Port Nolloth (west coast) lie more or less on the same latitude, there

is a difference of at least 6° C in their mean annual temperatures.

Gale-force winds are frequent on the coasts, especially in the south-western and southern coastal areas.

Rainfall

South Africa has an average annual rainfall of 450 mm, compared with a world average of 860 mm. About 65% of the country receives less than 500 mm per year, which is generally accepted as the minimum amount required for successful dry-land farming.

About 21% of the country, mainly the arid west, receives less than 200 mm per year.

In Cape Town, the capital city of the Western Cape, the average rainfall is highest in the winter months, while in the capital cities of the other eight provinces, the average rainfall is highest during summer.

South Africa's rainfall is unreliable and unpredictable. Large fluctuations in the average annual rainfall are the rule rather than the exception in most areas of the country.

Below-average annual rainfall is more commonly recorded than above-average total annual rainfall. South Africa is periodically afflicted by drastic and prolonged droughts, which often end in severe floods.

Temperatures

Temperature conditions in South Africa are characterised by three main features. Firstly, temperatures tend to be lower than in other regions at similar latitudes, for example, Australia.

This is due primarily to the greater elevation of the subcontinent above sea level.

Secondly, despite a latitudinal span of 13 degrees, average annual temperatures are remarkably uniform throughout the country. Owing to the increase in the height of the plateau towards the north-east, there is hardly any increase in temperature from south to north as might be expected.

The third feature is the striking contrast between temperatures on the east and west coasts. Temperatures above 32° C are fairly common in summer, and frequently exceed 38° C in the lower Orange River Valley and the Mpumalanga Lowveld.

Frost, humidity and fog

Frost often occurs on the interior plateau during cold, clear, winter nights, with ice forming on still pools and in water pipes. The frost season (April to October) is longest over the eastern and southern plateau areas bordering on the escarpment. Frost decreases to the north, while the coast is virtually frost-free.

Average annual relative humidity readings show that, in general, the air is driest over the western interior and the plateau. Along the coast, the humidity is much higher, and at times may rise to 85%. Low stratus clouds and fog frequently occur over the cool west coast, particularly during summer. The only other area that commonly experiences fog is the "mist belt" along the eastern foothills of the escarpment.

Sunshine

South Africa is famous for its sunshine. Generally speaking, April and May are the most pleasant months when the rainy season over the summer-rainfall region has ended, and before the rainy season in the winter-rainfall area has begun. At this time of the year, the hot summer weather has abated and the winds are lighter than during the rest of the year.

In certain areas, however, notably the hot, humid KwaZulu-Natal coast, Mpumalanga and Limpopo, June and July are the ideal holiday months.

The provinces

South Africa is divided into nine provinces, each with its own legislature, premier and executive councils. The provinces, with their own distinctive landscapes, vegetation and climate, are the Western Cape, the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape, Free State, North West, Gauteng, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. (See Chapter 22: *Tourism*.)

Western Cape

The Western Cape's natural beauty, complemented by its hospitality, cultural diversity, excellent wine and colourful cuisine, make the province one of the world's greatest tourist attractions.

The cold Atlantic Ocean along the west coast is a rich fishing area, while the warmer Indian Ocean skirts the province's southern beaches.

Visitors to the Western Cape can disembark at Cape Town International Airport, George Airport or at the ports of Cape Town, Mossel Bay or Saldanha. A network of roads also leads to Cape Town, fondly known as the "Mother City".

Cape Town houses Parliament and is the country's legislative capital.

Other important towns in the province include Saldanha, a notable harbour for iron exports and the fishing industry; Worcester and Stellenbosch in the heart of the winelands; George, renowned

Western Cape

Capital: Cape Town

Principal languages:		
	Afrikaans	55,3%
	isiXhosa	23,7%
	English	19,3%

Population: 5 356 900 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*)

Area (km²): 129 370

for its indigenous timber and vegetable produce; Oudtshoorn, known for its ostrich products and the world-famous Cango caves; and Beaufort West on the dry, sheep-farming plains of the Great Karoo.

The Western Cape boasts one of the world's six accepted floral kingdoms. Although it is the smallest of them all, the Cape Floral Kingdom, which is characterised by fynbos, contains more plant species than the whole of Europe. These include the famous proteas and heathers.

Covering an area of more than 553 000 ha, the Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site comprises eight separate protected areas stretching from the Cape Peninsula into the Eastern Cape.

The Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden is included in this area, which makes it a world-first for South Africa, since no other world heritage site includes a botanical garden.

The Knysna-Tsitsikamma region has the country's biggest indigenous forests; a fairyland of ancient forest giants, ferns and colourful birdlife. Products of the forests include sought-after furniture made from the indigenous yellowwood, stinkwood and white pear trees.

The province has a strong network of higher education (HE) institutions, including the University of Cape Town, Stellenbosch University, the University of the Western Cape and the Cape Peninsula University of Technology.

The people

More than 5,3 million people live in the Western Cape on 129 370 km^2 of land (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*). Afrikaans is spoken by the majority, with isiXhosa and English being the other main languages.

A potpourri of diverse cultural backgrounds gives the province a cosmopolitan ambiance, resulting in a demographic profile quite different from the national pattern.

The profile draws on elements from different parts of Europe, south-east Asia, India and Africa, which are richly reflected in the diversity of the area.

Agriculture and marine fisheries

The Western Cape is rich in agriculture and fisheries. The sheltered valleys between the mountains provide ideal conditions for the cultivation of top-grade fruits, such as apples, table grapes, olives, peaches and oranges. In the eastern part of the Western Cape, a great variety of vegetables is cultivated. The province can be divided into three climatic regions. The area around the Cape Peninsula and the Boland, further inland, is a winter-rainfall region with sunny, dry summers.

Towards George, along the south coast, the climate gradually changes to year-round rainfall, while inland, towards the more arid Great Karoo, the climate changes to summer rainfall.

The Western Cape is known as one of the world's finest grape-growing regions. Many of its wines have received the highest accolades at international shows.

The wheat-growing Swartland district around Malmesbury, and the Overberg around Caledon, form the bread basket of the country.

The inland Karoo region (around Beaufort West), and the Overberg district (around Bredasdorp), produce wool and mutton, and pedigree Merino breeding stock.

Other animal products include broiler chickens, eggs, dairy products, beef and pork. The Western Cape is the only province with an outlet for the export of horses. This earns the country millions of rands in foreign revenue.

The province has also established itself as the leading facilitator in the export of ostrich meat to Europe. In addition to meat, fine leatherware and ostrich feathers are also exported to destinations all over the world.

The plankton-rich cold Benguela current flows along the west coast of the province, which is considered to be one of the world's richest fishing grounds. This resource is protected from overfishing by foreign vessels by means of a 300-km commercial fishing zone and a strict quota system. Snoek, Cape lobster, abalone, calamari, octopus, oysters and mussels are among the most sought-after piscatorial delights from this region.

Industry

The province has the lowest unemployment rate in the country, namely 19,7% *(Labour Force Survey, 2009)*, compared with the national average of 23,2%.

The backbone of the Western Cape's economy is small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs). Between 2004 and 2008, the province spent

R56 million in financial and mentoring support to assist 38 121 SMMEs (of which 80% were historically disadvantaged).

These and 4 355 tourism SMMEs and 6 267 entrepreneurs were beneficiaries of support-infrastructure programmes.

The Provincial Government implemented an initiative called "Die Plek Plan", to create economic opportunities in rural and peri-urban areas. "Plek" is a contraction of the words "plaaslike" (local) and "ekonomiese" (economic). It works with municipalities and communities to identify projects that can create economic opportunities, and whose development is subsidised by the Rural Economic Assistance Fund with R20 million.

Many of South Africa's major insurance companies and banks are based in the Western Cape.

The majority of the country's petroleum companies and the largest segment of the printing and publishing industry are located in Cape Town.

Information and communications technology (ICT) is one of the fastest-growing sectors in the province, and operations are being expanded to other provinces. After Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal, the Western Cape's manufacturing sector is the third-largest contributor to the national manufacturing sector.

The clothing and textile industry remains the most significant industrial source of employment in the province.

Cape Town is the economic hub of the province, encompassing industrial areas such as Epping, Montagu Gardens, Parow and Retreat. Along the west coast, the Saldanha Steel Project has led to increased economic activity.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

Government is using the hosting of the 2010 World Cup to fast-track the growth and development of the country. Towns and cities have geared up to host thousands of ticket holders during 2010.

The investment in 2010 will benefit South Africans long after the tournament.

Cape Town is ready to host the World Cup. Preparations include:

- Green Point Stadium, which will host eight matches during the tournament, including a quarter-final and a semi-final
- R12 billion of investment in the Cape Town International Airport
- developing the Integrated Rapid Transport System
- developing public viewing areas (PVAs)
- provincial road-infrastructure upgrades, including the Koeberg interchange and the N2 Corridor
- FIFA's Centre of Hope in Khayelitsha
- opportunities for volunteers and young people to develop skills and experience during the event
- upgrading the Philippi Stadium at a cost of R54 million as a "venue-specific" training site
- building at least six new hotels in the Western Cape
- building overall capacity in delivering health services.

The Final Draw on 4 December 2009 at the Cape Town International Convention Centre attracted a worldwide television viewership of 700 million people.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, with its vast natural resources, offers the adventurer and ecotourist a memorable experience. The province, with its undulating hills, expansive sandy beaches, majestic mountain ranges and emerald green forests, is the second-largest of the nine provinces in terms of surface area.

The region boasts remarkable natural diversity, ranging from the dry, desolate Great Karoo to the lush forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley; the fertile Langkloof, renowned for its rich apple harvests; and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region at Elliot.

The Eastern Cape's main feature is its spectacular coastline lapped by the Indian Ocean. With its long stretches of pristine sandy beaches, rocky coves, secluded lagoons and towering cliffs, the coastline provides the province with an unsurpassed natural tourist attraction.

The graceful curve of Algoa Bay provides an ideal setting for the Port of Port Elizabeth. East London offers equally favourable harbour facilities. The province is serviced by airports situated in Port Elizabeth, East London, Mthatha and Bhisho.

Eastern Cape

Capital: Bhisho

Principal languages:		
	isiXhosa	83,4%
	Afrikaans	9,3%
	English	3,6%

Population: 6 648 600 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*)

Area (km²): 169 580

The architecture of many of its cities and towns reflects the rich heritage of its people.

Important towns in the province include Bhisho, the capital; Uitenhage, which has important motor vehicle-manufacturing and related industries; King William's Town, rich in early settler and military history; Grahamstown, also known as the "City of Saints" because of its more than 40 churches; Graaff-Reinet, with its interesting collection of historic buildings; Cradock, the hub of the Central Karoo; Stutterheim, the forestry centre of the province; Aliwal North, famous for its hot sulphur springs; and Port St Johns, the largest town on the Wild Coast.

In the Eastern Cape, various floral habitats meet. Along the coast, the northern tropical forests intermingle with the more temperate woods of the south.

This makes for an interesting forest habitat of various species endemic to this region.

Age-old forests occur at Keiskammahoek, Dwesa, Port St Johns and Bathurst; dune forests are found at Alexandria; and mangroves along the Wild Coast.

Rolling grasslands dominate the eastern interior of the province, while the western central plateau is savanna bushveld. The northern inland is home to the aromatic, succulent-rich Karoo.

The province has a number of HE institutions, including the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, the University of Fort Hare and the Walter Sisulu University of Technology.

The people

The Eastern Cape has almost seven million people living on 169 580 km^2 of land (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*). The majority of the people speak isiXhosa, followed by Afrikaans and English.

Agriculture, fishing and forestry

The Eastern Cape Provincial Government has approved the Provincial Cooperative Strategy to establish a cooperative development fund in 2009/10. Rural development and agrarian transformation are strategic priorities. Resources were provided to enable ownership by worker groups, namely pineapple farming in Peddie, chicory farming in Alexandria, citrus on the banks of the Kat River and at Addo, fruit farmers in Langkloof and the paprika farmers in Keiskammahoek.

The Eastern Cape has excellent agricultural and forestry potential. The fertile Langkloof Valley in the south-west has enormous deciduous fruit orchards, while the Karoo interior is an important sheep-farming area. Angora wool is also produced here.

The Alexandria-Grahamstown area produces pineapples, chicory and dairy products, while coffee and tea are cultivated at Magwa. People in the former Transkei region are dependent on the farming of cattle, maize and sorghum.

An olive nursery has been developed in collaboration with the University of Fort Hare to form a nucleus of olive production in the Eastern Cape.

Extensive exotic forestry plantations in the high rainfall areas of Keiskammahoek provide employment for large numbers of the population. The province is a summer-rainfall region with high rainfall along the coast, becoming gradually drier behind the mountain ranges into the Great Karoo.

The Eastern Cape Provincial Government plans to develop the province's forestry and timber industry by creating up to 100 000 ha of plantations over the next 10 years.

The basis of the province's fishing industry is squid, some recreational and commercial fishing for line fish, the collection of marine resources and access to line-catches of hake.

Ostrich exports are flourishing and the provincial Department of Agriculture has been hailed for the support it is giving this industry. Each ostrich-export establishment has a resident official veterinarian, which is a requirement for exporting ostrich products to the European Union (EU).

The game industry is enjoying unprecedented demand in the international market due to health-conscious consumers increasingly demanding lean organic game meat.

Industry

Trends in the Gross Domestic Product by Region (GDP-R) figures over the past five years suggest that the province experienced growth in line with the national average of above 4% per year. The Expanded Public Works Programme played a critical role in creating employment opportunities, especially for youth and women. From 2004 to 2008, over 212 000 employment opportunities were created and more than 50 000 people trained.

The Mzimvubu Project is key to turning around the economy of the region to establish a modern agro-industrial economy centred around Mthatha, in the same way that the industrial development zones (IDZs) of Coega and East London are clustering industrial development in those areas. The Provincial Government has allocated additional

resources to the Coega Development Corporation for the further development of the Automotive Supplier Park.

The Provincial Industrial Strategy outlines broad government efforts that are necessary to transform the structure and distribution of industrial activity in the Eastern Cape to meet particular economic, social and political objectives.

The metropolitan economies of Port Elizabeth and East London are based primarily on manufacturing, the most important industry being motor manufacturing. The province is the hub of South Africa's automotive industry.

Several of the world's biggest motor manufacturers, such as Volkswagen, Ford (Samcor), General Motors (Delta) and DaimlerChrysler, have plants in the Eastern Cape. During 2008/09, the automotive sector in the province attracted investment in excess of R3 billion.

The Provincial Government uses state procurement to build the cooperative and SMME sectors. In the 2008/09 financial year alone, government, through the Eastern Cape Development Corporation, disbursed R95 million in loans to the Emerging Contractor Programme and another R114 million to SMMEs.

With two harbours and four airports offering direct flights to the main centres, and an excellent road and rail infrastructure, the province has been earmarked as a key area for growth and economic development. Environmentally friendly projects include the Fish River Spatial Development Initiative (SDI), the Wild Coast SDI and the East London and Coega IDZs. The latter, 20 km east of the Port Elizabeth-Uitenhage metropoles, was the first IDZ to be earmarked, and is one of the biggest initiatives ever undertaken in South Africa. Plans for the development of the area as an export-orientated zone include the building of the port of Ngqura.

The railway from Mthatha to East London was refurbished.

The East London IDZ plans to establish a "science" or technopark, where a culture of innovation and competitiveness of its associated business and knowledge-based institutions will be enhanced.

The Eastern Cape Provincial Government intends to support a number of key interventions to enhance the performance of Coega, including linkages with a number of logistical interventions in the Nelson Mandela area. Despite the economic downturn, Coega was expected to secure at least eight new investors for about R5,1 billion in the 2009/10 financial year.

2010 World Cup

The Eastern Cape is ready to play its part in hosting the 2010 World Cup. By mid-2009, the Provincial Government had invested R50 million in the refurbishment of sports facilities in Buffalo City.

The Nelson Mandela Bay Stadium was completed a year before the 2010 kick-off.

Hospitality services were expanded to ensure that a sufficient number of beds are available to accommodate tourists who will visit the province. More than 1 200 people have been trained in the hospitality sector.

Parallel to the football spectacular, there will be an arts and culture programme. A crafters' database was compiled, together with three additional crafter hubs in Dimbaza, Dispatch and Flagstaff. Fan parks – PVAs with large-screen televisions, entertainment and food and beverage stands – will be established for the tournament.

The Eastern Cape is becoming more accessible as the Provincial 2010 Public Transport Plan, which links air, road, rail, maritime, taxi and bus operations, is being implemented.

The extension of the N2 from Kei Mouth to Port St Johns – the Wild Coast meander – will unlock the tourism potential of the scenic coastline. In addition, the 248-km road will also facilitate agricultural and economic productivity, and access to government services at schools, clinics and police stations.

Phase One of the Bhisho Airport was completed in 2008 and Mthatha Airport is being upgraded at a cost of R60 million.

KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal is South Africa's domestic tourism leader. Aptly called South Africa's "Garden Province", KwaZulu-Natal is one of the country's most popular holiday destinations. This verdant region includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast. Washed by the warm Indian Ocean, it stretches from Port Edward in the south, and northwards to the Mozambique boundary.

In addition to the magnificent coastline, the province also boasts sweeping savanna in the east, and the majestic Drakensberg mountain range in the west.

Visitors to KwaZulu-Natal can either disembark at Durban International Airport, which handles more than 2,5 million passengers a year, or at Durban harbour. Alternatively, they can make use of the extensive national road network.

The ports of Durban and Richards Bay are some of the busiest in South Africa. Richards Bay is an important coal-export harbour.

The province has several popular coastal holiday resorts, such as Port Shepstone, Umhlanga Rocks and Margate. In the interior, Newcastle is well known for steel production and coal mining, Estcourt for meat processing, and Ladysmith and Richmond for mixed agriculture.

The KwaZulu-Natal coastal belt yields sugar cane, wood, oranges, bananas, mangoes and other tropical fruit.

The province is also well known for its active conservation activities. There are several reserves in the province such as the Royal Natal National Park, Giant's Castle and the Kamberg Nature Reserve.

Some of South Africa's best-protected indigenous coastal forests are found along the subtropical coastline of KwaZulu-Natal; for example, at Dukuduku and Kosi Bay. It is also along this coast that the magnificent St Lucia Estuary and Kosi Bay lakes are located. The iSimangaliso Wetland Park is a world heritage site. Separating KwaZulu-Natal from Lesotho, the Drakensberg runs 200 km along the western boundary of the province.

The northern part of the province, south of the Swaziland border, is typical African savanna, providing a natural backdrop for its rich wildlife, which is protected in several game parks.

The province boasts several universities of technology, universities and other educational institutions, including the University of KwaZulu-Natal and the Durban Institute of Technology.

KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution.

The people

KwaZulu-Natal has more than 10 million people living on 92 100 km^2 of land (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*). The principal language spoken is isiZulu, followed by English and Afrikaans. Remnants of British colonialism, together with Zulu, Indian and Afrikaans traditions, make for an interesting cultural mix in the province.

KwaZulu-Natal

Capital: Pietermaritzburg

Principal languages:		
	isiZulu	80,9%
	English	13,6%
	Afrikaans	1,5%

Population: 10 449 300 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*)

Area (km^2): 92 100

Agriculture and industry

According to Stats SA, the average economic annual growth for KwaZulu-Natal for the period 2004 to 2008 was 4,1%, compared to 3,65% from 2001 to 2004.

The manufacturing sector is the largest in this province in terms of contribution to GDP (21%).

The Gijima SMME Upliftment Programme, coordinated by the Department of Economic Development and funded by the EU, is on track to reach its target of creating or saving 3 000 jobs according to the funding agreement.

From the inception of the Land Reform Programme of the former Department of Land Affairs in 1999 to 2009, the Provincial Land Reform Office had transferred 602 projects, resulting in the relocation of 329 070 ha to 106 694 beneficiaries.

Richards Bay is the centre of operations for South Africa's aluminium industry. The Richards Bay Coal Terminal is instrumental in securing the country's position as the second-largest exporter of steam coal in the world. Richards Bay Minerals is the largest sand-mining and mineral-processing operation in the world.

In recent times, the province has undergone rapid industrialisation owing to its abundant water supply and labour resources. Industries are found at Newcastle, Ladysmith, Dundee, Richards Bay, Durban, Hammarsdale, Richmond, Pietermaritzburg and Mandeni.

The sugar-cane plantations along the Indian Ocean coastal belt form the mainstay of the economy and agriculture of the region. The coastal belt is also a large producer of subtropical fruit, while the farmers in the hinterland concentrate on vegetable, dairy and stock farming.

Another major source of income is forestry in the areas around Vryheid, Eshowe, Richmond, Harding and Ngome, which is also known for its tea plantations.

The summer-rainfall coastal regions of this province are hot and humid with a subtropical climate. The KwaZulu-Natal Midlands between the coastal strip and the southern Drakensberg Escarpment are drier, with extremely cold conditions in winter and snow on the high-lying ground. In the north, the subtropical strip extends around Swaziland to the edge of the escarpment.

2010 World Cup

KwaZulu-Natal has recently seen the biggest investment in infrastructure programmes in its history. This included:

- the R2,6-billion Moses Mabhida Stadium, which boasts a 350-m arch spaning the stadium
- R259 million that was made available for infrastructure development of stadiums in four district municipalities.

All of Durban's public-transport projects, which are being funded by national government to the amount of R1,2 billion, were expected to be completed by the first quarter of 2010.

These include additional dedicated public transport lanes, an innercity distribution system, park-and-ride facilities using existing car parks and buses, upgrades to major intersections, a freeway management system, a closed-circuit television (CCTV) road-monitoring system and a traffic call centre.

Durban's new King Shaka International Airport was expected to start operating in May 2010, in time for the FIFA World Cup, and a shuttle service would be provided for passengers between the airport and a central transport hub in the city.

A 10- to 15-m-wide promenade along the beachfront will give access to the fan park and to the stadium through an existing underpass, which will be widened and upgraded.

The pilot People Mover System – a wheelchair-friendly service with large windows – travels along a designated route within the city and along the beachfront, servicing over 500 000 people a year. The service, which is monitored by cameras to make it safe, runs every 15 minutes between 06:00 and 23:00.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is noted for its San rock art, diamond diggings, 4X4 safaris and the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park. It is a vast stretch of semi-desert land. The distance from the capital, Kimberley, on the eastern border to Springbok (in the west) is more than 900 km. It is a large, dry region of fluctuating temperatures and varying topographies.

The Northern Cape lies to the south of its most important asset, the mighty Orange River, which provides the basis for a healthy agricultural industry. The landscape is characterised by vast arid plains with outcroppings of haphazard rock piles. The cold Atlantic Ocean forms the western boundary.

This region covers the largest area of all the provinces and has the smallest population. Its major airports are situated at Kimberley and at Upington. The Northern Cape has an excellent road network, which makes its interior easily accessible from South Africa's major cities, harbours and airports.

Important towns are Upington, centre of the karakul sheep and dried-fruit industries, and the most northerly wine-making region of South Africa; Springbok, in the heart of the Namaqualand spring-flower country; Kuruman, founded by the Scottish missionary Robert Moffat; and De Aar, second most important junction of South Africa's railway network. Sutherland is host to the southern hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope.

South Africa has been shortlisted as one of two countries to host the Square Kilometre Array (SKA), a giant next-generation radio telescope being developed by scientists from 17 countries. The proposed SKA will be located in the Northern Cape. Other important Northern Cape towns include the sheep-farming towns of Carnarvon, Colesberg, Kenhardt and Prieska, which are renowned for their semi-precious stones and variety of succulents.

Apart from a narrow strip of winter-rainfall area along the coast, the Northern Cape is a semi-arid region with little rainfall in summer. The weather conditions are extreme – cold and frosty in winter, with extremely high temperatures in summer.

The largest part of the province falls within the Nama-Karoo Biome, with a vegetation of low shrubland and grass, and trees limited to water courses. The area is known for its spectacular display of spring flowers that attracts thousands of tourists every year.

This biome is home to many wonderful plant species, such as the elephant's trunk (halfmens), tree aloe (kokerboom) and a variety of succulents.

The province has several national parks and conservation areas. The Kalahari Gemsbok National Park, together with the Gemsbok National Park in Botswana, is Africa's first transfrontier game park, known as the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park. It is one of the largest nature-conservation areas in southern Africa and one of the largest

Northern Cape

Capital: Kimberley

Principal languages:	Afrikaans	68%
	Setswana	20,8%

Population: 1 147 600 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*)

Area (km²): 361 830

remaining protected natural ecosystems in the world. The park provides unfenced access to a variety of game between South Africa and Botswana.

The Ai-Ais-Richtersveld Transfrontier Conservation Park spans some of the most spectacular scenery of the arid and desert environments in southern Africa. Bisected by the Orange River, which forms the border between South Africa and Namibia, it comprises the Ai-Ais Hot Springs Game Park in Namibia and the Richtersveld National Park in South Africa. Some of the distinctive features in the area include the Fish River Canyon (often likened to the Grand Canyon in the United States of America) and the Ai-Ais hot springs. This arid zone is further characterised by a unique and impressive variety of succulent plant species.

Nowhere is the Orange River more impressive than at the Augrabies Falls, which ranks among the world's greatest cataracts on a major river. The Augrabies Falls National Park was established to preserve this natural wonder.

The people

The Northern Cape is sparsely populated and houses just more than one million people on 361 830 km^2 of land (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*). About 68% of the population speak Afrikaans. Other languages spoken are Setswana, isiXhosa and English. The last remaining true San (Bushman) people live in the Kalahari area of the Northern Cape. The area, especially along the Orange and Vaal rivers, is rich in San rock engravings. A good collection can be seen at the McGregor Museum in Kimberley. The province is also rich in fossils.

Agriculture and industry

The Northern Cape is enjoying tremendous growth in value-added activities, including game farming. Food production and processing for the local and export market are also growing significantly.

Underpinning the growth and development plan of the province are the investment projects that link up with the existing plans of the Namaqua Development Corridor, where the focus is on the beneficiation and export of sea products. The economy of a large part of the Northern Cape, the interior Karoo, depends on sheep farming, while the karakul-pelt industry is one of the most important in the Gordonia district of Upington. The province has fertile agricultural land. In the Orange River Valley, especially at Upington, Kakamas and Keimoes, grapes and fruit are cultivated intensively. Wheat, fruit, peanuts, maize and cotton are produced at the Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme near Warrenton.

The Integrated Provincial SMME Strategy allows the province to implement effective second-economy interventions to address poverty, underdevelopment and marginalisation. Small Enterprise Development Agency offices have been established in all five districts to offer non-financial support, and business advice and counselling to SMMEs.

The Northern Cape has identified business process outsourcing and offshoring as one of the projects capable of providing a considerable number of job opportunities through the establishment of call centres. The first-ever call centre in Ga-Segonyana in the Northern Cape was launched in February 2008.

Agriculture is still one of the mainstay sectors of the Northern Cape's economy and is therefore critical in overall economic planning. In this regard, agricultural development programmes such as the Farmer Support and Development Programme and the Comprehensive Agriculture Support Programme were expected to be strengthened by funding of R49 million in 2009. More than R7 million of this was allocated to wine development. In 2009/10, more than R90 million was allocated to farmer support and development.

Mining

Kimberley is often referred to as the "Diamond Capital of the World".

The Northern Cape is rich in minerals. The country's chief diamond pipes are found in the Kimberley district. In 1888, the diamond industry was formally established with the creation of De Beers Consolidated Mines. Alluvial diamonds are also extracted from the beaches and the sea between Alexander Bay and Port Nolloth.

The Sishen Mine near Kathu is the biggest source of iron ore in South Africa, while the copper mine at Okiep is one of the oldest mines in the country. Copper is also mined at Springbok and Aggeneys. The province is rich in asbestos, manganese, fluorspar, semi-precious stones and marble.

Until recently, the majority of small- to medium-scale alluvial operations were concentrated along or near the Vaal River system. With the deposits available for mining declining rapidly, there has been a gradual shift towards the Orange River system.

Two recent larger-scale investments also show continued prospects in this sector.

As part of the implementation of economic-development initiatives, the province established the Diamond, Gemstone and Jewellery Hub that will host the State Diamond Trader.

The Gold Chain Technology Project, focusing on the production of gold and silver chains for the export market, was launched in 2008. The total investment amounts to R82 million.

The Provincial Government and private investors opened a gold jewellery-manufacturing facility worth R100 million in Kimberley, in an effort to ensure that more value is added to precious metals locally, with finished products destined for export markets.

2010 World Cup

The 2010 Mass Mobilisation Programme was launched in Kimberley in January 2009. The Northern Cape will not be hosting any matches during the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. Buses will travel from the province to other host cities.

PVAs will provide the people of the Northern Cape with the opportunity to participate in the World Cup.

Free State

The Free State, a province of wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns, lies in the heart of South Africa, with Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

The capital, Bloemfontein, has a well-established institutional, educational and administrative infrastructure, and houses the Supreme Court of Appeal.

The city, also referred to as the "City of Roses", is home to some of the province's many tertiary educational institutions, including the University of the Free State and the Central University of Technology.

Important towns include Welkom, the heart of the goldfields and one of the few completely pre-planned cities in the world; Odendaalsrus, another gold-mining town; Sasolburg, which owes its existence to the petrol-from-coal installation established there; Kroonstad, an important agricultural, administrative and educational centre; Parys, on the banks of the Vaal River; Phuthaditjhaba, well known for the beautiful handcrafted items produced by the local people; and Bethlehem, gateway to the Eastern Highlands of the Free State.

Nestled in the rolling foothills of the Maluti mountains in the north-eastern Free State, the Golden Gate Highlands National Park is the province's prime tourist attraction. The park derives its name from the brilliant shades of gold cast by the sun on the spectacular sandstone cliffs, especially the imposing Brandwag rock, which keeps vigil over the park.

The N1, which is the artery between Gauteng and the Western and Eastern Cape, passes through the middle of the Free State. The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly called Macufe, is hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State.

The people

According to the *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009,* there are more than 2,9 million people in the Free State on about 129 480 km^2 of land. The main languages spoken are Sesotho and Afrikaans.

Many of the towns display a cultural mix that is clearly evident in street names, public buildings, monuments and museums. Dressed-sandstone buildings abound on the Eastern Highlands, while beautifully decorated Sotho houses dot the grasslands. Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art is found in the Free State. The districts of Bethlehem, Ficksburg, Ladybrand and Wepener have remarkable collections of this art form.

Agriculture

Agriculture has always been considered to be the main sector in the province's economy.

The Free State is a summer-rainfall region, which can be extremely cold during the winter months, especially towards the eastern mountainous regions. The western and southern areas are semi-desert.

Known as the "Granary of the Country", the Free State has cultivated land covering 3,2 million ha, while natural veld and grazing cover 8,7 million ha. Field crops yield almost two thirds of the gross agricultural income of the province. Animal products contribute a further 30%, with the balance generated by horticulture.

Ninety percent of the country's cherry crop is produced in the Ficksburg district, while the two largest asparagus-canning factories are also situated in this area.

Soya, sorghum, sunflowers and wheat are cultivated, especially in the eastern Free State, where farmers specialise in seed production. About 40% of the country's potato yield comes from the high-lying areas of the Free State.

The province produces about 100 000 t of vegetables and 40 000 t of fruit each year.

The main vegetable crop is asparagus, both white and green varieties. The industry is expanding and becoming increasingly export-orientated.

In terms of floriculture, the Free State has an advantage due to the opposing seasons of the southern and northern hemispheres. The province exports some 1,2 million t of cut flowers per year.

The development of agriculture as a sustainable economic contributor, especially regarding emerging and small farmers, is one of the high-impact projects which are underway.

Mining

The province is the world's fifth-largest gold producer, with mining the major employer. It is also a leader in the chemicals industry, being home to the giant synthetic-fuels company, Sasol.

Some 82% of the region's mineral production value is derived from this activity, primarily in the goldfields region, which comprises the districts of Odendaalsrus, Virginia and Welkom.

Twelve gold mines operate in the province. Roughly 30% of South Africa's gold is obtained from this region, and the province lies in fifth position as a global producer.

Harmony Gold Refinery and Rand Refinery are the only two gold refineries in South Africa.

Gold mines in the Free State also supply a substantial portion of the total silver produced in the country, while considerable concentrations of uranium occurring in the gold-bearing conglomerates of the goldfields are extracted as a by-product.

Bituminous coal is mined in the province and converted to petrochemicals at Sasolburg. Diamonds from this region, extracted from kimberlite pipes and fissures, are of a high quality.

Free State

Capital: Bloemfontein

Principal languages:		
	Sesotho	64,4%
	Afrikaans	11,9%
	isiXhosa	9,1%

Population: 2 902 400 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*)

Area (km²): 129 480

The largest deposit of bentonite in the country occurs in the Koppies district.

The Free State Provincial Government has approved the establishment of two biofuel plants in Bothaville and Hoopstad.

Manufacturing and industry

The Provincial Government has developed a number of strategies and policy documents to bring about shared benefits of freedom in the economic front. These include the policy to support SMMEs and a supply chain management policy to ensure preferential procurement. By June 2008, the Free State Development Corporation had approved loans totalling over R32 million primarily for SMMEs.

Some 14% of the province's manufacturing is classified as being in high-technology industries, which is the highest percentage of all the provincial economies.

An important manufacturing industry in the province can be found in the northern Free State, which is one of the most important chemical hubs in the southern hemisphere.

The province has competitive advantages in the production of certain fuels, waxes, chemicals and low-cost feedstock from coal.

The growth in high-tech industries is significant in the context of the changing contribution of the gold-mining industry to gross geographic product. The province's development strategy centres on competitiveness, empowerment, capacity-building and beneficiation.

2010 World Cup

The upgraded Free State Stadium in Bloemfontein will host five first-round matches and one second-round match during the World Cup. Refurbishment was completed by November 2008, ahead of the FIFA-required deadline.

Other projects included:

- Mangaung activity corridor and the establishment of the intermodal facility
- finalising funding and business plans for the upgrading of access roads from the N8 to Bloemfontein Airport and the airport itself
- revamping resorts, water distribution and purification works
- ICT development and upgrade
- establishing a sports museum
- installing CCTV cameras in Mangaung.

Cooperation with Lesotho and the Northern Cape will extend the economic benefits of the event far beyond the borders of the Free State.

North West

North West boasts a year-round sunny climate, exciting wildlife destinations like the Pilanesberg National Park and Madikwe Game Reserve, various cultural and historical attractions and Sun City and Lost City. Also known as the "Platinum Province", North West is centrally located on the subcontinent with direct road and rail links to all southern African countries, and with its own airport near the capital city, Mafikeng. Most economic activity is concentrated in the Southern Region (between Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp), Rustenburg, and the Eastern Region, where more than 83,3% of GDP-R of the province is generated.

An amount of R3,1 billion was allocated to address infrastructure needs in the 2009/10 financial year.

The people

Of the 3,4 million people living in the North West, 65% live in the rural areas (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*).

Mining

Mining has always been strong in the North West, and more is being done in terms of mineral beneficiation in the province, making the most of the natural advantage that the province enjoys.

Mining is responsible for more than a third of the province's GDP. Platinum comes from the Rustenburg and Brits districts, which produce more platinum than any other single platinum-production area in the world. Diamonds are mined at Lichtenburg, Koster, Christiana and Bloemhof. Fluorspar is exploited at Zeerust. Granite and marble are also mined, and copper and nickel by-products also yield substantial earnings annually.

Recent pojects included:

- the development of a granite-beneficiation operation that involves the cutting and polishing of granite slabs and tiles for both the local and export market
- new investments to mine and process limestone into cement for export have been concluded for the Mafikeng area
- International Ferro Metals, a successful new ferrochrome mine in the North West with a processing plant adjacent to the mine, is expected to be one of the lowest-cost producers of ferrochrome in the world, minimising chrome handling
- the Minerals Park Project in the Mafikeng IDZ will focus on, among other things, diamond-beneficiating operations, including the cutting, polishing and manufacturing of diamond jewellery.

Manufacturing

North West's manufacturing sector is centred around the municipalities of Brits, Rustenburg, Potchefstroom, Klerksdorp and Mafikeng, which account for more than 50% of total manufacturing production in the province.

The industries in Brits concentrate mostly on manufacturing and construction, while those at Klerksdorp are geared towards the mining industry, and those at Vryburg and Brits towards agriculture.

In the manufacturing area, automotive parts, electrical machinery, electronic, and audio and medical equipment are being manufactured in the province using local material.

The Centre for Advanced Manufacturing (CFAM) was originally started in Potchefstroom. It is a self-sufficient business that initially supplied a comprehensive re-engineering service to the extrusion and mining industry. The CFAM has also developed equipment that can be used to add value to affordable cereals such as maize meal and thus offers food that is ideal for low-cost feeding schemes in rural areas.

With the assistance of Invest North West, the North West is keeping up with the global trend of developing science parks. The proposed North West Science Park in Potchefstroom will include a related community employment and entrepreneurial centre. Initial grant funding of R40 million is required to ensure self-sustainability, even at only 60% occupancy.

The Platinum SDI, situated on the Coast-to-Coast Highway that links the port of Maputo in Mozambique to Walvis Bay in Namibia, is expected to unlock further development. About 200 potential project opportunities in tourism, manufacturing, agriculture and mining have been identified.

Agriculture

Agriculture is of extreme importance to the North West. It contributes about 2,6% to the total GDP-R and 19% to formal employment.

Some 5,9% of the South African GDP in agriculture and 16,96% of total labour in agriculture are

North West

Capital: Mafikeng

Principal languages:		
	Setswana	65,4%
	Afrikaans	7,5%
	isiXhosa	5,8%

Population: 3 450 400 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*)

Area (km²): 116 320

based in the North West (*Provincial Economies, 2004*). The province is an important food basket in South Africa. Maize and sunflowers are the most important crops, and the North West is the major producer of white maize in the country.

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the "Texas of South Africa". Marico is also cattle country. The areas around Rustenburg and Brits are fertile, mixed-crop farming land.

2010 World Cup

Rustenburg is the official hosting city in the North West, with the Royal Bafokeng Stadium being the official match venue.

The stadium was also used for the Confederations Cup in June 2009.

Gauteng

Gauteng continues to serve as the economic engine room of the country and the subcontinent, responsible for over 34,8% of the country's GDP.

Although it is the smallest of South Africa's nine provinces, covering only 1,4% of the country's land area, it contributes about a third of the country's total GDP. Gauteng is the powerhouse of South Africa and the heart of its commercial business and industrial sectors.

Johannesburg, nicknamed "Egoli" (Place of Gold), is the capital of the province and a city of contrasts. Mine-dumps and headgear stand proud as symbols of its rich past, while modern architecture rubs shoulders with examples of 19th-century engineering prowess.

Gleaming skyscrapers contrast with Indian bazaars and African muti (medicine) shops, where traditional healers dispense advice and traditional medicine.

The three most important sectors contributing to GDP-R are finance, real estate and business services; manufacturing; and general government services.

Gauteng is also the financial-services capital of Africa. More than 70 foreign banks have their head offices here, as do at least the same number of South African banks, stockbrokers and insurance giants

The province blends cultures, colours and first- and third-world traditions in a spirited mix that is flavoured by many foreign influences.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport. South of Johannesburg is Soweto, developed as a township for black people under the apartheid system. Most of the struggle against apartheid was fought in and from Soweto, which is estimated to be inhabited by over two million people. Soweto is a city of enterprise and cultural interaction.

It is also a popular tourist destination, with sites such as Kliptown, where the Freedom Charter was drawn up; the home of former President Nelson Mandela; the Hector Petersen Memorial site; and restaurants and shopping malls. It boasts one of the largest public hospitals on the continent, the Chris Hani-Baragwanath Hospital; and one of the largest shopping malls, the 65 000-m^2 Maponya Mall, which attracts on average 1,5 million people a month.

Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies Pretoria, dominated by government departments and the diplomatic corps of foreign representatives in the country.

Pretoria is the administrative capital of South Africa and home to the Union Buildings. Pretoria, also known as the "Jacaranda City", is known for its colourful gardens, shrubs and trees, particularly beautiful in spring when some 50 000 flowering jacaranda trees envelop the avenues in mauve.

The city developed at a more sedate pace than Johannesburg, and town planners had the foresight to include an abundance of open space. Pretoria has more than 100 parks, including bird sanctuaries and nature reserves.

An air of history pervades much of central Pretoria, especially Church Square, around which the city has grown. Many buildings of historical and architectural importance have been retained or restored to their former splendour.

The industrial area of Rosslyn and the townships of Soshanguve and GaRankuwa are situated north of Pretoria. Mamelodi; and Cullinan, known for its diamonds, lies to the east. To the west, lies Atteridgeville.

Other important Gauteng towns include Krugersdorp and Roodepoort on the West Rand; and Germiston, Springs, Boksburg, Benoni, Brakpan and Kempton Park on the East Rand.

Vanderbijlpark and Vereeniging in the south of the province are major industrial centres, while Heidelberg, Nigel and Bronkhorstspruit, to the east, are of agricultural importance.

Although the province is highly urbanised and industrialised, it contains wetlands of international importance, such as Blesbokspruit near Springs.

The province houses some of the most important educational and health centres in the country. Pretoria boasts the largest residential university in South Africa, the University of Pretoria, and what is believed to be the largest correspondence uni-

versity in the world, the University of South Africa, known as Unisa.

In addition, Gauteng is home to leading research institutions such as the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, the Agricultural Research Council, Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute and the Human Sciences Research Council. More than 60% of South Africa's research and development (R&D) takes place in Gauteng.

Johannesburg has two residential universities, namely the University of the Witwatersrand and the University of Johannesburg. There are also several teacher-training colleges, technical colleges and universities of technology in the province.

The people

Gauteng is the most densely populated province in South Africa. About 10,53 million of the country's people (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*) live in this province. The level of urbanisation is 97%.

Manufacturing

Manufacturing is one of the key drivers of the economy of the province. Mining dominates the western areas of Gauteng and manufacturing the eastern parts.

Gauteng is the centre of the country's motor-manufacturing industry. The manufacturing sector alone employs about 600 000 people in over 9 000 enterprises. This includes basic iron and steel, fabricated metal products, food, machinery, electrical machinery, appliances and electrical supplies, vehicle parts, accessories and chemical products.

Technology

A large number of institutions engaged in R&D and innovation choose Gauteng as their preferred site of operation. The Innovation Hub in Pretoria is Africa's first internationally accredited science park and a full member of the International Association of Science Parks. Its community has become a regional centre of innovation and knowledge creation, linked to the fast moving world of global interconnectivity.

The Innovation Hub has created a unique space for high-tech entrepreneurs, world-class businesses, academics, researchers and venture capitalists to meet, network and prosper. In 2008, there were 68 companies resident within The Innovation Hub precinct, made up of SMMEs and multinational companies, employing in excess of 1 000 people.

Agriculture and industry

Gauteng's agricultural sector is geared to provide the cities and towns of the province with daily fresh produce, including dairy products, vegetables, fruit, meat, eggs and flowers.

A large area of the province falls within the so-called "Maize Triangle". The districts of Bronkhorstspruit, Cullinan and Heidelberg hold important agricultural land, where groundnuts, sunflowers, cotton and sorghum are produced.

This summer-rainfall area has hot summers and cold winters with frost. Hail is common during the summer thunderstorms.

Gauteng is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three subregional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand; and Pretoria.

The Vaal Triangle has a strong manufacturing sector; the West Rand concentrates on primary mining; and the Central Witwatersrand is dominated by the manufacturing and finance sectors, with mining capital playing a major role.

All sectors rely heavily on the Vaal Dam (on the Vaal River), from where water is piped across the province.

Most steel in South Africa is produced and consumed in Gauteng. South Africa is also one of the top-10 primary producers of aluminium in the world. The value of this industry in Gauteng is worth about US$20 million.

Johannesburg houses the JSE Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

2010 World Cup

By August 2009, the refurbishment of Soccer City, Loftus Versfeld and Ellis Park stadiums was on track. Johannesburg will host the International Broadcasting Centre and develop a multimillion rand precinct around Nasrec.

Soccer City, near Soweto, Johannesburg, will host the opening and final matches of the 2010 World Cup as well as the opening and closing ceremonies.

Gauteng

Capital: Johannesburg

Principal languages:		
	isiZulu	21,5%
	Afrikaans	14,4%
	Sesotho	13,1%
	English	12,5%

Population: 10 531 300 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*)

Area (km²): 17 010

In 2009, the telecommunications infrastructure was being upgraded to meet international standards as well as local and international demands.

The roads and transport infrastructure was being revamped to ensure quick and easy travelling to the match venues and tourist destinations while OR Tambo International Airport, which is the main port of entry, is ready to welcome and process large numbers of soccer lovers and tourists.

In 2009, the hospitality industry was working to improve accommodation and related services.

Dedicated police, emergency, medical, health, traffic and disaster-management services were preparing to ensure quality service delivery.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga is aptly called "Paradise Country" and people are drawn to the province by the magnificent scenery, the fauna and flora and the saga of the 1870 gold-rush era. Mpumalanga means "Place where the Sun Rises". With a surface area of only 79 490 km^2, the second-smallest province after Gauteng, it has the fourth-largest economy in South Africa.

Bordered by Mozambique and Swaziland in the east and Gauteng in the west, it is situated mainly on the high plateau grasslands of the Middleveld, which roll eastwards for hundreds of kilometres. In the north-east, it rises towards mountain peaks and terminates in an immense escarpment. In some places, this escarpment plunges hundreds of metres down to the low-lying area known as the Lowveld.

The area has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Because of its popularity as a tourist destination, Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, such as the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Nelspruit is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Witbank is the centre of the local coal-mining industry; Standerton, in the south, is known for its large dairy industry; and Piet Retief in the south-east is a production area for tropical fruit and sugar.

A large sugar industry is also found at Malelane in the east; Ermelo is the district in South Africa that produces the most wool; Barberton is one of the oldest gold-mining towns in South Africa; and Sabie is situated in the forestry heartland of the country.

The Maputo Corridor, which links the province with Gauteng and Maputo in Mozambique, heralds a new era in terms of economic development and growth for the region.

As the first international toll road in Africa, the Maputo Corridor is attracting investment and releasing the local economic potential of the landlocked parts of the country. The best-performing sectors in the province include mining, manufacturing and services. Tourism and agriprocessing are potential growth sectors in the province.

Mpumalanga falls mainly within the Grassland Biome. The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.

Long stretches of undulating grasslands change abruptly into thickly forested ravines and thundering waterfalls of the escarpment, only to change again into the subtropical wildlife splendour of the Lowveld. Sabie and Graskop provide a large part of the country's total forestry products. These forestry plantations are an ideal backdrop for ecotourism opportunities, with a variety of popular hiking trails, a myriad waterfalls, patches of indigenous forest and many nature reserves.

Lake Chrissie is the largest natural freshwater lake in South Africa and is famous for its variety of aquatic birds, especially flamingos.

Mpumalanga

Capital: Nelspruit

Principal languages:		
	siSwati	30,8%
	isiZulu	26,4%
	isiNdebele	12,1%

Population: 3 606 800 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*)

Area (km^2): 79 490

The people

Over the past five years, the provincial economy achieved an average growth of 4,7%. Even though it is one of the smaller provinces, Mpumalanga has a population of about 3,6 million people.

Agriculture and forestry

Agriculture in Mpumalanga, which holds 17% of the medium-potential arable land in South Africa, is characterised by a combination of commercialised farming, subsistence and livestock farming and emerging crop farming. Higher demands for agricultural products due to continuing population growth in the country, increases in the export of agricultural goods via Maputo harbour and potential for increased agricultural production are expected to boost this sector in future.

The province is a summer-rainfall area divided by the escarpment into the Highveld region with cold frosty winters, and the Lowveld region with mild winters and a subtropical climate.

The escarpment area sometimes experiences snow on high ground. Thick mist is common during the hot, humid summers. An abundance of citrus fruit and many other subtropical fruits – mangoes, avocados, litchis, bananas, pawpaws, granadillas and guavas – as well as nuts and a variety of vegetables are produced here.

Nelspruit is the second-largest citrus-producing area in South Africa and is responsible for one third of the country's export in oranges. The Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops is situated here.

Groblersdal is an important irrigation area, which yields a wide variety of products such as citrus fruit, cotton, tobacco, wheat and vegetables. Carolina-Bethal-Ermelo is mainly a sheep-farming area, but potatoes, sunflowers, maize and peanuts are also produced in this region.

Industry and manufacturing

Most of the manufacturing production in Mpumalanga occurs in the southern Highveld region, especially in the Highveld Ridge where large petrochemical industries such as Sasol II and III are located. Large-scale manufacturing occurs especially in the northern Highveld area, in particular, chrome alloy and steel manufacturing.

In the Lowveld subregion, industries are concentrated around the manufacturing of products from agricultural and raw forestry material. The growth in demand for goods and services for export via Maputo will stimulate manufacturing in the province.

Since 2005, the Mpumalanga Economic Growth Agency has facilitated more than R1,2-billion investment into the province.

During 2008, 16 657 SMMEs accessed business-development support and 284 SMMEs received financial support.

Mpumalanga is very rich in coal reserves. The country's major power stations, three of which are the biggest in the southern hemisphere, are situated here. Unfortunately, these cause the highest levels of air pollution in the country.

Anglo Coal, Sappi, Columbus Stainless and York Timbers invested R11,3 billion in the province between 2004 and 2008 and created close to 5 000 jobs.

The recommissioning of three power stations in the province by Eskom is another important ongoing investment project that has presented opportunities to municipalities in the province.

One of the country's largest paper mills is situated at Ngodwana, close to its timber source. Middelburg produces steel and vanadium, while Witbank is the biggest coal producer in Africa.

The province's flagship programmes include the Maputo Development Corridor, which was launched in December 2008; the Moloto Rail Development Corridor; Water for All, Heritage, Greening Mpumalanga; and various tourism programmes.

2010 World Cup

In June 2009, work on developing the showgrounds into a world-class outdoor events and recreational and cultural hub began. The facility will stage various shows, exhibitions and cultural events ahead of and beyond 2010.

The Mbombela Stadium, with a capacity of 46 000 seats, will host four matches in Nelspruit. In 2008, construction had commenced on the Matsafeni access road, the R40 high-occupancy vehicle lane, and the P166 and N4 interchange site. An integrated 2010 Safety and Security Plan has been developed.

Limpopo

Limpopo, South Africa's northernmost province, borders onto Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal entrance to Africa. Named after the Limpopo River that flows along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, spectacular scenery and a wealth of historical and cultural treasures.

Limpopo has a strong rural basis. Its growth strategy centres on addressing infrastructure backlogs, the alleviation of poverty and social development.

The province is linked to the Maputo Development Corridor through the Phalaborwa SDI, which is a network of rail and road corridors connecting to the major seaports, which will open up Limpopo for trade and investment. This is complemented by the presence of smaller airports in centres such as Phalaborwa and Musina, as well as the Gateway International Airport in Polokwane. The airport caters for about 38 000 passengers a year.

Polokwane is the capital city and lies strategically in the centre of the province.

The Great North Road, running through the centre of the province, strings together a series of interesting towns. Bela-Bela, with its popular

mineral spa, is near the southern border of the province.

Further north lie Modimolle with its table-grape industry and beautiful Waterberg mountain range; Mokopane; Polokwane; Makhado at the foot of the Soutpansberg mountain range; and Musina, with its thick-set baobab trees. The crossing into Zimbabwe is at Beit Bridge.

Other important Limpopo towns include the major mining centres of Phalaborwa and Thabazimbi; and Tzaneen, producer of tea, forestry products and tropical fruits. This province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, which is generally known as bushveld. A trip through this summer-rainfall area shows that this is tree country.

Rich in natural beauty, culture and wildlife, Limpopo is an ideal breakaway destination for tourists. The province's natural resources include more than 50 provincial reserves, as well as several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is situated along the eastern boundary of Limpopo with Mozambique.

Several museums and national monuments bear testimony to ancient people and fearless pioneers who braved the unknown. Living museums include the Bakone Malapa Museum near Polokwane, where Bapedi tribespeople practise age-old skills for the benefit of visitors; and the Tsonga Open-Air Museum near Tzaneen.

Mapungubwe ("Place of The Jackal") Hill, some 75 km from Musina, used to be a natural fortress for its inhabitants from about AD 950 to 1200. It was declared a world heritage site in 2003. Valuable archaeological artefacts, including many golden objects, have been discovered in this area, as well as in the northern part of the Kruger National Park.

The people

According to the *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009,* about 5,2 million people live on about 123 910 km^2 of land in Limpopo.

Limpopo		
Capital: Polokwane		
Principal languages:	Sesotho sa Leboa	52,1%
	Xitsonga	2,4%
	Tshivenda	15,9%
Population: 5 227 200 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2009*)		
Area (km^2): 123 910		

Agriculture

Limpopo contributes 6,7% to the national GDP. The bushveld is cattle country, where controlled hunting is often combined with ranching. About 80% of South Africa's hunting takes place in this province. As the largest producers of various crops in the agricultural market, Limpopo is exploiting this capacity as a resource for agritourism. For instance, the Modimolle Grape Festival is celebrated in January.

The province developed the Limpopo Agricultural Development Strategy, whose priority lies in the development of agricultural hubs – a concept adapted to suit areas with the greatest potential to increase land availability for agricultural production while enhancing the broader economy of such areas. Two of the five hubs identified are Nandoni in the Vhembe District and Nebo Plateau in the Sekhukhune District.

Sunflowers, cotton, maize and peanuts are cultivated in the Bela-Bela-Modimolle area. Tropical fruit, such as bananas, litchis, pineapples, mangoes and pawpaws, as well as a variety of nuts, are grown in the Tzaneen and Makhado areas. Extensive tea and coffee plantations create many employment opportunities in the Tzaneen area.

The climatic conditions in this province allow for double harvesting seasons, which ultimately translate into Limpopo becoming the national food basket. It produces about 60% of the country's tomatoes; 75% mangoes; 65% papaya; 33% oranges; 36% tea; 25% citrus, bananas and litchis; and 60% of its avocados. It has initiated a process to open market access for exporting some of its fresh produce to the People's Republic of China.

More than 45% of the R2-billion annual turnover of the Johannesburg Fresh Produce Market comes from Limpopo. The largest tomato farm in South Africa lies between Tzaneen and Makhado. Extensive forestry plantations are also found here.

Plantations of hard wood for furniture manufacturing have also been established and many of the rural people practise subsistence farming. The northern and eastern parts of this summer-rainfall region are subtropical with hot, humid summers and mist in the mountainous parts. Winter throughout the province is mild and mostly frost free.

The revitilisation of the Tshivhase Tea Estate in the Vhembe District has reached a stage where rural people of Limpopo can proudly produce their own tea.

Industry and mining

Major international mining operations contribute 20% to Limpopo's economy, making mining the primary driver of economic activity. The province is also the world's largest producer of antimony, a strategic element used in alloys and medicine.

Limpopo is rich in mineral deposits, including platinum-group metals, iron ore, chromium, high- and middle-grading coking coal, diamonds, antimony, phosphate and copper, as well as mineral reserves such as gold, emeralds, scheelite, magnetite, vermiculite, silicon and mica. Base commodities such as black granite, corundum and feldspar are also found in the province.

The province is a typical developing area, exporting primary products and importing manufactured goods and services. It has high potential and capacity with appropriate economic development, and is an attractive location for investors. Resources such as tourism, rain-fed agriculture, minerals and an abundant labour force offer viable investment opportunities.

2010 World Cup

The Peter Mokaba Stadium in Polokwane will host five of the 2010 World Cup matches.

Following a major refurbishment, Polokwane International Airport was re-launched at the end of 2008, and has the capacity to cope with the expected influx of tourists to the region.

Acknowledgements

Original text by Theuns and Heila van Rensburg
Pan South African Language Board
Bulletin of Statistics (March 2004), published by Statistics South Africa
Labour Force Survey (March 2009), published by Statistics South Africa
Provincial Economies (May 2003), published by the Department of Trade and Industry
Community Survey 2007, published by Statistics South Africa
Mid-year Population Estimates, 2009, published by Statistics South Africa
www.capegateway.gov.za
www.cesa.org.za
www.cr/commission.org.za
http://cms.privatelabel.co.za
www.fs.gov.za
www.gauteng.net
www.gautengonline.gov.za
www.gdace.gpg.gov.za
www.geda.co.za
www.gov.za
www.inw.org.za
www.limpopo.gov.za
www.mpumalangainfotourism.info
www.nwpg.gov.za
www.pansalb.org.za
www.places.co.za
www.sacc.org.za
www.sa2010.gov.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sa-venues.com
www.southafrica.info
www.southafrica.net
www.tourismnorthwest.co.za
www.tradeinvestsa.co.za
www.yeboweb.co.za
www.zulu.org.za

Suggested reading

Balson, S. 2007. *Children of the Mist: The Lost Tribe of South Africa.* Queensland, Aust: Interactive Presentations.
Bonner, PL and Nieftagodien, N. 2008. *Alexandra: A History.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Brodie, N (ed). 2008. *The Joburg Book*. Northlands: Pan Macmillan South Africa.
Brown, D. 2007. *To Speak of this Land: Identity and Belonging in South Africa and Beyond.* Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Cadman, M. 2007. *South Africa: Exploring our Provinces.* Johannesburg: Jacana.
Calabrese, JA. 2007. *The Emergence of Social and Political Complexity in the Shashi-Limpopo Valley of Southern Africa, AD 900 – 1300: Ethnicity, Class and Polity.* Oxford: Archaeopress.
Chipkin, I. 2007. *Do South Africans Exist? Nationalism, Democracy and the Identity of the People.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Cuvelier, P (ed). 2007. *Multilingualism and Exclusion: Policy, Practice and Prospects.* Hatfield: Van Schaik.
De Villiers, B. 2007. *The Future of Provinces in South Africa: The Debate Continues*. Johannesburg: Konrad-Adenauer-Stiftung.
Delius, P (ed). 2007. *Mpumalanga: History and Heritage.* Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Denis, P and Ntsimane, R. 2008. *Oral History in a Wounded Country: Interactive Interviewing in South Africa.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Desai, A and Goolam V. 2007. *Inside Indenture: A South African Story 1860 – 1914.* Durban: Madiba Publishers.
Field, S, Meyer, R and Swanson, F (eds). 2007. *Imagining the City: Memories and Cultures of Cape Town*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press.
Forum for Religious Dialogue. Symposium (University of South Africa [Unisa]). 2008.
Goldblatt, D, Krog, A and Powell, I. 2007. *Some Afrikaners Revisited.* Cape Town.
Heath, GL. 2009. *A War with a Silver Lining: Canadian Protestant Churches and the South African War, 1899 – 1902*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.
Hewitt, R. 2008. *Structure, Meaning & Ritual in the Narratives of the Southern San*. 2nd ed. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Hollman, JC (ed). 2007. *Customs and Beliefs of the /Xam Bushmen.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Jenkins, E. 2007. *Falling into Place: The Story of Modern South African Place Names.* Cape Town: David Philips.
Jensen, S. 2008. *Gangs, Politics, & Dignity in Cape Town.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Jeppie, S. 2007. *Language, Identity, Modernity: The Arabic Study Circle of Durban.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Lewis, CA (ed). 2008. *Geomorphology of the Eastern Cape, South Africa.* 2nd ed. Grahamstown: NISC.
Marindo, R, Groenewald, C and Gaisie, S (eds). 2008. *The State of the Population in the Western Cape Province.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Martin, J. 2008. *A Millimetre of Dust: Visiting Ancestral Sites.* Cape Town: Kwela Books.
Mendelsohn, R and Shain, M. 2008. *The Jews in South Africa: An Illustrated History*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Motlhabi, MBG. 2008. *African Theology/Black Theology in South Africa: Looking Back, Moving on.* Pretoria: Unisa.
Murray, MJ. 2008. *Taming the Disorderly: The Spatial Landscape of Johannesburg after Apartheid*. Ithaca: Cornell University Press.
Ndebele, NS. 2007. *Fine Lines from the Box: Further Thoughts about our Country*. Roggebaai: Umuzi.
Nuttall, S and Mbembe, A (eds). 2008. Johannesburg: *The Elusive Metropolis.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Park, YJ. 2008. *A Matter of Honour: Being Chinese in South Africa.* Auckland Park: Jacana.
Pollak, JB. 2009. *The Kasrils Affair: Jews and Minority Politics in Post-Apartheid South Africa.* Cape Town: UCT Press.
Robbins, D. 2007. *On the Bridge of Goodbye: The Story of South Africa's Discarded San People.* Cape Town: Jonathan Ball.
Schadeberg, J. 2007. *Tales from Jozi: Photographs.* Edited by S Fraser. Pretoria: Protea Book House.
Waldman, L. 2007. *The Griqua Conundrum: Political and Socio-Cultural Identity in the Northern Cape*, *South Africa*. Oxford: Peter Lang.
Wauchope, IW. 2008. *Isaac Williams Wauchope: Selected Writings 1874 – 1916*. Edited and translated by J Opland and A Nyamende. Cape Town: Van Riebeeck Society.
Wittenberg, G. 2007. *Resistance Theology in the Old Testament: Collected Essays.* Pietermaritzburg: Cluster Publications.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

HISTORY

The early inhabitants

The discovery of the skull of a Taung child in 1924; discoveries of hominid fossils at Sterkfontein caves, a world heritage site; and the ground-breaking work done at Blombos Cave in the southern Cape, have all put South Africa at the forefront of palaeontological research into the origins of humanity. Modern humans have lived in the region for over 100 000 years.

The small, mobile bands of Stone-Age hunter-gatherers, who created a wealth of rock art, were the ancestors of the Khoikhoi and San of historical times. The Khoikhoi(n) and San (the "Hottentots" and "Bushmen" of early European terminology), although collectively known as the Khoisan, are often thought of as distinct peoples.

The former were those who, some 2 000 years ago, adopted a pastoralist lifestyle herding sheep and, later, cattle. Whereas the hunter-gatherers adapted to local environments and were scattered across the subcontinent, the herders sought out the pasturelands between modern-day Namibia and the Eastern Cape, which, generally, are near the coast. At around the same time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, bringing with them an Iron-Age culture and domesticated crops. After establishing themselves in the well-watered eastern coastal region of southern Africa, these farmers spread out across the interior plateau, or "highveld", where they adopted a more extensive cattle-farming culture.

Chiefdoms arose, based on control over cattle, which gave rise to systems of patronage and hence hierarchies of authority within communities.

Metallurgical skills, developed in the mining and processing of iron, copper, tin and gold, promoted regional trade and craft specialisation.

At several archaeological sites, such as Mapungubwe and Thulamela in the Limpopo Valley, there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures, based in part on contact with the East African trading economy. These cultures, which were part of a broader African civilisation, predate European encroachment by several centuries. Settlement patterns varied from the dispersed homesteads of the fertile coastal regions in the east, to the concentrated towns of the desert fringes in the west.

The farmers did not, however, extend their settlement into the western desert or the winter-rainfall region in the south-west. These regions remained the preserve of the Khoisan until Europeans put down roots at the Cape of Good Hope.

Currently, aided by modern science in uncovering the continent's past, which forms part of the African Renaissance, South Africa is gaining a greater understanding of its rich precolonial past.

The early colonial period

Portuguese seafarers, who pioneered the sea route to India in the late 15th century, were regular visitors to the South African coast during the early 1500s. Other Europeans followed from the late 16th century.

In 1652, the Dutch East India Company (VOC) set up a station in Table Bay (Cape Town) to provision passing ships. Trade with the Khoekhoe(n) for slaughter stock soon degenerated into raiding and warfare. Beginning in 1657, European settlers were allotted farms by the colonial authorities in the arable regions around Cape Town, where wine and wheat became the major products. In response to the colonists' demand for labour, the VOC imported slaves from East Africa, Madagascar, and its possessions from the East Indies.

By the early 1700s, the colonists had begun to spread into the hinterland beyond the nearest mountain ranges. These relatively independent and mobile farmers (trekboers), who lived as pastoralists and hunters, were largely free from supervision by the Dutch authorities.

As they intruded further upon the land and water sources, and stepped up their demands for livestock and labour, more and more of the indigenous inhabitants were dispossessed and incorporated into the colonial economy as servants.

Diseases such as smallpox, which was introduced by the Europeans in 1713, decimated the Khoisan, contributing to the decline of their cultures. Unions across the colour line took place and a new multiracial social order evolved, based on the supremacy of European colonists. The slave population steadily increased since more labour was needed. By the mid-1700s, there were more slaves in the Cape than there were "free burghers" (European colonists). The Asian slaves were concentrated in the towns, where they formed an artisan class. They brought with them the Islamic religion, which gained adherents and significantly shaped the working-class culture of the Western Cape. Slaves of African descent were found more often on the farms of outlying districts.

In the late 1700s, the Khoisan offered far more determined resistance to colonial encroachment across the length of the colonial frontier. From the 1770s, colonists also came into contact and conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy, first over the Khoisan and then over the Xhosa-speaking chiefdoms to the east.

It was only in the late 1800s that the subjugation of these settled African societies became feasible. For some time, their relatively sophisticated social structure and economic systems fended off decisive disruption by incoming colonists, who lacked the necessary military superiority.

At the same time, a process of cultural change was set in motion, not least by commercial and missionary activity. In contrast to the Khoisan, the black farmers were, by and large, immune to European diseases. For this and other reasons, they were to greatly outnumber the whites in the population of white-ruled South Africa, and were able to preserve important features of their culture.

Perhaps because of population pressures, combined with the actions of slave traders in Portuguese territory on the east coast, the Zulu kingdom emerged as a highly centralised state. In the 1820s, the innovative leader Shaka established sway over a considerable area of south-east Africa and brought many chiefdoms under his dominion.

As splinter groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the disruption was felt as far north as central Africa. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms, were established, partly for reasons of defence. The Mfecane or Difaqane, as this period of disruption and state formation became known, remains the subject of much speculative debate.

The British colonial era

In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, controlling the sea route to the East.

After a brief reversion to the Dutch in the course of the Napoleonic wars, it was retaken in 1806 and kept by Britain in the post-war settlement of territorial claims. The closed and regulated economic system of the Dutch period was swept away as the Cape Colony was integrated into the dynamic international trading empire of industrialising Britain.

A crucial new element was evangelicalism, brought to the Cape by Protestant missionaries. The evangelicals believed in the liberating effect of "free" labour and in the "civilising mission" of British imperialism. They were convinced that indigenous peoples could be fully assimilated into European Christian culture once the shackles of oppression had been removed.

The most important representative of the mission movement in South Africa was Dr John Philip, who arrived as superintendent of the London Missionary Society in 1819. His campaign on behalf of the oppressed Khoisan coincided with a high point in official sympathy for philanthropic concerns.

One result was Ordinance 50 of 1828, which guaranteed equal civil rights for "people of colour" within the colony and freed them from legal discrimination. At the same time, a powerful anti-slavery movement in Britain promoted a series of ameliorative measures, imposed on the colonies in the 1820s, and the proclamation of emancipation, which came into force in 1834. The slaves were subject to a four-year period of "apprenticeship" with their former owners, on the grounds that they must be prepared for freedom, which came on 1 December 1838.

Although slavery had become less profitable because of a depression in the wine industry, Cape slave-owners rallied to oppose emancipation.

The compensation money, which the British treasury paid out to sweeten the pill, injected unprecedented liquidity into the stagnant local economy. This brought a spurt of company formation, such as banks and insurance companies, as well as a surge of investment in land and wool sheep in the drier regions of the colony, in the late 1830s.

Wool became a staple export on which the Cape economy depended for its further development in the middle decades of the century.

For the ex-slaves, as for the Khoisan servants, the reality of freedom was very different from the promise. As a wage-based economy developed, they remained dispossessed and exploited, with little opportunity to escape their servile lot.

Increasingly, they were lumped together as the "coloured" people, a group which included the descendants of unions between indigenous and European peoples, and a substantial Muslim minority who became known as the "Cape Malays" (misleadingly, as they mostly came from the Indonesian archipelago).

The coloured people were discriminated against on account of their working-class status as well as their racial identity. Among the poor, especially

in and around Cape Town, there continued to be a great deal of racial mixing and intermarriage throughout the 1800s.

In 1820, several thousand British settlers, who were swept up by a scheme to relieve Britain of its unemployed, were placed in the eastern Cape frontier zone as a buffer against the Xhosa chiefdoms.

The vision of a dense settlement of small farmers was, however, ill-conceived and many of the settlers became artisans and traders. The more successful became an entrepreneurial class of merchants, large-scale sheep farmers and speculators with an insatiable demand for land.

Some became fierce warmongers who pressed for the military dispossession of the chiefdoms. They coveted Xhosa land and welcomed the prospect of war involving large-scale military expenditure by the imperial authorities. The Xhosa engaged in raiding as a means of asserting their prior claims to the land. Racial paranoia became integral to white frontier politics. The result was that frontier warfare became endemic through much of the 19th century, during which Xhosa war leaders such as Chief Maqoma became heroic figures to their people.

By the mid-1800s, British settlers of similar persuasion were to be found in Natal. They too called for imperial expansion in support of their land claims and trading enterprises.

Meanwhile, large numbers of the original colonists, the Boers, were greatly extending white occupation beyond the Cape's borders to the north, in the movement that became known as the Great Trek, in the mid-1830s. Alienated by British liberalism, and with their economic enterprise usurped by British settlers, several thousand Boers from the interior districts, accompanied by a number of Khoisan servants, began a series of migrations northwards.

They moved to the Highveld and Natal, skirting the great concentrations of black farmers on the way by taking advantage of the areas disrupted during the Mfecane.

When the British, who were concerned about controlling the traffic through Port Natal (Durban), annexed the territory of Natal in 1843, those emigrant Boers who had hoped to settle there returned inland. These Voortrekkers (as they were later called) coalesced in two land-locked republics, the South African Republic (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State. There, the principles of racially exclusive citizenship were absolute, despite the trekkers' reliance on black labour.

With limited coercive power, the Boer communities had to establish relations and develop alliances with some black chiefdoms, neutralising those who obstructed their intrusion or who posed a threat to their security.

Only after the mineral discoveries of the late 1800s did the balance of power swing decisively towards the colonists. The Boer republics then took on the trappings of real statehood and imposed their authority within the territorial borders that they had notionally claimed for themselves.

The Colony of Natal, situated to the south of the mighty Zulu State, developed along very different lines from the original colony of settlement, the Cape. The size of the black population left no room for the assimilationist vision of race domination embraced in the Cape. Chiefdoms consisting mainly of refugee groups in the aftermath of the Mfecane were persuaded to accept colonial protection in return for reserved land and the freedom to govern themselves in accordance with their own customs. These chiefdoms were established in the heart of an expanding colonial territory.

Natal developed a system of political and legal dualism, whereby chiefly rule was entrenched and customary law was codified. Although exemptions from customary law could be granted to the educated products of the missions, in practice they were rare. Urban residence was strictly controlled and political rights outside the reserves were effectively limited to whites. This system is widely regarded as having provided a model for the segregationism that would prevail in the 20th century.

Natal's economy was boosted by the development of sugar plantations in the subtropical coastal lowlands. Indian-indentured labourers were imported from 1860 to work the plantations, and many Indian traders and market gardeners followed. These Indians, who were segregated and discriminated against from the start, became a further important element in South Africa's population. It was in South Africa that Indian activist and leader, Mohandas Gandhi refined, from the mid-1890s, the techniques of passive resistance, which he later effectively practised in India. Although Indians gradually moved into the Transvaal and elsewhere, they remain concentrated in Natal.

In 1853, the Cape Colony was granted a representative legislature in keeping with British policy, followed in 1872 by self-government. The franchise was formally non-racial, but also based on income and property qualifications. The result

was that Africans and coloured people formed a minority of voters – although in certain places a substantial one.

What became known as the "liberal tradition" in the Cape depended on the fact that the great mass of Bantu-speaking farmers remained outside its colonial borders until late in the 19th century. Non-racialism could thus be embraced without posing a threat to white supremacy.

Numbers of Africans within the Cape Colony had sufficient formal education or owned enough property to qualify for the franchise. Political alliances across racial lines were common in the eastern Cape constituencies. It is therefore not surprising that the eastern Cape became a seedbed of African nationalism, once the ideal and promise of inclusion in the common society had been so starkly violated by later racial policies.

The mineral revolution

By the late 19th century, the limitations of the Cape's liberal tradition were becoming apparent. The hardening of racial attitudes that accompanied the rise of a more militant imperialist spirit coincided locally with the watershed discovery of mineral riches in the interior of southern Africa.

In a developing economy, cheap labour was at a premium, and the claims of educated Africans for equality met with increasingly fierce resistance.

At the same time, the large numbers of Africans in the chiefdoms beyond the Kei River and north of the Gariep (Orange River), then being incorporated into the Cape Colony, posed new threats to racial supremacy and white security, increasing segregationist pressures.

Alluvial diamonds were discovered on the Vaal River in the late 1860s. The subsequent discovery of dry deposits at what became the city of Kimberley drew tens of thousands of people, black and white, to the first great industrial hub in Africa, and the largest diamond deposit in the world. In 1871, the British, who ousted several rival claimants, annexed the diamond fields.

The Colony of Griqualand West thus created was incorporated into the Cape Colony in 1880. By 1888, the consolidation of diamond claims had led to the creation of the huge De Beers monopoly under the control of Cecil Rhodes. He used his power and wealth to become prime minister of the Cape Colony (from 1890 to 1896) and, through his chartered British South Africa Company, conqueror and ruler of modern-day Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The mineral discoveries had a major impact on the subcontinent as a whole. A railway network linking the interior to the coastal ports revolutionised transportation and energised agriculture. Coastal cities such as modern-day Cape Town, Port Elizabeth, East London and Durban experienced an economic boom as port facilities were upgraded.

The fact that the mineral discoveries coincided with a new era of imperialism and the scramble for Africa, brought imperial power and influence to bear in southern Africa as never before.

Independent African chiefdoms were systematically subjugated and incorporated by their white-ruled neighbours. In 1897, Zululand was incorporated into Natal.

The South African Republic (Transvaal) was annexed by Britain in 1877. Boer resistance led to British withdrawal in 1881, but not before the Pedi (northern Sotho) state, which fell within the republic's borders, had been subjugated. The indications were that, having once been asserted, British hegemony was likely to be reasserted.

The southern Sotho and Swazi territories were also brought under British rule but maintained their status as imperial dependencies, so that both the current Lesotho and Swaziland escaped the rule of local white regimes.

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in the history of South Africa. It presaged the emergence of the modern South African industrial state.

Once the extent of the reefs had been established, and deep-level mining had proved to be a viable investment, it was only a matter of time before Britain and its local representatives again found a pretext for war against the Boer republics of Transvaal and the Orange Free State.

The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants on the goldfields (known as uitlanders) provided a lever for applying pressure on the government of President Paul Kruger. Egged on by the deep-level mining magnates, to whom the Boer government seemed obstructive and inefficient, and by the expectation of an uitlander uprising, Rhodes launched a raid into the Transvaal in late December 1895. The raid's failure saw the end of Rhodes' political career, but Sir Alfred Milner, British high commissioner in South Africa from 1897, was determined to overthrow Kruger's government and establish British rule throughout the subcontinent. The Boer government was eventually forced into a declaration of war in October 1899.

The mineral discoveries had a radical impact on every sphere of society. Labour was required on a massive scale and could only be provided

by Africans, who had to be drawn away from the land.

Many Africans responded with alacrity to the opportunities presented by wage labour, travelling long distances to earn money to supplement rural enterprise in the homestead economy.

In response to the expansion of internal markets, Africans exploited their farming skills and family labour to good effect to increase production for sale. A substantial black peasantry arose, often by means of share-cropping or labour tenantry on white-owned farms.

For the white authorities, however, the chief consideration was ensuring a labour supply and undermining black competition on the land. Conquest, land dispossession, taxation and pass laws were designed to force black people off the land and channel them into labour markets, especially to meet the needs of the mines.

Gradually, the alternatives available to Africans were closed, and the decline of the homestead economy made wage labour increasingly essential for survival. The integration of Africans into the emerging urban and industrial society of South Africa should have followed these developments, but short-term, recurrent labour migrancy suited employers and the authorities, which sought to entrench the system.

The closed compounds pioneered on the diamond fields, as a means of migrant labour control, were replicated at the gold mines. The preservation of communal areas from which migrants could be drawn had the effect of lowering wages, by denying Africans rights within the urban areas and keeping their families and dependants on subsistence plots in the reserves.

Africans could be denied basic rights if the fiction could be maintained that they did not belong in "white South Africa", but to "tribal societies" from which they came to service the "white man's needs". Where black families secured a toehold in the urban areas, local authorities confined them to segregated "locations". This set of assumptions and policies informed the development of segregationist ideology and, later (from 1948), apartheid.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War (October 1899 to May 1902) and its aftermath

The war that followed the mineral revolution was mainly a white man's war.

In its first phase, the Boer forces took the initiative, besieging the frontier towns of Mafeking (Mafikeng) and Kimberley in the northern Cape, and Ladysmith in northern Natal.

Some colonial Boers rebelled, however, in sympathy with the republics. But, after a large expeditionary force under lords Roberts and Kitchener arrived, the British advance was rapid. Kruger fled the Transvaal shortly before Pretoria fell in June 1900. The formal conquest of the two Boer republics was followed by a prolonged guerrilla campaign. Small, mobile groups of Boers denied the imperial forces their victory by disrupting rail links and supply lines.

Commandos swept deep into colonial territory, rousing rebellion wherever they went. The British were at a disadvantage, owing to their lack of familiarity with the terrain and the Boers' superior skills as horsemen and sharpshooters. The British responded with a scorched-earth policy which included farm burnings, looting and the setting-up of concentration camps for non-combatants, in which some 26 000 Boer women and children died from disease. The incarceration of black (including coloured) people in the path of the war in racially segregated camps has been absent in conventional accounts of the war and has only recently been acknowledged.

They too suffered appalling conditions and some 14 000 (perhaps many more) are estimated to have died. At the same time, many black farmers were in a position to meet the demand for produce created by the military, or to avail themselves for employment opportunities at good wages. Some 10 000 black servants accompanied the Boer commandos, and the British used Africans as labourers, scouts, dispatch riders, drivers and guards.

The war also taught many Africans that the forces of dispossession could be rolled back if the circumstances were right. It gave black communities the opportunity to recolonise land lost in conquest, which enabled them to withhold their labour after the war. Most Africans supported the British in the belief that Britain was committed to extending civil and political rights to black people. In this they were to be disappointed, as in the Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the war, the British agreed to leave the issue of rights for Africans to be decided by a future self-governing (white) authority. All in all, the Anglo-Boer/South African War was a radicalising experience for Africans.

Britain's reconstruction regime set about creating a white-ruled dominion by uniting the former Boer republics (both by then British colonies) with Natal and the Cape.

The most important priority was to re-establish white control over the land and force the Africans back to wage labour. The labour-recruiting system was improved, both internally and externally.

Recruiting agreements were reached with the Portuguese authorities in Mozambique, from where much mine labour came.

When, by 1904, African resources still proved inadequate to get the mines working at pre-war levels, over 60 000 indentured Chinese were brought in. This precipitated a vociferous outcry from proponents of white supremacy in South Africa and liberals in Britain.

By 1910, all had been repatriated, a step made easier when a surge of Africans came forward from areas such as the Transkeian territories and the northern Transvaal, which had not previously been large-scale suppliers of migrants. This was the heyday of the private recruiters, who exploited families' indebtedness to procure young men to labour in the mines. The Africans' post-war ability to withhold their labour was undercut by government action, abetted by drought and stock disease.

The impact of the Anglo-Boer/South African War as a seminal influence on the development of Afrikaner nationalist politics became apparent in subsequent years.

The Boer leaders – most notably Louis Botha, Jan Smuts and JBM Hertzog – played a dominant role in the country's politics for the next half century. After initial plans for anglicisation of the defeated Afrikaners were abandoned as impractical, the British looked to the Afrikaners as collaborators in securing imperial political and economic interests.

During 1907 and 1908, the two former Boer republics were granted self-government but, crucially, with a whites-only franchise. Despite promises to the contrary, black interests were sacrificed in the interest of white nation-building across the white language divide. The National Convention drew up a constitution and the four colonies became an independent dominion called the Union of South Africa on 31 May 1910.

The 19th century's formally non-racial franchise was retained in the Cape but was not extended elsewhere, where rights of citizenship were confined to whites alone. It was clear from the start that segregation was the conventional wisdom of the new rulers. Black people were defined as outsiders, without rights or claims on the common society that their labour had helped to create.

Segregation

Government policy in the Union of South Africa did not develop in isolation, but against the backdrop of black political initiatives. Segregation and apartheid assumed their shape, in part, as a white response to Africans' increasing participation in the country's economic life and their assertion of political rights. Despite the government's efforts to shore up traditionalism and retribalise them, black people became more fully integrated into the urban and industrial society of 20th-century South Africa than elsewhere on the continent. An educated élite of clerics, teachers, business people, journalists and professionals grew to be a major force in black politics. Mission Christianity and its associated educational institutions exerted a profound influence on African political life, and separatist churches were early vehicles for African political assertion. The experiences of studying abroad, and in particular, interaction with black people struggling for their rights elsewhere in Africa, the United States of America and the Caribbean, played an important part. A vigorous black press arose, associated in its early years with such pioneer editors as JT Jabavu, Pixley Seme, Dr Abdullah Abdurahman, Sol Plaatje and John Dube, serving the black reading public.

At the same time, African communal struggles to maintain access to the land in rural areas posed a powerful challenge to the white state. Traditional authorities often led popular struggles against intrusive and manipulative policies. Government attempts to control and co-opt the chiefs often failed. Steps towards the formation of a national political organisation of coloureds began around the turn of the century, with the formation of the African Political Organisation in 1902 by Dr Abdurahman, mainly in the Cape Province.

The African National Congress (ANC), founded in 1912, became the most important black organisation drawing together traditional authorities and the educated African élite in common causes.

In its early years, the ANC was concerned mainly with constitutional protest.

Worker militancy emerged in the wake of the First World War and continued through the 1920s. It included strikes and an anti-pass campaign given impetus by women, particularly in the Free State, resisting extension of the pass laws to them. The Industrial and Commercial Workers' Union, under the leadership of Clements Kadalie, was (despite its name) the first populist, nationwide organisation representing blacks in rural as well as urban areas. But it was short-lived.

The Communist Party, formed in 1921 and since then a force for both non-racialism and worker organisations, was to prove far longer-lasting. In other sections of the black population too, the turn of the century saw organised opposition emerging. Gandhi's leadership of protest against

discriminatory laws gave impetus to the formation of provincial Indian congresses, including the Natal Indian Congress formed by Gandhi in 1894.

The principles of segregationist thinking were laid down in a 1905 report by the South African Native Affairs Commission and continued to evolve in response to these economic, social and political pressures. In keeping with its recommendations, the first union government enacted the seminal Natives Land Act in 1913.

This defined the remnants of their ancestral lands after conquest for African occupation, and declared illegal all land purchases or rent tenancy outside these reserves.

The reserves ("homelands" as they were subsequently called) eventually comprised about 13% of South Africa's land surface. Administrative and legal dualism reinforced the division between white citizen and black non-citizen, a dispensation personified by the governor-general who, as "supreme chief" over the country's African majority, was empowered to rule them by administrative fiat and decree.

The government also regularised the job colour bar, reserving skilled work for whites and denying African workers the right to organise. Legislation, which was consolidated in the Natives (Urban Areas) Act, 1923, entrenched urban segregation and controlled African mobility by means of pass laws. The pass laws were designed to force Africans into labour and to keep them there under conditions and at wage levels that suited white employers, and to deny them any bargaining power. In these and other ways, the foundations of apartheid were laid by successive governments representing the compromises hammered out by the National Convention of 1908 to 1909 to effect the union of English- and Afrikaans-speaking whites. However, divisions within the white community remained significant. Afrikaner nationalism grew as a factor in the years after union.

It was given impetus in 1914, both by the formation of the National Party (NP), in a breakaway from the ruling South African Party, and by a rebellion of Afrikaners who could not reconcile themselves with the decision to join the First World War against Germany.

In part, the NP spoke for Afrikaners impoverished by the Anglo-Boer/South African War and dislodged from the land by the development of capitalist farming.

An Afrikaner underclass was emerging in the towns, which found itself uncompetitive in the labour market, as white workers demanded higher wages than those paid to blacks.

Soon, labour issues came to the fore. In 1920, some 71 000 black mineworkers went on strike in protest against the spiralling cost of living, but the strike was quickly put down by isolating the compounds where the migrant workers were housed. Another threat to government came from white workers. Immigrant white workers with mining experience abroad performed much of the skilled and semi-skilled work on the mines. As mine owners tried to cut costs by using lower-wage black labour in semi-skilled jobs, white labour became increasingly militant. These tensions culminated in a bloody and dramatic rebellion on the goldfields in 1922, which the Smuts government put down with military force. In 1924, a pact government under Hertzog, comprising Afrikaner nationalists and representatives of immigrant labour, ousted the Smuts regime.

The pact was based on a common suspicion of the dominance of mining capital, and a determination to protect the interests of white labour by intensifying discrimination against blacks. The commitment to white labour policies in government employment, such as the railways and postal service, was intensified, and the job colour bar was reinforced, with a key objective being to address what was known as the "poor-white problem".

In 1934, the main white parties fused to combat the local effects of a worldwide depression.

This was followed by a new Afrikaner nationalist breakaway under Dr DF Malan. In 1936, white supremacy was further entrenched by the United Party with the removal of the Africans of the Cape Province who qualified, from the common voters' roll. Meanwhile, Malan's breakaway NP was greatly augmented by an Afrikaner cultural revival spearheaded by the secret white male Afrikaner Broederbond and other cultural organisations during the year of the Voortrekker centenary celebrations (1938), as well as by anti-war sentiment from 1939.

Apartheid

After the Second World War in 1948, the NP, with its ideology of apartheid that brought an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the segregationist policies of previous governments, won the general election. It did so against the background of a revival of mass militancy during the 1940s, after a period of relative quiescence in the 1930s when black groups attempted to foster unity among themselves.

The change was marked by the formation of the ANC Youth League in 1943, fostering the lead-

ership of figures such as Anton Lembede, AP Mda, Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu, who were to inspire the struggle for decades to come.

In the 1940s, squatter movements in peri-urban areas brought mass politics back to the urban centres. The 1946 Mineworkers' Strike was a turning point in the emergence of a politics of mass mobilisation.

As was the case with the First World War, the experience of the Second World War and post-war economic difficulties enhanced discontent. For those who supported the NP, its primary appeal lay in its determination to maintain white domination in the face of rising mass resistance; uplift poor Afrikaners; challenge the pre-eminence of English-speaking whites in public life, the professions and business; and abolish the remaining imperial ties.

The state became an engine of patronage for Afrikaner employment. The Afrikaner Broederbond coordinated the party's programme, ensuring that Afrikaner nationalist interests and policies attained ascendancy throughout civil society.

In 1961, the NP Government under Prime Minister HF Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic, after winning a whites-only referendum on the issue. A new currency, the Rand, and a new flag, anthem and coat of arms were formally introduced.

South Africa, having become a republic, had to apply for continued membership of the Commonwealth. In the face of demands for an end to apartheid, South Africa withdrew its application and a figurehead president replaced the British queen (represented locally by the governor-general) as head of state.

In most respects, apartheid was a continuation, in more systematic and brutal form, of the segregationist policies of previous governments.

A new concern with racial purity was apparent in laws prohibiting interracial sexual activities and provisions for population registration requiring that every South African be assigned to one discrete racial category or another.

For the first time, the coloured people, who had always been subjected to informal discrimination, were brought within the ambit of discriminatory laws. In the mid-1950s, government took the drastic step of overriding an entrenched clause in the 1910 Constitution of the Union so as to be able to remove coloured voters from the common voters' roll. It also enforced residential segregation, expropriating homes where necessary and policing massive forced removals into coloured "group areas".

Until the 1940s, South Africa's racial policies had not been entirely out of step with those to be found in the colonial world. But by the 1950s, which saw decolonisation and a global backlash against racism gather pace, the country was dramatically opposed to world opinion on questions of human rights. The architects of apartheid, among whom Dr Verwoerd was pre-eminent, responded by elaborating a theory of multinationalism.

Their policy, which they termed "separate development", divided the African population into artificial ethnic "nations", each with its own "homeland" and the prospect of "independence", supposedly in keeping with trends elsewhere on the continent.

This divide-and-rule strategy was designed to disguise the racial basis of official policy-making by the substitution of the language of ethnicity. This was accompanied by much ethnographic engineering as efforts were made to resurrect tribal structures. In the process, the government sought to create a significant collaborating class.

The truth was that the rural reserves were by this time thoroughly degraded by overpopulation and soil erosion. This did not prevent four of the "homeland" structures (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei) being declared "independent", a status which the vast majority of South Africans, and therefore also the international community, declined to recognise. In each case, the process involved the repression of opposition and the use by the government of the power to nominate and thereby pad elected assemblies with a quota of compliant figures.

Forced removals from "white" areas affected some 3,5 million people and vast rural slums were created in the homelands, which were used as dumping grounds. The pass laws and influx control were extended and harshly enforced, and labour bureaux were set up to channel labour to where it was needed. Hundreds of thousands of people were arrested or prosecuted under the pass laws each year, reaching over half a million a year from the mid-1960s to the mid-1970s. Industrial decentralisation to growth points on the borders of (but not inside) the homelands was promoted as a means of keeping blacks out of "white" South Africa.

In virtually every sphere, from housing to education to healthcare, central government took control over black people's lives with a view to reinforcing their allotted role as "temporary sojourners", wel-

come in "white" South Africa solely to serve the needs of the employers of labour. However, these same programmes of control became the focus of resistance. In particular, the campaign against the pass laws formed a cornerstone of the struggle.

The end of apartheid

The introduction of apartheid policies coincided with the adoption by the ANC in 1949 of its programme of action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s. The programme embodied the rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations. There followed a decade of turbulent mass action in resistance to the imposition of still harsher forms of segregation and oppression.

The Defiance Campaign of 1952 carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. These actions were influenced in part by the philosophy of Mohandas Gandhi.

A critical step in the emergence of non-racialism was the formation of the Congress Alliance, including the ANC; South African Indian Congress; the Coloured People's Congress; a small white congress organisation (the Congress of Democrats); and the South African Congress of Trade Unions.

The alliance gave formal expression to an emerging unity across racial and class lines that was manifested in the Defiance Campaign and other mass protests, including against the Bantu education of this period, which also saw women's resistance take a more organised character with the formation of the Federation of South African Women.

In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism. Over the next few decades, the Freedom Charter was elevated to an important symbol of the freedom struggle.

The Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC), founded by Robert Sobukwe and based on the philosophies of "Africanism" and anti-communism, broke away from the Congress Alliance in 1959.

The state's initial response, harsh as it was, was not yet as draconian as it was to become. Its attempt to prosecute more than 150 anti-apartheid leaders for treason, in a trial that began in 1956, ended in acquittals in 1961. But by that time, mass organised opposition had been banned.

Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960, when 69 anti-pass demonstrators were killed when police fired on a demonstration called by the PAC. A state of emergency was imposed and detention without trial was introduced.

The black political organisations were banned and their leaders went into exile or were arrested.

In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle, combined with underground organisation and mobilisation as well as mobilisation of international solidarity. Top leaders, including members of the newly formed military wing Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK) (Spear of the Nation), were arrested in 1963. In the "Rivonia Trial", eight ANC leaders, including Nelson Mandela, were convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge) and sentenced to life imprisonment.

In this period, leaders of other organisations, including the PAC and the New Unity Movement, were also sentenced to long terms of imprisonment and/or banned.

The 1960s was a decade of overwhelming repression and relative political disarray among blacks in the country. Armed action was contained by the state.

State repression played a central role in containing internal resistance, and the leadership of the struggle shifted increasingly to the missions in exile. At the same time, the ANC leadership embarked on a campaign to infiltrate the country through what was then Rhodesia.

In August 1967, a joint force of MK and the Zimbabwean People's Revolutionary Army (Zipra) of the Zimbabwe African People's Union entered Zimbabwe, and over a two-month period engaged the joint Rhodesian and South African security forces.

Although the joint MK-Zipra force failed to reach South Africa, this was the first military confrontation between the military forces of the ANC-led alliance and white security forces.

The resurgence of resistance politics from the early 1970s was dramatic. The Black Consciousness Movement, led by Steve Biko (who was killed in detention in 1977), reawakened a sense of pride and self-esteem in black people.

News of the brutal death of Biko reverberated around the globe and led to unprecedented outrage.

As capitalist economies sputtered with the oil crisis of 1973, black trade unions revived.

A wave of strikes reflected a new militancy that involved better organisation and was drawing new sectors, in particular intellectuals and the student movement, into mass struggle and debate over the principles informing it. Rallies at black universities in support of Frelimo, the Mozambican liberation movement, also gave expression to the growing militancy. The year 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. In June, school pupils of Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings all around the country. Despite the harsh repression that followed, students continued to organise, with the formation in 1979 of organisations for school students (Congress of South African Students) and college and university students (Azanian Students Organisation). By the 1980s, the different forms of struggle – armed struggle, mass mobilisation and international solidarity – were beginning to integrate and coalesce.

The United Democratic Front and the informal umbrella, the Mass Democratic Movement, emerged as legal vehicles of democratic forces struggling for liberation. Clerics played a prominent public role in these movements. The involvement of workers in resistance took on a new dimension with the formation of the Congress of South African Trade Unions and the National Council of Trade Unions.

Popular anger was directed against all those who were deemed to be collaborating with the government in the pursuit of its objectives, and the black townships became virtually ungovernable. From the mid-1980s, regional and national states of emergency were enforced.

Developments in neighbouring states, where mass resistance to white minority and colonial rule led to Portuguese decolonisation in the mid-1970s and the abdication of Zimbabwe's minority regime in 1980, left South Africa exposed as the last bastion of white supremacy.

Under growing pressure and increasingly isolated internationally, the government embarked on a dual strategy, introducing limited reform coupled with intensifying repression and militarisation of society, with the objective of containing the pressures and increasing its support base while crushing organised resistance.

An early example of reform was the recognition of black trade unions to try to stabilise labour relations. In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of Parliament.

The vast majority of these groups demonstrated their rejection of the tricameral dispensation through massive boycotts of elections, but it was kept in place by the apartheid regime despite its visible lack of legitimacy. Attempts to legitimise community councils as vehicles for the participation of Africans outside the Bantustans in local government met a similar fate.

Militarisation included the ascendancy of the State Security Council, which usurped the role of the executive in crucial respects, and a succession of states of emergency as part of the implementation of a comprehensive counter-insurgency strategy to combat what, by the mid-1980s, was an endemic insurrectionary spirit in the land.

However, by the late 1980s, popular resistance was taking the form of mass defiance campaigns, while struggles over more localised issues saw broad sections of communities mobilised in united action. Popular support for released political prisoners and for the armed struggle was being openly expressed.

In response to the rising tide of resistance, the international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause. Sanctions and boycotts were instituted, both unilaterally by countries across the world and through the United Nations (UN). These sanctions were called for in a coordinated strategy by the internal and external anti-apartheid movement in South Africa.

FW de Klerk, who replaced PW Botha as State President in 1989, announced at the opening of Parliament in February 1990 the unbanning of the liberation movements and release of political prisoners, among them, Nelson Mandela. A number of factors led to this step. International financial, trade, sport and cultural sanctions were clearly biting.

Above all, even if South Africa was nowhere near collapse, either militarily or economically, several years of emergency rule and ruthless repression had clearly neither destroyed the structures of organised resistance, nor helped establish legitimacy for the apartheid regime or its collaborators. Instead, popular resistance, including mass and armed action, was intensifying.

The ANC, enjoying popular recognition and legitimacy as the foremost liberation organisation, was increasingly regarded as a government-in-waiting.

International support for the liberation movement came from various countries around the globe, particularly from former socialist countries and Nordic countries as well as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM).

The other liberation organisations increasingly experienced various internal and external pressures and did not enjoy much popular support.

To outside observers, and also in the eyes of growing numbers of white South Africans, apartheid stood exposed as morally bankrupt, indefensible and impervious to reforms.

The collapse of global communism, the negotiated withdrawal of Cuban forces from Angola, and the culmination of the South-West African People's Organisation's liberation struggle in the negotiated independence of Namibia – formerly South-West Africa, administered by South Africa as a League of Nations mandate since 1919 – did much to change the mindset of white people. No longer could they demonise the ANC and PAC as fronts for international communism.

White South Africa had also changed in deeper ways. Afrikaner nationalism had lost much of its *raison d'être.* Many Afrikaners had become urban, middle class and relatively prosperous.

Their ethnic grievances and attachment to ethnic causes and symbols had diminished. A large part of the NP's core constituency was ready to explore larger national identities, even across racial divides, and yearned for international respectability.

In 1982, disenchanted hardliners split from the NP to form the Conservative Party, leaving the NP open to more flexible and modernising influences. After this split, factions within the Afrikaner élite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, causing more friction with the NP government, which became increasingly militaristic and authoritarian.

A number of business, student and academic Afrikaners held meetings publicly and privately with the ANC in exile. Secret talks were held between the imprisoned Mandela and government ministers about a new dispensation for South Africa, with blacks forming a major part of it.

Inside the country, mass action became the order of the day. Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and removed. Together with a sliding economy and increasing international pressure, these developments made historic changes inevitable.

The First Decade of Freedom

After a long negotiation process, sustained despite much opportunistic violence from the right wing and its surrogates, and in some instances sanctioned by elements of the state, South Africa's first democratic election was held in April 1994 under an interim Constitution.

The interim Constitution divided South Africa into nine new provinces in place of the previous four provinces and 10 "homelands", and provided for the Government of National Unity to be constituted by all parties with at least 20 seats in the National Assembly.

The ANC emerged from the election with a 62% majority. The main opposition came from the NP, which gained 20% of the vote nationally, and a majority in the Western Cape. The Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) received 10% of the vote, mainly in its KwaZulu-Natal base. The NP and the IFP formed part of the Government of National Unity until 1996, when the NP withdrew. The ANC-led Government embarked on a programme to promote the reconstruction and development of the country and its institutions.

This called for the simultaneous pursuit of democratisation and socio-economic change, as well as reconciliation and the building of consensus founded on the commitment to improve the lives of all South Africans, in particular the poor. It required the integration of South Africa into a rapidly changing global environment.

Pursuit of these objectives was a consistent focus of government during the First Decade of Freedom, seeking the unity of a previously divided society in working together to overcome the legacy of a history of division, exclusion and neglect.

Converting democratic ideals into practice required, among other things, initiating a radical overhaul of the machinery of government at every level, working towards service delivery, openness and a culture of human rights. It has required a more integrated approach to planning and implementation to ensure that the many different aspects of transformation and socio-economic upliftment cohere with maximum impact.

A significant milestone in the democratisation of South Africa was the exemplary Constitution-making process, which in 1996 delivered a document that has evoked worldwide admiration. So too have been the elections subsequent to 1994 – all conducted peacefully, with high levels of participation compared with the norm in most democracies, and accepted by all as free and fair in their conduct and results. Local government elections during 1995 and 1996, and then again in 2000 after the transformation of the municipal system, gave the country its first democratically elected non-racial municipal authorities.

Since 2001, participatory democracy and interactive governance have been strengthened through the practice of public participation, rov-

ing executive council and mayoral meetings, in which members of the Executive, in all three spheres of government, including The Presidency, regularly engage directly with the public around implementation of programmes of reconstruction and development.

The second democratic national election in 1999 saw the ANC majority increase to just short of two thirds and the election of Mr Thabo Mbeki as president and successor to Mr Mandela. It saw a sharp decline of the NP (then the New National Party [NNP]) and its replacement by the Democratic Party as the official opposition in Parliament. These two parties formed the Democratic Alliance (DA), which the NNP left in 2001.

The Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC), under the leadership of Archbishop Desmond Tutu, helped inculcate a commitment to accountability and transparency in South Africa's public life, at the same time helping to heal wounds inflicted by the inhumanities of the apartheid era.

During 2003, Parliament accepted the Government's response to the final report of the TRC. Out of 22 000 individuals or surviving families appearing before the commission, 19 000 were identified as needing urgent reparation assistance – virtually all, where the necessary information was available, received interim reparations.

As final reparations, government provided a once-off grant of R30 000 to individuals or survivors who appeared before and were designated by the TRC, over and above the programmes for material assistance. There are continuing programmes to project the symbolism of the struggle and the ideal of freedom. These include the Freedom Park and other symbols and monuments, and such matters as records of history, remaking of cultural and art forms and changing geographical and place names.

The ethos of partnership informed the establishment of the National Economic Development and Labour Council. It brings together government, business, organised labour and development organisations to confront the challenges of growth and development for South Africa in a turbulent and globalising international economy.

The Presidential Jobs Summit in 1998 and the Growth and Development Summit (GDS) in June 2003 brought these sectors together to collectively take advantage of the conditions in South Africa for faster growth and development.

At the GDS, a comprehensive set of agreements was concluded to address urgent challenges in a practical way and to speed up job-creating growth and development.

Partnership between government and civil society was further strengthened by the creation of a number of working groups through which sectors of society – business, organised labour, higher education, religious leaders, youth and women – engage regularly with the President.

In the First Decade of Freedom, government placed emphasis on meeting basic needs through programmes for socio-economic development such as the provision of housing, piped water, electricity, education and healthcare, as well as social grants for those in need.

Another priority was the safety and security of citizens, which required both transforming the police into a service working with the community, and overcoming grave problems of criminality and a culture of violence posed by the social dislocations inherited from the past.

Key economic objectives included job creation, poverty eradication, reduction of inequality and overall growth. There was much progress in rebuilding the economy, in particular with the achievement of macroeconomic stability and the initiation of programmes of microeconomic reform. By the end of 2004, growth was accelerating and there were signs of the beginnings of a reduction in unemployment.

The integration of South Africa into the global political, economic and social system has been a priority for democratic South Africa. As a country isolated during the apartheid period, an African country, a developing country, and a country whose liberation was achieved with the support of the international community, it remains of critical importance to build political and economic links

The United Nations (UN) has declared 18 July "Nelson Mandela International Day", in recognition of the former South African President's contribution to global peace and freedom.

The resolution to commemorate Mandela's long-standing commitment to promoting conflict resolution, race relations, human rights, reconciliation and gender equality, was adopted by the 192-member UN General Assembly in November 2009.

Nelson Mandela International Day will be observed annually on 18 July, Mandela's birthday, starting in 2010, when the former anti-apartheid leader will turn 92 years old.

By adopting the resolution, the UN expressed its appreciation for a great man who had suffered for the sake of people everywhere. He inspires people across the world, and across the generations.

with the countries and regions of the world, and to work with others for an international environment more favourable to development across the world, and in Africa and South Africa in particular.

The South African Government is committed to the African Renaissance, which is based on the consolidation of democracy, economic development and a cooperative approach to resolving the challenges the continent faces.

South Africa hosted the launch in 2002 of the African Union (AU), a step towards further unification of Africa in pursuit of socio-economic development, the Organisation of African Unity having fulfilled its mandate to liberate Africa. President Mbeki chaired the AU for its founding year, handing over the chair to President Joaquim Chissano of Mozambique in July 2003.

In 2004, the AU decided that South Africa should host the Pan-African Parliament and it met for its second session in South Africa, the first time on South African soil, in September of that year.

By participating in UN and AU initiatives to resolve conflict and promote peace and security on the continent – in among other countries, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Burundi and Sudan – South Africa has contributed to the achievement of conditions conducive to the entrenchment of stability, democracy and faster development.

Democratic South Africa has played an active role in international and multilateral organisations. During the First Decade of Freedom, it acted at various times as chair of the Southern African Development Community (SADC), NAM, AU and the Commonwealth Heads of Government meetings. It has played host to several international conferences, including the UN Conference on Trade and Development in 1996, the 2000 World AIDS Congress, World Conference Against Racism in 2001, World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002, and the World Parks Congress in 2003. The country has also been represented on international forums such as the International Monetary Fund's Development Committee and Interpol.

Through the New Partnership for Africa's Development, the development programme of the AU, South Africa continues to work with the rest of the continent and its partners in the industrialised world for the development and regeneration of the African continent.

Into the Second Decade of Freedom

When South Africa celebrated 10 years of freedom in 2004, there were celebrations across the world in countries whose peoples had helped to bring freedom to South Africa through their solidarity, and who today are partners in reconstruction and development.

As government took stock of the First Decade of Freedom in *Towards a Ten Year Review,* it was able to document great progress by South Africans in pursuit of their goals, as well as the challenges that face the nation as it traverses the second decade of its freedom towards 2014.

In its third democratic elections, in April 2004, the country gave an increased mandate to the Government's programme for reconstruction and development and for the entrenchment of the rights inscribed in the Constitution. It mandated government specifically to create the conditions for halving unemployment and poverty by 2014. Following these elections, Thabo Mbeki was appointed to a second term of office as President of South Africa – a position he relinquished in September 2008, following the decision of the National Executive Committee of the ANC to recall him. Parliament elected Kgalema Motlanthe as President of South Africa on 25 September 2008.

Local government elections in 2006, following a long period of civic unrest as communities protested against a mixed record of service delivery, saw increased participation compared with the previous local elections, as well as increased support for the ruling party based on a manifesto for a concerted effort, in partnership with communities, to make local government work better.

One of the key developments in the Second Decade of Freedom has been the development of AsgiSA, the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa, by government together with its social partners, to raise the trajectory of growth to an average of at least 6% between 2010 and 2014. Despite the international economic turmoil which prevailed in 2008 and 2009, the country's economic policies have placed it in good stead to weather the global economic slow-down.

In 2007, government released for the first time, a set of *Development Indicators* that reflected progress in establishing a government-wide monitoring and evaluation system. The data was compiled by the Policy Coordination and Advisory Services in The Presidency, working with clusters and departments, using official statistics and research by other local and international institutions. These indicators, again released in 2008, show some of the strides government has made in improving the lives of South Africans. Overall, these indicators showed pogress, particularly in

improving access to basic services, the provision of healthcare and housing, growing the economy and expanding social benefits to reach the poor.

The *15 Year Review,* which was released in 2008 assessed the overall progress made since democracy and again reinforced that while much progress had been achieved, many challenges remained and that newer ones also arose.

South Africa held national and provincial elections to elect a new National Assembly as well as the provincial legislature in each province on 22 April 2009. A few landmark developments occurred in the administration of this general election – the Pretoria High Court ruled on 9 February 2009 that South African citizens living abroad should be allowed to vote in elections. The judgment was confirmed by the Constitutional Court on 12 March 2009, when it decided that overseas voters who were already registered would be allowed to vote. Also, registered voters who found themselves outside their registered voting districts on election day were permitted to vote for the national ballot at any voting station in South Africa. Some 23 million people were registered for the 2009 general election, which were about 2,5 million more than in 2004. About 77% of registered voters took part in the election. The results for the top five parties were as follows: the ANC achieved 65,9%, the DA 16,6%, the newly-formed Congress of the People 7,4%, the IFP 4,5% and the Independent Democrats 0,9% of the votes cast.

Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009. Shortly thereafter, President Zuma announced several changes to current government departments and the creation of new structures within The Presidency. The latter essentially comprises the Ministry for Performance Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration and the National Planning Ministry, in keeping with the new administration's approach to intensify government delivery through an outcomes-based approach, coupled with a government-wide monitoring and evaluation system.

A significant milestone for South Africa in the Second Decade of Freedom is the hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. This extensive project, into which government is investing billions of rands, not only to host a world-class tournament but also to kick-start a massive boost for development in the country that will benefit the people of South Africa and the continent, saw major progress being made in 2009. By the end of 2009, government was on track to ensure that its guarantees to FIFA will be fulfilled by 2010 with a successful Confederations Cup hosted in June 2009 and the FIFA World Cup Final Draw held in December 2009, affirming that the country is ready to host the tournament.

South Africa has continued to build on its international profile. In 2006, South Africa assumed the chair of the G77 and was elected to serve a two-year period from January 2007 as a non-permanent member of the UN Security Council. In 2008, South Africa assumed the chair of the SADC out of which came significant progress in the establishment of a SADC Free Trade Area Agreement.

By 2008, South Africa had established 124 missions throughout the world and it continues to play a big role in conflict resolution on the continent, particularly in Zimbabwe and the DRC.

Acknowledgement

This chapter has evolved year by year, based on initial text from the Institute for Historical Research, University of the Western Cape.

Suggested reading

500 Year Initiative (Group). Conference (University of the Witwatersrand). 2008. *Five Hundred Years Rediscovered: Southern African Precedents and Prospects.* Edited by N Swanepoel, A Esterhuysen and P Bonner. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

African Historical Review. 2007. Pretoria: University of South Africa (Unisa) Press. (Periodical).

Anderson, MRD. 2008. *Blue Berg: Britain Takes the Cape: An Account of the 1806 Battle of Blaauwberg and the Participants as well as the Causes Leading up to this, the Second Occupation of the Cape by the British.* South Africa: MRD Anderson.

Anthonissen, C (ed). 2007. *Discourse and Human Rights Violations.* Philadelphia: John Benjamins Pub.

Baines, G and Vale, P (eds). 2008. *Beyond the Border War: New Perspectives on Southern Africa's Late-Cold War Conflicts.* Pretoria: University of South Africa (Unisa) Press.

Batley, K, Liebenberg, I, Allais, C and Du Plessis, T (eds). 2007. *A Secret Burden: Memories of the Border War by South African Soldiers Who Fought it.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.

Berger, I. 2009. *South Africa in World History.* New York: Oxford University Press.

Bolsmann, EH. 2008. *French Footprints in South Africa.* Pretoria: Be My Guest Publishers.

Bonner, P, Esterhuysen and Jenkins, T (eds). 2007. *A Search for Origins: History of South Africa's Cradle of Humankind.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Boraine, A. 2008. *A Life in Transition.* Cape Town: Zebra Press.

Botes, L. 2007. *The Cauldron of Local Protests: Reasons, Impacts and Lessons Learned.* Bloemfontein: Centre for Development Support, University of the Free State.

Botes, L. 2007. *The New Struggle: Service Delivery-Related Unrest in South Africa: Two Case Studies.* Bloemfontein: Centre for Development Support, University of the Free State.

Butler, A. 2007. *Cyril Ramaphosa*. Johannesburg: Jacana.

Carlin, J. 2008. *Playing the Enemy: Nelson Mandela and the Game that Made a Nation.* London: Atlantic.

Coetzee, J. 2007. *A Treasury of Stories from the Early Cape.* Stellenbosch: Rapid Access.

Connell, D. 2008. *Old Wrongs, New Rights: Student Views of the New South Africa.* Trenton, NJ: Africa World Press.

Cox, KR. 2008. *South Africa and the Long History of Globalization*. London: Routledge.

Deléage, P. 2008. *End of a Dynasty: The Last Days of The Prince Imperial, Zululand 1897*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

Desai, A and Vahed, G. 2007. *Inside Identiture: A South African Story, 1860 – 1914.* Durban: Madiba Publishers.

Dooling, W. 2008. *Slavery, Emancipation and Colonial Rule in South Africa.* Athens: Ohio University Press.

Dowden, R. 2009. *Africa: Altered States, Ordinary Miracles.* New York: Public Affairs.

Doxtader, E. 2009. *With Faith in the Works of Words: The Beginnings of Reconciliation in South Africa, 1985 – 1995*. East Lansing: Michigan State University Press.

Du Preez, M. 2008. *Of Tricksters, Tyrants and Turncoats: More Unusual Stories from South Africa's Past.* Cape Town: Zebra Press.

Ecott, T. 2008. *Stealing Water.* London: Sceptre.

Eglin, C. 2007. *Crossing the Borders of Power: The Memoirs of Colin Eglin*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball.

Farley, J. 2008. *Southern Africa.* London: Routledge.

From Apartheid to Democracy: Localities and Liberation. 2007. Cape Town: Department of Historical Studies, University of Cape Town.

Gasa, N (ed). 2007. *Women in South African History: They Remove Boulders and Cross Rivers = Basus'iimbokodo, Bawel'imilambo.* Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press.

Geldenhuys, J. 2009. *At the Front: A General's Account of South Africa's Border War.* Jeppestown: Jonathan Ball.

Gevisser, M. 2007. *Thabo Mbeki: The Dream Deferred.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Gilomee, H and Mbenga, B (eds). 2007. *New History of South Africa.* Cape Town: Tafelberg.
Golightly, W. 2007. *Amazulu: Being the Many Divers Adventures of the Induna & The Boy Among the People of the Sky in the Time of Shaka Kasenzangakhona, King of Kings.* Cape Town: Kwela Books.
Great People, Great Places. 2009. Auckland Park: Jacana.
Green, P. 2008. *Choice and Fate: The Life and Times of Trevor Manuel.* Johannesburg: Penguin Books.
Hadland, A. 2007. *Mandela: A Life.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Hamilton, C, Mbenga, B and Ross, R (eds). 2009. *The Cambridge History of South Africa.* New York: Cambridge University Press.
Hassim, S, Kupe, T and Worby, E (eds). 2008. *Go Home or Die Here: Violence, Xenophobia and the Reinvention of Difference in South Africa.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Heunis, J. 2007. *The Inner Circle: Reflections on the Last Days of White Rule.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Huigen, S. 2009. *Knowledge and Colonialism: Eighteenth Century Travellers in South Africa.* Leiden: Brill.
Jeeves, A and Cuthbertson, G (eds). 2008. *Fragile Freedom: South Africa Democracy 1994 – 2004.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Johnson, RW. 2009. *South Africa's Brave New World: The Beloved Country Since the End of Apartheid.* London: Allen Lane.
Jooste, R. 2007. *Counting the Booty.* (Video recording). Johannesburg: KIKA Creative Communications.
Joyce, P. 2007. *The Making of a Nation: South Africa's Road to Freedom.* Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Kaarsholm, P (ed). 2007. *Violence, Political Culture and Development in Africa.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal.
Kadalie, R. 2009. *In Your Face: Passionate Conversations about People and Politics.* Cape Town: Tafelberg.
Kathrada, AM and Couzens, T. 2008. *A Simple Freedom: The Strong Mind of Robben Island Prisoner, No. 468/64.* Highlands North: Wild Dog Press.
Korff, G. 2009. *19 With A Bullet: A South African Paratrooper in Angola.* Johannesburg: 30° South.
Laband, M (ed). 2007. *Daily Lives of Civilians in Wartime Africa: From Slavery Days to Rwandan Genocide.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Le Roux, W and Van Marle, K (eds). 2007. *Law, Memory and the Legacy of Apartheid: Ten Years After AZAPO V. President of South Africa.* Pretoria: Pretoria University Law Press.
Legassick, M. 2007. *Towards Socialist Democracy.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Lipton, M. 2007. *Liberals, Marxists and Nationalists: Competing Interpretations of South African History.* New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
MacKenzie, JM and Dalziel, NR. 2007. *The Scots in South Africa: Ethnicity, Identity, Gender and Race, 1772 – 1914.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Magoon, K. 2008. *Nelson Mandela: A Leader for Freedom.* Edina, Minn: ABDO Pub Co.
Marx, C. 2008. *Oxwagon Sentinel: Radical Afrikaner Nationalism and the History of the Ossewabrandwag.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Mendelsohn, R and Milton S. 2008. *Jews in South Africa: An Illustrated History.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Meredith, M. 2007. *Diamonds, Gold and War: The Making of South Africa.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Miller, SM. 2007. *Volunteers on the Veld: Britain's Citizen-Soldiers and the South African War, 1899 – 1902.* Norman: University of Oklahoma Press.
Mitchell, LJ. 2009. *Belongings: Property, Family and Identity in Colonial South Africa (An Exploration of Frontiers, 1725 – C. 1830).* New York: Columbia University Press.
Mngxitama, A, Alexander, A and Gibson, NC (eds). 2008. *Biko Lives! Contesting the Legacies of Steve Biko.* New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
Muiu, Mueni Wa. 2008. *The Pitfalls of Liberal Democracy and Late Nationalism in South Africa.* New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
Murray, N, Shepherd, N and Hall, M (eds). 2007. *Desire Lines: Space, Memory and Identity in the Post-Apartheid City.* London: Routledge.

Myers, JC. 2008. *Indirect Rule in South Africa: Tradition, Modernity, and the Costuming of Political Power.* Rochester, NY: University of Rochester Press.
Nasson, B. 2007. *Springboks on the Somme: South Africa in the Great War 1914 – 1918.* Johannesburg: Penguin.
Ng~ug~i wa Thiong'o. 2009. *Something Torn and New: An African Renaissance.* New York: BasicCivitas Books.
O'Malley, P. 2008. *Shades Of Difference: Mac Maharaj and the Struggle for South Africa.* New York: Viking.
Paging Through History. 2007. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Peires, J. 2008. *Ruling by Race: Nazi Germany and Apartheid South Africa.* (Rev ed). Cape Town: Juliette Peires.
Pohlandt-McCormick, H. 2007. *What Have We Done? South Africa Since 1989*. London: Zed.
Potgieter, D. 2007. *Total Onslaught: Apartheid's Dirty Tricks Exposed.* Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Pottinger, B. 2008. *The Mbeki Legacy.* Cape Town: Struik.
Price, R. 2008. *Making Empire: Colonial Encounters and the Creation of Imperial Rule in Nineteenth-Century Africa.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
The Road to Democracy in South Africa. 2006 – 2008. Pretoria: Unisa.
Ross, R. 2008. *A Concise History of South Africa.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Russell, A. 2009. *After Mandela: The Battle for the Soul of South Africa.* London: Hutchinson.
Samuelson, M. 2007. *Remembering the Nation, Dismembering Women? Stories of South African Transition.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Scanlon, H. 2007. *Repression and Reality: Portraits of Women's Lives in the Western Cape 1948 – 1976.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Shaw, G. 2007. *Believe in Miracles: South Africa from Malan to Mandela and the Mbeki Era: A Reporter's Story.* Cape Town: Ampersand Press.
Schoeman, K. 2007. *Early Slavery at the Cape of Good Hope, 1652 – 1717.* Pretoria: Protea Boekhuis.
Shell, R. 2007. *Changing Hands.* (CD-ROM). Gardens: Ancestry24.
Shell, RC-H, Rowoldt Shell, S and Kamedien, M. 2007. *Bibliographies of Bondage: Selected Bibliographies of South African Slavery and Abolition.* Cape Town: Nagspro Multimedia.
Stolten, HE. 2007. *History Making and Present Day Politics: The Meaning of Collective Memory in South Africa.* Uppsala: Nordiske Afrikainstituut.
Storey, WK. 2008. *Guns, Race and Power in Colonial South Africa.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Suttner, R. 2008. *The ANC Underground in South Africa to 1976: A Social and Historical Study.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
Thompson, JL. 2007. *Forgotten Patriot: A Life of Alfred, Viscount Milner of St James's and Cape Town, 1854 – 1925.* Madison, NJ: Fairleigh Dickinson University Press.
Thörn, H. 2009. *Anti-Apartheid and the Emergence of a Global Civil Society.* Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.
Van Onselen, C. 2007. *The Fox and the Flies: The World of Joseph Silver, Racketeer and Psychopath.* Johannesburg: Random House.
Van der Westhuizen, C. 2007. *White Power & the Rise and Fall of the National Party.* Cape Town: Zebra Press
Voices of Anger: Phumelela and Khutsong: Protest and Conflict in Two Municipalities. 2007. Johannesburg: Centre for Development and Enterprise.
Wallace, J and Dorosz, M. 2008. *Knowing no Fear: The Canadian Scouts in South Africa 1900 – 1902.* Victoria, BC: Trafford.
Wenzel, J. 2009. *Bulletproof: Afterlives of Anticolonial Prophecy in South Africa and Beyond.* Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
Wilson, MH. 2009. *Reaction to Conquest: Effects of Contact with Europeans on the Pondo of South Africa.* (New ed). Berlin: Lit.
Worden, N. 2007. *The Making of Modern South Africa: Conquest, Apartheid, Democracy.* Malden, MA: Blackwell Pub.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES

Following the general election in 2009, a new administration took over that saw several changes to government. These included, among other things, adding the functions of fisheries and forestry to the Department of Agriculture.

Agricultural economy

About 8,5 million people are directly or indirectly dependent on agriculture for employment and income. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is responsible for production and resource management; agricultural support services; trade and economic development; food safety and biosecurity; forestry; and marine aquaculture.

The total contribution of agriculture to the economy increased from R38 billion in 2002 to R68 billion in 2008. South Africa's dual agricultural economy comprises a well-developed commercial sector and a predominantly subsistence-oriented sector in the rural areas.

About 12% of South Africa's surface area can be used for crop production. High-potential arable land comprises only 22% of total arable land. Some 1,3 million ha are under irrigation. This amounts to about 1,5% of South Africa's agricultural land.

The most important factor limiting agricultural production is the availability of water. Rainfall is distributed unevenly across the country. Almost 50% of South Africa's water is used for agricultural purposes.

The country can be subdivided into a number of farming regions according to climate, natural vegetation, types of soil and the type of farming practised.

Agricultural activities range from intensive crop production and mixed farming in winter-rainfall and high summer-rainfall areas, to cattle ranching in the bushveld and sheep farming in the more arid regions. Owing to its geographical location, some parts of South Africa are prone to drought.

Primary commercial agriculture contributes about 3% to South Africa's gross domestic product (GDP) and about 7% to formal employment. However, there are strong backward and forward linkages into the economy, so that the agro-industrial sector is estimated to comprise about 12% of GDP.

Although South Africa has the ability to be self-sufficient in virtually all major agricultural products, the rate of growth in exports has been slower than that of imports.

The only increase in agricultural export volumes occurred during the period of exchange-rate depreciation in 2002 and came to about nine million tons (mt). Major import products include wheat, rice, oil cakes, vegetable oils and poultry meat.

Despite the farming industry's declining share of GDP, it remains vital to the economy and the development and stability of the southern African region.

For the past five years, agricultural exports have contributed on average about 6,5% of total South African exports. Exports increased from 5% (1988) to 33% (2008) of agricultural production. However, South Africa is losing on its net trade balance on processed goods, owing to the growth in imports of processed goods. The estimated value of imports in 2008 came to R38,4 billion, while exports totalled R44,3 billion in 2008.

The largest export groups are wine, citrus, sugar, grapes, fruit juice, wool and deciduous fruit such as apples, pears and quinces. Other important export products are non-alcoholic beverages, avocados, pineapples, groundnuts, preserved fruit and nuts, as well as hides and skins.

Genetically modified organisms (GMOs)

The GMO Act, 1997 (Act 15 of 1997), which was implemented on 1 December 1999, provides for the regulation of GMO activities in South Africa, particularly that biosafety assessments should be conducted for every proposed GMO activity.

It defines genetic modification (GM) as the development of an organism of which the genes or genetic material has been modified in a way that does not occur naturally. In terms of the Act, permits are issued for a specific GMO activity, such as trials for commercial release in the country. The permits may also specify conditions under which a particular activity with GMOs should take place.

The objective of the Act is to promote the responsible application of GMOs in South Africa without impacting negatively on human or animal health, the environment or biodiversity. In terms of the GMO Act, 1997, the Advisory Committee (AC), comprising scientific experts, evaluates risk assessments to determine if a particular GMO is safe for humans, animals and the environment.

Gross value of agricultural production, 2008 (R'000)

Field crops	
Maize	18 592 005
Wheat	4 759 004
Hay	2 483 645
Grain sorghum	458 224
Sugar cane	4 118 551
Groundnuts	675 156
Tobacco	194 742
Sunflower seed	3 320 212
Cotton	113 077
Other	2 608 718
Total	**37 323 334**
Horticulture	
Viticulture	3 037 520
Citrus fruit	5 406 395
Subtropical fruit	1 843 832
Deciduous and other fruit	6 931 413
Vegetables	5 749 887
Potatoes	3 491 404
Other	1 656 145
Total	**28 116 596**
Animal products	
Wool	1 499 505
Poultry and poultry products	22 489 165
Cattle and cattle products	12 218 500
Sheep and goats slaughtered	2 818 915
Pigs slaughtered	2 592 813
Milk	9 279 426
Other	2 577 268
Total	**53 475 592**
Grand total	**118 915 522**

Source: Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
Directorate: Agricultural Statistics

The Executive Council (EC) consists of members from six government departments, namely agriculture, forestry and fisheries; health; environmental affairs; science and technology; trade and industry; and labour; and the chairperson of the AC. The EC considers the recommendations of the AC, comments from members of the public or interested parties, and compliance with various policies before taking a decision to permit or exclude an activity or not.

South Africa has commercialised three different GM crops, namely maize, cotton and soya beans.

In 2008, white GM maize plantings totalled 891 000 ha, a decrease of 14% compared to 2007, representing a market share of about 56%; yellow maize plantings totalled 724 000 ha, an increase of 21% compared to 2007, representing 72% of the total yellow maize crop; GM soya-bean plantings increased to 184 000 ha, representing 80% of the total soya-bean crop; and GM cotton plantings increased to 12 000 ha, representing 90% of the total cotton crop.

Sustainable resource management and use

South Africa is generally able to meet its own food requirements. The Agricultural Research Council's (ARC) Institute for Soil, Climate and Water has compiled an inventory of soils, terrain forms and climate (land types). The *National Land Type Survey* assists and informs land-use planning and decision-making at national level. All natural-resource information is integrated into the comprehensive Agricultural Geo-Referenced Information System (AGIS) that is accessible via the Internet.

The AGIS also has information on agricultural potential and land capability.

Although it is generally recognised that soil degradation is a problem, little reliable data has been collected systematically over time. Soil degradation is largely related to the decline in soil organic matter.

Monoculture cereal production, intensive tillage, short-to-no fallow periods and limited crop rotation have contributed to this in the commercial sector.

Excessive fuel-wood collection, inappropriate land use, population density and overgrazing are the main causes of soil degradation in communal areas. In addition, it is estimated that about 60% of the cropland area is moderately to severely acidic, and probably at least 15% is affected by subsoil acidity. The Agricultural Fires Information System that tracks all outbreaks of fire in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region, has been implemented and can be viewed at *www.agis.agric.za*.

Soil degradation

It is calculated that the area of land with a high to extremely high erosion risk totals 1,5 million ha (around 1% of the land surface). More than 11 million ha (9%) are classified as having a moderate erosion risk and 17% is classified as very low to low risk.

It is estimated that 25% of South Africa is covered by soils that are also potentially highly susceptible to wind erosion. These include the sandy soils in the western half of the "maize quadrangle" in the North West and north-western Free State – the areas that produce 75% of the country's maize.

South African soils are extremely prone to serious soil compaction, particularly under intensive mechanised cultivated agriculture, both dryland and irrigated. It is a problem throughout the country and much more widespread and serious than the global norm.

Large areas of South Africa are covered with soils that are extremely prone to serious crusting (surface sealing). The extent of crusting, as well as awareness of it, have increased sharply during the last two decades. Switching to overhead and microregulation systems and the widespread problems associated with these on crusting-prone soils greatly contributed to this.

Human-induced soil acidification is a major problem in South Africa. Its impact is serious, because it affects scarce, arable land, especially high-potential land. More than five million hectares of cultivated land have already been seriously acidified, mainly owing to injudicious fertiliser practices and inadequate lime applications. In the high-potential areas of Mpumalanga, opencast and strip-coal mining also cause soil acidification.

Soil fertility degradation is a matter of concern. In commercial agriculture, there has been a tendency of "nutrient capital-building" for some nutrients, especially phosphorus and zinc. In some cases, phosphorus has been built up to excessive levels, where it starts to reduce yields.

Statistics for the last 20 years indicate that trends in P-levels for these key nutrients follow two opposite directions: in a significant proportion of commercial croplands, P-levels are declining from adequate to deficient, whereas in other cases, the levels are increasing from adequate to excessive levels owing to overfertilisation.

Water use

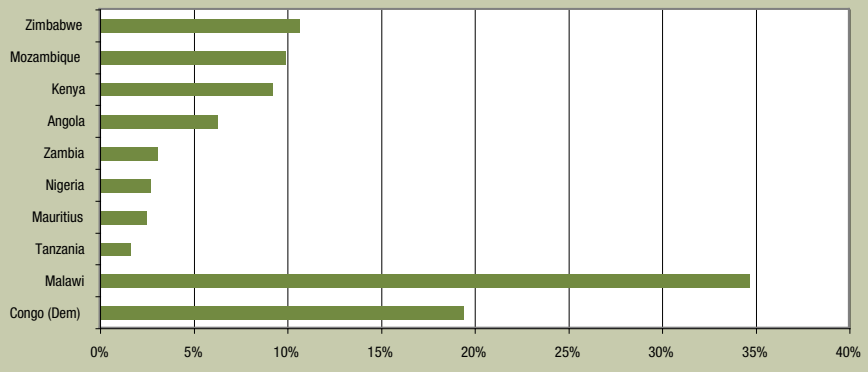
Irrigation is by far the biggest single user of run-off water in South Africa and has substantial potential to make a significant socio-economic and social impact on rural society. Irrigation is an important factor in the South African economy. Irrigated agriculture contributes more than 30% of the gross value of the country's crop production.

About 90% of the country's fruit, vegetables and wine is produced under irrigation. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has identified irrigation development as one of the five priority areas of the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) and aims to expand irrigation by 50%.

This goal will be achieved by:

- increasing the water-use efficiency of irrigation systems and future irrigated land
- revitalising underutilised irrigation schemes/areas based on a sustainable and area-wide planning approach
- promoting mini-scale irrigated agriculture for household- and community-level food security through efficient irrigation technologies

South African agricultural imports from Africa (Quarter 4, 2008)



Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics

- identifying and developing new commercial irrigation areas in cooperation with the departments of water and of environmental affairs.

Production

The total gross value of agricultural production (total production during the production season valued at the average basic prices received by producers) for 2007/08 is estimated at R118 916 million, compared to R91 270 million the previous year – an increase of 30,3%. This increase can be attributed mainly to a significant increase in the value of field crops.

Prices

Producer prices of agricultural products increased, on average, by 14,3% from 2007 to 2008, compared to an increase of 24,6% during the previous year. In 2008, the producer prices of field crops rose by 22,4%, against an increase of 44% the previous year. This increase was mainly the result of a 48,3% increase in the price of summer grains, and increases of 33,4%; 32,7%; and 30,4% in the prices of tobacco, cotton and oil seeds, respectively.

Producer prices of horticultural products increased by 5,8% in 2008 compared to 2007. Prices of vegetables increased, on average, by 2,6% during 2008, while the prices of fresh fruit increased by 15,2%.

The producer prices of animal products were 14,5% higher in 2008 than in 2007.

Prices received for pastoral products increased by 2%. The price farmers received for milk was 21,3% higher. Prices received for poultry products rose by 10%.

Farm income

The gross income of producers (the value of sales and production for other uses plus the value of changes in inventories) for 2008 amounted to R126 887 million, compared to R97 962 million in 2007 – an increase of 29,5%.

In 2008, the gross income from field crops increased by 72,4% to R39 100 million, compared to R22 680 million in 2007. This was mainly because of the higher prices that farmers received for summer crops during 2007.

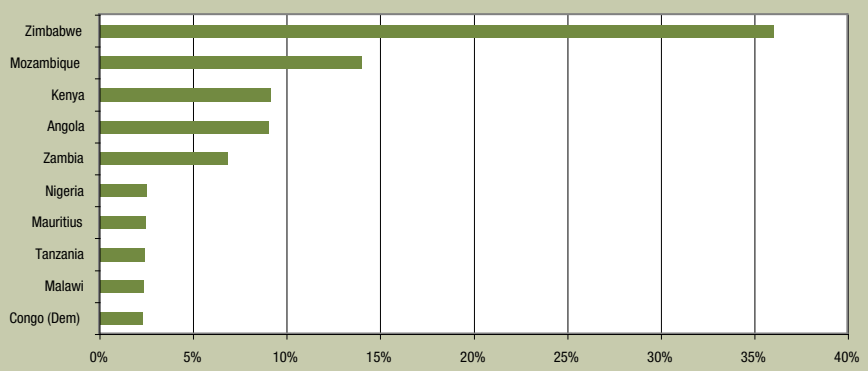
Gross income from horticultural products increased by 19,2%, from R25 597 million in 2007 to R30 499 million in 2008.

Income from deciduous and other summer fruit increased by 19,1% to R7 271 million, while that of citrus fruit increased by 26,7% to R5 800 million. The income from vegetables amounted to R10 623 million – an increase of 21%. Income from potatoes, which made a contribution of about 34,1% to the gross income from vegetables, increased by 6,3%, from R3 405 million in 2007 to R3 621 million in 2008. Gross income from animal products was 15,3% higher and amounted to R57 288 million. Producers earned R12 634 million from slaughtered cattle and calves – representing an increase of 2,6%. Income from slaughtered sheep increased by 12,7% and amounted to R3 072 million. Income from poultry amounted to R18 624 million – resulting in an increase of 15,5%. Income from milk increased by 25,7% to R9 639 million.

Field crops and horticulture

The largest area of farmland planted with field crops is maize, followed by wheat and, to a lesser extent, sugar cane and sunflowers.

South African agricultural exports to Africa (Quarter 4, 2008)



Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics

The grain industry is one of the largest in South Africa and is a very strategic one.

According to the *Economic Review of the South Africa Agriculture*, the gross income from field crops increased by 72,4% to R39 100 million for the year ended 31 December 2008.

Maize

Maize is the largest locally produced field crop, and the most important source of carbohydrates in the SADC for animal and human consumption.

South Africa is the main maize producer in the SADC, with an average production of about 9,2 mt a year over the past 10 years. It is estimated that more than 8 000 commercial maize producers are responsible for the major part of the South African crop, while the rest is produced by thousands of small-scale producers.

Maize is produced mainly in North West, the Free State and Mpumalanga. A total of 13,2 mt of maize was produced in 2007/08 on 3,3 million ha of land (developing agriculture included).

Wheat

Wheat is produced mainly in the winter-rainfall areas of the Western Cape and the eastern parts of the Free State. In 2008, 2,1 mt was produced on 748 000 ha of land.

Barley

Barley is produced mainly on the southern coastal plains of the Western Cape. The area of barley planted totalled 68 245 ha in the 2008 production season. Production totalled 192 900 t.

Groundnuts

Groundnuts are grown mainly in the Free State, North West and the Northern Cape. Groundnut plantings increased by 33% from 40 770 ha in 2006/07 to 54 200 ha in 2007/08. Production for the 2007/08 production season also increased by 53% to 88 800 t.

Unilever and the Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA), which had invested R11,4 million to be disbursed over three years mostly for training in agricultural and business matters, launched a multimillion-rand paprika-farming project in the small farming community of Keiskammahoek, one of the poorest corners of the Eastern Cape. By March 2009, about two million seedlings of paprika took root during the first phase on 60 hectares of land. This will be increased to four million within three years, which is expected to bear a crop of 300 ton. Sidalukukhanya is just one of several short-, medium- and long-term projects initiated by the DBSA to provide poor communities, particularly in rural areas, with income-generating opportunities.

Sunflower seeds

South Africa is the world's 12th-largest producer of sunflower seeds, which is produced in the Free State, North West, on the Mpumalanga Highveld and in Limpopo.

An area of 564 300 ha was planted in 2007/08, producing 872 000 t.

Sorghum

Sorghum is cultivated mostly in the drier parts of the summer-rainfall areas such as Mpumalanga, the Free State, Limpopo and North West.

In 2007/08, an estimated 86 800 ha were planted with production totalling 255 000 t.

Soya beans

Soya beans are mainly produced in Mpumalanga, the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal. Small quantities are produced in Limpopo, Gauteng and North West.

Canola

Canola is an oilseed crop that is mainly grown in the Western Cape. However, since the 2001 production season, smaller quantities have also been planted in the northern production areas, North West and Limpopo.

Canola competes with other oilseeds such as sunflower seeds and soya beans on the local market. For the 2008 production season, the canola crop was estimated at 30 800 t on an area of 34 000 ha.

Dry beans

Dry beans are produced mainly in Mpumalanga, the Free State, Gauteng and North West. Small quantities are reported to be produced in KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, the Western Cape and Northern Cape.

Local demand is substantially higher than local production and therefore large quantities of dry beans are imported each year. In 2008, about 65 000 t of dry beans were produced.

Sugar

The South African sugar industry is one of the world's leading cost-competitive producers of high-quality sugar. It is a diverse industry, combining the agricultural activities of sugar-cane cultivation with the industrial factory production

of raw and refined sugar, syrups and specialised sugars, and a range of by-products.

The South African sugar industry makes an important contribution to the national economy, given its agricultural and industrial investments, foreign-exchange earnings, its high employment rates and its linkages with major suppliers, support industries and customers.

Direct employment within the sugar industry totals about 85 000 jobs. Direct and indirect employment is estimated at 350 000 jobs, including employment in rural areas. The South African Cane Growers' Association and the milling companies undertake development projects and are involved in Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) through a range of initiatives.

About 47 000 registered sugar-cane growers annually produce on average more than 20 mt of sugar cane from 14 mill-supply areas, extending from northern Pondoland in the Eastern Cape to the Mpumalanga Lowveld.

Deciduous fruit

In 2008, the gross income from horticultural products increased by 16,8% to R29 879 million.

Deciduous fruit is grown mainly in the Western Cape and in the Long Kloof Valley in the Eastern Cape. Smaller production areas are found along the Orange River and in the Free State, Mpumalanga and Gauteng.

In 2008, income from deciduous and subtropical fruit rose by 19,8% and 20,1% to R6 886 and R2 022 million, respectively.

Production of important field crops and horticultural products, 2008 ('000 t)

Maize	20 965
Wheat	5 605
Sugar cane	4 458
Grain sorghum	511
Groundnuts	567
Sunflower seed	3 873
Deciduous and other soft fruit	7 342
Citrus fruit	5 830
Subtropical fruit	2 022
Vegetables	6 267
Potatoes	3 621

Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics, Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries

The industry is relatively organised through the umbrella body, Fruit South Africa, and its four shareholders: the Fresh Produce Exporters' Forum (FPEF), the Deciduous Fruit Producers' Trust, the Citrus Growers' Association and the South African Subtropical Growers' Association. The FPEF is a Section 21 company that represents more than 70 out of about 300 fresh-fruit export companies in South Africa. The FPEF played a significant role in stabilising and unifying the export sector, particularly in the latter half of deregulation.

Wine

South Africa is the ninth-biggest wine producer in the world, with 102 000 ha cultivated to vine, representing 3% of global output. For the 12 months to April 2009, the country exported just more than 403,3 million litres (Ml) of wine to reflect a year-on-year growth of 17%.

Sales to the country's biggest markets all increased, namely, to the United Kingdom (UK) by 27%, Germany by 12% and Sweden by 26%.

South Africa remains the fastest-growing segment in the UK, occupying fifth position with a 10% share of the market, and is the fourth-biggest player in Germany and the biggest in Sweden.

Citrus and subtropical fruit

Citrus production is largely limited to irrigation areas and takes place in Limpopo (16 255 ha), Mpumalanga (11 681 ha), the Eastern Cape (12 923 ha), KwaZulu-Natal (4 004 ha), the Western Cape (9 524 ha) and Northern Cape (639 ha).

In 2008, income from citrus showed an increase of 27% that amounted to R5 830 million.

Pineapples are grown in the Eastern Cape and in northern KwaZulu-Natal. Other subtropical crops such as avocados, mangoes, bananas, litchis, guavas, papayas, granadillas, and macadamia and pecan nuts are produced mainly in Mpumalanga and Limpopo and in the subtropical coastal areas of KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape. In 2008, South Africa produced 734 772 t of subtropical fruit, which was 46 896 t or 6,8% more than in 2007.

Potatoes

North West recently started with the production of seed potatoes. The Northern Cape is one of the six largest seed-potato production areas in South Africa. The South African varieties Darius and Eryn constitute a large percentage of the seed grown in this region.

The KwaZulu-Natal Midlands form the centre of the seed-production area in this province. Some

The Food and Agricultural Organisation of the United Nations declared 2009 the International Year of Natural Fibres. The Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) has an entire research group dedicated to the study of natural fibres. In South Africa, there are a number of lucrative natural fibre industries, such as that of *Agave americana* – better known as the plant used in the manufacture of tequila. The agave is indigenous to Mexico and was introduced to the dry Karoo region of South Africa a century ago, where it adapted readily.

The CSIR focuses on finding interesting and novel uses for age-old natural fibres, and on ways to improve their properties. The organisation also studies and develops natural fibre-reinforced composite material for use in the building, automobile and aerospace industries. A composite material comprises two dissimilar components, such as plywood and concrete, which form a new material with better properties when mixed.

The CSIR also investigates better planting and harvesting methods and the best strategies to sustain the various natural fibre industries. Much of the research centres on non-woven fibres.

Other areas of research involve the processing of fibre (preparation, spinning, winding, weaving and knitting technologies), fibre modification (changing the properties of fibre) and clothing technologies (enhancing comfort, sizing, fit and automation processes). This research will enable the South African clothing and textile industries to become more competitive globally.

seed is also produced in the north, near Louwsburg, a traditionally virus-free area. This region is one of the largest seed-producing areas in South Africa.

About 40% of the country's potato crop is grown in the high-lying areas of the Free State and Mpumalanga, Limpopo, and the Eastern, Western and Northern Cape.

The high-lying areas of KwaZulu-Natal are also important production areas. Nearly two thirds of the country's total potato crop are produced under irrigation.

Of the total crop, 50% is delivered to fresh-produce markets and a further 19% is processed. The South African potato-processing industry has shown tremendous growth over the past few years. This growth took place primarily in the crisps, chips and French fries sectors. Frozen French fries comprise 39% of total processed potato products in South Africa.

In terms of gross income to the grower, potatoes are by far the most important vegetable crop, contributing 39% to the total income derived from vegetables. This is almost equal to the 40% derived collectively from the next four major crops, namely, tomatoes, onions, green mealies and sweetcorn. During 2007/08, 1 853 000 t of potatoes were produced.

Tomatoes

Tomatoes are produced countrywide, but mainly in Limpopo, the Mpumalanga Lowveld and Middleveld, the Pongola area of KwaZulu-Natal, the southern parts of the Eastern Cape, and the Western Cape. In 2008, 459 217 t of tomatoes were produced.

Onions

Onions are grown in Mpumalanga; in the districts of Caledon, Ceres and Worcester in the Western Cape; and at Venterstad and adjoining areas in the southern Free State.

Onions have an estimated planting of 6 500 ha to 7 000 ha and a retail value of R200 million a year. In 2008, 417 579 t of onions were produced.

Exports from South Africa (8 000 t a year) to Europe are relatively small compared to exports such as those of New Zealand (106 000 t a year), Australia and Tasmania (80 000 t a year) and Argentina (20 000 t a year).

Cabbages

Cabbages are grown countrywide, but are concentrated in Mpumalanga and the Camperdown and Greytown districts of KwaZulu-Natal. In 2008, 138 161 t of cabbages were produced.

Cotton

Cotton is cultivated in Mpumalanga, Limpopo, the Northern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and North West. It constitutes 74% of natural fibre and 42% of all fibre processed in South Africa.

Cotton is grown under irrigation as well as in dryland conditions.

Since 2004, about 60% of cotton has been produced under irrigation. During 2007/08, 13 646 ha were dedicated to cotton in South Africa, with 72,9% ha under irrigation.

Production was the lowest in the Eastern Cape with 132 bales of cotton lint (each bale weighs 200 kg). About 75% of local production is harvested by hand. In 2007/08, cotton to the value of R113 million was produced.

Tobacco

Virginia tobacco is produced mainly in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West. The production of Oriental tobacco ceased in 2001.

Flue-cured leaf tobacco contributes more than 80% of total production, with hectares cultivated

for flue-cured tobacco being about six times the land cultivated for air-cured leaf tobacco. In 2008/09, 8 000 t of flue-cured tobacco were produced on 5 000 ha.

A total of 10 200 t of tobacco were produced.

Tea

Honeybush tea grows mainly in the coastal and mountainous areas of the Western Cape, and also in certain areas of the Eastern Cape. Honeybush tea has grown into a commercial crop, with 2006 production exceeding 300 t of processed tea.

The area planted with honeybush exceeds 230 ha, with about 10 commercial farmers contributing some 30% to the total annual production. It is estimated that honeybush grows on about 30 000 ha in South Africa.

Rooibos tea is indigenous to the Cederberg area of the Western Cape, which is about 200 km north of Cape Town. Although the main centre for tea production remains in this area, recent developments have seen production expanding to other regions. Rooibos tea is only produced locally and efforts to keep it this way are ongoing.

Rooibos provides income and employment to more than 5 000 people and earns an estimated R500 million a year. On average, about 12 000 mt of Rooibos are produced in South Africa a year.

South Africans consume 4 500 to 5 000 t and the rest is exported. The increasing global demand for Rooibos pushed exports up to more than 6 000 t a year. Rooibos is exported to more than 30 countries across the globe. Germany, the Netherlands, Japan, UK and the United States of America (USA) are the biggest importers of Rooibos.

Floriculture

The South African floriculture industry has the opportunity to develop into a significant player on the international stage. The total floriculture industry employs about 17 500 people. In terms of products and markets, there is a strong demand for South African floriculture worldwide. In particular, Germany, the UK, Japan and the Netherlands represent the greatest opportunities in the short term.

South Africa's indigenous flowers such as gladioli, nerine, freesias and gerberas, have undergone many years of extensive research in Europe, and have become major crops worldwide.

South Africa is the leading exporter of protea cut flowers, which account for more than half of the proteas sold on the world market. South African proteas and so-called Cape greens (fynbos) are marketed in Europe and are mainly concentrated in the Western Cape.

Recent developments in the Fynbos and Protea families have added value to the country's efforts on the international cut flower market.

Livestock

Nearly 80% of agricultural land in South Africa is suitable for extensive livestock farming. Livestock are also kept in other areas, usually in combination with other farming enterprises. Numbers vary according to weather conditions.

Stockbreeders concentrate on developing breeds that are well adapted to diverse weather and environmental conditions.

The livestock sector contributes up to 49% of agricultural output. South Africa generally produces 85% of its meat requirements, while the remaining 15% is imported from Namibia, Botswana, Swaziland, Australia, New Zealand and Europe. The livestock industry is the largest national agricultural sector.

National Livestock Development Strategy (NLDS)

The NLDS aims to enhance the sustainability of animal agriculture in South Africa across the entire production, processing and supply chain.

Implementation includes establishing sector working groups, mobilising rural stock owners and keepers towards economic production and supporting systems for the conservation of veld and livestock resources through sustainable use.

Dairy farming

Dairy farming is practised throughout South Africa, with the highest concentration of dairy farms in the eastern and northern Free State, North West, the KwaZulu-Natal Midlands, the Eastern and Western Cape, the Gauteng metropolitan area and the southern parts of Mpumalanga.

The ARC participates fully in the Multiple Across-Country Evaluation for all four major dairy breeds in South Africa, namely Holstein, Jersey, Guernsey and Ayrshire.

The primary sector consists of about 3 600 and 200 000 commercial and emerging farmers respectively, with an annual turnover of about R7,980 million.

Milk South Africa coordinates industry matters, including the information and research functions, and is financed by statutory contributions. Market forces determine prices. The dairy industry is an important employer, as some 3 850 milk producers employ about 50 000 farmworkers and indirectly provide jobs to some 38 000 people.

The 2008 milk production for commercial markets was estimated at 3 129 Ml.

The National Recording and Improvement Scheme, managed by the ARC, ensures the efficient and economic sustainability of livestock production. It also provides scientific and technical assistance to participants to assist in making the right decisions.

The Dairy Recording and Improvement Scheme enables dairy farmers to record the genetic economically important traits of their animals. This information feeds into the Integrated Registration and Genetic Information System (INTER-GIS), South Africa's national farm animals recording database. Through INTER-GIS, raw data is processed and it also generates a range of reports that enable dairy farmers to select and identify the productivity of individual animals and farming enterprises.

Beef cattle farming

Cattle ranches are found mainly in the Eastern Cape, parts of the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, North West, Mpumalanga and the Northern Cape. The indigenous Afrikaner and Nguni and the locally developed Bonsmara and Drakensberger are popular beef breeds.

The Angus, Hereford and Sussex; Charolais, Simmentaler and Brahman; and Santa Gertrudis breeds are respectively from Europe and America, and are maintained as pure breeds or used in cross-breeding.

Small stock (sheep and goat) farming

Sheep farming is concentrated mainly in the arid and extensive grazing areas of the country. As a result, most of the 25 million sheep in South Africa are found in the Eastern Cape, followed by the Northern Cape, Free State, Western Cape and Mpumalanga. Most sheep (18 million) are woolled or dual-purpose sheep.

The sheep breed with the highest wool production per head in South Africa is the South African Merino, followed by other dual-purpose Merino breeds, of which the Dohne Merino, South African Mutton Merino, the Afrino and Letelle are the most popular. Dual-purpose breeds are bred with the specific aim of maximising wool and mutton income. These breeds have better body conformation than the Merino, but produce slightly less wool per kilogram of body weight.

Average Merino fleece weights vary from 4 kg to 5 kg a year in the semi-arid regions, and up to 8 kg a year from sheep grazing on cultivated pastures.

Mutton sheep are mostly found in the semi-desert areas of the Northern and Western Cape.

The most popular mutton breed is the locally developed Dorper. Limited numbers of indigenous fat-tailed and Karakul sheep are still found.

A large proportion of the goats in South Africa occur in communal grazing areas. The Eastern Cape has the largest number of goats (39%), followed by Limpopo (17%).

The indigenous meat-producing Boer goat accounts for about 40% of all goats in South Africa. Almost all of South Africa's Angora goat (mohair) farmers are located in the Eastern Cape, where they farm with about a million Angora goats. The South African mohair clip of four million kilogram accounts for 60% of the world's mohair production. About 63% of all goats in South Africa are so-called indigenous goats.

Poultry and pig farming

The poultry and pig industries are more intensive than the sheep and cattle industries, and are dominant in almost all the provinces. The predominant pig breeds are the South African Landrace, the Large White, Duroc and the Pietrain. Some 2,6 million pigs were slaughtered between August 2007 and August 2008.

South Africa's annual poultry meat production is estimated at 930 000 t. Broiler production contributes nearly 80% to total poultry-meat production, with the rest made up of mature chicken slaughter (culls), small-scale and backyard poultry production, ducks, geese, turkeys and other specialised white-meat products.

Commercial producers slaughtered an estimated 1,421 mt broilers in 2008.

South Africa accounts for 68% of world sales of ostrich products, namely leather, meat and feathers. The income from these products was about R370 million in 2007/08 and is derived as follows: leather (50 – 70%), meat (20 – 30%) and feathers (20 – 30%).

Aquaculture industry (freshwater and marine)

South Africa is still in the developing phase of aquaculture, which is an underdeveloped market with great potential for job creation and food security. The total aquacultural production from South Africa is insignificant compared to African and global production.

The growth in aquaculture and aquaculture interest in South Africa is likely to lead to the rapid expansion of the sector during the next decade. This expansion depends on the integrated use of natural resources, funding, government support,

technology and human-resource development to ensure sustainable and equitable development.

A number of aquaculture developments and public facilitation initiatives are taking place, such as initiatives by the Provincial Development Corporation in the Western Cape to develop a growth-centred policy for the province; the ongoing developmental work by the Department of Science and Technology; various activities by the Eastern Cape Development Corporation; a best management practice guideline by the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries; and projects by the Marine and Coastal Management (MCM) Branch of the Department of Environmental Affairs. The MCM projects include workshopping and finalising the abalone ranching guidelines, the selection of land-based and offshore marine aquaculture sites, developing pilot projects and new environmental impact assessment guidelines for aquaculture and establishing an implementation plan to cover the main objectives of the policy – these being the creation of an enabling environment, research, environmental matters and transformation.

Game ranching

Game ranching in South Africa is one of the fastest-growing sectors of the agricultural industry.

Since the 1970s, there has been a huge shift from cattle farming to game ranching. Provided they observe approved game-fencing rules, registered game ranches have permission to hunt throughout the year.

Some 49,04% of registered game ranches with an area of 3 325 652 ha are found in Limpopo. The Northern Cape has the second-highest number of game ranches (19,48%), covering 4 852 053 ha.

The Eastern Cape has 12,33% of the total game ranches, covering 881 633 ha.

The Western Cape has the fewest game ranches (1,62%, extending over 265 205 ha).

Owing to the expansion of game ranches, the total area covered by these privately owned ranches exceeds that of all national parksand provincial nature reserves put together. Game ranches also have growing numbers of game.

In terms of game ranching, game is considered to be an agricultural product as defined in the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996 (Act 47 of 1996).

The South African game-farming industry incorporates various subsectors, ranging from extensive wildlife ranching (with minimal human intervention) to intensive wildlife ranching (with supplementary feeding), wildlife breeding and ecotourism.

The Directorate: Animal Production of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has, as its primary objective, the sustainable management, use and ecological protection of range and forage resources, as used by both livestock and wildlife (game) production systems, across provincial boundaries.

The National Game-Farming Policy aims to:

- support the effective management of viable game-farming systems
- ensure the sustainable management of natural resources
- facilitate the development of norms and standards for sustainable game farming
- promote and support equitable access to health management
- establish a national game-farm and animal database
- facilitate promotion and marketing
- deal with relevant food-safety issues
- promote research, training and support services.

The National Game-Farming Working Group consists of all relevant stakeholders in the game-farming industry to ensure that all the parties concerned are represented and participate fully.

Beekeeping

The honey industry in South Africa has an average annual turnover of R3,2 billion and produces 2 000 t a year. Government investment in KwaZulu-Natal aims to increase national production to 100 000 t and employ over 100 000 people. In addition to producing honey, beekeepers play a critical role in agriculture, contributing to crop pollination and the development of products worth billions of rands.

Indigenous food crops

The Directorate*:* Plant Production of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has developed the Draft Policy on Indigenous Food Crops. The policy was approved by the Depart-

Since 1994, the Farmworkers Development Programme of the then Department of Agriculture funded 68 projects at a cost of R12,3 million, benefiting more than 150 000 farmworkers.

Between 2004 and 2008, the department instituted a comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme consisting of 450 projects, some 20 701 beneficiaries and costing R120 million. The department supported 93 461 emerging farmers. Of these, 11 815 were women, 37 408 were youth and 266 were people with disabilities.

mental Executive Committee and recommended for consultation with various stakeholders.

Veterinary services

The State Veterinary Services constantly guards against the introduction of animal diseases from outside South Africa. Existing animal diseases, which may be detrimental to South Africa's economy and to human and animal health, are also monitored, controlled and combated.

Livestock in the high-risk areas are inspected at short intervals.

The Directorate*:* Veterinary Services of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries sets norms and standards for the delivery of veterinary services in South Africa.

Legislation provides the necessary powers to control diseases such as foot-and-mouth disease (FMD), swine fever, rabies and anthrax. South Africa, excluding the Kruger National Park and surrounding game reserves, is recognised as an FMD-free zone by the *Office International des Épizooties* (OIE), the world animal-health organisation.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has created a biosafety and biosecurity unit and a branch to deal with all emerging diseases and improve on biosecurity and food-safety measures.

Animal-disease control is an important factor in ensuring the productivity of the livestock sector and in promoting international trade in agricultural products.

Surveillance systems are in place to ensure that all animal products entering and leaving the country are disease-free, or offer a negligible risk, and therefore pose little risk to the animal-disease status of the country and are also safe for human consumption.

All commercial ports are thoroughly monitored to ensure that imported and exported goods are disease-free.

Particular emphasis is placed on the control of borders with neighbouring countries to prevent the introduction of FMD.

Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP)

OBP is a state-owned public company established in terms of the OBP Act, 1999 (Act 10 of 1999), with the capacity and technology to produce veterinary vaccines and related biological products for local and international markets. OBP is the sole or main producer of a number of vaccines against animal tropical diseases with the potential to cause serious economic disasters.

The last few years have seen OBP participating in projects to alleviate poverty and improve human health by providing millions of doses of vaccines against zoonotic diseases such as Rift Valley fever.

OBP contributes expert advice and vaccines to control other transboundary animal diseases such as contagious bovine pleural pneumonia, lumpy-skin disease, African horse sickness and anthrax that affect most African countries.

Over the years, OBP has been participating actively in workshops and conferences arranged by organisations such as the Pan-African Vaccine Network, World Organisation for Animal Health, SADC and the Food and Agriculture Organisation (FAO) to share and gain technology in improving its services.

Through collaboration with the FAO and the European Union (EU), OBP has also been involved in projects to provide both technical support and vaccines to countries such as the Democratic Republic of Congo, Zimbabwe, Lesotho and Angola.

OBP interacts both with national and international research and academic institutions to introduce new, improved and affordable products.

Animal identification

The Animal Identification Act (Aida), 2002 (Act 6 of 2002), administered by the Directorate: Veterinary Services in the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, regulates the registration of unique markings for all declared animal species.

Under the Act, the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries declares animals for compulsory identification. The national register is available to the South African Police Service through State Information Technology Agency links to trace ownership of individual animals to their owners.

However, this can only be implemented successfully if all cattle, goats, pigs and sheep are marked in accordance with the Act.

The directorate is also transferring knowledge to rural communities in consultation with the provincial departments of agriculture on various themes, for example, the Aida, 2002; animal management; preserving fodder; feeding of animals; preventative activities; first aid to injured

animals; marketing/harvesting of animals and their products; hygienic activities for meat; and milk handling.

The Epidemiology Section is responsible for monitoring animal diseases in the country for both disease-control purposes and as an early warning system.

Pest control

The South African Pest Control Association (Sapca) is the official representative of the pest-, termite- and woodborer-control industries. All Sapca-qualified inspectors have to register with the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries.

South Africa liaises with other countries and international organisations to ensure the transfer of pest-control technology.

Migratory pest control

In terms of the Agricultural Pests Act, 1983 (Act 36 of 1983), the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is obliged to control the registered national pests, namely, red-billed quelea, locust and blackfly. These are migratory pests and individual farmers cannot be expected to control these to prevent damage in areas away from their own farms.

The ARC provides research support to the department to optimise control procedures in terms of efficacy, cost and environmental considerations.

An international communication network has been established with neighbouring countries concerning migratory pest control. By providing early warning information on cross-border invasions of migratory pests, such as army worm, locust and red-billed quelea, the Information Core for Southern African Migrant Pests enhances the forecasting efficiency of control organisations, thereby assisting national crop-protection agencies to ensure food security.

Marketing

The Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996 (Act 47 of 1996), has changed agricultural marketing policy and practice dramatically to ensure that it occurs in a free environment.

The deregulation process was aimed at ensuring that farmers and agribusinesses position themselves as players in the globally competitive environment.

The deregulation process entailed dissolving agricultural marketing boards, phasing out import- and export-control measures, eliminating subsidies and introducing tariffs to protect the domestic agricultural industry value chains against unfair international competition.

The Directorate: Marketing of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries works closely with the National Agricultural Marketing Council (NAMC) on agricultural marketing matters.

The directorate develops, promotes and facilitates the implementation of programmes and measures aimed at supporting equitable access to competitive and profitable agricultural markets on a sustainable basis. This broad mandate is achieved by:

- administering market-access measures in the form of issuing trade permits (import and export permits)
- facilitating fair, open, efficient and competitive domestic markets
- developing policies and strategies aimed at enhancing market access, and facilitating the implementation of programmes and measures to promote equitable access to mainstream markets
- liaising with other government departments and relevant parties to enhance the efficiency of the agricultural marketing value chains.

The directorate comprises three subdirectorates, namely Marketing Administration, Commodity

The Food Agriculture and Natural Resources Policy Network launched the Women Accessing Realigned Markets (WARM) Project in July 2009, after a funding agreement was signed with the Gates Global Development Foundation in June.

The project will use community theatre to give female farmers stronger influence in agricultural policy-making in South Africa. WARM's main objective is to provide a platform for rural female farmers to express their specific needs and to raise issues that help realign policy research agendas to meet them.

Women farmers are often marginalised in business relations and have little control over access to land, seed and fertiliser as well as credit and technology.

Women constitute 70% of the total agricultural workforce in sub-Saharan Africa. They are responsible for 100% of the processing of basic foodstuffs, according to Food and Agricultural Organisation statistics.

The project's planned interventions include providing the participants with access to credit and research services, technology and input and output markets while also boosting their participation in policy-making processes at community and national level through active involvement in agricultural organisations

Marketing, and Marketing Development and Support.

The Subdirectorate: Marketing Administration administers the issuing of import and export permits to enhance trade and market access. It also facilitates the participation of new entrants in the trading environment.

The Subdirectorate: Commodity Marketing profiles key agricultural commodity marketing value chains and undertakes further analyses of market structures to determine market-access qualifiers.

It further investigates the behaviour of commodity and non-commodity markets to recommend policy options, thereby ensuring equitable access to mainstream markets by all.

The Subdirectorate: Marketing Development and Support implements programmes and measures to enhance the development of a vibrant domestic market. It implements projects such as marketing, infrastructure support and marketing training and provides agricultural marketing information.

National Agricultural Marketing Council

The NAMC was established in terms of the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996. The council provides the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries with strategic advice on all agricultural marketing issues to improve market efficiency and access for all participants, optimise export earnings and improve the viability of the agricultural sector.

The council has developed an economic and market research programme that tracks economic trends and provides market information that is aimed at improving South Africa's position in future global agricultural markets.

The NAMC's Food Price Monitoring initiative is a continuation of the Food Price Monitoring Project, which assists government in understanding the impact of high food price inflation on the poor.

Land settlement

The overall goal of the Directorate: Land Settlement is to provide support to farmers through land-reform programmes with the intention to develop viable and sustainable agricultural ventures.

The directorate develops and provides guidelines for the implementation of policies and programmes supporting land and agrarian-reform beneficiaries. It also facilitates the implementation of land and agrarian-reform projects and promotes sustainable agriculture for improved livelihoods. Furthermore, the directorate facilitates the effective administration and disposal of state agricultural land.

The directorate ensures farmer support by developing policies such as the Farmer-to-Farmer Mentorship Policy, implementing programmes such as the Comprehensive Agriculture Support Programme (CASP) and the Land Reform Revitalisation Programme.

The directorate manages and controls 125 227 ha of state land, called Financial Assistance Land Administration, which consists of:

- leased land: 57 154 ha
- vacant land: 13 811 ha
- land for restitution: 54 262 ha.

The CASP has been reprioritised to respond timeously to the demands of the Land and Agrarian Reform Project (LARP). The LARP is aimed at accelerating and aligning land and agrarian reform in South Africa.

The LARP focuses on the following objectives:

- redistributing five million hectares of white-owned agricultural land to 10 000 new agricultural producers
- increasing black entrepreneurs in the agribusiness industry by 10%
- providing universal access to agricultural support services to the target groups
- increasing agricultural production by 10% to 15% for the target groups, under the Ilima/Letsema Campaign
- increasing agricultural trade by 10% to 15% for the target groups.

The LARP is a joint project of the Department of Rural Development and Land Affairs; the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries; provincial departments of agriculture; agricultural state-owned enterprises; and sector partners.

As part of the agrarian transformation drive, the department will consolidate all the national funding schemes into a single national facility for the funding of projects and rural businesses. This will support the department's efforts to promote the production of food, feed and fibre to create jobs and generate sustainable incomes.

Ilima/Letsema Campaign

The Ilima/Letsema Campaign seeks to increase agricultural economic activities by continuing the joint effort of stimulating food production through household and backyard activities, creating micro-enterprises through the use of communal land, ensuring productivity of all land lying fallow in the peri-urban and rural areas and converting

dormant agricultural assets into liquid income-generating assets.

The Ilima/Letsema Campaign continues to elevate agricultural activities; realise the LARP; be a mechanism of collaboration towards food security; and a developmental platform for appreciation of local and indigenous resources that will assist to continue the fight against high food prices.

The objectives of the campaign are to:

- invest in the improvement of the quality of livestock in communal areas such as the Nguni cattle, goats and chickens
- increase family and community production for household food and nutritional security
- develop an agricultural development corridor
- increase the percentage of land that is put to productive use
- activate fallow land in the former homelands
- rehabilitate to productive use degraded agricultural land
- rehabilitate and expand the existing irrigation schemes
- establish new irrigation schemes
- establish contract farming for high-value and feedstock products for biofuels, wine, essential oils, hemp, medicines, leather, juices, canning and dairy.

By mid-2009, a number of interventions had been introduced to strengthen food security. With the exception of the North West, all provinces had launched the Ilima/Letsema Campaign. This campaign also distributes agricultural starter-packs to poor households and support small-scale farmers.

Food security

The Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme (IFSNP) aims to achieve physical, social and economic access to safe and nutritious food for all South Africans. Its goal is to eradicate hunger, malnutrition and food insecurity by 2015.

The IFSNP recognises the broad regional food-security framework that the Regional Indicative Sustainable Development Programme highlighted and that prompted South Africa to respond to the humanitarian appeal by the United Nations (UN) World Food Programme for emergency food relief in the SADC region.

The Household Food Production Programme, which provides seedlings, seeds, fertiliser, pesticides and other production input to beneficiaries, assisted about 30 000 households in 2009. In the 2008 supplementary budget, the programme was expanded by an additional R76 million, which assisted in reaching the targeted 70 000 households.

By March 2009, 6 503 schools in the country had vegetable gardens. School communities had also been trained in tree planting and were planting fruit trees at schools as part of the Plant a Million Trees Campaign.

Regional issues

South Africa participates in the Regional Advisory Committee (RAC) of the Regional Food Security Training Programme (RFSTP).

The RFSTP was developed over a five-year period as endorsed by the RAC. The activities of the RFSTP focus on three main areas: strengthening the supply of food-security training services, strengthening the effective demand for training and development and sustaining regional markets for food-security-related training services.

The SADC has instituted the Subcommittee for Plant Protection, which is tasked with harmonising phytosanitary requirements in southern Africa. South Africa is also a member of the Inter-African Phytosanitary Council, which was established in 1954. Regional plant-protection organisations such as these are able to provide valuable coordination of the activities and objectives of the International Plant Protection Convention (IPPC) at regional level. The Inter-Africa Phytosanitary Council is officially recognised as the Regional Plant Protection Organisation for Africa. The council came into being as the African Union's (AU) phytosanitary coordinating body.

The SADC ministers responsible for agriculture and food security met in May 2009 to review progress on the regional food-security situation and the implementation of the Regional Indicative Strategic Development Plan and the Dar-es-Salaam Declaration Plan of Action on Agriculture and Food Security. The ministers reviewed progress in the following key areas: food security, food availability, regional trade, disaster preparedness and climate change.

International issues

As a signatory to the Rome Declaration, South Africa has committed itself to the implementation of the World Food Summit Plan of Action. For this purpose, South Africa reports annually to the World Committee for Food Security. South Africa is also collaborating with the FAO on the implementation of the Special Programme for Food Security, within the context of the Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Programme.

South Africa is an active participant in other international standard-setting bodies that are vital to its global market share, such as the IPPC, OIE and Codex Alimentarius.

Risk management

Status of plans/policies

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries' Executive Committee approved the Disaster Risk-Management Plan for stakeholder consultation during 2008/09. The department also worked on the following documents as appendices to the Agricultural Disaster Plan: agricultural floods, veldfire and cold spell management strategies; Agricultural Plant Pests; Diseases Strategy; Animal Disease Contingency Strategy; and Migratory Pests Strategy.

The disaster risk-reduction principles and post-disaster recovery and rehabilitation were implemented in parallel with policy development and monitoring. Policy review and evaluation were done on an ad hoc basis.

Climate change

Climate change has been identified as one of the major threats to agricultural production. Leading research experts have projected that agricultural production could drop by 50% in parts of southern Africa in the long term because of the increased likelihood of crop failures and livestock diseases, therefore negatively affecting food security.

In an effort to address issues pertaining to climate change in the agricultural sector, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries developed the Climate Change Sector Plan and Climate Change Programme.

The main aims of the plan are to respond to the South African National Climate Change Response Strategy and Cabinet's mandated action plans, which called for individual plans for all sectors and to ensure a sustainable, profitable agricultural sector in general.

The department supports research on the impact of climate change on agricultural production to better understand and plan for the likely impact.

The department is conducting research on the impact of climate change through various research and academic institutions.

Vulnerability, mitigation and adaptation are three key concepts relating to climate change and its manifestations are of critical importance to agriculture.

Early warning (disaster risk reduction)

Agriculture is affected by either or a combination of droughts, floods, cyclones and veldfires, among other hazards. The losses resulting from the impact of these natural hazards can be minimised, if not avoided at all, by establishing and strengthening an early warning system for all natural hazards.

The system communicates early warning information in the form of monthly advisories and daily extreme weather warnings to the sector for disaster risk reduction, mitigation and preparedness in accordance with the Disaster Management Act, 2005 (Act 27 of 2005).

The department assesses the uptake of the early warning information to evaluate the preparedness of all involved in disaster risk management to act upon warnings of natural hazards and the hazards themselves.

Disaster assistance

Main disasters that occurred in the country during 2008/09 included veldfires, drought in the Central Karoo area and floods in the Eastern and Western Cape. Assessments in the affected areas were conducted by the national and provincial departments of agriculture. With the assistance of organised agriculture, the departments also evaluated the impact that these disasters had on agriculture.

Funds had been made available to assist the eight provinces affected by veldfires. In 2008, about 21 400 farmers were assisted who suffered losses due to agricultural disasters.

Drought management

Climate variability has induced drought interspersed with flooding, resulting in lower average agricultural production yields. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has completed two policy documents: the Agricultural Disaster Risk-Management Plan and Agricultural Drought Management Plan.

Credit and assistance

The six major sources of credit for farmers are banks (50%), agricultural cooperatives and agribusinesses (12%), the Land Bank (21%), private creditors (8%), other creditors and financial institutions (9%), and the State (1%). Government will:

- Increase the 450 cooperatives in agriculture, forestry and fisheries by 100. There are also 400 self-help groups that are based on sav-

ings mobilisation for the purpose of enterprise development.
- Train household members to establish vegetable tunnels for household food production and assist emerging farmers in rural communities.

Business and Entrepreneurial Development (BED)

The Directorate: BED in the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is mandated to ensure that emerging entrepreneurs and established enterprises have some synergy in the development of their agribusiness endeavours. The entire process addresses the strategic objectives of eliminating skewed participation and inequity; optimising growth, remunerative job opportunities and income; and ensuring efficient and effective governance. It further promotes and provides strategic support in the development of viable and empowered businesses, stimulating growth and promoting unity through partnerships and niches.

The ultimate aims are to:
- unlock the economic potential of idle-to-underused resources of emergent groups through empowerment efforts
- facilitate restructuring and the expansion of existing farming/agribusinesses to enhance their competitiveness and contribution to the sector and the economy at large.

The Business Development Unit within the directorate works closely with industries/commodity groups to develop inclusive, enhanced and harmonised commodity strategies and joint action plans.

It assists marginalised groups in creating, expanding and rehabilitating business to become profitable and sustainable in the long term, focusing on growth and wealth creation based on mutual gains in the sector. It also encourages and facilitates win-win partnerships for niche enterprises at all levels in the agricultural value chains.

Through the directorate, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has contributed towards the development of the National Emergent Red Meat Producers' Organisation's database, the Grain Industry Strategy, the Fruit Industry Plan and the implementation of the Cotton Industries Strategy.

The directorate renders support and guidance to the cotton, grain and fruit industries in the implementation of their developed strategies. It is facilitating and supporting the potato industry in developing an industry strategy.

The unit has facilitated, jointly with industry role players, the initial roll-out and implementation of the AgriBEE Entrepreneurial Programme in floriculture. The aim is to develop market/business opportunities for BEE enterprises across the value chain to grow and become globally competitive and sustainable, contributing to shared growth and employment creation.

Through joint internal actions in the department, activities are being mainstreamed to further reach black farmer organisations and entrepreneurs, accelerating their participation into commodity groups through farmer-mobilisation interventions.

The unit is aligned with the objective of AsgiSA and supports Operation Gijima, Women in Agriculture and Rural Development and National Movement for Rural Women projects, as well as programmes involving people living with disabilities, youth and farmworkers.

It is facilitating and supporting the industry in developing a floriculture industry strategy aligned to the sector plan.

It collaborates with other tiers of government and sectors in rendering advice, support and guidance to agricultural value-chain projects owned by land-acquisition beneficiaries, designated groups and other departmental grant-funded projects.

The Entrepreneurial Development Unit is responsible for initiating and rolling out the Small, Medium and Micro-Enterprise (SMME) Excellence Model in collaboration with partners within the provinces. These interventions focus on entrepreneurial development, increased agricultural enterprises' performance and job-creation activities, especially in rural development nodes.

The BEE Unit leads in the formulation of BEE policy, norms and standards in the sector in terms of the AgriBEE Charter Gazette and the Broad-Based BEE Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003).

The Agri Black Economic Empowerment Project was launched in February 2009. This multimillion rand investment project is a partnership between black emerging farmers, represented by the National African Farmers Union, Women in Agriculture and Rural Development, Youth in Agriculture and Rural Development and white commercial farmers. Its main objective is the transfer of skills from commercial farmers through training and mentorship and the establishment of sustainable commercial farms for emerging black farmers.

The centre will kick-start its training in dairy farming and piggeries and later advance to other enterprises such as vegetable and crop farming.

Through AgriBEE implementation, the goals of access to existing resources and opportunities, enhanced participation and ownership by designated groups (women, youth, people living with disabilities and labour) will be targeted.

LandCare Programme

The LandCare Programme is a community-based and government-supported approach to the sustainable management and use of agricultural natural resources.

The vision of the LandCare Programme is for communities and individuals to adopt an ecologically sustainable approach to the management of South Africa's environmental and natural resources, while improving their quality of life. It implies that cultivation, livestock grazing and the harvesting of natural resources should be managed in such a manner that no further degradation (such as nutrient loss, soil erosion, loss of components of the vegetation and increased run-off) occurs.

The overall goal of the LandCare Programme is to optimise productivity and sustainability of natural resources, resulting in greater productivity, food security, job creation and better quality of life for all. The LandCare Programme has been expanded into additional subprogrammes. The department has initiated the integrated Soil Protection Strategy (SPS) in support of growth and sustainable development in the agricultural sector.

The project aims to improve agricultural productivity and contribute to economic growth by focusing on erosion, declining soil acidity, soil fertility and organic matter, and veld rehabilitation.

The SPS focuses on high- to moderate-potential agricultural land with high erosion status (about three million hectares) and will initially identify three priority tertiary catchment areas.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries will broaden and strengthen partnerships with organised agriculture, including subsistence and new farmers as well as cooperatives in agriculture, forestry and fisheries.

The latter includes 450 cooperatives ranging from producer input supply, live stock and commodity groups. The department was expected to increase this number by 100, based on a needs analysis, by the end of the 2009/10 financial year. There are also 400 self-help groups that are based on savings mobilisation for the purpose of enterprise development.

LandCare themes are grouped into two areas, namely focused investment (WaterCare, VeldCare, SoilCare, Eco-Technology Programme [ETP], Infield Rainwater Harvesting [IRWH] and Junior LandCare) and small community grants.

The Department of Agriculture transferred R46,7 million in 2007/08 to the nine provincial departments for LandCare projects. LandCare awareness was promoted through 120 projects with a total investment of R35 million since 1998.

The Fourth Biennial National LandCare Conference was held in Limpopo in 2009. It was attended by representatives from African countries, Australia and the Philippines.

Focused investment

WaterCare

The WaterCare theme targets Limpopo in particular, because of water shortages and the importance of water for irrigation. This theme establishes a framework for managing land and preventing the silting up of dams for irrigation. WaterCare works in partnership with the community to develop action plans for managing and restoring irrigation schemes.

The rehabilitation of irrigation schemes increases water supply and household food security. WaterCare promotes the development of techniques for water-resource management and encourages opportunities for training in this field.

VeldCare

This theme promotes best grazing systems and erosion-prevention practices to improve production. It develops and maintains agricultural activities in accordance with the principles of ecologically sustainable development. Economic- and social-development opportunities are realised by improving grazing areas and maintaining viable grazing areas throughout rural communities.

SoilCare

The SoilCare theme encourages rural farmers in KwaZulu-Natal, the Eastern Cape and Mpumalanga to build innovative structures to combat soil erosion. This includes reducing the depletion of soil fertility and acidity. Through SoilCare, sustainable agricultural production systems such as diversification, management of input and conservation tillage are introduced.

Eco-Technology Programme

The objective of the ETP is to identify, adapt, demonstrate and spread promising and appropriate

eco-technologies locally (such as conservation, farming and water harvesting), which will provide resource-poor farmers with social, economic and environmental benefits. The expected outcomes of this theme are an increased number of promising and appropriate eco-technologies identified and evaluated on-farm; an increasing number of farmers adopting eco-technologies; and improved social, economic and environmental (e.g. employment) benefits.

ETPs will initially be implemented in presidential nodal areas where water is very scarce, such as KwaZulu-Natal (Umkhanyakude and Zululand) and Limpopo (Sekhukhune and Bohlabela).

Infield Rainwater Harvesting

IRWH technology, which improves the efficiency of water use and increases yields with a suitable choice of crop combinations under low and erratic rainfall conditions on low-potential clay soils, has been transferred with great success to numerous communities in the Free State and Eastern Cape.

Using IRWH in croplands, community members have increased maize and sunflower yields by between 26% and 40% compared with conventional practices. Socio-economic studies on vegetable gardens have shown that IRWH can ensure household food security for nine out of 10 years, compared to three out of 10 years using conventional cropping methods.

Transfer of technology, training and extension are used to implement IRWH, with consequent improvement of household livelihoods in rural communities where the majority of members live below the poverty line.

Junior LandCare

Junior LandCare encourages young people to develop a sense of responsibility towards the land and other natural resources, to conserve these for future generations.

The objectives of Junior LandCare are to empower previously disadvantaged youth by providing training in facilitation and leadership skills. This includes the promotion of food security at home and in schools, enhancing awareness of sustainable agriculture and stimulating the formation of youth clubs and projects that aim to promote other components of LandCare. Junior LandCare addresses the needs of young people in an integrated way and involves interdisciplinary approaches. This is done for youth both in and out of school.

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (Land Bank)

The Land Bank is a key development finance institution providing access to credit in the agricultural sector. In July 2008, the administration of the Land Bank was transferred from the then Department of Agriculture to the National Treasury.

However, the operations and governance of the Land Bank have not been optimal. The capital adequacy ratio of the bank has fallen considerably, mainly due to the writing off of some large non-performing loans.

Key components of the Land Bank's turnaround strategy to ensure that it delivers on its mandate include a focus on promoting previously disadvantaged individuals and sustainable development and BEE in the agricultural sector. The bank's support to previously disadvantaged communities should help government with the redistribution of 30% of agricultural land by 2014 and other land-reform objectives.

The Land Bank is refocusing its strategy on development as core to its business to address its business challenges. The new focus will be on improving its financial position and realigning the bank's operations with its mandate.

Government has reaffirmed its support to the Land Bank by extending a capital guarantee of R1,5 billion and a further cash injection of R700 million to support its turnaround strategy and to provide a prudent level of capital adequacy to ensure that the bank fulfils its mandate.

Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa (Mafisa)

The former Department of Agriculture introduced a microfinance scheme, known as Mafisa, to assist emerging farmers and agribusinesses with production credit and to facilitate savings mobilisation among communities through self-help groups and cooperatives.

This scheme is implemented through a variety of financial institutions, which have to be accredited by the department and subsequently sign participation agreements.

The scheme was first implemented on a pilot basis during which more than 5 000 clients received loans. Some 2 000 clients also received funding from Mafisa beyond the pilot phase.

Following the conclusion of the pilot phase, full roll-out commenced. The full roll-out activities include increasing participating institutions through which the products and services of this scheme would be accessed.

While the pilot phase only used state-owned entities, the full roll-out includes both private and public entities.

The department, in partnership with Khula Enterprise Finance, has established a credit-portfolio indemnity scheme known as the Khula-Mafisa Fund. The purpose of the scheme is to encourage financial institutions to provide credit to emerging agricultural entrepreneurs with viable enterprises but that lack collateral.

For the 2009/10 financial year, R150 million was allocated for expanding the Mafisa scheme. Mafisa has committed a total of R545 million to fund emerging farmers. The Khula-Mafisa initiative has managed to leverage R116 million from commercial banks to provide funding to those emerging farmers who are able to repay loans but may not necessarily have sufficient security.

Mafisa has identified savings mobilisation as one of the products that could enable cooperatives, self-help groups and farmer organisations to become sustainable and self-reliant financial intermediaries and to use the savings strength to access credit as most of the poor households do not have security/collateral to get a loan.

The strategy on savings mobilisation was developed to provide a broad framework to promote and encourage the culture of savings to build assets, income generation and wealth creation for sustainable development among the rural working poor.

The department is also responsible for agricultural cooperative development. Subsequent to the relocation of the cooperative function from the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries to the Department of Trade and Industry, the Cooperative Development Policy and Strategy for South Africa was developed. These documents served as the basis for sector departments in the development of their own cooperative policies and strategies.

Agri South Africa

Agri SA was established in 1904 as the South African Agricultural Union. It serves some 70 000 large and small commercial farmers.

Agri SA promotes, on behalf of its members, the sustainable profitability and stability of commercial agricultural producers and agribusinesses through its involvement in and input at national and international levels. Agri SA is structured into three chambers, namely the General Affairs Chamber, which deals with general agricultural policy matters on behalf of nine provincial affiliates; the Commodity Chamber, which deals with subsector policy issues on behalf of 25 commodity organisations; and the Agricultural Business Chamber (ABC) with 65 agribusinesses as members.

Agri SA's annual congress, representative of its affiliates, is its highest decision-making body and also elects the organisation's president, deputy president and chamber vice presidents.

Agri SA is a member of Business Unity South Africa, the International Chamber of Commerce, the International Federation of Agricultural Producers, the Southern African Federation of Agricultural Unions and the Cairns Group Farm Leaders.

Agri SA participates in the Presidential Commercial Agriculture Working Group that deals with policy matters, specifically in terms of the Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture.

Agri SA's policy advocacy includes work on trade negotiations, industrial policy, labour laws, training, taxation, financing, land reform, farmer development, environmental affairs, water rights, farm safety, law and order, infrastructure, technology development and transfer, statistical information and local government matters.

It publishes a bimonthly magazine and a weekly electronic newsletter, and also runs a regular radio programme in collaboration with the South African Broadcasting Corporation.

Agricultural Business Chamber

The ABC is a sectoral body representing an important component of South Africa's business sector.

ABC members operate more than 2 000 service centres countrywide with more than 100 000 employees. In many rural areas, members of the ABC form the business hub of the community and make a key contribution towards maintaining rural infrastructure. The ABC is an integral part of the Agri SA Group, and is associated with Business South Africa, various international bodies and the International Agribusiness Management Association. Agricultural businesses play a significant role in the economy of South Africa as handlers, processors and marketers of agricultural products, and as suppliers of production input and services.

Transvaal Agricultural Union South Africa (TAU SA)

TAU SA was established in 1897 as the Transvaal Agricultural Union. In 2002, the union reorganised to become a national agricultural union serving commercial farmers. It also renders services to its members in terms of:

- property rights
- economic issues
- safety and security.

TAU SA conducts a variety of projects to enhance the concept of successful agriculture.

National African Farmers Union of South Africa (Nafu)

Nafu is an independent, non-governmental, voluntary organisation representing farmers in South Africa. The organisation was formed in 1991 with the assistance and support of the National African Federated Chamber of Commerce and Industries.

Agribusiness as an economic sector

Agribusiness can be divided into two categories: non-cooperative business ventures and cooperatives or transformed cooperatives.

Non-cooperative business ventures, also known as profit companies, are involved in the production and distribution of agricultural equipment and production requisites, and the marketing of agricultural products.

Cooperatives dominate the distribution of intermediate requisites and the handling, processing and marketing of agricultural products.

Agricultural cooperatives or agribusinesses are regarded as the farmers' own independent business organisations. They supply their members with production input such as seed, fertiliser, fuel and repair services. They also provide credit and extension services, and handle a large percentage of their members' produce.

Central cooperatives in the country aim to supply the primary cooperatives with specific services such as the processing and marketing of agricultural products, insurance services for crops, short-term cover and farming requisites.

The structure of agribusiness has changed substantially since the deregulation of the agricultural sector into a free-market economy in 1994. Many cooperatives have transformed into private companies, consolidations and mergers have occurred, international groups have entered South Africa, and agribusinesses have listed on the JSE Limited.

Training and research

South African agriculture has a strong research component. Many of the people involved are world leaders in their respective fields.

The ARC, an autonomous statutory body set up in terms of the Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990), is the largest agricultural research organisation in Africa. The ARC provides research support to the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, and the nine provincial departments of agriculture. ARC scientific expertise supports most of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries' regulatory directorates, such as the directorates for animal health, public veterinary health, agricultural production, agricultural resource cultivation and plant health.

The ARC also supports other agricultural institutions such as the Registrar of Livestock Improvement and Identification, the Registrar of Brands, the South African Veterinary Council and the Perishable Products Export Control Board. (See Chapter 20: *Science and technology*.)

South Africa has a number of specialised agricultural high schools and regular schools offering a comprehensive range of agricultural subjects. Prospective farmers can be trained at 11 colleges. Degree courses and B. Tech degrees are offered by the faculties of agriculture at various universities.

Veterinary surgeons are trained at the University of Pretoria's Faculty of Veterinary Sciences at Onderstepoort.

International relations

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries' Directorate: International Relations facilitates and coordinates international activities on both multilateral and bilateral bases.

The department is a member of the FAO; the Consultative Group on International Agricultural Research; the Food, Agriculture and Natural Resources Sector of the SADC; the International Seed-Testing Association; the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development's Seed Schemes; the Union for the Protection of New Varieties of Plants; World Organisation for Animal Health; the International Organisation of Vine and Wine (OIV); and the International Cotton Advisory Committee. Contributing to the political, social and economic development of Africa is an international priority for the department.

Agriculture continues to be the mainstay of African economies and is an important driver for socio-economic growth.

South Africa's agricultural engagement in Africa is guided by a clear sense of the huge potential for agricultural trade, training, research and technical cooperation opportunities existing on the continent.

The directorate developed the International Agricultural Strategy, which sets priorities for international engagement in the medium term. The strategy is guided by South Africa's foreign-

policy and economic-development objectives. The priorities are:

- consolidation of the African Agenda
- active participation in the AU
- active participation in and efficient implementation of the programme of the SADC food, agriculture and natural resources; and trade, finance and investment directorates
- sustainable development and poverty alleviation through the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)
- implementation of the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) Agreement.

International trade

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries' Directorate: International Trade analyses international trade and related policies, advises on multilateral and bilateral agricultural trade policy, presents the interests of South African agriculture in various trade-negotiating initiatives and promotes trade-development initiatives, which are aimed at building the capacity of new and small-scale exporters to participate in international trade. The directorate works closely with the Department of Trade and Industry, and takes responsibility for the agricultural part of trade negotiations in the World Trade Organisation's (WTO) multilateral negotiations as well as in various bilateral trade-negotiating initiatives.

The directorate has reviewed the Agricultural Trade Strategy of 2000 to ensure that policies and implementation are aligned. In addition, the directorate continuously conducts strategic market research to inform the positioning of the agricultural export sector in the global trading environment. It investigates and evaluates export opportunities for agricultural products on world markets.

These include strategies to access markets where preferential trade agreements do not exist, such as China, India, Russia and some Middle-Eastern countries.

The directorate facilitates national capacity-building and the training of role players in the use of trade tools. This will increase the capacity of all role players (government at all levels and trade-promotion agencies) to support new agricultural exporters in their endeavours.

The directorate is responsible for implementing, monitoring and reporting on South Africa's commitments under the WTO Agreement on Agriculture. South Africa works with its alliance partners of the G20, the Cairns Group and the Africa Group.

The department's objectives are to:

- ensure policy space to support South Africa's developing agricultural sector with the programmes that new farmers need
- bring about a substantial reduction in trade and production-distorting subsidies and export subsidies given by developed countries
- improve the access of South African agricultural exports to other markets.

The overall objective is to establish a fair trading system in which South African agriculture can compete on a level playing field.

South Africa maintains bilateral free-trade agreements with countries in Africa, the EU and the European Free Trade Association.

South Africa and its four neighbours, Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland, form the Sacu.

This was created in 1910, and is the oldest customs union in the world. It provides for duty-free trade in goods among its member states. The directorate contributes towards the implementation of the agricultural aspects of the Sacu Agreement that came into effect in July 2004.

The SADC Trade Protocol was implemented in 2000. This provides for a free-trade area, which was launched in August 2008.

The South African-EU Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement (TDCA), a comprehensive free-trade agreement, was implemented on 1 January 2000. The department has introduced a system for making full use of opportunities created by the agreement. This includes providing information to potential exporters, as well as the administration of export quotas granted to South Africa under the agreement.

The department issues export permits for various products such as wine, fruit juice, canned fruit, cut flowers, proteas, cheese and frozen strawberries to be exported to the EU at reduced levels of duty. With the enlargement of the EU from 15 to 27 member states, the agreement was extended to include the new members. A review of the TDCA is underway. The review of the trade chapter has been merged with the SADC-EU Economic Partnership Agreement negotiations, which are underway.

The Fixed Preferences Agreement, which includes 150 agricultural tariff lines, has been concluded between Sacu and Mercosur.

Negotiations between Sacu and India towards a preferential trade agreement, started in October 2007.

The Directorate: International Trade has consulted widely with the agricultural industry, and will endeavour, through its participation in these

negotiations, to open market-access opportunities for those products with export potential to this market.

Sacu is pursuing a trade, investment and development cooperation agreement with the USA. This framework enables a series of trade-enhancing agreements. South Africa also benefits from the US' Africa Growth and Opportunity Act, which offers non-reciprocal tariff preferences into the US market. Fruit juices, citrus fruit and wine exports are performing particularly well in that market.

International agreements and conventions

South Africa is a signatory to a number of international agreements and conventions, requiring that the matter of sustainable resource use and management be addressed in a responsible way.

Agenda 21 is an action plan and blueprint for sustainable development, and was one of five documents adopted by more than 178 governments at the UN Conference on Environment and Development in Rio de Janeiro in 1992. Specific to sustainable resource use is Chapter 14, which addresses the promotion of agriculture and rural development.

International conventions that apply to aspects of sustainable resource use include the Convention on Biological Diversity, the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change and the Convention to Combat Desertification (CCD). The CCD requires that South Africa should draw up a national action programme, which will be integrated into a regional programme for the SADC region. All these activities are receiving attention under the leadership of the Department of Environmental Affairs, involving all stakeholders, including the national and provincial departments of agriculture.

Import and export control

The Import Export Policy Unit of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries' Directorate: Animal Health aims to formulate and support policies to reduce sanitary (health) risks in the import and export of animals and animal products.

Import requirements vary according to the product and the animal-health situation in individual countries.

South Africa is an active member of the OIE. Disease reports are received from the OIE and through direct contact with veterinary administrations in exporting countries.

Trade in animals and animal products is based on a series of requirements considered appropriate by the importing country to prevent the entry of diseases.

The department is one of the key regulatory state departments with the authority to enforce laws enacted by Parliament to protect the South African consumer, producer and farmer; the environment; and other national interests.

The department's regulatory activities regarding plants and plant products are primarily enforced by the directorates agricultural products inspection services (APIS) and plant health.

In addition, the South African Revenue Service participates in this effort by detaining imported goods when requirements are not met.

The Directorate*:* APIS is involved in inspections and other related activities aimed at ensuring that imported luggage, cargo, mail, animals and plants and their products are free from quarantine pests and diseases, and comply with genetic resources and quality-assurance prescripts and standards.

Border inspections are conducted by the Division: Ports of Entry Point Control at designated ports of entry. The directorate has introduced the use of detector dogs at the OR Tambo International Airport in Kempton Park. These dogs are trained to detect regulated agricultural products at international arrival halls. This has been one of the mechanisms that APIS is using to intensify regulated agricultural product inspections at points of entry.

Pre-border inspections are aimed at exports for compliance with international requirements of trading partners. Post-border inspections are intended for those regulated articles that were given extended detentions at inspected borders or escaped the border-control inspections.

These inspections, together with national control inspections, are conducted by the National Plants and Plant Products Inspection Services for compliance with plant-health, plant-improvement, genetic-resources and food- and quality-assurance legislation. The division also carries out various surveys around the country.

The Directorate*:* Plant Health's core mandates are to manage the risks associated with plant pests and diseases by developing and amending phytosanitary legislation and facilitating safe trade in plants and plant products.

Control measures are published to prevent or combat the spread of pests to other areas in the country. Import control is vital to prevent the introduction of potentially harmful foreign pests.

Prospective importers of plants and plant products have to apply for an import permit for those controlled goods mentioned in the Agricultural Pests Act, 1983.

The Pest Risk-Analysis (PRA) Division conducts scientific analyses of risks posed, based on scientific data and specific phytosanitary requirements set out according to the phytosanitary risk(s) involved. These are stipulated in the permit issued to the importer. Importers are obliged to present the material to the official inspection representative at the port of entry.

The Directorate: Plant Health's Division Plant Quarantine Services manages the risks associated with the importation of plant propagation material. This is achieved by prescribing a compulsory quarantine detention period for specific high-risk categories as determined by the PRA Division. The core function of Diagnostic Services is to prevent the introduction of harmful exotic plant pests by testing and auditing all imported plant material.

The Early Warning Division ensures sound plant health-risk management-implementation services through surveillance, detection and rapid response.

Early detection of economically important exotic pests prevents the spread of such pests, thereby maintaining pest-free areas in respect of specific pests. Closely linked to early detection is proper pest-awareness programmes to ensure the agricultural sector and the general public are kept informed. The International Standards Division aims to facilitate effective and efficient official phytosanitary communication between the Directorate*:* Plant Health and its international, regional and other national plant-health clients.

This is done through the management of national plant-protection contact points and participation in initiatives of external clients such as the WTO Committee on Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures, the IPPC and its working groups and committees, the Inter-African Phytosanitary Council, other national plant-protection organisations or governments, research institutes, as well as any member of the international agricultural trade sector.

The Import/Export Protocols Division's core function is to ensure and maintain market access for South African plants and plant products. This includes exchanging plant-health information and expertise in terms of bilateral engagements, and maintaining bilateral export/import programmes in compliance with trading-partner requirements according to established protocols.

Food safety and quality assurance

Policy on Animal Feeds

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries published the South African Policy on Animal Feeds on 30 April 2008. This document is intended to serve as a framework for the regulation and legislation of animal feeds in South Africa.

South African Pesticide Initiative Programme (Sapip)

The final evaluation of the Sapip was done from 10 February to 20 March 2008 by a consortium called Agri-Systems. In terms of the evaluation report, the programme is considered as an activity rather than results-directed and is regarded as extremely efficient in the implementation of activities.

The programme was generally regarded as having achieved its objectives.

However, there were areas which needed to be sustained, such as the Emerging Farmer Working Group, to ensure that issues affecting emerging farmers receive continuous attention; and the chemical maximum residue limit information hub, which was critical in setting up maximum residue limits for minor crops.

Food-control system

A task team, made up of representatives from the departments of agriculture, of health, and of trade and industry, succeeded in appointing a service-provider to compile a country profile, which will inform the strategy to be followed in implementing a comprehensive food-control system.

World Wine Trade Group (WWTG)

The WWTG is an informal grouping of industry and government representatives from wine-producing countries, founded in 1998. The group aims to share information, collaborate on a variety of international issues and create an environment for free trade in wine. The group consists of Argentina, Australia, Canada, Chile, Mexico, New Zealand, South Africa and the USA.

The Agreement on Mutual Acceptance of Oenological Practices and the Agreement on Requirements for Wine Labelling form the basis of the WWTG. These are enabling agreements to facilitate the trade of wine among signatory parties by recognising each other's wine-making and labelling practices as being in compliance with their own. This significantly improves trade flows among the signatory parties, thereby reducing transaction costs relating to exports.

In a short period of time, the WWTG has proven to be an important force in influencing the regulation of the international wine trade. Beginning with a shared vision and a commitment to open international trade, participating countries have begun to reshape the regulatory environment in which the international wine business operates.

Progress at the International Wine Office

Member states of the OIV met on 20 June 2008 in Verona, Italy, for the sixth General Assembly of the OIV.

Among other things, the General Assembly adopted by consensus the OIV *Guide on Environmentally Sustainable Viticulture*. This document is a guide to setting up environmentally sustainable production in the international sector, principally concerning production, the processing of grapes in addition to packaging of products, while taking into account the larger considerations of sustainable production.

National analytical services

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries' laboratories in Pretoria and Stellenbosch support the units within the department responsible for formulating and updating regulations regarding agricultural foods of plant origin and liquor products.

The laboratory in Stellenbosch uses state-of-the-art equipment (a liquid chromatography mass spectrophotometer) to detect low concentrations of compounds used in wine adulteration. Two projects have been completed:

- adulteration of Sauvignon Blanc wine with foreign methoxypyrazines
- investigation into the bromine content of South African wines.

Following the success of these projects, improved market access can be achieved by South African wine producers and confidence in South African wines among the international community will be gained.

The Pretoria laboratory also uses a liquid chromatography mass spectrophotometer to expand the scope of chemical residue tested for by the laboratory as recommended by the EU's Food and Veterinary Office.

Meat safety

Food safety, quality-risk awareness and education programmes

The overall functions of the Directorate: Food Safety and Quality Assurance are carried out to create an enabling environment for food-business operators along the value chain to ensure food safety and quality of agricultural products from farm to fork.

The directorate carries out its mandate in terms of the legislation, regulations, requirements, norms and standards for both local and export markets. To ensure industry compliance with food safety and quality standards, and to foster understanding of management decisions by clients, the directorate conducts food safety and quality education and awareness programmes. Through these programmes, the directorate reaches out to clients consisting of industry associations, farmers, exporters, retailers, manufacturers and beneficiaries of the LARP. The awareness programmes are also aimed at consumers and the general public to promote the consumption of safe, nutritious and quality food.

In terms of the Meat Safety Act, 2000 (Act 40 of 2000), no person may sell or provide meat for human or animal consumption unless the animal from which the meat is sourced has been slaughtered at a registered abattoir. The Directorate: Veterinary Services provides for regulations under the Meat Safety Act, 2000 and, in cooperation with the provinces, ensures that the essential national standards for abattoirs and meat safety required by the Act are implemented countrywide.

The directorate is responsible for monitoring standards at export abattoirs and for the safety of imported meat. It provides inspection services at a number of export abattoirs to ensure compliance with EU requirements.

Forestry

The forestry industry is one of the strategic economic sectors in South Africa with a significant contribution towards economic growth and job creation. The sector has been identified as one of the important contributors to AsgiSA as a result of its intensive operations, which involve the employment of people from the rural communities of South Africa.

In recognising the important role of the forestry sector in the economy of the country, and in line with the provisions of the Forestry Charter, steps have been taken by role players to ensure that there is continued and sustainable use of forestry land for timber production.

In 2009, the forestry responsibility of the then Department of Water Affairs and Forestry was moved to the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries. With the new mandate, the department will make a significant contribution to eradi-

cating poverty through the Forestry Livelihoods Programme, by focusing on basic needs, saving of cash resources and a safety-net. Firewood, building poles, medicinal plants and edible fruits are all critical to the livelihoods of the rural poor.

The department will develop human resources through forestry-sector skills-development initiatives and promote employment through commercial forestry activities such as forestation and downstream activities. The integration of forestry programmes into provincial and municipal development plans will assist the Plant a Million Trees Campaign. Government and its partners aspired in 2009 to exceed the 1,8 million trees they planted in 2008.

The department will actively pursue the forestation targets of 10 000 ha and the implementation of the Forest Enterprise Programme. The focus will remain on encouraging cooperatives, simplifying and streamlining the regulatory environment, training and extension, supporting the implementation of rural credit and offering incentives for new entrants.

In terms of the economic growth and development that forestry offers, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is working closely with other government structures in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal to fast-track the afforestation licensing process, which involves support from a number of other provincial departments.

These new forestry areas will be singularly important in transforming and growing the forestry sector and, as such, afforestation forms an important part of the Forestry Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Charter, which was signed in May 2008. The vision of the charter is that of:

- an inclusive and equitable forestry sector, in which black women and men fully participate
- a forestry sector that is characterised by sustainable use of resources, sustainable growth, international competitiveness and profitability for all its participants
- a forestry sector that contributes meaningfully to poverty eradication, job creation, rural development and economic value-adding activities.

Applicants for afforestation have been increasing rapidly. Under the charter, government aims to process about 15 000 ha per year for the next 10 years to get a net increase in forestry of about 10 000 ha per year.

The department has almost halved the original time of nearly 18 months to process a licence application, and has plans in place to further reduce this time frame. It also plans to use the progressive provisions of the National Forests Act, 1998 (Act 84 of 1998), to provide direct support to communities in this and other forest-enterprise areas. Strategic interventions such as the establishment of the special-purpose vehicle AsgiSA Eastern Cape (Pty) Limited will assist in driving the implementation of the forestry programme in these key areas.

Afforestation will take place in rural areas where there are few other viable opportunities for job creation and economic activity. The development of these additional raw material resources will attract greater processing capacity in the form of sawmills, board mills, chipping plants and treatment plants. All these will lead to broad economic growth. For example, through this afforestation, an additional R500 million per year could be generated from these plantations in economic activity.

The forestry sector is an important contributor to GDP and employment. It employs about 170 000 people (107 000 in forestry operations and a further 63 000 in downstream processing plants) and contributes almost R18,5 billion annually to the South African economy. The impact of the sector is felt particularly in rural areas and there is significant scope for this sector to expand and thereby contribute towards uplifting those in the Second Economy.

Over the past few years, much work has been done in the forestry sector to improve yields, restructure institutions, provide community access and redefine government's role. The Forestry BBBEE Charter recognises the link between the transformation and growth of the sector.

The forestry programme also encompasses expanded greening and tree-planting projects. The programme prioritises work on fire-fighting programmes (for example, the Working on Fire Programme) and encourages the establishment of fire-protection associations (FPAs).

Indigenous forests are indispensable to the country's heritage, beauty, wildlife and environment, while commercial forests provide jobs and economic opportunities for many people, especially in rural areas. Forestry represents a substantial investment in the country and plays an important role in the Integrated Rural Development Programme.

Plantations cover about 1,3 million ha of South Africa. Over 80% of them are found in Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern

Cape. They produced almost over 20 million m^3 (or 17,8 mt) of commercial roundwood, worth R5,2 billion, according to a study conducted in 2007. They provide direct employment for about 107 000 people, of whom 67 500 are in formal employment, 30 000 are contract workers and 37 500 are small growers and their helpers.

Including the processed products, the total industry turnover was about R18,5 billion in 2007, including R9,8 billion worth of wood-pulp.

A pulp and paper log intake of about 13,9 million m^3; mining timber of 842 000 m^3; charcoal of 267 000 m^3; 4,4 million m^3 of sawlogs; and veneer logs and poles of about 417 000 m^3 were transferred to processing plants in 2007.

The sales of timber from primary processors by volume in 2007 were as follows: sawn timber, 1,9 million m^3; 2,2 mt pulp; 468 000 t mining timber; panel products, 820 000 m^3; poles, 275 000 m^3; charcoal, 12 000 t; chips/mill residues about 4,9 mt; and firewood, 25 000 t.

Between 390 000 and 560 000 people depend on plantation forestry for their livelihoods, particularly in the rural areas.

About half of the more than 1 700 indigenous tree and shrub species found in South Africa grow along the south and east coasts and on the southern and south-eastern slopes of inland mountains. The other half is spread over the interior plateaux.

Forestry initiatives

Two different trees of the year are nominated annually: a common variety and a scarcer, possibly endangered, species. The three trees of the year for 2009 were: *Acacia galpinii* (monkey thorn), *Halleria lucida* (tree fuchsia) and *Pterocarpus rotundifolius* (round-leaved teak).

National Arbour Week is celebrated annually at the beginning of September to encourage the greening of South Africa.

The objective of Arbour Week is to promote awareness of the need for planting and preserving indigenous trees throughout South Africa. It highlights the opportunities for sustainable economic development, community participation, poverty alleviation and job creation in forestry to create a better life for all. The theme for Arbour Week 2009 was *Plant Trees – Save Our Planet*.

The Arbour Week Campaign aims to:

- promote improved knowledge of trees, particularly indigenous trees, and their importance
- stress the necessity for everyone to contribute to the greening of South Africa by planting and caring for trees
- highlight the vital roles of trees in the natural environment
- contribute to the achievement of green, dignified and healthy environments in all parts of the country
- encourage the youth to participate in tree-planting activities and related environmental-education programmes.

It highlights the opportunities for sustainable economic development; community participation; poverty alleviation and job creation in forestry, thereby contributing towards growth, development and a better life for all. The target audience includes all South Africans but more specifically rural communities, municipalities and schools.

South Africa has a rich heritage of trees. The Champion Tree Project is aimed at identifying and protecting individual trees of national conservation importance under the National Forests Act, 1998. Trees can be nominated on the basis of their size, age, aesthetic value, cultural-historic value or importance for tourism. Only trees of national importance will be protected. In the long run, however, provincial and local authorities will be encouraged to develop their own local Champion Tree lists.

Individual and groups of trees were shortlisted as champion trees by a panel of experts from a list of proposed trees considered to be of national conservation importance and deserving national importance. Among the listed trees are:

- the famous Tsitsikamma big tree along the Garden Route
- the Post Office milkwood tree of Mossel Bay
- the Sagole baobab in Limpopo (one of the two largest trees in South Africa)
- camphor trees planted at Vergelegen Estate in the Western Cape three centuries ago.

Guidelines have been developed for the use of these trees to ensure their continued economic and ecological benefits to South Africans.

The Champion Tree Project led to the discovery of exceptionally large trees. In Aderne Gardens in Cape Town, officials measured an enormous Indian rubber fig with a trunk circumference of more than 11 m and a crown diameter of more than 44 m.

Applying the international formula for tree size that combines height, trunk size and crown diameter, it was discovered that this tree has a size index similar to the Sagole baobab in Limpopo. This means that the title for largest tree in the country is now shared by two trees at opposite ends of South Africa, one an indigenous tree in the far north and the other an exotic tree in the far south.

By August 2009, 44 trees had been declared national champion trees.

Contributing to socio-economic reform and growth

Government recognises that BEE will not be effective if it does not have the support of the private sector.

The BBBEE Charter for the Forest Sector will be instrumental in achieving the objectives of the scorecard as suggested by the Department of Trade and Industry.

Forestry enterprise development (FED) relates to the concept of using forests and forest-based resources as a vehicle for economic growth, employment and socio-economic upliftment that takes people from a subsistence livelihood system into a market economy. The concept is also central to the department's pro-poor agenda and a key component of BBBEE in the forestry sector.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries supports FED. This includes transferring state forests, developing an afforestation strategy for the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal, and including forestry as a key sector in provincial growth and development plans.

The Directorate: Forestry Development supports the establishment of community projects through regional forestry staff.

Current projects include beekeeping, which is a partnership with the ARC, and establishing medicinal nurseries in partnership with various stakeholders.

Following restructuring, the commercial plantation forests of the South African Forestry Company Limited (Safcol) and the then Department of Water Affairs and Forestry were combined and packaged into five stand-alone special-purpose vehicles, operating as wholly owned subsidiaries of Safcol.

It is estimated that upwards of 50% to 60% of the current afforested area of commercial forestry plantations is subject to land claims. Given the importance of the industry in terms of its contribution to the South African economy and to the uplifting of rural communities, it is essential that these benefits are not undermined through unsustainable land-reform initiatives.

In recognition of this, the industry, through Forestry South Africa, has reached agreement with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform and the Land Claims Commission on post-settlement support models that will be implemented on afforested land that is restituted to beneficiary communities.

These models represent a win-win situation for both land owners and new beneficiaries. Not only will the affected land be continued to be used for forestry on a sustainable basis, ensuring the economic survival of the forest products industry, but it will also enhance the skills base and financial well-being of those communities that are new owners of the land.

The Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights undertook to fast-track the settlement of all claims on forest land, with a target to settle 90% of the claims within five years of the signing of the charter.

The land includes planted forest areas as well as open areas valued at a total of R38,7 million.

The proposed model for settling claims on forest land provides for the State to purchase the land for the beneficiaries, excluding the trees. The community then leases the land to the forestry company for an agreed period, which is linked to the rotation of the trees.

A task team comprising representatives from government and Forestry South Africa has been established to deal with the execution of the framework for settling claims on forest land.

South African Forestry Company Limited

Safcol manages and develops state commercial forests. The company's activities include forestry management and timber harvesting and processing, both domestically and in neighbouring countries. The company's main subsidiary is Komatiland Forests (KLF), operating in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal.

Softwood saw timber is sold in South Africa, and soft and hardwood saw timber and pulp wood in Mozambique. KLF has an 80% shareholding in the Mozambican forestry company, Ifloma, while the Mozambican Government holds the remaining 20%.

Cabinet's decision on the role of Safcol and the privatisation of KLF was finalised in March 2007. Transaction guidelines were prepared to assist the board with the decision on winding down the

The Plant a Million Trees Campaign was launched in 2007. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries aims to promote the planting of one million trees a year, of which 70% should be fruit trees and 30% indigenous ornamentals. About 1,1 million trees were planted by various programme partners in the first three quarters of 2008/09.

activities of KLF by March 2009. The decision was revisited after the department realised that about 60% of the land on which KLF operates is subject to land claims, and that the land claims settlement process will affect the disposal of the assets by the target date of March 2009.

Due to the land claim status, the Minister of Public Enterprises extended the disposal of Safcol by five years to 2011/12, to allow for the resolution of the land claims. The company was subsequently mandated to develop a five-year business and corporate plan to maintain, and where possible, enhance the value of the business. The remaining shares held by Safcol in other companies, such as Singisi, Siyaqhubeka, Amathole and Mountains to Oceans, are also under review.

A process has been initiated with the Department of Rural Development and Land Affairs and the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries to resolve the land claims.

Industry and exports

The industry was a net exporter of almost R3,5 billion worth of goods in 2008, of which more than 99,8% was in the form of converted value-added products.

The forest-product industry ranks among the top exporting industries in the country, having contributed 2,25% to total exports and 1,55% to total imports in 2008. Capital investment in the industry amounted to some R40 billion in 2008.

The value of forest-product exports grew by 166% over the past decade, from R5,6 billion in 1998 to R14,8 billion in 2008. In real terms (taking inflation into account), this growth was 50% or a compounded real growth of 4,1% per year over that period. However, the net trade balance in foreign trade in forest products increased from 1998 by 42% in nominal terms (minus 19,8% in real terms) to R3,5 billion in 2008.

In 2008, paper products were the most important (R6 139 billion or 42% of the total), followed by pulp (R4 643 billion or 31%), solid-wood products (R3 651 billion or 25%) and other products (R337 million or 2%). Woodchip exports, which are exported mainly to Japan, accounted for 71% (R2 597 billion) of total solid-wood product exports.

As with other export-based industries, the recent weakness of the Rand has had a positive effect on the Rand-value of forest-product exports during the past two years, with the total value of exports in 2008 being R2,6 billion more than in the previous year and some R3,6 million or 0,32% higher than its previous peak in 2002.

Stringent environmental codes of practice are implemented in all plantation and processing activities. The Chief Directorate: Forestry of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries promotes optimal development of forestry and arboriculture in South Africa. The National Forests Advisory Council (NFAC) was established in terms of the National Forests Act, 1998. It advises the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries on all aspects of forestry in the country.

The NFAC is actively involved in developing local criteria, indicators and standards for sustainable forest management (SFM), and makes recommendations on how public access to state-owned forests can be improved.

Achieving sustainable forest management

Apart from ecological considerations in determining where it is appropriate to grow trees, there are other ecological, social and economic considerations that must be addressed when growing trees.

These criteria, indicators and standards form the basis for monitoring the sustainability of forestry operations in commercial and natural forests. Managers and owners are required to report against these criteria, which also form useful guidelines for new entrants to the sector.

The commercial forestry industry in South Africa is committed to practising SFM and is a world leader in forest certification. Over one million hectares, or over 80% of the entire planted area of commercial forestry plantations in South Africa, is certified by the Forest Stewardship Council and the ISO 14001 certification schemes as being sustainably managed. By October 2007, 1 622 196 ha of plantation forestry land (planted and conservation areas combined) in South Africa

The R20-million Furniture Incubation Centre was launched in April 2009, at Mthatha in the Eastern Cape. The incubation centre will kick-start the redevelopment and growth of the furniture and wood industries in the region and the province. The project is envisaged to further diversify and expand the value chain of the forestry sector in the region. Business incubation is one of the many and important instruments that government uses in its commitment to tackle poverty and unemployment, and is in line with the country's National Industrial Policy Framework.

Nineteen local learners have completed training programmes in wood machining and upholstery, and subsequently established five small businesses.

was certified by the FSC, the second-largest area in the southern hemisphere after Brazil. There were no certified plantations in 1996.

Although large forestry companies do not own all the certified forests, having their own specialist environmental departments has helped the rapid expansion of certification, as they ensure that land is managed according to their own stringent environmental codes of practice. To promote transparency, members of the public are invited to join company staff when regular audits are carried out.

There has also been a large increase in the number of non-corporate growers who have become certified. This can be attributed to factors such as the FSC's acceptance of group-certification schemes and the availability of local FSC auditors, both of which have reduced the cost of certification considerably. The introduction of small, low-intensity managed forest audits enables small and community forestry schemes to be FSC-certified.

As part of its commitment to the practice of SFM, the forestry industry is also involved in the NFAC's Committee for SFM, which develops criteria, indicators and standards for SFM, tailored to meet South Africa's specific conditions. The industry, in conjunction with the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, is also involved in an FSC national initiative, the result of which will be the acceptance and use by FSC auditors of criteria, indicators and standards for SFM, which take into account South African conditions. These were field tested and finalised during 2009.

The indigenous forests of the southern Cape received FSC-certification – a first on the continent for high forests. It is a major step towards the sustainable management of the country's natural forests.

Legislation

The National Forests Act, 1998 reflects the vision for the future of forestry in South Africa. This vision emphasises SFM, and explains how people and communities can use forests without destroying them. The Act sets out rules for protecting indigenous forests, and ensures that the public has reasonable access to state-forest land for recreational, cultural, spiritual and educational purposes.

South Africa is richly endowed with more than 1 700 tree species. Some are threatened, and a total of 47 species are now protected under the Act.

Protected trees may not be cut, damaged or sold without a licence. The listing of protected trees is not primarily aimed at preventing the use of such trees, but at ensuring sustainable use through licensing-control measures.

The National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998 (Act 101 of 1998), bans open-air fires when the risk of veld blazes in an area is high. It also introduces the concept of voluntary FPAs formed by landowners. It further obliges the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries to operate a national fire-rating system in consultation with the South African Weather Service (SAWS) and fire associations. The Act also allows the minister to impose minimum fire-fighting requirements on landowners.

Protection of life and property is a basic human need and the department has been moving ahead in implementing the National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998. Owing to the high incidences of fires during extreme weather conditions, it is a priority for the department to ensure registration of FPAs. The department advised and assisted FPAs in compiling business plans, including the principles of risk assessment. The department plans to review FPAs' performance regularly. There is also ongoing awareness-raising and information-provision on policy matters. The department's *Veldfire Bulletin* is produced quarterly. Special bulletins are also produced occasionally, depending on the need, such as the special *Veldfire Bulletin on FPAs*.

The National Fire Danger Rating System is an early warning system for veldfires. The SAWS operates the system and issues daily veldfire warnings as it does with other weather information. Warnings are communicated to FPAs, the departmental fire advisers, Disaster Management, Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs and other role players.

By June 2008, 20 FPAs had been established.

Indigenous forests

There are around 530 000 ha of indigenous or natural forests in the country, which occur mainly along the southern and eastern escarpment, the coastal belt and in sheltered kloofs or ravines.

Natural forest cover is slow, which has led to the development of the commercial forest sector in South Africa over the last 100 years. Nonetheless, natural forests have continued to play a major role in the livelihoods and well-being of many rural communities.

There has been an increase in the use of natural forests as sources of medicine, building

material, fuel wood and food. An estimated 80% of South Africa's population still uses medicinal plants, most of which are sourced from natural forests. South Africa now has a detailed inventory of all its natural forests, which is used to accurately monitor changes in forest areas.

The then Department of Water Affairs and Forestry also completed a forest-type classification for natural forests, which are represented by 24 broad forest types. The Natural Forests Protected Areas System, completed for all forests in 2004, guides the setting aside and demarcation of natural forests as protected areas.

Systematic timber harvesting occurs in areas of the production-management class. Harvesting is concentrated on overmature trees, with logs being sold by tender and/or on public auction. On average, 3 750 m^3 of round logs are harvested annually (150 m^3 of stinkwood, 750 m^3 of yellowwood, 2 500 m^3 of Australian blackwood and 350 m^3 of other species). Another valuable product of the indigenous forests of South Africa is the seven-week fern *(Rumohra adiantiformis)*, which is harvested in the Knysna and Tsitsikamma forests.

The South African market for this fern is considerable and reaches its peak in September, when sales exceed 420 000 bunches.

Woodlands

Woodlands can be defined as vegetation formation dominated by trees, but not to the extent that the canopies are continuous and overlapping. Woodlands cover 29 million ha, constituting 21% of land cover.

This vegetation covers extensive areas in the low-lying, drier areas of Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga. Woodlands have thousands of species (5 900 plants, 175 mammals and 540 birds), of which the majority are used for one purpose or another.

In November 2008, a pair of professional tree climbers scaled the two tallest trees in Africa, also considered to be the tallest planted eucalyptus trees in the world. Recently dubbed the "Twin Giants of Magoebaskloof", these Saligna gum trees, part of a magnificent stand of tall trees on the Woodbush State Forest near Haenertsburg in Limpopo, were planted in 1906. The two trees were measured at 79 metres (259 feet) and 78,5 metres (257 feet) respectively, thus crowning the Twin Giants of Magoebaskloof as the tallest measured trees in Africa.

Woodlands are the most extensive vegetation type in southern Africa and dominate Africa as a whole. Globally, woodlands cover between an eighth and a sixth of the Earth's land surface.

The woodlands are, however, a valuable source of fuel, building material, craft-timber and a variety of non-timber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms, and form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people. The annual Marula-fruit (*Sclerocarya birrea*) harvest is worth some R1,1 million a year to rural communities.

Commercial forests

During the 1930s, government started establishing extensive plantations to make South Africa self-sufficient in its timber requirements, and to provide more job opportunities in a diversified economy during the depression. Commercial plantations of exotic species proved to be a sound investment and the private sector established large plantations of pine, eucalyptus and wattle trees. By mid-2007, the private sector owned 1 051 222 ha (or 83%) of the total plantation area of 1 266 194 ha, and virtually all the processing plants in the country.

The remaining 17% (214 972 ha) was under public ownership, although this figure includes KLF, the remaining Safcol package. The extent of public ownership has decreased significantly because of restructuring. In 2008, capital investment in these plantations stood at R20 billion, 54% of which was attributable to investment in trees. A further 21% was tied up in land, 16% in roads, 7% in fixed assets and 2% in machinery and equipment.

Plantation yields

Of the 1 266 194 ha of plantations in 2007, 54% were softwood species and 46% hardwood species. Some 36% of the plantation area was managed mainly for sawlog production, 55% for pulpwood and 5% for mining timber, while the balance of 4% was grown for the production of poles, matchwood (poplar) and other minor products.

Plantation yields vary from an average of 16 m^3 per ha per year for softwood, to 21 m^3 per ha per year for eucalyptus and 10 m^3 per ha per year for wattle (timber and bark). Likewise, the rotation ages vary from a maximum of 30 years in the case of pine sawlogs, to six to 10 years in the case of eucalyptus pulp and mining timber. Production from plantations amounted to over 20 million m^3 (or 17,8 mt) in 2007.

Primary wood-processing

South Africa has 178 primary wood-processing plants, 174 of which are owned by the private sector and four of which are owned by local and state authorities. Of these, 102 are sawmills; 13 are mining-timber sawmills; 38 pole-treating plants; 20 pulp, paper and board mills; one match factory; and four charcoal plants.

The total roundwood intake into these processing plants in 2007 was 19,8 million m^3, valued at R5,2 billion. The value of sales of timber products produced by these primary processing plants totalled R18,5 billion. Some R15,8 billion was invested in primary roundwood-processing plants (at book value). At market value, this increased to an estimated R40 billion.

The pulp industry in South Africa is dominated by two main pulp-and-paper manufacturing companies, Sappi and Mondi. They rank among the largest in the southern hemisphere, own assets in many parts of the world and are internationally listed.

The sawmilling industry produces sawn timber, which is used in producing solid-wood products, such as lumber for roof trusses and flooring, and consumer products, such as furniture. The furniture industry consumes about 305 000 m^3 of mainly industrial timber.

A large number of companies operate in this sector, with the five biggest companies contributing 51% of total production. Some 49% of total sawn timber is produced in Mpumalanga.

Research and training

South Africa has world-class forestry-research infrastructure and personnel, with almost 2% of the forestry industry's turnover (private and public sectors) devoted to research. The priority fields of research include tree-breeding through applied silviculture, climate and soils, environmental impact and management solutions, forest biology, hydrology and forest protection.

The major institutes servicing the research needs of the industry are the Institute of Commercial Forestry Research in Pietermaritzburg, the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnology Institute, and the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research in Pretoria. The South African National Biodiversity Institute also plays an important role in terms of species protection.

The total annual forest-sector research and development investment in South Africa is approximately R163 million, more than 80% of which is funded by the commercial forest industry.

The faculties of agricultural and forestry sciences at the universities of Stellenbosch, KwaZulu-Natal and Venda offer forestry degrees. The Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (George Saasveld Campus) offers diplomas and limited degree courses in forestry disciplines. The Natal University of Technology offers a diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology, and the Fort Cox College of Agriculture and Forestry a diploma in Social Forestry.

Skills training is provided by a number of industry-sponsored and in-house training centres. Industry-sponsored bursaries are available, as are company-sponsored bursaries for study at these institutions.

The Forest Industries Education and Training Authority (Fieta) is, among other things, responsible for ensuring that the training undertaken by the industry meets certain quality standards.

It also manages the distribution of training grants to employers and to Fieta-sponsored projects which will help meet the goals of the National Skills Development Strategy within the sector.

The department, together with Fieta, has been offering bursaries to students who choose to study in the forestry field.

Community forestry

The *White Paper on Sustainable Forest Development in South Africa* states that community forestry is designed and applied to meet local social, household and environmental needs and to favour local economic development.

Community forestry is implemented by communities or with the participation of communities, and includes tree-centred projects in urban and rural areas, woodlots, and woodland management by communities and individuals. Community forestry has gained impetus through more focused core functions, particularly in urban greening and forest enterprise development.

Participatory Forest Management (PFM) of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is an integrated approach that contributes to achieving the SFM of South African forests.

Elements of PFM were initially developed for indigenous state forests. However, the aim is to use PFM as an approach to manage all forest types where feasible (indigenous forests, plantations, woodlots and woodlands) and where different types of ownership and management (state, provincial, communal, private and community) exist.

Food and Trees for Africa (FTFA)

The FTFA is the sub-Saharan African partner of Global Releaf, an international greening organisation.

The FTFA's mission is to contribute to a healthy and sustainable quality of life for all, through environmental awareness and greening programmes.

Since its inception in 1990, the FTFA has developed, managed and promoted numerous sustainable greening programmes, including land-use management and food security through permaculture.

The FTFA works in partnership with government, the private and public sectors, and civil society.

The FTFA attempts to provide trees to as many underserved communities as possible with the help of sponsors and certificate programmes.

The Urban Greening Fund is managed by the FTFA, the departments of water affairs and of agriculture, forestry and fisheries and the Institute of Environment and Recreation Management. It was set up with donor funds, which included R1,2 million from the then Department of Water Affairs and Forestry.

It is a collective fund that supports partnerships aimed at sustainable development through tree planting, parks, food-gardening projects and environmental education.

Organisations, companies and individuals can contribute to the fund to help disadvantaged South Africans to create a greener, healthier and more secure life.

Fisheries

In 2009, the fishery responsibilities of the then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism were moved to the newly established Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries.

The South African coastline covers more than 3 200 km, linking the east and west coasts of Africa. South Africa's shores are particularly rich in biodiversity, with some 10 000 species of marine plants and animals having been recorded.

The productive waters of the west coast support a variety of commercially exploited marine life, including hake, anchovy, sardine, horse mackerel, tuna, snoek, rock lobster and abalone.

On the east coast, squid, linefish and a wide range of intertidal resources provide an important source of food and livelihood for coastal communities. Marine life that is not harvested, such as whales, dolphins and seabirds, is increasingly recognised as a valuable resource for nature-based tourism.

The South African fishing industry, which was once concentrated in the hands of a few, largely white-owned companies, has undergone intensive transformation over the past 10 years.

The Integrated Coastal Management Bill will replace the Seashore Act, 1935 (Act 21 of 1935). The Bill will also replace the Dumping at Sea Control Act, 1980 (Act 73 of 1980), and introduce, for the first time, a comprehensive national system for planning and managing South Africa's spectacular and valuable coastal areas.

The purpose of the National Coastal Management Bill is to:

- provide a legal and administrative framework that will promote cooperative, coordinated and integrated coastal development
- preserve, protect and enhance the status of the coastal environment as the heritage that belongs to all
- ensure coastal resources are managed in the interest of the whole community
- ensure there is equitable access to the opportunities and benefits derived from the coast
- give effect to certain of South Africa's international legal obligations.

This Bill declares the seashore, coastal waters (including estuaries) and South Africa's territorial seas to be coastal public property. It therefore also requires the State to act as the trustee of coastal public property.

4x4 regulations

Following the successful implementation of the 4x4 regulations that provide for the controlled use of off-road vehicles in coastal zones, the monitoring of certain stretches of coast has indicated that the banning of off-road vehicles has enabled several shore-breeding birds, especially Damara tern and the African black oystercatcher, to breed successfully on beaches once more.

According to conservationists from Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife, the number of loggerhead and leatherback turtles hatching successfully on the beaches of northern KwaZulu-Natal has also increased since the ban was enforced.

National Policy for Seals and Seabirds

The National Policy for Seals and Seabirds in South Africa and the National Plan of Action for Seabirds, aimed at reducing the incidental catch of seabirds in longline fisheries, have been finalised.

This follows growing concern over the numbers of seabirds, especially albatrosses, being killed by longline vessels. The plan sets out the

required mitigation measures to reduce mortality of seabirds to below an interim target level of 0,05 birds/thousand hooks by South Africa's longline fisheries for hake, tuna, swordfish, Patagonian toothfish and sharks.

South Africa ratified the Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels (ACAP) in November 2003. It is a multilateral agreement that seeks to conserve albatrosses and petrels by coordinating international activity to mitigate known threats to albatross and petrel populations. South Africa played a key role in negotiating the ACAP, and is home to many important populations of these seabirds, including those on the sub-Antarctic Prince Edward islands.

Marine protected areas (MPAs)

MPAs conserve natural environments and assist in the management of fisheries by protecting and rebuilding economically important stocks. Many of the new MPAs will be used to further develop and regulate coastal ecotourism opportunities.

In 2009, South Africa proclaimed a new MPA, spanning 180 000 square kilometres, around the Prince Edward islands in the Southern Ocean. This paved the way for increased conservation and protection of vulnerable species, such as albatrosses, penguins, seals and killer whales.

The proposal was gazetted in early May 2009. This followed a five-year planning process during which the then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism worked closely with the local chapter of the World Wide Fund for Nature to establish the framework for the area.

The new preserve, roughly the size of the state of Oklahoma, is to be known as the Prince Edward Islands MPA, and will be South Africa's 21st marine preserve.

It will be the fourth-largest ocean preserve on Earth. The new preserve will also be South Africa's first offshore protected area.

Protecting the waters

South Africa has already placed 18% of its 3 000-km-long coastline under official protection. This means that activities such as fishing and diving are strictly regulated. These restrictions are in line with a decree issued at the 2003 World Parks Congress held in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal, which stipulated that coastal countries must have at least 20% of their coastal area under protection by 2015.

Government shares joint responsibility for South Africa's MPAs with the South African National Parks (SANParks) and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife.

Marine pollution and sustainability

South Africa has one of world's busiest shipping routes and has experienced many oil spills over the years. It is estimated that 80% of the world's tanker traffic passes South Africa's coast.

The then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism developed the National Contingency Plan for the Prevention and Combating of Pollution from Ships, in consultation with the South African Maritime Safety Authority and the Department of Transport. This includes disposing, recovering or stabilising the spilt oil and rehabilitating the environment.

Sustainable Coastal Livelihoods Programme (SCLP)

The SCLP seeks alternative livelihood options for communities along the South African coast to minimise pressure on marine resources.

Subsistence fishing

The implementation of the Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998), has facilitated the allocation of formal rights to fishers in this sector for the first time.

It is an important part of the overall transformation of fisheries in South Africa. A primary goal is to allow subsistence fishers to obtain their food, or food security, through the harvesting of local resources. Consequently, the need to ensure that exploitation is sustainable is vital.

Identifying and working with fishing communities to promote orderly access has been emphasised. Implementation involves cooperation between all spheres of government and civil society.

A hake and abalone strategy has been developed to give these stocks an opportunity to recover from overutilisation and to ensure their sustainability. To take the pressure off existing fisheries, ongoing work is done to establish the feasibility of new fisheries to use previously unexplored resources, such as octopus, Natal deep-water rock lobster, oysters, white mussels and whelks.

Protecting the coastline

To counter illegal activities along the coastline, as well as the country's 1 155 000-km^2 Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism boosted its compliance unit with the appointment of more than 80 fishery-control officers (FCOs) and 100 honorary FCOs, after the implementation of the Honorary FCO Policy. The department also took delivery of four environmental-protection vessels

as part of measures to protect marine and coastal resources.

Lillian Ngoyi, *Ruth First* and *Victoria Mxenge* patrol up to the 200 nautical-mile limit from the shore. *Sarah Baartman* patrols the most remote reaches of the EEZ and around the Prince Edward islands in the Southern Ocean. The vessels also conduct multilateral patrols in the SADC coastal states.

Vessel monitoring

The department is making it obligatory for fishing vessels to have satellite technology on board so that it can monitor their movements. Five coastal nations in the SADC have taken the innovative step of linking their vessel-monitoring systems. South Africa, Namibia, Angola, Mozambique and Tanzania have signed a memorandum of agreement that will allow them to share information about the movement of licensed boats along the southern African coast.

Partnerships

To further counter illegal fishing and corruption, the former Department of UN Environmental Affairs and Tourism entered into partnerships with a broad spectrum of agencies, including national, provincial and local government, as well as non-governmental organisations.

Cooperation ensures that resources are used more effectively, resulting in a number of high-profile prosecutions and convictions.

Other important partnerships have been forged with specialised units of the South African Police Service. In addition, SANParks and a number of provincial nature-conservation agencies conduct monitoring, control and surveillance activities within the MPAs.

International cooperation

South Africa is a signatory to a range of multilateral agreements related to marine resources and protecting the marine environment. In terms of protecting the marine environment, these include the London Convention on Dumping at Sea, the Marine Pollution Convention, the Antarctic Treaty, the Abidjan Convention for Cooperation in the Protection and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the West and Central African Regions and Related Protocols, and the Nairobi Convention for the Protection, Management and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the East African Region and Related Protocols.

The sustainable use of the oceans is governed by the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea. South Africa is also a member of several international organisations aimed at the sustainable management of the marine environment, such as the International Marine Organisation and the International Seabed Authority.

West Indian Ocean Land-Based Activities Project (WIO-LaB)

The WIO-LaB Project deals with the protection, prevention and management of marine pollution from land-based activities.

Commitment was given to this project by the main donors, the UN Environmental Programme and the Global Environmental Facility. The Government is assessing the effect that litter from rivers has on the oceans, is raising awareness of and educating communities about the importance of protecting the marine environment from pollution resulting from land-based activities, and has created task teams to deal with municipal water and the physical alteration and destruction of habitats.

Acknowledgements

Abstract of Agricultural Statistics, 2008
AgriNews
Agricultural Research Council
Agriculture Newsletter, September 2008
BuaNews
Business Day
C.A.P.E. (www.capeaction.org.za)
Commission for the Restitution of Land Rights
Department of Agriculture *Quarterly Economic Overview of the Agriculture Sector (January – March 2009)*
Estimates of National Expenditure 2009, published by National Treasury
South African Rooibos Council
South African Sugar Association
South African Wine Industry Information and Systems
http://land.pwv.gov.za
www.landbank.co.za
www.fin24.com
www.gov.za
www.news24.com
www.sawis.co.za

Suggested reading

Abstract of Agricultural Statistics. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, Directorate: Agricultural Information Services, annually.

Annandale, JG. 2007. *Predicting the Environmental Impact and Sustainability of Irrigation with Coal Mine Water: Report to the Water Research Commission and Coaltech.* Gezina: Water Research Commission (WRC).

Atkinson, D. 2007. *Going for Broke: The Fate of Farm Workers in Arid South Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press.

Binswanger-Mkhize, HP, Bourguignon, C and Van den Brink, R (eds). 2009. *Agricultural Land Redistribution: Toward Greater Consensus*. Washington, DC: World Bank.

Botha, JJ. 2007. *On-Farm Application of In-Field Rainwater Harvesting Techniques on Small Plots in the Central Region of South Africa*. Gezina: WRC.

Derman, B, Odgaard, R and Sjaastad, E (eds). 2007. *Conflicts Over Land and Water in Africa.* Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

Draper, P and Nkululako, K (eds). 2007. *Trade in Genetically Modified Foods: Decoding Southern Africa's Regulatory Approach.* Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs.

Economic Review of South African Agriculture. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, annually.

Everson, C. 2007. *Effective Management of the Riparian Zone Vegetation to Significantly Reduce the Cost of Catchment Management and Enable Greater Productivity of Land Resources.* Gezina: WRC.

Hall, R (ed). 2009. *Another Countryside? Policy Options for Land and Agrarian Reform in South Africa.* Bellville: School of Government, University of the Western Cape.

Hensley, M. 2007. *A Procedure for an Improved Soil Survey Technique for Delineating Land Suitable for Rainwater Harvesting; Report to the Water Research Commission by Department of Soil, Crop and Climate Sciences, University of the Free State*. Gezina: WRC.

Investment, Farming and Agribusiness South Africa. Johannesburg: Trade Edge, annually.

James, D. 2007. *Gaining Ground? "Rights" and "Property" in South African Land Reform*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Loubser, A, Schutte, N and Hofmeyr, I (eds). 2007. *Cattle Breeds of South Africa: An Index of Breeds and Overview of Industry.* Pretoria: AgriConnect.

Market Risk, Water Management and the Multiplier Effects of Irrigation Agriculture with Reference to the Northern Cape. 2008. Gezina: WRC.

Ntsebeza, L and Hall, R (eds). 2007. *The Land Question in South Africa: The Challenge of Transformation and Redistribution*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Swanepoel, CM and Barnard, RO. 2007. *Discussion Paper: Wetlands in Agriculture*. Gezina: WRC.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

ARTS AND CULTURE

As South Africa prepares to welcome guests to the 2010 FIFA World Cup™, there will be a focus on sharing the country's arts and culture with visitors and creating a legacy for the future.

The Department of Arts and Culture is tasked with creating an environment conducive to the growth, development and flowering of South Africa's arts, culture and heritage landscape.

The department leads and coordinates efforts to promote national identity and social cohesion.

Among its key objectives are the improvement, reorientation and expansion of the arts and culture sector to serve South Africa's cultural needs.

It focuses on creating sustainable jobs through supporting initiatives in training, skills development and by expanding opportunities for cultural workers. The department is eager to expand its contribution to economic growth.

The arts, culture and heritage sector prides itself on its potential to create sustainable jobs and entrepreneurial opportunities even in areas where people have minimum or no formal education.

Arts and culture organisations and institutions

National Heritage Council (NHC)

The NHC, a statutory body that aims to bring equity to heritage promotion and conservation, was officially constituted on 26 February 2004 in terms of the NHC Act, 1999 (Act 11 of 1999). The council creates an environment for preserving and promoting South African heritage.

Its other objectives are to protect and promote the content and heritage that reside in orature; to integrate living heritage into the council and all other heritage authorities and institutions at national, provincial and local level; to promote and protect indigenous knowledge systems (IKS); and to intensify support for promoting the history and culture of all South Africans.

The NHC spearheads campaigns to revive the values of ubuntu and is developing the Heritage Transformation Charter.

South African Heritage Resources Agency (Sahra)

The National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act 25 of 1999), established the Sahra to provide for the identification, protection, conservation, and promotion of South Africa's heritage for the present and future generations.

The Sahra aims to introduce an integrated system for the identification, assessment and management of heritage resources and to enable provincial and local governments to adopt powers to protect and manage them.

Sahra has established the National Heritage Resources Fund to provide financial assistance to an approved body or individual, for any project that contributes to the conservation and protection of South Africa's national heritage resources.

Conservation categories include:

- national heritage sites, registers, areas and objects
- protected areas
- structures of more than 60 years old
- burial grounds and graves
- fossils (palaeontology) and archaeology
- rock art
- underwater cultural heritage, including historical shipwrecks.

South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC)

The SAGNC is an advisory body appointed by the Minister of Arts and Culture in terms of the SAGNC Act, 1998 (Act 118 of 1998). The council advises the minister on the transformation and standardisation of official geographical names in South Africa. The council has jurisdiction over all names of geographical features and entities falling within the territories over which the South African Government has sovereignty or jurisdiction acquired by treaty.

The following principles are adhered to:

- each individual feature or entity should have only one official name
- the following types of geographical names should be avoided:
  - approved names of places elsewhere in South Africa
  - names of places in other countries, and names of countries

In October 2009, the National Heritage Council conferred its annual Ubuntu Awards on Dr Boutros Boutros-Ghali of Egypt as the international recipient and King Sabata Dalindyebo as the local recipient. The awards recognise people who have consistently lived the humanitarian values of the African philosophy of ubuntu.

- names that are blasphemous, indecent, offensive, vulgar, unaesthetic or embarrassing
- names that are discriminatory or derogatory
- names that may be regarded as an advertisement for a particular product, service or firm
- names of living persons.

Geographical names committees have been established in all nine provinces. These committees play an important role in standardising geographical names. A list of all approved names is available at *http://sagns.dac.gov.za.*

By June 2009, the SAGNC was conducting public hearings on a policy for name changing.

National Arts Council of South Africa (NAC)

The NAC aims to:

- support arts practice by creating and providing opportunities to achieve excellence in the arts, within a climate of freedom
- achieve equity by redressing imbalances in the allocation of resources
- promote and develop appreciation, understanding and enjoyment of the arts through strategies that include education, information and marketing
- enhance support for and recognition of the arts by promoting and facilitating national and international liaison between individuals and institutions
- establish and recommend policy in the development, practice and funding of the arts.

It also offers bursaries to tertiary institutions for undergraduate students. Individual bursaries are offered for studies towards a postgraduate qualification in South Africa and abroad.

The NAC funds the Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng philharmonic orchestras and the Cape Town Jazz Orchestra.

The NAC and International Federations of Arts Councils and Culture Agencies co-hosted the fourth World Summit on Arts and Culture in Johannesburg in September 2009.

The summit coincided with the Arts Alive Festival, an annual programme of cultural events hosted by the City of Johannesburg. The theme of the summit was *Meeting of Cultures: Making Meaning Through the Arts*.

The summit was also supported by the Department of Arts and Culture and the Gauteng Department of Sport, Arts and Recreation.

Mmino

Mmino, the South African-Norwegian music education and exchange project has since its inception in 2000 been the only funding organisation in South Africa that solely funds music projects.

In the past 10 years, Mmino funded more than 230 projects and/or individuals located all over South Africa, as well as some outstanding exchanges with Norwegian artists and institutions.

The Mmino Project is linked to the NAC, but has a separate budget and funding procedures, and works in partnership with the Norwegian *Rikskonsertene*.

Arts institutions

The following arts institutions assist to create a sustainable performing arts industry based on access, excellence, diversity and redress, and encourage the development of the full range of performing arts:

- State Theatre, Pretoria
- Playhouse Company, Durban
- ArtsCape, Cape Town
- Market Theatre, Johannesburg
- Performing Arts Centre of the Free State, Bloemfontein
- Windybrow Theatre, Johannesburg.

The institutions receive annual transfers from the Department of Arts and Culture, but also generate revenue through entrance fees, donor assistance, sponsorships and rental income.

Business and Arts South Africa (Basa)

Basa, a joint initiative of government and the business sector, was founded in 1997. It is registered as a Section 21 company and a public-benefit organisation, and aims to promote mutually beneficial and sustainable business and arts partnerships that will benefit civil society in the long term.

Basa receives annual funding from the Department of Arts and Culture to implement its supporting grant scheme. It is designed to attract funding or in-kind support from the business sector by offering a grant to arts projects, specifically for additional marketing or other benefits for the business sector.

In addition, Basa initiates or enters into partnerships with programmes and projects designed to mainstream the arts and lift their public profile, including a range of media partnerships and high-profile arts projects with

national reach. Basa boasts some 130 companies as corporate members nationally. This number fluctuates as companies merge and shift their focus areas.

The *Business Day*/Basa Awards are presented annually. The awards encourage current and new corporate sponsors to see the results that have been achieved in the arts and culture world, and to motivate other corporates to see the opportunities that arts and culture offer to their diverse demographic audiences.

The Bureau of Heraldry

The Bureau of Heraldry, located in the Department of Arts and Culture, is responsible for registering coats of arms; badges and other emblems such as flags, seals, medals and insignia of rank and offices of order; registering names and uniforms (colours) of associations and organisations, such as universities; and promoting national symbols. The Bureau of Heraldry is governed by the Heraldry Act, 1962 (Act 18 of 1962), as amended.

National symbols

South Africa's national symbols are the:

- national animal: springbok
- national bird: blue crane
- national fish: galjoen
- national flower: king protea
- national tree: real yellowwood.

National anthem

South Africa's national anthem is a combined version of *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* and *The Call of South Africa (Die Stem van Suid-Afrika). The Call of South Africa* was written by CJ Langenhoven in May 1918. The music was composed by Rev ML de Villiers in 1921. *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* was composed by a Methodist mission schoolteacher, Enoch Sontonga, in 1897.

The words of the first stanza were originally written in isiXhosa as a hymn. Seven additional stanzas in isiXhosa were later added by the poet Samuel Mqhayi. It has been translated into most of South Africa's official languages.

National flag

South Africa's national flag was launched and used for the first time on Freedom Day, 27 April 1994. The design and colours are a synopsis of the principal elements of the country's flag history.

It is the only six-coloured national flag in the world and one of the most recognisable.

The central design of the flag, beginning at the flag-pole in a "V" form and flowing into a single horizontal band to the outer edge of the fly, can be interpreted as the convergence of diverse elements within South African society, taking the road ahead in unity.

When the flag is displayed vertically against a wall, the red band should be to the left of the viewer, with the hoist or the cord seam at the top.

When displayed horizontally, the hoist should be to the left of the viewer and the red band at the top. When the flag is displayed next to or behind the speaker at a meeting, it must be placed to the speaker's right. When it is placed elsewhere in the meeting place, it should be to the right of the audience.

National coat of arms

South Africa's coat of arms was launched on Freedom Day, 27 April 2000.

A focal point of the coat of arms is the indigenous secretary bird with its uplifted wings, crowned with an image of the rising sun. The sun symbolises a life-giving force, and represents the flight of darkness and the triumph of discovery, knowledge and understanding of things that have been hidden. It also illuminates the new life that is coming into being. An indigenous South African flower, the protea, is placed below the bird. It represents beauty, the aesthetic harmony of the different cultures, and South Africa flowering as a nation. The ears of wheat symbolise the fertility of the land, while the tusks of the African elephant, depicted in pairs to represent men and women, also represent wisdom, steadfastness and strength.

The shield, placed in the centre, signifies the protection of South Africans from one generation to the next. The spear and a knobkierie above it are representative of the defence of peace rather than the pursuit of war. This shield of peace, which also brings to mind an African drum, conveys the message of a people imbued with a love of culture. Its upper part is a shield imaginatively represented by the protea.

Contained within the shield are some of the earliest representations of humanity. Those depicted were the very first inhabitants of the land, namely the Khoisan people. These figures are derived from images on the Linton Stone, a world-famous example of South African rock art. The motto on the coat of arms, *!ke e:/xarra//ke*, written in the Khoisan language of the /Xam people, means "diverse people unite" or "people who are different joining together".

National symbols and orders

The Order of the Baobab | The Order of Luthuli | The Order of Mendi for Bravery

The Order of Mapungubwe | The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo | The Order of Ikhamanga

National bird: blue crane | National flower: king protea | National fish: galjoen

National tree: real yellowwood | National animal: springbok

National orders

National orders are the highest awards that the country, through its President, can bestow on individual South Africans and eminent foreign leaders and personalities.

The Order of Mapungubwe is awarded to South African citizens for excellence and exceptional achievement.

At the presidential inauguration in May 2009, outgoing President, Mr Kgalema Motlanthe, presented President Jacob Zuma with the Order of Mapungubwe (platinum).

The Order of the Baobab is awarded to South African citizens for distinguished service in the fields of business and the economy; science, medicine and technological innovation; and community service.

The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo is awarded to heads of state and other dignitaries for promoting peace, cooperation and friendship towards South Africa.

The Order of Luthuli is awarded to South Africans who have made a meaningful contribution to the struggle for democracy, human rights, nation-building, justice and peace, and conflict resolution.

The Order of Ikhamanga is awarded to South African citizens who have excelled in the fields of arts, culture, literature, music, journalism and sport.

The Order of Mendi for Bravery is awarded to South African citizens who have performed extraordinary acts of bravery.

Celebrated South African music group, Ladysmith Black Mambazo, received their third Grammy in February 2009 at the 51st annual Grammy Awards held in Los Angeles, California. The group took home the Best Traditional World Music Album Award for their album, *ILembe; Honouring Shaka Zulu*. Founded in 1964 by lead singer Joseph Shabalala, Ladysmith Black Mambazo has recorded more than 50 albums. The group has earned a total of 13 Grammy nominations, more than any South African band.

Languages

South Africa is a multilingual country. The country's Constitution guarantees equal status to 11 official languages to cater for South Africa's diverse peoples and their cultures. These are: Afrikaans, English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, SiSwati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Other languages used in South Africa are the Khoi, Nama and San languages; Sign Language; Arabic; German; Greek; Gujarati; Hebrew; Hindi; Portuguese; Sanskrit; Tamil; Telegu; and Urdu.

South Africa has various structures and institutions that support the preservation and development of languages.

National Language Service (NLS)

The NLS is located in the Department of Arts and Culture. It is tasked with meeting the constitutional obligations on multilingualism by managing language diversity through language planning, human-language technologies (HLTs) and terminology projects. It also provides a translation and editing service in the official and foreign languages.

As part of its strategy to strengthen and promote social cohesion through multilingualism and to transform the South African society into an information society, the NLS has embarked on the development of HLT applications that will connect South Africans equipped with nothing but a normal telephone to government information and services regardless of the level of literacy and location.

The development of spell checkers and machine-aided translation tools will contribute to consistency and quality of documents rendered in or translated into all official languages, as required by the National Language Policy Framework. Once the National HLT Strategy, aimed at coordinating HLT activities in government structures, has been approved by Cabinet, it will be implemented and the key element, the National Centre for HLT, will be established.

To address the status of indigenous languages, the NLS introduced a bursary scheme to encourage students to study in specialised language fields as well as the most disadvantaged languages: Siswati, isiNdebele, Xitsonga and Tshivenda.

In 2009, 90 students received language bursaries.

The NLS is facilitating the establishment of the African Language Practitioners' Council, which will regulate the language profession. It will also go a long way to elevating the status of language practitioners in general and ensure that the services provided by language practitioners are of an acceptable standard.

Telephone Interpreting Service of South Africa (Tissa)

Tissa provides telephone-interpreting services to people who need to access government, and

The national anthem

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
O se boloke,
O se boloke setjhaba
sa heso,
Setjhaba sa South Afrika –
South Afrika.

Uit die blou van onse hemel,
Uit die diepte van ons see,
Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
Waar die kranse antwoord gee.

Sounds the call to come together,
And united we shall stand,
Let us live and strive for freedom,
In South Africa our land.

aims to improve verbal communication between citizens and government agencies, thus allowing citizens to exercise their right to use the language of their choice when dealing with government.

Pan South African Language Board (PanSALB)

PanSALB promotes multilingualism in South Africa by fostering the development of all 11 official languages, while encouraging the use of many other languages spoken in the country.

The board was created in terms of Section 6 of the Constitution and defined by the PanSALB Act, 1995 (Act 59 of 1995). Section 4 sets out the organisation's independence and impartiality, and also provides that no organ of state or any person is allowed to interfere with the board or its staff's activities.

PanSALB also provides services such as research, standardisation and terminology development, compilation of dictionaries, translations, interpreting and mediation. The primary role of PanSALB is to create a conducive environment for all languages and allow language speakers access to almost everything that has to be communicated.

PanSALB may investigate the alleged violation of any language right, policy or practice. It may also summon any person, body or state organ to give evidence.

It is furthermore empowered to negotiate or mediate in cases of language conflict and attempts to achieve conciliation.

PanSALB works through provincial language committees, national language bodies (NLBs) and national lexicography units (NLUs).

The NLUs have produced monolingual, bilingual and multilingual dictionaries.

NLBs were created for each of the 11 official languages and for the Khoi, Nama, San and South African Sign Language.

The aim is to develop each of the designated languages through the technical subcommittees, such as the Standardisation Subcommittee that standardises terminologies, spelling and orthography rules; and the Literature Subcommittee that develops forums for the production and recognition of literature for each of the designated languages. The revised spelling and orthography rules of nine of the official South African languages, isiZulu, isiXhosa, isiNdebele, Siswati, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, Tshivenda and Xitsonga were launched in January 2009.

The Language in Education Subcommittee looks into matters that deal with language in education, while the Communication Subcommittee attends to communication issues such as the production of journals on issues related to language development. The NLBs also do research and initiate projects for the various designated languages.

PanSALB has nine provincial offices that carry out the administrative function of PanSALB, and form the base on which PanSALB's three structures operate in the provinces.

Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities

The Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities aims to contribute to social transformation and nation-building. Its mission is to promote and develop peace, friendship, humanity, tolerance and national unity among linguistic communities. To achieve this, the commission:

- is a channel of communication between the State and communities
- monitors compliance by the State and civil society
- mediates in intercommunity conflict situations and facilitates harmonious co-existence
- facilitates the development of programmes that foster sensitivity, respect for and understanding of cultural, religious and linguistic diversity
- lobbies government departments and legislative authorities to identify laws undermining or supporting those rights, and recommends the repeal of laws that undermine those rights and the enactment of laws that support them.

Community art centres and other cultural organisations

More than 160 community art centres are in operation, varying from community-initiated to government-managed. The centres operate at different levels, ranging from general socio-cultural

The National Writers' Guild of South Africa (NAWGSA) is an organisation of writers and their respective associations. It is committed to the creation, protection and development of excellent, innovative, rich and original literary material in indigenous languages, which are reflective of a unique environment and cultural context.

The NAWGSA strives to achieve fundamental social change for the benefit of all budding and established writers.

promotion, advanced programmes and vocational training.

The centres also vary from craft centres, community halls and community theatres. Many art centres are functioning well and have made impressive contributions to local socio-economic development. The Department of Arts and Culture supports programmes in most needy centres that are community-initiated or non-governmental.

With its provincial counterparts and community art centres, the Department of Arts and Culture developed a national framework to address the challenges facing community art centres, including funding, the quality of programmes and management capacity.

The framework categorises community art centres into four levels based on organisational capacity. Each level has its own funding model and criteria for operation in relation to programming and skills development.

The department aimed to place 400 artists in schools and community art centres during 2009/10.

Arts and Culture Trust (ACT)

The ACT is the oldest funding agency in democratic South Africa. It was established to secure financial and other resources for arts, culture and heritage; and to project the needs and role of the sector into the public domain. Its vision is to establish a self-sustaining perpetual fund for the development of arts, culture and heritage in South Africa.

Its mission is to attract and provide funding for the sustainable development and growth of the arts, culture and heritage in South Africa, realised through mutually beneficial partnerships between the corporate, public and cultural sectors focused on making a positive difference to the lives of all South Africans.

The ACT is responsible for:

- developing and promoting arts, culture and heritage in general
- advancing artists and cultural and heritage practitioners
- promoting arts, cultural and heritage education
- constructing facilities and creating and developing an infrastructure for these purposes.

Due regard is given to ensuring a spread of projects across all the cultural and artistic disciplines, including but not limited to, arts administration, arts education, community art, festivals, heritage, craft, fine art, dance, music, theatre, literature, multidisciplinary and new media.

The annual ACT Awards recognise the significant contributions made by communities, artists, administrators, educators and journalists towards the development and advancement of arts and culture in South Africa.

Arts and culture initiatives

Investing in culture

The Department of Arts and Culture has, through the Investing in Culture Programme, funded and supported more than 390 projects totalling R285 million since 2005.

About 10 938 beneficiaries were provided with job opportunities primarily in the craft sector. About 45% of jobs were created for women, 39% for youth and 4% for people living with disabilities.

The sector prides itself on its potential to create sustainable jobs and entrepreneurial opportunities even in areas where people have minimum or no formal education.

The department entered into a training partnership with the Media, Advertising, Publications, Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority (Mappp-Seta) in November 2006 to ensure that the supported entities receive accredited training while in short-term employment, in compliance with the Expanded Public Works Programme.

This empowers beneficiaries to increase their skills base and employability potential and subsequently land meaningful opportunities. It is also aimed at transforming and expanding the training-provider base for the sector through Master Crafter (train-the-trainer).

Achievements include:

- During 2008/09, competency certificates (Craft Production, National Qualifications Framework [NQF] Two) were awarded to 156 crafters, 58 assessors and seven moderators from various provinces. In addition, 560 successfully completed Adult Basic Education and Training (Abet) from levels one to three.
- Provincial coordinators had already been trained and qualified as assessors and moderators on Craft Production, Craft Enterprise and Craft Operations Management, NQF Two, Four and Five, respectively.
- In 2009/10, 120 crafters were undergoing training on a 12-month Arts and Culture Administration course (NQF Four), which commenced in January 2009. A further 120 crafters had

been placed on the five-month Prior Learning Against Craft Production (NQF Two) Programme that was completed in June 2009. About 300 crafters completed the Abet Level Four in June 2009.

Legacy projects

Monuments, museums, plaques, outdoor art, heritage trails and other symbolic representations create visible reminders of, and commemorate, the many aspects of South Africa's past.

Government has initiated several national legacy projects to establish commemorative symbols of South Africa's history and to celebrate its heritage.

The legacy projects include the:

- Women's Monument: On 9 August 2000, former President Thabo Mbeki unveiled a monument at the Union Buildings in Pretoria to commemorate the contribution of the women of South Africa to the struggle for freedom. The ceremony marked the day, in 1956, when 20 000 women marched to the Union Buildings to protest against government's pass laws.
- Chief Albert Luthuli's house in KwaDukuza, KwaZulu-Natal: This house has been restored by the Department of Arts and Culture as a museum with a visitors' interpretative centre. The project also involved the unveiling of Chief Luthuli's sculpture at the KwaDukuza municipal grounds.
- Battle of Blood River/Ncome Project: Following the unveiling of the Ncome Monument and Wall of Remembrance on 16 December 1998, the Ncome Museum was opened on 26 November 1999. The structures honour the role played by the Zulu nation in the battle.
- Samora Machel Project: The Samora Machel Monument in Mbuzini, Mpumalanga, was unveiled on 19 October 1998.
- Nelson Mandela Museum: This museum in the Eastern Cape was opened on 11 February 2000. It is being developed as a single component comprising three elements, namely a museum in Mthatha, a youth centre at Qunu, and a visitors' centre in Mvezo, where former President Mandela was born.
- Constitution Hill Project: The Old Fort Prison in Hillbrow, Johannesburg, was developed into a multidimensional and multipurpose precinct that houses the Constitutional Court (CC) and accommodates various constitutional commissions. The Constitution Hill Project involved the development of the Constitutional Hill precinct to accommodate the CC, the Constitution Museum, the Women's Jail, the Old Fort and a commercial precinct.
- The Sarah Baartman Centre of Remembrance in Hankey in the Eastern Cape and the Sarah Baartman Human Rights Memorial in the Western Cape: The centre will include a multipurpose space, a library, exhibition spaces, an indigenous plants garden and a nursery.
- The Freedom Park Project: The objective of this project is to establish visible cultural structures that celebrate and commemorate diverse and important South African events, spanning prehistory, colonisation and the struggle for democracy, and ending with a vision for the future. The park was declared a cultural institution in terms of the Cultural Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 119 of 1998), from April 2009. On completion, the Freedom Park will be a national monument and museum.
- The Khoisan Heritage and Culture Institution in Hankey, Kouga Municipality, as part of the Khoisan Legacy Project: An estimated R5 million was allocated for the first phase. Sites under consideration include the Kat River valley settlement, which rose in rebellion against British colonialism in 1850; Adam Kok's grave in Griqualand; the graves at Kinderlê, where 32 Khoi children were killed in 1804; Wonderwerk Cave; Phillipolis; Ratelgat, owned by the Griqua Ratelgat Development Trust; the sites of Griqua churches and other institutions in the Eastern Cape, Northern Cape and Western Cape; as well battle sites associated with the war of 1799 to 1803.
- The Dulcie September Legacy Project: It aims to acknowledge the heroes who sacrificed their lives for the attainment of freedom and democracy in South Africa. The project also highlights the contribution of anti-apartheid activist Dulcie September in fighting cultural intolerance and building a democratic, non-racial, non-sexist and cohesive society.
- The 2010 FIFA World Cup™ legacy projects: The Department of Arts and Culture is supporting FIFA 2010 legacy projects that seek to document cultural histories of the host cities as well as cities in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region. The department is also looking into rural communities benefiting from the projects through the establishment of cinemas in rural areas as a legacy of the public viewing areas established for the 2010 event.

Other projects underway are the 1981 Matola Raid Memorial in Maputo, Mozambique; the rehabilita-

tion and development of the Lock Street women's prison in East London into a museum; development of the former apartheid state security Vlakplaas farm into a heritage memorial site; and the OR Tambo Memorial Project in Bizana in the Eastern Cape.

Indigenous Music and Oral History Project

The Department of Arts and Culture has partnerships with the universities of Venda, Fort Hare and Zululand. The mandate for these universities is not only to conduct research on indigenous music and instruments, but to also identify and collect all aspects of intangible cultural heritage in their provinces.

The department and the African Cultural Heritage Fund promote indigenous music by hosting regional, provincial and national competitions on indigenous dance and music. These competitions showcase the diverse indigenous music and dance in South Africa.

Some of the winners of the 2008 Naledi Theatre Awards, held in April 2009, included:

- Best New South African Play Produced: *Karoo Moose* - Produced by Baxter Theatre Centre in association with Absa and Aardklop. Written and directed by Lara Foot Newton.
- Best Production of a Musical: *Beauty and the Beast* - Produced by Pieter Toerien and Hazel Feldman in association with Disney Theatrical Productions. Directed by Robert Jess Roth.
- Best Performance by an Actress in a Lead Role (Play): Dorothy-Ann Gould - *Hello and Goodbye*.
- Best Performance by an Actor in a Lead Role (Play): Mdu Kweyama - *Karoo Moose*.
- Best Performance in a Musical (Female): Gina Shmukler - *Chess*.
- Best Performance in a Musical (Male): Jonathan Roxmouth - *Beauty and the Beast*.
- Best Performance by a Newcomer/Breakthrough (Female): Chuma Sopotela - *Karoo Moose*.
- Best Performance by a Newcomer/Breakthrough (Male): Sibu Radebe - *Beauty and the Beast*.
- Best Comedy Performance (Male) (Play, Musical or Revue): A tie between *Beauty and the Beast's* Jonathan Roxmouth (Gaston) and Sibu Radebe (Lefou).
- Best Comedy Performance (Female) (Play, Musical or Revue): Judy Page - *The Full Monty*.
- Best Community Theatre Production (Sponsored by Computicket): *8 o' Clock*. Written and directed by Moses Muyela. Produced by Extroverts Entertainment, Witbank.

Heritage Month celebrations

The Department of Arts and Culture is responsible for the Heritage Month celebrations. Heritage Month promotes and celebrates various aspects of South African heritage.

The theme for the 2009 Heritage Month was *Celebrating South African Craft, Our Heritage*.

Provinces host various heritage activities during Heritage Month. These activities culminate in national Heritage Day, on 24 September.

Mosadi wa Konokono (Woman of Substance)

Mosadi wa Konokono is a flagship campaign of the Department of Arts and Culture. It is a socio-cultural-economic campaign that was conceptualised as a vehicle for elevating the profile of ordinary women in grassroots communities.

The campaign uses arts and culture to foster social cohesion and to nurture a spirit of economic self-determination. The campaign has also been created as a platform to enable the emergence of talented women and youth who are already instrumental in and proactively building their communities.

Education and training

Training is critical for the development of arts and culture to achieve both the developmental and economic potential of the sector.

The creative industries form part of the Mappp-Seta.

Recognising the challenges facing this sector, the Mappp-Seta, in partnership with the departments of arts and culture and of labour, the NAC, and the National Film and Video Foundation (NFVF), initiated the Creative Research Education and Training Enterprise South Africa (Create SA) Strategic Project to develop a comprehensive on-the-job training framework for the creative industries. The project is funded by the National Skills Fund and the Department of Arts and Culture, and focuses on people who otherwise might not have had access to training opportunities.

The Artists in Schools Project places artists with a flair for education and teaching within schools wishing to offer arts curricula.

Cultural tourism

Cultural tourism is one of the most rapidly growing sectors of the multibillion-rand international tourism industry, and is an area in which South Africa is well placed to compete. Professional and innovative museums, galleries and theatres are key attractions for cultural tourists.

Cultural villages

Most tourists visiting South Africa are eager to explore the country's cultural diversity. At the same time, an increasing number of local tourists want to learn more about the people they were separated from under apartheid. (See Chapter 22: *Tourism*.)

Various projects around the country offer insight into South Africa's cultural wealth, ranging from traditional dances and rituals in rural areas, to excursions into the urban and township milieux that give South Africa its defining features.

These include Khaya Lendaba near Port Elizabeth; the Basotho Cultural Village, situated in the Golden Gate Highlands National Park, Free State; the Makhosini Cultural Village and Tourism Initiative in the Valley of Kings at Umgungundlovu in KwaZulu-Natal; the Lesedi Cultural Village near Johannesburg; Tlholego in Magaliesburg; the KoMjekejeke Cultural Village, north of Pretoria; the Mapoch Ndebele Village in Winterveld, north-west of Pretoria; the Gaabo Motho Cultural Village in Mabopane; the Rainbow Cultural Village, west of the Hartbeespoort Dam, North West; Botshabelo in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; and Shangana in Hazyview, Mpumalanga.

Cultural industries

The Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) has identified the creative industries as one of the key areas in which South Africa can achieve the goals of job creation and greater economic growth in South Africa.

The Cultural Industries Growth Strategy capitalises on the economic potential of the craft, music, film, publishing and design industries. The Department of Arts and Culture provides support in the form of financing, management capacity, advocacy and networking, and by developing public-private partnerships and other initiatives that use culture as a tool for urban regeneration.

Worldwide, the turnover of cultural industries makes this the fifth-largest economic sector, which comprises design, the performing arts, dance, film, television, multimedia, cultural heritage, cultural tourism, visual arts, crafts, music and publishing.

The Department of Arts and Culture has entered into partnership with significant stakeholders to map the cultural industries.

In November 2008, the department bought the Downtown Music Hub in Johannesburg from Gallo/Avusa, with the aim of developing sustainable cultural industries.

Pursuant to South-South cooperation, the Department of Arts and Culture is forging trilateral partnerships with strategic countries in the North and with countries on the continent to access resources and tap into their experiences and skills.

These include the South Africa, Belgium and Democratic Republic of Congo partnership in the area of local cultural policy development; and the South Africa, Mexico and Botswana Trilateral Partnership in the area of conservation and management of rock art.

The music hub is expected to become a unique and innovative music-production entity that will empower all stakeholders in the music industry, especially previously disadvantaged artists.

The hub is a partnership involving corporate and community-based entities.

International relations

The Department of Arts and Culture's participation in various activities in the international cultural arena helps to identify, promote and exploit mutually beneficial partnerships for social and economic development in South Africa.

Together with the African Union (AU) and the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad), South Africa has embarked on the road to restoring, preserving and protecting African heritage.

The department's mandate is to ensure that South African talent takes its rightful place on the global stage and to use artistry as a tool for economic self-liberation. Bilateral agreements have been signed with France, the United Kingdom (UK), China, Cuba, India, New Zealand and Belarus. South Africa ratified the Convention on the Promotion and Protection of Cultural Diversity in 2006, becoming the 35th member country to do so.

In 2009, South Africa launched a new library building for the Ahmed Baba Institute in Timbuktu, Mali, as a result of the success of the first Nepad project, the South Africa Mali Timbuktu Manuscripts Project, which was aimed at providing assistance on the preservation and popularisation of the manuscripts in Timbuktu.

In the area of international cooperation on cultural development, the Department of Arts and Culture is committed to promoting the African Agenda.

More than 100 South African artists took part in the Pan-African Arts Festival in Algiers in July 2009 and more than 200 participated in the World Festival of Black Arts in Senegal in December 2009.

The South Africa-Nigeria 10th anniversary celebrations in October 2009 showcased fashion designers and South Africa's film industry.

Southern African Development Community initiative

The Department of Arts and Culture initiated the establishment of the Forum of Directors-General of Culture in the SADC region to implement and monitor the recommendations by the ministers of culture in the region.

In partnership with Namibia, the department hosted the follow-up colloquium of SADC ministers of culture to review progress made since the adoption of the Pretoria Statement and also to come up with a regional strategy for the cultural industries, creating a bargaining block for SADC cultural goods and services.

African Union and New Partnership for Africa's Development initiatives

The Department of Arts and Culture aims to continue to engage intellectuals in the fields of arts, culture and heritage from Africa and the Diaspora in efforts to come up with a streamlined and consolidated approach and policy frameworks to ascertain a place in the global cultural arena.

The establishment of the Africa Heritage Fund is a step towards the realisation of the Africa Renaissance and the protection of valuable tangible and intangible heritage.

In September 2009, South Africa and the African Cultural Music and Dance Association hosted the Gcwala Ngamasiko *Africa Unite in Cultural Diversity* Festival.

The festival, in its sixth year, was a nationwide celebration of traditional music and dance.

Africa and the Diaspora

Discussions around a structured relationship between Africa and Africans in the Diaspora to ensure strong beneficial ties, has been on the agenda of the annual Nairobi Summit of African Ministers of Culture. This partnership presents an opportunity for cultural goods and services from the developing world to access the global markets.

The AU Africa and Diaspora Summit is a culmination of efforts to establish sustainable partnership between Africans and the continent and those in the Diaspora.

Contributing towards post-conflict reconstruction and development

The Department of Arts and Culture is actively involved in capacity-building initiatives in the fields of arts management and skills development in identified countries as part of the Post-Conflict Reconstruction and Development Programme, such as Ethiopia, Lesotho, Democratic Republic of Congo, Burundi and Sudan.

Cultural agreements between South Africa and African states

The Department of Arts and Culture has signed 18 agreements of cooperation in the fields of arts, culture and heritage. By May 2009, agreements had been signed with:

- Gabon
- Ghana
- Benin
- Ethiopia.

Bilateral cooperation

India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA)

The IBSA countries signed the Memorandum of Understanding on Cultural Cooperation during the IBSA Summit that was held at the Presidential Guest House in Pretoria in September 2007.

The Njapedi Cultural Group represented South Africa at the cultural evening and two chefs represented South Africa at the IBSA Food Festival.

The recipes used by chefs from India, Brazil and South Africa had been collated into a book, *Flavours of IBSA*, which was showcased at the 2009 IBSA Summit that was held in Brazil in October 2009.

South Africa hosted the Indian festival in July 2009 and India hosted the South African festival in November 2009.

China

The Department of Arts and Culture and the Ministry of Culture in China enjoy good relations. The two countries have had numerous cultural exchanges under the auspices of the Programme of Cooperation signed in 2001 and 2006.

The department has been invited to participate in the Shanghai World Expo in 2010 in China.

Arts festivals

The range of arts festivals around South Africa offers visitors the opportunity to combine their pursuit of culture with sightseeing, wine tasting, beach visits, wildlife viewing, history, palaeo-anthropology and relaxing in some of South Africa's most beautiful spots.

The National Arts Festival, held annually in Grahamstown, Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings of its kind staged in Africa.

It showcases southern African talent in all arts disciplines and there is also growing interest and participation from artists from the rest of Africa and the world.

The 2009 festival attracted 3 840 performances of 433 fringe productions (equivalent to 86 days) and 406 performances of 210 main productions (equivalent to 59 days).

The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees is a vibrant festival for the performing arts, presented mainly, but not exclusively, in Afrikaans. It is held annually in Oudtshoorn in the first quarter of the year.

Disciplines include drama, cabaret and contemporary and classical music.

The Arts Alive International Festival, held in Johannesburg, is an annual festival of music, dance, theatre and visual arts. Over the years, Arts Alive has become synonymous with high-quality performances by artists from around the globe.

Heritage-reclamation festivals are also held at local level in communities destroyed by apartheid, such as Vrededorp (Fietas) in Johannesburg.

The Mangaung Cultural Festival (Macufe) in Bloemfontein is gaining status as one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa.

Aardklop, held annually in Potchefstroom, North West, is inherently Afrikaans, but universal in character. The festival provides a platform for the creativity and talent of local artists.

Other festivals that attract visitors at both national and international level are the Joy of Jazz International Festival; Oppikoppi; Calabash; the One City Festival in Taung, North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban; the Spier Summer Festival at Spier Estate in the Western Cape; and the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg.

The Department of Arts and Culture and the NAC support numerous festivals throughout South Africa, including the Cape Town International Jazz Festival, Port St Johns Festival, Splashy Fen Music Festival in Durban and the National Arts Festival in Grahamstown.

The departments of arts and culture and of tourism have a forum of festival directors to maximise tourism opportunities.

Theatre

The theatre scene in South Africa is vibrant, with many active spaces across the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire, to West End and Broadway hits, classical music, opera and ballet.

The Soweto Gospel Choir performed at the Academy Awards ceremony in February 2009, in California, United States of America. This was the first time that the Grammy-nominated group performed at the Oscars.

South African theatre is internationally acclaimed as unique and top-class.

Apart from early productions, notably the ground-breaking musical *King Kong* in the 1960s, theatre created in South Africa by South Africans only began to make an impact with the advent of Johannesburg's innovative Market Theatre in the mid-1970s, just as the cultural, sporting and academic boycott was taking hold.

The Market Theatre was formally opened on 21 June 1976. It was there that Johannesburg theatregoers were introduced to the work of most of South Africa's leading playwrights and directors, including Welcome Msomi, Zanemvula (Zakes) Mda, Pieter-Dirk Uys, Gibson Kente, Paul Slabolepszy, Mbongeni Ngema, Adam Small, PG du Plessis, Kessie Govender, Bartho Smit, Maishe Maponya, Percy Mtwa, Deon Opperman, Reza de Wet, Matsemela Manaka and many others.

It was to the Market Theatre that Athol Fugard brought his *A Lesson from Aloes*, *Master Harold … and the Boys*, *The Road to Mecca*, *A Place with the Pigs*, *My Children! My Africa!* and *Playland*. At the Market, Barney Simon and his actors developed in workshop *Cincinatti – Scenes from City Life, Call Me Woman, Black Dog Inj'emnyana, Outers, Born in the RSA* and *Woza Albert!*

The performing arts marketed South Africa to overseas audiences most effectively during the 1980s, specifically through theatre and musical productions.

However, with the new century underway, the pendulum is swinging back, and, in nurseries such as the Market Theatre Laboratory, the Liberty Theatre on the Square's Saturday Children's Theatre workshops, the Cape Town Theatre Lab and the Johannesburg Youth Theatre, new shoots of talent are burgeoning and blooming, nurtured by events like the Market's community and young writers' festivals.

In recent years, South African theatre has taken the entertainment world by storm with commendable reviews for *Umoja*, *The Lion King* and *Kat and The Kings*. The reception these productions receive in capitals of the world testifies to the high quality of indigenous South African theatre.

Music

South Africa has nurtured the development of an array of distinctive styles of music, and it has contributed significantly to music heard on the continent.

These styles range from South African jazz, which describes a range of music from early marabi-inspired sounds in the late 1930s and 1940s by bands like the Merry Blackbirds Orchestra, to current performers such as trumpeter Hugh Masekela, Jonas Gwangwa, Abdullah Ibrahim, Jimmy Dludlu, Judith Sephuma and others.

Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular. They combine elements of rap, reggae and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Kwaai Jazz is gaining momentum.

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the *Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report*, and government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue.

In music, the department has solid foundations to build on. These include the annual South African Music Week, the in-school education programme run in conjunction with the Department of Basic Education, and the Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition.

The Taking South African Music to the World Programme is aimed at improving export opportunities for South African music.

The Department of Arts and Culture funds a number of musical ensembles directly and indirectly, through the NAC.

Midem 2009

The *Marché International du Disque et de l'Edition Musicale* (Midem) is an international music market, held annually in France, and attracts in excess of 10 000 music-business practitioners who showcase their products. It is the most prestigious music trade-show in the world. The event is also designed to provide opportunities for business networking. South Africa had its first pavilion at Midem in January 2005.

South Africa continues to participate in the Midem. The aim of the department's participation is to market and promote South African music abroad and learn from peers so that the country can be globally competitive.

South Africa was given the status of "Country of Honour" at Midem in 2010. This means that the country was given the opportunity to market and promote South African music through live events, publicity and exclusive branding.

South African Music Week

The South African Music Week is an annual project that celebrates South African music on radio, television and through live events in the community. The project is considered the largest platform for developing South Africa's live and recording music industry through broadcasting, workshops, awareness and the promotion of local music products.

During Music Week, many broadcasters increase airplay of South African music, providing artists with a platform to market their products.

Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition

The Department of Arts and Culture continues to host the annual Moshito Conference and Exhibition, which has become the key African continent music exhibition and marketing point.

The exhibition is aimed at promoting collaboration among players from both the private and the public sectors.

The annual event is designed to provide opportunities for business networking; information exchange; music-business education; promotion and product development for national music producers, performers, individuals and entities providing support services; as well as to strengthen business opportunities for the music industry and related media.

Support for the Southern African Electronic Music Conference

The electronic music sector is one of the strategic platforms for growth of the local music industry. The sector has shown its strength in appealing to the youth market in terms of music sales.

In 2006, the Department of Arts and Culture for the first time entered into a partnership with

In July 2009, the Minister of Arts and Culture, Ms Lulu Xingwana, launched the programme for the Moral Regeneration Movement at an event in Polokwane, Limpopo. South Africans were reminded of the importance of positive values and the responsibility of creating moral communities, to ensure lasting democracy, peace and prosperity in Africa.

The Moral Regeneration Movement was launched in April 2002, established as a Section 21 company with the then Deputy President, Jacob Zuma, as its patron.

In July 2009, South African opera singer Pretty Yende (24) achieved a world-first by taking home all the main prizes at the prestigious International Hans Gabor Belvedere Singing Competition in Vienna, Austria.

The University of Cape Town School of Music graduate won the first prize in the opera and operatta categories and took home the Audience Prize as well as the International Media-Jury Prize. She also won seven special prizes, which are sponsored by the jurors and donors.

Deejays United (DJU) a body formed by individual DJs and music-industry practitioners to address the plight of aspiring practitioners through skills development.

The partnership has strengthened the efforts of the DJU and the conference, and played a critical role in increasing the scale at which the project was pitched, thus allowing many aspiring music producers to be accommodated.

The 2009 conference was held in July in Durban. Music-making participants at the conference had an opportunity to have their songs included on a CD for release by Sony Music.

South African Music Awards (Samas)

The 15th annual Sama ceremony took place in May 2009. Categories and winners included:

- Album of the Year: Lira – *Soul in Mind*
- Best Male Solo Artist: Abdullah Ibrahim
- Best Female Solo Artist: Lira
- Best Newcomer: Andile Mseleku
- Best Duo/Group: Soweto Gospel Choir
- MTN Record of the Year: *Rhythmic Elements.*

Dance

South African dance is unique in its vitality and energy. More and more South African dance companies, individual dancers and choreographers are being invited to perform at festivals throughout Europe, Australia and the United States of America.

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre to the completely unconventional.

Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and the trifles of everyday life.

An informal but highly versatile performance venue in Johannesburg, The Dance Factory, provides a permanent platform for a variety of dance and movement groups.

The Wits Theatre (part of the University of the Witwatersrand) is also a popular dance venue. It is home to the annual First National Bank (FNB) Dance Umbrella.

The FNB Dance Umbrella 2009 ran from 22 February to 14 March. The festival took place in various venues: the Wits Theatre Complex in Braamfontein, the Dance Factory, the Market Theatre Laboratory in Newtown and the University of Johannesburg Centre for the Arts in Auckland Park.

The highlight of the Dance Umbrella 2009 was the opening of Dance Space, where the Dance Forum was based from March 2009.

Activities ranged from face-to-face discussions with selected choreographers/dancers, photo exhibitions, dance-film screenings, networking events, discussions and debates, books and other dance material for sale.

The festival featured choreographers and companies from all over South Africa, and presented work ranging from community-based/youth groups, young up-and-coming choreographers and new commissioned work from South African artists to international companies.

The Cape Town City Ballet, started in 1934 as the University of Cape Town Ballet Company, is the oldest ballet company in the country.

The largest ballet company is the South African Ballet Theatre, situated in Johannesburg.

Visual arts

Art galleries in South Africa's major cities (such as the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal; the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng; the South African National Gallery in Cape Town; and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Art Museum in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape) display collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary work.

Universities also play an important role in acquiring artwork of national interest.

Renowned South African choreographer and performance artist, Robyn Orlin, was honoured with a prestigious award from French President Nicolas Sarkozy, in recognition of her significant contribution to choreography and the arts.

Sarkozy made Orlin a *Knight of the Ordre National du Mérite* – the French National Order of Merit. The award is bestowed upon French nationals and foreigners in recognition of distinguished civil and military achievements.

Orlin received the award at a ceremony held in Johannesburg in February 2009.

The Arise Africa Fashion Week took place from 12 to 20 June 2009. The designers who participated came from South Africa, Madagascar, Nigeria, Uganda, Kenya, Ghana, Cameroon, Guinea, Tanzania, Sierra Leone, Ethiopia, Angola, Ivory Coast, Namibia, Martinique, Mozambique, Egypt, Botswana and Morocco.

The awards were as follows:

- Designer of the Year Award: David Tlale of South Africa
- Most Promising Designer Award: Heni of South Africa
- Fashion Business Award: Maponya Mall, Soweto, Johannesburg
- Fashion Creative Award: Anglo Gold and Susan Hayes of South Africa
- Africa Red Carpet Award: Kluk CDGT of South Africa.

These include collections housed in the Gertrude Posel Gallery of the University of the Witwatersrand, the University of South Africa (Unisa) Gallery in Pretoria, the Edoardo Villa Museum and other galleries at the University of Pretoria, and a collection of contemporary Indian art at the University of Durban-Westville.

Corporate collections of national interest include those of Standard Bank, Amalgamated Banks of South Africa (Absa) and the MTN cellular phone network.

The Department of Arts and Culture supports a number of projects that promote the visual arts. These range from arts publications and women-empowerment programmes to national and international exhibitions and infrastructure funding.

The Department of Arts and Culture's art collection has been restored and the works are displayed in the building occupied by the department.

The Visual Century Project is undertaking research on the visual arts in South Africa over the last century.

The project will involve exhibitions at all major galleries, publications and documentary films.

It was conceived as a research project to produce a range of art historical resources that invite further research. The project is managed by the Africa South Art Initiative.

The project has received initial funding from the Department of Arts and Culture, and is housed in the Department of Historical Studies at the University of Cape Town. Subtitled *South African Art in Context, 1907 to 2007*, the project seeks to produce a concise record of a century of South African contemporary art production.

In 2009, the first phase of the Visual Century Project created four publications and a website.

Each book focuses on a particular historical period. The second phase of the project aims to produce a series of documentary films.

Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographer's paradise. Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee-table books, documentaries, local and overseas exhibitions, magazines and newspapers.

National and international photographic exhibitions and competitions are held in South Africa annually, and various national awards are bestowed on local photographers. The Agfa Wildlife and Environment Photographic Awards, presented for the first time in 1981, have become one of Africa's most prestigious wildlife photographic competitions, attracting entries from top wildlife photographers, not only from Africa, but across the world.

Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage to which all the cultural groups in the country have contributed. Through the centuries, a trend in South Africa's architectural style has developed, which has been referred to as an innovative marrying of traditions.

Today, this is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and public buildings, to modern commercial buildings reflecting state-of-the-art technology and designs that match the best in the world. Schools of architecture exist within various South African universities. Sahra conserves buildings of historical or architectural value. More than 4 000 buildings, sites and other objects (including trees) have been declared national monuments.

Heritage South Africa is a non-profit private organisation that conserves South Africa's variety of architectural gems.

Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in the country in the distant past. Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rock-art sites south of the Zambezi.

The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in South Africa, which is also the largest of its type in the world.

The Department of Arts and Culture intends to undertake a national audit on the Intangible Cultural Heritage (ICH) in South Africa. The objective of the audit, among other things, is to provide the department with an indication of the scope of the ICH in South Africa, a register of the different categories of ICH as well as measures to preserve and protect it, including the benefits thereof. The audit will form the basis of the promotion, protection and transmission of South Africa's living heritage.

The mountains, especially the Drakensberg range and those in the Cape, are home to fascinating rock-art panels.

Rock engravings are scattered on flat rock surfaces and boulders throughout the interior. The artworks depict mainly hunter-gatherers and their relationship with the animal world and historical events, as well as interaction with and observation of newcomers encroaching upon their living space. Indigenous people with spears and Nguni cattle, Khoikhoin fat-tailed sheep, European settlers on horseback with rifles and wagons, and ships and soldiers in uniform were captured in surprising detail.

Immortalised visions of the artists' spiritual world are found on the sandstone canvases. These depict complex symbols and metaphors to illustrate the supernatural powers and potency they received from nature.

The oldest dated rock art in South Africa, an engraved stone 10 200 years old, was discovered in a living floor at the Wonderwerk Cave near Kuruman in the Northern Cape.

The oldest painted stones (6 400 years) were recovered at Boomplaas Cave in the Cango Valley near Oudtshoorn.

Three painted stones were also found at the Klasies River caves, which yielded the second-oldest painted stone, dating back 3 900 years.

The Department of Arts and Culture supports a number of projects, including a rock-heritage project in Clanwilliam in the Western Cape.

Crafts

The craft industry has been identified as a strategic sector for the economic upliftment of South Africans. The crafts industry has the potential to create meaningful jobs and the Department of Arts and Culture has begun to consolidate the marketing and distribution of South African products to international markets such as Art Mundi in Brazil.

In 2009, the department established the annual National Craft Awards where 60 crafters across the nine provinces were recognised and awarded for their contribution to craft development.

The department has craft projects in all nine provinces. The products of these and other projects can be viewed at a number of venues, including two state-assisted outlets at the Bus Factory in Newtown, Johannesburg, and the Boardwalk in Port Elizabeth.

The Annual Beautiful Things Craft Supermarket continues to provide market access for this young industry.

The Department of Arts and Culture is also running a special ministerial project of craft competitions in the genres of textile, embroidery and indigenous clay pottery to discover new talent. In recognition of the wealth of indigenous knowledge, the department spearheaded the opening of a rural-based arts and craft gallery.

The Vhutsila a vhu Tibiwi Art and Craft Gallery is a realisation of a dream come true for the ideals of skills development and the preservation of heritage and the IKS in the Vhembe district, Limpopo.

Design

The Department of Arts and Culture has put in place several initiatives to improve product design and the use of computer-aided design (CAD).

These include:

- a partnership with the South African Fashion Week on developmental initiatives to address the Second Economy
- established designers facilitating workshops to unearth new talent and fuse design with craft
- the National Product Development Centre at the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), which operates within a national framework, optimising the contributions of service-providers throughout the country in the area of design technology
- the CAD initiative at the CSIR, which is linked to the technology station at the Free State University of Technology and similar institutions in KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape
- the Cape Craft and Design Institute
- the awarding of design learnerships through Create SA to help emerging designers
- the annual Design Indaba Conference and Expo held in Cape Town in February.

The indaba is regarded as one of the premier design events in the world. The expo is a gallery, a marketplace, a school and a theatre, featuring

the finest original South African design, covering everything from homeware and jewellery to architecture, fashion, film, multimedia and graphic design.

Literature

South Africa has a rich history of literary output that has been well received locally and internationally. Fiction is written in all of South Africa's 11 official languages – with a large body of work in Afrikaans, in particular.

The net turnover of the book sector was estimated at about R5 billion in 2007. This included about R3,2 billion earned through publishing and R1,8 billion from book sales.

The new pop culture in poetry, often refered to as "spoken word poetry", is one of the most celebrated art forms throughout the country and beyond. Poets such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Lebogang Mashile, Kgafela oa Magogodi, Blaq Pearl, Jessica Mbangeni and Mark Manaka are household names in the genre. There are regular platforms created to give these poets opportunities to hone their skills.

The current generation of writers is also making their mark on the world stage, with writers such as Zakes Mda, Niq Mhlongo and the late K Sello Duiker having their novels translated into languages such as Dutch, German and Spanish. The youngest winner of the Noma Award, the most coveted literary award on the continent, is Lebogang Mashile, a vibrant South African poetess. A young writer from KwaZulu-Natal, John van der Ruit, debuted with *Spud* in 2005, a novel that sold more than 130 000 copies in less than three years, thus breaking all records for a South African novel.

The past three years have recorded a rapid growth in the South African book sector. The establishment of the South African Book Development Council (SABDC), which was launched in June 2007, has created a platform for the book industry to develop an integrated growth strategy. Among other accomplishments, the SABDC has been able to consolidate industry indicators that are fundamental in the development of the sector. One of the major projects of the SABDC is the development of the Draft Framework for the National Book Policy to serve as a legislative framework to guide growth and development strategies in the book sector.

The Cape Town Book Fair broke its own record in 2009 with 50 494 people attending over four days. About 7 194 children visited the fair.

Thousands of members of the public, representatives of publishing houses, and trade delegations from 31 countries and other African countries spent hours poring over the latest offerings.

WorldFest, a literary component of the Grahamstown Arts Festival, focuses on promoting literature in indigenous languages.

The Johannesburg and the Franschoek literary festivals are welcome additions to the growing literary culture in South Africa.

Magazines and literary journals have always played a pivotal role in the development of the South African literary contours. In the recent past, a number of literary magazines and journals have emerged and continue to provide regular publishing space for both seasoned and budding writers.

A number of writers contribute to publications such as *Chimurenga*, *Timbila*, *Botsotso*, *Afropolitan*, *Words*, *Baobab* and *New Contrast*. These journals create a platform for emerging writers to hone their skills while also opening space for literary criticism.

In December 2005, the Write Associates, an independent communication and arts-and-culture event-management company, supported the Department of Arts and Culture in inaugurating the South African Literary Awards. Since their establishment, the awards have developed to include categories such as Literary Lifetime Achievement Awards, the National Poet Laureate Prize, the K Sello Duiker Award for Young Novelists, Literary Journalism Award and many other categories. Other awards include the M-Net Awards and the BTA/Anglo Platinum Short Story Award.

South African literature was also recognised at the 2009's *Sunday Times* Literary Awards held in August in Johannesburg.

In a Different Time by Peter Harris claimed the Alan Paton Award for Non-Fiction to mark the 20th anniversary of the prize, while Anne Landsman's *The Rowing Lesson* was awarded 2009's Fiction Prize.

The Department of Arts and Culture, as the custodian of the nation's heritage, embraces its diverse cultures and encourages the promotion, preservation and use of various languages in both oral and written forms of literature. The publication of books is a critical vehicle for developing

In September 2009, JM Coetzee was nominated for the prestigious Booker Prize for Fiction for his work *Summertime*. Coetzee won the prize previously for *Life and Times of Michael K* and *Disgrace*.

Mandla Langa won the Commonwealth Writers' Prize Best Book Award, Africa Region, in 2009 for his novel, *The Lost Colours of the Chameleon.*

and preserving languages and literature to ensure social cohesion.

Through the National Library of South Africa (NLSA), the Department of Arts and Culture reprinted 24 titles of classics in African languages, which were distributed to libraries throughout the country. The second phase of the project started in June 2009.

There is an English literary museum in Grahamstown and an Afrikaans museum in Bloemfontein. The Centre for African Literary Studies at the University of KwaZulu-Natal is home to the Bernth Lindfors Collection of African literature. The centre is committed to preserving and adding to the collection to maintain the largest library of African literature on the continent.

Film

South Africa continues to participate in, among other festivals, the Cannes Film Festival. This has helped to catapult the film industry into the world cinema fraternity. The department is assisting the Federation of Pan-African Film Producers while it is headquartered in South Africa, following the Pan-African Film Summit that South Africa hosted in 2006. This body provides a creative home for film-makers from the African continent and serves as a marketing platform for African films.

South Africa has risen from being a film-maker destination to a film-producing country.

The NFVF was established to develop and promote the film and video industry in South Africa. It provides for and encourages the creation of opportunities for people from disadvantaged communities to participate in the industry. The foundation also promotes local film and video products, supports the development of and access to the industry and addresses historical imbalances in infrastructure skills and resources in the industry.

Developing and producing local content in genres with wide appeal is a priority for the foundation. Research has begun on a national strategy for film education and training, and to develop sector-information systems to measure sector performance and the related economic and job-multiplier effects.

The department, together with the foundation, is looking at ways of setting up cooperatives in rural areas that focus on bringing cinemas to South Africans and developing skills in areas related to film production. The department has also established a partnership with Canada on cooperation in the film industry.

A revised rebate for foreign and local film and television production was launched in March 2008.

The film and television production incentive comprises the Location Film and Television Production Scheme, and the South African Film and Television Production and Co-Production Scheme. The incentive is intended to increase local content generation and improve location competitiveness for filming in South Africa.

This component is only available to foreign-owned productions with Qualifying South African Production Expenditure (QSAPE) of R12 million and above.

It provides a rebate of 15% of the QSAPE to qualifying productions in the following formats: feature films, telemovies, television drama series, documentaries, animation and short-form animations. Its aim is to attract large-budget overseas film and television productions to South Africa.

The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit called Cinema Nouveau with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Film festivals include the Durban Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West; the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.

Film and Publication Board (FPB)

The FPB assists the public to make informed choices about whether a particular film is appropriate by displaying guidelines, which identify classifiable elements such as strong language, violence, sex, nudity, drug abuse, blasphemy and religious prejudice.

In August 2009, *District 9*, a space alien movie shot and set in Johannesburg with a cast of "unknowns", opened as the number one film in the United States of America, grossing more at the box office in its first weekend than it cost to make. The film was directed and co-written by South African Neill Blomkamp.

The FPB was established by the Film and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 65 of 1996), to:

- regulate the creation, production, possession and distribution of certain publications and films by means of classification, the imposition of age restrictions and giving consumer advice
- make punishable the exploitive use of children in pornographic publications, films or on the Internet.

The board also alerts the public, through age restrictions and consumer advice, about the frequency and intensity of these classifiable elements in a particular film.

During 2008/09, R50,9 billion was allocated to the FBP.

Any person who distributes or exhibits a film or interactive computer game in South Africa must first register with the board as a distributor or exhibitor of films or interactive games.

Any film intended for distribution or exhibition must first be submitted to the board for classification in terms of the Film and Publications Act, 1996.

To monitor distributors on-site and to ensure that films are distributed in compliance with the provisions of the Act, the board has appointed compliance monitors. They advise distributors and exhibitors of films and interactive games of the Act's requirements and ensure that all products display the classification reference number, age restriction, consumer advice and such other conditions as may have been imposed by the board. The Film and Publications Act, 1996 recognises the right of adults to freedom of expression, except with respect to child pornography, and requires the board to intervene where there is a risk of harm to children.

By mid-2009, the Cape Town Film Studios were under construction near Khayelitsha. The studios, hailed as the industrialisation of film-making in the country, could have positive spin-offs for other industries.

The goal is for the Cape Town Film Studios to become the film-making gateway between Africa and the international world.

The studios received a R16,3-million allocation from the Department of Trade and Industry.

Phase One, which includes sound stages, production offices, workshops, retail spaces, commercial offices and light industrial facilities was scheduled for completion during the first quarter of 2010.

Cape Town Film Studios are the first custom-built, Hollywood-style studios in South Africa's history.

South African film-maker John Barker's script, *The Umbrella Men*, earned him a place in the prestigious *L'Atelier de Cinefondation* Programme of the 2009 Cannes Film Festival.

Aimed at supporting the development of a new generation of film-makers, the festival's workshop selects 15 up-and-coming young directors from around the world and assists them in financing the completion of their film projects, while putting them in touch with some of the word's most respected film-industry professionals.

Child pornography is defined as any image, however created, or any description of a person, real or simulated, who is depicted or described as being under the age of 18 years, engaged in sexual conduct; participating in or assisting another person to participate in sexual conduct; or showing or describing the body, or parts of the body, of such a person in a manner that amounts to sexual exploitation.

The board runs a national anti-child-pornography campaign to educate learners of ways to avoid victimisation. The board has a toll-free number (0800 148 148) to report child-pornography websites.

The Film and Publications Amendment Act, 2009, (Act 3 of 2009), was signed into law by President Jacob Zuma in August 2009. It aims to increase the FPB's capacity and make the department's endeavour to protect children from abuse even more effective.

The FPB has been accepted as a member of the International Association of Internet Hotlines. This will strengthen the Department of Home Affairs' cooperation with other member countries in the fight against child pornography.

The Department of Home Affairs is working with law-enforcement agencies, non-government organisations (NGOs) and the 2010 Organising Committee to ensure that there is heightened focus on child protection to ensure that the 2010 World Cup is child-friendly.

Ministerial Task Team on Child Pornography

The task team has forged strategic partnerships with mobile phone operators and Internet service-providers, the South African Broadcasting Corporation and other government departments.

Established in 2006, it has assessed the work done by all these institutions to help in the fight against child pornography. To assist in the task, the FPB commissioned the Human Sciences Research Council to conduct research on the extent of child pornography in South Africa and

on the capacity to deal with it in the form of laws, policies and institutions.

Museums

Museums are the windows to the natural and cultural heritage of a country. South Africa can justifiably be called the museum country of Africa, with the earliest of its museums dating back to the first half of the 19th century.

Today, more than 300 of the approximately 1 000 museums in Africa are situated in South Africa. They range from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines.

Most of the country's national museums are declared cultural institutions (national museums that have framework autonomy and are managed by their own councils), and fall under the overall jurisdiction of the Department of Arts and Culture. They receive an annual subsidy from the department, but are mostly autonomous.

In terms of the Cultural Institutions Act, 1998, the declared museum institutions in Gauteng and Cape Town have been grouped together into two organisations known as flagship institutions.

While the components of these two museum flagships (the museums from which they have been constituted) continue to operate as semi-independent museums regarding their core functions (collection, preservation, research and education), other functions, particularly administration, financing and human-resource management, have been centralised.

The following museums report to the Minister of Arts and Culture in terms of the Act:

- Northern Flagship Institution, Pretoria
- Iziko museums, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- Afrikaanse Taalmuseum, Paarl
- National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Engelenburg House Art Collection, Pretoria
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza.

The Northern Flagship Institution consists of the National Cultural History Museum (NCHM) and its former satellite museums (Kruger House, Tswaing Meteorite Crater, Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum, Pioneer Museum, Sammy Marks Museum and the Coert Steynberg Museum), the Transvaal Museum and the South African National Museum of Military History in Johannesburg.

The Iziko museums of Cape Town, formerly known as the Southern Flagship Institution, consist of the South African Museum, the South African Cultural History Museum and its satellite museums, the South African National Gallery, the William Fehr Collection and the Michaelis Collection. In terms of the Cultural Institutions Act, 1998, the declared museums in other provinces continue to operate as before. These include the National Museum and the War Museum of the Boer Republics, the William Humphreys Art Gallery, the Natal Museum and the Voortrekker Museum, the National English Literacy Museum and the Afrikaanse Taalmuseum.

The Act also provides for the National Museums Division, comprising the CEOs and directors of the flagship museums and other declared museums.

The Robben Island Museum was established as a national monument and museum, and declared South Africa's first world heritage site in 1999. Guided tours are offered to historical sites on the island, including the cell in which former President Mandela was imprisoned.

The Robben Island Museum has its own council and is a separate declared institution, independent of Iziko.

Apart from the declared museums that fall under the department, there are also a number of other national museums that are administered by central government departments or research councils. Notable examples are the Museum of the Council for Geoscience (Pretoria); the Theiler Veterinary Science Museum at Onderstepoort (Pretoria); the South African Air Force Museum at Air Force Base Zwartkop (Pretoria) with its satellites in Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and Durban; the museum of the Department of Correctional Services (Pretoria); and the Porcinarium (the world's first pig museum) outside Pretoria on the Irene Campus of the Agricultural Research Council.

A number of museums fall directly or indirectly under the provincial government departments responsible for arts and culture. In some provinces, these museums render museum-support services at provincial level, while other provinces, notably Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Western Cape and the Free State, have separate museum-service organisations.

However, many museum and heritage services are also rendered by the declared

national museums on a consultancy basis. Many municipalities also manage museums.

Other museums fall under universities and university departments, or are owned and managed by private-sector companies, NGOs or individuals.

The largest museums are situated in Johannesburg, Pretoria, Cape Town, Durban, Pietermaritzburg and Bloemfontein.

The best-known natural history collections in South Africa are housed in the Iziko museums and the Northern Flagship Institution, as well as in the following:

- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- McGregor Museum, Kimberley
- East London Museum
- South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, Grahamstown
- Port Elizabeth Museum
- Durban Museum of Natural History.

The best-known cultural-history collections are housed in the Iziko museums and the Northern Flagship Institution, and in the following:

- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- Durban Local History Museum
- Museum Africa, Johannesburg.

Art museums include the:

- South African National Gallery, Cape Town
- Johannesburg Art Gallery
- Pretoria Art Museum
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley.

The South African Cultural History Museum (Slave Lodge) in Cape Town houses the oldest cultural history collection in the country.

The South African Museum (Cape Town) showcases the natural history of South Africa, as well as relics of the early human inhabitants of the subcontinent. The huge Whale Hall houses possibly the most impressive of all its exhibitions. This is the only collection in South Africa with a planetarium attached to it.

The Transvaal Museum in Pretoria houses the skull of Mrs Ples, a 2,5 million-year-old hominid fossil, and depicts the origin and development of life in South Africa, from the most primitive unicellular form of life to the emergence of mammals and the first human beings. It has an impressive collection of early human fossils and houses some of the largest herpetological and ornithological collections in southern Africa.

The Tswaing Meteorite Crater, situated to the north-west of Pretoria, combines a museum with a cultural-development initiative.

The NCHM (former African Window) in Pretoria is a centre for the preservation and promotion of the culture and heritage of all South Africans. It explores cultural diversity and commonalities, links the present and the past to offer a better understanding of both, and nurtures the living culture of all South Africans.

Mining is best represented by the De Beers Museum at the Big Hole in Kimberley, where visitors can view the biggest hole ever made by man with pick and shovel. It includes an open-air museum, which houses many buildings dating back to the era of the diamond diggings.

Another important mining museum is at Pilgrim's Rest, Mpumalanga, where the first economically viable goldfield was discovered. The entire village has been conserved and restored.

Agriculture in South Africa is depicted mainly at two museums. These are Kleinplasie in Worcester, Western Cape, which showcases the wine culture and the characteristic architecture of the winelands; and the Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum between Pretoria and Bronkhorstspruit in Gauteng. This museum comprises two "house" museums, and runs educational programmes based on their extensive collection of early farming implements, vehicles of yesteryear and indigenous farm animals.

The Absa Museum and Archives in Johannesburg aims to preserve the banking group's more than 110 years of history. It also houses a unique and very valuable coin and banknote collection.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg offers a realistic view of the political situation in South Africa during the 1970s and 1980s. Exhibitions in the museum feature, among other things, audiovisual footage recorded during the apartheid era.

The Red Location Museum in Port Elizabeth highlights the struggle against apartheid and has won three international awards.

One of the most common types of museums in South Africa is the "house" museum. Examples include an entire village nucleus in Stellenbosch; an example of the lifestyle of the wealthy wine farmer in Groot Constantia in the Western Cape; the mansion of the millionaire industrialist Sammy Marks, outside Pretoria; the Victorian affluence mirrored in Melrose House, Pretoria; and the Kruger House Museum in Pretoria, the residence of Paul Kruger, former President of the Zuid-Afrikaanse Republiek.

Simpler architectural variations have not been neglected, for instance the pioneer-dwelling in

Silverton, Pretoria; and the humble farmhouse at Suikerbosrand near Heidelberg in Gauteng.

There are several open-air museums that showcase the black cultures of the country, for example Tsongakraal near Letsitele, Limpopo; the Ndebele Museum in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; the Bakone Malapa Museum in Polokwane, Limpopo; and the South Sotho Museum in Witsieshoek, Free State.

South Africa has two national military history museums. The South African Museum for Military History in Johannesburg reflects the military history of the country, while the War Museum in Bloemfontein depicts the Anglo-Boer/South African War in particular. The famous battlefields of KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape and North West are also worth a visit.

The work of the War-Graves Division of Sahra includes the upkeep of graves of victims of the struggle for South Africa's liberation.

Archives

Archives of governmental bodies are transferred to archive repositories after 20 years, and are accessible to the public and to the office of origin.

The National Archives functions in terms of the National Archives and Records Service of South Africa Act, 1996 (Act 43 of 1996).

The National Archives in Pretoria includes the National Film, Video and Sound Archives. Its primary functions are to obtain and preserve films, videotapes and sound recordings of archival value and to make these available for research and reference purposes.

The archives of central government are preserved in the National Archives' repository in Pretoria. The provincialisation process has been completed. All the nine provinces now run their archiving services independent from the National Archives.

The retrieval of information from archives is facilitated by the National Automated Archival Information System (*www.national.archives.gov.za*), which includes national registers of manuscripts, photographs and audiovisual material, etc. The National Archives also renders a regulatory records-management service with regard to current records in governmental bodies, aimed at promoting efficient, transparent and accountable administration.

The National Archives is responsible for collecting non-public records with enduring value of national significance. In so doing, it is obliged to pay special attention to aspects of the nation's experience neglected by archives of the past.

The Oral History Programme seeks to build the National Archives' capacity to document the spoken word, and fill the gaps in the archives of previously disadvantaged communities. The automated *National Register of Oral Sources* is an important element of the programme. The National Oral History Association, which was established in 2006, hosts annual oral history conferences.

The National Archives also has an outreach programme, which promotes the use of the National Archives' facilities. This programme allows the public to tour the archives and get insight of other functions performed by the National Archives and Records Services of South Africa.

The Act also provides government with a measure of control over private collections. Archives are taken to the people through coordinated national and provincial archive services.

The National Archives is also responsible for ensuring effective, transparent and accountable management of all public records, as far as possible.

Library and Information Services (LIS) sector

South African libraries have developed over a period of more than 150 years. The world's first free public library service was established here by Lord Charles Somerset in 1820, by levying a tax on the sale of wine. When he returned to England, tax reforms by the new governor spelt the end of the free library, but it formed the basis of what is today the National Library of South Africa (NLSA) in Cape Town.

By 1900, subscription libraries were operating in most towns and cities, financed by annual membership fees and, in most cases, grants from local authorities. An investigation in the 1930s by the Carnegie Corporation of New York found that most of these libraries were inadequate and poorly funded. The necessity for government support to ensure free public libraries was recognised.

By the 1950s, all four provinces of the Union of South Africa had ordinances that set out the

Izulu Lami, meaning *My Secret Sky* in isiZulu, a feature film directed by South Africa's Madoda Ncayiyana, received the Dikalo Best Feature Film Prize at the International Pan-African Film Festival, held in Cannes, France, in April 2009.

The 11-year-old Sobahle Mkhabase of KwaZulu-Natal won the Best Actress Award at the Tarifa Festival in Spain for her role in the film.

functions of local and provincial government, and public-library development gathered momentum.

In 1985, librarians commissioned Unisa to investigate the role that libraries could and should play in developing South Africa.

The result was that greater emphasis was placed on providing material that would support formal and informal education. Outreach programmes to schools and pre-schools received priority. Many libraries also started presenting literacy classes for adults.

South Africa's growing LIS sector includes a national library, public/community libraries, special libraries, government libraries and higher education (HE) libraries.

By the end of 2008, South Africa had about 12 000 libraries, including HE libraries, school libraries, government departmental libraries, one National Library with two campuses, and public libraries provided by provincial and local government (library services and metro libraries).

Provincial library services

The Department of Arts and Culture is in the process of drafting the South African Community Libraries Bill to set the norms and standards for a transformed community library sector. This Bill is expected to be tabled in Parliament in 2010. Libraries in the nine provinces offer outreach, literacy, information technology, reading and children school-information programmes to various extents.

National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS)

The NCLIS was established in terms of the NCLIS Act, 2001 (Act 6 of 2001), (Annexure A). The NCLIS advises the ministers of arts and culture and of basic education on matters relating to LIS to support and stimulate the socio-economic, educational, cultural, recreational, scientific research, technological and information development of all communities in the country.

The functions of the council are to develop and coordinate LIS in the country. The council was reconstituted in March 2008. Its main activity in 2008 was to finalise the development of the Library Transformation Charter that was initiated in August 2006. The aim of the charter is to align the role of libraries with the vision and strategic framework of government.

National Library of South Africa

The NLSA is a custodian and provider of the nation's key knowledge resources. It is mandated by the NLSA Act, 1998 (Act 92 of 1998), to collect and preserve intellectual documentary heritage material and to make it accessible worldwide. It ensures that knowledge and information are not lost to posterity and are available for future research.

The National Library's collections contain a wealth of information sources, including rare manuscripts, books, periodicals, government publications, foreign official publications, maps, technical reports, and books on special interest, including Africana material and newspapers. These may also be available on CD, microfilm, in digital format or on the web.

The functions of the NLSA are to build a complete collection of published documents emanating from or relating to South Africa; to maintain and preserve these collections; to provide access to them through bibliographic, reference, information and interlibrary/interlending services; and to promote information awareness and information literacy.

In terms of the Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997), the NLSA receives two copies of each book, periodical, newspaper, map, manuscript material or other publication that is published in South Africa in any medium, whether print or electronic.

Other legal deposit libraries are the Library of Parliament in Cape Town; the Mangaung Public Library in Bloemfontein; the Msunduzi Municipal Library (formerly the Natal Society Library) in Pietermaritzburg; and the National Film, Video and Sound Archives.

The Legal Deposit Act, 1997 also provides for the establishment of official publications depositories (OPDs) in line with sections 6 (2) and (3) of the Act. The Constitutional Court Library was the first OPD to be designated and the Phuthaditjhaba Public Library in the Free State the second. North West Provincial Library, Information and Archives Services was designated OPD status with effect from 1 January 2009.

The NLSA and the Department of Arts and Culture are in the process of revitalising and transforming public and community libraries in adherence with the national priorities, mainly to promote accessibility to books and supporting African literature.

The new building of the Pretoria Campus, funded by the Department of Arts and Culture, was inaugurated on 1 August 2008. The new premises cover 33 000 m^2, have seating for 1 300 library users and cost about R347 million.

South African Library for the Blind

Blindlib is a statutory organisation located in Grahamstown. Its aim is to provide, free of charge as far as is reasonably possible, a national LIS to serve blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa. It is partly state-funded and depends for the remainder of its financial needs on soliciting funds from the private sector and the general public. Blindlib also produces documents in special media such as Braille and audio formats. It develops standards for the production of such documents and researches production methods and technology in the appropriate fields.

It also acquires, manufactures and disseminates the technology people with visual disabilities need to read.

Blindlib is based on five broad objectives, namely to significantly contribute to:

- helping build a nation of readers
- assisting the organised blind community
- improving the lives of individuals with print disabilities by meeting their information needs
- helping the State to discharge its cultural mandate and its obligations to blind people
- assisting Africa's development by providing advice, expertise and documents in accessible formats for blind persons and the institutions that serve their information needs.

Blindlib has a membership of more than 5 500, an audio and Braille collection of over 22 700 books and an annual circulation of more than 170 000 books, in Braille and audio format.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation of the blind, governed by the blind, and is located in Johannesburg. One of its prime objectives is to provide services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille. Blind SA provides:

- study bursaries for blind and partially sighted students
- interest-free loans (for adaptive equipment)
- information (free Braille magazines)
- assistance in finding sustainable employment
- advocacy (to act as a pressure group for disability rights)
- Braille publications at affordable prices in all official languages.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Department of Arts and Culture
Department of Arts and Culture's 2009 Budget Vote
Estimates of National Expenditure 2009, published by National Treasury
Film and Publication Board
FNB Dance Umbrella
Sunday Times
www.act.org.za
www.artsculturetrust.co.za
www.actonline.co.za
www.artzone.co.za
www.basa.co.za
www.bizcommunity.co.za
www.businessday.co.za
www.capetownbookfair.com
www.createsa.org.za
www.gautengfilm.co.za
www.gov.za
www.litnet.co.za
www.nac.org.za
www.risa.org.za
www.sahra.org.za
www.sapa.org.za
www.southafrica.info
www.tonight.co.za

Suggested reading

Archives News. 2007–. Pretoria: Department of Arts and Culture.
Beyer, CM. 2008. *Litema: Mural Masterpiece.* Bloemfontein: Central University of Technology.
Botha, M. 2007. *Marginal Lives and Painful Pasts: South African Cinema After Apartheid.* Parklands: Genugtig!
Brink, Y. 2008. *They Came to Stay: Discovering Meaning in the 18th Century Cape Country Dwelling.* Stellenbosch: SUN Press.
Chapman, M (ed). 2007. *Omnibus of a Century of South Africa Short Stories.* Johannesburg: Ad Donker.
Coplan. DB. 2007. *On Township Tonight: Three Centuries of South African Black City Music and Theatre.* Second ed. Johannesburg: Jacana.
Coplan, DB. 2008. *In Township Tonight! South Africa's Black City Music and Theatre.* Chicago, Ill: University of Chicago Press.
Crwys-Williams, J. 2008. *The Penguin Dictionary of South African Quotations.* Johannesburg: Penguin Books.
De Vries, F. 2007. *Composing Apartheid: Popular Music Culture in South Africa.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Foster, JA. 2008. *Washed with Sun: Landscape and the Making of White South Africa.* Pittsburgh, Pa: University of Pittsburgh Press.
Govinden, DB. 2008. *"Sister Outsiders": The Representation of Identity and Difference in Selected Writings by South African Indian Women.* Pretoria: University of South Africa Press.
Habila, H and Kadija S. 2008. *Dreams, Miracles and Jazz: New Adventures in African Writing.* Johannesburg: Picador Africa.
Hannesen, A-L. 2007. *Bitterkomix: A South African Comic as an Indigenous Ethnography.* Frankfurt am Main: P. Lang.
Jaji, S. 2008. *An Aspect of the South African Experience in Literature and Reading.* Ibadan: HEBN Publishers.
Kentridge, W. 2008. *William Kentridge: Tapestries.* Edited by C Basualso, with essays by G Guercio, O Enwezor and I Vladislavic. Philadelphia: Philadelphia Museum of Art.
Klose, J. 2007. *Identifying Ceramics: An Introduction to the Analysis and Interpretation of Ceramics Excavated from 17th to 20th Century Archaeological Sites and Shipwrecks in the South-Western Cape.* (CD-ROM). 2nd ed. Cape Town: University of Cape Town, Historical Archaeology Research Group.
Maingard, J. 2007. *South African National Cinema.* London: Routledge.
Mojapelo, M. 2008. *Beyond Memory: Recording the History, Moments and Memories of South African Music.* Somerset West: African Minds.
Muller, CA. 2008. *Focus: Music of South Africa.* New York: Routledge.
Olwage, G (ed). 2008. *Composing Apartheid: Music for and against Apartheid.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Scratches on the Face: Antiquity and Contemporaneity in South African Works of Art from Iziko Museums of Cape Town. (2008). Curated by Hayden Proud. (Cape Town): Iziko Museums of Cape Town.

Schlosser, K. 2008. *Zulu Life as Drawn by the Zulu Artist Jabulani Ntuli*. Kiel: *Museum für Völkerkunde der Universität Kiel*.
Skotnes, P. 2008. *Unconquerable Spirit: George Stow's History Paintings of the San.* Johannesburg: Jacana.
South African Journal of Art History. Volume 22, Number 2, 2007, South African Context. 2007. Bloemfontein: Art Historical Work Group of South Africa.
Steinert, C. 2007. *Music in Mission: Mission Through Music: A South African Case Study*. Pietermaritzburg: Cluster Publications.
Van der Vlies, AE. 2007. *South African Textual Cultures: White, Black, Read All Over*. Manchester: Manchester University Press.
Woods, T. 2007. *African Pasts: Memory and History in African Literatures*. Manchester, UK: Manchester University Press.
Wylie, D. 2008. *Art + Revolution: The Life and Death of Thami Mnyele, South African Artist.* Charlottesville: University of Virginia Press.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

COMMUNICATIONS

Telecommunications

Telecommunications is one of the fastest growing sectors of South Africa's economy.

The Department of Communications' policies are enabling the development of a robust, vibrant and competitive information and commnications technology (ICT) sector that has seen the emergence of strong mobile technology companies, the roll-out of wireless broadband service offerings and an increased diversity in ownership.

With a network that is 99,9% digital and includes the latest in fixed-line, wireless and satellite communications, the country has the most developed telecommunications network in Africa.

By July 2009, the Government was contributing more than R28 billion to 2010 FIFA World Cup™-related projects. Of this, R300 million was being spent on broadcasting and telecommunications.

Policy and initiatives

The Department of Communications' mandate is to create a favourable ICT environment, ensuring that South Africa has the capacity to advance its socio-economic development goals and support the renewal of Africa and the building of a better world. This mandate puts the department at the forefront of government initiatives to bridge the digital divide and provide universal access to ICTs for all South Africans.

The core functions of the department are to:

- develop ICT policies and legislation that stimulate and enhance sustainable economic development and positively impact on the social well-being of all South Africans
- evaluate the economic, social and political effects of implementing relevant policies
- exercise oversight of state-owned enterprises (SOEs)
- fulfil South Africa's continental and international responsibilities in the ICT field.

The department's strategic direction is based on five key focus areas:

- achieving higher rates of investment in the economy
- increasing the competitiveness of the South African economy
- broadening participation in the economy
- improving the State's capacity to deliver
- contributing to creating a better world.

The Broadcasting Digital Migration (BDM) Policy for South Africa was approved in July 2008 and on 30 October 2008, the digital signal was switched on. The official switch-over to digital is expected to take place in November 2011.

BDM holds many advantages, including better video and sound quality, a wider selection of channels, enhanced features and interactive services. The Department of Communications is developing a strategy for the disposal of existing television sets in preparation for the analogue switch-off.

In 2008, the Scheme-for-Ownership-Support of set-top boxes (STBs) for poor households was approved and by June 2009, the department was finalising the details regarding the implementation of the scheme for submission to Cabinet.

In terms of the proposed scheme, government will provide a 70% incentive for STBs to the five million poorest TV-owning households at a cost of R2,45 billion during the three years of dual illumination.

The National Information Society and Development Plan, as adopted by the Department of Communications' National E-Strategy in 2007, remains one of the blueprints that guide the engagement in the building of an advanced information society.

The continued implementation of this plan will bring opportunities for creating decent and sustainable jobs, especially targeting the youth through the Youth Information Society and Development Programme.

By June 2009, the Department of Communications was working on the development of an Integrated National ICT Policy Framework to be ready by the end of the 2009/10 financial year.

The policy framework will seek to promote the convergence of technologies and stimulate the growth of the economy in line with the objec-

The Digital Dzonga is an advisory council appointed by the Department of Communications and launched in July 2009, to assist with South Africa's migration to digital television. Consisting of representatives from government, consumer groups, broadcasters, manufacturers and the regulator, the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa, the Digital Dzonga will oversee and coordinate the country's preparation and readiness for full switch-over to digital television by November 2011.

The Digital Dzonga was nominated for the best digital switch-over plan at the Digital Switch-Over Strategies in London in 2009.

tives of the National Industrial Policy. It aims to encourage e-commerce activities and expand ICT infrastructure, linking rural and urban communities as well as uplifting the poor.

Key strategies

The Department of Communications has identified the following key strategies to achieve its mandate:

- Broadband Strategy: Pivotal to achieving the aims of the department is the availability of a reliable, cost-effective and easily accessible ICT broadband infrastructure. To this end, the department participated in the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) ICT Broadband Infrastructure Network for Africa, which includes the Eastern Africa Submarine Cable System (EASSy) Project. The EASSy cable will link South Africa to Sudan, and provide for landing stations in countries along the coast of eastern Africa. The cable will be connected to adjacent landlocked countries through terrestrial fibre-optic links. The EASSy cable will be 9 900 km long with an expected lifespan of 25 years. The National Broadband Policy was expected to be finalised by March 2010. The policy will provide a holistic, co-ordinated national approach to the provision of affordable, reliable and secure broadband infrastructure and services.
- STB Manufacturing Sector Development Strategy: By June 2009, the Department of Communications was at an advanced stage to finalise the strategy, which will promote collaboration between government and the industry in the local manufacturing of STBs. It is envisaged that the migration programme will assist in re-skilling, job creation and the transformation of the sector.
- The Universal Service and Access Policy and Strategy: The Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (Usaasa) was established in terms of Section 58 of the Telecommunications Act, 1996 (Act 103 of 1996). The agency promotes universal service and access to ICTs and services for all South Africans. By June 2009, Usaasa was concluding a 10-month consultative process, in terms of its mandate, on the definitions of universal service and universal access, together with suggested targets for the achievement of these goals. The targets, to be reviewed every two years, will establish goals and priorities for the achievement of universal service and access in South Africa. The recommendations were tabled in July 2009. The policy framework aims to assist in the full utilisation of the Universal Service and Access Fund in support of the deployment of ICT infrastructure and connectivity to needy people in underserviced areas.
- The ICT Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) Charter: In terms of the charter, several BEE and job-creation initiatives are planned by companies in the sector.
- Through the Community Radio Support Programme, the department has invested in the youth, enhancing their level of employability and entrepreneurship. By June 2009, there were more than 100 community radio stations with a listenership of 376 000, according to the South African Advertising Research Foundation (Saarf).
- The department has set up a 112 public emergency centre to provide a single access number for emergency service-providers, 24-hours a day, to all people in South Africa. It is accessible to disabled persons, including the sight and hearing impaired. The roll-out plan of the emergency number was expected to be completed by December 2009.
- Active participation in international organisations and events: South Africa participates in international organisations such as the International Telecommunications Union (ITU), African Telecommunications Union, African Union, Universal Postal Union (UPU), the Pan-African Postal Union and the World Radio Communication Conference.

The undersea telecommunications cable, Seacom, went live on 23 July 2009. Mooted two years ago, the $600-million (R4,5-billion) cable linking Johannesburg, Nairobi and Kampala with India and Europe aims to make bandwidth up to 50% cheaper. Until recently, Africa was solely dependent on Telkom's SAT3 cable, resulting in congestion and high international bandwidth tariffs.

The launch of Seacom opened up unprecedented opportunities, at a fraction of the existing cost, as government, businesses and citizens can now use the network to compete globally, drive economic growth and enhance the quality of life across the continent.

Seacom will enable services such as fast movie downloads and video-conferencing transmission, high-definition video and Internet television.

The 17 000-km fibre-optic cable system has a capacity of 1,28 terabits per second.

- The High-Level Expert Group (HLEG) under the ITU umbrella is one of the international initiatives aimed at developing strategies and giving guidance to countries in dealing with cyber crime. The HLEG has adopted the following focus areas:
  - legal measures
  - technical and procedural measures
  - capacity-building
  - international cooperation
  - organisational structures.

  South Africa is using the preliminary output of the HLEG towards the development of the national Cyber Security Framework.

  Initiatives such as the International Multilateral Partnership against Cyber Terrorism (Impact) also contribute to a great extent to forging partnerships and collaborations geared towards combating cyber crime.
- Nepad projects: The Department of Communications has positioned itself as a strategic partner on the continent, taking part in various forums in support of the African Agenda. The department has an engagement model for strengthening relations with countries in the region. The department continues to be involved in various Nepad ICT projects, such as the E-Schools Initiative, as well as implementing policies aimed at building an Africa that is part of an inclusive global information society.

  The Nepad E-Schools Initiative was adopted as a high-priority Nepad ICT project by the Nepad Heads of State and Government Implementation Committee in March 2003.The aim of the initiative is to harness ICT for the improvement of the quality of teaching and learning in African primary and secondary schools, whereby young Africans who graduate from these schools will have ICT skills that will enable them to participate as equals in the global information society and knowledge economy.

  The Nepad E-Africa Commission is spearheading the implementation of the Nepad E-Schools Initiative, which has the following components running in parallel: the Nepad E-Schools Demonstration Project; the Nepad E-Schools Satellite Network; the establishment of the national implementing agencies; the development of teacher training, content and curriculums; and the Nepad E-Schools Business Plan. At a separate meeting, the E-Schools Business Plan was endorsed as a framework for the development of the initiative. The participants agreed to take advantage of lessons learnt from the 51 schools in the countries that participated in the Nepad E-Schools Demonstration Project, and to use the business plan as a broad framework for the further development of the project to transform 50% of all secondary schools in the participating countries into Nepad e-schools by 2015.

  The Nepad Broadband Project is a continental initiative that aims to connect African countries to one another and to the rest of the world through a fibre-optic cable network that will result in the provision of affordable broadband capacity.

In March 2009, the then Minister of Communications, Dr Ivy Matsepe-Casaburri, launched the National E-Skills Dialogue Initiative (NeSDI). The launch was held at The Innovation Hub, Pretoria.

The NeSDI is a first step in realising the objective of a fully operational Meraka E-Skills Institute by 2010.

The NeSDI will collaborate and engage with the spectrum of relevant role players from government, industry, social partners and academia in multistakeholder dialogue and partnerships for action.

Public entities and agencies reporting to the Minister of Communications

The following public entities and agencies report to the Minister of Communications. These include the following companies in which government has a major shareholding: Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (Icasa), the South African Post Office (Sapo), Sentech, the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC), the National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (Nemisa), Usaasa, .za Domain Name Authority and Telkom South Africa Limited.

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

Icasa is responsible for regulating the telecommunications, broadcasting and postal industries to ensure affordable services of a high quality for all South Africans.

Icasa's main functions are to:

- make regulations and policies that govern broadcasting, telecommunications and postal services
- issue licences to providers of telecommunications, broadcasting and postal services
- monitor the environment and enforce compliance with rules, regulations and policies
- hear and decide on disputes and complaints brought by industry or members of the public against licensees

- plan, control and manage the frequency spectrum
- protect consumers from unfair business practices, poor quality services and harmful or inferior products.

Early in 2009, Icasa hosted consumer rights roadshows across the country to create awareness among consumers about their right to access communication services relating to electronic communications, broadcasting and postal services.

The roadshows provided a platform for the authority, licensees and stakeholders to interface with the public and disseminate information and enabled the authority to receive consumer complaints from remote areas of the country.

Universal Services and Access Agency of South Africa

Usaasa operates under the regulatory and policy framework enshrined in the Telecommunications Act, 1996 as amended in 2001, and the ministerial policy directions issued in the same year.

These mandate Usaasa to promote, facilitate and monitor the achievement of universal service and access in underserviced areas. In addition, the agency is required to:

- manage the Universal Service Fund and use it to implement the mandates as stipulated in the Act
- survey and evaluate the impact of the various initiatives undertaken by all stakeholders, and the extent to which universal service and access have been achieved
- create an enabling environment by stimulating public awareness of the benefits of ICT services and building capacity to access these services
- encourage, facilitate and offer guidance in respect of any scheme to provide universal access or universal service
- make the necessary interventions to enable underserviced communities to access ICT services
- conduct research into and keep abreast of developments in telecommunications services and information technology (IT).

Presidential National Commission on Information Society and Development (PNC on ISAD)

In an effort to establish a more systematic and consistent approach across different traditionally disparate areas of policy-making and implementation, the PNC on ISAD was formed in 2001.

The commission comprises government, industry and civil-society leaders. During its deliberations, important recommendations are made regarding the need for planning and foresight; coordination and integration; and evaluation and impact assessment in the building of the information society.

The ISAD Plan and the institutional mechanisms followed from these recommendations.

A corresponding body is the Presidential International Advisory Council on ISAD.

The Youth E-Cooperative Programme, aimed at forging ahead ICT in South Africa's remote areas, is driven by the PNC on ISAD. This has resulted in the mobilisation of 40 youths into 20 e-cooperatives to assist municipalities in web development and management. These will also be developed to become enterprises in Internet cafés and other ICT-related activities in their areas.

This intervention will change the development landscape in remote areas by providing citizens with access to ICT facilities.

Internet

According to the *Internet Access in South Africa 2008* study released in March 2009, there will be nine million Internet users in South Africa by 2014.

Commercial Internet access has been available in South Africa for only 15 years and during that time some 5,3 million users have gone online.

Telkom

Telkom has operated as a commercial company since October 1991 and has become the largest provider of communications services in Africa, based on operating revenue and assets.

Highlights of the group's financial key performance areas for the year ended 31 March 2009 included that:

- the group's operating revenue from continuing operations increased by 6,9% to R35,9 billion
- cash generated from operations increased by 3,6% to R21,3 billion

In November 2009, government secured a saving for consumers from cellphone operators, which agreed to an initial 36c cut in the peak mobile termination rate, from R1,25 to 89c a minute.

Vodacom and Cell C implemented the cut from February 2010 and MTN on 1 March 2010, but all agreed to introduce new, affordable retail products based on reduced rates from 1 December.

- cash flows from operating activities increased by 7,8% to R11,43 million
- cash flow used in investing activities increased by 20,6% to R17 million
- cash flows from financing activities increased from R2,94 million to R7,9 million.

In March 2009, Telkom's strategic focus on growth in the area of mobile capability received a major boost when Telkom shareholders approved the sale of 15% of Telkom's stake in Vodacom to the United Kingdom's Vodafone Group and the unbundling of its remaining 35% to shareholders.

This transaction enabled Telkom to execute its strategies in the areas of mobile services, integrated solutions and the provision of converged fixed-line, mobile and data solutions.

The deal also freed the company from the geographic limitations previously imposed by the shareholder's agreement with Vodafone.

Telkom embarked on a process of renewal in 2009. As part of this transformation drive, three major business units came into being in April 2009, namely Telkom South Africa, Telkom International and Telkom Data Centre Operations.

Telkom Foundation

Established in 2002, the Telkom Foundation provides ICT, education, infrastructure and community projects and support in underresourced areas.

In 2008, the foundation continued with its flagship projects, the 12 ICT villages across South Africa, the Beacon of Hope initiative and the Giving from the Heart Programme. The foundation has added a new project – the Train-the-Trainer Programme – to ensure that IT skills are developed and retained within communities.

The foundation continued their sponsorship of Childline and Lifeline in 2009. It also hosted the annual Telkom Teacher of the Year Award that recognises and rewards outstanding teachers.

Centres of excellence (CoEs)

This is a collaborative programme between Telkom, the telecommunications industry and government to promote postgraduate research in ICT and allied social sciences.

It also provides facilities that encourage young scientists and engineers to pursue their interests in South Africa.

Launched in 1997, the programme improves local telecommunications and IT skills, yielding substantial benefits for the academic institutions involved. It has helped Telkom and its local technology partners to solve technical problems and cut costs.

With the aim of combating cellphone-related crime, the Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-Related Information Act, 2008 (Act 48 of 2008), compels all cellphone users to register their subscriber identity module (SIM) cards.

Service-providers have to register and verify the details of new SIM card users before the SIM card is activated, while existing cellphone subscribers need to have their details registered and verified by the end of 2010.

Telkom's corporate partners are also reaping rewards, as the work undertaken at the CoEs is relevant to their areas of business.

By 2009, there were 16 CoEs in South Africa, each with a unique research focus. About 250 students were pursuing postgraduate degrees through the programme in 2008/09, and since its inception, more than 1 800 postgraduate degrees had been awarded. The profile of the 2008/09 CoE students was: 84 doctoral students, 166 master's students, 20 women, 150 BEE candidates and 38% non-South African students. In 2009, there were 27 industry partners involved in the CoE programme.

Mobile communications

Over the years, South Africa has witnessed tremendous growth in the cellphone industry. South Africa has four operators, Vodacom, MTN, Cell C and Virgin Mobile.

In December 2008, there were an estimated 34,1 million cellphone users in South Africa.

The results for the year ending 31 December 2008 indicated that Cell C had achieved increases in customers and revenue.

Cell C generated R8,6 billion in revenue in 2008/09, an increase of 14% from 2007, and achieved Earnings Before Interest, Tax, Depreciation and Amortisation (EBITDA) of R812 million.

Highlights in the Vodacom Group's financial results for the year ended 31 March 2009 included:

- 14,5% growth in revenue to R55,2 billion
- 16,5% growth in customers to 39,6 million
- 10,5% growth in EBITDA to R18,2 billion
- 28,8% growth in data revenue to R6,4 billion
- 80% growth in Vodacom South Africa broadband customers.

In 2009, Vodacom listed independently on the JSE Limited, with some 200 000 new shareholders.

MTN focuses on the African continent and Middle East. In 2009, MTN celebrated its 15th anniversary. Highlights included:

The Post Bank Bill, tabled before Cabinet in 2009, aims to provide for the establishment of a stand-alone public company to be known as the South African Post Bank.

- group subscribers went up by 48% to 90,7 million
- revenue increased by 40% to R102,5 billion
- EBITDA went up 36% to R43,2 billion.

The arrival of Virgin Mobile in 2006, a virtual network service-provider that operates in partnership with Cell C, helped to enhance competition.

In August 2009, Icasa launched the End-User and Subscriber Service Charter Regulations, 2009.

According to the regulations, cellphone companies had to ensure that they achieved an average of 95% network service availability, over a period of six months.

Liberalisation

The creation of an enabling policy and regulatory environment is important for increasing competition in the ICT sector, and reducing the cost of communications.

Following the signing of the Telecommunications Amendment Act, 2001 (Act 64 of 2001), the Department of Communications has focused on policies that grow the economy, attract foreign direct investment, increase competition, encourage Broad-Based BEE and develop and sustain small, medium and micro-enterprises.

The department also aims to improve service delivery and expand the provision of telecommunications services. The introduction of underserviced area licences (USALs) addresses this need.

The cost of communications will be brought down by increased competition in the sector and the removal of constraints to growth.

Section 40 of the Telecommunications Amendment Act, 2001 requires that USALs provide telecommunications services, including voice-over Internet protocol, fixed mobile services and public pay telephones. Policies have also been implemented to, among other things, allow mobile operators to use fixed lines to provide both voice- and data-transmission services.

The liberalisation of the sector saw the emergence of Neotel, South Africa's first converged communications network operator.

The postal sector

The cornerstone of national policy for the postal sector is the provision of a universal service at an affordable price and an acceptable standard of service for all citizens. To ensure this, a universal service obligation (USO) has been placed on Sapo. To offset the cost of providing a basic service in low-density, rural or unviable areas, it has also been common practice to confer exclusive rights and privileges, i.e. a monopoly on the provision of the basic letter service.

A USO provides specified services to the whole community, even though these services may not be commercially viable in their own right. The universal postal service implies that all citizens have equal access to a basic letter service:

- that is reasonably accessible to all people
- at a single uniform rate of postage
- at the lowest price consistent with meeting all its obligations, financial and otherwise
- to places outside the country
- at a standard of performance that reasonably meets the needs of the population.

According to the Postal Services Act, 1998 (Act 124 of 1998), Sapo enjoys certain exclusive rights and privileges, including a monopoly on letter mail up to one kilogram. In addition, Sapo is obliged to operate under a 25-year licence, with explicit universal service targets and other terms and conditions. The monopoly and compliance with the terms and conditions of the licence will be reviewed and monitored.

South African Post Office

Sapo delivers almost six million letters per day to 11 million addresses in South Africa. It has more than 2 500 outlets in the country.

The first post office in South Africa was opened at the Castle in Cape Town in 1792.

Sapo is committed to meeting the USOs of providing a universal postal service at an affordable cost and offering a countrywide service.

Sapo's USO requires it to roll out 100 post-office outlets every year. The company's continued growth will ensure greater access for communities to many important services, especially in rural areas, and will enable it to increase the range of services it makes available.

Sapo's subsidy from government is earmarked for targeted programmes such as growing its retail footprint. However, its strategy focuses on achieving self-sustainability.

This will involve enhancing current revenue streams and exploring new opportunities to leverage its vast network.

Sapo is focusing on growing its financial services and logistics businesses, while maintaining the performance of the mail business. It will also

continue servicing the private sector by providing opportunities for companies to connect with the broader South African public.

Financial services

Postbank has grown over the past few years, specifically through the Mzansi accounts, but its financial services offerings to customers have been limited.

Plans have been initiated to restructure Postbank from a division of Sapo to a separate company within the Post Office group. Postbank will also be initiating an automated teller machine infrastructure, aiming to bring the convenience of electronic banking to citizens countrywide.

Re-establishing the Post Office as a community hub

Sapo is leveraging its infrastructure to introduce new and improved products and services for the benefit of all South Africans.

An example is the establishment of the Thusong Service Centres, where the Post Office forms an integral part of the services offered.

These centres, built in underserviced areas, offer a range of government services.

At these centres, and at almost 700 small and isolated villages, the population has access to the Internet through the public Internet terminals provided in the local Post Office. Access to government websites is free of charge from these terminals.

Authenticating electronic signatures

It was a world-first for the Sapo when the Electronic Communications and Transactions (ECT) Bill was signed into law – the first Bill in the world to be signed into law by an electronic signature.

The signing was enabled through the Post Office's authentication service.

In capitalising on this opportunity, Sapo has developed world-class authentication services.

These services are designed to assure the identity of people who are communicating and transacting on the Internet as well as to protect such communications with state-of-the-art encryption. This authentication service will be accredited under the ECT Act, 2002 (Act 25 of 2002), and therefore have clear legal status and carry evidentiary weight in court.

Postbank services are available at more than 2 000 Post Office outlets countrywide and 7 200 automated teller machines of other financial institutions. Postbank focuses on the many South Africans who do not have access to other banking services.

Specialised Post Office products

The products include:

- Securemail
- Speed Services Couriers
- Parcelplus
- insurance and cash-on-delivery
- Postbank
- a courier freight group made up of XPS and PX
- Docex.

International and regional co-operation

South Africa is a member of the UPU. The country participates in technical-assistance programmes within the UPU, and uses its international accounting facility.

It also participates in other international bodies such as the Pan-African Postal Union, the Council of Commonwealth Postal Administrations and the Southern African Transport and Communications Commission.

South Africa, through the Department of Communications, is a signatory to international treaties, conventions and agreements.

It cooperates and works in partnership with other postal administrations, through either bilateral or multilateral agreements relating to letters, parcels and financial postal services.

The media

Media freedom

In 1994, with South Africa becoming a democracy, the media was freed from all restrictions.

According to the Bill of Rights, as contained in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, everyone has the right to freedom of expression, which includes:

- freedom of the press and other media
- freedom to receive or impart information or ideas
- freedom of artistic creativity
- academic freedom and freedom of scientific research.

Several laws, policies and organisations act to protect and promote press freedom in South Africa.

South Africa moved up three places on the Reporters without Borders Press Freedom Index, 2009. This places the country at 33rd position, ahead of European countries such as Greece, Spain, France and Italy.

Broadcasting

Policy and legislation

The Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), was passed followed by the Icasa Amendment Act, 2006 (Act 3 of 2006), to regulate and control all broadcasting and telecommunications activities in the country.

The Acts:

- contribute to democracy, nation-building, the provision of education and strengthening the moral fibre of society
- encourage ownership and control of broadcasting services by people from historically disadvantaged communities
- ensure fair competition in the sector
- provide for a three-tier system of public, commercial and community broadcasting services
- establish a strong and committed public broadcaster to service the needs of all South Africans.

The Broadcasting Act, 1999 (Act 4 of 1999), defined the objectives of the South African broadcasting system, the structure of the SABC at the time and the role of the various sectors in meeting those objectives.

It also guaranteed the independence of the SABC as a public broadcaster. Within the present Act, the SABC has been corporatised and restructured to better fulfil its mandate.

These include:

- broadcasting accurate and credible news and current affairs programmes
- South African content programming in languages that reflect the country's cultural diversity
- educational programming to advance lifelong learning
- programming targeted at children, women and people with disabilities.

The Department of Communications is prioritising the development of a new vision and mandate for public broadcasting services in line with South Africa's developmental agenda and strengthening the governance of the SABC.

The department aims to amend the Broadcasting Act, 1999 in consultation with all relevant stakeholders. The amendment will bring it in line with international best practice and ensure that the public broadcaster is best suited to South Africa's democracy. It will also introduce an appropriate funding model for the public broadcaster.

The department has set up a task team comprising the Department of Communications, National Treasury and business turnaround strategists to effect the successful functioning of the public broadcaster.

In accordance with Section 3(1) (a) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005, the department was expected to finalise the Radio Frequency Spectrum Usage Policy by March 2010.

Broadcasting role players

Radio

The first radio broadcasts in South Africa took place under the auspices of a broadcasting committee of South African Railways.

The first experimental broadcast was undertaken in Johannesburg on 18 December 1923 by the Western Electric Company. During 1924, the Associated Scientific and Technical Association of South Africa began regular broadcasts in Johannesburg. The Cape Peninsula Publicity Broadcasting Association began a similar service, and the Durban Municipality followed suit with its own regular broadcasts. The first radio station, JB Calling, went on air in July 1924. By 1926, all radio transmission and reception were placed under the control of the Postmaster-General, under the Radio Act, 1926 (Act 20 of 1926).

Following the contribution made by Sir John Reith, then Director-General of the British Broadcasting Corporation (BBC), the SABC was established on 1 August 1936.

The SABC is the country's public broadcaster. It introduced its own national news service on 17 July 1950, with daily news bulletins on the English service, the Afrikaans service and Springbok Radio. Radio Zulu, Radio Xhosa and Radio Sesotho were established on 1 June 1960.

In 2009, the SABC's national radio network comprised 18 radio stations. Fifteen of these were dedicated specifically to public-service broadcasting and included 11 full spectrum stations, one in each of the official languages of South Africa; a cultural service for the Indian community broadcasting in English; a regional community station broadcasting in isiXhosa and English; and a community station broadcasting in the !Xu and Khwe languages of the Khoisan people of the Northern Cape. The SABC has three stations in its commercial portfolio. These are 5FM, Metro FM and Good Hope FM.

Copy supplied to radio news amounts to almost a million words a day, and is compiled around the clock into a weekly total of 300 bulletins and 27 current affairs programmes. Programmes are produced weekly in 11 languages on the SABC's radio services.

There is a public broadcasting-service radio station for each language group.

Channel Africa broadcasts live on three platforms: shortwave, satellite and the Internet. Its

broadcasts are in Chinyanja, Silozi, Kiswahili, English, French and Portuguese. The shortwave broadcast covers south, east, central and west Africa.

The satellite broadcast covers the sub-Saharan region, although it can be picked up as far as London. The Internet broadcast is accessible from anywhere in the world.

Commercial radio stations

Commercial radio stations in South Africa include:

- Algoa FM
- Classic FM
- Kaya FM
- YFM
- 94,7 Highveld Stereo
- 702 Talk Radio
- Metro FM
- 5FM
- Good Hope FM
- Jacaranda FM
- OFM
- East Coast Radio
- 567 Cape Talk
- Radio 2000
- Radio KFM.

Stations such as Jacaranda FM, Highveld Stereo, Radio Oranje, Radio Algoa and East Coast Radio were initially SABC stations, but were sold to private owners to diversify radio ownership in South Africa as part of the transformation of the public broadcaster.

Many of South Africa's radio stations are available online.

Television

South African Broadcasting Corporation

South African television is broadcast in all 11 official languages and in sign language.

Although the country was one of the last in Africa to have a television service, South Africans now have access to a wide spectrum of local and international drama, comedy, sports and news.

A one-channel television service was introduced on 5 January 1976.

Between 50% and 60% of all programmes transmitted are produced in South Africa. Locally produced television programmes are augmented by programmes purchased abroad, and by co-productions undertaken with other television programming organisations.

Television news is fed by SABC news teams reporting from all parts of the country, using modern portable electronic cameras and line-feed equipment via more than 220 television transmitters.

Ad hoc satellite feeds are arranged from wherever news events occur. News bulletins are broadcast in all 11 official languages.

The SABC's online news service, *SABCNews.com*, attracts about 600 000 visits a month.

The SABC's terrestrial television channels devote between 18% and 20% of their airtime during prime time to news and news-related programmes.

Test transmission for migration from analogue to digital terrestrial transmission of the SABC television signals were taking place by mid-2009, to comply with the requirements of switching off analogue in the southern African region by 2015, as prescribed by the ITU.

M-Net

M-Net, South Africa's first private subscription television service, was launched in 1986. M-Net broadcasts its array of general entertainment and niche channels to more than 50 countries across Africa and the adjacent Indian Ocean islands.

M-Net's television channels are delivered to subscribers through analogue terrestrial and digital satellite distribution.

The main M-Net channel, which is available as a terrestrial and satellite service, offers movies, sport, children's programmes, international and local series, and local reality shows.

The second terrestrial channel, CSN (Community Services Network), offers sport and programming aimed at a variety of South African communities. M-Net is also well represented on the DStv bouquet of satellite TV channels.

Development of the local film and TV industries is a priority for M-Net and is supported by various projects such as EDiT, which gives final-year film and television students the opportunity to produce programmes for broadcast on M-Net.

M-Net produces an array of channels for MultiChoice's DStv bouquets. Early in 2009, the Afrikaans kids channel, *Koowee,* started on DStv and in July 2009, M-Net launched the new youth channel *Vuzu*, featuring a significant amount of local content.

Satellite broadcasting

MultiChoice provides digital media entertainment, content and services to multiple devices, which include pay-TV subscriber services to more than 1,5 million customers.

DStv broadcasts more than 80 video, over 40 audio and more than 30 radio channels and three interactive channels, 24 hours a day on its platform.

MultiChoice owns M-Net/SuperSport, which delivers thematic channels to a growing number of subscribers.

By mid-2009, MultiChoice's newest company, DStv Mobile, was investigating and trialing digital video broadcast, Handheld, which is a mobile broadcast technology that allows for the digital terrestrial broadcast of live television channels to a mobile phone.

By mid-2009, there were more than 2,4 million DStv subscribers in South Africa.

Free-to-air television

Launched in 1998, e.tv is South Africa's first private free-to-air television channel, which broadcasts a full-spectrum programming service to 80,5% of South Africa's population.

The station is owned by BEE group, Hosken Consolidated Investments Limited (Ltd) and Venfin Ltd, and employs some 500 people countrywide. e.tv has offices in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban, Port Elizabeth and Bloemfontein. As a free-to-air channel, e.tv's only source of income is advertising revenue.

The 2008 All Media and Products Survey figures put its viewership at 17,9 million.

Signal distribution

Sentech was established in terms of the Sentech Act, 1996 (Act 63 of 1996), and the Sentech Amendment Act, 1999 (Act 44 of 1999).

Sentech is an SOE, tasked with providing broadcasting signal distribution for broadcasting licences.

In the context of the convergence of technologies, Sentech was awarded multimedia and carrier-of-carrier licences, thus positioning it to offer fully converged ICT services.

Sentech is Africa's largest broadcasting signal distributor and operates a number of terrestrial broadcasting transmitter sites.

In line with the Cabinet's approval that Sentech becomes the core national wireless broadband service-provider, the organisation aims to provide core broadcasting infrastructure.

As a wholesale broadband network-provider, the organisation is mandated to provide connectivity to schools, hospitals, clinics, Thusong Service Centres and government offices in all spheres and within rural areas.

The Department of Communications and Sentech have signed an agreement for the installation of the satellite back-up for the 2010 World Cup. The National Treasury allocated R200 million for the back-up.

In June 2009, e.tv and the eNews Channel were recognised for their innovative advertisements at the prestigious World Promax/BDA Promotion and Marketing Awards, taking a bronze certificate in Best News Information Multiple Spot Campaign at the awards ceremony in New York.

Broadband Infraco

In March 2007, government approved the establishment of a new SOE that will provide long-distance connectivity to the country's telecommunications market on a cost basis. Broadband Infraco, which became a stand-alone SOE in January 2008, provides wholesale long-distance access services to third-party electronic communications services.

Print

Technical handling of the print media in South Africa rates among the best in the world. This is one reason why newspapers and magazines have held their own in a volatile information era, characterised by the vast development of various new forms of media-delivery platforms via the Internet through modern ICT.

The roots of the print media in South Africa can be traced back to the 19th century, when the first issue of a government newspaper, the *Cape Town Gazette, African Advertiser/Kaapsche Stads Courant en Afrikaansche Berigter*, was published in 1800.

The first independent publication, *The South African Commercial Advertiser*, was published in 1824 by Thomas Pringle and John Fairbairn. It was banned 18 months later and reappeared only after various representations had been made to the authorities in London.

The country's vibrant economy, the introduction of regional tabloid newspapers and the glut of new magazine titles have helped to feed the popularity of newspapers and magazines in Africa's largest economy. High consumer spending has coincided with strong circulation in specific newspaper genres, particularly tabloids and free-sheets. The adoption of more efficient delivery and distribution systems have boosted the growth of tabloids, community newspapers and free-sheets, in particular.

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses: Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa), the Irish-based Independent News & Media (Pty) Ltd group, Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd and Avusa Ltd. Other important media players include M & G Media Ltd; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd; Primedia Publishing Ltd; Ramsay, Son and Parker (Pty) Ltd; and Kagiso Media. The issue of BEE is being addressed by all companies, some of which have progressed further than others.

Newspapers

South Africa's daily newspapers

Daily Sun is the first South African tabloid aimed at the black working class. In the few years since its launch by Media24, the *Daily Sun* has become the largest daily newspaper in South Africa.

With over 500 000 sales in Gauteng, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West, the national expansion of the paper to KwaZulu-Natal, Free State and the Eastern Cape will add to the existing circulation.

The Star is published in Johannesburg and distributed throughout South Africa, with most sales in Gauteng. It is owned by Independent Newspapers. Launched in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape in 1887 as the *Eastern Star*, the paper moved to Johannesburg in 1889.

Sowetan is *Daily Sun's* main competition, also aimed at an English black readership. Initially distributed as a weekly free-sheet in Soweto, the paper was transformed into a daily in 1981 to fill the void left by the *Post*, which was deregistered by the apartheid government. *Sowetan* is owned by Avusa Ltd.

Afrikaans daily *Die Burger*, first published in 1915, is distributed in the Western Cape. The paper is owned by Media24.

Beeld is an Afrikaans daily newspaper that was launched on 16 September 1974. It is distributed in Gauteng, Mpumalanga, Limpopo, North West and KwaZulu-Natal. It is the largest Afrikaans newspaper in South Africa and is owned by Media24.

The Citizen is published six days a week and distributed mainly in Gauteng. The newspaper is published by Caxton.

Independent Newspapers' *Cape Argus* is an afternoon daily aimed at middle- to upper-income readers in Cape Town.

Isolezwe is the premier isiZulu newspaper, published Mondays to Fridays. The paper has also launched the first Zulu-language website in the world. It is owned by Independent Newspapers.

Independent Newspapers' *Daily News,* first published in 1878 as the *Natal Mercantile Advertiser,* is targeted at the middle market of Durban and the rest of KwaZulu-Natal.

Independent Newspapers' *Cape Times*, a daily published since 1876, aims at the middle class of Cape Town.

When *Business Day* was launched in 1986, it was the country's first mainstream business daily. The paper covers corporate reporting, BEE, economic policy, corporate governance and financial markets. It is published by BDFM Publishers (Pty) Ltd.

The Mercury, published since 1852, is Durban's morning newspaper. It is owned by Independent Newspapers.

The first issue of the East London *Daily Dispatch* was published in 1898. The newspaper is the Eastern Cape's biggest selling daily, with an isiXhosa and English supplement published on Wednesdays. *The Dispatch* was edited by Donald Woods from 1965 until his arrest and banning in 1977 for exposing government responsibility for the death of Steve Biko. It is owned by Avusa Ltd.

Founded in 1845 as the *Eastern Province Herald*, *The Herald* is one of South Africa's oldest newspapers. Its first edition – four pages – came out in May 1845 and cost one penny. *The Herald* is owned by Avusa Ltd and distributed in the Eastern Cape, with its main base in Port Elizabeth.

First published in 1904, *Volksblad* is the oldest Afrikaans daily in the country and the largest in the Free State and Northern Cape. It is owned by Media24.

Pretoria News, first published in 1898, is Independent Newspapers' daily in the capital city. Mainly sold in Gauteng, it is also distributed in Mpumalanga and North West.

South Africa's oldest newspaper, *The Witness*, serves English readers throughout KwaZulu-Natal, with most of its readers in greater Pieter-

By March 2009, South Africa had 21 daily newspapers, 27 major weeklies, 660 consumer magazines, 735 business-to-business publications, 470 community newspapers and magazines, 92 television stations, 137 radio stations and over 65 DStv audio channels.

International news agencies Bloomberg and Reuters have bureaux in Johannesburg, while the British Broadcasting Corporation has correspondents in the country. The CNBC Africa was launched in South Africa in 2007. Local news services include the South African Press Association and African Eye News.

maritzburg and inland KwaZulu-Natal. Owned by Media24, it was formerly known as *Natal Witness*.

Established in 1878, Independent Newspapers' *Diamond Fields Advertiser* is based in Kimberley and targets the communities of the sparsely populated Northern Cape.

Launched in 1995, *Business Report* is inserted in all Independent Newspapers' morning titles in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Son is the first tabloid to be published in Afrikaans. It is distributed Mondays to Thursdays in the Western Cape and publishes four weekend editions in the Western Cape, Eastern Cape, Northern Cape and Central.

The Times is a daily newspaper with both sold and free circulation.

The *Daily News* concentrates on news that is local, with over 90% of its readers coming from the greater Durban area. It is owned by Independent Newspapers.

South Africa's weekly newspapers

Avusa Ltd's *Sunday Times* is South Africa's biggest national newspaper, read by over three million people. The paper includes the *Sunday Times Magazine, Lifestyle, Business Times* and *Metro* sections. Established in 1906, the *Sunday Times* is distributed all over South Africa and in neighbouring countries such as Lesotho, Botswana and Swaziland.

Rapport, South Africa's national Afrikaans Sunday newspaper, is distributed countrywide and also in Namibia. *Rapport* is the Afrikaans newspaper with the biggest market penetration in South Africa.

A specialist soccer newspaper published on Wednesdays, *Soccer Laduma,* is aimed primarily at men – 87% of its readership is male. It is published by Media24.

First published in 1982 as *Golden City Press*, *City Press* is aimed at the black market. Media24 acquired the paper in 1984. It is published on Sundays.

Established at the beginning of 2002 and aimed at black readers, *Sunday Sun* is the fastest growing newspaper in the country. Its content is largely of a tabloid nature. Owned by Media24 and published by RCP Media, *Sunday Sun* is sold countrywide as well as in Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland.

The *Sunday World*, launched in 1999, is a tabloid aimed mainly at black readers. Owned by Avusa Ltd, it is distributed in Gauteng, Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West.

The *Sunday Tribune* caters for KwaZulu-Natal readers. Its is published by Independent Newspapers.

The Independent on Saturday caters for the KwaZulu-Natal market. It is published by Independent Newspapers.

Post was launched in the mid-1950s. Targeted at the Indian communities of KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng, it is owned by Independent Newspapers. *Post* is published on Wednesdays, with the leisure and sport edition, *Postweekend,* appearing on Fridays.

The *Sunday Independent* was established in 1995 and aims at readers in the higher-income bracket. The *Sunday Independent* is a weekly English language newspaper owned by Independent Newspapers.

Mail & Guardian, formerly the *Weekly Mail*, was established in 1985 at the height of resistance to apartheid. When foreign donor funding started drying up for anti-apartheid organisations in the late 1980s, many of the country's alternative newspapers – notably *Grassroots*, *South*, *New African* and *New Nation* – folded. *The Weekly Mail*, however, struck up a partnership with the *Guardian* of London, ensuring the paper's continued existence.

Free and community newspapers

In June 2009, there were 165 free newspapers registered with the Audit Bureau of Circulations (ABC), and the amount of registered community newspapers stood at 61.

Magazine circulation and readership

The magazine industry in South Africa is a fiercely competitive environment in which new titles appear all the time, despite the worldwide competition from electronic and interactive media. Considering the proliferation of titles on the shelves in supermarkets and bookstores, it seems that many readers are still attracted to print.

The trend to target certain niche markets with specialised publications is popular in the magazine industry and has led this section to grow by 40% more titles during the last 10 years.

The ABC reported a title growth of 11,7% between December 2007 and September 2008.

A positive development has been the segmentation of the market into niched publications that provide opportunities for advertisers to reach their target audiences. Another new thriving trend is twinned titles – titles produced in two languages.

According to the ABC figures for December 2007 to September 2008, consumer magazines were still the biggest category with 187 titles, 17 new titles came on board in 2008 and there were 23 eliminations.

The business-to-business sector had 174 titles. Twenty-six new titles came on board in 2008 with 13 eliminations.

Custom magazines had 66 registered ABC titles with 19 new titles coming on board in 2008, and five eliminations.

Free magazines had 53 registered ABC titles with 11 new admissions and 29 eliminations in 2008.

Magazines

Weekly magazines *Huisgenoot* and *You* are the two biggest magazines in South Africa. Among the monthlies, women's magazines are still the most widely distributed, despite declining sales. *Sarie*, *Rooi Rose*, *Cosmopolitan*, *Drum* and *Move!* are all in the top 10.

Women's magazines

Overall, there was a decrease in circulation in the women's magazine category. Between March and December 2008, *Essentials'* figures decreased from 44 069 to 39 830.

Glamour also decreased from 98 948 to 94 973. *Oprah* reflected a significant drop in circulation from 74 961 to 50 994.

Real Magazine and *Real Simple* also reflected drops in circulation from 66 188 to 64 166 and 36 022 to 20 447.

Rooi Rose reflected a decrease from 111 828 to 109 482

Cleo, the new magazine on the block, reflected a 0 to 24 918 circulation from March to December 2008.

Family interest

Between March and December 2008, *Move!* recorded the largest area in both percentage and numerical, with a 48% growth equalling 64 000 average issue copies. Decreased figures of 34% came from *Big Issue*. Yet, the largest numerical drops came from *You/Huisgenoot,* collectively dropping with 17 424 copies year-on-year.

Health

Health magazines showed a slight decrease in 2008 with figures at 70 247.

Longevity decreased from 27 332 to 20 033. *Shape*'s circulation decreased from 51 782 to 41 511.

Parenting

This category remained fairly constant in both growth and average issue readership.

Youth

There has been a proliferation of magazines in the youth sector in the last few years. This market reflected a decrease in all areas. *Barbie* decreased from 16 000 to 11 663, with *National Geographic Kids* showing a slight decrease from 44 367 to 43 226.

Male interest

The largest circulating title in the category was *FHM*, totalling circulation figures of 71 408.

Popular Mechanics increased figures by 5% and total circulation stood at 46 282.

Men's Health declined by 9%, bringing total circulation to 69 718.

Motoring

This category, in general, dropped circulation from 354 810 to 305 187. *Bike SA* and *Auto Trader* remained stable while *Car*, *Cars in Action*, *Speed and Sound* and *Wiel* all showed a slight drop in figures.

Travel

This category was down another 5% year-on-year, although showing strong individual title growth. The largest title, *Weg/Go*, reflected a decline in circulation. Circulation figures at the end of 2008 stood at 85 505.

Caravan and *Outdoor Life* recorded the biggest growth in both percentage and numerical circulation figures.

Sport and hobbies

SA Rugby showed impressive growth of 34% and total circulation figures stood at 18 956.

Golf Digest experienced a drop in both percentage terms at 31% and numerically at 11 113 copies. Total circulation figures at the end of 2008 were 24 339.

Business and news

Finweek showed a decrease, dropping from 66 566 to 30 802. Although *Financial Mail* was

stable, it showed a drop from 32 761 to 29 158 year-on-year.

Online media

By June 2009, statistics showed that online readership was growing at over 25%, from 4,8 million in 2008 to more than six million for the same period in 2009.

According to the *Nielsen Online Ranking Report*, which revealed online readership figures for the first quarter of 2009, there was a 28,5% growth in total visitors from 8,6 million in the first quarter of 2008 to more than 11 million in the first quarter of 2009; and a 25,2% increase in local visitors, from 4,8 million in 2008 to more than six million visitors in 2009.

Total visitors increased over 11% in the fourth quarter of 2008 alone. That's a substantial increase, representing steady growth and acceptance of the online environment as a mainstream medium.

The percentage of domestic versus international traffic remained consistent over the period.

According to the Website Association of South Africa, by June 2009, the most popular South African websites were:

- News24
- IOL News
- MSN
- Hotmail
- CompleatGolfer
- Webmail
- The Times
- bidorbuy
- Mybroadband
- MWEB.

Media organisations and role players

Print Media South Africa (PMSA), established in 1996, administers individual bodies, namely the Newspaper Association of South Africa (the oldest communication organisation in South Africa, established in 1882), Magazine Publishers Association of South Africa and the Association of Independent Publishers (AIP). The purpose of the PMSA is to represent, promote, interact with and intervene in all matters concerning the collective industry and of common interest. It represents more than 700 newspaper and magazine titles in South Africa.

The PMSA is a member of a number of international bodies, such as the World Association of Newspapers and the Federation of Periodical Press. Allied to the PMSA, but not a constituent member, is the ABC, responsible for auditing and verifying print-media circulation figures.

The AIP was formed in September 2004 after the major publishing groups withdrew from the Community Press Association (CPA) to give independent publishers an opportunity to transform the CPA into an association that would serve their own specific needs. The AIP represents the interests of more than 250 independent publishers in southern Africa.

The South African National Editors' Forum (Sanef) was conceived at a meeting of the Black Editors' Forum, the Conference of Editors, and senior journalism educators and trainers, in October 1996.

Sanef membership includes editors and senior journalists from the print, broadcast and online/Internet media, as well as journalism educators from all the major training institutions in South Africa.

Sanef has facilitated the mobilisation of the Media in the Partnership Against AIDS Campaign, and in campaigns to end violence against women and children.

Various seminars and debates are held around media freedom and transformation, especially in relation to gender and technology. Sanef is involved in training initiatives and in setting practical standards in journalism education.

Against the backdrop of positive political developments on the African continent, Sanef spearheaded the formation of the All Africa Editor's Conference. The Southern African Editors' Forum was subsequently formed in 2003.

The Forum of Black Journalists addresses issues that directly affect its members.

Members of the public who have complaints or concerns about reports in newspapers and magazines can submit their grievances to the Office of the Press Ombudsman.

Should they not be satisfied with the resultant ruling, they can lodge an appeal with an

In March 2009, South African cameraman Garwin McLuckie was named Camera Operator of the Year at the 2008 Royal Television Society (RTS) Television Journalism Awards.

The awards are presented annually in London and are aimed at recognising creative and excellent journalism among United Kingdom (UK) news broadcasters.

McLuckie, who works for Sky News in the UK, was honoured by the RTS for his work in Africa between 2007 and 2008.

independent appeal panel. The Office of the Press Ombudsman was set up by the PMSA, Sanef, the Media Workers' Association of South Africa and the South African Union of Journalists.

As self-regulating mechanisms of the media industry, the Press Ombudsman and the appeal panel act in accordance with the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 and embrace the spirit of transformation in South Africa.

The Freedom of Expression Institute (FXI) was established in 1994 to protect and foster the rights to freedom of expression and access to information, and to oppose censorship.

The FXI undertakes a wide range of activities in support of its objectives, including lobbying, educating, monitoring, research, publicity, litigation and the funding of legal cases that advance these rights. In the process, it networks and collaborates with a wide range of local and international organisations. Another body that protects freedom of speech is the Freedom of Commercial Speech Trust. Backed by the marketing communication industry and supported by organised business and consumer organisations, the trust focuses on transparent negotiations with legislators.

The Forum of Community Journalists (FCJ) is an independent body that represents, promotes and serves the interests of all community-newspaper journalists in southern Africa. The decision to become an independent body followed the restructuring of the CPA into the AIP.

The FCJ's launch as an independent body allows it to represent all journalists, including independent community-press journalists. It also assists in meeting its objective of becoming a more diverse and representative body for the community-press industry.

The Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa is an independent self-regulatory body that serves as a voluntary watchdog, to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes flighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct.

Members include, among others, the SABC, M-Net, Radio 702 and Trinity Broadcasting Network. However, the commission does not deal with X-rated material; the broadcast of which is prohibited under criminal law.

The Broadcasting Monitoring Complaints Committee (BMCC) was established under sections 21 and 22 of the Independent Broadcasting Authority Act, 1993 (Act 153 of 1993).

It monitors broadcasting licensees for their compliance with, or adherence to, the terms, conditions and obligations of:

- their broadcasting licences
- the Code of Conduct for Broadcasting Services
- the Code of Advertising Practice.

The BMCC receives and adjudicates complaints from the public regarding licence conditions, and is also entitled to initiate its own investigations into suspected non-compliance by a broadcaster.

If a member of the public is concerned that a broadcaster is not observing its licence conditions, that person may lodge a complaint with Icasa. If a broadcaster is found to be guilty of contravening its licence conditions, the BMCC makes recommendations to Icasa about action that should be taken.

Material that could be considered X-rated must be submitted to the Film and Publication Board prior to being shown. (See Chapter 4: *Arts and culture*.)

The mission of the National Association of Broadcasters is to protect the interests of broadcasting as a whole, and to liaise with Icasa on matters such as freedom of speech.

Other press organisations operating in the country are the Foreign Correspondents' Association of South Africa, the Printing Industries Federation of South Africa, the South African Typographical Union, the Specialist Press Association, the South African Guild of Motoring Journalists, Professional Photographers of South Africa, the Media Institute of Southern Africa, and press clubs in major centres.

The mission of the Online Publishers' Association is to provide a non-profit forum in which South African online publishers can address issues of common interest, and which can represent these publishers to advertising agencies and the advertising community, the press, government and the public.

The National Community Radio Forum (NCRF), launched in December 1993, lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations.

The NCRF is a national, member-driven association of community-owned and -run radio stations and support-service organisations. Radio-station members are independent, non-profit community-based organisations.

News agencies

The South African Press Association (Sapa), a national news agency, is a cooperative, non-profit news-gathering and news-distribution organisation operating in the interests of its members

Major daily and weekly newspapers

Name and website	Publisher	Contact information	Frequency	Language	ABC circulation (Jan – Mar 2009)
Beeld www.beeld.com	Media 24	PO Box 333, Auckland Park, 2006 T. 011 713-9000 / F. 011 713-9956 E-mail: nuus@beeld.com	MD, Mo-Fr	Afr	95 914
Die Burger (Daily)	Media 24	PO Box 692, Cape Town, 8000	MD. Mo-Fr	Afr	80 220
Die Burger (Weekly) www.dieburger.com	Media 24	T. 021 406-2121 / F. 021 406-3965 E-mail: dbnred@dieburger.co.za	MD. Mo-Fr	Afr	84 976
Business Day www.businessday.co.za	BDFM Publishers (Pty) Ltd	PO Box 1746, Saxonwold, 2132 T. 011 280-5548 / F. 011 280-5505 E-mail: busday@bdfm.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	39 516
Cape Argus, The www.capeargus.co.za	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 56, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 488-4911 / F. 021 488-4156 E-mail: argusnews@ctn.independent.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	60 552
Cape Times www.iol.co.za	Cape Ltd Independent Newspapers	PO Box 11, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 488-4911 / F. 021 488-4717 E-mail: chriswh@independent.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	47 514
Citizen, The (Daily) www.citizen.co.za	Caxton	PO Box 43069, Industria, 2042 T. 011 248-6000 / F. 011 248-6213 E-mail: citizen@citizen.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	52 242
Citizen, The (Weekly)	Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd	PO Box 43069, Industria, 2042	Weekly, Sat	Eng	67 872
City Press www.citypress.co.za	Media 24	PO Box 3413, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 713-9001/ F. 011 713-9966 E-mail: news@citypress.co.za	Sun	Eng	181 816
Daily Dispatch www.dispatch.co.za	Dispatch Media (Pty) Ltd	PO Box 131, East London, 5200 T. 043 702-2000 / F. 043 743-5155 E-mail: news@dispatch.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	32 919
Daily News www.dailynews.co.za	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 46915, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2911 / F. 013 308-2111 E-mail: dennis.pather@inl.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	42 274
Daily Sun	KZN Media 24	PO Box 121, Auckland Park, 2006 T. 011 877-6000 / F. 011 877-6046 E-mail: news@dailysun.co.za	Mo-Fr	Eng	507 328
Diamond Fields Advertiser	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 610, Kimberley, 8300 T. 053 832-6261 / F. 053 832-8902 E-mail: pbe@independent.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	10 178
Herald, The www.theherald.co.za	Avusa Ltd	P/Bag X6071, Port Elizabeth, 6000 T. 041 504-7911 / F. 041 585-4966 E-mail: theherald@johnnicec.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	25 502
Ilanga Langesonto www.ilanganews.co.za	Mandla Matla Publishing Co	PO Box 2159, Durban, 4000 T. 031 337-4000 / F. 031 337-9785 E-mail: newsroom@ilanganews.co.za	Wknd	Zulu	90 158
Isolezwe	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308 2911	MD, Mo-Fr	Zulu	102 454
Independent on Saturday www.iol.co.za	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 4759, Greyville, 4023 E-mail: trevor.bruce@inl.co.za T. 031 308-2934 / F. 013 308-2111	Weekly	Eng	50 895
Mail and Guardian www.mg.co.za	M&G Media	PO Box 91667, Auckland Park, 2006 T. 011 250-7300 / F. 011 250-7502 E-mail: newsdesk@mg.co.za	Weekly	Eng	52 485
The Mercury www.themercury.co.za	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2911 / F. 031 308-2333 E-mail: mercnews@inl.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	37 080
Post	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2529 / F. 031 308-2555 E-mail: khalil.aniff@inl.co.za	Weekly Wed	Eng	45 454

Major daily and weekly newspapers

Name and website	Publisher	Contact information	Frequency	Language	ABC Circulation (Jan – Mar 2009)
Pretoria News (Daily) www.ptanews.co.za	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 439, Pretoria, 0001 E-mail: pta.news@inl.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	26 918
Rapport www.rapport.co.za	Media 24	PO Box 8422, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 713-9537 / F. 012 713-9977 E-mail: rapport@rapport.co.za	Weekly	Afr	282 260
Saturday Star	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 1014, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 633-2792 / F. 011 633-2794 E-mail: star@inl.co.za	Weekly	Eng	130 435
Soccer-Laduma www.soccerladuma.co.za	Media 24	PO Box 787, Sea Point, 8060 T. 021 425-1200 / F. 021 425-1247	Weekly	Eng	317 571
Sowetan www.sowetan.co.za	Avusa Ltd	PO Box 6663, Johannesburg, 2000 E-mail: editor@sowetan.co.za	Mo-Fr	Eng	130 060
Sunday World www.sundayworld.co.za	Avusa Ltd	PO Box 6663, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 471-4200 / F. 011 471-4164 E-mail: newsed@sundayworld.co.za	Sun	Eng	180 255
The Star www.iol.co.za	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 1014, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 633-9111 / F. 011 836-6186 E-mail: starnews@star.co.za	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	167 214
The Sunday Independent www.iol.co.za	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 1014, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 633-9111 / F. 011 834-7520 E-mail: jovial.rantao@inl.co.za	Weekly	Eng	38 284
Sunday Sun	Media 24	PO Box 3413, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 713-9001 / F. 011 713-9731	Wknd	Eng	214 357
Sunday Times www.sundaytimes.co.za	Avusa Ltd	P/Bag X57, Saxonwold, 2132 T. 011 280-3000 / F. 011 280-5150 E-mail: suntimes@tml.co.za	Wknd	Eng	504 163
Sunday Tribune	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2711 / F. 011 308-2357 E-mail: tribunenews@inl.co.za	Sun	Eng	101 105
Volksblad www.volksblad.com	KZN Media24	PO Box 267, Bloemfontein, 9300 T. 051 404-7600 / F. 051 430-6949 E-mail: nuus@volksblad.com	Mo-Fr	Afr	26 574
Volksblad (weekly)	Media24	PO Box 267, Bloemfontein, 9300 T. 051 404-7600 / F. 051 430-7034	Wknd	Afr	23 475
Weekend Argus	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 56, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 488-4528 / F. 021 488-4597 E-mail: ryan.cresswell@inl.co.za	Wknd	Eng	95 022
Weekend Post	Avusa Ltd	P/Bag X6071, Port Elizabeth, 6000 T. 041 504-7911 / F. 041 585-4966 E-mail: weekend@johnnicec.co.za	Wknd	Eng	26 445
Witness www.witness.co.za	Media 24	PO Box 362, Pietermaritzburg, 3200 T. 033 355-1111 / F. 033 355-1122 E-mail: newsed@witness.co.za	Mo-Fr	Eng	22 187
The Times www.thetimes.co.za	Avusa Ltd	P/Bag X57, Saxonwold, 2132 T. 011 280-3000 / F. 011 280-5150 E-mail: suntimes@tml.co.za	Mo-Fr	Eng	140 895
Son www.dieson.co.za	Media 24	PO Box 692,Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 406 2075 / F. 021 406 3221	MD, Mo-Fr	Afr	107 899

The abbreviations used are the following: Wknd (Weekend), MD (Morning daily), Mo-Fr (Monday to Friday) Sun (Sunday), Afr (Afrikaans), Eng (English), Zulu (isiZulu).

Source: Audit Bureau of Circulations

The country's journalism standard was honoured when South Africa won four awards at the prestigious CNN MultiChoice African Journalist Awards, held in Durban in July 2009.

The South African winners were:

- HIV/AIDS Reporting in Africa Award - Anna-Maria Lombard, Health-e-News Service for *3rd Degree* on e.tv
- MSD Health and Medical Award - Paul McNally, *Men's Health*
- Mohamed Amin Photographic Award - Halden Krog, *The Times*
- Print General News Award - Beauregard Tromp, *The Star.*

and the public. Sapa's foreign news is received from Associated Press and its representatives in London.

The main foreign news agencies operating in South Africa are Bloomberg and Reuters. Other agencies are the Eastern Cape News Agency and African Eye News Service in Mpumalanga.

Training centres

Over 40 institutions offer media training in South Africa. Tertiary institutions include various universities of technology such as Tshwane, Walter Sisulu, Nelson Mandela, the Cape Peninsula and Durban; and Rhodes, North-West, Stellenbosch and Witwatersrand universities.

Other organisations such as the Cape Town Film and Television School; the SABC's Television Training Centre; the Radio Freedom Institute; the Institute for the Advancement of Journalism; the Cross Media Training Centre; and Nemisa, a government-funded training institute, specialise in broadcasting, news-media and multimedia skills.

Nemisa is a non-profit organisation established in terms of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), which provides much-needed advanced skills training for the broadcasting industry. It has Council for Higher Education accreditation and offers diploma courses, short courses and internships in TV and radio production and creative multimedia. It has forged valuable international linkages with training institutions in Canada, France, India and Malaysia. It has also established links with the Commonwealth Broadcasting Association.

In the 2008/09 financial year, Nemisa surpassed its target of 350 learners by training 648 people through full-time programmes, learnerships and skills programmes delivered as part of strategic alliances.

The institute secured accreditation for five of the six programmes on offer in the areas of graphic design, television and radio production, broadcast engineering and end-user computing.

The Media, Advertising, Publishing, Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority (Mappp-Seta) was gazetted on 15 March 2000. In 2008, the Mappp-Seta's sectoral categories were revised as follows:

- advertising and visual arts
- publishing
- printing
- packaging
- film and electronic media
- performing arts
- cultural heritage.

The Mappp-Seta coordinates a sector-training plan across the media industry, and assesses the quality of training courses that are run by the industry.

Parallel to this, the South African Qualifications Authority has approved the establishment of several standard-generating bodies for the media industry.

Similar bodies have been implemented for journalism training and communication studies. These bodies are substructures of the National Standards Body (language and communication) that coordinates standard-setting in the communication and language sectors.

Journalism awards

The most important awards include the:

- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards.
- Nat Nakasa Award for Courageous Journalism. In 2009, it was awarded to photographer Greg Marinovich.
- Sappi Magazine Publishers Association of South Africa PICA Awards.
- Sanlam Community Press Awards.
- Vodacom Awards for Journalism Across All Mediums.
- South African Breweries (SAB) Journalism Awards.
- Sanlam's Financial Journalist of the Year Award.
- CNN MultiChoice Africa Awards.

In 2009, the Sanef-Wrottesley Award, a peer-recognition award, was presented to Mathatha Tsedu, former editor of *City Press* and head of Media24's journalism academy, for extraordinary commitment to the achievement of Sanef's goals.

Winners of major annual press trophies

	Frewin*	McCall**	Cronwright***	Hultzer****	Joel Mervis*****
2006	Die Burger	The Witness	District Mail	Eikestadnuus	Mail & Guardian
2007	Beeld	Mercury and Business Day (shared)	Paarl Post	Potchefstroom Herald	Mail & Guardian
2008	Beeld	The Witness	Springs Advertiser	Paarl Post	Weekend Witness
2009	Beeld	Business Day	Lowvelder	Polokwane Observer	Rapport

* Best daily newspaper with a circulation above 50 000
** Best daily with a circulation under 50 000
*** Best community newspaper with a circulation exceeding 15 000
**** Best community newspaper with a circulation below 15 000
***** Best urban weekly

Source: Print Media South Africa

Above-the-line adspend in R millions

Category	1998 R'm	%	2007 R'm	%	2008 R'm	%
Daily newspapers	1 104,5	15,2	3 533,4	15,1	3 485,8	14,2
Weekend newspapers	448,0	6,2	1 413,8	6,0	1 554,0	6,3
Black/coloured/Asian papers	151,15	2,1	included in other categories			
Community newspapers	422,8	5,8	1 547,9	6,6	1 520,6	6,2
Consumer magazines	732,7	10,1	2 114,1	9,0	2 202,9	9,0
Trade, technical, financial	366,9	5,1	512,4	2,2	531,4	2,2
Total print	3 226,4	44,5	9 121,6	39,0	9 294,7	37,8
TV	2 938,8	40,5	9 379,4	40,1	9 961,6	40,6
Radio	795,3	11,0	2 964,8	12,7	3 345,2	13,6
Cinema	76,8	1,1	359,5	1,5	358,1	1,5
Outdoor	210,9	2,9	1 161,1	5,0	1 079,9	4,4
Direct mail (unaddressed)	not monitored		139,9	0,6	150,5	0,8
Internet	not monitored		272,0	1,2	375,9	1,5
Total	**7 248,2**	**100**	**23 398,3**	**100**	**-24 565,9**	**100**

Rounding off occurs. Important note: 2007 revised upward from original data published in *2008 Media Facts*. Excludes self-promotion by TV stations on TV. This table reads: According to Multimedia, TV accounted for R2 938,8 million (40,5%) of the R7 248,2 million spent on the media in 1998. This rose to R9 379,4 million (40,1%) in 2007 and R9 961,6 (40,6%) in 2008.

Source: Nielsen Media Research's Multimedia

Media diversity

Media diversity in any country is regarded as a measure of the depth of its democracy. Every citizen should have access to a diverse range of media. South Africa is on its way towards achieving this mission.

The Constitution provides for freedom of expression and access to information. To deepen media diversity, government, together with commercial media entities, have partnered to assist the Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA), which is tasked with providing financial and other support to community and small commercial media projects.

Media Development and Diversity Agency

The MDDA was established in terms of the MDDA Act, 2002 (Act 14 of 2002), which provides for the establishment of an independent, statutory body, jointly funded by government, the media industry and other donors. The Electronic Communications

In February 2009, Discovery Health launched the Health Journalism Excellence Awards in South Africa, with R275 000 in prize money to journalists for outstanding health reporting.

The award was presented to Anso Thom of Health-e News at a gala awards ceremony in Sandton, Gauteng, in May 2009. There were six other category winners.

Act, 2005 provides for a sustainable mechanism for funding the objects of the MDDA Act, 2002 through contributions from broadcasting service licensees.

The MDDA is tasked with creating an enabling environment for media diversity and development by providing support to media projects, and facilitating research into media development and diversity issues. The agency functions independently from and at arm's length of its funders, political-party and commercial interests. This arrangement enables government, the media industry and donors to work together in addressing the legacy of imbalances in media access.

The MDDA provides support to existing grassroots media projects, and assists in establishing new media projects targeting neglected audiences. The purpose is to strengthen the sector though the provision of resources, knowledge and skills in pursuit of promoting media development and diversity.

By January 2009, the MDDA had expenditure plans of about R73 million for 229 media projects. Those ranged from community radio, TV and newspapers, magazines and small commercial newspapers throughout the country.

Advertising

The Loerie Awards are the best-known South African awards recognising excellence in advertising. The Association of Marketers established these awards in 1978 to coincide with the advent of commercial television in South Africa. The first ceremony took place in 1979.

The Loerie Awards ceremony sees excess monies being ploughed back into the industry in the form of bursaries for underprivileged advertising and marketing students via the Loerie Education Trust Fund, and as a donation to the Advertising Benevolent Fund. The main objective of the Loerie Awards is to encourage creative advertising. Other important annual awards are the Eagles and the Pendoring Awards.

The 31st annual Loerie Awards ceremony was held in September 2009 in Cape Town. More than 2 640 entries were received.

In April 2009, DDB South Africa won the seventh annual *AdReview* Awards' Ad Agency of the Year Award.

Two South African advertising companies won 2009 Cannes Lions International Advertising Festival Awards and received the coveted Grand Prix awards in the outdoor advertising and radio categories. TBWA\Hunt\Lascaris won the premier award in the Outdoor Advertising Category for their billboard campaign commissioned by *The Zimbabwean*.

The agency beat 4 498 entrants in the category to claim the top award.

From a total of 1 153 entries in the radio category, Net#work BBDO Johannesburg claimed the Radio Grand Prix for their *Dancer, Dog and Ferret* Campaign for Virgin Atlantic Airline. This is the first time that a South African agency has won a Grand Prix in the radio category.

In 2009, the festival attracted more than 10 000 delegates from 94 countries and culminated in the competitive showcase of over 28 000 ads from all over the world.

In November 2009, Ogilvy Johannesburg won the *AdFocus* 2009 Advertising Agency of the Year Award.

Advertising Standards Authority (ASA)

The ASA is the protector of the ethical standards of advertising in South Africa, and protects consumers against manipulative advertising and unfair claims.

The ASA is an independent body established and funded by the marketing-communication industry to regulate advertising in the public interest by means of self-regulation.

The ASA cooperates with government, statutory bodies, consumer organisations and industry to ensure that advertising content complies with the Code of Advertising Practice.

Acknowledgements

AdFocus, Financial Mail
Audit Bureau of Circulations
BuaNews
Department of Communications
Estimates of National Expenditure 2009, published by National Treasury
Magazine Publishers' Association of South Africa
M-Net
Print Media SA
South African Broadcasting Corporation
South Africa & SADC Media Facts, 2009
www.abc.org.za
www.arivia.co.za
www.bizcommunity.com
www.etv.co.za
www.fxi.org.za
www.gov.za
www.icasa.org.za
www.joburg.co.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com
www.mtn.co.za
www.mfsa.co.za
www.media24.co.za
www.nrf.ac.za
www.opa.co.za
www.orbicom.co.za
www.saarf.co.za
www.sabc.co.za
www.sapo.co.za
www.sentech.co.za
www.southafrica.info.co.za
www.researchchannel.co.za
www.telkom.co.za
www.theworx.biz
www.vodacom.co.za
www.epnetwork.co.za

Suggested reading

Cameron-Dow, J. 2007. *A Newspaper History of South Africa*. Wynberg: Don Nelson Publishers.
Dickson, J (ed). 2007. *Bibliography of the Philately and Postal History of Natal and Zululand*. (CD-ROM). Ilminster: Natal & Zululand Study Circle.
Gibson, R. 2007. *Final Deadline: The Last Days of the Rand Daily Mail*. Claremont: David Philip Pub.
Hadland, A, Cowling, L and Tabe, BFT. 2007. *Advertising in the News: Paid-For Content and the South African Print Media.* Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press.
Hadland, A, Aldridge, M and Ogada, J. 2007. *Revisioning Television: Policy, Strategy and Models for the Sustainable Development of Community Television in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Maseko, L (ed). 2007. *Sowetan: Celebrating 25 Years of the Soul Truth*. Johannesburg: *The Sowetan*.
Meeting their Mandates? A Critical Analysis of South African Media Statutory Bodies. 2007. Newlands: Media Programme of Open Society Foundation for South Africa.
Paging through History: 150 Years with the Cape Argus*: 1857 – 2007. 2007*. Johannesburg: Jonanthan Ball.
Tlabela, K, Roodt, J, Paterson, A and Weir-Smith, G. 2007. *Mapping ICT Access in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Trovato, B. 2007. *On the Run.* Sea Point: Black Hat.
Van der Merwe, D. 2008. *Information and Communications Technology Law*. Durban: LexisNexis.
Zug, J. 2007. The Guardian*: The History of South Africa's Extraordinary Anti-Apartheid Newspaper.* Pretoria: University of South Africa Press.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

ECONOMY

The growth in real gross domestic product (GDP) slowed to 3,1% in 2008, which was notably lower than the annual growth rates that varied between 4,9% and 5,3% from 2004 to 2007. This was the result of the significant deterioration in global economic conditions and a tighter domestic policy environment. Annualised quarter-to-quarter real GDP at market prices figures contracted by 6,4% and 3% during the first and second quarters of 2009 respectively.

In November 2009, South Africa emerged from its first recession in 17 years by achieving 0,9% growth in the third quarter, primarily driven by a rebound in the manufacturing sector.

The hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ in June and July 2010 will contribute to the country's economy.

In May 2009, President Jacob Zuma announced the establishment of the Ministry of Economic Development, which will promote economic policy development, coordination and coherence (alignment with national policy challenges and programmes).

The Economic Development Department will work with relevant departments and clusters to achieve this. Policy engagement to elaborate a national framework on economic development and decent work has started.

Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA)

AsgiSA, which was launched in February 2006, responds to binding constraints, such as the:

- deficiencies in government capacity
- volatility of the currency
- low levels of investment infrastructure and infrastructure services
- shortage of suitably skilled graduates, technicians and artisans
- insufficiently competitive industrial and services sectors and weak sector strategies
- inequality and marginalisation, resulting in many economically marginalised people being unable to contribute to and/or share in the benefits of growth and development (the "Second Economy").

AsgiSA has also identified particular sectors of the economy for accelerated growth, such as:

- chemicals
- metals beneficiation, including the capital-goods sector
- creative industries (crafts, film, content and music)
- clothing and textiles
- durable consumer goods
- wood, pulp and paper.

Programmes put in place to eliminate constraints include:

- infrastructure investment
- second-economy initiatives
- skills and education
- industrial policies and sector strategies
- macroeconomic policy
- governance interventions.

Infrastructure, which is one of AsgiSA's six priorities for intervention, has produced encouraging results, with meaningful growth in gross fixed capital formation, driven particularly by the public sector. According to the *AsgiSA 2008 Annual Report*, a R787-billion infrastructure development programme is in place.

Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa)

AsgiSA has identified the shortage of skilled labour as one of the six factors that constrain economic growth. Jipsa, the skills-empowerment arm of AsgiSA, was launched in 2006.

Jipsa is a specific initiative within government's wider AsgiSA strategy, aimed at addressing skills shortages and achieving a 6% growth rate, which is seen as key to halving poverty and unemployment by 2014.

It is a two-tier structure comprising a joint task team and a technical working group. The former has the task of unblocking the acquisition of targeted skills, overseeing the work of Jipsa and ensuring that it delivers on its mandate of acquiring scarce and priority skills in the shortest possible time, building partnerships with different institutions and ensuring that Jipsa initiatives are sustainable.

In August 2009, President Jacob Zuma announced that the Government would take steps to see the country through the global economic crisis. These include:

- a R2,4-billion worker layoff training scheme
- R6 billion in support for struggling firms
- measures to root out customs fraud
- debt-restructuring assistance for consumers.

Based on the priorities of AsgiSA, Jipsa's identified work areas are:

- high-level world-class engineering and planning skills for the network industries, and the transport, communications and energy sectors
- city, urban and regional planning and engineering skills desperately needed by South African municipalities
- artisan and technical skills, with those needed for infrastructure development enjoying priority
- management and planning skills in education, health and municipalities
- teacher training for Mathematics, Science, information and communications technology (ICT) and language competence in public education
- specific skills needed by priority AsgiSA sectors, starting with tourism and business process outsourcing (BPO) and cross-cutting skills needed by all sectors, especially finance and project managers
- skills relevant to the local economic development needs of municipalities, especially developmental economists.

Jipsa is steadily reaching its objectives of identifying critical skills needed for faster and shared growth, which is demonstrated by the benefits of partnerships between government and social partners.

Successes of this initiative include the placement of 1 500 graduates in private companies and government departments, placement offers for 20 000 graduates, international placement of more than 700 mainly female graduates and the announcement by ICT companies to establish ICT training centres to support black-owned companies.

Jipsa's progress lays the foundation for mobilising participation of many other players locally and abroad in a national effort to ensure that the country reaches the AsgiSA targets.

Economic indicators

Domestic output

Real output growth in the South African economy remained weak in the second quarter of 2009.

According to Statistics South Africa's *Labour Force Survey 2009*, South Africa's official unemployment rate stood at 23,6% for the period April to June 2009. The employment rate increased to 24,9% in the third quarter of 2009.

Having declined at annualised rates of 1,8% and 6,4% in the preceding two quarters, real GDP contracted at a rate of 3% in the second quarter of 2009. Production volumes continued to decline in all three major sectors of the economy.

Real value added by the primary sector contracted at an annualised rate of 3,6% in the second quarter of 2009, following a decline of 23% in the preceding quarter. An increase in the real value added by the mining sector was more than offset by a contraction in real output by the agricultural sector in the second quarter.

Agricultural production, which increased at a rate of 18,8% in 2008, contracted at an annualised rate of 17,1% in the second quarter of 2009, following a decline of 2,9% in the first quarter. Lower output volumes of most summer crops were largely to blame for this further decline. The commercial maize crop for 2009 was estimated at 11,6 million tons (Mt), compared with 12,7 Mt harvested in the previous season. In addition, the real value added by livestock edged lower over the period.

In the mining sector, the real value added increased at an annualised rate of 5,5% in the second quarter of 2009, after having declined at a rate of 32,8% in the preceding quarter. Increased output, mainly by the platinum-group metals, which benefited from firmer international commodity prices, restored positive momentum in the sector. Growth in the real output of diamonds, manganese and iron ore also improved moderately during the second quarter of 2009.

Following a revised decline at an annualised rate of 14,7% in the first quarter of 2009, the real value added by the secondary sector receded at a more moderate rate of 5,7% in the second quarter. A smaller contraction in real production of the manufacturing sector was the main contributing factor to the slower pace of decline.

Growth in real value added by the construction sector remained firm over the period, while the rate of contraction in electricity, gas and water production slowed.

On a quarter-to-quarter basis, manufacturing production declined at an annualised rate of 10,9% in the second quarter of 2009, compared with a contraction of 22,1% recorded in the first quarter. Although the decline in manufacturing output was broad-based and consistent with subdued demand growth, pronounced declines were recorded by the subsectors responsible for the manufacturing of chemicals, wood and paper products, electrical machinery and textiles and clothing.

The weaker-than-expected demand in growth, and low business confidence culminated in excess production capacity. The use of capacity in the manufacturing sector accordingly worsened from 78,2% in the first quarter of 2009 to 77,9% in the second quarter.

The continued weakening of overall economic activity in the second quarter of 2009 caused a further decline in electricity demand. Consequently, the real value added by the sector that supplies electricity, gas and water contracted further, although its pace of decline slowed from an annualised rate of 7,9% in the first quarter of 2009 to 1,4% in the second quarter, alongside higher mining production and several cold winter spells over this period.

Real output by the construction sector increased at an annualised rate of 12,2% in the second quarter of 2009 compared with a growth rate of 14,7% registered in the first quarter. The demand for residential and non-residential buildings remained subdued, while activity in the civil construction sector increased, although at a slower pace, due to ongoing infrastructure development projects.

The real value added by the tertiary sector declined at an annualised rate of 1,2% in the second quarter of 2009, following a decline of 0,8% recorded in the first quarter. The contraction in the second quarter of 2009 was mainly due to receding activity in the financial intermediation, insurance, real-estate and business services sector, as well as a further decline in the real value added by the commerce sector over this period.

Real output of the commerce sector declined further at an annualised rate of 4,5% in the second quarter of 2009, compared with a decline of 2,5% recorded in the first quarter. Subdued activity in the commerce sector persisted due to a further decrease in the real value added by the wholesale, retail and motor trade subsectors, in line with the sustained weak household-sector demand.

The real value added by the motor trade subsector remained under pressure as the demand for new motor vehicles declined further. Activity in the market for used vehicles, and motor-vehicle parts and accessories, however, contracted at a slower pace than in the first quarter of 2009.

Real value added by the finance, insurance, real-estate and business-services sector contracted in the first and second quarters of 2009. A decline in the real value added by the banking, insurance and business-services sector was partly offset by increased trading activity in the domestic securities markets.

The real value added by the transport, storage and communications sector contracted by 1,8% in the first quarter and 1,1% in the second quarter of 2009. This was the net result of stagnant growth in the communications subsector and slower growth in the land-transport subsector. Activity in the latter subsector was harmed by receding freight volumes, consistent with further declining import and export volumes over the period.

Real production by general government increased at a rate of 2,4% in the second quarter of 2009, slightly lower than the growth rate of 2,7% recorded in the first quarter, partly due to a slower increase in employment by general government.

Domestic expenditure

Aggregate real gross domestic expenditure declined at an annualised rate of 14,5% in the second quarter of 2009, following positive annualised growth of 2,2% recorded in the first quarter. The decline in real gross domestic expenditure was a consequence of a contraction in real final consumption expenditure by households, alongside a deceleration in both final consumption expenditure by general government and real gross fixed capital formation.

Accordingly, real final domestic demand, which increased at an annualised rate of 0,5% in the first quarter of 2009, contracted at a rate of 3,5% in the second quarter. The level of real inventories contracted at a markedly faster pace in the second quarter of 2009 than in the preceding quarter.

Regardless of the three consecutive contractions in the GDP since the fourth quarter of 2008, the ratio of gross domestic expenditure to GDP trended below 100 in the second quarter of 2009; the first time since the beginning of 2004. The stickiness of gross domestic expenditure to the second quarter in 2009 reflected the efficiency of the tight monetary policy stance of 2008. The deterioration of expenditure behaviour, on the other hand, could be a reflection of the lagged effect of the monetary policy relaxation, accompanied by low confidence levels of consumers and business enterprises, the lower wealth effect and discomfort towards future income-generating possibilities.

The rate of decline in real final consumption expenditure by households accelerated from 4,8% in the first quarter of 2009 to 5,8% in the second quarter.

Although declines were registered by all spending components, it was much more pronounced in household expenditure on durable goods.

Real expenditure on durable goods declined further at an annualised rate of 18,8% in the second quarter of 2009, compared with the rate of decline of 15,2% recorded in the first quarter. Lower spending on durable goods was particularly evident in the categories for personal transport equipment, medical equipment and furniture and household appliances. Vehicle sales continued to be constrained by low consumer confidence, and the fact that households were more averse to debt and lenders more averse to risk.

Alongside a decline in outlays on residential buildings, expenditure on furniture and household appliances contracted further.

Households' real spending on semi-durable goods contracted at an annualised rate of 9,7% in the second quarter of 2009, faster than the rate of 7,9% recorded in the first quarter, with the most pronounced decline in the real outlays on motorcar tyres, parts and accessories.

Following a decline of 12,2% in the first quarter of 2009, real household spending on non-durable goods declined at a more sedate pace of 3,4% in the second quarter of 2009. Decreased expenditure on non-durable goods was noticeable in all the subcategories of non-durable goods, with the exception of petroleum products. On a year-on-year basis, the price of fuel declined by more than 20% in the second quarter of 2009, giving impetus to households' increased expenditure on fuel. Growth in real final consumption expenditure by households on services moved from an annualised growth rate of 6,5% in the first quarter of 2009 to a contraction of 2,7% in the second quarter.

According to the World Economic Forum's *2008 – 2009 Global Competitiveness Report*, South Africa officially has one of the best auditing systems in the world. In 2009, the forum ranked South Africa's auditing systems fourth in the world for auditing and reporting standards. The main goal of the report is to evaluate countries' economic environment and their ability to achieve sustained levels of prosperity and growth. South Africa came in at 48th place out of 137 countries in the report's overall ranking, the second-highest after Tunisia among African countries and ahead of large economies such as the United Kingdom, the United States of America, India and Russia.

South Africa also performed well in other categories such as business sophistication, quality of air-transport infrastructure, soundness of banks, availability of latest technologies and capacity of innovation.

Similar to the decline in household expenditure, real household disposable income contracted for the fourth consecutive quarter. Following negative growth of 4,5% in the first quarter of 2009, real household disposable income declined at an annualised rate of 5,7% in the second quarter. Fewer hours worked and layoffs in specific industries could have contributed to the decline in real household disposable income.

The ratio of household debt to disposable income inched marginally lower from 76,8% registered in the first quarter to 76,3% in the second quarter of 2009.

Likewise, on account of the general decline in interest rates, the ratio of debt-service cost to disposable income receded from 10,9% in the first quarter of 2009 to 9,5% in the second quarter of 2009.

Having increased at an annualised rate of 5,8% in the first quarter of 2009, growth in real final consumption expenditure by general government decelerated to a rate of 0,2% in the second quarter. The slower growth in real government expenditure reflected lower spending on the defence procurement programme and lower real spending on compensation of employees. Relative to GDP, consumption expenditure by general government remained broadly unchanged from the first quarter of 2009 to the second quarter.

Real gross fixed capital formation increased at a significantly slower pace in the second quarter of 2009. Following an upwardly revised annualised rate of increase of 12,7% in the first quarter of 2009, growth in real gross fixed capital formation slowed to a mere 0,1% in the second quarter. The deceleration in capital spending primarily reflected substantially slower growth in real capital outlays by public corporations.

Capital outlays by private business enterprises – the largest subcomponent of gross fixed capital formation – declined at a pace broadly similar to that recorded in the first quarter of 2009, whereas investment activity by general government continued to increase. However, the ratio of gross fixed capital formation to GDP was maintained at about 24,8% in both the first and second quarters of 2009.

Price inflation

The steps taken by the South African Reserve Bank to bring down inflation showed a deterioration in the inflation outlook. However, inflation was expected to follow a downward trend and to average 5,4% at the end of the forecast period

in the final quarter of 2010 and to average 4,9% in 2009.

Overall consumer price inflation (CPI) increased to 6,5% in 2007 and 11,3% in 2008. Year-on-year inflation consumer price index less mortgage interest rate (CPIX) rose from 10,1% in March 2008 to a peak of 13,6% in August 2008 and moderated to 10,3% in December.

In February 2009, Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) introduced a revamped headline CPI and inflation target measure, known as the CPI for all urban areas.

This inflation-target measure increased from 8,1% in January 2009 to 8,5% in March 2009.

The annual rate of increase in headline food prices stood at 14,9% in March 2009 compared to a peak of 19,2% in August 2008. During the course of 2008, food prices increased on average by 16,8%. Processed food prices remained at high levels, reflecting higher cost of transport, wages and general production.

Year-on-year CPI stood at 10,6% in March 2008. Stats SA ascribed the higher rate partly to a rise in the year-on-year CPI for food from 7,7% in March 2007 to 15,3% in March 2008. CPIX inflation breached the upper band of the inflation target range between April 2007 and March 2009, for 24 consecutive months.

Exchange rates

After strengthening marginally by 0,8% during the first quarter of 2009, the nominal effective exchange rate of the Rand increased by 17,5% from the end of March 2009 to the end of June 2009.

Although the weighted average exchange rate of the Rand strengthened throughout the second quarter of 2009, a particularly sharp increase of 12,8% was recorded during April. The domestic currency benefited mainly from substantial capital inflows into the country, following the improvement in investors' sentiment towards emerging-market assets, an increase in commodity prices, and expectations of an improvement in the country's deficit on current account after the release of better-than-expected foreign trade data.

The weighted average exchange rate of the Rand declined by 0,6% from the end of June 2009 to the end of July, partly in response to the downgrading of the International Monetary Fund's (IMF) forecast for global economic growth and a concomitant decline in international commodity prices.

The real effective exchange rate of the Rand increased by 17,6% during the first half of 2009, following a decline of 16,5% during 2008. As in the past, the volatility in the real effective exchange rate of the Rand adversely affected the competitiveness of South African exporters.

The average net daily turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange amounted to US$12,5 billion in the first quarter of 2009 and increased to US$15 billion in the second quarter. The increase in the average net daily turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange was partly due to the increased participation of non-resident parties in the markets for debt and equity securities. The share of transactions in which non-residents participated consequently increased from 72,1% in the first quarter of 2009 to 75,1% in the second quarter.

Foreign trade and payments

The contraction in real gross domestic production and the almost simultaneous steep decline in the volume of merchandise imports in the first half of 2009 led to a turnaround in the deficit on the trade account in the second quarter of 2009, despite the relatively subdued external demand for domestically produced goods.

Exchange rates of the Rand – Percentage change

	30/09/08 – 31/12/08	31/12/08 – 31/03/09	31/03/09 – 30/06/09	30/06/09 – 25/08/09
Weighted average*	-7,8	0,8	17,5	-1,3
Euro	-8,9	2,5	16,7	-1,8
US dollar	-10,6	-3,4	23,8	-0,5
Chinese yuan	-10,9	-3,2	23,7	-0,5
British pound	11,6	-2,1	6,2	1,1
Japanese yen	-23,1	5,2	20,3	-1,7

Source: South African Reserve Bank *Quaterly Bulletin, September 2009*

Balance of payments on current account

	2008					2009	
	1st qr	2nd qr	3rd qr	4th qr	Year	1st qr	2nd qr
Merchandise exports	568,4	680,1	706,3	668,2	655,8	538,4	484,2
Net gold exports	46,1	47,5	49,4	51,2	48,5	51,0	47,5
Merchandise imports	-668,1	-759,9	-792,4	-739,0	-739,9	-642,8	-505,1
Trade balance	-53,6	-32,3	-36,7	-19,6	-35,6	-53,4	26,6
Net service, income and current transfer payments	-138,8	-133,9	-143,9	-117,7	133,6	-110,3	-99,7
Balance on current account	-192,4	-166,2	-180,6	-137,3	169,2	-163,7	-73,1
As a percentage of gross domestic product	-8,8	-7,3	-7,8	-5,8	-7,4	-7,0	-3,2

Source: South African Reserve Bank *Quarterly Bulletin, September 2009*

South Africa's trade balance, which had registered deficits since the third quarter of 2005, consequently switched from a deficit of R53,4 billion in the first quarter of 2009 to a surplus of R26,6 billion in the second quarter.

The contraction in domestic economic activity since the middle of 2008 has also had a profound positive impact on the shortfall on the country's services, income and current transfer account with the rest of the world. Owing to a combination of continued lower net income and other service-related payments to non-residents, the deficit on this account narrowed considerably. As a result, the negative imbalance on the current account of the balance of payments improved from 7% of GDP in the first quarter of 2009 to 3,2% in the second quarter.

Subdued domestic demand conditions alongside weak business and consumer confidence levels gave rise to the third consecutive quarterly decline in the volume of merchandise imports in the second quarter of 2009. The contraction in the physical quantity of merchandise imports gained further momentum as various private-sector capital-expenditure projects were postponed in view of the fall in global demand.

Consistent with the slowdown in gross fixed capital formation, the imports of especially machinery and electrical equipment, and of vehicles and transport equipment receded strongly in the second quarter. In addition, the imports of intermediate and consumer goods also tapered off.

Overall, the volume of imported goods shrank for the third consecutive quarter, declining by 15,5% in the second quarter of 2009. Relative to gross domestic expenditure, the volume of merchandise imports decreased from 24,4% in the first quarter of 2009 to 21,4% in the second quarter – significantly lower than the peak of 28,1% recorded in the third quarter of 2008. Over the same period, the strengthening of the exchange value of the Rand more than offset the moderate increase in the international price of crude oil and other import commodities, leading to a decline of 7% in the Rand price of merchandise imports. The value of imported goods accordingly dropped by 21,4% from R643 billion in the first quarter of 2009 to R505 billion in the second quarter.

The combined effect of a decline in the volume and rand price of merchandise exports hampered export proceeds in the second quarter of 2009. The value of merchandise exports fell by 19,4% in the first quarter of 2009 and by a further 10,1% in the subsequent quarter. Although all main export categories registered declines, the value of manufactured exports declined markedly.

Following a decline of no less than 21% in the first quarter of 2009, the volume of merchandise exports contracted further by a marginal 2,8% in the second quarter. An increase in the demand for domestically produced mining products from especially Asia, partly negating lower export orders for domestically manufactured products from Europe and the United States of America (USA), boosted the performance of merchandise exports in an environment of contracting international trade volumes.

The partial resurgence in the demand for mining products underpinned international commodity prices, which continued to trend higher in the second quarter of 2009. However, the increase in the Dollar price of commodities was more than neutralised by the appreciation in the external

value of the Rand during the quarter. Consequently, the unit price of merchandise exports fell by 7,5% in rand terms over the period.

On the London market, the fixing price of gold rose slightly from US$908 per fine ounce in the first quarter of 2009 to US$915 per fine ounce in the second quarter. The precious metal maintained its status as a hedge against inflation by international investors wishing to preserve wealth.

Mainly suppressed by the strengthening of the exchange value of the Rand, the realised Rand price of net gold exports declined by 12,7% in the second quarter of 2009, after having increased noticeably in the preceding two quarters. The decline in the Rand price of gold occurred alongside an increase of 6,7% in the physical quantity of gold exports. As a result, the value of net gold exports receded by 6,9% from R51 billion in the first quarter of 2009 to R47,5 billion in the second quarter.

The deficit on the services, income and current transfer account, which had narrowed consistently from the fourth quarter of 2008, amounted to R99,7 billion or 4,3% of GDP in the second quarter of 2009 – comparable with the average long-term ratio of 4,4%. A decrease in net income payments, and a further contraction in transport and freight-related service payments to non-residents predominantly supported the continued moderation in the deficit.

Net income payments to the rest of the world, which had been contracting because of lower gross dividend payments to foreign shareholders since the fourth quarter of 2008, decreased further in the second quarter of 2009. Gross dividend payments in the first half of 2009 were, in fact, 26,5% lower when compared with the corresponding period in 2008, effectively returning to dividend levels last recorded in early 2007.

The harsh domestic economic conditions and the impact on the distribution of income continued to affect income accruing to foreign investors. Lower dividend payments were augmented by a decline in gross interest payments on outstanding external interest-bearing liabilities in an environment of relatively low international interest rates.

Payments related to transport and freight services rendered by non-residents also declined substantially in the second quarter of 2009 as merchandise trade volumes continued to trend downwards. In addition, payments for "other services" contracted over the period as these services form an integral part of the cost structures of local producers. However, payments for technical services remained elevated as the demand for this type of service remained brisk due to ongoing infrastructural initiatives in the domestic economy.

In the second quarter of 2009, South Africa's terms of trade improved for the third consecutive quarter. The strengthening in the country's terms of trade mainly resulted from import prices, which declined at a faster rate than export prices.

Department of Trade and Industry

The Department of Trade and Industry aims to lead and facilitate access to sustainable economic activity and employment for all South Africans. South Africa has trading relationships with over 200 countries and territories.

The department also aims to catalyse economic transformation and development, and to provide a predictable, competitive, equitable and socially responsible environment for investment, enterprise and trade for economic citizens. In this way, the department contributes to achieving government's vision of an adaptive and restructured economy, characterised by accelerated economic growth, employment creation and greater equity by 2014.

To contribute to greater shared growth in the country, the department is pursuing the goals of:

- significantly progressing Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE)
- increasing the contribution of small enterprises to the economy
- contributing towards providing accessible, transparent and efficient access to redress
- contributing towards building skills, technology and infrastructure platforms from which enterprises can benefit
- increasing market-access opportunities for, and export of, South African goods and services
- increasing the overall level of direct investment, as well as investment in priority sectors
- repositioning the economy in higher value-added segments of value matrices in knowledge-driven manufacturing and services
- contributing towards the economic growth and development of the African continent within the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) framework
- building an efficient, effective and accessible organisation to achieve these outcomes.

These strategic objectives are achieved through the collective effort of the department's divisions and agencies that generate public value for economic citizens, and deliver products and services for clients and stakeholders.

These products and services include policy, legislation and regulation, finance and incentives, information and advice, and partnerships.

The department also achieves these objectives by pursuing a more targeted investment strategy, improved competitiveness of the economy, broadening the economic participation of historically disadvantaged individuals in the mainstream economy and ensuring policy coherence.

South Africa's global positioning and integration

International Trade and Economic Development (ITED)

ITED's purpose is to develop trade and investment links with key economies globally; and promote economic development, through negotiating preferential trade agreements, supporting a strong, equitable multitrading system and fostering economic integration with the continent within the Nepad framework.

ITED contributes to the realisation of the department's strategic objectives by:

- expanding market access for South Africa's exports and facilitating investment through free trade agreements (FTAs), bilateral trade and investment agreements, and the harmonisation of standards and customs
- supporting economic development and capacity-building in Africa
- safeguarding and promoting South Africa's interests in the rules-based multilateral trade system
- ensuring compliance with international non-proliferation treaties
- conducting world-class global trade and economic analysis
- managing South Africa's tariff regime
- building a competent and effective institution to execute ITED's mandate, in cooperation with government, the private sector and civil-society stakeholders.

Nine South Africans were included in the 2009 Class of Young Global Leaders, which is presented annually by the World Economic Forum. This is aimed at recognising young leaders from around the world for their professional accomplishments, commitment to society and potential to contribute to shaping the future of the world.

The young leaders convene at biannual summits, as well as forum events and meetings throughout the year, and collaborate on initiatives to tackle some of the key issues facing modern generations.

Drawn from a list of 5 000 candidates, the Class of 2009 was made up of 230 leaders from 71 countries. The 2009 honourees became part of the broader Forum of Young Global Leaders that consists of 480 individuals.

The 2009 South African young global leaders were:

- Brent Stirton – award-winning photographer
- Adria Greene – founder and CEO of Lawpoint
- Alan Knott-Craig – CEO of iBurst
- Vinny Lingham – CEO of Synthasite
- Anthony Miller – founder of Lightstone
- Euvin Naidoo – President and CEO of the South African Chamber of Commerce in America
- Vuyo Jack – co-founder and CEO of Empowerdex
- James Wanjohi – head of Branson School of Entrepreneurship
- Marianne Knuth – founder of Kufunda Learning Village.

African economic development

ITED has a strong developmental focus in its engagement with Africa. Partnerships with key countries on the continent are of strategic importance. South Africa's economy is inextricably connected to the southern African region, and the region's economic prospects are linked to the economic recovery of the continent. Nepad is the internationally agreed framework for the socio-economic development of the continent.

At a continental level, South African investment and trade with African countries has increased dramatically since 1994. Africa is now South Africa's fourth-largest export destination. South African investments in southern Africa alone totalled R14,8 billion in 2001. Trade with the rest of Africa increased to R108 billion in 2007 with exports amounting to R68 billion and imports to about R40 billion. In the same year, South Africa's trade in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region totalled some R68 billion with exports reaching R44 billion and imports R24 billion.

The following areas have been prioritised:

- infrastructure and logistics (roads, ports, etc.)
- energy
- ICT
- water and waste management
- transport
- construction
- oil and gas infrastructure
- agribusiness
- mining
- human-resource development (HRD).

During meetings of the World Economic Forum (WEF) for southern Africa, the formation of a business forum for this region was announced to take advantage of investment opportunities in the region.

New Partnership for Africa's Development

The Department of Trade and Industry is among the key departments identified in South Africa to facilitate and implement the aims and objectives of Nepad. The department acts as a catalyst for trade and economic development on the continent to alleviate poverty. Nepad recognises the need for infrastructure, industrial and skills development, and its impact on the continent's ability to become fully integrated into the global economy.

The department provides technical support to the Nepad Secretariat in implementing spatial development initiatives across Africa, and continues to participate in African Union (AU) efforts to rationalise integration processes and develop a continental model for business law. The department also provides institutional and technical support to key counties in Africa, including Nigeria, Ghana, Zimbabwe, Egypt, Mali, Senegal, Uganda, Ethiopia and Zambia, and technical economic support for South Africa's post-conflict reconstruction and development programmes in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Sudan, Angola and Rwanda.

In 2007, the department published *South Africa in Africa – A Business Guide* to provide potential investors and traders with information about the South African market and business environment.

The Department of Trade and Industry, through its engagement with continental structures such as the AU Commission (AUC) and the Nepad Secretariat, strongly advocates for finding African solutions to African problems and identifying partners to contribute to the continental development agenda.

One such programme is the African Peer Review Mechanism, which is a voluntary self-assessment tool that aims to encourage countries to adopt policies to promote good governance, democracy and high economic growth. It also encourages countries to share experiences in terms of best practice.

The department also supports the AUC and the Nepad Secretariat in the area of regional economic integration, which is a vehicle to ensure economies of scale, effective allocation of resources and larger markets in the region and on the continent. The framework for regional economic integration is contained in the Abuja Treaty.

The Abuja Treaty calls for the establishment of the African Economic Community to take place over a period of 34 years. Member states of the AU should work towards eliminating overlapping memberships of regional economic communities; harmonising business laws, and industrial and tax policies; and establishing common standards and customs procedures.

Other important vehicles through which the continental developmental agenda is advanced are through South-South cooperation initiatives such as the China-Africa Forum and the New Asian African Strategic Partnership.

The acceleration of South-South trade and investment is one of the most significant features of recent developments in the global economy. South-South cooperation is premised on the concept that developing countries can capitalise on each other's strengths because of the alignment of their development goals.

This, however, does not preclude North-South cooperation, where developed and developing countries work in partnership to address Africa's developmental needs.

These include discussions and initiatives from the G8 and the European Union (EU)-Africa partnership.

Southern African Development Community

The SADC comprises Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Lesotho, Malawi, Madagascar, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The SADC FTA was launched in South Africa in August 2008.

It provides preferential space towards regional business and its citizens by opening up opportunities for investment by reducing market risk

Proudly South African is a Buy Local Campaign launched by government, organised business, organised labour and community organisations (represented in the National Economic Development and Labour Council) to boost job creation by promoting South African companies and locally made products.

By buying Proudly South African, consumers/businesses are making a personal contribution to nation-building. Buy Local helps to fight unemployment and in the process also serves to alleviate poverty, crime and disease. In addition, consumers get an assurance of quality because only quality products carry the logo (mark of quality). The Proudly South African logo identifies companies/organisations that are members of the campaign or have been accredited by the campaign. Active members may only use the Proudly South African mark of quality to ensure that it maintains its integrity.

and transaction costs, and creating a network of regional businesses interconnection.

The FTA is a vital stepping stone towards a SADC Common Market, where the movement of people would be unrestricted and free. It will also involve the setting of a common external tariff among countries with mostly differing profiles.

Freeing trade in the region will create a larger market, releasing the potential for trade, economic growth and employment creation.

South Africa supports the establishment of a dedicated focal point within the Trade, Industry, Finance and Investment Directorate at the SADC Secretariat to coordinate the customs-union programme and ensure coherence between the activities of the Technical Working Group and other SADC structures.

Southern African Customs Union (Sacu)

Sacu consists of Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Swaziland. The Sacu Secretariat is located in Windhoek, Namibia.

Sacu was established in 1910, making it the world's oldest customs union. It was administered by South Africa through the 1910 and 1969 agreements. The customs union collected duties on local production and customs duties on members' imports from outside Sacu. The resulting revenue was allocated to member countries in quarterly instalments using a revenue-sharing formula.

Negotiations to reform the 1969 agreement started in 1994, and a new agreement was signed in 2002 and ratified by Sacu heads of state.

The economic structure of the union links the member states by a single tariff and no customs duties between them. The member states form a single customs territory in which tariffs and other barriers are reduced substantially on all trade between the member states for products originating in these countries. There is a common external tariff that applies to non-members of Sacu.

The landmark FTA between Sacu and the European Free Trade Association (EFTA), comprising Iceland, Liechtenstein, Norway and Switzerland, became operational in 2008.

Sacu signed the Trade, Investment and Development Cooperation Agreement with the USA in April 2008 and the Preferential Trade Agreement with Mercosur (Common Market of the South) was concluded in June 2008.

The agreement manages and facilitates trade in industrial products, fish and other marine products, and processed agricultural products. Trade in basic agricultural products is governed by bilateral agreements with each of the EFTA states, the latter of which are party to the FTA. Most industrial goods, including fish and other marine products, now benefit from duty-free access to the EFTA states. The importation of products into Sacu will benefit greatly from the steady elimination of customs duties over a transitional period of time.

Trade with Europe

Trade relations with Europe, particularly with the EU, are pivotal to South Africa's economic development. The Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement (TDCA) with the EU forms a substantial element of South Africa's reconstruction and development.

The United Kingdom (UK), Germany, the Netherlands, Spain and Belgium are among South Africa's top 10 export destinations. Germany, the UK, Italy and France are among the top 10 countries from which South Africa's imports originate.

Since 2001, Germany has been South Africa's largest source of imports, showing annual growth of 18,5% between 2007 and 2008. In 2008, South Africa's biggest trade partner was the Netherlands.

European Union

President Jacob Zuma was co-chair of the second South Africa-EU Summit with his Swedish counterpart, Prime Minister Fredrik Reinfeldt, in September 2009 in Kleinmond, in the Western Cape.

Through the second SA-EU Summit, South Africa aimed to build on the positive progress that has been made since the partnership was launched in May 2007.

A key outcome during the summit was the signing of the amending agreement to the SA-EU TDCA. The amending agreement includes 35 new and revised non-trade chapter articles, which were negotiated following the mid-term review of the TDCA.

During the first SA-EU Summit in Bordeaux, France, in July 2008, South Africa and the EU recognised that since the establishment of the strategic partnership between South Africa and the EU in May 2007, bilateral relations had developed into an enhanced mutually beneficial partnership, based on strengthened political dialogue and cooperation in a wide range of economic and other areas.

The EU is the world's largest trading bloc and generates about 30% of global GDP and 20% of global trade flows. It is the world's biggest aid

donor to poor countries, contributing about half of global aid.

Implementation of the SA-EU TDCA's trade provisions have been underway since 2000 with the aim of establishing an FTA between South Africa and the EU by 2012. Total trade increased from R56,5 billion in 1994 to R313 billion in 2007.

In 2007, South Africa's exports to the EU-27 totalled R152,6 billion. The EU also ranked as South Africa's number one export region in 2007.

Europe remains the principal source of foreign direct investment (FDI) in South Africa, accounting for around 80% of total FDI in 2005. Additionally, the EU accounted for about 66% of net foreign investment in South Africa in 2003 and 2004, and in 2005, the EU's share of the total assets held by foreigners in South Africa amounted to about 60%.

The EU is South Africa's largest development partner, representing about 70% of all overseas development assistance, with South Africa earmarked to receive €980 million from 2007 to 2013. The European Investment Bank has also approved a loan mandate of €900 million to South Africa.

The Americas

North America

The trade and investment relationship between the two countries has significantly increased, resulting in total trade approaching almost R100 billion, with South Africa enjoying a trade surplus of about R20 billion in 2008. In addition, South Africa is one of the major beneficiaries under the African Growth and Opportunity Act, ranking third after Nigeria and Angola, respectively, with South African exports to the USA being the most diversified when compared to other sub-Saharan African countries' exports.

Canada

Another significant trading partner in the Americas is Canada. South Africa is a beneficiary of Canada's General Preferential Tariff (GPT). GPT rates range from duty-free to reductions in the most favoured nation (MFN) rates.

Furthermore, South Africa and Canada have a memorandum of understanding (MoU) relating to the export of clothing and textile products to that country. The MoU allows a certain number of clothing and textile products from South Africa to enter the Canadian market at a better-than-MFN tariff rate.

An annual consultation forum was established to discuss matters of mutual interest in South Africa's relations with Canada. The forum has also become an important basis for strengthening trade relations.

Latin America

South Africa's major trading partners in Latin America are Brazil, Argentina, Chile, Mexico, Colombia and Peru. Most trade is with Brazil and Argentina, which are members of the Mercusor trade bloc. A framework agreement committing South Africa and Mercusor to an FTA was signed in 2000.

Asia

The trade deficit with Asia increased from R8,3 billion to R9 billion in 2008/09. Exports to Asia increased by R1,3 billion to R17,9 billion and imports increased by R1,9 billion to R26,9 billion.

South-east Asia and Australasia

Bilateral trade with south-east Asia, particularly the Association of South-East Asian Nations (Asean) members, increased rapidly from a low base in 1990. Asean presents South Africa with a potential market in excess of 520 million people.

Within the region, key partners for South Africa include Singapore, Thailand, Indonesia, Malaysia, Vietnam and the Philippines.

In an effort to further expand engagement with the region, the Department of Trade and Industry is undertaking a number of joint trade committees with key Asean partners to expand trade and investment relations with the region.

Australia has always featured as a well-known partner for South Africa in the region.

In September 2009, the European Commission and the United Kingdom's Department for International Development allocated about R1,3 billion for South Africa's economic-support and employment-creation programme. It was announced at the South Africa-European Union Summit held in Kleinmond, Western Cape.

The purpose of the programme is to assist the economic-sector departments of the South African Government to accelerate South Africa's economic growth rate and provide more and better jobs for poor people.

Government departments in the economic sectors had access to additional funds to promote skills development and initiate programmes to expand the capacity of the productive economy. National government departments were also able to access funds to partner provincial and local government, research institutions, the private sector, labour and civil society; to promote dialogue; and to find innovative ways of stimulating higher economic growth and employment.

North-east Asia

South Africa and the People's Republic of China (PRC) celebrated 10 years of diplomatic relations in 2008.

In the first half of 2009, China was South Africa's number one export destination, with an annual growth of 53,9%.

South Africa's trade balance with China in the first half of 2009 was minus R8,8 billion, down from minus R19,2 billion in 2008.

The two countries engage regularly on economic issues through mechanisms such as the Joint Economic and Trade Committee. Research and discussions among key stakeholders domestically and within Sacu are continuing towards assessing the possibility of preferential negotiations with China.

In the last three years, Africa's trade with China has doubled, reaching US$106,7 billion in 2008. China is Africa's second-largest single trading partner and reconfirmed commitments made at the 2006 China-Africa Summit in Beijing to double aid to Africa and reduce barriers to its imports.

Beyond bilateral and regional initiatives, South Africa and the PRC also cooperate in multilateral forums, including in the World Trade Organisation (WTO), the G20 and Non-Agricultural Market Access 11 groupings (Nama-11), based on shared developmental perspectives.

Japan is among South Africa's top overall trading partners. The South Africa-Japan Partnership Forum is designed to strengthen bilateral ties between the two countries. The forum meets regularly and explores new initiatives aimed at expanding relations.

South Asia

India is a key partner for South Africa in South Asia, and total trade has been increasing rapidly since 1994.

South Africa and India enjoy strong historical ties, which have translated into a firm political commitment. In light of these shared historical links, closer economic ties are being fostered through initiatives such as the Joint Ministerial Commission and business engagements.

Developments in building economic relations with India are also expanding to include partners in Sacu, as reflected in the Sacu ministers' undertaking to pursue preferential trade-area negotiations with India.

South Africa and India work closely in the India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA) Forum. IBSA is not solely an economic initiative, but rather an undertaking by countries with shared interests in a multilateral system to address equitably political, social and economic matters.

This trilateral economic cooperation is informed by the reality that trade between the three countries is still relatively low, while further analysis reveals that there is considerable scope to increase trade volumes and expand the range of traded products between the three markets. In essence, a more fundamental aim than the development of a giant trading bloc, the trade and investment undertakings under IBSA seek to cultivate and unleash the host of missed opportunities that exist.

In 2008, during the IBSA Summit in South Africa, the three countries committed to increase trade among themselves to R142 billion by 2010. They also agreed that there was a need for more cooperation to reform the international financial architecture to better serve the developing countries' interests.

South Africa also cooperates with India in the multilateral arena in areas of common interest in the WTO, most notably the G20 and Nama-11, as well as in other forums.

The South Africa-Pakistan Joint Commission serves as the platform from which trade and investment initiatives with Pakistan can be introduced.

Multilateral economic relations

The WTO, in partnership with the Bretton-Woods Institutions, the World Bank and the IMF, has been setting the parameters for and directing the economic-development policies of governments around the world.

This has had serious implications for the content, evolution and trajectory of economic-development strategies being pursued by developing countries, including South Africa.

It is imperative for South Africa to influence and shape the configurations of the emerging system of global governance to address the needs and concerns of the developing world.

This is best done by participating actively and effectively in all multilateral forums to ensure that South Africa's particular economic interests and developmental goals and objectives, as well as those of the African continent, are taken into account.

United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (Unctad)

Unctad promotes the development-friendly integration of developing countries into the world economy. Unctad has progressively evolved into

an authoritative knowledge-based institution whose work aims to help shape policy debates and thinking on development, with a particular focus on ensuring that domestic policies and international action are mutually supportive in bringing about sustainable development. The main goals of the organisation are to:

- Maximise the trade, investment and development opportunities of developing countries.
- Help developing countries face challenges arising from globalisation and integration into the world economy equitably. Such assistance is pursued through research and policy analyses, intergovernmental deliberations, technical cooperation and interaction with civil society and the business sector.

Unctad focuses on assisting developing countries to prepare for mandated and possible future negotiations in the WTO.

Unctad holds a conference every four years to set its priorities and guidelines, and to provide an opportunity to debate key economic and development issues.

Member states gathered in São Paulo, Brazil, in June 2004 for Unctad's 11th Ministerial Conference, which closed with the adoption of the Spirit of São Paulo Declaration and the São Paulo Consensus. These provide more detail on the role of Unctad in a globalising world.

The Spirit of São Paulo Declaration recognises that most developing countries, especially African and other least-developed countries, have remained on the margins of the globalisation process, and that there is a need to focus on the ability of international trade to contribute to poverty alleviation.

The São Paulo Consensus focuses on:

- development strategies in a globalising world
- building productive capacities and international competitiveness
- assuring development gains from the international trading system and trade negotiations
- fostering partnerships for development.

World Trade Organisation

South Africa regards its membership of the WTO as important because of the enhanced security and certainty in the multilateral trading system that WTO rules provide.

The country is an active participant and contributor towards a strengthened multilateral trading system, whose benefits are equitably distributed across the world community. South Africa wants to participate in shaping global governance to ensure beneficial and full integration of its economy, as well as those of other developing nations, into the global trading system.

South Africa's efforts to build an alliance of developing countries within the WTO, based on a common approach and consensus on key issues, bore fruit in 2001, when an agreement was reached to launch a new round of trade negotiations, this time with a developmental agenda.

South Africa is to participate in the next Doha Round of WTO negotiations, set to take place in July 2010 on the sidelines of the G8 Summit in Italy, to ensure developing nations have a voice.

The Department of Trade and Industry is expected to coordinate all departments' input to ensure a common South African position during these talks. Leaders of the G8 industrialised countries and five major developing countries agreed to conclude the Doha Round trade talks in 2010.

The Doha Development Round talks were launched in 2001 with the aim of helping poor countries through trade. It should have been finalised years ago, but were delayed several times because of rifts between developed and developing countries, mainly India and the USA over tariffs and agriculture subsidies. In his State of the Nation Address, President Zuma made the conclusion of the WTO Doha Development Round of negotiations a priority for government.

World Economic Forum (WEF)

The WEF is a global investment forum and is held in different parts of the world. The WEF engages global leaders in business, and leaders of various countries in partnerships to shape global, regional and industry agendas.

The forum discusses pertinent international issues, which include promoting Africa's growth, the impact of China and India's growth on other emerging economies and climate change and its impact.

The 19th annual WEF on Africa was held in June 2009 in Cape Town. Participants discussed the development of a new strategy for Africa's prosperous future. The *Africa Competitiveness Report 2009* was released at the meeting. The report provided a platform for discussion around the impact of the financial crisis on Africa's traditional growth drivers, such as infrastructure development, demand for oil and other valuable commodities, and inbound foreign capital.

Africa's fast-growing mobile sector also came under the spotlight. Nigeria is the continent's biggest mobile market, followed by South Africa, Algeria, Egypt and Morocco. The continent as

a whole is the world's fastest-growing mobile market.

Participants took into consideration other important social and environmental issues that affect Africa, including healthcare, education, food security and climate change. They deliberated on the current investment climate, as well as practical ways to boost better governance and business practices, to expand trade and to increase domestic and foreign investment across the continent.

Trade and Investment South Africa (Tisa)

A central task of the Department of Trade and Industry is to promote value-added exports and attract investment. The vision is one of a restructured and adaptive South African economy, characterised by growth, employment and equity (regional, spatial, gender and racial).

Tisa is a division of the Department of Trade and Industry and has a national mandate to develop the South African economy, focusing on facilitating and promoting investment and exports.

In 2002/03, Tisa was assigned responsibility for priority-sector development, which is a crucial part of government's Micro-Economic Reform Strategy and the Integrated Manufacturing Strategy (IMS). Both strategies centre on the accelerated development of priority sectors selected by government for their potential contribution to South Africa's economy, in terms of growth, equity and employment creation.

Tisa's aim is to develop strategies for all priority sectors and to enhance their growth and competitiveness. The Customised Sector Programme (CSP) methodology provides a strong and intellectually vigorous platform for optimal sector development.

A key characteristic of the methodology is that it supports a high level of stakeholder interaction. It also includes interventions to promote and develop investment and exports, and to provide input related to policy development.

The Department of Trade and Industry has been working intensively with all stakeholders to give effect to the CSP process.

For companies in the clothing and textiles sectors to be in a position to compete with international competitors in the domestic and international markets, it is essential that they advance their operational competitiveness to world-class performance levels. The department has therefore developed the Clothing and Textiles Competitiveness Programme, which is being administered by the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) and consists of the following elements:

- a capital upgrading programme available to clothing, textiles and footwear manufacturers via the Enterprise Investment Programme administered by the department, together with preferential loans via the IDC at prime less 5%
- the Clothing Textiles Competitiveness Improvement Programme, which will be provided on an attractive cost-sharing basis.

One of the most critical challenges is the combating of pervasive illegal imports within the industry, including under-invoicing. In December 2008, the South African Revenue Service (Sars) dedicated specific capacity to deal with illegal activity in the clothing, textiles and footwear sectors. It undertook an ongoing series of enforcement campaigns.

Export development and promotion

Tisa is responsible for developing and promoting South African goods and services. It contributes directly towards the objectives of the Department of Trade and Industry by:

- identifying, researching and promoting market-access opportunities for South African exporters
- facilitating exports by matching potential exporters with foreign buyers
- developing and helping South African exporters to promote their products by providing non-financial support.

In the first half of 2009, China was South Africa's number one export destination, with annual growth of 53,9%, while the United States of America (USA) saw an annual decrease of 42,6% in exports. China took 11,9% of the total market, the USA 8,3% and Japan 7,5%.

In 2008, according to customs data, Japan, the USA and Germany were the country's top export markets, while Germany, China and the USA were the top import markets.

During the recession, exports decreased by 19,2%. However, data in 2009 showed that South Africa recorded a surplus of R446,758 million for its trade with non-Southern African Customs Union trading partners following a R3,221-billion surplus for June.

In the first half of 2009, the largest growth (relative to 2008) for significant export sectors, apart from unclassified goods, was for fruit and nuts (11%), but the number one sector was precious or semi-precious stones at 24% of the cumulative total.

The largest import growth among major goods took place for pharmaceutical products (6,3%), with the biggest sector being mineral fuels and oil at 20,3% of the total.

Promoting and facilitating investment

Tisa is responsible for attracting FDI and developing and promoting investment by domestic and foreign investors. It offers:

- information on investing and the business environment in South Africa
- detailed sector information
- direct government support in the form of investment incentives
- investment facilitation and aftercare.

Export promotion

This area of the economy remains a challenge that is being addressed by the implementation of the Export Strategy that was approved in 2006.

The aim of the strategy is to ensure that South African exports maintain their market share in traditional markets, and substantially increase their market share in prioritised, new high-growth markets through aggressive marketing and a larger exporter community.

To accomplish this, the focus has been on developing and expanding the local export community and culture, while also promoting South African products abroad through missions, pavilions and the use of the network of foreign offices.

Tisa's purpose is to increase South Africa's capacity to export by developing and implementing strategies for targeted markets, increase the level of direct investment flow and manage the department's network of foreign offices.

Objectives and measures are to:

- promote awareness of investment opportunities in South Africa by conducting three international investment conferences, 95 investment presentations, six South African exhibitions (pavilions) and five ministerial or presidential missions by March 2010
- improve the capacity of new exporters by training 200 new small exporters, reaching 2 000 customers and distributing 3 000 publications by March 2010
- promote South African products in targeted high-growth markets by conducting six international trade initiatives and 25 pavilions, and fund 50 trade missions through export councils and provincial investment-promotion agencies by March 2010
- facilitate markets for southern African products and services by promoting and implementing eight export projects in targeted countries by March 2010.

Enterprise and industry development

The Department of Trade and Industry's Enterprise and Industry Development Division's (EIDD) purpose is to provide leadership in the development of policies and strategies that create an enabling environment for competitiveness, equity and enterprise development.

The EIDD contributes to realising the department's strategic objectives by:

- creating an enabling environment for all enterprise forms, including cooperatives, to prosper
- providing a framework to enable participation of women and black people in the economic mainstream
- identifying new geographic areas for greater economic stimulation
- providing a framework for industry norms and standards, including sustainable production methods
- influencing policy developments in skills-building, technology and infrastructure
- providing policy direction in emerging sectors and also the repositioning of the economy in higher-value segments to achieve competitiveness.

Incentives include the:

- Small Medium Enterprise Development Programme (SMEDP)
- Skills Support Programme
- Critical Infrastructure Programme (CIP)
- industrial development zones
- Foreign Investment Grant
- Strategic Investment Programme.

The Enterprise Organisation (TEO)

The Department of Trade and Industry's TEO provides incentives to stimulate or catalyse investment in infrastructure, human-resource development (HRD), integrated manufacturing and related activities, small-business development, specific regions and technology and innovation.

A number of incentives are provided to both large and small businesses to improve their competitiveness. These include incentives under the SMEDP, the Competitiveness Fund, the Sector Partnership Fund and the Black Business Supplier Development Programme (BBSDP).

The CIP comprises two distinct subprogrammes: the Tourism Support Programme and the Manufacturing Investment Programme. It will replace the SMEDP.

In August 2009, Cape Town Film Studios received R16 million from the Department of Trade and Industry through the CIP. The company will offer locations for local and foreign filmmakers and use local talent and equipment. It will

be a one-stop media-production facility, providing the local and international film industry with comprehensive and competitively priced service offerings.

Workplace Challenge Programme

This supply-side programme of the Department of Trade and Industry (administered by the National Productivity Institute) assists enterprises and industries to improve their productivity and competitiveness.

The programme focuses on improving workplace collaboration, adopting world-class manufacturing practices and disseminating best practices.

Industrial development

To improve the performance of the real economy's investment and employment, the department is committed to implementing policy initiatives and strategies that will enable the economy to adapt and adjust to emerging challenges.

The National Industrial Policy Framework (NIPF) and the 2007/08 Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP) have resulted in a more rigorous and comprehensive industrial policy.

National Industrial Participation Programme (NIPP)

There are two elements to the NIPP in South Africa, namely a national non-defence and a defence element. The Department of Trade and Industry manages the NIPP, which becomes effective once the foreign content of a procurement, purchase or lease contract of government departments and parastatals exceeds US$10 million, in which case an NIPP obligation of 30% on the foreign content will be attracted.

The NIPP focuses on national objectives, mainly in the commercial environment. The objectives of the NIPP include fast-tracking investment, fostering partnerships in research and development and creating market opportunities for locally manufactured goods abroad.

NIPP investments have allowed major new injections of technology and skills transfer into South Africa. The vision of the department regarding stimulating innovation and high-growth sectors and integrating South Africa as a vital part of high-value global supply chains is being realised.

The NIPP has opened entirely new markets, sometimes with unique new products, such as turning leather into car seats and using platinum to produce catalytic converters. South Africans have taken raw material and moved it up the value chain. At the same time, the NIPP has become a major point of leverage for government's wider vision of growth with equity, as expressed in AsgiSA.

Concerted efforts have been made to maximise job creation; involve small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs); build Black Economic Empowerment (BEE)-owned enterprises and spread the benefits wherever possible to neglected regions and towns. Partnership projects arising out of the NIPP range from the local manufacture of galleys for the Airbus A319 and A320 to the production of cockpit modules for the BMW 3 Series for export purposes.

In 2009, the BEE component saw a South African company being awarded the contract to print the owner-manuals for the Mercedes Benz C-Class right-hand drive models assembled in South Africa.

Industrial Policy Action Plan

The completion and publication of a comprehensive NIPF and the first IPAP in 2007/08 marked a significant achievement in the department's evolving efforts to advance industrial development in South Africa.

The IPAP identifies four key priority lead sectors where interventions will be prioritised to unlock growth and realise employment potential. These are: capital/transport equipment and metals;

In October 2009, the *MSC Catania* made history when it became the first commercial vessel to discharge its cargo at South Africa's new deep-water port of Ngqura, which forms part of the Coega Industrial Development Zone outside Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape. The *MSC Catania* loaded and off-loaded a total of 275 containers, at an average of 19 containers per hour.

The second commercial vessel to call at Ngqura – the 275-m long *MSC Shanghai* with a draught of 14,5 m – entered the port in the same month to discharge cargo at Ngqura's container terminal. The *MSC Shanghai* off-loaded 50 containers and loaded 101 containers, with an average of 17 containers being handled per hour.

The port of Ngqura and its 60-hectare container terminal represents Transnet's solution to South Africa's long-time shortage of container capacity, resulting from the growth in container traffic worldwide.

Transnet has invested in excess of R10 billion to develop the state-of-the-art port and associated infrastructure. This includes a world-class two-berth container terminal – with a further two berths under construction – a two-berth multipurpose terminal and a one-berth liquid bulk terminal.

automotive assembly and components; chemicals, plastic fabrication and pharmaceuticals; and forestry, pulp, paper and furniture. These sectors and others to be identified in the future have been targeted on the basis of the following criteria: employment and growth potential, investments, exports and government's ability to intervene.

The NIPF emphasises the strategic objective of altering the trajectory of industrialisation and economic growth to ensure more sustained employment creation; to defend, diversify and upgrade the industrial base; and, among other things, to shift to high value-added and knowledge-based activities.

The NIPF also calls attention to the need for synergies and linkages between the various policies and programmes of government's different arms and agencies.

In September 2008, key achievements of the first IPAP included the completion of work on a new programme for the automotive sector – the leading manufacturing sector with critical supply linkages to about a dozen other subsectors.

The Automotive Production and Development Programme, which seeks to promote domestic manufacturing and the development of a competitive components sector, will replace the previous Motor Industry Development Programme.

The department has also developed a new programme for the leading labour-intensive sector in the form of the Clothing and Textile Competitiveness Programme.

Although the new programme will be fully rolled out in 2012, some elements were expected to be introduced in the 2009/10 financial year, including investment allowance.

Preparing for the next IPAP has required that a number of critical capacity issues are addressed, such as cadre development, coordination, consultation and appropriate resourcing. In 2009, the department initiated a new model for industrial finance and continued to work on all identified lead sectors as well as developed, in conjunction with the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, a comprehensive strategy for agro-industries.

The two-year tender for the supply of anti-retrovirals (ARVs) was awarded in mid-2008, with 84% of the R3,6-billion contract allocated to domestic ARV-manufacturers. In 2009, feasibility studies on the domestic manufacture of active ingredients and anti-tuberculosis medicine were underway.

Initiatives in the pharmaceutical sector are crucial to ensure that government procurement is leveraged to develop certain industrial capabilities and facilitate industrial development.

The jewellery incubator has been established at the Gold-Zone in Germiston, Gauteng, to cover training and SMME-development. A preliminary report on the study of the limitation and rationale for the exportation of scrap metal was completed in December 2008.

By March 2009, the forestry sector skills plan had been submitted to the Department of Labour, a task team had been established to work on the skills development strategy for the sector, a draft funding policy for small growers had been completed and a call for proposals for the development of a saw timber strategy had been issued.

With regard to the metals sector, the National Foundry Technology Network is fully operational, 17 companies have been benchmarked and technology upgrading has commenced.

In tourism, key initiatives underway include the Tourism Enterprise Development Strategy, Airlift Strategy, Framework for Integrated Service Excellence, a review of the current grading system, the Tourism HRD Strategy, and 2010 plan.

Government investment in infrastructure development in the industrial development zones (IDZs) has captured the interest of major investors, especially in the Eastern Cape, where the Coega and East London zones are located. These two zones are expected to raise over R22 billion in investments over the medium term, in line with the objectives of the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa.

The Coega IDZ covers 11 500 hectares of industrial land located adjacent to the new deep-water port of Ngqura. By September 2009, more than 50 infrastructure projects had been completed, and over R2,7 billion had been invested by both the Eastern Cape Provincial Government (R1,3 billion) and the Department of Trade and Industry (R1,4 billion). These investments are for facilities and infrastructure development such as roads, bulk electricity power lines, water and sewers, new factory buildings, a residential village, a multitenant office building and bulk earthworks.

Since its inception, the East London IDZ has managed to facilitate investment commitments from 17 manufacturers. By September 2009, the total infrastructure investment value was R920 million and 1 313 direct manufacturing jobs had been created.

The Richards Bay IDZ was designated in 2002, and operates on a provisional operator permit. Compared with the other IDZs, the Richards Bay zone requires minimal infrastructure as bulk infrastructure already exists. Two key investors have been secured. The estimated combined investment value was R2,3 billion in September 2009.

On biofuels, licensing criteria were finalised in May 2008 and approved for publication. These criteria are available on the Department of Energy's website (under petroleum licensing documents).

The Department of Trade and Industry, together with other government departments, will be exploring how stronger mechanisms to support local industrial development could be built in, while also promoting BBBEE. The department will also seek to strengthen domestic procurement by state-owned enterprises (SOEs). The Government wants to maximise the massive opportunities presented by procurement arising from the R787-billion infrastructure programme, and ensure that the target of reducing the imported content of the programme from 40% to 30% is met. This will also help to reduce the high current account deficit and ensure the sustainability of the infrastructure-build programme.

Manufacturing

South Africa has developed an established and diversified manufacturing base that has demonstrated resilience and the potential to compete in a global economy. The manufacturing sector provides a locus for stimulating the growth of other activities, such as services, and achieving specific outcomes, such as value addition, employment creation and economic empowerment. This platform of manufacturing presents an opportunity to significantly accelerate growth and development.

The Department of Trade and Industry's main functions regarding the manufacturing sector include:

- supporting increased investment in the sector
- enhancing the establishment of new manufacturing entities
- supporting new sustainable and profitable manufacturing entities.

Primary aspects of the IMS involve:

- improving market access for South African products in key markets
- promoting beneficiation and value addition
- finding ways to harness skills and expertise in South Africa so that they can be sold to other countries.

The IMS identifies the need to capture local knowledge, encourages large corporations and companies to make greater use of small businesses and promotes greater integration between the different sectors of the economy so that they add value to each other.

The IMS also promotes BEE, small-business development, increased use of ICT, job creation and a more equitable geographic spread of investment and economic activities.

The Department of Trade and Industry's Small and Medium Manufacturing Development Programme provides incentives to qualifying companies.

Competition policy

The Competition Act, 1998 (Act 89 of 1998), promotes competition in South Africa to:

- enhance the efficiency, adaptability and development of the economy
- provide consumers with competitive prices and product choices
- promote employment and advance the social and economic welfare of South Africans
- expand opportunities for South African participation in world markets and recognise the role of foreign competition in the country
- ensure that small and medium enterprises (SMEs) have an equitable opportunity to participate in the economy
- promote a greater spread of ownership, in particular by increasing the ownership stakes of historically disadvantaged individuals.

The Competition Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 1 of 2009), gives competition authorities additional tools to deal with uncompetitive behaviour and complex monopolies in the economy, which hamper the development of more labour-intensive downstream industries. The Act seeks to address structural constraints in highly concentrated markets characterised by complex monopolies that inhibit the growth and competitiveness of industries. This will facilitate market entry by SMMEs while promoting competitive, fair and efficient markets.

The functions of the Competition Commission include investigating anti-competitive conduct in contravention of the Competition Act, 1998, assessing the impact of mergers and acquisitions on competition and taking appropriate action, monitoring competition levels and market transparency in the economy, identifying impediments to competition and playing an advocacy role in addressing them.

The Competition Commission is independent but its decisions may be appealed to the Competition Tribunal and the Competition Appeal Court.

The Competition Tribunal adjudicates competition matters in accordance with the Competition Act, 1998. The tribunal is subject to the Constitution and the law, and acts independently. The tribunal may hear matters relating to mergers and

acquisitions, complaints regarding cartels and other anti-competitive business practices and may impose remedies, including the ordering of fines to be paid by transgressors.

Small, medium and micro-enterprises

There are an estimated two million SMMEs and 17 000 registered cooperatives in South Africa. As part of the strategy to improve access to finance for SMMEs, the Khula direct lending business case has been completed and was presented to Cabinet in November 2008. The Direct Lending Strategy is focused on providing finance to the lower end of the market, which is not serviced by mainstream financial institutions.

The process of aligning the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act 5 of 2000), regulations with the BBBEE Codes of Good Practice, has taken longer than expected but in 2008, the task team was working towards finalising the proposals for aligning the two pieces of legislation. The framework that integrated support for small enterprises across the three spheres of government was finalised in March 2009. This framework focuses on the following elements:

- coordination of SMME programmes, including provincial networks
- SMME support infrastructure
- annual joint reporting by all spheres of government.

The Government's key focus has been on enhancing integrated state financial and business development support for small enterprises through strengthened institutional mechanisms and more effective coordination. The work on establishing an implementation and measurement framework for policy and legislation was completed by June 2009.

In 2008/09, the department continued to roll out this support network for small enterprises with a focus on improving synergies between various departmental and intergovernmental programmes that exist to support SMEs. In terms of strengthening linkages between small enterprises and the rest of the economy, the 10 products for government procurement from small enterprises were approved by Cabinet. The department also finalised the mechanism to monitor the payment of small enterprises within 30 days. On ensuring the timeous payment of SMMEs by government, a call centre targeted at assisting SMMEs in this regard was operational by April 2009.

The constraint of lack of access to finance remains a key impediment to the growth and development of SMMEs and the Department of Trade and Industry has made it one of its leading priorities.

The department established the necessary institutional framework for the promotion of a more inclusive economy, in the form of the Integrated Small Business Strategy and the agencies designed to deliver support and services to SMMEs, namely:

- Khula Enterprise Finance Limited (Ltd) to provide financial support to the underserviced market of between R10 000 and R250 000
- the Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda) for non-financial support
- the South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund (Samaf) for micro-finance of R10 000
- the National Empowerment Fund for financing BBBEE transactions.

Institutional support framework

National Small Business Advisory Council (NSBAC)

The NSBAC advises on issues affecting owner-managed businesses.

The 15-member council comprises business owners, academics and international entrepreneurial experts.

Small Enterprise Development Agency

Seda's mandate is to design and implement a standard national delivery network that must uniformly apply throughout the country. Its role includes the support and promotion of co-operative enterprises, particularly those located in rural areas.

The work of Seda is carried out in line with the Department of Trade and Industry's Integrated Small Enterprise Development Strategy, which aims to:

- strengthen support for SMMEs' access to finance
- create an enabling regulatory environment
- expand market opportunities for specific categories of small enterprises
- localise small business support through a grid of Seda-coordinated information and advice access points
- initiate a national entrepreneurship drive and expand education and training for small business
- co-fund minimum business infrastructure facilities in local authority areas across the country

Through Seda offices, entrepreneurs receive services such as the development of business plans,

technical advice and marketing, information on export support, tenders and incentives.

Seda offices are operational in all nine provinces.

South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund

Samaf is a wholesale funding institution formally established in April 2006. It is a trading entity and is governed by the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999). Samaf is tasked to facilitate the provision of affordable access to finance by micro, small and survivalist businesses for the purpose of growing their income and asset base. Samaf aims to reduce poverty and unemployment and extend financial services to reach deeper and broader into the rural and peri-urban areas. It also aims to build a network of self-sufficient and sustainable micro-finance institutions.

Khula Enterprise Finance Limited

Established in 1996, Khula Enterprise Finance Ltd is dedicated to the development and sustainability of small business enterprises in South Africa.

The company is a wholesale finance institution, which operates across the public and private sectors, through a network of channels, to supply much-needed funding to small business. Khula's channels include South Africa's leading commercial banks, retail financial institutions, specialist funds and joint ventures in which Khula itself is a participant. Its primary aim is to bridge the "funding gap" in the SME market not addressed by commercial financial institutions.

Business Partners Limited

Business Partners Ltd is a specialised risk financier that provides customised and integrated investment, technical assistance, mentorship and property services to SMEs in South Africa, Kenya and Madagascar.

South Africa hosted the 19th World Economic Forum on Africa in June 2009. The theme of the summit was *Implications of the Global Economic Crisis for Africa*. Over 700 prominent figures from Africa and the world gathered to discuss ways in which the continent could address the challenges posed by the financial meltdown. Analysts said that Africa was in a better position to weather the storm, as the continent had not integrated as deeply with the global economy as had other more developed regions. Wealthier African countries, which had greater exposure to world markets, felt the pinch more severely.

It is an unlisted public company whose major shareholders include Khula Enterprise Finance Ltd, Remgro Ltd, Sanlam Ltd, Billiton SA Ltd, Absa Group Ltd, Nedcor Ltd, FirstRand Ltd, Old Mutual Life Assurance Company of South Africa, Standard Bank Investment Corporation Ltd, Anglo Corporate Enterprises (Pty) Ltd and De Beers Holdings (Pty) Ltd.

In addition to its own investment funds, Business Partners Ltd also manages a joint venture fund, the Business Partners-Khula Start-Up Fund – a R150-million fund established together with Khula Enterprise Finance Ltd.

Business Partners Ltd is committed to investing capital, skills and knowledge into viable entrepreneurial enterprises.

South African Women Entrepreneurs Network (Sawen)

Sawen assists aspiring and existing business women with their business enterprises.

The network advocates policy changes, builds capacity and facilitates women's access to business resources and information.

Isivande Women's Fund (IWF)

The IWF aims to accelerate women's economic empowerment by providing affordable, usable and responsive finance.

It renders financial support for deals requiring start-up funding, involving business expansions, rehabilitations, turnaround and franchising. It provides loans that range from R30 000 to R2 million per business, with a maximum loan-repayment period of five years.

Industrial Development Corporation

The IDC is a self-financing South African state-owned development finance institution that provides funding to entrepreneurs engaged in competitive industries.

According to the IDC's annual results, announced in March 2009, the IDC had a 42% increase in profit to R5,6 billion and revenue more than doubled to R14,9 billion. During 2008/09, the IDC provided R500 million to 14 companies in distress. By July 2009, another five companies had benefitted by R300 million.

Some R6,1 billion had been set aside for more rescues over the next two years. The IDC's funding approvals rose by 27% and is expected to create 24 200 new direct jobs.

By July 2009, IDC funding included:

- R82 million to a 100% black-owned and operated diamond-cutting, polishing and jewellery design company

- R260 million for a project to mine manganese in Hotazel, Northern Cape
- R157 million for the construction of a black-owned five-star hotel in Port Elizabeth.

Technology support

To coordinate and streamline the Department of Trade and Industry's technology support to SMMEs, the following were achieved in 2008/09:

- The department successfully integrated the South African Quality Institute and the technology-transfer activities of the Technology of Women in Business Programme into the Seda Technology Programme (STP), thereby adding quality services to SMMEs and support for technology transfer to women-owned businesses.
- The department, through the STP, is supporting 26 incubators in different industrial sectors countrywide to support SMMEs. This has led to the creation of 154 SMMEs and support to 283 SMMEs since 2004.
- Through the Technology Transfer Programme of the STP, the department supported 56 technology-transfer interventions to the value of R29,8 million. All these transfers were to second-economy participants of which 39% were women.
- Through the Support Programme for Industrial Innovation, the department supported 74 projects at a grant value of R78,3 million and a total project value of R306 million. About 34% of these projects were with BEE enterprises.
- Through the South African Intellectual Property Fund, the Department of Trade and Industry supported five SMMEs by providing venture capital. The department also trained five fund managers as interns for the industry.
- The Department of Trade and Industry contributed to the establishment of the Sisal Resuscitation Project in Limpopo, creating industrial development opportunities for a cooperative in a rural area.
- The department introduced the Trade and Industry Technology Awards.

Consumer and corporate regulation

The Consumer and Corporate Regulation Division of the Department of Trade and Industry provides coherent, predictable and transparent regulatory solutions. This is achieved by developing and reviewing regulatory systems, including policies and legislation in the areas of competition; consumer, company and intellectual-property regulation; as well as public-interest regulation relating to the liquor, credit, national lottery and gambling sectors.

Corporate and consumer regulation has become a creative endeavour that seeks to serve the interests of both business and consumers, and to create a modern and globally competitive national economy.

The Companies Act, 2008 (Act 71 of 2008), aims to, among other things, promote the development of entrepreneurship and enterprise efficiency; create flexibility and simplicity in the formation and maintenance of companies; encourage transparency and high standards of corporate governance; and recognise the broader social role of enterprises.

The Act provides for the establishment of the Companies and Intellectual Property Commission to administer and enforce the legislation.

In April 2009, then President Kgalema Motlanthe signed into law the Consumer Protection Act, 2008 (Act 68 of 2008). The primary purpose of the Act is to prevent exploitation of consumers and to promote their social well-being. The Act seeks to create and promote an economic environment that supports and strengthens a culture of consumer rights and responsibilities. It seeks to promote a fair, efficient and transparent marketplace for consumers and business.

It achieves this by introducing, among other things, a system of product liability and improved redress.

The Act promotes consumer activism by providing for accreditation of consumer groups for lodging complaints on behalf of consumers.

It provides for possible financial support for activities such as consumer advice, education, publications, research and alternative dispute resolution through mediation or conciliation.

The Public-Sector Small, Medium and Micro-Enterprise (SMME) Payment Assistance Hotline provides a single point of contact between SMMEs and government. This is to facilitate the payment of services rendered by SMMEs by public-sector institutions within 30 days of delivery.

The Public-Sector SMME Payment Assistance Hotline can be reached via a dedicated share call number 0860 766 3729 (0860 SMME PAY). It operates from 06:00 to 18:00 on weekdays. After-hour enquiries may be submitted via e-mail or fax. The e-mail and fax templates can be downloaded via the Small Enterprise Development Agency website (*www.seda.org.za*), by following the Public-Sector SMME Payment Assistance Hotline link.

Black Economic Empowerment

Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Strategy

The Codes of Good Practice for BBBEE are the culmination of the development of the BBBEE Strategy that seeks to enhance the economic participation of black people by growing the economy and reducing income inequality.

The Codes of Good Practice for BBBEE were gazetted on 9 February 2007.

These assist and advise both public and private sectors on their implementation of the objectives of the BBBEE Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003).

The codes provide definitions, interpretation and principles of BBBEE; different categories of BEE entities; and qualification criteria for preferential procurement purposes and other economic activities.

The Codes of Good Practice also provide the weightings, indicators, targets and guidelines for stakeholders in the relevant sectors of the economy to draw up transformation charters for their sectors.

Black Business Supplier Development Programme

In August 2009, the Department of Trade and Industry effected revisions to the BBSDP. The department approved the revised guidelines in June 2009, prompting the need to step up measures to enhance the competitiveness of local, black-owned SMEs.

Accordingly, the department announced that applications under the previous programme were accepted until 31 August 2009, after which these would be replaced with the new guidelines and published on the department's website on 30 September 2009. The revised BBSDP was expected to come into effect on 1 April 2010.

From its inception in 2002 to the end of July 2009, the BBSDP showed an estimated growth of 800%. A total of 6 409 enterprises benefited from the programme and over R270 million was disbursed.

Amendments to the existing BBSDP were primarily aimed at assisting black-owned SMEs to acquire productivity-enhancing technology. The revised guidelines further sought to enhance assistance to targeted enterprises, to enable them to access opportunities created by government's BBBEE policies and supply goods and services to the corporate sector, parastatals and government.

To enable access to the revised programme, the department introduced a structured training programme for network facilitators, which would enable them to identify interventions that would contribute towards the competitiveness of local enterprises.

Network facilitators will be eligible to apply for training and subsequently be accredited after successful completion of the training programme. The selection criteria of applicants will take into account, among other factors, experience in the BBSDP. Training for network facilitators will cover the following modules:

- use of company assessment tools
- business-writing skills
- ethics in consulting
- basic understanding of company accounts
- client and assignment management
- training on the revised BBSDP guidelines.

Business process outsourcing and offshoring (BPO&O)

BPO&O is a major global trend, with a significant positive impact on developing countries possessing the required skills, cost advantage and infrastructure.

Over the next few years, the global BPO&O industry is forecast to grow at about 50% per year and, as a result, a window of opportunity exists for South Africa to realise significant value by developing this sector.

The roll-out of government's assistance and support programme for BPO is underway. Since its launch in 2007, 19 applications were received by March 2009 of which 17 were approved. The approved projects are expected to result in 15 000 jobs and R1,1 billion in investment.

Government has committed R439 million to be disbursed between 2009 and 2012.

This includes targeting designated areas in underdeveloped regions. Call centres were launched in Mangaung and Sisonke municipalities. By mid-2009, Phase One of the Monyetla Work Readiness Programme had been completed and over 1 000 previously unemployed youth had been trained.

State-owned enterprises

As the shareholder representative for government, the Department of Public Enterprises has the responsibility of overseeing nine SOEs, namely Alexkor, Broadband Infraco, Denel, Eskom, the Pebble-Bed Modular Reactor (PBMR), South African Airways (SAA), South African Express Airways (SAX), South African Forestry Company (Safcol) and Transnet.

The role of the department is to ensure that SOEs provide economic growth and give South Africa a cutting edge in the development of key infrastructure and manufacturing capacity.

Alexkor

The core business of Alexkor is the mining of diamonds across land, riverbeds and in the sea. The company is used by the State to increase diamond-mining capacity. Alexkor also plays a role in various community and investment projects, such as the Alexkor Development Foundation, which contributes to the socio-economic development of Namaqualand.

Alexkor experienced a number of business constraints, including a land claim instituted by the Richtersveld community. These constraints resulted in decreasing diamond recoveries and declining revenue and profitability over the years.

In April 2007, the Deed of Settlement of the Richtersveld community's land claim was signed. In terms of the Deed of Settlement, Alexkor's land-mining rights will be transferred to the community, while marine rights are retained by Alexkor.

The agreement provides for the formation of a pooling and sharing joint venture (PSJV) between Alexkor and the Richtersveld community, with 51% of shares in the PSJV vesting in Alexkor and the remainder with the Richtersveld community.

The PSJV will put in place a mine-development plan and programme to upgrade land- and sea-diamond resources and it will develop a business plan to constitute a viable mining venture.

The department has mandated Alexkor to explore options to reposition the company as a state-owned mining company that would intervene in the mining and minerals environment when opportunities of strategic, social, economic or developmental importance exist.

Broadband Infraco

In January 2008, Broadband Infraco became a stand-alone SOE. It has done well in operationalising and strengthening the national long-distance network, and has provided additional capacity.

The high cost of broadband in South Africa is directly attributable to the lack of investment in infrastructure and monopolistic control of certain key elements required to deliver broadband, namely:

- national long-distance fibre-optic infrastructure
- international marine-cable connectivity.

Infraco acquired 5 800 km of fibre-optic backbone infrastructure from Eskom and Transnet in 2005, and has since expanded the network to a carrier grade national coverage network extending over 11 500 km, increasing the available capacity six-fold to about 40 gigabit per second.

Infraco has also embarked on the West African Cable System (WACS) Project. Broadband Infraco and major private-sector telecommunications operators (Telkom SA, Neotel, MTN and Vodacom) signed a construction and maintenance agreement and the supply contract for the implementation of the WACS Project. The high-capacity 14 000-km cable, to be supplied by Alcatel-Lucent Submarine Networks, will link Africa to Europe. The cable is expected to be ready for service by early 2011.

Denel

Denel is the largest manufacturer of South African defence equipment and operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment. Due to a decrease in local defence spending, Denel has experienced suboptimal performance in recent years.

A turnaround strategy has been developed and implemented, which has resulted in a decline in losses. This is expected to continue in the near future.

In March 2009, Denel Aviation was accredited as the ninth Lockheed Martin Service Centre in the world for the maintenance, repair and overhaul of C-130 transport aircraft. This formal accreditation opens the way to a much bigger market, particu-

The Independent Development Trust's (IDT) primary task is to support and add value to the national development agenda by using its resources to deliver sustainable development programmes.

This translates into the IDT working with government in largely rural communities to build schools and clinics, upgrade infrastructure, create jobs and provide sustainable solutions to local projects. An assessment over the past financial year showed that 90% of the contractors used were Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) companies. About R500 million that was paid to contractors was committed to BEE companies. In addition, the organisation used over 55% of its programmatic budget for local economic development and job creation, benefiting the historically disadvantaged.

In 2008, the IDT built 731 classrooms and worked to improve 51 health facilities. Through such projects, the organisation created 19 705 jobs and provided over 15 000 training opportunities in governance, life and technical skills.

larly in Africa, where there is currently no other official Lockheed Martin C-130 accredited service centre.

Eskom and the Pebble-Bed Modular Reactor (PBMR)

The long-term key objective of government is to secure environmentally sustainable electricity for the country. Eskom has established an investment programme in excess of R300 billion, which will span over the next five years.

An important component of Eskom's capacity-generation programme is, among other things, the introduction of independent power producers, which will diversify the revenue sources for the Build Programme and help ensure security of supply.

Nuclear power, the most viable alternative to coal as a base-load source of electricity, is also expected to make a larger contribution to the energy mix. This will be done through conventional nuclear technology and the new fourth-generation high-temperature reactors offered by the PBMR.

The PBMR, a major development project, requires considerable initial investment by project partners as it is still in project-delivery stage. This project is important for the retention of skilled professionals within the South African industry. The success of the project will have a positive impact on the country's manufacturing sector and provide leading technology in the reduction of greenhouse-gas emissions.

South African Airways

SAA continues to play a strategic role in the local and regional economies. As a state-owned airline, it fulfils its mandate of being an African airline with a global reach through strategic links to key domestic, regional and international markets.

The airline has the most dominant frequent flier programme on the continent and as such is well positioned to expand its route network as the first African member of the largest alliance, Star Alliance.

The airline has offered access to a myriad of international destinations on partner airlines and continues to be awarded top trade awards for service- and aviation-related matters. SAA has a world-renowned aircraft maintenance division, namely SAA Technical, which has the potential to position South Africa as a key maintenance and overhaul destination for international and regional carriers.

South African Express

SAX is a domestic and regional passenger and cargo carrier established in April 1994. The airline's main objective was to provide a feeder network to the mainline carrier, SAA.

SAX has since become one of the fastest-growing regional airlines in Africa. It has managed to become a leading airline with a substantial market share due to the gauge and frequency of services rendered.

The airline's success is primarily hinged on the FAT principle – Frequency of flights, Availability of seats and Timing of flights. The strong link to SAA in terms of delivery, reservations and various support functions are competitive advantages. By adhering to the SAX Act, 2007 (Act 34 of 2007), which specifically states that SAX would enable the State to provide frequency of services on lower density routes and contribute to the expansion of regional air-services capability within South Africa and on the African continent, the airline has been able to continuously realise impressive financial growth.

South African Forestry Company

Safcol has been restructured to achieve privatisation objectives. The financial performance of Safcol has been good over the years due to a strong demand and an increased selling price in timber products. Due to land claim submissions on Komatiland Forests, the disposal process, which was expected to be concluded by the end of March 2009, has been delayed.

Transnet

In its drive to improve the efficiency and competitiveness of the South African economy, Transnet has to provide integrated, seamless transport solutions in the bulk and manufacturing sectors of its operations.

The rapid pace of globalisation and the high level of economic growth in South Africa have ensured a high demand for freight traffic, which has resulted in increasing pressure on an already strained and fragile freight network. Transnet has already made some progress towards addressing this challenge. It has achieved financial stability and has focused on the reorientation of the group around its core functions of freight transport in rail, ports and pipelines.

Transnet is implementing an investment programme that will revitalise and extend its infrastructure and address the maintenance backlog.

Public works programmes

The Department of Public Works provides and manages the accommodation, housing, land and infrastructure needs of national departments; coordinates the national Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP); and optimises growth, employment and transformation in the construction and property industries.

Expanded Public Works Programme

The EPWP aims to facilitate and create employment opportunities for the poor and vulnerable through integrated and coordinated labour-intensive approaches to government infrastructure delivery and service provision.

The EPWP is a government-wide intervention to create both short and ongoing work opportunities. The target for Phase One was to create one million work opportunities. A total of 1,4 million work opportunities were created by the end of the first five years.

The second phase of the programme was launched in April 2009 and its distinguishing feature was the introduction of a fiscal incentive to support infrastructure projects funded by provinces and municipalities to create additional work opportunities.

The EPWP Two is committed to increase its target to create four million work opportunities for the unemployed by 2014.

A monitoring and evaluation element was added to the system to ensure responsiveness of the Department of Public Works.

To facilitate implementation of the programme, protocol agreements with clear targets for each province and municipality, clarifying their contributions towards the creation of the four million work opportunities, were signed with all premiers and mayors.

In 2009, the EPWP incentive bonus scheme targeting the provinces, local government and the non-state sector totalled R465 million, and the figure is expected to increase exponentially every year until 2011/12 to cover the R4,1 billion allocated in the Medium Term Expenditure Framework.

Between 1 April and 31 August 2009, 223 568 job opportunities were created.

Construction and Property Industry Development Programme

Construction industry growth cannot be seen in isolation from the pressing need to transform the industry into one that performs better in terms of quality, employment, skills safety, health and the environment.

The Department of Public Works seeks to support and empower women-owned construction enterprises through its existing contractor-development programmes. Since the inception of the procurement reform process in 1995, the department has been actively involved in conceptualising and implementing programmes to promote emerging contractors in the built environment. These programmes included Targeted Procurement and the Emerging Contractor Development Programme (ECDP).

Since the mid-1990s, the Department of Public Works has been leading the campaign to regulate the built environment for growth, development and transformation. Most of the work in the industry over the last decade was based on the White Paper entitled *Creation of an Enabling Environment for the Reconstruction, Growth and Development in the Construction Industry.*

The department re-established partnerships with all its agencies in the built environment.

In May 2009, the Construction Charter was gazetted, which commits both the construction industry and government to fulfilling transformation targets.

The National Contractor Development Programme is jointly managed by the Department of Public Works and its entity, the Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB). It entails registering and empowering contractors through various developmental interventions. The programme has set a target of empowering 10 000 emerging contractors by 2010.

As part of the department's contribution towards the national skills development and national HRD strategies, an intensive capacity-building programme had been implemented throughout all departmental programmes. The programme focuses on leadership, internships and developing young professionals. A key objective of the programme was to address skills shortages within the built environment profession.

Construction Industry Development Board

The CIDB was established by the Construction Industry Development Act, 2000 (Act 38 of 2000), as a statutory body (Schedule 3A public entity) to provide leadership to stakeholders; stimulate sustainable growth, reform and improvements in the construction sector; and improve its role in the economy. The CIDB is responsible to the Minister of Public Works, and comprises individuals appointed from the private and public sector.

The CIDB and Standard Bank signed an MoU in June 2009. The MoU sets the stage for formal cooperation between the two parties on small-enterprise development support. In terms of the MoU, Standard Bank will bring financial assistance to emerging contractors through construction contact centres. Under the leadership of the CIDB, seven construction contact centres had been established by June 2009. Construction contact centres are central to building contractor-capacity for effective public infrastructure delivery and job creation.

The SME Business Conditions Survey was launched in March 2009. The survey will be published on a quarterly basis and measures contracting business conditions among CIDB-registered contractors. The survey also reports on business confidence, construction activity, tendering competition, employment and labour constraints among CIDB-registered contractors at provincial level.

The *SME Business Conditions Survey* is undertaken by the Bureau for Economic Research for the CIDB.

Council for the Built Environment (CBE)

The CBE is a statutory body established under the CBE Act, 2000 (Act 43 of 2000). It is an overarching body that coordinates the six built-environment professional councils (architecture, engineering, landscape architecture, project and construction management, property valuation and quantity surveying) for promoting good conduct within the professions, transforming professions and advising government on built environment-related issues. The council meets at least four times a year.

In October 2009, BMW South Africa announced a R2,2-billion investment plan for its plant in Rosslyn, Pretoria. The investment is expected to result in the plant capacity increasing from 60 000 to 87 000 units a year.

The Rosslyn plant, which is responsible for the production of about 25% of global BMW 3 series production, primarily exports to customers in the United States of America, Japan, Taiwan, New Zealand, sub-Saharan Africa and Australia.

BMW also announced a training programme for 1 100 associates at the Rosslyn plant. The training programme commenced in early September 2009 and would run for 18 months.

Labour programmes

The Department of Labour plays a significant role in reducing unemployment, poverty and inequality through policies and programmes, developed in consultation with social partners, which are aimed at:

- improved economic efficiency and productivity
- skills development and employment creation
- sound labour relations
- eliminating inequality and discrimination in the workplace
- alleviating poverty in employment
- enhancing occupational health and safety (OHS) awareness and compliance in the workplace
- nurturing the culture that worker rights are human rights.

The department has prioritised the following areas:

- The Decent Work Country Programme was developed and rolled out in April 2009 in collaboration with the International Labour Organisation (ILO) and in consultation with social partners. The programme focuses on strengthening support for existing skills development and employment services programmes in specific areas and on formulating new initiatives to deal with labour-market challenges, especially in relation to creating employment and alleviating poverty.
- The draft framework document, which gives effect to the integration of OHS and compensation competencies across government, was finalised in 2008. Both the draft National Occupational Health and Safety Bill and the policy were developed, and the Act is expected to be legislated and implemented by March 2011. The main objective of the policy is to reduce the number of work-related accidents and diseases by promoting a culture of prevention.
- The Employment Services System, developed in line with international best-practice standards and ILO conventions, includes an information technology system to assist the department to provide a public-employment service by registering work seekers and placement opportunities and providing job-matching services for potential employers and work seekers. The system will help government to deal with unemployment, generate useful statistics and support social-security functions by integrating social-insurance services.
- In 2008/09, career-guidance counsellors were appointed to provide counselling services to assist unemployed people to access sustainable livelihoods in the labour market

Employment and skills development

The Employment and Skills Development Services (ESDS) and HRD Branch of the Department of Labour contribute to employment creation and skills development by promoting and monitoring the achievements of the objectives of the National Skills Development Strategy (NSDS) and the National Human-Resource Development Strategy (NHRDS).

Legislation

The Department of Labour's Legislation Branch ensures the implementation of the following laws:

- Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998), as amended.
- Manpower Training Act, 1981 (Act 56 of 1981), of provisions that are still in force.
- Skills Development Levies Act, 1999 (Act 9 of 1999), as amended, and the Income Tax Act, 1994 (Act 21 of 1994). In some aspects, the ESDS works closely with National Treasury and Sars.
- South African Qualifications Authority Act, 1995 (Act 58 of 1995), working closely with the departments of basic education and of higher education and training.

The 2008 Skills Development Amendment Bill will bring about a number of developments, including:

- formally establishing the Quality Council for Trades and Occupations (which will have the same status as the Council for Higher Education and the Umalusi Council for General and Further Education) under the Ministry of Labour
- establishing Productivity SA
- listing the National Skills Fund (NSF) as a public entity
- introducing additional functions to the Institute for the National Development of Learnerships, Employment Skills and Labour Assessments to moderate artisan assessments
- expanding the provision of employment services to work seekers
- introducing a register of artisans.

National Human-Resource Development Strategy

One of the Government's priorities is skills development.

The HRD Strategic Framework: Vision 2015 was launched on 30 May 2008. The strategic framework is grounded and aligned to government priorities as encapsulated in Jipsa, AsgiSA, the NSDS II and the evolving NHRDS.

The strategic framework stands on four pillars of strategic intervention:

- capacity-development initiatives: developing human capital for high performance and enhanced service delivery
- organisational support initiatives: enhancing organisational capacity and support to maximise the productivity of human capital
- governance and institutional support initiatives: ensuring that HRD in the Public Service is effective
- economic growth and development initiatives: ensuring that HRD plans, strategies and activities seek to integrate, promote and respond to the economic growth and development initiatives of government.

The strategy puts the individual public servant at the centre of skills transfer through capacity-development initiatives in the workplace.

The revised NHRDS for the period 2009 to 2014 was approved in July 2008. One of the critical challenges that government has been addressing is to ensure that there is proper alignment between the skills that the education and training system produces and the needs of a developing society and economy.

The strategy includes the following commitments:

- accelerating training output in priority areas to achieve accelerated and shared economic growth
- ensuring universal access to high-quality and relevant education
- improving technological and innovation capability in the public and private sectors
- establishing efficient planning capabilities in the relevant departments and entities for the successful implementation of the NHRDS for South Africa.

A monitoring and evaluation system was put in place with clear indicators to monitor the implementation of the strategy. A major review based on systematic evaluation studies and impact assessments will be conducted every five years.

The NHRDS for South Africa 2010 – 2030 was discussed at a Cabinet meeting in August 2009. It was decided that further work needed to be done to achieve greater alignment between the strategy and the electoral mandate; to take the current economic conditions into account; to include a stronger vision for the sector education and training authorities (Setas) as well as the location of the further education and training colleges; and the need to reflect on the unintended consequences of the merger of some of the universities and other institutions of higher learning.

Sector education and training authorities

The Seta Coordination Programme aims to:

- implement sector skills plans to develop appropriate skills
- develop and register learning programmes
- provide quality assurance of qualifications and standards of programmes in sectors
- disburse skills-development levy funds.

The Seta sectors skills plans have been formed on the basis of the first-ever formally published occupationally based national scarce skills list that has been integrated into the Department of Home Affairs' processes for scarce skills immigration work permits.

Seta sector skills plans have been automatically uploaded through an integrated data-collection process into the employment-services system to allow for more efficient and accurate development of the annual national scarce skills list.

In 2008/09, Setas registered 17 228 artisans in training and 109 351 workers completed training in scarce and critical skills through learnerships, apprenticeships and other learning programmes.

National Skills Authority (NSA)

The NSA is an advisory body, established in terms of the Skills Development Act, 1998, to advise the Minister of Labour on the NSDS, its implementation and other relevant matters.

Its membership consists of organised business, labour and community organisations, government departments and representatives from the education- and training-provider community.

National Skills Fund

The NSF, a statutory advisory body to the Minister of Labour on the NSDS, was established in 1999 as legislated by the Skills Development Act, 1998. The Minister of Labour, on advice from the NSA, allocates subsidies from the NSF. The Director-General of Labour is the accounting officer of the fund.

The NSF is funded by 20% of the skills-development levies collected by Sars (of which 2% is paid to Sars as collection fees and 2% is allocated for administrative costs).

Key priorities for 2009/10 included addressing the governance and accountability framework of the fund; accelerating the delivery of critical skills in support of key growth strategies such as the AsgiSA, provincial growth and development strategies, and the Jipsa; and improving the rate of disbursement across funded projects.

With funding from the NSF, the department assisted 41 336 unemployed people to enter learning programmes. This was in excess of the set target of 16 000.

The NSF also makes funds available for undergraduate and postgraduate bursaries in critical skills shortage areas, administered by the National Student Financial Aid Scheme and the National Research Foundation.

Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)

The main tasks of the UIF are to:

- maintain an employer/employee database
- process claims and pay benefits
- invest excess funds
- reduce opportunities for fraud
- collect contributions.

The Unemployment Insurance Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 32 of 2003), deals with the administration of the fund and the payment of benefits. It also provides for the commissioner to maintain a database to pay benefits to beneficiaries. Sars continues to administer the Unemployment Insurance Contributions Act, 2002 (Act 4 of 2002).

Sars collects contributions from all employers whose workers pay employees' tax. The collection of contributions from all other employers is delegated to the Unemployment Insurance Commissioner.

For the year ending March 2009, there were 300 000 more contributors (7,6 million) on the database of the UIF compared to the end of March 2008 (7,3 million). The UIF paid benefits to 627 244 beneficiaries to a total amount of R3,8 billion – a 31,7% increase in unemployment-benefit payments compared to the previous year.

Occupational Health and Safety

The OHS legislative framework consists of the OHS Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), and 20 sets of regulations. Compliance is achieved by conducting inspections and investigations and providing advocacy and statutory services. Responsibility for OHS and workers' compensation in South Africa resides in three government departments.

The Department of Labour is responsible for workers' compensation in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993), and for OHS in terms of the OHS Act, 1993. The Department of Mineral Resources is responsible for OHS in mines and mining areas, in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996). The Department of Health is responsible for compensating mineworkers in terms of the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1993 (Act 208 of 1993).

Compensation Fund

The Compensation Fund administers the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 as amended. The main objective of the Act is to provide compensation for disablement, illness and death resulting from occupational injuries and diseases.

Upgrading of the Compensation Fund's financial system began in January 2008.

Directorate: Collective Bargaining

The Directorate: Collective Bargaining has to:

- extend the collective bargaining system to cover more vulnerable workers
- ensure that the implementation and impact of the Labour Relations Act (LRA), 1995 (Act 66 of 1995), are optimised
- effectively monitor dispute resolution.

The directorate:

- registers trade unions, employers' organisations and bargaining and statutory councils
- publishes bargaining council agreements for the extension thereof to non-parties
- promotes and monitors collective bargaining.

Dispute resolution

The Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration (CCMA) is an independent dispute-resolution body created in 1996 in terms of the LRA, 1995. It does not belong to, nor is it controlled by, any political party, trade union or business.

Between January and March 2009, CCMA commissioners were involved in 124 consultation processes that saved over 4 000 jobs because workers and employers were able to agree to alternatives to retrenchments.

Labour-market policy

The Labour-Market Policy Programme consists of three directorates, namely, Research Policy and Planning (RPP), Labour-Market Information and Statistics (LMIS) and International Relations (IR).

The Directorate: RPP is responsible for:

- analysing labour-market information and conditions
- identifying relevant labour-market interventions
- formulating labour-market policies
- researching, monitoring and evaluating policies affecting the labour market.

The Directorate: LMIS is responsible for:

- creating and maintaining capacity to monitor, analyse and disseminate labour-market information and statistics pertaining to trends in the labour market and the impact of labour-market policies
- creating and maintaining linkages with other producers and users of labour-market information and statistics, with the aim of avoiding duplication and promoting clear use of concepts
- developing the departmental library as an expanded resource centre on labour issues
- assisting other departmental directorates with statistical procedures to develop and monitor departmental activities.

The Directorate: IR is responsible for:

- developing strategies that will consolidate South Africa's presence in international forums
- monitoring developments in the African region and southern African subregion
- facilitating the department's participation in bilateral and multilateral organisations in the region
- discharging South Africa's obligations to international organisations of which the country is a member
- developing strategies to encourage conformity with international labour standards in the region.

Employment equity

To support and accelerate the implementation of the Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998), the Directorate: Employment Equity focused mainly on developing an employment-equity system aimed at strengthening the implementation and enforcement mechanisms of the Act. An online employment-equity reporting service was developed and implemented from 1 September 2005.

In addition, the Director-General Review System was developed to assess employers' substantive compliance with the Employment Equity Act, 1998. The programme continued to support capacity-building in trade-union organisations by means of the Strengthening of Civil Society Fund.

Acknowledgements

Business Day
Business Map
Business Partners Limited
Department of Trade and Industry
Development Indicators, 2009
Estimates of Public Expenditure, 2009 published by National Treasury
Fifteen-Year Review, published by The Presidency
Office for Public Enterprises
Quarterly Bulletin, September 2009, published by the South African Reserve Bank
South African Reserve Bank
Statistics South Africa
Sunday Times
Sowetan online
Towards a Ten-Year Review
www.dpe.gov.za
www.dti.gov.za
www.godisa.net
www.gov.za
www.idc.co.za
www.khula.org.za
www.polity.org.za
www.southafrica.info
www.sacu.int
www.twib.co.za
www.engineeringnews.co.za
http://allafrica.com

Suggested reading

Bhorat, H and Ravi K (eds). 2007. *Poverty and Policy in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Coetzee, C. 2007. *"Let There Be Light" on Wealth Creation.* Stellenbosch: Rapid Access Publishers.

Dyubhele, N. 2008. *Isigama Seqoqoqosho: Economic Terms and Concepts Made Simple*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Fox, L and Lieberthal, R (eds). 2007. *Attacking Africa's Poverty: Experience from the Ground*. Washington: World Bank.

Gordon-Davis, L. 2008. *Legal Requirements for Hospitality Business*. 2nd ed. Wetton, Cape Town: Juta.

Grobbelaar, N and Besada, H (eds). 2008. *Unlocking Africa's Potential: The Role of Corporate South Africa in Strengthening Africa's Private Sector.* Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs.

Graham, P (ed). 2007. *Inheriting Poverty? The Link Between Children's Well-Being and Unemployment in South Africa.* Cape Town: Institute for a Democratic South Africa (Idasa).

Hermann, D. 2007. *The Naked Emperor: Why Affirmative Action Failed.* Pretoria: Protea Book House.

Kraak, A (ed). 2009. *Sectors & Skills: The Need for Policy Alignment.* Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council.

Leon, J (comp ed). 2009. *Gaffney's Business Contacts in South Africa 2009: The Chambers of Commerce & Industries Yearbook & Buyer's Guide.* Johannesburg: Gaffney Group.

Linking Migration, HIV/AIDS and Urban Food Security in Southern and Eastern Africa. 2007. Cape Town: Idasa.

Mangcu, X, Marcus, G and Shubane, K (eds). 2007. *Visions of Black Economic Empowerment*. Johannesburg: Jacana.

Migration, Remittances and Development in Southern Africa. 2007. Cape Town: Idasa.

Nel, R. 2009. *Puppets or People: People and Organisational Development: An Integrated Approach.* Cape Town: Juta.

Parker, E and Illetschko, K. 2007. *Franchising in South Africa.* Johannesburg: Front Runner Publishing.

South African Banking Sector Analysis. 2008. Delhi: RNCOS.

Turok, B. 2008. *From the Freedom Charter to Polokwane: The Evolution of ANC Economic Policy.* Cape Town: New Agenda.

Turok, B (ed). 2008. *Wealth Doesn't Trickle Down: The Case for a Developmental State in South Africa*. Cape Town: New Agenda: *South African Journal of Social and Economic Policy*.

Von Holdt, K. 2007. *Transition From Below: Forging Trade Unionism and Workplace Change in South Africa.* Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

EDUCATION

The Bill of Rights, contained in the Constitution, 1996, stipulates that everyone has the right to a basic education, including adult basic education and further education, which the State, through reasonable measures, must progressively make available and accessible.

Education spending grew by 14% a year for the past three years and accounted for R140,4 million in 2008/09. It is expected to increase to R185 billion in 2012/13.

South Africa has one of the highest rates of government investment in education in the world.

In 2009, following the appointment of the new administration, the ministries of basic education and of higher education (HE) and training were established.

The National Education Policy Act, 1996 (Act 27 of 1996), empowers the ministers to determine national norms and standards for education planning, provision, governance, monitoring and evaluation.

The principle of democratic decision-making is exercised within the context of overall policy goals. In determining policy, the ministers take into account the competence of provincial legislatures and the relevant provisions of any provincial law relating to education.

The Department of Basic Education includes all schools from Grade R to Grade 12, as well as adult literacy programmes, while the Department of HE and Training deals with universities and the whole field of training, including post-school education and training, as well as coordination of the National Human Resource-Development Strategy (NHRDS).

Formal education in South Africa is categorised according to three levels – General Education and Training (GET), Further Education and Training (FET) and HE.

The GET band consists of the Reception Year (Grade R) and learners up to Grade 9, as well as an equivalent Adult Basic Education and Training (Abet) qualification. The FET band consists of grades 10 to 12 in schools and all education and training from the National Qualifications Framework (NQF) levels two to four (equivalent to grades 10 to 12 in schools), and the N1 to N6 in FET colleges. The HE band consists of a range of degrees, diplomas and certificates up to and including postdoctoral degrees. These levels are integrated within the NQF provided by the South African Qualifications Authority (Saqa) Act, 1995 (Act 58 of 1995).

Learners attend school for 13 years; the first year of education, Grade R, and the last three are not compulsory. Many primary schools offer Grade R, which can also be completed at an independent Grade R school.

In 2009, of South Africa's 24 974 schools, 14 485 were no-fee schools and about 1 500 were former Model C institutions.

In 2009, 68 129 candidates wrote the National Senior Certificate (NSC) examination, achieving a pass rate of 60,7%.

National and provincial departments of education

The national departments share a concurrent role with the provincial departments of education for school education, Abet, Early Childhood Development (ECD) and FET colleges. The South African Schools Act, 1996 (Act 84 of 1996), further devolves responsibility to school level by delegating the governance of public schools to democratically elected school-governing bodies (SGBs), consisting of parents, educators, non-educator staff and (secondary school) learners.

Relations with provincial departments of education are guided by national policy, within which the provincial departments have to set their own priorities and implementation programmes.

The National Education Policy Act, 1996 formalised relations between national and provincial authorities, and established the Council of Education Ministers (CEM) and the Heads of Education Departments Committee (Hedcom) as intergovernmental forums to collaborate in developing the education system.

The role of the national departments is to translate the education and training policies of government and the provisions of the Constitution into a national education policy and legislative framework.

Basic Education

Systems Planning and Monitoring

The Systems Planning and Monitoring Branch in the Department of Basic Education provides strategic direction in the development, implementation and monitoring of education policies, programmes and projects.

Key policy issues of the branch for the next five-year period include:

- finalising and implementing national norms and standards for providing school infrastructure and funding
- strengthening the national Education Information Management System to enhance planning through sample audits of provinces in data collection, development and implementation of the Learner Unit Record Tracking System, a school administration-management system and the Business Intelligence System
- analysing of and reporting on education expenditure and investment, as well as promoting optimal budgeting processes to ensure access, equity and redress
- ensuring effective and efficient labour relations and the development of education staff to improve the quality of learning, teaching, developing and monitoring
- providing legal and legislative services.

Social and School Enrichment

The branch provides strategic direction for the development of policies and education programmes that aim to ensure continuous improvement in the quality of learning. It ensures the provision of quality education by promoting social transformation, justice and cohesion, and a South African identity in the education system.

The key priorities of the branch are:

- improving safety in schools that experience high levels of crime and violence
- increasing the participation and success rates of girls in gateway subjects in higher grade and preventing barriers to equity for girls in the education system
- ensuring access and retention of learners in rural and farm schools
- implementing special social cohesion plans

In April 2009, the University of Pretoria's Department of Library Services joined the ranks of other world-renowned libraries, becoming one of only 27 institutions – and the only one in sub-Saharan Africa – to belong to the World Digital Library Project. The project is a joint initiative of the United States of America's Library of Congress and the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation. Only one other library in Africa – the *Bibliotheca Alexandrina* in Egypt – is part of the World Digital Library Project. The World Digital Library will be available on the Internet, free of charge. It will be in a multilingual format and will include material from cultures around the world: manuscripts, maps, rare books, musical scores, recordings, films, prints, photographs, architectural drawings and other cultural material.

- reviewing Abet and implementing the mass literacy campaign
- facilitating the implementation of school sports and enrichment programmes
- supporting and strengthening curriculum-driven HIV and AIDS activities through peer education and ensuring care and support
- ensuring the successful and increased implementation of the National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP).

The Department of Basic Education has initiated several interventions, ranging from the provision of infrastructure, to youth camps and learner and teacher programmes to facilitate the creation of safe and caring child-friendly schools across the country.

Furthermore, Section 8 of the South African Schools Act, 1996 compels the governing body of a school to adopt a code of conduct for learners.

In support of teachers, the department released examples of codes of conduct to schools and provided training and further guidance on alternative forms of discipline to corporal punishment.

The department is committed to ensuring learner participation in sport, arts, culture and music activities. The department is collaborating with Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA) in the coordination and management of national programmes that promote mass participation and competitive school sport.

The department's School-Enrichment Unit coordinates and strengthens the delivery of national extramural/extracurricular school-enrichment programmes, not only to promote mass participation in sport by young people, but also to enhance social transformation and cohesion.

Some of the arts, culture and music flagship programmes the department coordinates in collaboration with the Department of Arts and Culture include the South African Schools Choral Eisteddfod, the National Indigenous Games, the Music and Movement Festival and the National Language Festival and Concert.

General Education and Training

The GET Branch provides leadership by managing and evaluating programmes for ECD, school education, learners with special needs, school management and governance programmes; and enhancing the efficiency and effectiveness of districts through development and support and human resources in education.

Key priorities of the branch include:

- expanding access to ECD, particularly for children in rural, farming and other marginalised communities

- providing Grade R to all children
- working towards ensuring a reception year in all schools with a foundation year
- further developing a truly inclusive system of education, including the consolidation of special schools
- ensuring that there are no underqualified educators
- coordinating the implementation and provision of education to children up to the age of four years
- successfully implementing the National Curriculum Statement (NCS).

Adult Basic Education and Training

According to the *Development Indicators, 2009,* there has been a steady annual increase in the literacy rate from 2002. By 2007, 74% of adults were literate.

Provinces with the largest number of illiterate people are KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo and the Eastern Cape, followed by Gauteng, Mpumalanga and North West. The lowest numbers occur in the Free State, Northern Cape and Western Cape.

While KwaZulu-Natal has the largest number of illiterate people with no education and Limpopo has the highest proportion, the highest concentration is in the Eastern Cape. The language groups most affected are isiZulu, isiXhosa and Sesotho sa Leboa.

The Department of Basic Education is reviewing its Abet programmes to expand provision and ensure the responsiveness of the programme for the diverse needs of adult learners.

The Kha Ri Gude ("let us learn") mass literacy campaign was officially launched in February 2008. Government will spend R6,1 billion over five years to enable 4,7 million South Africans to achieve literacy by 2010. The campaign is aimed at reducing adult illiteracy by:

- mobilising potential learners, educators and other support personnel to participate in the mass literacy campaign
- developing learner and educator-support material
- setting up relevant systems at national, provincial and district level to facilitate national implementation of the campaign
- establishing and maintaining a database of 4,7 million learners and 40 000 educators over the campaign period.

By June 2009, progress included offering classes to 620 000 learners in 11 languages, at 35 000 venues across South Africa.

The campaign also created about 75 000 short-term teaching jobs.

Advocacy initiatives such as National Adult Learners' Week and International Literacy Day, in September, continue to be celebrated, recognising and honouring the achievements of learners and their educators.

The Bridges to the Future Initiative (an information and communications technology [ICT]-based literacy programme) is being developed as a pilot programme in Limpopo. Partners include the Department of Basic Education, Limpopo Department of Education, the International Literacy Institute, Nedbank, Kellogg Foundation (United States of America) and the Molteno Project.

The number of Abet and literacy service-providers and non-governmental organisations (NGOs) has grown steadily, with an increasing number of emerging organisations being accredited by both Umalusi and the Education, Training and Development Practices (ETDP) Sector Education and Training Authority (Seta).

Early Childhood Development

ECD is an "umbrella term" or a general classification that refers to the process by which children from ages birth to nine grow and flourish socially, physically, mentally, emotionally, spiritually and morally.

One of the priorities of the department is to increase access to ECD provisioning through an accredited reception-year programme as proposed in *Education White Paper 5 (2001)*.

The non-profit sector plays a major role in ECD. Most of the early learning sites across South Africa have been initiated by the non-profit sector in partnership with communities.

The Department of Basic Education is already responsible for children in grades one to three as part of compulsory schooling. The department intends to ensure that all children have access to Grade R by 2010.

The ECD policy also focuses on expanding ECD provision, correcting the imbalances of the past, ensuring equitable access to, and improving the quality and delivery of ECD programmes, including the provision of educational programmes to children from birth to four years.

Regarding the birth-to-four-years age group, the Department of Basic Education is a member of the ECD Interdepartmental Committee (including the departments of health and of social development), which has developed the Birth-to-Four National Integrated Plan. The plan is linked to government's Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP). The EPWP creates employment and training opportunities for, among others, ECD practitioners. By July 2009, the Department

of Social Development provided training to more than 25 000 ECD practitioners.

The registration of ECD sites is the responsibility of the Department of Social Development in terms of the Child Care Act, 1983 (Act 74 of 1983). Municipalities/local governments also have constitutional power to provide child-care facilities and grants to associations. These regulations are applicable to both public and independent ECD sites. The Department of Social Development increased the registration of ECD sites from 13 743 to 14 401 in 2009/10 and increased the number of children in registered ECD centres to 758 000.

Education of learners with special needs

The national and provincial departments of education provide a wide range of education services to learners who, owing to a range of factors, experience barriers to learning and participation.

These factors include:

- autism
- behavioural problems
- visual impairment
- tuberculosis
- children in conflict with the law
- physical disability
- neurological and specific learning disabilities
- multidisability
- intellectual disability
- hearing impairment
- communication disorders
- epilepsy
- over-aged learners.

These services are provided in ordinary and special schools through a range of service-providers such as district curriculum, institutional and special-needs specialists, as well as specially trained educators.

The *Education White Paper 6 (2001)* acknowledges that many children experience barriers to learning. Some of these barriers lie within the learners themselves (intrinsic), while some barriers are systemic, socio-economic and cultural.

In its quest to accommodate these learners, the Department of Basic Education is field-testing full-service schools in 30 districts. Between 2005 and 2009, some 30 selected ordinary primary schools were made fully accessible to learners who experience barriers to learning. They were supplied with specialised equipment and training to cater for learners in the area who have additional support needs.

These full-service schools are seen as models of inclusive education to be replicated in all districts of the country. Infrastructure and learning conditions in special schools are being improved to ensure that all learners receive quality education.

District-based support teams are being developed to provide support to educators whose learners have been identified as needing additional support. This will enable children, the majority of whom could not access education in the past because of the unavailability of specialised services and support in rural and previously disadvantaged areas, to gain access to education.

The lessons learnt are being applied to the wider education sector incrementally.

Existing special schools are being strengthened so that some of them can serve as resource centres for full-service schools and ordinary schools in their areas.

Higher Education and Training

The scope of the Department of HE and Training covers all public and private HE institutions, colleges and the skills-development sectors, which include Setas, the National Skills Authority (NSA) and the National Skills Fund (NSF).

HE is central to the social, cultural and economic development of modern societies.

The Department of HE and Training is responsible for allocations to HE institutions (estimated at R19,9 billion in 2010), skills development through the Setas and the NSF (estimated at R21,9 billion in 2010) and FET colleges (estimated at R3,37 billion in 2010).

The HE landscape consists of the following institutions:

- University of the Witwatersrand
- University of Cape Town
- Rhodes University
- Stellenbosch University
- University of the Western Cape (incorporating the Dental Faculty of Stellenbosch University)
- University of Zululand
- University of Venda
- University of the Free State (incorporating the QwaQwa Campus of the University of the North and the Bloemfontein Campus of Vista University)
- North West University (from the merger of the universities of Potchefstroom, and Vista Sebokeng Campus with North West)
- University of Pretoria (incorporating the Mamelodi Campus of Vista University)

- University of KwaZulu-Natal (from the merger of the University of Natal and the University of Durban-Westville)
- University of South Africa (Unisa) (after the merger of Unisa, which incorporated the Vista University Distance Education Campus with Technikon SA)
- Tshwane University of Technology (from the merger of Pretoria, North West and Northern Gauteng technikons)
- Durban Institute of Technology (from the merger of Natal Technikon and Technikon ML Sultan)
- Central University of Technology, Free State (formerly Technikon Free State)
- Mangosuthu Technikon
- University of Johannesburg (from the merger of Rand Afrikaans University, which incorporated the Soweto and East Rand campuses of Vista University with Technikon Witwatersrand)
- University of Limpopo (from the merger of the Medical University of South Africa and the University of the North)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (from the merger of the University of Port Elizabeth, which incorporated the Port Elizabeth Campus of Vista University with Port Elizabeth Technikon)
- Walter Sisulu University in the Eastern Cape (from the merger of the University of Transkei, Border Technikon and Eastern Cape Technikon)
- University of Fort Hare (which incorporated the East London Campus of Rhodes University)
- Cape Peninsula University of Technology (from the merger of the Cape and Peninsula technikons)
- Northern Cape Institute of HE
- Mpumalanga Institute of HE
- Vaal University of Technology.

HE and training is also referred to as tertiary education. The HE band provides the highest level of education. Entry into HE is through a Grade 12 pass or a Grade 12 pass with exemption.

Private institutions offering HE must register with the department in accordance with the HE Act, 1997 (Act 101 of 1997).

The role of HE in the South African education system is three-fold:

- Human-resource development (HRD): Mobilising human talent and potential through lifelong learning to contribute to the social, economic, cultural and intellectual life of a rapidly changing society.
- High-level skills training: Training and providing person-power to strengthen the country's enterprises, services and infrastructure. This requires the development of professionals with globally equivalent skills, but who are socially responsible and conscious of their role in contributing to the national development effort and social transformation.
- Producing, acquiring and applying new knowledge: National growth and competitiveness depend on continuous technological improvement and innovation, driven by a research and development system that integrates the research and training capacity of HE with the needs of industry and of social reconstruction.

A 2009 report by Child Gauge noted that South Africa had achieved universal primary education, in line with the millennium development goals, and had also achieved gender parity in education. More children are staying in school until Grade 12, and it is estimated that about 85% of children now receive 12 years of education – either in schools or colleges.

National Plan for Higher Education

The National Plan for HE seeks to expand enrolment by setting a target of a 20% participation rate by 2015. It proposes a shift in the balance of enrolments to a ratio of 40%:30%:30% in the humanities:business and commerce:science, engineering and technology, respectively over the period 2001 to 2010.

The challenge of equity of outcomes is addressed by matching the increased access of black people and women with increased success in key disciplines as well as in postgraduate programmes.

Institutions were directed to establish equity targets with an emphasis on areas in which black and female students were underrepresented and to develop viable strategies for ensuring equity of outcomes.

The plan proposes the restructuring and configuration of the institutional landscape of HE to create new institutional and organisational forms to address the racial fragmentation of the system as well as the administrative, human and financial capacity constraints.

By consolidating HE provision through reducing the number of institutions but not the number of delivery sites on a regional basis, cost and efficiency gains have to be achieved through institutional collaboration in specific programmes.

The Department of HE and Training has accepted a proposal for the establishment of a moni-

toring and oversight body to deal with challenges of transformation in HE institutions. In 2009, the Ministry of HE and Training established an expert committee of individuals from HE and civil society to investigate progress towards transformation and social cohesion and the elimination of discrimination in public HE institutions. This was in response to growing allegations of discriminatory practices and policies within HE institutions.

The oversight body, which will be based in the department's office, will also complement the work of the Council on Higher Education (CHE).

Further Education and Training

The FET Branch is responsible for developing policy for grades 10 to 12 in public and independent schools, as well as in public and private FET colleges.

It oversees the integrity of assessment in schools and colleges, and offers an academic curriculum as well as a range of vocational subjects. FET colleges cater for out-of-school youth and adults.

The branch oversees, coordinates and monitors the system's response to improved learner participation and performance in Mathematics, Science and Technology (MST). It devises strategies aimed at the use of ICT, and supports curriculum implementation through the national educational portal, Thutong (*www.thutong.org.za*).

Statutory bodies

Council of Education Ministers

The CEM, consisting of the Minister of Basic Education, the Minister of HE and Training and the nine provincial members of the executive councils for education, meets regularly to discuss the promotion of national education policy, share information and views on all aspects of education in South Africa and coordinate action on matters of mutual interest.

In August 2009, President Jacob Zuma addressed 1 500 school principals from accross the country. The Minister of Basic Education, Ms Angie Motshekga, the Minister of Higher Education and Training, Dr Blade Nzimande, and education ministers from all the provinces attended. The conference was aimed at giving school principals an opportunity to inform the President of problems affecting their schools. Follow-up talks in provinces would be hosted by premiers and provincial ministers.

Heads of Education Departments Committee

Hedcom consists of the Director-General of the Department of Basic Education, the deputy directors-general of the department and the heads of provincial departments of education.

The committee facilitates the development of a national education system, shares information and views on national education, coordinates administrative action on matters of mutual interest and advises the department on a range of specified matters related to the proper functioning of the national education system.

National Board for Further Education and Training (NBFET)

The NBFET provides the minister with independent and strategic advice on matters relating to the transformation of FET. It was launched in June 1999 in terms of the National Education Policy Act, 1996. The board may, on its own initiative, advise the minister on any aspect of FET, as well as:

- national FET policy, goals and priorities
- norms and standards, including those regarding funding
- norms and the terms, purposes and conditions of earmarked grants
- reports on FET from provincial advisory bodies.

Education Labour Relations Council (ELRC)

The ELRC consists of equal representation of the employer (the national and provincial departments of education) and employees (trade unions representing educators and other employees in the sector) and is a bargaining council for the education sector. The council aims to create effective and constructive labour relations in the education sector and ensure the promotion and transformation of education at all levels within society.

Since its inception, the ELRC has concluded many collective agreements that have improved the quality of teaching and learning in South Africa.

Two collective agreements on an occupation specific dispensation (OSD) for educators were signed in April 2008 by the then Department of Education and trade unions in the ELRC. The OSD is intended to improve remuneration packages for educators.

National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS)

The NSFAS received R63 million in 2009/10.

The NSFAS is responsible for:

- allocating loans and bursaries to eligible students in public HE
- developing criteria and conditions for the granting of loans and bursaries to eligible students, in consultation with the minister
- raising funds, recovering loans, maintaining and analysing a database, and undertaking research for the better use of financial resources
- advising the minister on related matters.

General and Further Education and Training Quality Assurance Council (Umalusi)

Umalusi is a statutory organisation, which sets and monitors standards for general and further education and training in South Africa with the purpose of continually enhancing the quality of education and training.

Umalusi's key functions are:

- evaluating qualifications and curricula to ensure that they are of the expected standard
- moderating assessment to ensure that it is fair, valid and reliable
- conducting research to ensure educational quality
- accrediting educational- and assessment-providers
- certifying learner attainments.

All examination processes for qualifications offered by schools, Abet centres and FET colleges have been quality assured. Accreditation, monitoring and visiting the sites of private providers of education and training continue across schools, Abet centres and FET colleges. Existing assessment bodies (public and private) are monitored, while new applications for accreditation are processed.

South African Qualifications Authority

Saqa is a statutory body and through the NQF, ensures that South African qualifications are of excellent quality, and internationally comparable.

The authority's role is to:

- advance the objectives of the NQF
- oversee further development of the NQF
- coordinate the subframeworks.

In terms of the NQF Act, 2008 (Act 67 of 2008), the quality councils (QCs) will, among other things:

- develop and manage subframeworks and make recommendations to relevant ministers
- ensure the development of qualifications or part of qualifications as are necessary for their sectors, which may include appropriate measures for the assessment of learning achievement
- recommend qualifications or part qualifications to the Saqa for registration.

With respect to professional bodies, Saqa has to:

- develop and implement policy and criteria for recognising a professional body and registering a professional designation after consultation with statutory and non-statutory bodies of expert practitioners in occupation fields and with the QCs
- recognise a professional body and register its professional designation if the relevant criteria have been met.

Saqa's Centre for the Evaluation of Educational Qualifications determines the equivalence between foreign and South African qualifications in the South African context.

The National Learners' Records Database (NLRD) is the key national source of information for HRD in South Africa in terms of education, training and labour-market supply. It is also the management-information system of the NQF.

It includes information on learner achievements and accredited providers, uploaded from education and training quality-assurance bodies (ETQAs), as well as the full contents of all qualifications and unit standards registered on the NQF. The NLRD is the first system in the world to contain all of these elements in one relational database.

The Saqa has reviewed the state of quality assurance, ensured that all the quality-assurance bodies disclosed non-compliance related to quality, and is starting a process to move from compliance to performance auditing.

These performance audits ensure, among other things, that all the accredited providers of registered qualifications are monitored and audited by accredited ETQAs.

The National Qualifications Framework (NQF) Act, 2008 (Act 67 of 2008), which serves to replace the South African Qualifications Authority Act, 1995 (Act 58 of 1995), became effective in June 2009. The Act provides for the creation of three qualifications subframeworks that are integrated into one NQF.

Umalusi becomes one of three quality councils, with the Council on Higher Education and the Quality Council for Trades and Occupations being the other two. Umalusi will have an extended mandate, which includes developing standards and qualifications for its sector. Umalusi developed the draft General and Further Education and Training Qualifications Framework, which was gazetted for comment in 2009.

Council on Higher Education

The CHE was established in terms of the HE Act, 1997 and is responsible for:

- advising the minister on all policy matters related to HE
- executing responsibility for quality assurance in HE and training
- monitoring and evaluating the achievement of policy goals and objectives, including reporting on the state of South African HE
- promoting students' access to HE
- publishing an annual report on the state of HE for submission to Parliament
- convening an annual summit of HE stakeholders
- accrediting private providers and programmes for quality assurance.

Standard-setting has been added as a core function of the CHE.

South African Council for Educators (SACE)

The SACE is a professional council that aims to enhance the status of the teaching profession and promote the development of educators and their professional conduct. The SACE was established in terms of the SACE Act, 2000 (Act 31 of 2000).

The council's functions are to:

- register educators
- promote the professional development of educators
- set, maintain and protect ethical and professional standards.

Educators are required to register with SACE before they are employed by any authority. The SACE has a register of about 500 000 educators.

The council has strengthened entry requirements by checking the "professional standing" of applicants.

The council has a number of programmes that promote the development of educators and enhance the status and image of the teaching profession. These include, among other things, the Professional Development Portfolio Project that aims to encourage educators to reflect on their practice and to take responsibility for their own professional development; teacher education and development research activities; setting up the Continuing Professional Teacher Development (CPTD) system; and celebrating World Teachers' Day to acknowledge the work of educators.

The ethics function ensures that educators adhere to the SACE Code of Professional Ethics.

Equity in education expenditure

Equity between and within provinces is achieved through the equitable division of national revenue between provinces, making use of the Equitable Shares Formula (ESF), the national norms and standards for school funding and the national post-provisioning norms.

The Government's ESF promotes financial equity between provinces, through the distribution of national revenue to provinces on the basis of relative need and backlogs. In the area of education, the size of the school-age population and the number of learners enrolled in public ordinary schools are taken into account, as well as capital-investment needs.

The national norms and standards for school funding, which became national policy in 1999, aim to achieve equality and redress poverty at schools in terms of non-personnel expenditure within a province.

The norms are clearly progressive, with 60% of a province's non-personnel expenditure going to the poorest 40% of learners in public schools. The poorest 20% of learners receive 35% of non-personnel resources, while the richest 20% receive 5%.

To enhance the attainment of equity in funding ordinary public schools, the school-funding norms provide for full, partial and conditional exemption for parents who cannot afford to pay school fees, thus ensuring that learners with financial difficulties cannot be denied access to education.

Considering that about 88% of provincial education expenditure goes towards personnel costs, the distribution of personnel, in particular educators, is a key driver of equity within provinces.

Equity in this regard is promoted by the national post-provisioning norms. These norms have contributed to the narrowing of inequalities regarding educator:learner ratios, and the availability of more educator posts in historically disadvantaged areas.

Education policy

Legislative framework

Education policy is informed by the following legislation:

- The National Education Policy Act, 1996 identifies the policy and legislative and monitoring responsibilities of the ministers of education and formalises relations between national and provincial authorities. The Act embodies the principle of cooperative governance.
- The South African Schools Act, 1996 promotes access, quality and democratic governance in

the schooling system. It makes schooling compulsory for children aged seven to 15 years, or learners reaching Grade Nine, whichever occurs first. It also provides for two types of schools – independent schools and public schools. The Act's provision for democratic school governance through SGBs is in place in public schools countrywide.

- The FET Colleges Act, 2006 (Act 16 of 2006), provides for the establishment, governance and funding of public FET colleges, the employment of staff (excluding the principal and deputy principal) at public FET colleges, the registration of private FET colleges and general provisions for the running of such colleges. The Act is in line with the *Education White Paper 4 on FET (1998).*
- The HE Act, 1997 provides for a unified and national system of HE and for the establishment, governance and funding of public HE institutions, the registration of private HE institutions and general provisions regarding such institutions. The Act, the *Education White Paper 3 on HE (1997)* and the National Plan for HE form the basis for the transformation of the HE sector.
- The Employment of Educators Act (EEA), 1998 (Act 76 of 1998), regulates the professional, moral and ethical responsibilities and competencies of educators. The EEA, 1998 also stipulates who the employer of educators is, how educators are employed and who determines their conditions of service. It also provides for an incapacity code, procedures for poor work performance and a disciplinary code and procedures for dealing with misconduct.
- The Abet Act, 2000 (Act 52 of 2000), provides for the establishment of public and private adult-learning centres, funding for Abet provisioning, the governance of public centres and quality-assurance mechanisms for the sector.
- The goal of the *White Paper on E-Education (2003)* is that all teachers, learners, managers and administrators will be ICT-capable by 2013. Guidelines for teacher development identified three categories of professional development, namely:
  - basic ICT competencies
  - integration of ICT into teaching and learning
  - specialisation and innovation in ICT in education.

Policy developments and programmes

Improving access to free and quality basic education

School fees are set at annual public meetings of SGBs where parents vote on the amount to be paid. Parents who cannot afford to pay, or who can only afford a lesser amount, are granted an exemption or reduction in fees.

The Education Laws Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 24 of 2005), provided the legal foundation for introducing no-fee schools in 2007.

During 2009, the no-fee status of schools was extended from 40% to include 60% of learners nationally by 2010. These learners will be attending 64% of schools.

Quality Improvement, Development, Support and Upliftment Programme (QIDS-UP)

QIDS-UP is a five-year special intervention programme that prioritises 15 000 primary schools serving the poorest communities. The focus of the programme is to improve the schools' infrastructure, supply curriculum resources and provide teacher and school management support towards improving learning outcomes. The programme also seeks to address the impact of poverty in schools.

By mid-2009, 71% of the backlog to provide reliable water had been dealt with, access to decent sanitation improved to 69% and 76% of the backlog to reliable electricity had been addressed.

General school education

General school education is structured according to the Foundation Phase, Intermediate Phase and Senior Phase, and constitutes the compulsory component of the education system. The progressive provision of Grade R prior to Grade One started in 2002. Learner access to Grade R is increasing. By February 2009, 1 732 Grade R sites had registered with the then Department of Education, catering for about 45 950 learners.

Curriculum

The NCS seeks to create a lifelong learner who is confident and independent; literate, numerate and multiskilled; compassionate, with respect for the environment; and the ability to participate in society as a critical and active citizen.

The NCS builds on the vision and values of the Constitution.

These principles include:

- social justice, a healthy environment, human rights and inclusivity
- outcomes-based education
- a high level of skills and knowledge
- clarity and accessibility
- progression and integration.

The NCS (grades R to Nine) has been implemented in the Foundation Phase (grades R to three) since 2004, the Intermediate Phase (grades four to six) since 2005, and in grades seven and 10 since 2006. Grades eight, nine and 11 were implemented in 2007 and Grade 12 in 2008.

Mathematics became compulsory for the first time in 2006. In 2008, learners started writing the NSC examination, offering seven subjects from a choice of 29. Examination papers are set nationally and benchmarked against international papers. The results in numeracy were 30% higher in 2008 than in 2007.

Focus schools of technology will be set up in each province. In terms of the curriculum, focus schools can be created and learners offered opportunities for gaining new skills. At provincial level, schools suitable for conversion to focus schools will be identified to meet the demand for new and responsive skills.

The NCS is available in all 11 official languages and in Braille, in keeping with the Constitution, which grants parity of esteem to all languages. Teacher guides for each learning area have been developed and distributed to all schools.

The Policy on Religion and Education gives directives on how schools should address issues relating to religious observance, instruction and education, which are curriculum matters.

It recognises diversity among learners and aims to foster tolerance, respect and understanding among learners of different backgrounds.

The National Policy on Assessment for the GET Band, which includes a protocol to regulate the recording and reporting of learner achievement of learning outcomes has been finalised and gazetted. The national guidelines on school uniforms have also been gazetted.

By August 2009, government was working on a review of the national curriculum to establish challenges in terms of managing, implementing and assessing it.

The report was published in October 2009 and recommended, among other things, changes that will relieve teachers and schools of some of the challenges experienced and leave more time for teaching and learning.

It also recommends targeted support for teachers and schools.

School-admission policy

The Education Laws Amendment Act, 2002 set the age of admission to Grade One as the year in which the child turns seven. However, the school-going age of Grade One has been changed to age five if children turn six on or before 30 June in their Grade One year.

When applying for admission, parents must present the school with an official birth certificate and proof that the child has been immunised against communicable diseases.

For non-South African citizens, a study permit, temporary or permanent residence permit, or evidence of application for permission to stay in South Africa, is also required.

National School Nutrition Programme

By March 2009, the NSNP supported some 5,6 million learners in about 18 000 schools on a daily basis during school terms, at a cost of R1,50 per child per day. This programme received an additional R4 billion in 2009/10 to enhance the programme's sustainability.

In 2009, there were 6 503 food gardens in schools. About 26 408 food handlers were working on the programme and received a payment every month.

Funding for the NSNP will increase to reach 8,6 million children in 2012/13.

National Strategy for Mathematics, Science and Technology Education

In 2005, the then Department of Education introduced the National Strategy for MST Education to double the number of learners passing high-level Mathematics in South Africa to 50 000 by 2008. The strategy was built around 500 schools nationally, called Dinaledi schools. The schools were specifically targeted and supported to enhance learner performance in Mathematics and Physical Science.

The intervention aimed to ensure that qualified teachers and quality learning and teaching support material were available in all these schools, and that teachers taught for the duration of the seven hours teaching time every day. From 2006 to 2008, interventions were mainly directed to Mathematics, but in 2009 and 2010 there was an increased focus on Physical Science.

There were 298 621 candidates who wrote Mathematics in the 2008 NSC examinations. This was an unprecedented number of learners writing the subject and marked a significant shift in attempts to create a mathematically literate society. Of the candidates who wrote Mathematics, 136 503 passed the examination. Some 53 469 learners in Dinaledi schools wrote the Mathematics examinations in 2008 and 30 786 or 57,5% of them passed. The Dinaledi schools constitute 8% of the total number of schools that offer Mathematics, but contributed 23% of the total number of learners who passed Mathematics in 2008.

A challenge facing the education system is that many schools still have to teach without basic learning and teaching material, including textbooks. The department provided core material to 60% of the poorest schools at the beginning of the 2009 academic year. All learners in these schools were provided with material aligned to the curriculum for the different grades – a minimum pack for primary schools, and seven textbooks per child for secondary schools.

The Dinaledi Schools Project is but one of many initiatives to improve learning outcomes in schools.

School-safety measures

Regulations for safety measures at public schools focus on the safety of learners within school premises.

The measures also accommodate school tours and sporting activities. The regulations will, among other things, ensure the following:

- public schools must take reasonable measures to ensure the safety of learners during tours and sporting activities, including insurance against accidents
- learners and educators who undertake a school tour are not allowed to carry drugs, alcohol or weapons
- upon return from a tour or sporting activity, the supervising educator must submit a report to the principal, who in turn will submit it to the departmental official who approved the tour
- a public school must obtain written consent from parents of learners who will be undertaking the tour
- public-school vehicles for transporting learners must have insurance and roadworthy certificates, and drivers of such vehicles must be in possession of valid driver's licences and professional driving permits.

In April 2009, the Pan-African Mathematics Olympiad was held. The olympiad is organised by the South African Mathematics Foundation and supported by the Department of Science and Technology. Greg Jackson of Diocesan College in Cape Town and Arlton Gilbert of Star College in Durban won gold medals, while Dessi Nikolov of Eunice High School in Bloemfontein in the Free State received a silver medal, and Hlanganani Shibambo of Wordsworth High School, in Benoni on the East Rand, a bronze medal. South Africa achieved second place overall in the olympiad and was one of 13 countries that participated.

The regulations were published in 2008 for public comment before being gazetted into legislation.

Partnerships have been strengthened with the departments of police and of social development, Business Against Crime and the Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention to focus on eliminating crime and violence in schools.

South African Schools Football World Cup Partnership

The South African Schools Football World Cup Partnership was officially launched in Soweto, Gauteng, at the Moletsane Sport Complex in May 2008.

This is a collaborative effort by the Department of Basic Education, SRSA, the FIFA Organising Committee and the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC) to mobilise and educate South African learners about the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ tournament.

The first phase of "My 2010 School Adventure", the Schools Confederations Cup championships, was held in May 2009 in Johannesburg. School teams from all provinces adopted countries that took part in the Confederations Cup. More than 250 000 learners participated in this event, representing more than 8 500 schools.

The education pillar of "My 2010 School Adventure" was held at Museum Africa, Johannesburg, in June 2009, where learners showcased their artworks, poems, essays and traditional dances. Educators were also part of this project and their portfolios were displayed to show how they had introduced "My 2010 School Adventure" in their classrooms.

School sport

The cream of South Africa's school sport talent was in action at the National School Winter Games Championships that took place in Durban

in July 2009. Teams from each province competed against each other in four ball sports, namely, football, tennis, netball and volleyball.

The winners participated in the prestigious Southern Africa's Confederation of School Sport Associations of Southern Africa Ball Games, the primary southern African competition for these sports on school level.

The SRSA, in collaboration with experts identified by its sport scientific directorate, as well as officials from various sports federations, select high-performing talented athletes, to include them in the talent-development programmes run by provincial academies and high-performance centres. The programmes give learners a chance to hone their skills for further international participation. The event formed part of the SRSA's declared intention to provide South African youth with opportunities to participate in sport, and was an outcome of the partnership between the SRSA, the Department of Basic Education and provincial stakeholders.

About 2 230 athletes representing all provinces participated.

Health promotion

The ministries of basic education and HE and training collaborate with the Ministry of Health to ensure that the national education system plays its part in stemming the spread of HIV and AIDS, and ensuring that the rights of all those infected and affected are fully protected.

This priority has been operationalised into three objectives. Each is linked to anticipated outcomes and performance indicators.

In May 2009, the then Department of Education announced the "Teacher Laptop Initiative". This is part of a critical strategy to take forward the objective of improving information and communications technology (ICT) in teaching and learning. The initiative aims to ensure that every teacher owns and uses a laptop by providing them with a monthly allowance, which will cover the purchase costs as well as the costs of connectivity. The ICT package will consist of appropriate hardware and software, as well as Internet connectivity, all with prescribed minimum specifications. Educators participating in the initiative will be required to use the facility in their teaching, as well as for administration. The initiative was phased in from July 2009, starting with the most senior teachers. A monthly allowance will be paid to qualifying educators for a period of five years, renewable every five years, upon proof of acquiring the computer.

The three programmes are:

- awareness, information and advocacy
- HIV and AIDS within the curriculum
- planning for HIV and AIDS in the education system.

The National Strategic Plan for HIV and AIDS and Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) 2007 – 2011 aims to:

- reduce sexual transmission of HIV by 50% by 2011
- strengthen social-behaviour change programmes, interventions and curriculum strategies and approaches to the prevention of sexual and intravenous transmission of HIV, customised for different target groups with a focus on children vulnerable to and at higher risk of HIV-infection within education institutions
- implement school-based interventions targeted at reducing HIV-infection among school-going youth
- use schools as centres of care and support
- monitor and evaluate schools-based interventions on life skills, HIV and AIDS.

Training was provided to provincial and district officials as well as school communities in implementing the policy at district and school level.

The Department of Basic Education has also:

- strengthened and customised the life skills, HIV and AIDS and sexual reproductive health curriculum in educational institutions
- implemented peer-education programmes in secondary and primary schools to complement the Life Skills Programme in the curriculum.

Peer-education training camps were held in North West, Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal and the Free State. Educators and learners were trained on drug and substance use and abuse, values and gender issues, reproductive health, teenage pregnancies, STIs, and safety and violence issues.

Draft guidelines on the implementation of peer-education programmes in South African schools were finalised in 2009.

A quarterly newsletter, *The Health Mate*, is published and distributed in the *Daily Sun* and *City Vision* (Western Cape) newspapers as a forum to promote healthy lifestyles among secondary school learners.

Health screenings target Grade R to Grade Four learners identified with the following conditions:

- outstanding immunisations
- hearing and vision loss
- gross loco motor dysfunction
- intentional injuries and child abuse

- oral health
- mental health with special focus on attention deficit hyperactivity disorder.

Values

The Values Initiative continues to focus on all forms of discrimination in education within a broader framework of human rights.

The department finalised the Bill of Responsibilities for the Youth of South Africa, developed in partnership with the National Religious Leaders Forum. It is a mirror of the Bill of Rights, indicating the responsibilities that young people have as they claim the rights afforded them by the Constitution.

The department, in partnership with the Department of Arts and Culture, allocated 2 000 national flags through the Flag in Every School Project, which aims to ensure that all schools fly the national flag with pride.

Education management and governance development

The Department of Education has developed the Education-Management Policy Framework and the South African Standard for Principalship for school managers, along with a new ladder of education-management qualifications.

These include a practice-based qualification for principals and aspirant principals, which will assist in professionalising the management of schools.

Educator development

The department considers the development of educators, school managers and SGBs a priority.

It continues to reduce the number of unqualified and underqualified educators by introducing capacity-building programmes. The following programmes contribute towards educators' development:

- the MST Advanced Certificate in education was introduced to reskill and train educators so that the NCS could be introduced
- the MST Project aims to improve the qualifications and skills of educators in these subjects
- the National Professional Diploma in Education Programme aims to upgrade the qualifications of those teachers who do not meet the minimum professional qualification requirements
- the Education Information Policy has been instituted for the setting of standard requirements for the administration of national surveys.

The National Policy Framework for Teacher Education and Development, published in April 2007, aims to increase the supply of and to train better educators for the system.

To increase the number of educator trainees, the Fundza Lushaka bursaries were introduced. An investment of R700 million was received in 2009 to support more than 9 000 student educators.

The policy framework introduced the CPTD system to revitalise the teaching profession and reward those who commit themselves to the goals and principles of quality, professionalism and service.

Research to collect data on un- and underqualified educators in the system was commissioned. The outcome of this was a five-year plan for a focused systemic approach to educator upgrading, which was implemented from 2009.

Together with the educators' unions and other stakeholders, the department launched the Quality Learning and Teaching Campaign (QLTC). A major part of the QLTC relates to the "non-negotiables" for different components of the system. For educators, this involves being in class, on time and teaching; while learners have committed to focus on learning, respect their educators and do their homework. Departmental officials will visit schools regularly and provide support.

These non-negotiables require two pillars of support. The first of these is the NEED-U, which will evaluate all parts of the system to unearth constraints and problems in ensuring quality education. The other pillar is that of effective school leadership – a key component of the system.

Education infrastructure

Since 2009, the National Education Infrastructure Management System has been accessible to all provinces and is being used to provide information on infrastructure progress in education.

Better information is available as a basis for monitoring and planning. By mid-2009, the second phase of the project was in progress. It will provide historical information, capability for data-updating, verification of data, automatic updating of learner numbers and a platform for data-downloading to enable distribution to provinces. Cabinet also mandated the department, on the basis of this information, to investigate innovative mechanisms to accelerate school infrastructure delivery to deal with the significant remaining infrastructure backlogs and challenges.

In 1998, the education infrastructure budget was R481 million. In 2007, the budget totalled

R3,9 billion (an increase of 810%). It grew to R5,04 billion in 2008/09 and will increase to R5,5 billion in 2009/10 and R8,5 billion in the 2011/12 financial year.

Educational portal

The educational portal *www.thutong.org.za* offers a range of curriculum and learner-support material, professional development programmes for educators, and administration and management resources for schools.

Thutong – meaning "a place of learning" in Setswana – features a searchable database of web-based curriculum resources for various education sectors, grades and subjects.

The portal is a free service to registered users, who must go through a once-off, no-cost registration process. The portal is a partnership venture between the Department of Basic Education and various role players in the field.

The department has also revitalised and revised the content of the portal. It has more than 31 000 registered users and more than 22 000 curriculum resources.

Partnerships

Central to the education policy framework is the contention that a high-quality education sector cannot be built by government alone. It depends on creative and dynamic partnerships between the public sector, civil society and international partners.

The departments of basic education and of HE and training, educators unions, the SACE, ELRC and the ETDP Seta work together to achieve education transformation goals.

The success of key national initiatives (including the South African Literary Initiative) relies largely on partnerships with the private sector and NGOs.

Several partnerships have been consolidated, providing working models of educational transformation through public-private partnerships. The Business Trust, a partnership between business and government, works in education through three NGOs, namely the Read Educational Trust, the Joint Education Trust and the National Business Initiative Colleges Collaboration.

In June and September 2009, the Department of Basic Education, together with various partners, collaborated to produce study material to assist Grade 11 and Grade 12 learners.

The first edition of the popular *Study Mate* was available to all learners and was distributed free of charge to schools via the provincial and district offices at the beginning of the second term. This edition was a survival kit for Grade 12 learners and consisted of tips by expert subject specialists on how to approach the examination. It also consisted of the examination timetable and other hints.

DVDs featuring expert teachers and curriculum specialists were available as a package with the *Study Mate*.

The SABC launched *Matrix Uploaded*, a programme for Grade 11 and 12 learners in Mathematics, Mathematics Literacy, Physical Science, English (first additional language), Accounting, Life Orientation and Life Sciences on SABC 1 in June 2009.

The Department of Basic Education collaborated with Liberty Life and Independent Newspapers to produce a new edition of *Maths 911* for Grade 11 and 12 learners. These books were distributed free to 125 000 learners nationally. Further support was available in the *Weekly Matric Matters*, which appeared in the independent newspapers and on the Mindset Channel on DSTV.

In September 2009, the Department of Basic Education, together with Avusa Media, published a 48-page tabloid book comprising exemplar examination papers for Grade 12 learners. The exemplars were written by top educators in their respective fields and assessed by curricula specialists.

Educator unions

The majority of educators are organised into six educator unions, namely the National Professional Teachers' Organisation of South Africa, the National Teachers' Union, the South African Teachers' Union, the Professional Educators Union, Cape Professional Teachers Association and the South African Democratic Teachers' Union.

A labour-relations framework has been agreed to jointly by the former Ministry of Education and the unions. This encompasses both traditional areas of negotiation, and issues of professional concern, including pedagogy and quality-improvement strategies.

An agreement was reached on the framework for the establishment of an OSD for educators in public education. The OSD provides for dual career paths where educators and specialists in classrooms can progress to levels where they earn salaries that are equal to or higher than those of managers without moving into management/supervisory posts.

It provides for longer salary bands so that they do not reach a plateau in their salaries too soon in their careers.

It provides for a new category of posts of teaching and learning specialists and senior learning and teaching specialists, as well as the creation of a cadre of education managers at school and office level.

The Education Management Service (EMS) will assist in ensuring that duties and responsibilities are clearly distinguished. The roles of principals are clearly separated from the roles of classroom educators and specialists. Educators employed in the EMS, whether school- or office-based, will sign performance agreements with their supervisors. Their new salary will consist of a flexible remuneration package.

Non-governmental organisations and the private sector

Government is working with NGOs and the private sector to expand relationships, particularly in the areas of educator training, school improvement, Abet, ECD and FET, as well as evaluation, research and monitoring.

The private sector is engaging increasingly in the provision of basic education by funding FET initiatives, building schools in needy communities and supporting the provision of teaching and learning equipment.

The international community

The international community's contribution to the transformation of education is important. The department cooperates with United Nations (UN) agencies and numerous donors to improve access to basic education, FET and HE.

Development cooperation with partners such as Flanders, France, China, the Japan International Cooperation Agency, Norway, the Danish International Development Agency, United States Agency for International Development, the Swedish International Development Cooperation Agency, the Netherlands, the Irish Aid, the Finnish Government and the European Union have been instrumental in the provision of technical and financial assistance to the national and provincial departments of education.

The ministries of education play a leading role in developing the Southern African Development Community Protocol on Education and Training, which aims to achieve equivalence, harmonisation and standardisation of education in the region.

International partnerships and South-South exchanges are fostered, particularly within the African continent.

The Ministry of Education chairs the Bureau of the Conference of Ministers of Education of the African Union (AU), which is monitoring the implementation of the AU's Second Decade of Education Plan of Action (2006 – 2015). The department has a strong collaborative relationship with the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation. A key initiative of the collaboration is the development of national Education for All (EFA) action plans.

As part of regional consultations on implementation, the department participates in assessing progress in the elaboration of the EFA plans of countries in sub-Saharan Africa, and exchanges information on best practices in the development of these plans.

Gender equity

One of the key programmes of the Directorate: Gender Equity in the Department of Basic Education is the Girls Education Movement (GEM), which was launched in 2003. This programme aims to ensure that girl learners not only access education but that their retention and achievement rate increases. It is founded on three pillars, namely career mentorship, skills development and advocacy. The GEM Skills Development Programme aims to address gender disparities through education and advocacy.

The movement has incorporated boys, where young people in schools form clubs known as the girls and boys education movement clubs. These clubs are the department's avenue to inculcate in young people constructive values and empower them with information pertaining to life-skills competencies to cope with different social problems, including learner pregnancies, gender-based violence, HIV and AIDS and sexual harassment.

The Guidelines for the Prevention and Management of Sexual Violence and Harassment in Public Schools were developed in 2008. They support schools and school communities in responding to cases of sexual harassment and sexual violence that are perpetrated against learners and educators within schools and those that come to the attention of school authorities. The document also

ArcelorMittal donated R250 million that will go towards the building of 10 schools over a period of seven years. Each school will have classrooms, an administration centre, a library, a laboratory, ablution facilities, water, electricity, fencing and furniture. One school will be built in each province and the Eastern Cape will receive two schools.

sets out standard measures to be taken to respond to situations of alleged and actual sexual violence and harassment across school communities, as well as assisting victims with reporting procedures and seeking intervention and support.

The measures for the Prevention and Management of Learner Pregnancy were also developed and distributed to public schools. The measures are intended to provide an environment in which learners are fully informed about reproductive matters and have the information that assists them in making responsible decisions. It also provides affected learners with information pertaining to their rights to education and support.

As a way of enabling educators to use these measures, six inserts of *Genderations* were developed and distributed to schools through *The Teacher.* The aim of this resource is to provide information and practical support to educators when they are handling issues linked to gender. The two topics that were discussed in *Genderations* were preventing and managing learner pregnancy at schools and preventing and managing sexual violence and harassment at schools.

Rural education

Partnering with the Ministry of Rural Development and Land Reform, as well as other relevant ministries such as public works, water affairs, and transport, the department aims to alleviate the plight of rural communities.

School-funding norms were revised to ensure that small rural schools were guaranteed a minimum level of funding, irrespective of the number of learners. The department will be building on the successes of the Free State and North West with regard to consolidating small rural schools through the provision of hostel accommodation.

Considerable progress has been achieved since the establishment of the Rural Education Directorate in 2007. A strong interprovincial network has been established and the directorate, in collaboration with provinces, also drafted the National Framework for Quality Education in Rural Areas. This document calls on all education role players to sharpen their focus towards the delivery of quality education in rural and farm schools.

It focuses on the following five areas:

- quality of teaching and learning
- attracting and retaining learners
- planning, restructuring and improving infrastructure
- effective school governance and management
- advocacy and sustainable partnership to implement programmes directed at broader rural development and community participation.

The strategic plan, in keeping with recommendations made by the Ministerial Commission on Rural Education, drafted two guidelines, namely for:

- mergers and closures of small and non-viable schools
- the implementation of Section 14 agreements.

The directorate also focused on multigrade teaching and hostel development, which have a particular impact on rural schools.

National Human-Resource Development Strategy

The revised NHRDS for the period 2010 to 2030 was discussed by Cabinet in August 2009 where it was decided that further work needed to be done to achieve greater alignment between the strategy and the electoral mandate; to take the economic conditions into account; to include a stronger vision for the Setas as well as the location of the FET colleges; and to reflect on the unintended consequences of the merger of some of the institutions of higher learning. The aim of this strategy is to achieve articulation between the subsystems (public-private and across government) for optimal achievement of systemic outcomes; and to facilitate a continuing analysis of HRD and the functioning of the labour market.

The intended outcomes will include improvements in the HRD Index and country ranking, and in the measure and ranking of economic competitiveness; a reduction of the Gini coefficient; and an enhancement in social cohesion.

The strategy commits, among other things, to:

- overcome the shortages in the supply of people with priority skills needed to achieve accelerated economic growth, increasing the number of appropriately skilled people to meet the demands of economic and social development priorities
- ensure improved universal access to quality basic education and schooling
- develop programmes aimed at equipping recipients with the requisite skills to overcome poverty and unemployment
- ensure that young people have access to education and training that enhance opportunities and increase their chances of success in further vocational training and sustainable employment
- improve technological and innovation capability and outcomes in the public and private sectors
- ensure that the public sector has the capability to meet the strategic priorities of the South African developmental state.

A monitoring and evaluation system will monitor the implementation of the strategy. A major review based on systematic evaluation studies and impact assessments will be conducted every five years.

Libraries

Library and information services (LIS) sector

South Africa's growing LIS sector includes a national library, public/community libraries, school libraries, special libraries, government libraries and HE libraries.

South Africa has more than 11 373 libraries, with 77 HE libraries, 9 416 school libraries, 79 government departmental libraries, one national library with two branches, and 1 800 public libraries provided by provincial and local government (library services and metro libraries). In addition, the Department of Basic Education has provided classroom libraries to schools and has facilitated a programme of providing mobile libraries to provincial departments of education.

The nine provincial library authorities provide, in partnership with local governments, extensive public-library services. Public libraries, among other things, increasingly render community and general information services, and provide study material and facilities for school and tertiary students.

Libraries in the Higher Education sector

The HE libraries hold the bulk of South Africa's scientific and scholarly information resources and fulfil more than half of all interlibrary loan requests. Pressure on HE libraries includes redistribution of educational resources and rising prices.

These libraries have responded by forming consortia, looking at access and exploring digital resources.

Special libraries are libraries that consist of subject-specialised collections, including private organisations' libraries and libraries of government departments. (See also Chapter 5: *Arts and Culture*.)

Government made an additional R200 million available for libraries in 2008. Libraries were expected to:

- offer improved access through better staffing and more sensible opening hours
- update informational resources, especially educational-support material
- install new infrastructure
- promote children's literature
- stock more books in indigenous languages.

The Library Charter, unveiled in 2008, sets the new direction for the country's community libraries.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Department of Education
Development Indicators, 2009
Estimates of National Expenditure 2009, published by National Treasury
Library and Information Association of South Africa
National Library of South Africa
South African Qualifications Authority
Sunday Times
www.bizcommunity.com
www.buanews.gov.za
www.education.gov.za
www.gov.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.umalusi.org.za

Suggested reading

Engelbrecht, P and Green, L (eds). 2007. *Responding to the Challenges of Inclusive Education in Southern Africa.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Evans, R *et al*. 2009. *Classroom Literacies: Understanding Your Multilingual Classroom*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Giesekke, HI. 2007. *Education in Venda: The First Hundred Years of the History of Education in Venda 1870 – 1970.*

Koen, C. 2007. *Postgraduate Student Retention and Success: A South African Case Study.* Cape Town: Human Sciences and Research Council (HSRC) Press.

Morrow, W. 2007. *Learning to Teach in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Mouton, FA (ed), Southey, N and Van Jaarsveld, A. 2007. *History, Historians & Afrikaner Nationalism: Essays on the History Department of the University of Pretoria, 1909 – 1985*. Vanderbijlpark: Kleio.

Naidu, A *et al*. 2008. *Education Management and Leadership: A South African Perspective*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press South Africa.

National Curriculum Statement Assessment Guidelines for General Education and Training: Intermediate and Senior Phases. 2007. Pretoria: Department of Education.

New Chapters: 10 Years of Rally to READ. 2007. Johannesburg: McCarthy.

Thomas, CC. 2008. *Cocktails of Liberty: Contours of the 1976 Western Cape Student Uprising*. Pretoria: South African History Online.

Wolhuter, C *et al* (eds). 2007. *Comparative Education: Education Systems and Contemporary Issues*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

ENERGY

The energy sector is critical to South Africa's economy, contributing about 15% to the country's gross domestic product (GDP).

In May 2009, the Department of Minerals and Energy was divided into two separate departments, namely the Department of Mineral Resources and the Department of Energy.

The Department of Energy is responsible for ensuring exploration, development, processing, utilisation and management of South Africa's energy resources. As the country's economy continues to grow, energy is increasingly becoming a key focus.

The Electricity and Nuclear Branch is responsible for electricity and nuclear-energy affairs, while the Hydrocarbons and Energy Planning Branch is responsible for coal, gas, liquid fuels, energy efficiency, renewable energy and energy planning, including the energy database.

Government has embarked on various projects to ensure sufficient and effective energy supply during the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. It has allocated R136 million to improve electricity infrastructure around football stadiums.

Policy and legislation

The Department of Energy's Energy Policy is based on the following key objectives:

- attaining universal access to energy by 2014
- achieving a final energy demand reduction of 12% by 2015
- providing accessible, affordable and reliable energy, especially to the poor
- diversifying primary energy sources and reducing dependency on coal
- good governance, which must also facilitate and encourage private-sector investments in the energy sector
- environmentally responsible energy provision.

Eskom will invest more than R300 billion in new-generation, transmission and distribution capacity up to 2013.

In August 2007, Cabinet approved the Energy Security Strategy.

The strategy is presented in phases with Phase One focusing on liquid-fuels issues, the energy security framework and the proposed energy planning approach. Phase Two will address issues pertaining to electricity.

The strategy seeks to:

- secure adequate supplies of affordable energy for continued economic growth and development in the short term
- enable policy- and decision-makers to make informed decisions on these complex interdependent energy outcomes in the medium term
- ensure that strategic planning and subsequent growth and development are sustainable in the long term.

Key elements of the policy include:

- Implementing the Integrated Energy Modeling and Planning Approach, which is aimed at ensuring coordination and enhanced planning integration in dealing with future energy policy in support of achieving energy security.
- Improving Transnet Freight Rail's operational efficiencies regarding its service to the liquid-fuels sector, by focusing on routes that allow for block trains/loads and the allocation of additional capacity to the Durban-Gauteng Corridor.
- Improving operational efficiencies at ports, especially during periods of increased demand for imported crude oil or refined products in South Africa, which includes ensuring that back-of-port facilities are not used as part of refining operations.
- Promoting local refining as far as possible, with a particular preference for production from local resources, including those from South Africa's neighbouring states.
- Developing Transnet Pipelines' new Multi-Products Pipeline, which is necessary to alleviate the identified capacity constraints in the petroleum supply chain.

Project Mthombo is a modern world-class refinery that aims to provide the lowest-cost refined products sufficient to cater for the country's needs until 2030. Mthombo is expected to enable the economic introduction of globally competitive clean fuels, ensuring that South Africa meets new, best-practice standards that improve the environment and contribute towards maintaining the competitiveness of the vehicle-manufacturing industry.

The project is expected to have a positive impact on government's stated objectives of skills training and transfer, creating thousands of jobs associated with supporting and operating this mega refinery. The project aims to further:

- attract foreign direct investment
- generate a significant and sustainable improvement in the Eastern Cape's economy
- provide considerable prospects for Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment and small, medium and micro-enterprise participation.

The South African National Energy Development Institute was established in 2009 to conduct energy research and development as well as implement energy-efficiency and renewable-energy programmes on behalf of government.

- Promoting energy efficiency and other demand-side initiatives in all energy-demand sectors of the economy. This should be complemented by measures aimed at effectively managing interactions with the natural environment.

In 2008, the National Energy Act, 2008 (Act 34 of 2008), which covers sustainable energy development and gives certain powers to the Minister of Energy, was promulgated.

It provides for possible interventions to ensure energy security and uninterrupted availability of energy supplies, makes regulations pertaining to appliances, addresses environmental requirements on the subject of climate change and water use, enforces mandatory cooperation in the development of sector energy plans and establishes the National Energy Efficiency Agency.

The National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute Act, 2008 (Act 53 of 2008), was promulgated in January 2009 to provide for the establishment of the institute to manage radioactive waste disposal on a national basis.

Energy and the economy

Energy creates jobs for about 250 000 people. Eskom's electricity sales totalled 224 366 gigawatt/hour (GWh) in 2008.

It generates around 95% of the electricity used in South Africa and exports to countries in Africa.

This energy intensity is above average, with only 10 other countries having higher commercial primary energy intensities. It is largely a result of the economy's structure with dominating large-scale, energy-intensive primary mineral beneficiation and mining industries.

Coal, as the major indigenous energy resource, is relied on for the generation of most of the country's electricity and a significant proportion of its liquid fuels. Diversification of the primary energy mix, which comprises about 88% coal, is especially challenging.

South Africa has an abundance of low-cost coal, which means that reliable and inexpensive supplies are at hand.

National Energy Regulator of South Africa (Nersa)

Nersa, which was launched in November 2005, is the regulatory authority established in terms of the National Energy Regulator (NER) Act, 2004, (Act 40 of 2004), with the mandate to undertake the functions of the gas regulator as set out in the Gas Act, 2001, (Act 48 of 2001); the Petroleum Pipelines Regulatory Authority, as set out in the Petroleum Pipelines Act, 2003 (Act 60 of 2003); the NER as set out in the Electricity Act, 1987 (Act 41 of 1987), as amended; and the Electricity Regulation Act, 2006 (Act 8 of 2006), as amended.

By June 2009, Nersa had promulgated renewable energy feed-in tariffs for a number of clean-energy technologies. This is an opportunity not only to meet the Department of Energy's policy objectives in the clean-energy space, such as 10 000 GWh by 2013, but also to open opportunities for rural and local economic development, where the biggest need for employment and infrastructure development is located.

The feed-in tariffs will enable greater use of solar water-heating, wind energy and mini hydro schemes. The Department of Energy aims to ensure that one million solar water-heaters are installed in households and commercial buildings from 2010 to 2014. This programme has the potential to create up to 100 000 jobs across the value chain that will include manufacturing, installation and maintenance.

Central Energy Fund (CEF)

The CEF is involved in the search for appropriate energy solutions to meet the future energy needs of South Africa, the Southern African Development Community (SADC) and the sub-Saharan African region. This includes oil, gas, electrical power, solar energy, low-smoke fuels, biomass, wind and renewable energy sources. The CEF also manages the operation and development of the South African Government's oil and gas assets and operations.

The CEF, through its integrated oil-company subsidiary, PetroSA, is involved in exploration for oil and gas onshore and offshore in South Africa and the rest of Africa. It is also involved in producing environmentally friendly petroleum fuels and petrochemical products from gas and condensate at its synfuels refinery outside Mossel Bay, and the management of oil-storage facilities. The Strategic Fuel Fund manages South Africa's strategic crude oil reserves.

The CEF has established the Energy Development Corporation (EDC) to pursue commercially viable investments in renewable energy. The EDC's focus is on niche areas, and commercial

and development projects that catalyse the renewable energy sector and social projects that benefit previously disadvantaged communities.

CEF subsidiary Oil Pollution Control SA provides oil-prevention control and clean-up services, mainly in South African ports and coastal areas.

CEF subsidiary Petroleum Agency South Africa manages the promotion and licensing of gas exploration, development and production in South Africa and the coastal areas offshore as part of creating a viable upstream oil industry in South Africa.

CEF subsidiary iGas is the official agent of the South African Government for the development of the hydrocarbon gas industry, comprising liquified natural gas and liquified petroleum gas (LPG) in South Africa.

Energy efficiency

The Energy-Efficiency Strategy, which was approved in March 2005, sets a national target for improving energy efficiency by 12% in 2015.

This strategy allows for the immediate implementation of low-cost and no-cost interventions, as well as those higher-cost measures with short pay-back periods.

These will be followed by medium-term and longer-term investment opportunities in energy efficiency.

The strategy acknowledges that there is significant potential for energy-efficiency improvements across all sectors of the national economy.

The vision of the strategy is to contribute towards affordable energy for all, and to minimise the negative effects of energy use on human health and the environment. This will be achieved by encouraring sustainable energy development and energy use through efficient practices.

All state-owned enterprises (SOEs) have been requested to make energy efficiency a part of their shareholders' compacts. In addition, large companies have joined forces with the the Department of Energy and Eskom, by signing an energy-efficiency accord, thus committing themselves to targets in the department's strategy.

According to the first review of the National Energy-Efficiency Strategy of 2008, 14 of these consumers invested R9,9 billion on energy-efficiency improvements and saved 1 441 GWh and 5 190 terajoules of energy over the three-year period. This is equal to the entire residential sector consumption for two days.

The constraints on Eskom's energy supply will continue until additional supply-side initiatives become operational in 2012. A certain amount of energy needs to be removed from the system to manage this constraint. This can be achieved by cogeneration, demand side management (DSM) and a substantial shift in energy-saving behaviour.

Eskom's DSM is working to effect a reduction of 3 000 megawatt (MW) by March 2011 and a further 5 000 MW by March 2026. This involves the installation of energy-efficient technologies to alter Eskom's load and demand profile.

These technical solutions are seen as "hard-wiring" energy-efficiency measures that ensure a higher level of security of supply in the short to medium term.

The Department of Energy's energy-efficiency and DSM policies guide the implementation of DSM, with energy and demand savings being verified by independent university measurement and verification professionals.

The programme within the residential, commercial and industrial sectors has seen an exponential growth in DSM savings, with the programme exceeding its annual targets. The 2009 saving was 916 MW, against the target of 645 MW. This increased the cumulative

In July 2009, government launched a game aimed at teaching children how and why to save energy. The game, distributed for free via the Internet and MXit, was officially launched by the Minister of Energy, Ms Dipuo Peters, at Tigerkloof Combined School in Vryburg in the North West.

The digital game, called *Save It*, featured three superhero characters trying to thwart the Energy Guzzler, a power-wasting monster, who was using up all the electricity. The characters had to outmanoeuvre the Guzzler, beating him by saving as much power as they could before he could undo their good work.

The game was aimed at primary-school children who were able to compare their scored points with other MXit users across the country.

The game was developed by government as part of its National Energy-Efficiency Campaign, comprising a schools roadshow and a communication campaign aimed at educating South Africans about the importance of saving energy.

Eskom, together with Sasol, PetroSA, Anglo American and the South African National Energy Research Institute, is sponsoring the development of the South African Carbon Dioxide (CO_2) Storage Atlas. The atlas will represent an early assessment, aimed at identifying areas and estimating the potential capacity for geological storage of CO_2 in South Africa.

saving to 1 999 MW since the inception of DSM in 2003.

Initially, Eskom's DSM focused on realising energy and average demand savings during evening weekday peak periods (18:00 to 20:00) via energy-service company projects in the industrial and commercial sectors and hot water-load management within municipal environments.

With the need to reduce demand, the focus expanded to include mass energy-efficient programme roll-outs that could be rapidly implemented.

These included energy-efficient lighting utilising compact fluorescent lamps (CFLs), solar water-heaters and improving the efficiency of electric motors and pumps.

The CEF is expected to ensure that South Africa's energy is fully developed and used efficiently for the benefit of all South Africans. The CEF established two energy bodies to deal with the country's energy challenges. These are the National Energy-Efficiency Agency (NEEA) and the South African National Energy Research Institute (Saneri).

The NEEA assists with promotional activities regarding the national energy-efficiency drive.

Its initial focus is on prioritising and recommending energy efficiency and DSM projects.

The agency develops strategies to address the growing demand for all kinds of energy in South Africa. It also creates energy-efficiency and DSM-awareness campaigns to assist the public when purchasing energy-consuming equipment and appliances.

The NEEA oversees the integration and coordination of training in existing energy-efficiency projects, and assists with skills transfer, capacity-building and the creation of additional jobs in the field of energy conservation.

In August 2009, President Jacob Zuma signed an oil agreement with Angolan President, Mr Jose Eduardo dos Santos, during a visit aimed at strengthening economic ties with the oil-rich country.

The deal will allow South Africa's PetroSA and Angola's Sonangol to cooperate in oil projects and work together in the areas of exploration, refining and distribution of oil.

President Zuma was accompanied by 11 ministers and more than 100 business leaders – the largest business delegation to accompany a state visit since the end of apartheid in 1994.

In line with the National Energy-Efficiency Strategy, the NEEA is subject to review every three years.

Saneri facilitates skills development and undertakes research and technology development that will ensure that South Africa's energy resources are used and optimised.

It is designed to generate new ideas to develop practical guidelines for taking advantage of the natural resources of clean and renewable energy.

Saneri is hosting the Green Transport Programme, which aims to showcase green transport technology options during the 2010 World Cup and beyond.

Integrated energy planning (IEP)

Energy efficiency is an important facet of the IEP process carried out by the Department of Energy.

By virtue of its size and economic importance, the energy sector periodically requires considerable investments in new supply capacity, which imparts on the economy. Integrated resource-planning decisions around the world consider not only maintaining security of supply, but give consideration to the economic, environmental and social impacts of all alternatives, such as DSM and energy-efficiency programmes.

This Energy-Efficiency Strategy will be used to inform the National Integrated Resource Plan of the NER as well as the National Integrated Energy Plan of the Department of Energy.

Efficient lighting roll-out programme

It has been established that of the more than 10 million electrified households in South Africa, there is an estimate of eight incandescent lights per household.

During the Eskom CFL roll-out in 2008, a saving of 800 MW was achieved by replacing incandescent lamps with CFLs.

The final target is to reduce the demand by 26 terawatthours by 2012. The programme also accommodates a free CFL exchange for low-income households until 2015. To ensure that this roll-out is sustained, the Department of Energy, in collaboration with other government departments, intends to issue a restriction on the manufacturing of incandescent light bulbs.

The National Treasury also indicated that there would be a tax raised on incandescent bulbs. There will be certain exclusions granted for lamps for ovens, microwaves and for sensitive buildings and special cases.

By September 2009, more than 30 million lamps had been replaced.

Solar water-heating programme

The Department of Energy and the CEF have embarked on a solar water-heating project, which promotes the use of solar geysers.

The programme targets households, group houses (such as military bases and mine residences) and commercial and industrial applications.

Government has set a target of one million solar water geysers to be installed in households and commercial buildings in the next five years.

Eskom's Solar Water-Heating Programme is an initiative that could lead to a reduction in demand of about 530 MW on the national grid and a favourable contribution to reducing carbon emissions.

At the core of the strategy is a subsidy offered to home owners, aimed to stimulate the uptake of solar water heaters. It is believed that the high capital costs are limiting the rate of market acceptance of such systems.

The Solar Water-Heating Programme offers an incentive to consumers to replace existing electrical heating geysers with solar-heating geysers. The strategy is to create a sustainable solar water-heating industry in South Africa and achieve a 166 MW demand reduction in three years. For the 2009 financial year, over 700 units were installed.

Since the launch of the Eskom Solar Water-Heating Programme, certain processes have been modified as a better understanding of the solar environment's requirements developed.

Eskom is striving to streamline solar heating-related industries to comply with the South African Bureau of Standards (SABS) and other applicable regulatory and legislative requirements. Eskom hopes that, through increased demand and manufacturing capacity, more competitive prices will materialise.

Hospitality industry

The Department of Trade and Industry intends to proclaim that the hospitality industry converts all water heating to solar power. The water-heating method can be in the form of solar pre-heaters, thereby ensuring that electricity is not used whenever there is enough solar radiation available to heat water.

National building standards

Local governments have indicated that municipal bylaws will entrench energy-efficient behaviour. This can be done by ensuring that the building standards to improve energy efficiency are legislated and implemented.

In April 2009, Eskom announced that it was planning to spend about R385 billion between 2010 and 2014 on its capital expansion programme.

The SANS 204 standard for buildings was approved in 2008 and will become part of the National Building Regulations of the Department of Trade and Industry. This standard provides for a minimum required energy-efficiency performance per square meter of any building.

Labelling of vehicles

The SABS standard for the labelling of all new light motor vehicles became compulsory in July 2008. This label gives an indication of the carbon emissions of the vehicle as well as its fuel consumption to ensure buyers make an informed decision with regard to the energy efficiency of the vehicle.

Smart metering for residential customers (load management)

Although smart metering can be initiated in the short term, the benefits will be reaped in the medium to long term. Smart metering requires the use of wireless technologies, which have to be retrofitted to existing conventional and pre-paid meters. In this manner, the utility (Eskom or the municipal electricity distributor) will be able to remotely manage customer load.

A quick cost-benefit analysis indicates that improved communication between the utility and the customer meter will result in considerable energy savings during peak demand periods.

The potential reduction is estimated to be 3 265 MW, made up of:

- geysers: 2 161 MW
- laundry (2% contribution to peak): 246 MW
- pool pumps (1% contribution to peak): 122 MW
- other appliances (6% contribution to peak): 736 MW.

Fuel switching

This refers to a Department of Energy-driven LPG Pilot Project, which aims to:

- convert and connect households to LPG
- promote LPG as an appropriate household energy for thermal purposes with a long-term view of converting consumers to natural gas as and when it becomes available throughout the country
- contribute towards the DSM interventions of energy, especially with regard to electricity use during peak periods

- inform the department on the important policy issues and insights into the operation of the LPG industry, which will be used to inform policy.

Some challenges have to be overcome in respect of fuel switching to LPGs. Firstly, the affordability of LPG appliances for low-income households proves to be a barrier to the use of LPG, hence the subsidisation undertaken by the department of such appliances. Secondly, sustainable supply of the product will have to be resolved in the long term.

This would require investment in logistical infrastructure and import terminals associated with trading in LPG, as well as increased local production during seasons when large volumes of LPG are consumed.

Designated National Authority (DNA)

The then Department of Minerals and Energy established the DNA to review clean development mechanism (CDM) projects. The purpose of this initiative is to ensure that the CDM investment taking place in South Africa is in line with sustainable development objectives addressing economic, environmental and social development with the emphasis on investments, job creation, poverty alleviation, technology and skills transfer.

During 2008/09, the department approved 45 projects, which brought the total number of projects approved by the DNA since its inception to 107.

About 15 of these projects were registered by the CDM Executive Board and four projects were issued with certified emission reductions.

The projects submitted to the DNA for initial review and approval included biofuels, energy efficiency, waste management, co-generation, fuel switching and hydro-power and sectors such as manufacturing, mining, agriculture, energy, waste management, housing, transport and residential.

By September 2009, the Engcobo, Inxuba Yethemba and Umhlonhlo rural electrification projects, which would see an investment of R170 million in the infrastructure development of Chris Hani and Alfred Nzo district municipalities, were launched.

Government aims to support this Initiative through the provision of energy infrastructure. The Department of Energy's contribution to the pilot project in Giyani was expected to total R10 million for rural electrification.

These projects have the potential of contributing to government's sustainable-development objectives in the form of poverty alleviation and job creation, access to clean energy by contributing to renewable energy and energy-efficient targets, technology transfer and economic development. These projects will assist South Africa to reduce greenhouse-gas (GHG) emissions such as carbon dioxide, which is emitted largely by the energy sector. Collectively, these projects' lifespan will reduce about 42,3 million ton (Mt) of carbon dioxide equivalent per year, bring foreign revenue of about R423 million (at 10 Euros per ton) and contribute about 52 121 MW by way of electricity generation and energy savings.

These projects are located in provinces such as KwaZulu-Natal, Gauteng and the Western Cape. The majority of these projects are implemented at local government level, notably within the metropolitan municipalities. The potential revenue that will be generated through the sale of certified emission reductions will bring additional revenue streams to municipalities to improve their service delivery.

A number of big industries such as Sasol, Eskom, Mittal Steel, Mondi, Sappi and South African Breweries have also taken up CDM investments with the aim of contributing to sustainable development objectives and emission reduction.

South Africa is assisting other countries in Africa to establish DNAs.

Energy statistics

Detailed, complete, timely and reliable statistics are essential to monitor the energy situation in South Africa. In addition, energy statistics on supply, trade, stocks, transformation and demand are the basis for any sound policy decisions.

The Department of Energy, in collaboration with Statistics South Africa, is responsible for providing energy data and statistics.

It has initiated a programme to strengthen the expertise and experience of the department's staff to be able to collect, verify, analyse and publish energy statistics. In addition, it intends to reduce the backlog in providing energy balances to one year. Energy statistics are available from publications such as the *Energy Digest* and *Energy Price Report*, as well as in electronic format and on the department's website.

The department, through the National Energy Act, 2008, intends to make the provision of energy data mandatory.

Integrated Energy Centre (IEC) Programme

The department, in partnership with municipalities, oil companies and other stakeholders, is establishing IECs countrywide.

The main objective is to bring affordable and sustainable energy services and information closer to poor communities.

Underlying this is a strong social-responsibility drive aimed at poverty alleviation, job creation and capacity-building.

By mid-2009, there were six operational IECs, namely: Kgalagadi IEC in Kuruman, Northern Cape; Caba Mdeni IEC in Matatiele, Eastern Cape; Moshaweng IEC in Laxey, Northern Cape; Eshane IEC in Greytown, KwaZulu-Natal; Mutale IEC, Limpopo; and Ratlou IEC in Makgobistad, North West. Other IECs are at various stages of development. The department has approved a sustainability strategy and roll-out plan to establish more IECs until 2015, targeting the nodal areas first, followed by peri-urban and urban areas.

Energy demand and access

Energy consumed by households represents some 17% of the country's net use. Most household energy is obtained from fuel wood (50% of net household energy), primarily in rural areas, with the remainder obtained from coal (18%), illuminating paraffin (7%) and a small amount from LPG.

Currently, South Africa produces over 10 000 t of this commodity a year. The total sales of the product generate turnover of close to R2 billion.

LPG consumption has been growing at an average of 4% over the past few years. South African LPG consumers include the commercial, industrial and household sectors.

LPG can also be used by low-income households in both rural and urban areas in South Africa.

The estimate number of households with access to electricity increased from 4,5 million (50,9%) in 1994 to 9,1 million (73%) in 2008.

Close to half of all customers who receive electricity services from municipalities receive free basic electricity, with a large percentage of such users in Gauteng and Free State. Better long-term planning in terms of generation, distribution and maintenance is critical for the achievement of the goal of universal access to electricity by 2014.

The Minister of Energy, Ms Dipuo Peters, announced in November 2009 that the Department of Energy would submit a proposal to Cabinet to start building the first of South Africa's new fleet of nuclear power plants by 2020. This will enable the local industry to develop new technologies and skills, and create up to 70 000 direct and 300 000 indirect jobs.

Coal

South Africa's indigenous energy resource base is dominated by coal. Internationally, coal is the most widely used primary fuel, accounting for about 36% of the total fuel consumption of the world's electricity production.

Burning coal is the most cost-effective and energy-efficient way of generating electricity. Internationally, coal is the most widely used primary fuel, accounting for about 36% of the world's electricity production.

Coal has traditionally dominated the energy-supply sector in South Africa, from as early as 1880 when coal from the Vereeniging area was supplied to the Kimberly diamond fields.

About 77% of the country's primary energy-needs are provided by coal. This is unlikely to change significantly in the next decade, due to the relative lack of suitable alternatives to coal as an energy source.

South Africa produces an average of 224 Mt of marketable coal annually, making it the fifth-largest coal-producing country in the world.

About 25% of the production is exported internationally, making South Africa the third-largest coal-exporting country. The remainder of South Africa's coal production feeds the various local industries, with 53% used for electricity generation. The key role played by coal reserves in the economy is illustrated by the fact that Eskom is the seventh-largest electricity generator in the world, and Sasol the largest coal-to-chemicals producer.

Nuclear

The nuclear sector in South Africa is mainly governed by the Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999), and the National Nuclear Regulator (NNR) Act, 1999 (Act 47 of 1999). The Department of Energy administers these Acts.

The Department of Health administers the Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act 15 of 1973), related to groups III and IV hazardous substances.

Cabinet approved the Nuclear Energy Policy for South Africa in June 2008.

The objective of the policy is to increase the role of nuclear energy as part of the process of diversifying South Africa's primary energy sources

The African Nuclear-Weapon-Free Zone Treaty came into force in August 2009, about 13 years after it opened for signature.

The treaty, which covers the entire African continent as well as its surrounding islands, ensures that nuclear weapons are not developed, produced, tested or otherwise acquired or stationed in any of the countries on the continent.

For the treaty to come into effect, a total of 28 or more countries – of the 53 who have signed the document – had to ratify it. Burundi was the 28th to do so in July 2009.

Among other things, the treaty supports the use of nuclear science and technology for peaceful purposes, and requires each party to conduct all activities for the peaceful use of nuclear energy under strict non-proliferation measures.

It will also prevent any foreign naval ship or vessel carrying nuclear weapons from entering an African port without prior permission.

to ensure energy security. The policy will also ensure the reduction of the overreliance on coal, which contributes to South Africa being among the highest emitters of GHGs.

Eskom is investigating up to 20 000 MW of new nuclear power capacity by 2025. This would entail recapitalising certain nuclear agencies, financing others and setting up new ones.

The following main organisations are directly involved in the nuclear sector:

- The Department of Energy plays a leading governance role regarding nuclear technology, non-proliferation and safety. The Minister of Energy is the executive authority responsible for overseeing the South African Nuclear Energy Corporation (Necsa) and the NNR.
- Necsa undertakes and promotes research and development (R&D) in the fields of nuclear energy, radiation science and technology (S&T), medical-isotope manufacturing, nuclear liabilities management, waste management and decommissioning. Necsa's reactor-produced radioisotopes are exported to more than 50 countries.
- The NNR oversees safety regulation of nuclear installations and activities involving radioactive material at Necsa's Pelindaba site, Vaalputs Radioactive Waste Disposal Facility, the Koeberg Nuclear Power Station, certain mines and other small users.
- The Department of Health (Directorate: Radiation Control) issues licences for Group III hazardous substances (electronic-product generating X-rays, other ionising beams, electrons, neutrons or other particle radiation or non-ionising radiation) and Group IV hazardous substances (radioactive material outside a nuclear installation, which does not form part of or is used or intended to be used in the nuclear fuel cycle, and which is used or intended to be used for medical, scientific, agricultural, commercial or industrial purposes).
- The Koeberg Nuclear Power Station is responsible for about 6% of total electricity generation. It is owned by Eskom, which reports to the Minister of Public Enterprises.
- iThemba Laboratories is responsible for medical isotopes and medical applications. This public entity falls under the Department of Science and Technology.
- Nufcor is responsible for uranium-ore refinement and export. It is privately owned by AngloGold.

The department continues to participate in the Women in Nuclear South Africa (Winsa) Programme. Government is expected to accelerate preparatory work to ensure greater reliance on nuclear energy and other renewable energies. The department has introduced initiatives such as the South African Young Nuclear Professionals Society and Winsa to promote the industry among historically disadvantaged people.

Necsa will receive R10 million a year for the next three years to establish the National Nuclear Manufacturing Centre. It will incorporate Necsa's existing facilities at the Pelindaba complex outside Pretoria, including Fabritek (the manufacturing component of the former Atomic Energy Corporation), an existing design centre, and Necsa's current fuel-manufacturing activities at the Safari-1 research reactor.

The NNR has to strengthen its capacity to evaluate different technologies, and the State will also have to improve its system for ensuring compliance with its non-proliferation obligations.

The expanded nuclear programme is expected to result in the development of a nuclear energy industrial complex, which will lead to job creation in the nuclear sector. This envisaged energy complex will centre on uranium beneficiation and power-plant manufacturing infrastructure.

The Department of Energy continues to work on finding safer ways to use nuclear power and store nuclear waste.

The department continued with the implementation of the Waste Management Policy and Strategy and aimed to establish the National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute during the 2009/10 period, to manage and regulate radioactive waste material in accordance with international standards to ensure the protection of people, property and the environment.

The department aims to implement the Nuclear Energy Policy, which seeks to firmly place nuclear energy as one of the solutions to mitigate against GHGs.

Nuclear Energy Corporation of South African

Necsa was established as a public company in terms of the Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 and is wholly owned by the State.

The main functions of Necsa are to undertake and promote R&D in the field of nuclear energy and radiation S&T; to process source material, special nuclear material and restricted material; and to cooperate with persons in matters falling within these functions.

Apart from its main operations at Pelindaba, which include the Safari-1 research reactor, Necsa also operates the Vaalputs National Radioactive Waste Disposal Facility, which is licensed to receive low and intermediate radioactive waste.

In line with the non-proliferation initiatives, Necsa aims to convert the Safari reactor from using highly enriched uranium to low enriched uranium.

South Africa has technical expertise in nuclear technology at Necsa, including expertise in uranium conversion and enrichment remaining from South Africa's previous nuclear programme.

The Nuclear Energy Policy and Strategy for South Africa states that government, through Eskom, is taking the lead in respect of the extensive Pressurised Water Reactor to substantially diversify the generation base and reduce overall carbon emissions.

The policy also highlights that in this extended programme, Necsa will play a vital role as the State's body to serve as the anchor for nuclear energy R&D and innovation in South Africa.

To implement a sustainable nuclear programme and obtain all the potential economic benefits, South Africa, through Necsa, will endeavour to implement, or obtain interests in, the complete nuclear fuel cycle, including uranium conversion, enrichment and fuel fabrication. Necsa hosts the Pebble-Bed Modular Reactor nuclear fuel development laboratories, helium tests facility and the future Fuel Production Plant.

Through its fully owned commercial subsidiaries Pelchem (Pty) Limited (Ltd) and NTP Radioisotopes (Pty) Ltd, it sells fluorine and fluorine-based products as well as radioisotopes on the international market.

The NTP Radioisotopes (Pty) Ltd is among the top three global producers and suppliers of radiation-based products and services that are routinely and reliably provided to customers throughout the world.

Its principal product, Fission Mo-99, is used in products that allow for the estimated 30 million nuclear medicine imaging scans performed on patients throughout the world every year.

The NTP supplies more than 90% of the total South African nuclear medicine demand through its subsidiary companies AEC Amersham (Pty) Ltd and Cyclotope (Pty) Ltd.

The latter pioneered the introduction to South Africa of the first commercially available positron emission tomography tracer. In addition, NTP supplies radioisotopes used for industrial applications to the entire South African market and exports these products to a number of countries through its distributors.

The NTP Logistics (Pty) Ltd specialises in the international and domestic transport of radioactive and other dangerous goods.

Liquid fuels

The liquid fuels industry was licensed for the first time in 2005. The objectives of the licensing framework as detailed in the Petroleum Products Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 58 of 2003), include:

- promoting an efficient manufacturing, wholesaling and retailing petroleum industry
- facilitating an environment conducive to efficient and commercially justifiable investment
- promoting the advancement of historically disadvantaged South Africans
- creating employment opportunities and small businesses in the petroleum sector.

The Liquid Fuels Charter compels industry participants to provide for 25% black empowerment in all sectors of its operations, including its value chain and shareholding.

The South African Petroleum Industry Association (SAPIA) expected demand to be close to unchanged in 2009 from 2008 and receive a slight boost from projects related to the Soccer World Cup in 2010.

Demand for petrol dropped more than 10% in the third quarter of 2008 compared with the same period in 2007, while demand for diesel was down more than 3%, as big industrial consumers scaled down operations because of the global economic slowdown.

The drop served as a buffer for South Africa, which has battled a capacity shortage in recent years, especially when refineries were forced to shut down unexpectedly.

According to SAPIA figures, sales of major petroleum products in South Africa amounted to 18,9 billion litres in the first nine months of 2008.

Relief will come if the 400 000 barrels-per-day (bpd) Coega oil refinery built by state-owned PetroSA comes on stream in 2015.

It will nearly double the existing refining capacity, which is estimated at around 460 000 bpd.

A feasibility study for the refinery at Coega, an industrial development zone on South Africa's south-east coast, was due to be completed by August 2009.

Backed by government, the Coega refinery will also ease the country's dependence on fuel imports. The refinery itself would need some 200 MW to operate, but the rest could be used to supply local industry and communities.

The refinery is expected to create about 18 500 permanent jobs in the Eastern Cape.

The refinery is expected to save South Africa around R18,5 billion a year in imports. Half of the refinery's output is also expected to supply sub-Saharan Africa.

PetroSA was also studying, along with Transnet, the possibility of building an alternative fuel pipeline for South Africa, to ease congestion on the Durban-Johannesburg line.

The petrol price in South Africa is linked to the price of petrol in United States dollars in certain international petrol markets.

This means that the domestic price is influenced by supply and demand for petroleum products in international markets, combined with the Rand/Dollar exchange rate.

PetroSA is responsible for exploring and exploiting oil and natural gas, as well as producing and marketing synthetic fuels produced from offshore gas at the world's largest commercial gas-to-liquids (GTL) plant in Mossel Bay.

The former Department of Minerals and Energy, together with the oil industry, established the Fuel Strategic Supply Task Team to identify current and future supply constraints. Possible strategies and options to deal with these issues include the need for investment by SOEs in pipelines, storage and handling facilities.

The findings pointed to inefficiencies emanating from industry practices, especially in port and railway operations. Changes in the industry's operations are expected to result in rail-infrastructure capacity doubling and port capacity increasing.

The Safe Illuminating Paraffin Stove Pilot Project was launched by the Minister of Energy, Ms Dipuo Peters, at Port Shepstone, KwaZulu-Natal, in October 2009.

The project aims to promote the use of safer illuminating paraffin appliances while addressing problems associated with harmful incidents caused by the use of illuminating paraffin in low-income households in South Africa.

It also aims to test the robustness and safety of the newly designed, table-height paraffin stoves to minimise incidents associated with safe handling and usage of the paraffin, fuel and related appliances. The Government committed itself to promoting energy access and managing energy-related environmental and health impacts, as stated in the *Energy White Paper* of 1998.

Sasol

Sasol is an integrated energy and chemical company. It beneficiates coal, oil and gas into liquid fuels, fuel components and chemicals with the help of its proprietary Fischer-Tropsch processes.

It mines coal in South Africa and produces gas in Mozambique and oil in Gabon. Its chemical manufacturing and marketing operations span the globe. In South Africa, Sasol refines imported crude oil and retail liquid fuels through its network of retail convenience centres. Sasol also supplies fuels to other distributors in the region and gas to industrial customers in South Africa.

Through Sasol Synfuels International, Sasol is pursuing international opportunities to commercialise its GTL and coal-to-liquids (CTL) technology. In partnership with Qatar Petroleum, Sasol started up its first international GTL venture, Oryx GTL, in Qatar in 2007 and is developing a GTL plant in Nigeria with Chevron and the Nigerian National Petroleum Corporation.

Based in South Africa, Sasol has operations in about 30 countries and employs almost 34 000 people.

Formed in 1950, the company started producing synthetic fuels in 1955. Sasol is listed on the Johannesburg Securities Exchange in South Africa and the New York Stock Exchange in the United States of America (USA).

Oil and gas

South Africa has very limited oil reserves and about 60% of its crude oil requirements are met by imports from the Middle East and Africa (Saudi Arabia, Iran, Kuwait, the United Arab Emirates, Yemen, Qatar, Iraq, Nigeria, Egypt and Angola).

Refined petroleum products such as petrol, diesel, residual fuel oil, paraffin, jet fuel, aviation

gasoline, LPG and refinery gas are produced by the following methods:

- crude oil refining (oil refineries)
- CTL and GTL fuels (Sasol)
- natural gas to liquid fuels (PetroSA).

The wholesale and retail markets for petroleum products in South Africa are subject to a set of government controls.

The Government regulates wholesale margins and controls the retail price of petrol. The industry has entered into product-exchange agreements to serve different markets.

Together, these controls provide for access to fuel throughout the country and protect consumers, while rendering a reasonable return on investment to the oil industry and enhancing opportunities for employment.

The refiners and wholesale marketers move products from the refineries by coastal barge, rail, truck and pipeline to roughly 200 depots. From these, about 4 600 service stations and 100 000 direct consumers (mostly farmers) are served.

Refineries and Sasol produce LPG and illuminating paraffin (kerosene). Most LPG is consumed in the country and the rest is used in refineries as fuel and/or exported regionally.

Limited natural gas reserves exist around the South African coast. PetroSA exploits the reserves off the coast of Mossel Bay, where the Mossgas plant converts the gas into liquid fuels.

Sasol produces gas from coal and is researching prospects to import gas from Namibia. Even though gas consumption has increased in recent years, the importance of gas in the South African energy economy is still low compared with other countries.

Cross-border gas trade agreement

To facilitate the movement of gas across international borders, cross-border gas trade agreements have been signed with Mozambique and Namibia.

Since the arrival of natural gas from Mozambique in 2004, the contribution of natural gas to the primary energy supply rose from 1,5% to 3,3% (2005).

This figure is expected to rise to 4,3% when the new Mozambique-South Africa gas-transmission pipeline reaches maximum capacity.

The South Africa-Namibia Gas Commission addresses harnessing the natural gas reserves in the Kudu Gas Field.

In June 2009, Sasol, South Africa's multinational fuel and chemicals company, opened a R70-million Fuels Application Centre in Cape Town, in the company's biggest intervention to test the impact of its fuels on vehicle performance and greenhouse-gas emissions.

The centre is one of a handful of such test facilities in the world, and the first of its kind in southern Africa. It is an extension of the existing fuels research facility situated at the Sasol Research and Development facility in Sasolburg, in the Free State, and adds to the work done at the Sasol Advanced Fuels Laboratory at the University of Cape Town.

Established in 1950 as a state-owned enterprise, Sasol invented the technology for making petrol and diesel from coal. Its main plant in Mpumalanga – the only commercial coal-to-liquid plant in the world – produces about 150 000 barrels of synthetic fuel a day and meets about 28% of South Africa's annual fuel needs.

The new Cape Town facility will use some of the most advanced engine-testing and emission-measurement technologies, helping Africa compete with the world's best fuel-research facilities.

Import and export of fuel products

The importation of refined products is restricted to special cases where local producers cannot meet demand. It is subject to state control to promote local refinery usage.

When overproduction occurs, export permits are required and generally granted, provided that the needs of both South Africa and other Southern African Customs Union members are met. More diesel than petrol is exported, owing to the balance of supply and demand of petrol and diesel relative to refinery configurations.

Although petrol and diesel make up 55% of total liquid-fuel exports, South Africa is also the main supplier of all other liquid fuels to Botswana, Namibia, Lesotho and Swaziland.

Biofuels

The Biofuel Industrial Strategy for South Africa was approved by Cabinet in December 2007. Within the first five years, which is considered to be a pilot phase, the aim is to achieve a 2% penetration level of biofuels, or 400 million litres (Ml) a year.

In line with the focus on rural development and the provision of support to emerging farmers, the Government proposed that only dual-purpose crops should be used for the production of biofuels. Examples are sugar cane and sugar beet for

bioethanol production and sunflower, canola and soya for biodiesel.

Maize was taken out just before the final strategy was approved because of food-security concerns.

Jatropha, which is not a dual-purpose crop, was excluded to allow further research into its properties.

A 19-Ml ethanol project is being developed by the CEF, the Industrial Development Corporation and the Eastern Cape Government, giving effect to the Government's biofuels strategy. The project has been under development since 2007 and is expected to be commissioned in December 2011.

The project has the potential to create a viable fuel-grade ethanol business based on sugar beet grown in the Eastern Cape's Great Fish River Valley. The agricultural activities will create 1 500 jobs over and above 1 000 temporary jobs that will be created during the construction of the ethanol processing plant.

This is one of many projects that will be developed over the next five years. Government's goal is to displace at least 5% of crude oil-based fuels with biofuels.

Electricity

Eskom generates about 95% of electricity in South Africa and about 45% in Africa. About 88% of South Africa's electricity is generated by coal-fired power stations. Koeberg, a large nuclear station near Cape Town, provides about 6% of capacity. A further 2,3% is provided by hydroelectric and pumped storage schemes.

In South Africa there are few, if any, new hydro sites that could be developed to deliver significant amounts of power, due to water scarcity. Eskom currently dominates electricity generation. This national SOE also owns and operates the national electricity grid.

In global terms, the utility is among the top 13 in generating capacity, among the top nine in terms of sales, and has one of the world's biggest dry-cooled power stations, namely Matimba Power Station.

Electricity, as a key strategic economic sector, underpins government's growth and development objectives. The Department of Energy has several policies to ensure an adequate supply of electricity-generation capacity and that the distribution infrastructure is maintained.

Ever-increasing demand for electricity in an expanding economy has brought the era of excess capacity to an end. In 2008, the problem was exacerbated by low coal reserves at the Eskom power stations, as well as quality-related issues.

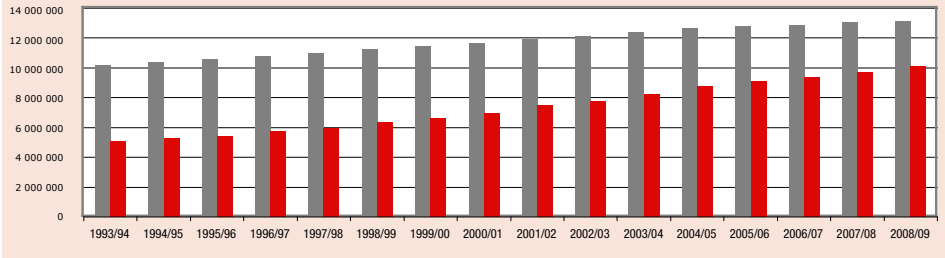
The status of the electricity system has changed dramatically. A decrease in demand, together with the technical recovery of Eskom power, brought about a much healthier reserve margin, moving from around 5% in January 2008 to about 14% in January 2009 (including imports). The coal stockpiles have also been restored to much healthier levels.

The Eskom Build Programme is on track to deliver the projects as planned. Since the Build Programme started in 2005, additional capacity of 4 454 MW was commissioned up to 30 April 2009.

Over the five years to March 2013, Eskom aims to spend R385 billion in nominal terms on capacity expansion. South Africa plans to build 40 000 MW of new-generation capacity by 2025, of which 12 476 MW are already under construction.

As at 30 April 2009, 4 454 MW of this had already been commissioned. A further 6 134 MW would come on stream within the following five years (which included the 2009 calendar year). This includes the completion of the two remaining old coal-fired stations being returned to service,

Households with access to electricity



Source: *Development Indicators, 2009*

the upgrade of Arnot Power Station and the first three units of Medupi and the first unit of Kusile.

Some highlights for 2008/09 were as follows:

- Camden Power Station fully operational (eight units)
- two units of Grootvlei Power Station synchronised to the grid
- one unit of Komati Power Station synchronised to the grid
- two more open-cycle gas turbine units at Gourikwa Power Station commissioned.

Some 1 962 km of high-voltage transmission lines have been built in the past few years, as well as numerous new transmission substations and transmission network upgrade projects. The construction of the 765-kilovolt ultra high-voltage line to the Western Cape is progressing well, with 430 km already strung. The Apollo Substation refurbishment was completed in May 2008. This increases the availability of the Cahora Bassa/Apollo high-voltage direct current interconnection.

While Eskom does not have exclusive generation rights, it has a practical monopoly on bulk electricity. It also operates the High-Voltage Transmission System and supplies electricity directly to large consumers such as mines, mineral beneficiators and other large industries. In addition, it supplies directly to commercial farmers and, through the Integrated National Electrification Programme (INEP), to a large number of residential consumers. It sells in bulk to municipalities, which distribute to consumers within their boundaries.

Integrated National Electrification Programme

The INEP remains the flagship of the Department of Energy. Eskom is responsible for implementing the programme in its licensed areas of supply on the department's behalf.

Since its inception in 2002, the INEP has provided 4,8 million households with access to electricity. By March 2009, government had spent R8 billion on electrification.

However, the rate of new connections was slowing down because bulk infrastructure needed to be provided in the backlog areas not previously served.

If universal access to electricity is to be achieved by 2014, improved planning, resource optimisation and complementary approaches to distribution and maintenance are vital.

In 2008, government committed to supporting more efficient use of energy by installing electricity-saving devices, using renewable sources of electricity generation and exploring co-generation projects. Government aims to spend R1,5 billion on those projects over the spending period.

The Electricity Basic Services Support Tariff Policy aims to bring relief, through government intervention, to low-income households and to ensure optimal socio-economic benefits from the INEP. Qualifying customers are eligible for 50 KWh of free electricity per month. Eskom and municipalities are the service-providers for free basic electricity in their respective areas of supply.

Between April 2007 and March 2008, access to free basic electricity increased from 60% to 73%.

By providing this basic service, government hopes to offer social relief to those who typically earn less than the national minimum-wage levels.

Although these users have access to a basic quantity of 50 kilowatt/hour (kWh) per household per month in terms of the policy, they pay the normal tariff for any consumption exceeding 50 kWh per month.

The programme is funded by the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs through the equitable share allocation.

Each household connected to the Solar Home System receives up to R48 worth of electricity a month.

Rural solar-energy users are liable for any amount above the monthly subsidy.

To make paraffin more affordable, the Department of Energy removed the value-added tax levy on it.

Renewable energy

The Department of Energy has embarked on a number of renewable-energy projects geared at increasing power generation in the country. Renewable-energy sources, other than biomass,

By June 2009, private investors had injected R1,8 billion into building a new sugar-processing facility in the rural area of Makhathini, in the far north of KwaZulu-Natal.

The project, which is a joint initiative between the Department of Trade and Industry, local municipalities and sugar growers, aims to produce ethanol and other sugar by-products from raw sugar cane.

Ethyl alcohol, or ethanol, is an alternative fuel that can be blended with petrol to produce fuel with a higher octane rating and lower harmful emissions. It is produced by fermenting materials that contain starch or sugar.

have not yet been exploited optimally in South Africa.

The Department of Energy strengthened international relationships in this area through the support offered to partnerships established during the World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002.

Such partnerships will overcome market barriers and promote widespread use of sustainable energy solutions. These include the Global Village Energy Partnership and the Renewable-Energy and Energy-Efficiency Partnership.

Cabinet approved the *White Paper on Renewable Energy* in November 2003, which stipulates the following target: a 10 000-GWh renewable-energy contribution to final energy consumption by 2013, to be produced mainly from biomass, wind, solar and small-scale hydro. The renewable energy is to be used for power generation and non-electric technologies such as solar water-heating and biofuels.

This is equivalent to replacing two 660 MW units of Eskom's combined coal-fired power stations, or replacing 1 100 Ml of diesel (14%) with biodiesel. This is in addition to the estimated existing 8% to 9% renewable energy contribution mainly from fuel wood and waste.

A macroeconomic analysis of the targets in the White Paper concluded that:

- the target is economically viable with government financial support and "green" funding (such as CDM and "green" premium)
- achieving the target could add about 1 667 MW new renewable-energy capacity with a net impact on GDP of as high as R1 071 million per year compared with coal-fired power stations, and additional government revenue of R299 million.

Just over 20 000 new jobs would be created and water savings of 16,5 million kilolitres would be achieved, translating into a R26,6-million saving.

The study also highlighted the 10 000-GWh low-cost renewable-energy technologies and applications to be implemented first, based on the level of commercialisation of the technology and the availability of natural resources.

These technologies include:

- sugar-cane bagasse for co-generation (59%)
- landfill gas extraction (6%)
- mini-hydroelectric schemes (10%)
- commercial and domestic solar water-heaters (23%)
- wind energy (1%)
- biomass pulp and paper (1%).

The then Department of Minerals and Energy and the National Treasury approved the Renewable Energy Subsidy Scheme in September 2005. The scheme started off with once-off capital grants that are made available for renewable-energy projects.

The department has subsidised six renewable-energy projects (three hydro projects, one wind project, one landfill gas project and one biogas-to-electricity project) with a total capacity of 24 MW. The department spent R15 million on these projects. Nersa approved and published renewable-energy feed-in tariffs in 2009. Four technologies, namely wind, landfill, small-scale hydro and concentrated solar power were included in the feed-in tariff framework. Other technologies will be considered by the regulator in future.

Eskom participated in a pilot project of the Department of Energy, which investigates green power trading.

Eskom contributed to the development of draft market rules and will act as the independent market operator for the duration of the project.

Its Renewable Energy Strategy states a commitment to increase the share of renewable energy in Eskom's energy mix.

In March 2009, the department hosted the Renewable Energy Summit to review the Renewable Energy White Paper Policy.

The summit noted that insignificant progress had been made towards the achievement of the target.

The Department of Energy, together with stakeholders, adopted a new set of resolutions to accelerate the implementation of the renewable-energy programme and are continuing with the process of policy review, taking into consideration the outcomes of the summit.

Biomass

In households, biomass is used for cooking and heating. Biomass is estimated to comprise 8% of South Africa's primary energy supply. Renewable energy comprises biomass and natural processes that are replenished and can be used as an energy source.

Biomass is used commercially in pulp and paper mills and sugar refineries by burning bulk from logs, black liquor and bagasse to produce process heat. The energy produced is used by those industries to meet their needs.

The Department of Energy has identified biomass as one of the easiest and quickest sources of renewable energy that can contribute towards its targets. Through negotiations and agreements

with the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, most landfill sites would not require a full environmental impact assessment, which reduces costs and time spent on developing these projects.

The department is also providing a capital subsidy for these projects. The Energy Development Corporation at the CEF has established partnerships with a few municipalities to utilise landfill sites to generate electricity.

In April 2009, the department launched the Working for Energy Programme, which focuses on using wood harvested through the Working for Water Programme to generate electricity from mainly biomass sources.

Biomass pulp and paper have the potential to generate about 110 GWh; landfill gas about 597 GWh; and 57 municipalities own landfill sites that have the potential to generate about 1 200 GWh per annum.

One of South Africa's best bets is electricity generation from bagasse, with a potential of about 5 846 GWh. The South African Sugar Association suggested that it could contribute at least 400 MW (equivalent to 2 000 GWh) through co-generation by 2013.

In future, some of this energy could be sold to the national grid (depending on electricity prices and environmental regulations). However, given the limited potential for agricultural expansion due to a lack of water and arable land, it is unlikely that this could make a major contribution.

Renewable-energy subsidy office

In 2005, the department established the Renewable-Energy Finance and Subsidy Office, with a mandate that includes the management of renewable-energy subsidies and offering advice to developers and other stakeholders on renewable-energy finance and subsidies.

Since 2006, financial aid to the value of about R15 million has been successfully provided, investments of more than R300 million from the private sector had been leveraged and more than 160 jobs, even though some temporary, were created.

An additional capacity of 24 MW was added to the electricity network.

Solar

Most areas in South Africa average more than 2 500 hours of sunshine per year, and average daily solar-radiation levels range between 4,5 and 6,5 kWh/m^2 in one day. The southern African region, and in fact the whole of Africa, is well endowed with sunshine all year round. The annual 24-hour global solar radiation average is about 220 W/m^2 for South Africa, compared with about 150 W/m^2 for parts of the USA, and about 100 W/m^2 for Europe.

This makes the local resource one of the highest in the world. The solar resource is the most readily accessible in South Africa. It lends itself to a number of potential uses.

The country's solar-equipment industry is developing. Annual photovoltaic (PV) panel-assembly capacity totals 5 MW, and a number of companies in South Africa manufacture solar water-heaters.

Solar power is increasingly being used for water-pumping through the rural water-provision and sanitation programme of the Department of Water Affairs.

Solar water-heating is used to a certain extent. Capacity installed includes domestic (330 000 m^2) and swimming pools (327 000 m^2), commerce and industry (45 000 m^2) and agriculture (4 000 m^2).

Three cooperatives with over 10 permanent employees each have been started in the Eastern Cape to maintain 8 000 solar home systems installed under the previous electrification programme.

Concentrating solar power (CSP) technologies use large, sun-tracking mirrors to concentrate solar radiation and generate steam for power generation.

Pilot, and more recently, commercial CSP power stations have provided the cheapest electricity to be generated using solar power. Eskom's CSP Project forms part of the South African Bulk Renewable Energy-Generation Programme.

The research will establish the feasibility of using CSP as a large-scale generation option for Eskom.

If implemented, the proposed plant will be the largest molten salt-type central receiver project in the world, which will represent a significant step in establishing solar power as a major future energy supply option in South Africa.

In October 2009, the Clinton Climate Intitiative partnered with government to assess the possibility of building its first solar park, which could add up to 5 000 MW of electricity to South Africa's energy.

The Minister of Energy, Ms Dipuo Peters, signed a memorandum of understanding (MoU) to assess the potential of building the infrustracture.

A solar park would serve as a concentrated zone of solar development and would include

significant solar-generation capacity by different independent power producers.

Solar-passive building design

Research has shown that low-cost housing could be made "energy smart" by using elementary "solar-passive building design" practice. This could result in fuel savings of as much as 65%, which could significantly benefit households' energy costs.

Energy-efficient homes may be constructed at the same direct cost (and lower life-cycle cost) as energy-wasteful houses. The challenge is to develop awareness and to ensure implementation of basic energy-efficiency principles. Government is considering the following building norms and standards: orientation for the purposes of passive solar design, lighting, and installation of solar water-heaters, insulation, ventilation, heating and air conditioning.

Solar-thermal power generation

The minimum direct normal radiation (DNR) to justify a combined solar-thermal power plant is 1 800 kWh/m^2 per year. According to the Renewable-Energy Resource Database, the area exceeding the minimum required DNR in South Africa covers about 194 000 km^2. A 100-MW solar-thermal plant requires roughly 3 km^2 (1 800 kWh/m^2 per year).

If 1% (1 940 km^2) of the identified area is available for solar-thermal power generation, South Africa has an installed potential of 64,6 GW, which is about 36 217 GWh per year. Back-up and energy-storage constraints are limiting the wider economical use of solar-electricity generation (solar thermal and PV).

Wind

Eskom's Klipheuwel, just north of Cape Town, is the first large wind-turbine facility in sub-Saharan Africa. The pilot phase of the Klipheuwel research and demonstration project ran from 2002 to 2005.

During that time, the Klipheuwel Pilot Wind Farm generated more than 12 GWh of electricity, thus reducing carbon-dioxide emissions by 11 000 t. The three wind turbines operated at an average availability of 90%. The project's research phase has been completed and the wind farm will be operated commercially for its anticipated 20-year lifespan as calculated from 2006.

The R75-million national demonstration project in Darling in the Western Cape was the first "green-energy" initiative in the country to produce electricity from wind power on a commercial basis.

The Darling Wind Farm has four wind turbines, which can supply 5,2 MW. All the electricity produced would be sold to the City of Cape Town as part of a long-term power agreement with the city. The facility consists of four German-designed wind turbines. The structures are 50 m high with the blades spanning 31 m. Each turbine will produce 1,3 MW, bringing the total output of the wind farm to 5,2 MW.

The project is referred to as the National Demonstration Project and would be used as an example for future public-private partnerships in the establishment of alternative electricity generation.

The project was developed through collaboration between the Darling Independent Power Producer, the Development Bank of Southern Africa and the CEF. The Danish International Development Agency also funded part of the project.

Hydro

The Baseline Study on Hydropower in South Africa, an assessment conducted by the former Department of Minerals and Energy, indicated that specific areas in the country show significant potential for developing all categories of hydropower in the short and medium term.

The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are endowed with the best potential for developing small, that is, less than 10 MW hydropower plants.

The advantages of these plants are that they can either be stand-alone or exist in a hybrid combination with other renewable-energy sources.

Advantage can be derived from the association with other uses of water (such as water supply, irrigation and flood control), which are critical to the future economic and socio-economic development of South Africa.

Eskom has started the construction of the Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme (1 332 MW) near Van Reenen, KwaZulu-Natal. It is expected that the first unit will be operational in 2013.

Ocean energy

Ocean energy could potentially be derived from the various characteristics of the sea. For example, the rise and fall of the waves could be converted into hydraulic pressure by mechanical compression devices.

Such pressure could drive a turbine generator to produce electricity, while the tidal variation, sea current and different thermal layers in the ocean could also be used.

The main reason why this energy resource is not currently being harnessed is that no reliable technology exists that can generate electricity from this resource.

Various companies are testing systems internationally to develop technically viable solutions. Once technical reliability has been proven, cost-effectiveness in relation to other solutions will have to be established.

Eskom continues with resource surveys of the Agulhas Current on the east coast of South Africa and of wave energy, in partnership with the Department of Environmental Affairs and the Bayworld Centre for Research and Education.

Results have proved the technical feasibility of extracting significant large-scale renewable energy from the current.

Sustainable development on the African continent

The Intergovernmental MoU on the Western Power Corridor Project was signed in October 2004.

This New Partnership for Africa's Development flagship programme intends to pilot the use of hydroelectric energy of the Inga rapids site in the DRC. It aims to ensure the security of supply in the Southern African Development Community (SADC).

The participating utilities are those of Namibia, South Africa, the DRC, Botswana and Angola.

A joint-venture company has been formed to initiate studies determining the viability of the project and to build, own and operate the infrastructure.

The main project outside South Africa's borders is Westcor. It entails a five-way intergovernmental MoU signed between the utilities of the DRC, Angola, Namibia, Botswana and South Africa. Westcor will tap into some of the potential in the DRC. The first project is Inga III, a 3 500-MW hydro plant on the Congo River.

At the same time, the countries to the north could benefit through access to the coal-fired power resources in the south. Such an arrangement should stabilise the energy requirements of the region well into this century.

Exploitation of the vast hydropower resources would constitute a significant infusion of renewable-energy resources into the energy economy of the region over the medium to long term.

The Lesotho Highlands Water Project could contribute some 72 MW of hydroelectric power to the system in the short term. Global pressures regarding the environmental impact and displacement of settlements by huge storage dams are likely to limit the exploitation of hydropower on a large scale.

Irrespective of the size of installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998).

Southern African Power Pool

The SAPP is the first formal power pool in Africa.

The objectives of the SAPP are, among other things, to:

- coordinate and cooperate in planning and operating electricity power systems to minimise costs, while maintaining reliability, autonomy and self-sufficiency
- increase interconnectivity between the SADC countries to increase the reliability of power supplies
- facilitate cross-border electricity trading
- fully recover operations costs and equitably share benefits, including reductions in generating capacity and fuel costs, and improved use of hydroelectric energy.

The SADC has joined hands to ensure that South Africa has enough electricity during the 2010 Soccer World Cup.

A Danish-South African joint venture is set to produce a new wind atlas of the country, determining the wind resources available for wind-energy generation.

Government aims to produce 10 000 Gigawatt/hour of elecitricity from renewable sources by 2013 – wind energy included.

About 20% of Denmark's electricity demand is generated by wind, and the country is eager to expand its energy-export sector to Africa.

An annual average wind speed of six meter per second (m/s) to 7 m/s is required to make wind-energy generation at wind farms possible.

According to the Department of Energy's South Africa Wind Energy Programme (Sawep), the country's existing atlases cannot assist industry in compiling bankable wind-energy projects for the country.

Sawep aims to increase South Africa's use of wind energy and is contributing R5 million to the Wind Atlas Project, with the Danish Embassy providing R20 million.

The project will specifically target the Western Cape, as well as areas of the Northern and Eastern Cape. The first version of the atlas is expected to be available in 2010.

Under the SAPP banner, the countries have pledged to support South Africa in areas of power generation, transmission, customer contributions and DSM. This initiative was part of Eskom's plans to ensure the reliability of electricity supply for the 2009 Confederations Cup and the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

The SAPP members include *Empresa National de Electricidade* in Angola, Botswana Power Co-operation, *Societe National d'Electricite* in the DRC and the Electricity Supply Commission of Malawi.

Energy and the global environment

South Africa is among the top 20 emitters of GHGs in the world and is the largest emitter in Africa, largely because of the economy's dependence on fossil fuels. It emits more than 400 Mt of carbon dioxide per year.

The National Climate Change Strategy, developed by the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, requires that government departments collaborate in a coordinated manner to ensure that response measures to climate change are properly directed and carried out with a national focus. The Department of Energy is expected to respond to and mitigate climate change.

South Africa is a developing country or a non-Annex 1 country.

This means that within the international political and negotiation context, South Africa is not required to reduce its GHG emissions. However, the South African economy depends greatly on fossil fuels for energy generation and consumption and therefore is a significant emitter due to relatively high values being derived from emission intensity and emissions per capita. These calculations make South Africa one of the top 15 most energy-intensive economies that contribute significantly to GHG emissions.

Therefore, South Africa must proactively move the economy towards becoming less carbon-intensive, with the Department of Energy playing a prominent role. The department has introduced systems to access investment through the CDM of the Kyoto Protocol. It has developed the *White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development*, together with an energy-efficiency programme, to support diversification in pursuit of a less carbon-intensive energy economy.

Energy and the national environment

There is some contention regarding the polluting effects of the energy sector, particularly in the Mpumalanga Highveld, where most of Eskom's coal-powered stations and the largest Sasol plants are located.

While the electricity planning process includes technologies that are currently commercially available, Eskom has modelled a number of scenarios to assess the future emission profiles and the potential contribution that near-commercial lower carbon-emitting technologies can make to an emission-reduction target.

The evaluation of these options to provide the required baseload capacity includes an assessment of the risks, challenges and opportunities to fast-track these options to a point where they can be considered to be viable. Examples include underground coal gasification, CSP and hydro imports.

Given the country's abundance of coal reserves and the need to balance emission reductions with the affordability of electricity, Eskom is looking for increasingly efficient ways of utilising coal. From a coal-technology perspective, there are a number of sources that continue to predict the future performance of clean coal technologies, in terms of emissions and costs.

Significant international research and demonstration are aimed at improving the efficiency of all these technologies. The technological advances to achieve these higher efficiencies are expected to mature gradually between 2009 and 2030. The next coal-fired power station (Kusile) will already be carbon-capture ready. The engineering design will cater for this requirement.

Energy and climate change

The Department of Environmental Affairs developed the Climate Change Strategy for the energy sector, which was scheduled for completion in 2009. The document will focus on GHG emissions and will support the department's mitigation activities.

The purpose of the strategy is to assist the department in establishing an effective response to climate change, which takes into consideration the key drivers and challenges for the sector.

The strategy is going to ensure that the Department of Energy contributes to mitigation efforts, and will position the department to address implications of international climate-change negotiations on the country's energy industry. The strategy will maximise potential benefits and minimise

risks where possible, considering technological opportunities in energy efficiency, renewable energy and carbon capture and storage. Possible mitigation measures for the energy industry as a whole will be addressed, not compromising economic growth and development and other environmental objectives.

Energy and the household environment

Coal is used by about 950 000 households countrywide. This causes indoor air-pollution problems, which have a serious health impact.

It has been found that in some cases, especially regarding particulate matter, exposure can exceed World Health Organisation (WHO) standards (180 mg/m^3) by factors of six to seven during winter, and two to three in summer. A national programme has been established to introduce low-smoke energy alternatives into the townships.

Fuel wood is used by millions of rural households as their primary energy source. Studies have shown that fuel-wood users are exposed to even higher levels of particulate emissions than coal users. In one study, exposure levels were found to exceed the WHO lowest-observed-effect level by 26 times. The Department of Energy participates in the National Housing Interdepartmental Task Team and has contributed towards the development of norms and standards for solar-passive and thermally-efficient housing design.

The department is investigating the introduction of improved woodstoves and other alternatives, such as solar cookers and biogas, in an attempt to address these pollution problems.

The *White Paper on the Promotion of Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development (2002)* commits South Africa to producing 5% of the country's energy supply from renewable energy sources by 2013.

Acknowledgements

Budget Review 2008
Business Day
Business Report
Department of Minerals and Energy
Developmental Indicators, 2009
Energy Efficiency Strategy, First Review
Digest of South African Energy Statistics – 2006 published by the Department of Minerals and Energy
Engineering News
Eskom
Sasol Facts, 2009
South Africa: The Good News
www.ecdc.co.za
www.cef.org.za
www.engineeringnews.co.za
www. eskom.co.za (Knowledge Centre: Coal Powers)
www.globaldialogue.info
www.gov.za
www.hartrao.ac.za
www.miningweekly.co.za
www.sabcnews.com
www.sasol.co.za
www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Bond, P, Dada, R and Erion, G (eds). 2009. *Climate Change, Carbon Trading and Civil Society: Negative Returns on South African Investments*. Scotsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

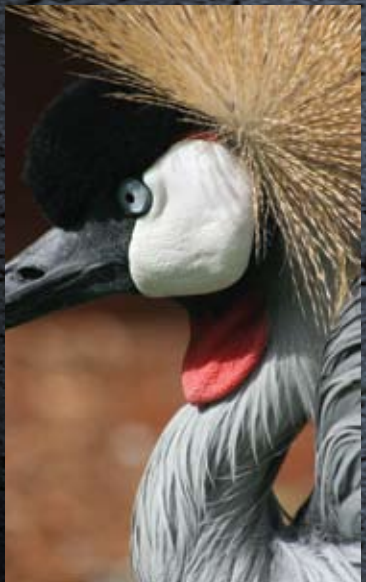
Kessides, IN, Bogetic, Z and Maurer, L. 2007. *Current and Forthcoming Issues in the South African Electricity Sector*. Washington, DC: World Bank.

Mazema, HK *et al.* 2008. *A Pilot Study into Available Upstream Cleaner Production Technologies for the Petroleum Refining Industry to Meet the Requirements of the Waste Discharge Charge System*. Gezina: Water Research Commission.

Winkler, H. 2009. *Cleaner Energy, Cooler Climate: Developing Sustainable Energy Solutions for South Africa.* Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council Press.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS



South Africa is the third most biodiversity-rich country in the world. It has a diversity of landscapes and natural beauty to match the variety in culture and language. Increasingly, this natural beauty is used to untangle the social injustices of the past and unlock economic benefits to local communities.

In 2009, the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism's fisheries responsibilities moved to the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries. The tourism component became a separate department.

The vision of the Department of Environmental Affairs is a prosperous and equitable society living in harmony with its environment and natural resources.

The department's objective is to maximise economic growth while effectively managing the interface between the environment and development. Furthermore, the department also leads the environmental sector of the Expanded Public Works Programme and promotes the global sustainable development agenda.

The provincial conservation agencies are major role players, and independent statutory organisations such as the South African National Parks (SANParks) and the South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi) are valuable partners in the country's total conservation effort.

Policy and legislation

The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act 10 of 2004), provides a regulatory framework to protect South Africa's valuable species, ecosystems and its biological wealth. It implements the *White Paper on the Conservation and Sustainable Use of South Africa's Biological Diversity (1997)* and multilateral agreements such as the United Nations (UN) Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), which came into force in December 1993.

South Africa is a signatory to the CBD, which provides the framework, norms and standards for the conservation, sustainable use and equitable benefit-sharing of South Africa's biological resources.

The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003 (Act 57 of 2003), provides for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas that are representative of South Africa's biological diversity, its natural landscapes and seascapes, and the management of these.

The Act envisages a national register of protected areas, with a simplified classification system of national parks, nature reserves and protected environments.

It also introduces the concept of biological-diversity protection and ecosystem management. Biodiversity, conservation and ecosystem management are noted as important aims in policy and legislation that govern marine and coastal resources, fresh water and natural forests.

The Act proposes a new system of protected areas, linking various kinds of protected environments to replace the existing fragmented system.

In addition, the Act enables the Minister of Environmental Affairs to acquire private land by purchasing land rights for the creation of protected areas.

Based on experience with biosphere reserves, and informed by the new bioregional approach to conservation (linking the protected-area network along mountains, rivers, wetlands, the coastline and other areas of natural vegetation), the Act will result in an interlocking system of protected areas that explicitly encourages the inclusion of private land.

It recognises that people are the custodians of the land, that they need to be involved in the management of the protected land and that they should benefit from it.

The Act caters for concurrent competence in the management of protected land. For example, an area with national-park status can now be managed by another agency, such as a provincial parks authority. Steps have been taken to ensure that standards are upheld.

Regulations in terms of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 31 of 2004), provide for the proper administration of specific nature reserves, national parks and world heritage sites.

South Africa is one of only two countries in the world to have promulgated legislation specifically related to the World Heritage Convention (the other being Australia), which was adopted by the UN in 1972.

The country's World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999), stipulates that all world heritage sites must have an integrated management plan in place to ensure cultural and environmental protection and sustainable development of the site.

The National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008), came into effect on 1 July 2009. The Act, with its focus on the waste sector, will change the way in which waste is dealt with. The legislation provides for the drawing up of a National Waste-Management Strategy within two years.

A consultation process has been initiated for the Waste Information System Regulations, as well as the Healthcare Risk Waste Regulations. These regulations are expected to be finalised during 2010/11.

The national policy on the thermal treatment of hazardous and general waste has been finalised and will be implemented during 2010/11.

The implementation of the asbestos regulations, promulgated in 2007/08 to prohibit the use, manufacture, import and export of asbestos and asbestos-containing materials, has progressed well.

World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD)

Johannesburg hosted the WSSD in September 2002. The agreements reached in Johannesburg are a guide to action that will take forward the UN Millennium Summit Declaration's goal of halving world poverty by 2015, and will incorporate decisions taken by world bodies since the Rio Earth Summit in 1992.

Among the achievements of the WSSD was the launch of over 300 partnerships, including 32 energy initiatives, 21 water programmes and 32 programmes for biodiversity and ecosystem management.

The biggest success was getting the world to turn the UN Millennium Declaration into a concrete set of programmes and to mobilise funds for these programmes. The WSSD focused on the most marginalised sectors of society, including women, the youth, indigenous people and people with disabilities. The implementation plan includes programmes to deliver water, energy, healthcare, agricultural development and a better environment for the world's poor. It also incorporates targets for the reduction of poverty and the protection of the environment.

Targets set at the summit will have an enormous impact, including the following:

- the number of people without basic sanitation and access to safe drinking water will be halved by 2015
- biodiversity loss is to be reversed by 2010, and collapsed fish stocks restored by 2015
- chemicals with a detrimental health impact will be phased out by 2020
- energy services will be extended to 35% of African households over the next 10 years.

National Framework for Sustainable Development (NFSD)

The purpose of the NFSD is to enunciate South Africa's national vision for sustainable development and indicate strategic interventions to reorientate South Africa's development path in a more sustainable direction. It proposes a national vision, principles and area for strategic intervention that will enable and guide the development of the national strategy and action plan.

The NFSD seeks to build on existing programmes and strategies that have emerged in the first 16 years of democracy. It sets the framework for a common understanding and vision of sustainable development, describes the South African context and defines areas for strategic intervention. The NFSD complements current efforts aimed at reducing poverty and growing the economy. It enhances the need for coherence and consideration of natural resource constraints and ecosystem services.

In the Johannesburg Plan of Implementation (JPoI), negotiated at the WSSD, countries committed to preparing and implementing national strategies for sustainable development.

In line with the WSSD targets, the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism led a process towards the development of a single, coherent framework that articulates South Africa's development context, and sets out the common vision and strategic areas of intervention for achieving sustainable development. Phase One of a three-phase process, through a series of dialogues, has culminated in the development of the NFSD.

Biological diversity

South Africa enjoys the third-highest level of biodiversity in the world. The country's rich natural heritage is vast and staggering in its proportions.

Although the country covers only 2% of the world's land area, nearly 10% of the world's plants and 7% of its reptiles, birds and mammals are found here. In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians, South Africa is ranked as the fifth richest country in Africa and the 24th richest in the world. It is one of only 17 countries that collectively contain two thirds of the world's biodiversity. The three internationally recognised biodiversity hotspots in South Africa are the Cape Floral Region in the south, the Succulent Karoo

that the country shares with Namibia, and that of Maputoland-Pondoland in the east, which extends into Swaziland and Mozambique.

South Africa's marine life is similarly diverse, partly as a result of the extreme contrast between the water masses on the east and west coasts.

Three water masses – the cold Benguela current, the warm Agulhas current, and oceanic water – make the region one of the most oceanographically heterogeneous in the world.

According to the *White Paper on the Conservation and Sustainable Use of South Africa's Biological Diversity (1997)*, over 10 000 plant and animal species – almost 15% of the coastal species known worldwide – are found in South African waters, with about 12% of these occurring nowhere else.

The country's natural heritage is best described according to a systematic classification of regions, or biomes. A biome is a broad ecological unit representing a major life zone, which extends over a large area, and contains relatively uniform plant and animal life closely connected with environmental conditions, especially climate.

The White Paper states that South Africa is one of six countries in the world with an entire plant kingdom within its national confines. The Cape Floral Kingdom has the highest-recorded species diversity for any similar-sized temperate or tropical region in the world.

Other biomes in the country are also of global conservation significance. For example, one third of the world's succulent plant species are found in South Africa.

There are eight major terrestrial biomes, or habitat types, in South Africa, which can, in turn, be divided into 70 veld types.

The degree to which each of these biomes is threatened varies, depending on the fertility of the soil, the economic value derived from use of the area, human population pressures and the extent to which the biome is conserved in protected areas.

The conservation status of important biomes, including grassland, succulent karoo and lowland fynbos, was improved through some inclusions into the national parks system. Some 24 000 ha of grassland was added to the Golden Gate Highlands National Park in November 2008 with the declaration of the former QwaQwa Reserve as part of the national park.

An agreement was signed with De Beers in November 2008 for the incorporation into the Namaqua National Park of 35 000 ha of the sandveld vegetation type between the Groen and Spoeg rivers. Both the Namaqua National Park and the Tankwa Karoo National Park in the succulent Karoo Biome have been expanded to over 100 000 ha. The Addo Elephant National Park has been extended to over 164 000 ha.

Savanna Biome

The Savanna Biome is the largest biome in southern Africa, occupying 46% of its area, and over one third the area of South Africa. This biome is an area of mixed grassland and trees, and is generally known as bushveld.

In the Northern Cape and Kalahari sections of this biome, the most distinctive trees are the camel thorn (*Acacia erioloba*) and the camphor bush (*Tarchonanthus camphoratus*).

In Limpopo, the portly baobab (*Adansonia digitata*) and the candelabra tree (*Euphorbia ingens*) dominate. The central bushveld is home to species such as the knob thorn (*Acacia nigrescens*), bushwillow (*Combretum spp.*), monkey thorn (*Acacia galpinii*), mopani (*Colophospermum mopane*) and wild fig (*Ficus spp.*). In the valley bushveld of the south, euphorbias and spekboom trees (*Portulacaria afra*) dominate.

Abundant wild fruit trees provide food for many birds and animals in the Savanna Biome. Grey loeries, hornbills, shrikes, flycatchers and rollers are birds typical of the northern regions. The subtropical and coastal areas are home to Knysna loeries, purple-crested loeries and green pigeons. Raptors occur throughout the biome. The larger mammals include lion, leopard, cheetah, elephant, buffalo, zebra, rhinoceros, giraffe, kudu, oryx, waterbuck, hippopotamus and many others.

About 8,5% of the biome is protected. The Kruger National Park, Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, iSimangaliso Wetlands Park (formerly Greater St Lucia Wetlands Park) and other reserves are located in the Savanna Biome.

Nama-Karoo Biome

The Nama-Karoo is the third-largest biome in South Africa, covering about 20,5% of the country or more than 260 000 km^2. It stretches across the vast central plateau of the western half of the country and is a semi-desert that receives a little rain in summer.

Rainfall varies from about 200 mm a year in the west to 400 mm a year in the north-east. Summer is very hot and winter is very cold with frequent frost.

Most of the plants are low shrubs and grass. Many plants are deciduous. Trees such as the sweet thorn (*Acacia karoo*) are usually only found along rivers or on rocky hillsides.

Common animals include the bat-eared fox, ostrich, spring hare, tortoises and brown locust. The riverine rabbit is a threatened species found in the Nama-Karoo Biome.

This biome includes the Namaland area of Namibia, and the central Karoo area of South Africa.

Because of low rainfall, rivers are non-perennial. Cold and frost in winter and high temperatures in summer demand special adaptations from plants. The vegetation of this biome is mainly low shrubland and grass, with trees limited to water courses.

Only 1% of the Nama-Karoo Biome falls within officially protected areas, of which the Karoo and Augrabies national parks are the largest.

Overgrazing and easily eroded soil surfaces are causing this semi-desert to creep slowly in on the neighbouring savanna and grassland biomes.

Grassland Biome

The Grassland Biome is found chiefly on the high central plateau of South Africa, and the inland areas of KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape. The topography is mainly flat and rolling, but includes the escarpment itself. Altitude varies from near sea level to 2 850 m above sea level.

The Grassland Biome covers an estimated 339 237 km of South Africa's landscape and stretches across seven of the country's nine provinces. This biome is a summer-rainfall area with heavy thunderstorms and hail in summer, and frost in winter.

A number of perennial rivers such as the Orange, Vaal, Pongola, Kei and Umzimvubu originate in, and flow through, the area.

Trees are scarce and are found mainly on hills and along riverbeds.

Karee (*Rhus lancea*), wild currant (*Rhus pyroides*), white stinkwood (*Celtis africana*) and several acacia species are the most common.

The Grassland Biome has the third-largest number of indigenous plant species in the country.

Eight mammal species endemic to South Africa occur in a wild state in this biome. Two of these, namely the black wildebeest and the blesbok, occur mainly in the Grassland Biome.

The area is internationally recognised as an area of high species endemicity as far as birds are concerned. Birds commonly found in the area include the black korhaan, blue crane, guinea-fowl and other grassland birds.

Succulent Karoo Biome

The Succulent Karoo Biome covers a flat to gently undulating plain, with some hilly and "broken" veld, mostly situated to the west and south of the escarpment, and north of the Cape Fold Belt.

One of the natural wonders of South Africa is the annual blossoming of the Namaqualand wild flowers (mainly of the family *Asteraceae*), which transforms the semi-desert of the Northern Cape into a fairyland. After rain, the drab landscape is suddenly covered from horizon to horizon with a multicoloured carpet (from August to October, depending on the rainfall).

This is a winter-rainfall area with extremely dry and hot summers. Succulents with thick, fleshy leaves are plentiful. Most trees have white trunks to reflect the heat.

The quiver tree (*Aloe dichotoma*) and the human-like elephant's trunk (*Pachypodium namaquanum*) are prominent in the Richtersveld. Grass is scarce.

The animal life is similar to that of neighbouring biomes (Fynbos and Nama-Karoo).

The Richtersveld, Tankwa Karoo and Namaqua national parks as well as the new Hantam National Botanical Garden outside Nieuwoudtville in the Northern Cape have improved the conservation status of this biome considerably.

The Succulent Karoo Biome includes 2 800 plant species at increased risk of extinction.

Fynbos Biome

The Fynbos Biome is one of the six accepted floral kingdoms of the world. This region covers only 0,04% of the land surface of the globe.

Fynbos is found mainly in the Western Cape. This is a winter-rainfall area and the fynbos vegetation is similar to that of Mediterranean regions.

Fynbos is the name given to a group of evergreen plants with small, hard leaves (such as those in the Erica family). It is made up mainly of the protea, heathers and restio, and incorporates a diversity of plant species (more than 8 500 kinds, over 6 000 of which are endemic).

The Fynbos Biome is famous for the protea, for which South Africa is renowned. The biome also contains flowering plants now regarded as garden plants, such as freesia, tritonia, sparaxis and many others.

Protected areas cover 13,6% of the Fynbos Biome and include the Table Mountain and Agulhas national parks.

This biome is not very rich in bird and mammal life, but does include the endemic Cape grysbok, the geometric tortoise, Cape sugarbird and the protea seed-eater. The mountains are the habitat of the leopard, baboon, honey-badger, caracal, rhebuck and several types of eagle and dassies.

Forest Biome

South Africa's only significant forests are those of Knysna and Tsitsikamma in the Western and Eastern Cape, respectively.

Other reasonably large forest patches that are officially protected are in the high-rainfall areas of the eastern escarpment, and on the eastern seaboard. Forest giants such as yellowwood (*Podocarpus spp.*), ironwood (*Olea capensis*) and lemonwood (*Xymalos monospora*) dominate.

The indigenous forests are a magical world of ferns, lichens, and colourful forest birds such as the Knysna loerie, the endangered Cape parrot and the rameron pigeon. Mammals include the endangered samango monkey, bushpig, bushbuck and the delicate blue duiker.

Thicket Biome

The Thicket Biome is the second smallest biome in South Africa, and is known for its high biodiversity.

Subtropical thicket ranges from closed shrubland to low forest, dominated by evergreen succulent trees, shrubs and vines.

It is often impenetrable and has little herbaceous cover. Roughly 20% of the species in the Thicket Biome are endemic to it.

The Thicket Biome is centred predominantly in the Eastern Cape.

Important dates:
World Wetlands Day: 2 February
National Water Week: 19 to 25 March
Earth Day: 20 March
World Water Day: 22 March
World Meteorological Day: 23 March
World Environment Day: 5 June
World Oceans Day: 8 June
World Desertification Day: 17 June
National Arbour Week: 1 to 7 September
International Day for the Protection of the Ozone Layer: 16 September
World Tourism Day: 27 September
World Habitat Day: 4 October
National Marine Day: 20 October

The Thicket Biome in the Eastern Cape supports four species of tortoises: the leopard tortoise (*Geochelone pardalis*), angulate tortoise (*Chersina angulata*), tent tortoise (*Psammobates tentorius*) and parrot-beaked tortoise (*Homopus areolatus*).

Desert Biome

True desert is found under very harsh environmental conditions, which are even more extreme than those found in the Succulent Karoo and the Nama-Karoo biomes. The climate is characterised by summer rainfall, but also by high levels of summer aridity. Rainfall is highly variable from year to year. Desert is found mostly in Namibia, although it does occur in South Africa in the lower Orange River Valley.

The vegetation of the Desert Biome is characterised by the dominance of annual plants (often annual grasses). This means that after a rare season of abundant rain, the desert plains can be covered with a sea of short annual grass, whereas in drier years, the plains appear bare with the annual plants persisting in the form of seeds.

Perennial plants are usually encountered in specialised habitats associated with local concentrations of water. Common examples of such habitats are broad drainage lines or washes. Nearer the coast, the role of coastal fog also governs the distribution of certain species commonly associated with the desert.

The Desert Biome incorporates an abundant insect fauna, which includes many tenebrionid beetles, some of which can use fog water. There are also various vertebrates, including reptiles, springbok, ostrich, gemsbok, snakes and geckos.

Some areas in the Desert Biome are formally protected in the Richtersveld National Park.

Conserving biodiversity

Biodiversity plays a crucial role in sustainable development and poverty eradication.

South Africa as a biodiversity-rich country, is committed to the conservation and sustainable management of biological resources and is signatory to the following biodiversity-related multilateral agreements:

- CBD
- Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety
- Ramsar Convention
- Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species (Cites)
- Convention to Combat Desertification (UNCCD)
- Convention on Migratory Species.

South Africa's commitment as a signatory to these agreements is shown by its compliance with their

many requirements and provisions. South Africa has developed a suite of biodiversity-related laws, policies and programmes, cutting across various government departments to address its priority policies and to comply with international agreements.

The publication in 2006 of the *National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment* (NSBA) by the then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and Sanbi, revealed that 34% of South Africa's ecosystems were threatened, with 5% critically endangered; while 82% of the 120 main rivers were threatened and 44% critically endangered. Of the 13 groups of estuarine biodiversity, three are in critical danger and 12% of marine biozones are under serious threat.

Because of the geographic spread and diversity of South Africa's plant and animal species – up to 80% of significant biodiversity lies outside existing protected areas – a traditional approach to conservation is inadequate. Biodiversity priorities have to be integrated with all policies, plans and programmes.

South Africa's National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP) guides conservation and the management of biodiversity to ensure sustainable and equitable benefits for all communities.

The NBSAP highlights five strategic objectives, such as the need for a network of protected areas that conserves a sample of all South Africa's biodiversity; specifies how these are to be realised; and sets five- and 15-year targets for each.

The NBSAP also provides for the entrenchment of biodiversity concerns in production sectors, such as mining and forestry, by focusing on the inclusion of biodiversity priorities in guidelines and codes of best practice, and on measures to encourage sustainable production practices.

The NBSAP informs the creation, in law, of the National Biodiversity Framework to ensure an integrated, coordinated and consistent approach to biodiversity management by organs of state in all spheres of government, non-governmental organisations (NGOs), the private sector, local communities, other stakeholders and the public.

South African Biosystematics Initiative (Sabi)

Sabi is an initiative of the National Research Foundation (NRF) and plays a leading role in the application of innovative approaches to systematics and taxonomy as fundamental sciences underpinning biological research.

In this way, it plans to unlock the full potential of South Africa's biological and human resources through the enhanced practice of biosystematic science, and to use modern technology to build on an existing rich historical scientific legacy, including indigenous knowledge systems.

Some of Sabi's primary objectives include establishing a framework and strategy to:

- address the diminishing national capacity in biological systematics and taxonomy
- provide leadership and coordination to promote innovative research in the field of biosystematics
- empower South African biosystematists to employ and develop modern scientific technologies and approaches regarding the documentation and use of biological resources
- enhance the ability of South African biosystematists to contribute to the National System of Innovation and the information society, and thus respond to national priorities in agriculture, health, sustainable development and conservation.

South African Environmental Observation Network (SAEON)

The SAEON is a facility of the NRF. Its main aim is to establish and maintain environmental observatories, field stations and sites, linked by an information-management network, to serve as research and education platforms for the long-term study of ecosystems. It provides for incremental advances in understanding ecosystems and the ability to detect, predict and react to environmental changes.

The SAEON satisfies the need for public-decision support by generating information relevant to the sustainable management of natural resources and habitats over a spectrum of eco-regions and land uses, ranging from pristine to urbanisation-transformed landscapes.

Wildlife Biodiversity Resources or Biobank South Africa

With the growing global market in biomaterial and biodiversity informatics, developing countries such as South Africa face the challenge of setting up systems for governing access to biodiversity and the sustainable use of their biodiversity heritage.

The biosciences field is recognised as the driving force behind the next revolutionary wave of scientific and technological advancement.

Biobank facilities (genebanks) are increasingly becoming a key strategic research infrastructure

for countries worldwide. Their importance in the conservation and sustainable use of biodiversity has, among other things, been emphasised in the Consolidated Plan of Action for Science and Technology.

This has led to the then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism collaborating with Wildlife Biodiversity Resources or Biobank South Africa to help facilitate, through its member organisations, an integrated and coordinated drive to access, collect, enhance and bank a representative range of biomaterial from key South African and African wildlife and indigenous livestock species for conservation, research and biotechnology development purposes.

This facility also provides general custodianship to South Africa's wildlife biomaterial and/or genetic resources.

Genebanks

The Department of Science and Technology and the Agricultural Research Council (ARC) support the maintenance, management and development of national public assets for the benefit of the broader science community.

They are national repositories of genetic information and terrestrial data related to the environment, and include specimens of and facilities that house all insects and support arachnids, nematodes, fungi and various other genebanks.

South Africa has international obligations that compel it to keep reference collections of all agricultural specimens regarding the import and export of agricultural produce.

The national collections and genebanks house these reference collections and make an important contribution to scientific studies, biodiversity replenishment, sustainable development and production, food security and invader-pest identification.

South African National Biodiversity Institute

Sanbi was established on 1 September 2004 with the renaming of the National Botanical Institute in terms of the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004.

Sanbi with its head office based at the Pretoria National Botanical Garden, is an autonomous state-aided institute whose vision is to be the leading institution in biodiversity science in Africa, facilitating conservation and the sustainable development of living resources and human well-being. In addition to new biodiversity-related initiatives linked to the Act, traditional activities undertaken by Sanbi include:

- collecting, displaying and cultivating plants indigenous to South Africa
- undertaking and promoting research into indigenous plants and related matters
- studying, researching and cultivating threatened plant species
- promoting the economic potential of indigenous plants
- running environmental-education programmes.

Sanbi manages nine national botanical gardens (classified as "conservation gardens") in five of South Africa's nine provinces. The gardens collectively attract over 1,25 million visitors a year, are signatories to the International Agenda for Botanic Gardens in Conservation, which was launched in 2000, and are founding members of the African Botanic Gardens Network.

The largest garden is Kirstenbosch, situated on the eastern slopes of Table Mountain in Cape Town. It displays 5 300 indigenous plant species.

Kirstenbosch receives more than 750 000 visitors annually. The Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden houses the Kirstenbosch Research Centre, the Rufford Maurice Laing Centre for Biodiversity Conservation, Gold Fields Environmental Education Centre, the Botanical Society Conservatory, two restaurants, a conference venue, gift shops, a coffee bar, concert venues, sculpture exhibits and the Centre for Home Gardening, which includes an indigenous plant retail nursery.

The other gardens in the national network are the Karoo Desert in Worcester, Harold Porter in Betty's Bay, Free State in Bloemfontein, KwaZulu-Natal in Pietermaritzburg, Lowveld in Nelspruit, Walter Sisulu in Roodepoort/Mogale City, Hantam outside Niewoudtville, and the Pretoria National Botanical Garden.

The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, the second-largest herbarium in the southern hemisphere.

The Harold Porter National Botanical Garden boasts *Disa uniflora* in its natural habitat (flowering from mid-December to the end of January), and South Africa's national flower, the king protea *(Protea cynaroides)*.

The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden accommodates more than 600 naturally occurring plant species, over 230 bird species and a number of reptiles and small mammals. These include jackal and antelope, which occur in the natural areas of the garden.

This garden receives some 180 000 visitors annually and is the fastest-growing of the Sanbi-managed gardens. It covers over 275 ha

and consists of landscaped and natural areas. All the garden's plants are indigenous to southern Africa.

Hantam, South Africa's ninth National Botanical Garden, covers 6 300 ha of land on the Bokkeveld Plateau, which is famous for its range and density of bulbous plants, to the extent that Nieuwoudtville is often referred to as the "Bulb Capital of the World".

Some 40% of the local flora consist of bulbs that create spectacular displays every autumn and spring. The garden also incorporates large natural patches of renosterveld fynbos and succulent Karoo vegetation. Almost a third of the species endemic to the Bokkeveld Plateau are threatened with extinction.

Sanbi operates environmental-education programmes within its national botanical gardens, and outreach greening programmes focused on promoting indigenous gardening at disadvantaged schools in surrounding areas.

Herbaria and taxonomic research

Sanbi documents, investigates, classifies and names southern Africa's biota. It is here that fundamental biodiversity information is generated and made available to other stakeholders.

Sanbi researches the evolution, diversity, distribution and relationships of southern Africa's 24 000 species of plants, based on the Sanbi collection of over 1,8 million specimens. Biosystematics research at Sanbi focuses on morphological, molecular and anatomical observational studies and is mostly carried out in Sanbi's three herbaria.

The National Herbarium in Pretoria houses more than 1,2 million preserved plant specimens.

The Crompton Herbarium in Cape Town focuses mainly on the flora of the winter-rainfall region of southern Africa, while the KwaZulu-Natal Herbarium in Durban primarily focuses on the flora of the subtropical eastern region of South Africa, in particular the flora of the province.

South Africa, with its 11 700 endemic plant species, has the richest temperate flora in the world. Sanbi is increasingly embracing biodiversity in its broadest sense through inclusion of the country's fauna as part of its taxonomic research mandate. Sanbi is coordinating a catalogue of all South Africa's species (at least 100 000), including animals, through the South African Tree of Life Project.

Biodiversity research

Applied biodiversity research

The Applied Biodiversity Research Division aims to use Sanbi's position and resources to strengthen research in key areas of applied biodiversity research. It builds on the success of past work in conservation science and sustainable use but also develops research in several new directions.

The underlying objective of the research is to develop a predictive understanding of biodiversity dynamics within the context of a changing environment and ongoing interactions between people and biodiversity.

The research focuses on three main areas:

- risks and responses to threats
- the value and use of species and ecosystems
- understanding the dynamics of species and ecosystems of special concern.

There are also three important cross-cutting functions that contribute to all the research areas, namely:

- long-term research and monitoring
- molecular ecology
- population demography and statistical ecology.

Risks and responses

Many decisions relating to biodiversity depend on understanding the risks to biodiversity and society and the opportunities associated with addressing these risks. The research focuses on understanding and managing the risks of invasive species, land use and other global change drivers, as well as the impact of genetically modified organisms released into the environment.

Climate change is a significant risk factor and the Applied Biodiversity Research Division therefore works together with Sanbi's climate-change and bio-adaptation divisions to provide an understanding of global-change issues.

Sustainable use of species and ecosystem services

South Africa has a wealth of biodiversity and all communities in the country rely to some extent on goods and services linked to biodiversity. The livelihoods of the country's poor, especially in rural areas, will continue to depend on natural resources but ecosystems also provide services that are essential for overall economic development, sustainable agriculture and tourism, and meeting the millennium development goals. This portfolio of research focuses on the sustainable use of species and ecosystem services and the link between biodiversity and these services.

Species and ecosystems of special concern

Decisions regarding conservation management, planning and regulation often require information on particular species or ecosystems, or knowledge about how species and ecosystems are responding to particular threats. Sanbi promotes research that focuses on threatened species and ecosystems and species of special concern such as elephants.

Cross-cutting programmes

The division hosts the Fynbos Node of the SAEON, which is a key network for long-term monitoring of the environment, and also provides scarce skills in molecular ecology and statistical ecology, which are essential for many applied biodiversity projects.

Millennium Seed Bank (MSB)

The MSB Project in South Africa is part of a 10-year international programme that aims to collect and conserve 10% of the world's seed-bearing plant species (some 24 000 species) in the MSB facility of the Royal Botanic Gardens in Kew by 2010. The MSB International Programme has established major partnerships with organisations in 16 countries worldwide.

Sanbi joined the international programme in 2000 and aims to make a significant contribution to this effort by collecting and conserving 2 500 of South Africa's indigenous flora in the seed bank. Priority is given to plant species of conservation concern as well as species occurring in threatened ecosystems and habitats.

During 2008/09, 403 seed collections were made, of which 290 collections were estimated to be new additions to the MSB. By mid-2009, the MSB Project in South Africa had collected and conserved seed of about 2 475 species and was well on track of reaching the target of 2 500 indigenous plant species by 2010.

Greening the Nation Programme

The Department of Environmental Affairs has funded a national greening initiative through the Poverty Relief Fund. This initiative is implemented by Sanbi and aims to:

- provide a green, clean and healthy environment in schools and other public spaces, such as cultural villages, streets, graveyards and other urban public spaces
- create job opportunities for local people where this initiative is being implemented
- build the capacity of the previously disadvantaged by providing skills-based training that will allow them permanent opportunities either in the job market or in accessing further education
- support the National School Nutrition Programme by developing fruit and vegetable gardens in schools
- enhance environmental education in schools by developing indigenous gardens, which are designed for educational purposes.

The programme has been implemented in Gauteng, Eastern Cape, Northern Cape, Western Cape, Free State, Mpumalanga and Limpopo.

By 2009, the following had been achieved:

- Over 200 schools throughout the country had been "greened" by developing indigenous gardens, vegetable gardens and the planting of fruit trees.
- Thousands of job opportunities had been created.
- More than 120 teachers nationally had been provided with formal and accredited training in environmental education through a partnership with Rhodes University.
- Seventy people had been trained in horticulture and landscaping skills at the Durban University of Technology and the University of South Africa.
- Thousands of indigenous trees had been planted throughout the country.
- Four community nurseries, which are owned by schools and/or communities, had been developed to support the greening projects.
- Over 40 small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs) were developed and used to access material and equipment. Those who were not registered were assisted to register and provided with equipment, and trained to provide horticultural services and maintenance in schools, cultural villages, parks and nurseries.

Working for Wetlands

Sanbi also manages the Working for Wetlands Programme, with its offices based at the Pretoria National Botanical Garden. The National Inventory Project, the first systematic assessment of the extent of South Africa's wetland resources, was completed.

A total of 121 642 individual wetlands were mapped, accounting for 7% of the country's surface area. Working for Wetlands has rehabilitated 91 wetlands, employed 1 710 people and provided 28 547 training days.

National Municipal Biodiversity Programme

Sanbi, in partnership with the former departments of provincial and local government and environmental affairs and tourism, has initiated the National Municipal Biodiversity Programme. The objective of the programme is to ensure that biodiversity and ecosystem services are effectively managed and are contributing to sustainable economic development and human well-being in municipalities across South Africa.

The programme completed an initial design phase during which lessons learnt from existing initiatives, programmes and projects were incorporated into a framework to guide the implementation of the programme.

Urban Conservation Programme

The Urban Conservation Programme is expanding its focus from being a Cape Town-based programme to becoming a national programme for biodiversity conservation in urban landscapes. The six-year old flagship project, Cape Flats Nature, is a partnership between Sanbi, the City of Cape Town, the Botanical Society of South Africa, Table Mountain Fund, Table Mountain National Park (TMNP) and CapeNature.

The project aims to mainstream biodiversity-management practice in urban landscapes, while taking into account socio-economic priorities. The Urban Conservation Programme also plays a role in the implementation of the Working for Wetlands Programme through restoring priority wetlands in the Cape Town metro.

The programme is a partner in the international Local Action for Biodiversity Project headed by ICLEI (Local Governments for Sustainability), which includes a team of 20 cities from around the world working to develop a set of appropriate interventions to address biodiversity-related issues within a cities context.

Policy support

Sanbi provides support to the Department of Environmental Affairs on the development of key biodiversity policy and implementation tools. This included further development of the National Biodiversity Framework.

Sanbi led the development of the draft list of threatened terrestrial ecosystems to be listed in terms of the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004. Ecosystems are listed as critically endangered or vulnerable, based on a set of criteria developed as part of the process. Sanbi supported the department in the development of a guideline for publishing bioregional plans in terms of the Act.

The guideline provides advice on the content of bioregional plans, and the process of developing and publishing such plans. Listing threatened ecosystems and publishing bioregional plans are key tools for enabling the integrated management of priority terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems and improving the quality of environmental authorisation decisions.

Sanbi provided technical support to the department on the development of the National Protected Area Expansion Strategy (NPAES). South Africa's protected area network currently falls short of sustaining biodiversity and ecological processes. The goal of the NPAES is to achieve cost-effective protected area expansion for ecological sustainability and increased resilience to climate change.

Bioregional and ecosystem programmes

Sanbi coordinates a number of bioregional and ecosystem programmes. Bioregional programmes are biome-wide biodiversity initiatives that coordinate a wide range of multisectoral projects with integrated conservation and development outcomes.

Sanbi coordinates the Grasslands Programme, the Fynbos Programme, Cape Action for People and the Environment (CAPE), the Succulent Karoo Ecosystem Programme (SKEP) and the Eastern Cape Bioregional Programme.

It also coordinates two ecosystem programmes, namely the Marine Ecosystem Programme and the Freshwater Ecosystem Programme.

Grasslands Programme

The Grasslands Programme is a partnership between government, the private sector, the academic sector and civil society with the aim of sustaining and securing the rich biodiversity and ecosystem services of the Grasslands Biome. The programme provides an enabling environment for mainstreaming biodiversity in production landscapes, including agriculture, forestry, urban development and coal mining.

The Global Environmental Facility (GEF) approved funding of US$8,3 million for the programme to catalyse mainstreaming interventions within the Grasslands Biome. The programme was officially launched on International Biodiversity Day in May 2008.

Implementation of the programme has been initiated in the production sectors through a

number of demonstration projects, including securing stewardship sites in the Wakkerstroom/Luneburg area in Mpumalanga; priority biodiversity sites in urban areas in Gauteng; developing a biodiversity toolkit; securing stewardship sites on forestry-owned land and ensuring appropriate expansion of new forestry plantations; and ensuring that the expansion of coal mining incorporates biodiversity information.

Cape Action for People and the Environment

CAPE is a programme involving a range of government and civil-society partners working on biodiversity-conservation projects within the Cape Floristic Region. The goal of the programme is to ensure that by 2020, the rich biological heritage of the Cape Floristic Region is protected, while delivering significant benefits to the people of the region. The programme continued to roll out the GEF-funded Biodiversity Conservation and Sustainable Development Project with a key focus on strengthening cooperative governance for improved biodiversity management in the Cape Floristic Region.

The programme has successfully consolidated and expanded the protected area estate through landscape initiatives and innovative stewardship contracts with landowners; developed fine-scale biodiversity plans for priority areas; developed management-effectiveness tracking tools for conservation areas; established business and biodiversity initiatives; and initiated partnerships for alien clearing.

Succulent Karoo Ecosystem Programme

SKEP aims to achieve people-focused biodiversity conservation through the development of strong partnerships in the Succulent Karoo Biome. The goal is to provide an opportunity for the people of the Succulent Karoo to take ownership of and enjoy their unique living landscape in a way that maintains biodiversity and improves livelihoods now and into perpetuity.

The programme has resulted in new land being added to the conservation estate through the establishment of conservancies and stewardship agreements; improvement in land management through alien clearing and biodiversity-friendly management practices; development of best-practice guidelines; and projects contributing to the alleviation of poverty via job creation and improvement in livelihoods.

The SKEPPIES Fund, a small grants fund enabling synergy between conservation initiatives and local economic development activities, created 19 businesses and 109 jobs, added value to existing businesses and developed the capacity of 350 people to engage in development and conservation activities.

Eastern Cape Bioregional Programmes

Sanbi coordinates the Eastern Cape Implementation Committee (ECIC), which is a cooperative governance committee established in partnership with the Eastern Cape Department of Economic Development and Environmental Affairs. The ECIC is a multistakeholder committee through which participating agencies can coordinate biodiversity-related activities and align environmental, social and economic development goals.

The Mainstreaming Biodiversity into Planning and Development Project is a partnership project aimed at building capacity for Eastern Cape land-use planners and decision-makers. Through this project, Sanbi hosted training workshops to guide the use of the Eastern Cape Biodiversity Conservation Plan in municipal planning processes to support sustainable economic growth.

Marine Ecosystem Programme

The Marine Ecosystem Programme has been a partnership between Sanbi, World Wide Fund for Nature South Africa (WWF-SA) and Marine and Coastal Management. The programme has focused on its flagship project, the Offshore Biodiversity Initiative, which promotes ecosystem-based management of South African's marine territory through the establishment of a network of offshore marine protected areas (MPAs) and cooperative biodiversity management.

Through this initiative, offshore industries, government and civil society are working together to secure the overall health of offshore marine ecosystems to meet the needs of present and future generations. Sanbi published the *Guidelines for Offshore MPAs in South Africa*, which were developed through research and stakeholder meetings. Sanbi initiated the Reef Atlas Project in collaboration with researches and offshore industries to improve knowledge of coral reefs, which have been identified as a vulnerable marine habitat.

Freshwater Ecosystem Programme

This programme aims to expand and consolidate the freshwater activities within Sanbi. This includes the management of the Working for Wetlands Programme on behalf of the departments of water affairs; environmental affairs; and agriculture, forestry and fisheries.

Sanbi is a partner of a nine-year research programme on wetlands that was initiated in 2002 to look at wetland rehabilitation, wetland health and integrity, and the sustainable use of wetlands. Sanbi and the Water Research Commission funded the development of the WET Management Series, a set of tools designed to help wetland workers assess the goods and services that wetlands provide, and to measure wetland health.

Assessing and monitoring indigenous fauna and flora

Biodiversity planning

Sanbi identifies priority areas for biodiversity conservation in South Africa through systematic biodiversity planning, providing a mechanism to guide the strategic use of limited conservation resources.

Sanbi has continued to support the initiation and development of provincial biodiversity plans, which are used as the basis for provincial protected area-expansion strategies and the publishing of bioregional plans. In 2008, the North West Biodiversity Conservation Assessment was completed. Five provinces, namely Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga, Eastern Cape and North West, have spatial provincial biodiversity plans. The four remaining provinces have all initiated the process of developing such plans.

Sanbi is involved in a project funded by the Biodiversity Monitoring Transect Analysis in Africa Project to map land degradation in Namaqualand, an arid area recognised internationally as one of the biodiversity hotspots. The results from this project will be used for biodiversity planning initiatives and for monitoring the state of biodiversity in the area.

The Deputy Minister of Environmental Affairs, Ms Rejoice Mabudafhasi, launched the National Youth Service Programme Pilot Project on Environment in Saldanha, Western Cape, in June 2009.

The department's commitment to youth development in the environment sector is illustrated by its R25-million investment in three youth-service pilot projects in the 2008/09 and 2009/10 financial years.

About 150 unemployed youth between the ages of 18 and 35 in the Saldanha municipal area were officially welcomed into a year of full-time service. The Saldanha Project will be expanded to include a further 250 youth in the next two years.

The youth will be working on environmentally focused projects, which include greening the environment, conserving natural resources, coastal management, waste management and upgrading public infrastructure.

In addition to serving their communities, the youth will be further empowered through training accredited by the National Qualifications Framework in the following areas: computer skills, entrepreneurship awareness, environmental technical training, as well as training to obtain a driver's licence. The youth will receive a stipend to cover their transport and basic necessities.

The other environmental youth-service pilot projects spearheaded by the department are in Johannesburg, Gauteng, and Hermanus in the Western Cape.

Assessing and monitoring threatened flora and fauna

Sanbi's Threatened Species Programme (TSP) focuses on assessing and monitoring threatened species and includes two subprogrammes: one on the conservation of threatened plants and the other on the conservation of threatened animals.

The threatened plant component of the TSP has conducted Red List conservation-status assessments of all 20 476 plant taxa in South Africa. Internationally, only 4% of the world's plant species have been assessed. The vast task of assessing South Africa's plants has resulted in an additional 6% of the worlds flora being assessed, bringing the total global assessments to over 10%.

The threatened plant monitoring project, Custodians of Rare and Endangered Wildflowers, which involves volunteers from a range of socio-economic and cultural backgrounds in the monitoring and conservation of threatened plants, has expanded with seven new volunteer groups starting in KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and the Eastern Cape.

The threatened animal component of the TSP coordinates several projects, which aim to capture species-occurrence records for groups of animals through public participation. The information from these projects is used to produce conservation assessments. The following projects are underway:

- The Southern African Butterfly Conservation Assessment (Sabca) was launched in May 2007. Sabca is a four-year partnership project between Sanbi, the Lepidopterists' Society of Africa and the Avian Demography Unit (ADU) at the University of Cape Town. The project aims to determine the distribution of and conservation priorities for all butterfly species in southern Africa (South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland), especially those threatened with extinction (*www.sabca.adu.org.za*).

- The South African National Survey of Arachnida, a partnership project between Sanbi and the Agricultural Research Council, launched in 2006, conducted successful field trips, identifying about 15 000 spiders and digitising 10 500 arachnid records. New species were collected and data on the 72 spider families were uploaded onto the website (*www.arc.agric.za*).
- The Southern African Reptile Conservation Assessment, the first of the atlasing projects launched, continued to attract public attention through television and radio broadcasts and other media. Over 4 000 records were submitted to the virtual museum and a number of field surveys were conducted (*www.sarca.adu.org.za*).
- The second South African Bird Atlas Project, a partnership project between Sanbi and the ADU, was relocated to the Sanbi's TSP (*www.sabap2.adu.org.za*).

Knowledge and information management

Sanbi developed the Knowledge and Information Management Strategy to coordinate and manage all of Sanbi's information resources. The South African Biodiversity Information Facility portal was transferred to Sanbi from the NRF. The South African Biodiversity Information Facility includes a network of data-providers and promotes the sharing of data and information under a common set of standards. Sanbi's Integrated Biodiversity Information System Project, which aims to centralise Sanbi's biodiversity-information databases and provide a web-based interface to improve access to resources, underwent final testing.

The Biodiversity Geographical Information System (BGIS) provides access to spatial biodiversity information on the website (*http://sanbi.bgis.org*) to inform biodiversity planning, research and land-use decision-making. A number of new spatial biodiversity planning projects have been uploaded on the website. BGIS provides training courses on how to use the website and the information provided. The website was replicated on a DVD, which has been widely distributed. The innovative Land-Use Decision Support Tool was developed to support land-use decision-making and provides a user-friendly, web-based decision-support system that assists environmental practitioners to assess the possible impacts of developments or land-use change.

Sanbi is mandated with monitoring the status of the country's biodiversity and has developed the National Monitoring and Reporting Framework and identified a set of headline indicators to achieve this. These indicators provide key statistics to give a quantitative measure of the status of various aspects of biodiversity. Sanbi developed the Species Status Database (*http://www.speciesstatus.sanbi.org*), which provides a centralised storage location for information on the status of South African species.

Climate Change and Bio-Adaptation Division

This division draws together the climate change-related projects that Sanbi has undertaken as part of its research activities, which began in the early 1990s. It is organised around five major themes:

- providing guidance on the policy implications of climate change for sustainable use of ecosystems and human livelihoods
- assessing the vulnerability of South Africa's biodiversity assets to climate change
- monitoring and projecting the impact of climate change on biodiversity (including species and ecosystem processes, such as wild fires)
- developing guidelines for adaptation to these changes
- communicating key climate-change findings to a wide range of stakeholders.

The division holds leadership positions in national and international science bodies, such as the Global Carbon Project, which assesses vulnerability of the global carbon cycle; and the South African Scientific Committee on Global Change.

Division members also hold leadership positions in international policy-relevant bodies, such as co-chairpersonship of the Ad Hoc Technical Expert Group on Climate Change and Biodiversity of the CBD and as part of the South African negotiating team for the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC).

The division is leading the development of South Africa's Second National Communication to the UNFCCC, which comprises an assessment of climate-change vulnerability and adaptation across all affected sectors.

Division scientists are actively pursuing innovative experiment-, modelling- and monitoring-based approaches to assess ongoing and future impacts of climate change on species and ecosystems. Several of these approaches engage members of the public in gathering and reporting data, and much effort has been made to produce various vehicles for the communication of findings, including pamphlets, public lectures and short courses.

Several products published by division scientists are widely cited and influential. The division attracts postdoctoral candidates from around

the world and trains postgraduate students who contribute to the effectiveness of further knowledge-generation and capacity-building in the field of climate change. Division scientists played a leading role in the Nobel-Prize winning *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change Fourth Assessment Report.*

Protected areas

The CBD, to which South Africa is a signatory, requires that 10% of the terrestrial and 20% of marine biodiversity be conserved by 2010. There are a number of management categories of protected areas in South Africa, which conform to the accepted categories of the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN).

South Africa has a long-term strategy to expand the conservation areas under formal protection from 6% to the international standard of 10% of the total area of the country. The Department of Environmental Affairs has developed mechanisms for the establishment and expansion of protected areas. Emphasis has been placed on the expansion and consolidation of protected areas, as well as the settlement of land claims in these areas. These efforts have resulted in the establishment of a new national park and the addition of large areas to existing national parks.

The department has committed significant financial resources towards the expansion of formal protected areas, bringing the number of national parks to 22, and the total formal conservation estate to four million hectares. Since 2004, the department declared four new MPAs, thus increasing the total coastline under protection to 20%.

The NSBA confirms that the current protected area network does not conserve a true representative sample of South Africa's biodiversity. Because of historical reasons, formal protected areas were often established with limited consideration to biodiversity and the maintenance of ecological processes. A large proportion of biological diversity and critical ecosystem processes are therefore found outside of terrestrial MPAs.

This has led to the development of the National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy. This strategy sets out a framework for the expansion of the protected areas network in South Africa so that a more representative sample of biological diversity may be conserved and managed.

SA Act Now! Combat Climate Change was the theme chosen to celebrate National Environment Month in June 2009.

South Africa is raising the bar on climate change as a significant element of its development agenda, with the March 2009 Climate Change Summit having laid the foundation for a participatory process to shape the way South Africans respond to climate change. The theme was particularly significant as it came at a time when South Africa was drafting a policy framework for climate change.

The Long-Term Mitigation Scenario on Climate Change was approved by Cabinet in 2008.

Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and the maintenance of genetic sources. Access is limited to researchers and staff. Examples of such areas are Marion Island and the Prince Edward islands near Antarctica.

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive in size, uninhabited and underdeveloped, and access is strictly controlled with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character.

Examples of wilderness areas are the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape, and the Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

National parks and equivalent reserves

SANParks promotes the conservation of the country's natural and cultural heritage at local, national and international level, and plays an important role in promoting ecotourism.

South Africa's national parks are:

- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park
- Blyde River National Park
- Camdeboo National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Groenkloof National Park
- Kalahari Gemsbok National Park (part of the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park)
- Karoo National Park
- Knysna National Lake Area
- Kruger National Park
- Marakele National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Mokala National Park
- Mountain Zebra National Park

- Namaqua National Park
- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier National Park
- TMNP (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)
- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- Tsitsikamma National Park
- Wilderness National Park
- West Coast National Park
- Wild Coast National Park.

Several flagship resource-use projects were initiated during 2008/09. A post-restitution programme to ensure sustainable resource use resulted in an agreement on cultural heritage resource-use protocols with the Khomani San community, including the contentious issue of traditional hunting and gathering of plants in the Kgalagadi Transfrontier National Park.

Other projects in national parks included the Suurvy Harvesting Project in Agulhas, the Rustafarian Rooiwortel Nursery Project in Knysna, the Kruger National Park Thatch Grass-Harvesting Project, the Outeniqua Eco Honeybee Farming Project in Wilderness, the Mopane Worm Harvesting Project in Mapungubwe and the Fern Harvesting Project in Tsitsikamma.

Transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs)

A TFCA is a cross-border region. The conservation status of the areas within a TFCA ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural-resource management areas to hunting-concession areas.

Although fences, highways, railway lines or other barriers separate the constituent areas, they are managed jointly for long-term sustainable use of natural resources. Unlike in transfrontier parks, free movement of animals between the components of a TFCA is not always possible.

TFCAs aim to facilitate and promote regional peace, cooperation and socio-economic development. The success of TFCAs depends on community involvement. In turn, TFCAs are likely to provide local communities with opportunities to generate revenue.

TFCAs are expected to allow tourists easy movement across international boundaries into adjoining conservation areas.

The seven TFCAs are as follows:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld TFCA
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kavango-Zambezi
- Greater Mapungubwe (former Limpopo-Shashe) TFCA
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area.

Boundless Southern Africa (BSA), the consolidated TFCA brand, was officially launched by nine southern African countries at the Tourism Indaba in Durban in May 2008.

Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Zambia and Zimbabwe unanimously showed their support for the brand as a means of showcasing the TFCAs in the Southern African Development Community region.

The BSA expedition departed from the Indaba in May 2009. The four-month long expedition raised awareness about TFCAs as tourist and investment destinations.

The 10 000-km expedition covered the nine countries, seven TFCAs and 30 national parks and nature reserves. It ended at the mouth of the Orange River in the Ai-Ais/Richtersveld TFCA in August 2009.

Biosphere reserves

The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 protects South Africa's biosphere reserves, which are generally formed around existing core conservation areas.

The Prince Edward islands are a recognised biodiversity hotspot and breeding ground for a spectacular array of marine birds and mammals, such as leopard seals, skuas and cormorants. Creatures such as the 14-m long colossal squid, which has never been caught alive, have also been sighted in their waters.

The islands are home to four penguin species, which establish their rookeries on the rugged beaches. There are substantial populations of king and macaroni penguins (450 000 and 750 000 respectively), 5% of all the southern rockhopper penguins on Earth and 0,5% of gentoo penguins.

The southern rockhopper species is endangered, while macaroni penguins are vulnerable and gentoos are near threatened. The king penguin is not under threat.

Other birds found on the islands include five species of albatross, namely the wandering, grey headed, Indian yellow-nosed, dark-mantled and light-mantled sooty varieties. All are in varying degrees of danger. In addition, 14 species of petrels make their home there.

Three species of seal breed on the Prince Edward islands. These are the southern elephant seal and the sub-Antarctic and Antarctic fur seal.

Biosphere reserves exist in partnership with a range of interested land-owners, and can incorporate development, as long as it is sustainable, while still protecting terrestrial or coastal ecosystems.

South Africa added a sixth biosphere reserve to its register when the Vhembe region of Limpopo became one of 22 newly proclaimed reserves by the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco). The 22 new biospheres, located in 17 countries, were added to Unesco's World Network of Biosphere Reserves during the 21st session of the International Co-ordinating Council of the Man and the Biosphere Programme. In 2009, there were 553 sites in 107 countries.

Unesco's Man and the Biosphere Programme addresses the impact of man on the environment by studying the social, ecological and economic implications of biodiversity loss. It then takes steps to minimise this loss through the sharing of knowledge, research and monitoring, education and training and multilateral decision-making.

Biosphere reserves are nominated by their governments for inclusion in the Man and the Biosphere Programme.

Whether they are terrestrial, freshwater, coastal or marine in nature, all are experimental areas where different approaches to integrated environmental management are tested. This is important as it helps to deepen the knowledge of what works in conservation and sustainable development.

The new addition is situated in the north-east of Limpopo. It is famous not only for its bird and animal life, but also for its rich cultural history, dating far back to the awe-inspiring rock paintings of the San people. Vhembe encompasses the ancient African kingdoms of Thulamela and Mapungubwe. The latter is one of South Africa's eight world heritage sites and was inscribed on the Unesco list in 2003.

Vhembe includes the northern part of the Kruger National Park; the Makuleke Wetland, which are protected under the Ramsar Convention; the Soutpansberg and Blouberg biodiversity hot spots; and the Makgabeng Plateau, which boasts hundreds of rock-art sites.

The other biosphere reserves are:

- The 100 000-ha Kogelberg Reserve on the country's southern coast sits in the middle of the Cape Floral Region and is home to 1 880 different plant species, 77 of which are found only in this region.
- The Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve starts in Cape Town in the southern suburb of Diep River and stretches up the west coast as far as the Berg River, encompassing parts of the Cape Floral Region. The reserve includes the Ramsar-protected Langebaan Lagoon as well as Dassen Island, a penguin colony. The Koeberg Nuclear Power Station falls within its boundaries.
- The Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve includes a part of the Cape Floral Region as well as the wine-growing region. The historic settler-founded towns of Stellenbosch, Paarl and Franschhoek lie here.
- In the northern reaches of South Africa lies the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, an area of some 400 000 ha in Limpopo. It is an important catchment area for the Limpopo Basin, with four large rivers originating within its borders – the Lephalale, Mokolo, Matlabas and Magalakwena rivers. San rock art abounds, as does the flora and fauna of the area.
- The Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve is so named because it stretches from the Kruger National Park to the Blyde River Canyon. It is an important conservation area in South Africa as it also covers three biomes.

The new Garden Route National Park (GRNP) was gazetted in March 2009. The park will comprise some 121 000 ha, including the existing national parks of Wilderness and Tsitsikamma (68 000 ha) as well as about 52 500 ha of newly proclaimed land. The individual parks will retain their identity and become camps in the GRNP. The establishment of the GRNP is part of a long-term strategy to expand the protected areas in South Africa under formal protection from 6% to 8% of the total area of the country. The Garden Route is one of the most important conservation areas in South Africa. South African National Parks is the second-largest employer in the region and its total economic contribution to the region is estimated to be almost R95 million per year.

National and cultural monuments

These are natural or cultural features, or both, and may include botanical gardens, zoological gardens, natural heritage sites and sites of conservation significance.

World heritage sites

By August 2009, there were 890 world heritage sites. A total of 176 were natural sites, 689 were cultural sites and 25 were mixed sites.

The South Africa World Heritage Convention Committee is responsible for identifying possible world heritage sites in South Africa and coordinating the convention. The World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 allows for cultural and natural sites in South Africa to be granted world heritage status. The convention obliges the South African Government to guarantee its implementation, ensure legal protection and develop management plans and institutional structures for periodic monitoring.

The Act makes the principles of the convention applicable to South Africa's world heritage sites, and further provides for the adequate protection and conservation of these sites to promote tourism in a culturally and environmentally responsible way.

South Africa has eight world heritage sites proclaimed by Unesco, namely Robben Island; the iSimangaliso Wetlands Park; the hominid sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai (known as the Cradle of Humankind); the Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park (a mixed natural and cultural site); the Mapungubwe Heritage Site; the Cape Floral Kingdom; the Vredefort Dome; and the Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape.

The Vredefort Dome is an ancient extra-terrestrial impact site spanning the Free State and North West provinces. Formed two billion years ago, it is the world's most ancient meteorite impact site and the third-largest, measuring 140 km across.

The world heritage status of Sterkfontein's fossil hominid sites was extended in July 2005 to include the Taung skull fossil site in North West and the Mokopane Valley in Limpopo.

The Cradle of Humankind has one of the world's richest concentrations of hominid fossils, evidence of human evolution over the past 3,5 million years.

Found in Gauteng and North West, the fossil sites cover an area of 47 000 ha. The remains of ancient forms of animals, plants and hominids are captured in a bed of dolomite deposited around 2,5 billion years ago.

Although other sites in south and east Africa have similar remains, the cradle has produced more than 950 hominid fossil specimens. The R347-million Cradle of Humankind development, initiated by the Gauteng Provincial Government, is the first public-private partnership of its kind in South Africa. The aim is to develop and manage the world heritage site as a premier tourist destination.

Other partners include the University of the Witwatersrand, which owns the Sterkfontein caves and is the major excavator of the cradle site.

The Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape was declared a world heritage site in June 2007. It covers 160 000 ha of dramatic mountainous desert in the north-west of South Africa. It is the only area where the Nama still construct portable rush-covered domed houses, or Iharu oms.

Habitat- and wildlife-management areas

These areas are subject to human intervention, based on research into the requirements of specific species for survival. They include conservancies; provincial, regional or private reserves created for the conservation of species habitats or biotic communities; marshes; lakes; and nesting and feeding areas.

Protected land and seascapes

These areas are products of the harmonious interaction of people and nature, and include natural environments protected in terms of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989), scenic landscapes and historical urban landscapes.

Sustainable-use areas

These areas emphasise the sustainable use of protected areas such as the Kosi Bay Lake System in KwaZulu-Natal.

Nature areas in private ownership are proclaimed and managed to curtail undesirable development in areas with high aesthetic or conservation potential.

In October 2009, Africa's first – and largest – transfrontier marine conservation area was established, connecting Maputaland in South Africa's world heritage site, the iSimangaliso Wetland Park, with Mozambique's first marine conservancy, the Ponto de Ouro Marine Protected Area.

This creates a vast protected marine area covering 300 km of unbroken coastline and near-pristine beaches, from St Lucia in the south to Mozambique's Maputo Special Reserve.

It is made up of 220 km on the South African side and 80 km in Mozambique.

Activities such as commercial fishing, fishing on coral reefs and fishing with explosives are banned. Driving on the beaches is also prohibited. However, recreational fishing – under strict controls – is permitted.

Conservancies are formed to involve the ordinary landowner in conservation. Landowners can establish a conservancy where conservation principles are integrated with normal farming activities.

Wetlands

Through the *National Wetland Inventory*, South Africa has identified 120 000 wetlands, which cover 7% of the country's surface area.

Wetlands include a wide range of inland and coastal habitats – from mountain bogs and fens to midland marshes, swamp forests and estuaries, linked by green corridors of stream bank wetlands.

South Africa became a contracting party to the Ramsar Convention in 1975. The country's Ramsar sites include Nylsvley Nature Reserve, Blesbokspruit, Barberspan, Seekoeivlei, Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park, Ndumo Game Reserve, the Kosi Bay System, Lake Sibaya, the turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland, the St Lucia System, Wilderness lakes, De Hoop Vlei, De Mond State Forest, Langebaan, Verlorenvlei, the Orange River Mouth Wetland and the Makuleke Wetland.

The IUCN identifies wetlands as the third most important support system on Earth.

The Directorate: Biodiversity Management of the Department of Environmental Affairs is responsible for the South African Wetlands Conservation Programme. The programme ensures that South Africa's obligations in terms of the Ramsar Convention are met.

The programme aims to protect wetlands in South Africa against degradation and destruction, while striving for the ideal in wise and sustainable use of resources, to ensure that the ecological and socio-economic functions of wetlands are sustained for the future.

South Africa is a member of Wetlands International, an international body dedicated to conserving the world's wetlands.

The Working for Wetlands Programme focuses on wetland restoration, while maximising employment creation; support for SMMEs; and transfer of skills to the beneficiaries of the programme's projects.

World Wetlands Day marks the date of the signing of the Convention of Wetlands on 2 February 1971 in the Iranian city of Ramsar.

Zoological gardens

Founded in 1899, the National Zoological Gardens (NZG) of South Africa in Pretoria is the only zoo in South Africa with national status. It also enjoys membership to the World Association of Zoos and Aquariums, the African Association of Zoological Gardens, the International Union of Zooculturists and the International Association of Zoo Educators.

The NZG of South Africa is a proud national research facility of the NRF. The NRF is a government agency responsible for supporting and promoting research, and providing research facilities to encourage the creation of knowledge, innovation and development in all fields of science and technology. (See Chapter 19: *Science and technology*.) The 85-ha zoo in Pretoria houses 3 117 specimens of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimens of 202 bird species, 3 871 specimens of 190 fish species, 388 specimens of four invertebrate species, 309 specimens of 93 reptile species, and 44 specimens of seven amphibian species. These figures comprise the animals housed at the zoo in Pretoria as well as at the two biodiversity conservation centres in Lichtenburg in the North West, and Mokopane in Limpopo, and the satellite zoo and animal park at the Emerald Animal World complex in Vanderbijlpark.

The NZG is the largest zoo in the country and more than 600 000 people visit it annually. The total length of its walkways is about 6 km.

An aquarium and reptile park also form part of the zoo facility in Pretoria. The aquarium is the largest inland marine aquarium in the country.

The Johannesburg Zoological Gardens, or Johannesburg Zoo, celebrated its centenary in 2004. The core business of Johannesburg Zoo, which is registered as a non-profit company, is the accommodation, enrichment, husbandry and medical care of wild animals.

It is also renowned for its successful breeding programmes involving several endangered South African bird species such as the wattled crane and ground hornbill. The zoo covers 54 ha and houses more than 2 000 animals from 365 species.

Breeding centres

There are a number of game-breeding centres in South Africa. The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre, which covers an area of some 6 000 ha, and the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, covering an area of 1 333 ha.

The two centres supplement the zoo's breeding programme for various endangered animals, and the zoo's own animal collection.

The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre houses, among other animals, Père David's deer, pygmy hippopotamus, white rhinoceros,

the endangered addax, and scimitar-horned and Arabian oryx. Large herds of impala, springbok, zebra, blesbok and red hartebeest also roam the area.

About 32 ha of the wetland area at the centre have been developed into a system of dams and pans, which serve as a natural haven for waterbirds such as spoonbills, kingfishers, ibises and herons.

The Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre is home to an abundance of exotic and indigenous fauna such as lemur, the rare tsessebe, roan antelope and black rhino.

The De Wildt Cheetah-Breeding and Research Centre, situated near Pretoria, is best known for its highly successful captive-breeding programme that contributed to the cheetah being removed from the endangered list of the *South African Red Data Book – Terrestrial Mammals* in 1986.

De Wildt also breeds a number of rare and endangered African species. The most spectacular of these is the magnificent king cheetah, which is a true cheetah, but with a variation of coat patterns and colouring. De Wildt also plays a major role in breeding and releasing wild dogs. It has donated breeding nucleuses of the highly endangered riverine rabbit and suni antelope to the Kruger National Park.

The De Wildt Vulture Unit is a rehabilitation and holding facility for injured, poisoned and disabled vultures.

The Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre in Mpumalanga was initially established as a breeding programme for the then endangered cheetah. Following the success of the cheetah-breeding programme, it has evolved into a breeding programme for other endangered African animal species. The centre caters for, among other animals, five species of vulture: Cape griffins, and white-backed, hooded, whiteheaded and lappet-faced vultures. The centre is also known for its wild-dog-breeding programme.

The Hoedspruit Research and Breeding Programme also includes the rare black-footed cat, the vulnerable African wild cat, ground hornbills (in cooperation with the NZG in Pretoria), bald ibis and the endangered blue crane. Elephant, white rhino, buffalo, caracal, Sable antelope, bushbuck and tsessebe have also been cared for and rehabilitated there.

Aquaria

There are well-known aquaria in Pretoria, Port Elizabeth, Cape Town and Durban.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG is the largest inland aquarium in Africa, with the largest collection of freshwater fish. It is also the only aquarium in South Africa that exhibits a large variety of marine fish in artificial sea water.

The Port Elizabeth Oceanarium is one of the city's major attractions. Exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin research centre, various smaller tanks of 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display sharks and stingrays. East London has a smaller aquarium.

At the Two Oceans Aquarium situated at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, more than 3 000 specimens represent some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters along the Cape coast.

UShaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and sea water, and is the fifth-largest aquarium in the world by water volume. It comprises Sea World, Dolphin World, Beach World, and Wet and Wild World.

Sea World incorporates a unique shipwreck-themed aquarium, a penguin rookery and a 1 200-seater dolphin stadium (the largest dolphinarium in Africa).

It also offers edutainment tours and special interactive activities such as snorkelling and scuba diving. In addition, it features a rocky touch-pool, where visitors can touch a starfish or sea cucumber with the help of specially trained guides.

Snake parks

The Transvaal Snake Park in Midrand, between Pretoria and Johannesburg, houses up to 150 species of snakes and other reptiles and amphibians from southern Africa and elsewhere. The emphasis is on the development of breeding programmes for animals in captivity.

The Port Elizabeth Snake Park at Bayworld has a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles, including tortoises, boa constrictors, pythons, crocodiles, lizards and deadly venomous snakes such as cobras, mambas and rattlers.

Rare and threatened species, including the Madagascar ground boa, are housed safely in realistically landscaped glass enclosures.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park situated at the NZG in Pretoria houses 80 reptile species from all over the world.

The Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile col-

World Environment Day (WED) was celebrated globally on 5 June 2009, under the theme *Your Planet Needs You – Unite to Combat Climate Change*. WED was established by the United Nations' (UN) General Assembly in 1972 to mark the opening of the Stockholm Conference on the Human Environment. It is one of the vehicles that the UN uses to stimulate worldwide awareness of the environment and enhance political attention and public action.

lections in southern Africa. It offers seal shows and snake-handling demonstrations.

Conservation challenges

South Africa faces many of the problems experienced by developing countries, in which rapid industrialisation, population growth and urbanisation pose a threat to the quality of the environment. The Department of Environmental Affairs is reforming environmental law to introduce reform in biodiversity conservation, pollution, waste management and environmental planning.

Environmental impact management

Section 24(2)(b) of the National Environmental Management Act (Nema), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998), provides for the identification of sensitive geographical areas based on environmental attributes within which specified activities would require an environmental authorisation in terms of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2006, as amended.

In 2008/09, the following were achieved:

- the identification of sensitive attributes and areas
- the identification of additional activities
- a draft listing notice has been prepared.

The Strategic Important Developments Guideline and Energy Response Plan Guideline were developed.

The Nema Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 62 of 2008), was approved by Parliament in 2008. This amendment focused, among other things, on the introduction of enabling provisions for tools other than environmental impact assessment (EIA), cooperation between organs of state and the alignment of the Nema, 1998 and Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act 28 of 2002), legislative processes.

The Nema Amendment Act, 2008 was assented to by former President Kgalema Motlanthe in January 2009 and came into effect in May 2009. Draft amendments to the 2006 EIA regulations and the listed activities that require assessment were compiled, approved and published on three separate occasions for public comment (May 2007, June 2008 and February 2009).

In a concerted effort between the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and the off-road industry, the Strategy Towards Co-Regulation of the Off-Road Sector in South Africa was signed by the minister in March 2009. The strategy aims to minimise the impact of off-road driving on the environment by giving direction to off-road users and owners to develop and use inland routes in sensitive areas in a responsible manner. This requires drivers and riders to gain competence through appropriate training, off-road guides to be qualified and registered, and trails and tracks to meet specified criteria. The strategy will be applicable to the inland recreational use of off-road vehicles, including two-wheel, three-wheel and four-wheel vehicles, which include 2x4 and 4x4 motor vehicles, quad bikes and motorbikes.

Waste management

The Department of Environmental Affairs has prioritised four projects within the framework of the National Waste-Management Strategy. They are:

- recycling
- a waste-information system
- healthcare waste
- capacity-building.

Central to these are pilot projects that are being set up countrywide. The department welcomes partnerships with business to ensure that these projects are successful and become a core of better waste management in South Africa.

In dealing with the waste-management challenges, the department started the development of the National Environmental Management: Waste Bill in 2005 as subsidiary legislation, which seeks to give legal effect to the *White Paper on Integrated Pollution and Waste Management*. The Waste Bill was signed into law by former President Motlanthe in March 2009.

The National Environment Management: Waste Act, 2008 provides for the following:

- institutional arrangements for waste management that outline the roles and responsibilities of all spheres of government in respect of waste management
- strategic and planning frameworks, as well as norms and standards for waste management
- obligations relating to various aspects of waste management

- licensing of waste-management activities
- compliance monitoring and enforcement
- related administrative matters.

The Waste Act, 2008 will repeal the Environmental Conservation Act, 1989 and all regulations passed under that Act will be considered regulations passed under the Waste Act, 2008.

The department has a memorandum of understanding (MoU) with the Glass-Recyclers Association of South Africa. The objective of the MoU is to establish a glass-recycling company that is responsible for promoting reuse and recycling of glass in South Africa.

The National Policy on the Thermal Treatment of Hazardous and General Waste has been finalised and will be implemented in 2009/10.

An agreement containing regulations governing plastic shopping bags was signed in September 2002 by the then Minister of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and representatives from various labour and business organisations.

The agreement, which came into effect on 9 May 2003, stipulates that the thickness of plastic bags be 30 microns. However, manufacturers were allowed to continue using their existing machinery to make bags of 24-micron thickness for the following five years before having to comply with the 30-micron standard.

The agreement states that printing will only be allowed on 25% of the surface area of plastic bags if the ink is not environmentally friendly. In situations where the ink is acceptable, this area can be increased to 50%. The department has a toll-free line to deal with queries about plastic bags.

The plastic-bags agreement and supporting regulations have dramatically decreased the environmental impact of this highly visible waste stream, with a 50% reduction in the consumption of plastic bags since the introduction of the regulations.

As part of the implementation of the plastic-bag regulations, Buyisa-e-Bag, a non-profit company, was set up to promote waste minimisation and awareness initiatives in the plastics industry. The company is expected to expand collector networks and to create jobs, as well as to kick-start rural collection SMMEs and create additional capacity in NGOs.

Work is in progress to follow this success with targeted and customised agreements in respect of other problem waste streams, including tyres and glass. The compliance and enforcement of the regulations have been assigned to the South African Bureau of Standards.

The Radioactive Waste Management Policy, which assures citizens that there is a nuclear waste-management plan and strategy, is being implemented, starting with the creation of the National Committee on Radioactive Waste Management.

The National Radioactive Waste Management Agency Bill was approved by Cabinet in April 2008.

During the processing of the Bill, the department and the Parliamentary Portfolio Committee agreed that the title of the agency be changed to the National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute (NRWDI).

The objects of the Bill are to:

- provide for the establishment of the NRWDI
- manage radioactive waste disposal nationally
- manage its functions effectively
- regulate staff matters
- manage all relevant functions.

The establishment of the institute will allow the operators/generators to focus on their core business. However, the generators will remain financially responsible for the disposal of waste.

This institute will be solely responsible for handling radioactive waste disposal, predisposal management and storage at the disposal site.

To measure success on the implementation of policies and strategies, the department has developed a waste-information system that will

The Waste-Tyre Regulations of 2009 came into effect on 30 June 2009. The purpose of the legislation is to regulate the management of waste tyres by providing for regulatory mechanisms. The regulations will affect waste-tyre producers, dealers, stockpile owners, landfill site owners and tyre recyclers.

In terms of the regulations, no person may:

- Recycle, recover or dispose of a waste tyre, at any facility or on any site, unless the recycling, recovery or disposal of that waste tyre is authorised by law.
- Recover or dispose of a waste tyre in a manner that is likely to cause pollution of the environment or harm to human health and well-being.
- Dispose of waste tyres at a disposal facility two years from the date of commencement of the regulations unless such a waste tyre has been cut into quarters. No quartered waste tyres may be disposed five years from the date of promulgation of these regulations unless such waste tyres have been shredded, excluding in both instances bicycle tyres and tyres with an outside diameter above 1 400 mm and tyres used as engineering material.

be implemented nationally. The Waste Act, 2008 makes it mandatory to report waste information to the waste-information system. This assists the department in tracking progress with implementation of the waste legislation.

South Africa actively participates in the Stockholm, Rotterdam and Basel conventions.

During 2008, South Africa participated in various international preparatory processes and negotiations on chemicals and waste management. Key achievements included a decision:

- to enhance cooperation and coordination between the Basel, Rotterdam and Stockholm conventions
- at the Basel Conference of Parties (CoP) 9 to provide additional institutional support to regional centres for the implementation of the Basel Convention
- at the UN Environmental Programme (UNEP) Governing Council to initiate an intergovernmental negotiating process on the development of a legal instrument for the international control of mercury
- of the Montreal Protocol on the replenishment of the Multilateral Fund by US$490 million.

Air-quality management and climate change

Air quality remains an important and challenging environmental issue in South Africa, especially as it influences the health and welfare of the population. Many pollutant concentrations exceed recognised thresholds and have reached unacceptable levels in a number of suburban areas.

Smoke from coal fires in residential settlements is the primary source of pollution in suburban areas, particularly in dense, low-income communities. This problem escalates in the winter months.

For this reason, the then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism launched the Winter Cleaner Fires Campaign in July 2008 in collaboration with the former Department of Minerals and Energy and the Central Energy Fund. The first campaign was conducted in the Vaal Triangle Air-Shed Priority Area, which has been identified as the country's first priority area under the Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act 39 of 2004).

The campaign is aimed at promoting the top-down Basa Njengo Magogo fire-making methodology in national priority areas. This methodology has a proven track record of reducing smoke from coal-burning fires by up to 80%, and is being promoted by various municipalities and industry as a means of reducing pollution in households that burn fossil fuels for space heating and cooking. The campaign was repeated in the winter of 2009.

The 2007 National Framework for Air-Quality Management in South Africa was updated and amended and informs the Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act 39 of 2004), which was brought into full effect in September 2009. This final amendment of the national framework includes new work on climate-change monitoring and modelling.

The Air-Quality Management Plan for the Vaal Triangle Air-Shed Priority Area was finalised and published for public comment. The department also drafted second-generation ambient air-quality standards for criteria pollutants, which were published for public comment in March 2009. The model air-quality management by-laws were completed.

The South African Air-Quality Information System (SAAQIS) is an essential resource for improving the country's air quality. The Chief Directorate: Air-Quality Management and Climate Change aims to set up 18 ambient air-quality monitoring stations that will provide information to the SAAQIS. In March 2009, the SAAQIS ambient air-quality information modules were fully embedded in the South African Weather Service, and 10 stations were fully operational. The Vaal Triangle and Highveld air-shed ambient air-quality monitoring networks were installed, and are fully operational.

Key municipalities were assisted in the compilation of their first-generation air-quality management plans and by-laws. To provide further assistance, the *Air-Quality Management Planning Manual* was launched at the 2008 Annual Air-Quality Governance Lekgotla, an event at which all government air-quality officers convened to discuss the effective implementation of the Air Quality Act, 2004.

Climate change is one of the most serious and urgent sustainable-development issues to face not only South Africa, but also the global community. Because South Africa ratified the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) and its associated Kyoto Protocol, much of the department's work is driven by responding to the obligations of this convention.

In addition to this, the department undertook the Climate-Change Long-term Mitigation Scenario (LTMS) process. This is a research and scenario-planning process to ensure that the country has a sound evidence base on which to develop its climate-change response policy and international negotiation positions. The LTMS

process was concluded and the LTMS and a set of national policy direction themes were approved by Cabinet in July 2008.

During March 2009, the department hosted the National Climate-Change Summit in partnership with the Department of Science and Technology. The department is working with business and industry sectors to update the greenhouse-gas (GHG) inventory. The first draft of the third national GHG inventory (base year 2000) was presented at the Climate-Change Summit.

The summit initiated a participatory national climate-change policy development process. Its purpose is to develop a common understanding of the most recent climate-change research and other South African climate-change response initiatives and interventions among all key climate-change response stakeholders, and to provide a platform to develop a framework for a national climate-change response policy.

The Department of Environmental Affairs hosted a national information and consultation session on the international climate-change talks in August 2009. The national session was aimed at providing stakeholders with an opportunity to discuss South Africa's priorities and build a common understanding and approach towards the 15th session of the CoP of the UNFCCC, which took place from 7 to 18 December 2009, in Copenhagen, Denmark.

Urban environmental management

South Africa is an urbanised economy with 58% of the population living in cities and towns. By 2015, it is expected that 68% of the population will live in urban areas due to continued migration from rural areas mainly to the larger cities, which will lead to many environmental challenges in South Africa's cities.

In February 2009, the then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism's Environmental Management Inspectorate (EMI) hosted the third Environmental Compliance and Enforcement Lekgotla under the theme *Sharpening the Sting*. The focus of the lekgotla was on developing strategies to overcome challenges and to significantly increase the impact of the work of the inspectorate. Commonly known as Green Scorpions, the EMI was launched in 2006 and is a network of designated environmental-management inspectors from various partner institutions involved in environmental compliance, monitoring and enforcement. Compliance and enforcement issues include biodiversity, waste pollution, environmental impact assessments and marine and coastal management.

The launch of the five-year Danish-funded Urban Environmental Management Programme (UEMP) in June 2006 marked a milestone in environmental cooperation between Denmark and South Africa.

The UEMP Conference took place in May 2009, where it was reported that the UEMP was in the process of implementing more than 275 projects in waste management, air quality, environmental planning and environmental health in South Africa, of which 80 projects had been completed. In 2008/09, special attention was given to climate change and energy efficiency.

The UEMP allocated R60 million in 2008 to the four metros within the programme (Johannesburg, Cape Town, Ekurhuleni and eThekwini) to supplement their existing projects in combating climate change and reducing GHG emissions. These projects included roll-out and implementation of projects such as the establishment of energy offices, retrofitting of council buildings, streetlight retrofitting, climate proofing of urban communities and the roll-out of solar water-heaters.

The main purpose of the hosting of the UEMP Conference was to enhance dialogue and collaborative effort through reflection, sharing of experiences and facilitating linkages and cooperation between the different project implementers of the UEMP as well as a wider spectrum of partners nationally and regionally.

The Royal Danish Embassy and the South African Cities Network also launched the UEMP case study file. The resource file is the first set of 39 case studies cutting across all the UEMP themes. The resource file supports the knowledge-management objectives of the UEMP and is aimed at sharing information and lessons among the programme partners.

Erosion and desertification

Most South African soil is unstable. The country loses an estimated 500 million ton of topsoil annually through erosion caused by water and wind.

About 81% of the total land area of South Africa is farmed. However, only 70% of this area is suitable for grazing. Overgrazing and erosion diminish the carrying capacity of the veld and lead to land degradation. This process has already claimed more than 250 000 ha of land in South Africa.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries administers the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act 43 of 1983), in terms of which various measures are being implemented to prevent or contain soil erosion.

In January 1995, South Africa signed the UNCCD, which was ratified on 30 September 1997. The main objectives of the convention include cooperation between governments, organisations and communities to accomplish sustainable development, especially where water resources are scarce.

The convention aims to support member countries in Africa to prevent desertification and its consequences. These countries support one another at technical and scientific level, as they share similar climatic conditions.

South Africa also acts as coordinator for the Valdivia Group for Desertification.

The group consists of countries in the southern hemisphere, namely Australia, New Zealand, Argentina, Chile, Uruguay, South Africa and Brazil, whose aim it is to, among other things, foster scientific and technological cooperation.

The country has introduced legislation such as the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 to promote the conservation of biodiversity, and fight desertification and land degradation.

Recycling

Collect-a-Can was established in 1993. It is a joint venture between ArcelorMittal South Africa, which is Africa's major steel producer and producer of tinplate for food and beverage cans and Africa's largest packaging company and beverage can producer, Nampak.

In March 2009, South Africa was among the 16 nations invited to a series of high-level meetings on climate change convened by the President of the United States of America (USA), Mr Barack Obama. South Africa was the only nation from Africa invited to the meetings, and as such was representing the interests of the continent as a whole.

According to a statement from the White House, the forums facilitated a candid dialogue between key developed and developing countries and helped generate the political leadership necessary to achieve a successful outcome at the United Nations climate-change negotiations in December 2009 in Copenhagen.

The meetings also advanced the exploration of concrete initiatives and joint ventures that increase the supply of clean energy while cutting greenhouse-gas emissions.

Representatives from Australia, Brazil, Canada, China, the European Union, France, Germany, Denmark, India, Indonesia, Italy, Japan, Korea, Mexico, Russia, the United Kingdom and the USA joined South African leaders attending the forum.

By June 2009, Collect-a-Can had recovered and recycled more than 750 000 ton of used beverage cans.

Collect-a-Can annually embarks on various projects which run throughout the year. The biggest project is the schools' competition, a project which aims to encourage, educate and inform children on the importance of a clean environment and how such an environment can be achieved through recycling waste such as used beverage cans. The company works within the community to support recycling initiatives and has a strong commitment to socio-economic empowerment.

International cooperation

United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change

South Africa ratified the UNFCCC in 1997. The convention is a global commitment to take collective responsibility for climate change, and is a mandate for action to address the problem.

The convention was signed at the Rio Earth Summit in 1992 by heads of state and other senior representatives from 154 countries (and the European Community), and came into effect on 21 March 1994.

Since mid-1998, some 175 states have ratified or acceded to the convention.

The objective of the convention is to stabilise GHG concentrations in the atmosphere at a level that will not have an adverse effect on the climate.

The convention aims to control this level over a period of time to:

- allow ecosystems to adapt naturally to climate change
- ensure that food production is not threatened
- enable economic development to proceed in a sustainable manner.

All countries that have ratified the convention are required to:

- develop, update and publish national inventories of anthropogenic emissions by sources, and removals by sinks of GHG (the GHG excludes those listed in the Montreal Protocol)
- formulate, implement and update national and regional programmes containing measures to mitigate climate change
- promote and cooperate in the development and transfer of technology that controls, reduces or prevents anthropogenic emissions of GHG
- promote sustainable management, conservation and enhancement of sinks and reservoirs of GHG
- cooperate in preparing for the adaptation to the impact of climate change

- take climate-change considerations into account where feasible, in relevant social, economic and environmental policies and actions, to minimise the adverse effects of climate change on the economy, on public health and on the quality of the environment
- promote and cooperate in the timeous and transparent exchange of information, including scientific, technological, socio-economic and legal information and research
- promote and cooperate in education, training and public awareness
- report to the COP.

Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD)

The CSD was created in 1992 to monitor and report on implementation of the Earth Summit agreements at local, national, regional and international levels. Its mandate was reaffirmed by the WSSD held in Johannesburg in 2002.

At its 11th session, the CSD drafted a multi-year programme of work organised on the basis of two-year cycles, with each cycle focusing on selected thematic clusters of issues. Year one of the cycle is a reviewing year that evaluates progress made in implementing sustainable development goals and identifying obstacles and constraints to implementation. During year two, policy actions are negotiated, aimed at addressing the challenges and constraints.

South Africa has actively participated in the CSD process. The drafting of the South African country report to CSD-16 highlighted the status of implementation with regard to the themes of agriculture, rural development, land, drought, desertification and Africa, as well as the challenges faced in achieving the targets set out in the JPoI. South Africa participates in the negotiating session of the CSD to ensure that policy decisions are adopted that will expedite implementation of the thematic targets set in the JPoI.

Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species

Unregulated trade in wildlife has become a major factor in the decline of many species of animals and plants. In 1975, Cites was established to prevent international trade from threatening species with extinction.

South Africa, together with the other 149 member countries, acts by regulating and monitoring international trade in species which are, or may be, affected by this trade.

Montreal Protocol

The Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer (a protocol to the Vienna Convention for the Protection of the Ozone Layer) is an international treaty designed to protect the ozone layer by phasing out the production of a number of substances believed to be responsible for ozone depletion. It is believed that if the international agreement is adhered to, the ozone layer is expected to recover by 2050.

South Africa became a signatory to the Montreal Protocol in 1990 and has a national obligation to safeguard the ozone layer from depletion. South Africa has phased out chlorofluorocarbons, halons, methyl chloroform and carbon tetrachloride – making it the only developing country in the world that has achieved so much in line with the phase-out schedule for developed countries. Although South Africa is classified as a developing country, its consumption of these substances is equal to that of some developed countries.

To demonstrate the country's commitment towards the phasing out of ozone-depleting substances (ODS), the following control measures constitute the overall position of South Africa on the Montreal Protocol:

- working groups were constituted to assist government in implementing the protocol
- regulated ODS can only be imported or exported after applying for an import/export permit through the Department of Trade and Industry under the Import and Export Control Act, 1963 (Act 45 of 1963)
- ODS can only be imported after an environmental levy has been paid
- information is disseminated to interested and affected parties
- Africa network meetings, as arranged by the UNEP, are attended, where views, experiences and problems are shared to improve co-operation within the region and as per

Towards the end of April 2009, the Southern African Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds (Sanccob) saved 129 oiled African penguins off the coast of Luderitz in Namibia, before they were transferred 1 300 km to Sanccob's centre in Cape Town for treatment. African penguins are listed as "vulnerable" to extinction on the *Red Data* list. There are only around 27 000 breeding pairs of these charismatic birds left, down from about four million in the last century. The oiled penguins were the result of an oil spill from an unknown source around the Mercury, Ichaboe, Halifax and Possession islands just off the coast of Luderitz.

New Partnership for Africa's Development requirements.

Obligations include:

- ensuring that South Africa, as a party to the protocol, protects human health and the environment against harm from human activities that modify or are likely to modify the ozone layer
- ensuring the protection of the ozone layer by taking precautionary measures to equitably control total global emissions of substances that deplete the ozone layer, with the ultimate objective of totally eliminating them
- reporting and sending to the Ozone Secretariat data on production, imports, exports and consumption of regulated ODS as collected from dealers and relevant departments.

The former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism embarked on a national project to establish methyl bromide consumption trends, and a database of suitable, feasible and economically viable alternatives to methyl bromide.

This document will form the basis for an intensive research/evaluation project to phase out, in the short term, 20% of methyl bromide usage, mainly in the agricultural sector. As of 1 January 2005, all developing countries were to have reduced their respective methyl bromide consumption by 20%, as per the phase-out timetable.

Private-sector involvement

Numerous private bodies are involved in conservation activities. There are more than 400 organisations in the country concentrating on conservation, wildlife and the general environment, as well as more than 30 botanical and horticultural organisations.

Among these are:

- BirdLife South Africa
- Botanical Society of South Africa
- Centre for Rehabilitation of Wildlife
- Conservation International
- Delta Environmental Centre
- Dolphin Action Protection Group
- EcoLink
- Endangered Wildlife Trust
- Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife
- Green Trust
- Keep South Africa Beautiful
- KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board
- National Conservancy Association of South Africa
- Peace Parks Foundation
- Southern African Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds
- Trees and Food for Africa
- Wildlife and Conservation Society of South Africa
- WWF-SA.

Acknowledgements

Business Report
Department of Environmental Affairs
Estimates of National Expenditure, 2009, published by National Treasury
DEAT Annual Review 2008/09
BuaNews
Beeld
National Zoological Gardens of South Africa
South African National Biodiversity Institute
www.cites.org
www.collectacan.co.za
www.csir.co.za
www.dwaf.gov.za
www.deat.gov.za
www.ekapa.ioisa.org.za
www.environment.gov.za
www.gov.za
www.nzg.ac.za
www.plantzafrica.com
www.southafrica.info
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.ucmp.berkeley.edu
http://eprints.ru.ac.za
http://en.wikipedia.org

Suggested reading

Bakkes, C. 2008. *In Bushveld and Desert: A Game Ranger's Life.* Cape Town: Human & Rousseau.

Beinart, W. 2008. *The Rise of Conservation in South Africa: Settlers, Livestock and the Environment 1770 – 1950.* Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Branch, B *et al*. 2007. *Southern Africa: South Africa, Namibia, Botswana, Zimbabwe, Swaziland, Lesotho, and Southern Mozambique.* Northampton, Mass: Interlink Books.

Bryden, B. 2008. *Game Ranger Remembers*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.

Burton, S *et al*. 2007. *Intergrated [sic] Research for Use in Constructed Wetlands for Treatment of Winery Wastewater.* (CD-ROM). Gezina: Water Research Commission (WRC).

Cock, J. 2007. *The War Against Ourselves: Environmental Justice in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Colvin, C *et al*. 2007. *Aquifer Dependent Ecosystems in Key Hydrogeological Typesettings in South Africa.* Gezina: WRC.

De Villiers, B. 2008. *People and Parks: Sharing the Benefits.* Johannesburg: Konrad Adenauer Stiftung.

Dickens, C *et al*. 2008. *The Impacts of High Winter Flow Releases From an Impoundment on In-Stream Ecological Processes.* Gezina: WRC.

Fig, D. 2007. *Staking Their Claims: Corporate Social and Environmental Responsibility in South Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

Joubert, L. 2007. *Scorched: South Africa's Changing Environment.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Joubert, S. 2007. *Kruger National Park: A History*. Johannesburg: High Branching Publications.

McCracken, DP. 2008. *Saving the Zululand Wilderness: An Early Struggle for Nature Conservation*. Auckland Park: Jacana.

Owuor, K *et al*. 2007. *Environmental Factors Affecting the Persistence of Toxic Phytoplankton in the Hartbeespoort Dam: Report to the Water Research Commission.* Gezina: WRC.

Reinecke, MK and King, JM. 2007. *The Nature and Invasion of Riparian Vegetation Zones in the South Western Cape: Report to the Water Research Commission.* Gezina: WRC.

Selley, R. 2009. *West of the Moon: Early Zululand and a Game Ranger at War in Rhodesia.* Johannesburg: 30° South.

South Africa. 2009. *National Environmental Management Act and Regulations 107 of 1998; Environment Conservation Act and Regulations 73 of 1989.* Edited by Juta's Statutes editors. Cape Town: Juta.

Thomas, V, Moll, E and Grant, R. 2008. *Tree Spotting: Cape: From Coast to Kalahari*. Johannesburg: Jacana.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

FINANCE

South Africa's prudent financial-sector regulations and macroeconomic policy framework have partly protected it from the knock-on effects of the global financial crisis.

The soundness of South Africa's financial system was subjected to an international assessment in 2008, which concluded that the South African banking system was diversified and supported by an appropriate financial infrastructure and a generally effective regulatory framework.

Although South African banks were not significantly exposed to sub-prime related products, they were nonetheless affected by deteriorating credit conditions. That South Africa's banks are capitalised in rands is an important strength. This is a key element of the evolving macro-prudential framework.

National Treasury's work on fiscal policy and budget reform focuses on strengthening infrastructure investment and maintenance, broadening participation in the economy and improving the quality of social services, in support of government's Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA).

Improved budget planning, better documentation and greater transparency in public finances continue to be key priorities. National Treasury is expanding its capacity to provide technical support, particularly for infrastructure planning and project management.

The Constitution stipulates a framework for the division of responsibilities between national, provincial and local government. It prescribes an equitable division of revenue between the spheres of government, taking into account their respective functions. It also creates an independent auditor-general (AG) and an independent central bank, and sets out the principles governing financial accountability to Parliament, as well as the annual budget process.

Fiscal policy framework

Government's fiscal policy seeks to support structural reforms of the South African economy consistent with long-run growth, employment creation and an equitable distribution of income.

It aims to promote investment and export expansion while enabling government to finance public services, redistribution and development in an affordable and sustainable budget framework.

Fiscal policy seeks to:

- ensure a sound and sustainable balance between government's spending, tax and borrowing requirements
- improve domestic savings to support a higher level of investment and reduce the need to borrow abroad
- keep government consumption spending at an affordable level
- contribute to lower inflation and a sustainable balance of payments
- support an export-friendly trade and industrial strategy to improve South Africa's competitiveness.

Due to the start of the changed economic outlook in 2008/09, the fiscal stance has become significantly more expansionary. Lower revenue and higher expenditure have resulted in an increase in the budget deficit. The change enables government to continue financing its priorities and support aggregate demand during the cyclical decline in revenue.

Spending in support of sustainable economic growth and social development is thus enabled because of this countercyclical fiscal policy stance.

Growth in spending in the current context will serve two broad purposes of:

- ensuring that the implementation of long-term service-delivery priorities is not negatively affected by lower growth in revenue collection
- supporting economic activity at a time when global and domestic demand is faltering.

The combined effect of higher expenditure and declining revenue means that government will run a deficit that will need to be financed.

Economy and fiscal stance

The former Minister of Finance, Mr Trevor Manuel, presented the national Budget for 2009/10 in February 2009. Key indicators included that:

- gross domestic product (GDP) growth was expected to slow to 1,2% in 2009, before recovering gradually to 4% by 2011
- Consumer Price Index (CPI) inflation was forecast to fall to 5,8% in 2009, before declining to 4,7% by 2011
- gross fixed capital formation growth was projected to average 6,1% during the period 2010 to 2012

- government spending on infrastructure was expected to total R787 billion during the 2010 to 2012 period, R397 billion of which is capital spending by state-owned enterprises (SOEs)
- budget balance for consolidated government was estimated at -3,8% in 2009/10, recovering to -1,9% by 2011/12
- expected average real growth in consolidated government non-interest expenditure of 5,1% a year during the period 2010 to 2012 (excludes Eskom loan)
- R60 billion to support Eskom's capital financing requirements between 2008/09 and 2010/11.

Tax proposals

Highlights of the 2009/10 Budget included:

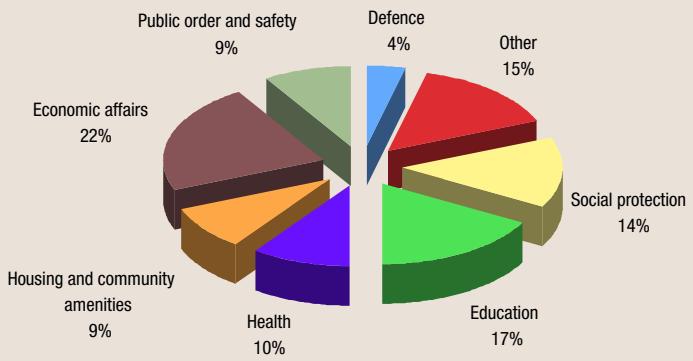
- personal income tax relief for individuals amounting to R13,6 billion
- increased exemptions for interest, dividend income for individuals and increased capital gains tax exclusion for primary residences
- review of the tax treatment of motor-vehicle allowances to improve equity and transparency of the tax system
- amendments to the treatment of contributions to medical schemes
- incentives for investments in energy-efficient technologies
- motor-vehicle excise reform to tax carbon emissions and a new tax on energy-intensive light bulbs
- delaying the implementation of mineral and petroleum royalties until 1 March 2010
- taxes on petrol and diesel to increase by 40,5 and 41,5 cents per litre respectively
- a packet of 20 cigarettes to cost 88 cents more
- a 750-ml bottle of natural wine to cost 10,5 cents more
- a 340-ml can of beer to cost seven cents more
- a 750-ml bottle of liquor (spirits) to cost R3,21 more.

Spending on public services

Key expenditure increases included:

- R24,8 billion to provinces for increasing services, mainly health and education
- R12 billion more for social grants and R1,2 billion for grant-administration fees
- R4,1 billion for the second phase of the Expanded Public Works Programme
- R4 billion for the National School Nutrition Programme to feed more children more often
- R5,4 billion for the criminal justice sector overhaul, including fingerprint and DNA databases
- R4,1 billion for provincial infrastructure, especially school buildings, roads and clinics
- R4,3 billion for municipal infrastructure and R1 billion for regional bulk water infrastructure
- R600 million for municipalities to extend free basic services
- R1,6 billion as an equity injection into South African Airways
- R3,7 billion more for increased housing provision
- R1 billion for electricity demand-side management
- R932 million for the treatment and prevention of HIV and AIDS

Government expenditure 2009/10



Source: National Teasury, *Budget Highlights*

- R6,4 billion for public transport, roads and rail infrastructure
- R1,6 billion for industrial development and support to small enterprises
- R1,8 billion for rural development, mainly focused on supporting small-scale agriculture.

Debt management

The prudent management of government's financial assets and liabilities remains a priority.

Government's debt-management policies have evolved from concentrating exclusively on financing the borrowing requirement to broader support for government's macroeconomic objectives. The global economic downturn, together with South Africa's countercyclical fiscal policy stance, meant that government became a net issuer of debt in 2008/09.

Government continues to support SOEs during the economic downturn, through the issuing of guarantees on a case-by-case basis. Steps taken over the past 16 years to strengthen the capital market enables the public sector to finance the growing borrowing requirement in the domestic market.

Debt levels remain sustainable, despite an expected increase in government debt from R629 billion in 2008/09 to R919 billion in 2011/12.

Debt service cost as a percentage of GDP will average 2,2% over the medium term. Debt-service cost as a ratio of revenue will be maintained as maturing debt is refinanced in a lower interest rate environment.

Legislation

Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999)

Transforming public-sector financial management is one of National Treasury's key objectives.

To this end, National Treasury has been implementing the PFMA, 1999 since 1 April 2000.

The Act changed the approach to how public funds are managed by introducing a less rigid environment for financial management, with a stronger emphasis on the prudent use of state resources, improved reporting requirements and the use of management information to enhance accountability.

Since its introduction, the PFMA, 1999 has contributed towards measurable improvements in financial management in both the national and provincial spheres of government, which include, among other things:

- an improved linkage between planning and budgeting, whereby departments are required to compile and table strategic plans that are consistent with their budget envelope
- strategic plans and budget documentation containing improved information on measurable objectives expressed in terms of quantity, quality and timeliness
- the submission by departments of monthly expenditure reports on actual expenditure incurred, and on projected expenditure for the remainder of the financial year
- risk-management processes
- establishing internal-audit functions and audit committees in all departments
- setting accounting standards in accordance with best accounting practices
- finalising and submitting financial statements to the AG within two months of the end of the financial year
- tabling annual reports in the legislature within six months of the end of the financial year.

While it is recognised that the PFMA, 1999 has contributed positively towards the enhancement of public-sector financial management, it has been acknowledged that an increased emphasis should be placed on capacity-building to further improve the quality of financial management.

The Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy has, in association with National Treasury, developed the Financial Management Training Strategy for the roll-out of training programmes to improve the skills of public-sector finance practitioners.

Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA), 2003 (Act 56 of 2003)

The Act applies to all municipalities and municipal entities, and national and provincial organs of state, to the extent of their financial dealings with municipalities.

The objective of the Act is to secure sound and sustainable management of the fiscal and financial affairs of municipalities and municipal entities by establishing norms, standards and other requirements for:

- ensuring transparency, accountability and appropriate lines of responsibility in their fiscal and financial affairs
- managing their revenues, expenditures, assets and liabilities, and handling their financial dealings
- budgetary and financial-planning processes and coordinating processes of organs of state

- borrowing
- handling financial problems and other financial matters.

A wide range of supporting publications, guides, regulations and circulars are available on *www.treasury.gov.za* under the MFMA icon.

Cooperative Banks Act, 2007 (Act 40 of 2007)

The Cooperative Banks Act, 2007 came into effect on 1 August 2008.

The Act aims to:

- promote and advance the social and economic welfare of all South Africans by improving access to banking services
- promote the development of sustainable and responsible cooperative banks
- establish an appropriate regulatory framework for cooperative banks that protects members of cooperative banks.

The Act provides for the establishment of the Cooperative Banks Development Agency as a public entity under the Executive Authority of the Minister of Finance.

The agency is responsible for, among other things:

- the registration of deposit-taking financial services cooperatives as cooperative banks
- facilitating the supervision of cooperative banks
- the development and enhancement of the sustainability of cooperative banks.

National Treasury

Financial expenditure

National Treasury plays a pivotal role in managing government expenditure.

It determines financial-management norms and standards, and sets reporting policy that guides the AG's performance. It also assists Parliament, through the Standing Committee on Public Accounts, with its recommendations and the formulation of corrective actions. National Treasury closely monitors the performance of state departments and is obliged to report any deviations to the AG.

The department maintains transparent and fair bidding processes, as well as accounting, logistic and personnel systems. It sets and maintains standards and norms for treasury and logistics, acts as a banker for national departments and oversees logistical control of stocks and assets.

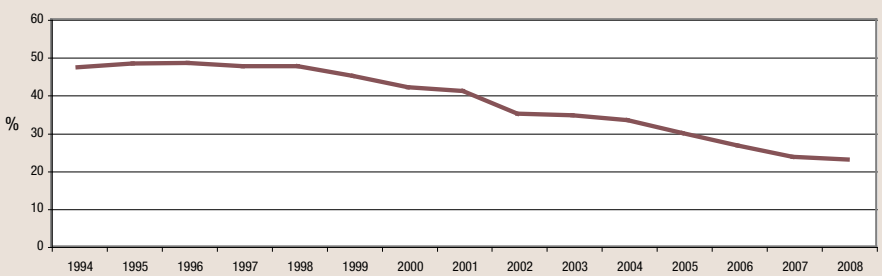
The National Treasury draws its mandate from Chapter Two of the PFMA, 1999, based on Chapter 13 of the Constitution. It is mandated to:

- coordinate macroeconomic policy
- promote government's fiscal policy framework
- manage the budget preparation process
- coordinate intergovernmental financial relations
- facilitate the Division of Revenue Act, 2009 (Act 12 of 2009), which provides for an equitable distribution of nationally raised revenue between national, provincial and local government
- monitor the implementation of provincial budgets
- create an enabling regulatory environment for the financial sector
- defend the integrity of the financial system
- ensure efficient and effective revenue collection
- see to the programmes of development finance institutions (DFIs).

Exchange-control reforms

Major steps were taken in 2008/09 to shift from a system of exchange controls to prudential regulation.

Government debt as percentage of gross domestic product



Source: *Development Indicators, 2009*

To support prudent foreign diversification by institutional investors, the foreign prudential limits for pension funds and underwritten long-term insurance policies were increased from 15% to 20%, while the limit for collective investment schemes (CIS) and investment-linked business of long-term insurers was increased from 25% to 30%.

Institutional investors were also allowed to undertake foreign investments without prior approval, but subject to quarterly reporting. The 40% macro-prudential foreign exposure limit for banks was reformed.

Red tape was also reduced in South African companies and individuals. Corporates were allowed to freely invest in inward-listed instruments and currency futures on the Bond Exchange of South Africa (Besa) and JSE Limited (Ltd).

In October 2009, the Minister of Finance, Mr Pravin Gordhan, announced in the Medium Term Budget Policy Statement the further relaxation of exchange controls in a bid to reduce the cost of doing business in the country and attract more foreign investment.

Foreign capital allowance for residents, which was last adjusted in 2006, would be increased from R2 million to R4 million, while the single discretionary allowance would be increased from R500 000 to R750 000.

To improve access to domestic credit in the financing of local foreign direct investment (FDI), restrictions on the granting of local financial assistance to affected persons have been further liberalised with the doing away of the 3:1 ratio.

Retirement fund reform

The Social Security and Retirement Reform Paper was released in 2007. Progress continues in developing reform proposals for the social-security system. An interdepartmental task team was established and has undertaken a number of projects to assess the detailed operational approach and policy implications.

Further analysis of a shared government view on basic social-security design is still needed, particularly in relation to the industry and the preservation of retirement benefits. The institutional governance options regarding the co-ordination of administrative arrangements continue to be explored. This encompasses the South African Revenue Service (Sars), the Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF), Compensation Fund (CF) and the Government Employee Pension Fund (GEPF).

Options for post-retirement medical-contribution protection are also being explored in terms of their linkages with wider social-security reform.

More work needs to be conducted on private pension and social-security law reform, particularly with regard to the overall design and opt-out issues, sequencing of the reform and balance of risk between the State, employees and contributors.

Treasury norms and standards

In terms of Section 216(1)(c) of the Constitution, National Treasury must prescribe measures to ensure both transparency and expenditure control in each sphere of government, by introducing uniform treasury norms and standards. These aim at deregulating financial controls, by granting accounting officers of spending agencies more autonomy in financial decision-making within the ambits of impending financial legislation.

Budget evaluation

National Treasury plays an important role in supporting the economic policy to which government has committed itself. It determines the macrolimit on expenditure, which is then matched with requests from departments, in line with the affordability and sustainability of services.

Based on this limit, all national departments are requested to submit budget proposals annually to National Treasury for the following financial year.

Early Warning System

The Early Warning System was first established in 1997. Any likely under- or overexpenditure is brought to the attention of the Cabinet, so that the relevant minister can ensure that appropriate action is taken.

The system assists in monitoring provincial departments' expenditure trends monthly, by having provincial treasuries report to National Treasury in a prescribed format. The information derived from early warning reports is used for advising the Minister of Finance, Budget Council and Cabinet.

Financial systems

National Treasury is responsible for the development, maintenance and support of financial management systems (Bas, Persal, Logis and Vulindlela) that support:

- payment for government employees' salaries and service-providers
- financial reporting and management for government departments.

In 2005, Cabinet directed National Treasury, in conjunction with the Department of Public Service and Administration and State Information Technology Agency, to consolidate all related financial-management system solutions across government into a centralised Integrated Financial Management System (IFMS). By mid-2009, certain key IFMS modules were being rolled out in the lead implementation sites.

Supply Chain Management (SCM)

SCM forms an integral part of financial management. The SCM Framework, issued in terms of Section 76 of the PFMA, 1999, replaced outdated procurement and provisioning systems in government.

The integrated SCM system caters for an international best-practice process for appointing consultants. It also incorporates the preferential procurement policies of government, as espoused in the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (PPPFA) (Act 5 of 2000), and the regulations issued in terms of this Act.

The implementation of the regulations enhances the involvement of historically disadvantaged individuals in the public bidding system and contributes to achieving reconstruction and development programme goals, including the promotion of small, medium and micro-enterprises.

The PPPFA, 2000 and its related regulations currently do not support all the aims and strategies of the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003). Cabinet directed that these two legislative processes should be aligned.

This alignment is captured in a new framework for SCM. To promulgate the revised regulations, it will be necessary to repeal the PPPFA, 2000 and to incorporate the procurement-related BBBEE policies of government into the PFMA, 1999 and its related regulations.

As an interim measure, the current preferential procurement regulations will be revised to incorporate the balanced scorecard methodology as outlined in the BBBEE Act, 2003 for awarding preferential points to bidders.

Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC)

Government has adopted a strong stance on eradicating money laundering and financing terrorism, in keeping with United Nations (UN) conventions and international standards.

South Africa's system of combating money laundering and the financing of terrorism is based on the interaction of three separate laws.

In 1998, the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998), was passed, which criminalised money laundering. This was followed by the FIC Act (FICA), 2001 (Act 38 of 2001), which provides for the establishment of the centre, and imposed reporting and administrative obligations on financial and other institutions.

The Protection of Constitutional Democracy against Terrorist and Related Activities Act, 2004 (Act 33 of 2004), provides for the reporting of terrorism-financing activities.

The FIC is a government agency, which reports to the Minister of Finance.

The centre is mandated to:

- identify the proceeds of crime and the financing of terrorism
- formulate and lead the implementation of policy regarding money laundering and the financing of terrorism
- advise the Minister of Finance about issues aimed at anti-money laundering and combating the financing of terrorism (AML/CFT)
- monitor the compliance of accountable institutions and supervisory bodies regarding their AML/CFT obligations
- prevent and reduce money laundering and CFT activities
- uphold the international obligations and commitments required of the centre and South Africa as a country.

The FICA, 2001 identifies 19 different business sectors, which it defines as being accountable institutions and most vulnerable to abuse by criminals. These include banks, *bureaux de change,* life-insurance companies, stockbrokers, money remitters, casinos, lawyers, accountants, investment advisers, estate agents and motor dealers. These accountable institutions have certain reporting and administrative obligations, including record-keeping, appointing compliance officers and the training of staff.

The centre analyses and stores reports made by the accountable institutions. After further analysis and due consideration, it makes disclosures to law-enforcement agencies for investigation.

The FIC Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 11 of 2008), provides for detailed procedures for the administrative adjudication and sanctioning of non-compliance with the Act, as well as extended powers for supervisors to address compliance failures appropriately. The Amendment Act also provides

for issues relating to customer due diligence and the updating of the schedules to the Act.

In 2002, South Africa joined the 14-member Eastern and Southern Africa Anti-Money Laundering Group. South Africa is also a member of the Financial Action Task Force (FATF), which is the international standards-setting body for combating money laundering and financing terrorism.

During 2008, the centre facilitated South Africa's assessment process by the FATF. The assessment looked at the country's ability to combat financial crimes. In February 2009, the country received a favourable report from the FATF, commending its effective policies and processes to combat money laundering and terrorism financing.

The centre is a member of the Egmont Group of financial intelligence units, which facilitates the exchange of information, skills and technical assistance between financial intelligence units worldwide.

Financial and Fiscal Commission (FFC)

The FFC is a constitutional body established to give advice to Parliament, legislatures and organs of state on matters of intergovernmental finance.

The commission, which came into operation in April 1994, is a statutory institution and permanent expert commission dealing with intergovernmental fiscal relations.

The FFC submits recommendations and advice to all spheres of government, based on research and consultations on a range of intergovernmental fiscal issues.

The research includes:

- developing principles for intergovernmental fiscal relations, based on analysis of international best practice
- analysing local, provincial and national government budgets to understand revenue and expenditure trends
- identifying and measuring factors influencing provincial and local revenues and expenditures
- assessing fiscal policy instruments, such as conditional grants, equitable share transfers and taxes.

Government is required by the Constitution and other legislation to consult with the FFC on issues such as provincial and local government revenue sources, and provincial and municipal loans.

Consultation is also required on the fiscal implications of assigning functions from one sphere of government to another.

Budget Council

The Budget Council consists of the Minister of Finance and the nine provincial members of the executive committees responsible for finance.

The Budget Forum extends the Budget Council to include representatives of organised local government. The mission of the two forums is to ensure cohesion between national policy priorities, the division of nationally raised revenues, and planning and budgeting in provincial and local spheres of government.

The forums also allow the leadership of the three spheres of government to evaluate the performance of government on key national programmes and, where deemed necessary, to agree on support initiatives that will ensure the attainment of national goals.

Public Investment Corporation (PIC)

The PIC is a corporate body governed in terms of the PIC Act, 2004 (Act 23 of 2004).

The corporation was officially launched in April 2005. The PIC invests funds on behalf of the South African public sector.

There are 40 entities or clients whose funds are managed by the PIC. Major clients include the GEPF, the UIF, the Associated Institutions Pension Fund, the Compensation Commissioner: Pension Fund, the CF and the Guardian's Fund. The strategic focus of the PIC in recent years has been on restructuring to build capacity that is comparable to private-sector asset managers.

Key activities and achievements include:

- revising the PIC's governance structure and regulatory oversight
- achieving investment returns that meet or exceed agreed client benchmarks, which are unique and stipulated in each client's mandate
- establishing the subsidiaries, Advent and the Pan-African Infrastructure Development Fund, to focus on property investments in townships or rural areas and infrastructure development in Africa
- adopting the role of corporate-governance champion and activist in relation to investments managed on behalf of the PIC's clients
- establishing an enterprise-risk-management capacity comprising the risk, compliance and internal audit divisions
- revising human-resource policies and recruiting skilled professionals across the three business divisions: investments, risk and operations
- revising client fee scales to a level that can sustain PIC operations in the long term.

Despite challenging conditions in the investment environment, the PIC has succeeded in growing the value of clients' assets under management and in delivering returns in line with the benchmarks set in client-investment mandates.

Strategic priorities over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework period are to ensure the financial sustainability of the PIC and its subsidiaries, develop and maintain sound client relationships, improve enterprise-wide risk management, and grow and improve the PIC's human capacity.

Macroeconomic strategy

The harsh global economic environment, caused by the financial crisis, resulted in South African growth slowing to 3,1% in 2008. The economy performed relatively well compared to many developed economies that contracted in 2008.

By mid-2009, having recorded two consecutive quaters of negative economic growth, the South African economy was technically in a recession – the first of its kind in 18 years. The country's real GDP contracted at an annualised rate of 6,5% in the fourth quarter of 2008. The sharp decline in domestic economic activity followed a severe contraction in global output and was particularly evident in the performance of the export-orientated sectors of the South African economy.

Growth is expected to average 2,7% between 2010 and 2012, with a significant recovery in the outer two years. Lower interest rates and current robust government infrastructure are expected to support growth in the current economic environment.

In 2004, government set out the objectives of halving poverty and unemployment by 2014. A growth rate exceeding 5% a year on average between 2004 and 2014 is necessary to achieve these targets. However, current developments in the global economy pose a challenge to achieving these objectives.

In February 2006, government introduced AsgiSA, aimed at growing the economy and improving its labour-absorbing capacity, leading to shared growth.

AsgiSA has identified the following "binding constraints" to achieving growth objectives:

- the relative volatility and level of the currency
- the cost, efficiency and capacity of the national logistics system
- the shortage of suitably skilled labour, amplified by the cost effects on labour of apartheid spatial patterns
- barriers to entry, limits to competition and limited new investment opportunities
- the regulatory environment and the burden on small and medium enterprises
- deficiencies in state organisation, capacity and leadership.

A number of decisive interventions aimed at addressing these constraints and allowing government to achieve its objectives more effectively include:

- macroeconomic issues, such as reducing the volatility of the Rand, improving the estimation of revenue collections in the budgeting process, and improving expenditure management
- the rapid increase in infrastructure spending to improve infrastructure availability and reliability, reducing the cost of doing business
- sector-investment strategies (or industrial strategies) to promote private-sector investment, with a focus on rapidly growing labour-intensive sectors and sectors with BEE opportunities such as business-process outsourcing, tourism and biofuels
- skills and education initiatives to alleviate the pressing shortage of skills, including initiatives to improve skills in areas such as Science, Mathematics, engineering, management and information technology (IT)
- second-economy interventions to bridge the gap between the first and second economies, including increased participation and broader access to opportunities and education
- public-administration issues, including the reduction of costly institutional interventions.

Government is committed to achieving the objectives set out in AsgiSA. Higher and shared economic growth will allow South Africa to achieve its social objectives of reducing inequality and virtually eliminating poverty.

South African Revenue Service

In accordance with the Sars Act, 1997 (Act 34 of 1997), the revenue service is an administratively autonomous organ of state. It aims to provide a world-class, transparent and client-orientated service, ensuring optimum and equitable revenue collection. Its main functions are:

- collecting and administering all national taxes, duties and levies
- collecting revenue that may be imposed under any other legislation, as agreed upon between Sars and an organ of state or institution entitled to the revenue
- facilitating trade
- providing protection against the illegal importation and exportation of goods

- advising the Minister of Trade and Industry on matters concerning control over the import, export, manufacture, movement and storage or use of certain goods.

Tax system

National Treasury is responsible for advising the Minister of Finance on tax-policy issues that arise in local, provincial and national government spheres. As part of this role, National Treasury must design tax instruments that can optimally fulfil their revenue-raising function, and are aligned to the goals of government's economic and social policy. National Treasury and Sars cooperate in compiling tax policies.

In 2001, South Africa's source-based income tax system was replaced with a residence-based system. Residents are now taxed (subject to certain exclusions) on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned.

Foreign taxes are credited against South African tax payable on foreign income. Foreign income and taxes are translated into the South African monetary unit, the Rand.

International tax agreements for the avoidance of double taxation

International tax agreements are important for encouraging investment and trade flows between nations, by providing certainty about the tax framework. By reaching agreement on the allocation of taxing rights between residence and source countries of international investors, double-taxation agreements provide a solid platform for growth in international trade and investment. South Africa has tax agreements with various countries.

Sources of revenue

Income tax

Income tax is government's main source of income and is levied in terms of the Income Tax Act, 1962 (Act 58 of 1962).

In South Africa, income tax is levied on South African residents' worldwide income, with appropriate relief to avoid double taxation. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source. Tax is levied on taxable income, which, in essence, consists of gross income less allowable deductions as per the Act.

The income threshold below which no tax is payable by individuals under 65 years was raised to R54 200 for the tax year beginning March 2009, and for taxpayers over the age of 65 to R84 200 a year.

The 2009 Budget proposes personal income tax relief to individual taxpayers amounting to R13,6 billion. This will compensate taxpayers for wage inflation ("bracket creep"). Taxpayers with an annual taxable income below R150 000 will receive 45% of the proposed relief; those with an annual taxable income between R150 001 and R250 000, 22%; those with an annual taxable income between R250 001 and R500 000, 21%; and those with an annual taxable income above R500 000, 12%.

Alongside corporated income tax and value-added tax (VAT), personal income tax is one of the three main tax instruments and provides the basis for the progressive structure of South Africa's tax system.

It is estimated that the 12,5% of registered individual taxpayers with an annual taxable income of between R250 001 and R500 000 will account for 29% of personal income tax revenues, and the 5,5% of registered individual taxpayers with an annual taxable income of above R500 000 will account for 38% of personal income tax revenues during 2009/10.

In line with government's goal of encouraging greater national savings, it is proposed to increase the tax-free interest-income ceiling from R19 000 to R21 000 for persons below the age of 65 and from R27 500 to R30 000 for persons aged 65 and above. It is also proposed to increase the tax-free income ceilings for foreign dividends and interest from R3 200 to R3 500, and the annual exclusion ceiling for capital gains and losses for individuals from R16 000 to R17 500.

From 1 March 2009, the monthly monetary caps for tax-deductible contributions to medical schemes increased from R570 to R625 for each of the first two beneficiaries, and from R345 to R380 for each additional beneficiary.

Tax returns must be submitted to Sars within the specified period.

People who owe Sars tax are charged interest at a rate as published in the *Government Gazette* that is linked to the rate specified in accordance with the PFMA, 1999.

Persons who derive income from sources other than remuneration, such as trade, profession or investments, and companies, are required to make two provisional tax payments during the course of the tax year and may opt for a third "topping-up" payment, six months after the end of the tax year.

Capital gains tax was introduced on 1 October 2001. It forms part of the income-tax system.

Capital gains made upon the disposal of assets are included in taxable income.

Local governments levy rates on the value of fixed property to finance the cost of municipal services.

Value-added tax

VAT is levied on the supply of all goods and services rendered by registered vendors throughout the business cycle. Effectively, VAT is levied on the value added by an enterprise.

Vendors levy and pay over the tax included in their prices, resulting in VAT being paid by the final consumer. VAT is also levied on the importation of goods and services into South Africa. It is levied at the standard rate of 14% but certain supplies are zero-rated or are exempt from VAT.

The prices of goods and services must be quoted or displayed on an inclusive basis, which means that VAT has to be included in prices on all products, price lists, advertisements and quotations.

Customs duty

South Africa is a signatory to the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) Agreement, together with Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland (the BLNS countries).

The five member countries of Sacu apply the same customs and excise legislation, the same rates of customs and excise duties on imported and locally manufactured goods, and the same import duties on imported goods.

The uniform application of tariffs and the standardisation of procedures simplify trade within the Sacu common-customs area. Import duties, including anti-dumping and countervailing duties, are used as mechanisms to protect the local industry.

The renegotiated Sacu Agreement is in force and provides a new dispensation for calculating and affecting transfers based on customs, excise and a development component.

South Africa has entered into agreements on mutual administrative assistance with a wide range of customs administrations.

These agreements cover all aspects of assistance, including the exchange of information, technical assistance, surveillance, investigations and visits by officials. Efforts continue to improve the effectiveness of custom control and trade facilitation.

Following the launch of the Southern African Development Communiy (SADC) Free Trade Area, a SADC customs union will be established.

Excise duty

Excise duty is levied on certain locally manufactured goods and their imported equivalents. This duty is levied as a specific duty on tobacco, liquor, and as an ad valorem duty on cosmetics, audio-visual equipment and motor cars.

Relief from excise duty is available where excisable products are exported. In addition, relief is also available for specific farming and forestry, and certain manufacturing activities.

Excise duties are imposed both as a means to generate revenue for the fiscus and to change consumer behaviour.

Transfer duty

Transfer duty is payable on the acquisition of property by individuals at progressive marginal rates between 0% and 8%. With effect from 1 March 2006, houses costing less than R500 000 attract no duty.

A 5% rate applies at between R500 000 and R1 million, after which 8% applies. The 10% flat rate for companies and trusts was also reduced to 8%. All transactions relating to a taxable supply of goods that are subject to VAT are exempt from transfer duty.

Estate duty

An estate consists of all property, including deemed property (e.g. life-insurance policies, payments from pension funds, etc.) of the deceased. The exempt threshold was increased to R3,5 million in 2007. The duty, at a rate of 20%, is calculated on the dutiable amount of the estate. Certain admissible deductions from the total value of the estate are allowed.

Stamp duty

Stamp duty is levied on instruments such as leases of immovable property and unlisted marketable securities at different rates. It is also payable on leases for fixed property at a fixed rate of 0,5% on the quantifiable amount of the lease. It is proposed that the stamp duties on short-term leases (less than five years) should be abolished.

Uncertificated securities tax (UST)

UST at a rate of 0,25% is payable for the issue of, and change in beneficial ownership in, any securities which are listed on the JSE Ltd. In the case of unlisted securities, stamp duty is levied at the same rate of 0,25%. UST on the issue of securities was eliminated from 1 January 2006.

Skills-development levy

This is a compulsory levy scheme for the funding of education and training. Sars administers the collection of the levy. The rate, as from 1 August 2005, is 1% for employers with an annual payroll in excess of R500 000.

Air-passenger departure tax

A tax of R120 per fee-paying passenger departing on international flights, and R60 per passenger departing to BLNS countries is payable. This was increased to R150 and R80 respectively from 1 October 2009.

Organisational performance

Sars collected R625,57 billion by 31 March 2009. The preliminary result was 0,34% below the revised February 2009 Budget estimate of R627,69 billion, representing a 9,2% growth in revenue collection over 2008.

In anticipation of the economic downturn, the revenue target was adjusted downwards in February from R642,27 billion to R627,69 billion. The current conditions resulted in a collection of R625,57 billion or 99,66% of the target.

The preliminary outcome of revenue results for 2008/09 included:

- revenue collected: R625,57 billion (99,66%)
- revised revenue estimate (February 2009): R627 69 billion
- shortfall: R2,12 billion (0,34%)
- February 2008 printed estimate: R642, 27 billion
- shortfall: R16,70 billion
- revised budget deficit figure: 1,2% (previous estimate 1%)
- revised tax-to-GDP ratio: 27,2% (previous estimate 27,2%).

The main contributors to total revenue were company income tax (R165 23 billion), personal income tax (R197,7 billion) and VAT (R153,81 billion). Import VAT and customs duty contributed to the shortfall as a result of falling trade volumes, especially during the last quarter of the fiscal year. A key factor was a 10% decline in automotive goods and parts, which made up 19% of monthly imports.

This result was achieved in a climate of rapidly deteriorating global economic conditions and was testimony to the relative robustness of the South African economy.

Given the challenging economic conditions in 2009, Sars again engaged intensively with taxpayers to ensure they made payments on time.

From November 2009, the South African Revenue Service (Sars) introduced a system of strict administrative penalties against non-compliant taxpayers.

In effect, taxpayers had until 20 November 2009, the final deadline of the 2009 tax season, to submit any outstanding returns to avoid being penalised under the new penalty regime.

The administrative penalty regulations legally came into effect on 1 January 2009 and provide for the imposition of penalties for a range of non-compliance, including failure to register as a taxpayer, failure to inform Sars of a change of address and other personal particulars, and failure to submit tax returns and other documents to Sars.

Sars delayed the effective implementation of the new penalties to allow sufficient time for taxpayers to rectify any non-compliance and for it to develop its own systems to automatically issue penalties for non-compliance. The implementation date will be phased in over a period of time, beginning on 23 November 2009 for taxpayers with outstanding income tax returns.

This included making over 1,5 million telephone calls, and sending 153 000 e-mails and 178 000 SMSs to taxpayers to collect outstanding payments during March 2009.

In 2009, Sars collected R16,4 billion in outstanding debt.

E-filing

E-filing (*www.efiling.gov.za*) is a secure service, enabling taxpayers to submit their tax returns online. It removes the risks and inconvenience of manual tax returns. Not only can returns be submitted via the Internet, but users can also make secure tax payments online. There is also a facility to apply for tax directives, which can be obtained within 24 hours.

The e-filing service is on par with international standards, being comparable with services offered in the United States of America (USA), Australia, Singapore, Ireland, Chile and France. Sars has seen e-filing in South Africa grow signifanctly since it was initiated in 2003.

Filing of tax returns season

Filing Season is an extensive marketing and publicity venture to remind taxpayers of their responsibilities to submit their tax returns on time and with the correct details.

The Taxpayer Education Campaign focuses on helping all eligible taxpayers to complete their tax returns correctly.

The filing period for South Africa's 2009 tax season started at the beginning of July 2009, for individual taxpayers and trusts, which could then start submitting their income tax returns electronically.

These taxpayers could then also request a customised, pre-populated tax return for manual submission.

Sars announced at the end of November 2009 that it had received a reccord number of more than four million returns for the 2009 tax season, 26% more than the 2008 season.

National Gambling Board (NGB)

The NGB was established in terms of the National Gambling Act, 1996, (Act 33 of 1996), which was repealed on 1 November 2004 by the National Gambling Act, 2004, (Act 7 of 2004).

The Act provides for the oversight of matters relating to casinos, gambling, racing and wagering and promotes uniform norms and standards in relation to gambling throughout South Africa.

The vision of the board is to be a world-class organisation, providing a national regulatory framework for the gambling industry. The board is a catalyst in creating a credible South African gambling environment to ensure uniformity, harmonisation and integrity of the gambling industry.

It enforces compliance with the National Gambling Act, 2004 and ensures compliance with other relevant legislation, such as the FICA, 2001, and PFMA, 1999, as amended, and provincial gambling acts.

The role of the NGB is to:

- provide regulatory control over gambling activities
- provide control systems that will ensure the integrity of the South African gambling industry
- promote the development of a responsible gambling culture in South Africa
- provide control systems that will ensure that all gambling activities are conducted responsibly, fairly and honestly
- ensure that all players are treated fairly and that their privacy is maintained
- protect minors and vulnerable persons from the negative effects of gambling
- protect and advance the interest of historically disadvantaged persons
- protect the broader society against overstimulation of the demand for gambling
- employ control systems that will deter gambling from being a source of or associated with crime or disorder, or being used to support crime, disorder or money laundering.

The NGB hosted the Biennial Gambling Conference in April 2008 alongside the plenary mid-year meetings of the International Association of Gambling Regulators and the Gaming Regulators Africa Forum, respectively.

Five national registry systems were developed, namely self-exclusions; probity; information-sharing; gambling machines; and devices and central monitoring.

The Limited Payout Machine (LPM) industry continues to gain momentum. Just over 10% LPMs were rolled out by the end of March 2009 and remain operational since the promulgation of 50 000 machines countrywide.

These machines are not rolled out in the North West, Free State and the Northern Cape. However, they have promulgated their relevant legislative policy framework and is in the process of implementation.

Through the Zonke Monitoring Systems, the NGB provides central monitoring services to the industry.

Racing and betting

The NGB spent considerable time in ensuring that uniform norms and standards are applied within the industry. The NGB participated in the review of the wagering software standard (SANS 1718, Part Four) and consulted with provincial gambling boards to develop uniform regulatory systems for compliance and revenue audit.

Compliance inspections in terms of the FICA, 2001 were conducted in the book-making industry and these inspections indicated a need for training in the industry.

Research

The Information Management Department commissioned the Bureau of Market Research to conduct follow-up research regarding the socio-economic impact of legalised gambling in South Africa.

In an effort to provide comprehensive and user-friendly information about the gambling industry, the NGB developed the National Gambling Statistics Database, which focuses on primary statistics such as gross gambling revenue (GGR), turnover and gambling tax.

This information is vital for keeping stakeholders informed of financial and operational gambling

data in the country. The results for 2008/09 continued to show an increase in GGR. It increased by 1,94% (2007/08: R15,18 billion) to R15,921billion (2008/09).

Responsible gambling

The National Responsible Gambling Programme (NRGP) is an institution that integrates research and monitoring, public education and awareness, training, treatment and counselling. It is still the only programme that is jointly managed by a public-private partnership involving government regulators and the industry.

The Schools Programme has developed into the National Schools Programme. The teaching and learning resource package, called *Taking Risks Wisely*, has been initiated within the legislated structure and prescribed requirements of the South African National Curriculum Statement and the Outcomes-Based Education Framework. In the Western Cape and Gauteng, high-school children have been treated to an entertaining industrial theatre show illustrating the pitfalls of gambling among youth.

Since 2004, more than 85 000 learners at 154 schools in Gauteng have participated in the programme, which was funded by the Gauteng Gambling Board and the Gauteng Provincial Government's Department of Economic Development.

The NRGP has implemented a community outreach project directed at social groups who are considered particularly vulnerable to problem gambling behaviour: youth and senior citizens.

Gambling revenue

Source: National Gambling Board

The National Centre for the Study of Gambling is helping to build and secure South Africa's capacity for continuously enhancing the understanding of gambling behaviour, to improve the prevention and treatment of problem gambling. Work is conducted on the relationship between poverty and gambling as part of an extensive study of gambling behaviour in a rural KwaZulu-Natal community.

This is closely integrated with prevalence and longitudinal studies of South African gambling behaviour at national level. Other studies being conducted included the investigation of the way in which the brain compares present and future rewards using functional magnetic resonance imaging.

The NRGP continues to publish and disseminate the *Responsible Gambling Digest*, a monthly electronic newsletter, which provides readers with a broad overview of international developments in the study and treatment of problem gambling.

New treatment innovations were introduced: the development of continuing care groups in those centres where such a service is not available, and clients being referred by treatment professionals for debt counselling.

Since the inception of the NRGP in 2000, more than 25 700 calls have been received by the toll-free problem gambling counselling line and about 8 790 callers were referred for free treatment by a medical/treatment professional – about 90 a month. More than 2 800 callers have been assisted telephonically.

The NRGP continues to provide training to staff at all levels in the casino industry, book-makers and tote operators attached to horse racing, the LPM sector as well as regulators and healthcare-workers.

National Lotteries Board (NLB)

The NLB was established in October 1998 in terms of the Lotteries Act, 1997 (Act 57 of 1997).

The board's main activities are, among other things, to:

- advise the Minister of Trade and Industry on the issuing of the licence to conduct the National Lottery
- ensure that the National Lottery and sports pools are conducted with all due propriety
- ensure that the interests of every participant in the National Lottery are adequately protected
- ensure that the net proceeds of the National Lottery are as large as possible
- administer the National Lottery Distribution Trust Fund and hold it in trust

- advise the minister on percentages of money to be allocated in terms of Section 26(3) of the Lotteries Act, 1997
- advise the minister on establishing and implementing a social-responsibility programme in respect of lotteries
- administer and invest the money paid to the board in accordance with the Lotteries Act, 1997.

The National Lottery' operator is Gidani, a 89,2% black-majority-owned private company.

In April 2009, Cabinet approved the proposal to allocate government's 20% shareholding in the National Lottery to the National Empowerment Fund and the South African Post Office. The 20% shareholding will be split equally between the two entities.

Auditor-General of South Africa (AGSA)

The AGSA has a constitutional mandate and it exists to strengthen South Africa's democracy by enabling oversight, accountability and governance in the public sector through auditing, thereby building public confidence.

The AGSA is one of the chapter nine institutions mandated by the Constitution to fulfil certain functions. These institutions are not part of government and do not have a duty to be part of the mechanisms of cooperative government. The independence of the AGSA is thus respected and strengthened.

As mandated by the Constitution and the Public Audit Act, 2004 (Act 25 of 2004), the AGSA is responsible for the auditing of national and provincial state departments and administrations, all municipalities and any other institution or accounting entity required by national and provincial legislation to be audited by the AGSA.

The AGSA is supported by more than 1 920 staff members, who are distributed throughout the nine provinces to represent the AGSA countrywide. A shortage of auditing and accounting skills in the country has obliged the AGSA to embark on a process of building capacity via a trainee auditor scheme that, by May 2009, included about 950 trainees.

Various business units provide auditing services, corporate services and specialised audit work, such as performance audit, information systems audit and audit research and development.

The AGSA also boasts an impressive international auditing complement. International institutions audited by the AGSA include the UN, the UN Industrial Development Organisation and the International Centre for Genetic Engineering and Biotechnology. These contracts have been obtained competitively and are evidence of the AGSA's good standing and professionalism.

In March 2009, South Africa ranked fourth in the world for auditing and reporting standards, according to the Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors.

According to the World Economic Forum's *Global Competitiveness Report 2008 – 2009*, South Africa received a fourth-place ranking for auditing and reporting standards.

Financial sector

South African Reserve Bank (SARB)

The SARB is the central bank of South Africa. The bank and National Treasury form the monetary authority in South Africa.

The bank was established in 1921 in terms of a special Act of Parliament, the Currency and Banking Act, 1920 (Act 10 of 1920), and was the direct result of the abnormal monetary and financial conditions, that had arisen during and in the period immediately following World War I.

Since its establishment, the bank has always been privately owned and has more than 600 shareholders. Except for the provision of the bank that no individual shareholder may hold more than 10 000 shares of the total number of two million issued shares, there is no limitation on shareholding. The bank's shares are traded on the Over-the-Counter Share-Trading Facility managed by the bank.

After allowing for certain provisions, payment of company tax on profits, transfers to reserves and dividend payments of not more than 10 cents per share per year to shareholders, the surplus of the bank's earnings is paid to government. The bank's operations are therefore not driven by a profit motive, but by serving the best interests of all South Africans.

The bank holds an annual general meeting of shareholders at its Head Office in Pretoria. This is the occasion where the Governor, as chairperson, delivers an annual address on the state of the economy and monetary policy, which is covered widely in the media.

The bank has a board of 14 directors. Among them are the Governor and three deputy governors, who are appointed by the President for a five-year term. Three other directors are appointed by the President for a period of three years.

The remaining seven directors, of whom one represents agriculture, two industry and four commerce or finance, are elected by shareholders for a period of three years.

The bank has a staff of around 2 000. Management comprises the Governor, deputy governors, the executive general managers and the heads of departments. The bank has branch offices in Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Durban, East London, Johannesburg, Port Elizabeth and Pretoria North.

The bank is governed by the SARB Act, 1989 (Act 90 of 1989). It has, furthermore, been given an important degree of autonomy in the execution of its duties, in terms of the Constitution.

The bank must submit a monthly statement of its assets and liabilities and an annual report to Parliament. The Governor of the bank holds regular discussions with the Minister of Finance and appears before the Parliamentary Portfolio and select committees on finance from time to time.

The SARB, like central banks in other countries, has a unique position in the economy as it performs various functions and duties not normally carried out by commercial banks. Although the functions of the bank have changed and expanded over time, the formulation and implementation of monetary policy have remained one of the cornerstones of its activities.

The bank has used different monetary-policy frameworks over time, such as credit ceilings and credit controls in the 1970s, money-supply growth targets in the 1980s, money-supply growth guidelines by the early 1990s and an eclectic monetary policy with an informal inflation target from the mid-1990s. In February 2000, an inflation target was specified for the first time, and the adoption of this target entrusted a single objective to the bank: price stability.

Previously, South Africa's inflation target was specified as increases in CPIX (year-on-year increase in the CPI, excluding mortgage interest costs for metropolitan and other urban areas) of between 3% and 6% to be achieved on a continuous basis.

In February 2009, Statistics South Africa launched the New Headline CPI, which replaced the previously targeted CPIX inflation. The newly reweighted and rebased CPI is based on the Classification of Individual Consumption by Purpose. The target range is still 3% to 6%.

Inflation targeting is a framework and not a rule. The numerical rate is made public and a definite time horizon is specified.

The framework was introduced because of certain perceived advantages, such as:

- making the objective of monetary policy clear, thereby improving planning in the private and public sectors
- forming part of a formalised coordinated effort to contain inflation and pursuit of the broader economic objective of sustainable high economic growth and employment creation
- helping to focus monetary policy and enhancing the accountability of the central bank to the public
- providing an anchor for expectations of future inflation, which should influence price and wage setting.

The inflation target is set in consultation between the Governor and the Minister of Finance. This approach implies that the bank does not have complete goal independence (that is, the setting of the objective to achieve), but has operational independence (such as the choice of instruments and the autonomy to adjust such instruments) in monetary-policy decisions aimed at achieving the target. The bank publishes monetary-policy reviews biannually, while regular regional monetary-policy forums are also held to provide a platform for discussions of monetary policy with broader stakeholders from the community.

System of accommodation

The bank's refinancing system is the main mechanism used to implement its monetary policy. Through its refinancing system, the bank provides liquidity to banks, enabling them to meet their daily liquidity requirements.

The South African Revenue Service (Sars) abolished the Stamp Duty Act, 1968 (Act 77 of 1968), with effect from midnight on 31 March 2009. The abolition formed part of ongoing efforts to reduce the administrative burden on taxpayers and to simplify the tax system.

The scrapping of the Act follows the whittling down of the scope of stamp duties over the past few years until only property leases of over five years required stamp duties to be paid. The scrapping of the Act is, however, not retrospective and taxpayers remained liable for stamp duties due up to 31 March 2009. Any outstanding stamp duties must still be paid.

Holders of existing stocks of revenue stamps have until 31 October 2010 to claim a refund for the stamps from their nearest Sars branch.

Revenue franking machines were scrapped on 1 November 2009 and any value remaining on these machines can be refunded until 31 October 2010 at a Sars branch.

"Liquidity" refers to the banks' balances at the central bank that are available to settle their transactions with one another, over and above the minimum statutory level of reserves that they have to hold.

The main instrument for managing liquidity in the money market is repurchase (repo) transactions. The refinancing system, based on repo transactions, was introduced in March 1998.

The repo rate is the price at which the central bank lends cash to the banking system and is the key operational variable in the monetary-policy implementation process. It represents the most important indicator for short-term interest rates.

The refinancing system also provides for supplementary and standing facilities to bridge the banking sector's overnight liquidity needs, as well as a concession to banks to use their cash-reserve balances with the bank to square-off their daily positions.

Creating a liquidity requirement

In terms of its monetary-policy implementation framework, the SARB has to compel the banks to borrow a substantial amount (the liquidity requirement or the money-market shortage) from the bank.

The bank, therefore, creates a liquidity requirement (or shortage) in the money market, which it then refinances at the repo rate – a fixed interest rate determined by the Monetary Policy Committee (MPC), comprising the bank's governors and other senior officials. After each meeting, the MPC issues a statement indicating its assessment of the economy and announces policy changes, if necessary.

The bank's repo rate influences the interest rates charged by banks, the general level of interest rates in the economy and therefore other economic aggregates such as money supply, bank-credit extension and ultimately the rate of inflation.

The repo rate influences market rates in two ways: it directly influences the banks' marginal cost of funding and it reflects the bank's stance on monetary policy.

The bank has to intervene regularly in the money market to create such a shortage, that is, to drain excess liquidity from the money market. In addition to the liquidity-management operations described above, the bank uses other open-market operations (OMOs) to achieve its monetary-policy objectives.

The OMOs refer to the selling of the SARB debentures, longer-term reverse repos, money-market swaps in foreign exchange and the movement of public-sector funds, for example, Corporation for Public Deposits and central government funds, as well as changes in the cash-reserve requirements for banks, which by mid-2009 amounted to 2,5% of banks' liabilities.

Functions of the bank

The bank performs a number of functions to achieve its objectives. Its current functions can be grouped into the following major areas of responsibility:

- Formulation and implementation of monetary policy (aimed at achieving the inflation target).
  - Refinancing system and interest rates:
    The essence of the bank's monetary-policy implementation framework and the transmission of monetary policy is its influence on the level of interest rates through its refinancing system.
  - OMOs:
    OMOs are conducted for two reasons: Firstly, to neutralise or smooth the influence of exogenous factors on the liquidity position in the money market. Secondly, to maintain an adequate liquidity requirement in the market, which has to be refinanced from the bank. Through this mechanism, the bank can exert influence over interest rates in the market.
- Service to government.
  - Gold and foreign-exchange reserves:
    The bank is the custodian of the country's official gold and foreign-exchange reserves. Subsequent to the conversion of the nega-

Dates of change in the repurchase rate

Date	Percentage (%)
2008-04-11	11,5
2008-06-12	12
2008-12-12	11,5
2009-02-06	10,5
2009-03-25	9,5
2009-05-04	8,5
2009-05-29	7,5
2009-08-14	7

Source: South African Reserve Bank

South Africa's Absa was recognised as the "most innovative bank in Africa" at the African Banker Awards 2009, while Absa's Tanzanian subsidiary, the National Bank of Commerce, was named the "best local bank in Africa".

The awards, organised by IC Publications, publishers of *African Banker* magazine, were held during the World Bank/ International Monetary Fund annual meetings in Istanbul, Turkey, in October 2009.

Absa was recognised for its string of successive innovations undertaken in 2008/09.

tive net open foreign currency position in May 2003 into a positive position, foreign reserves have been growing since. Gross and net reserves, or the international liquidity position of the SARB, amounted to US$34,1 billion and US$33,5 billion, respectively, in March 2009.

- Banker and adviser to government:
  The main services provided are administering the auctions of government bonds and National Treasury bills, participating in the joint standing committees between the bank and National Treasury and managing the flow of funds between the Exchequer Account and tax and loan accounts.
- Administration of exchange control:
  The bank is responsible for the administration of government's exchange-control policy.
- Provision of economic and statistical services:
  The bank collects, processes, interprets and publishes public information, economic statistics and other information, and uses this information in policy formulation.

- Financial stability.
  - Bank supervision:
    The purpose is to achieve a sound and effective banking system in the interest of depositors of banks and the economy as a whole.
  - The national payment system:
    The bank is responsible for overseeing the safety and soundness of the national payment system. The main aim is to reduce interbank settlement risk with the objective of reducing the potential of a systemic risk crisis emanating from settlement default by one or more of the settlement banks.
  - Banker to other banks:
    The bank acts as custodian of the cash reserves that banks are legally required to hold or prefer to hold voluntarily with the bank.
  - Banknotes and coin:
    The South African Mint Company, a subsidiary of the bank, mints all coin on behalf of the bank. The South African Bank Note Company, another subsidiary of the bank, prints all banknotes on behalf of the SARB.
  - Lender of last resort:
    In terms of its "lender-of-last-resort activities", the bank may, in certain circumstances, provide liquidity assistance to banks experiencing liquidity problems.
  - Monitoring financial stability:
    In view of the interrelationship between price and financial-system stability, the bank monitors the macro-prudential aspects of the domestic financial system. The objective of financial stability is to prevent costly disruptions in the country's financial system.
- Provision of internal corporate support services and systems.

To ensure its own smooth operations and administration, the bank provides its own internal services, supported by IT and Human Resources (HR).

It is the responsibility of the branches to ensure that there is an adequate supply of new notes available to meet the demand, and to replace unfit notes. The branches are responsible for the quality of banknotes in circulation in their respective regions.

Monetary policy

Growth in the broad money supply (M3) slowed noticeably from an annual high 12-month growth rate of 24,5% in January 2008 to 13,2% in February 2009. Growth over 12 months in banks' total loans and advances similarly moderated from 23,8% in January 2009 to 10,2% in February 2009 – the lowest growth rate since July 2004.

Asset-backed credit (mortgage advances, leasing finance and instalment sale credit) constituted the bulk of the increase in banks' total loans and advances throughout 2008. However, in early 2009, other loans and advances, which are mainly used by the corporate sector, dominated.

The moderation in the growth in banks' total loans and advances was consistent with the gradual tightening of monetary policy since June 2006, accompanied by tighter lending standards set by the National Credit Act (NCA), 2005 (Act 35 of 2005), from June 2007.

Since the inception of an easing phase of the monetary policy cycle in December 2008, the

MPC reduced the repo rate by a cumulative total of 250 basis points to 9,50% in March 2009.

The banking industry

The South African banking system remained stable and, in general, banks were sound during 2008. The capital-adequacy ratio for the banking sector remained above the minimum requirement of 9,5%, reaching 13% at the end of December 2008.

As at the end of December 2008, there were 33 banking institutions reporting data to the Office of the Registrar of Banks (excluding two mutual banks). At the end of December 2008, 43 foreign banks had authorised representative offices.

At the end of 2008, banking-sector assets amounted to R3 170 billion, representing an annual growth rate of 24,5% year-on-year (January 2008: 27%). Total assets of the four large banks amounted to R2 676 billion and accounted for 84,4% of banking-sector assets at the end of December 2008. At the end of December 2008, gross loans and advances amounted to R2 316 billion (January 2008: R2 103 billion). The growth in gross loans and advances (measured year-on-year) eased to 9% at the end of December 2008, compared to 19,2% at the end of January 2008.

The implementation of Basel II on 1 January 2008, encompassed, among other things, a change in reporting methodology, revised regulatory returns and greater alignment of regulatory reporting requirements with International Financial Reporting Standards. As a result of these changes, all profitability ratios are calculated on an unsmoothed basis since comparison with previous years is not possible.

The banks reported favourable profitability ratios throughout 2008.

At the end of 2008, the cost-to-income ratio amounted to 42,2%, compared to 47% at the end of January 2008. The return on equity and return on assets amounted to 28,7% and 2,1%, respectively at the end of December 2008 (January 2008: 24,1% and 1,7%, respectively).

Liquid assets held exceeded the statutory liquid assets requirement throughout 2008. The liquid assets held, measured against the minimum liquid asset requirement, amounted to 115,5% at the end of December 2008 (January 2008: 111,1%).

Credit-risk ratios deteriorated during 2008. Impaired advances continued to rise, reaching R87,3 billion at the end of December 2008 (January 2008: R47,6 billion). Expressed as a percentage of gross loans and advances, the ratio deteriorated from 2,3% at the end of January 2008 to 3,8% at the end of December 2008.

The microlending industry

The Department of Trade and Industry introduced the NCA, 2005, to allow the credit market to function in a robust and effective manner.

The NCA, 2005 replaced the Usury Act, 1968 (Act 73 of 1968), and the Credit Agreements Act, 1980 (Act 75 of 1980). The NCA, 2005, which became effective on 1 June 2007, aims to regulate the granting of consumer credit by all credit-providers, including microlenders, banks and retailers.

It created the National Credit Regulator (NCR) and the National Consumer Tribunal, which play a vital role in ensuring enforcement, promoting access to redress and adjudicating contraventions of the Act.

The NCR is responsible for regulating the South African credit industry. It carries out education, research and policy development; registers industry participants; investigates complaints; and ensures that the Act is enforced.

In terms of the Act, the NCR has to promote the development of an accessible credit market to meet the needs of people who were previously disadvantaged, earn a low income or live in remote, isolated or low-density communities.

The National Consumer Tribunal adjudicates various applications and hears cases against those who contravene the Act.

The Act provides for the registration of debt counsellors to assist overindebted consumers.

Research by World Wide Worx found that more South African banking customers now turn to their mobile phones rather than their personal computers for services ranging from balance enquiries to account payments.

According to the consumer phase of World Wide Worx's *Mobility 2009 Report*, a quarter of South Africa's bank customers turn to their cellphones for informational and financial transactions.

The report is being conducted in four phases, with the first three looking at the use of mobile technologies by small and medium enterprises, consumers and corporations, and the final phase exploring the mobile Internet.

According to a statement by World Wide Worx in November 2009, the second phase revealed that while 16% of banking customers in South Africa used the Internet for banking, 28% used their cellphones and a total of 34% of banking customers used one or both of these channels.

Debt counsellors are required to undergo training approved by the NCR through approved training service-providers appointed by the regulator.

Other financial institutions

Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA)

The DBSA Act, 1997 (Act 13 of 1997), stipulates that the main role of this DFI is to promote economic development and growth, HR development and institutional capacity-building. The bank achieves this by mobilising financial and other resources from the private and public sectors, both nationally and internationally, for sustainable development projects and programmes.

Development planning and implementation

The Development Planning and Implementation Division plays a pivotal role in the generation of knowledge that supports the DBSA in enhancing its development impact, and that contributes to the public policy discourse in a range of development areas.

Since 2008/09, the focus of the division has been on engagement with planning and implementation processes. The division is thus geared towards problem-solving in relation to development challenges, thereby offering critical contribution in supporting the public sector in planning for and achieving development in the long term.

The division comprises five key functions, namely Research, Policy, Advisory Services, Information Services and Intellectual Capital.

Strategic projects

Over the next three years, the DBSA strategy envisages the investment of R8 billion in South Africa and the deployment of 150 experts to develop and implement infrastructure projects. The growth will be on the sectors and projects identified in AsgiSA, the SADC Regional Indicative Strategic Development Plan and the New Partnership for Africa's Development Short-Term Action Plan for infrastructure.

Over the 10-year period leading to 2014, the bank plans to invest a total of R45 bilion, of which R30 billion will be in South Africa and R15 billion in the rest of southern Africa.

2010 World Cup

In fulfilling its roles as adviser and partner to the FIFA Organising Committee (OC), the DBSA has offered technical support with the assessment of infrastructure requirements and the review of the capacity of the candidate host cities.

A report entitled *2010 FIFA World Cup™, Candidate Host Cities Comparative Review and Preliminary Cost Estimates* was drafted and presented to the Board of Directors of the OC, and representatives of FIFA.

To assist clients with the preparation and planning of the stadiums' upgrading and construction, National Treasury has made available the Project Preparation Facility for the start of urgent capital works. National Treasury requested the DBSA to manage the fund on an agency basis.

Vulindlela Academy

The DBSA's Vulindelela Academy has directed a large number of interventions towards regional DFIs, and is also involved in developing a project-management programme to support the AsgiSA initiative. The bank also expects to play a major role in funding certain infrastructure elements proposed under AsgiSA.

Land and Agricultural Development Bank (Land Bank)

The Land Bank operates as a DFI within the agricultural and agribusiness sectors, and is regulated by the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act, 2002 (Act 15 of 2002). The Land Bank provides a range of financing products to a broad spectrum of clients within the agricultural industry.

Financing products include wholesale and retail financing to commercial and developing farmers, cooperatives and other agriculture-related businesses.

The Land Bank's objectives are defined within its mandate, which requires that it should achieve:

- growth in the commercial market
- growth in the development market
- business efficiency
  - service delivery
  - resource management
- sustainability.

(See Chapter 3: *Agriculture, forestry and fisheries*.)

The Land Bank is the sole shareholder in the Suid-Afrikaanse Verbandversekeringsmaatskappy Beperk, which provides insurance to people indebted to the bank through mortgage loans.

Financial Services Board (FSB)

The FSB is a regulatory institution established in terms of the FSB Act, (Act 97 of 1990), to oversee

the non-banking financial services industry in the public interest.

The FSB's vision is to promote and maintain a sound financial investment environment in South Africa. The mission of the board is to:

- continuously develop an effective regulatory framework
- ensure effective supervision of its regulated entities
- facilitate consumer education regarding financial products and services
- collaborate with other government agencies, locally and internationally
- comply with international standards
- promote effective competition in the industry.

Collective investment schemes

CIS are investment structures whereby individual investor funds are pooled with those of other investors. Qualified asset managers regulated under the Financial Advisory and Intermediaries (FAIS) Act, 2002 (Act 37 of 2002), invest these funds on behalf of the investor. Each investor owns units (participatory interest) in the total fund.

Fund or asset managers invest the funds in a variety of assets such as equities (shares), property, participation bonds and other financial instruments. The price of each unit depends on the market value of the investment in which the units have been invested. The value of the units rise and fall in line with changes in the value of their underlying investments.

CIS in shares are generally considered as medium- to long-term investment and past performance is not necessarily a guide to the future.

Financial intermediaries and advisers

The purpose of the FAIS Act, 2002 is to regulate, in pursuance of consumer protection, the provision of advice and intermediary services to certain clients in respect of a range of financial products and services.

The FSB, through the FAIS department, is responsible for the regulation of the rendering of financial advisory and intermediary services to clients by financial services providers (FSP) in respect of a wide range of financial products.

The provisions of the FAIS Act, 2002 became effective on 30 September 2004. In terms of this Act, consumers should ensure that the FSP they are dealing with has obtained a licence from the FSB before conducting any transaction. Information on the authorised FSP can be obtained from the FSB website or call the toll-free numbers, 0800 110 443 or 0800 202 087.

Recognised representative bodies

Section 6(3)(iii) of the Act provides for the Registrar of FSPs to delegate any of their powers in terms of the Act to anybody recognised by the Act. Two such functions, the consideration of applications for licences under Section 8 and the consideration of applications for approval of compliance officers under Section 17(2) of the Act, were delegated to 11 recognised representative bodies.

Advisory Committee on Financial Services Providers

The Advisory Committee on FSPs was appointed by the Minister of Finance to investigate and report or advise on any matter relating to FSPs. With the exception of the registrar, who is an ex-officio member, committee members hold office for a period determined by the minister.

Licensing of financial services providers

In terms of the FAIS Act, 2002, the FSB approves and renders ongoing supervision over three categories.

Category One consists of financial advisers and those intermediaries without discretionary mandates. Category Two consists of individuals or entities that are involved in discretionary management of securities, loan stock and derivatives on behalf of both individual and institutional clients.

Category Three represents investment managers specialising mainly in the bulking of collective investments on behalf of clients (linked investment services providers).

Insurance companies

Insurance is divided into long-term and short-term insurance. Insurance is an agreement between a policy-holder and the insurance company. Under a short-term insurance policy, the insured is entitled to be compensated by the insurer for the loss of or damage to assets caused by the event against which they are insured.

The aim of short-term insurance is to put the insured in the same position they occupied immediately before the loss, depending on the terms and conditions of the policy contract. Examples of short-term insurance include motor-vehicle, household, theft and fire insurance.

Long-term insurance includes life and assistance policies that pay a benefit to dependants on the death of the insured person/s, endowment (savings) policies payable at a predetermined date, disability policies, pensions and retirement policies, or even a combination of these policies.

In terms of the Long-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 52 of 1998), and the Short-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 53 of 1998), all insurance companies must be registered by the FSB and must comply with the provisions of these Acts.

It is important that policy-holders establish the name of the insurer (which is a different entity from a broker) who will underwrite the risk and issue the policy and that the insurer is registered to do so before entering into an agreement.

Due to the private nature of the agreement between the policy-holder and the insurer, the FSB has limited authority to intervene in disputes between the two parties unless there are clear indications that provisions of an Act administered by the FSB have been contravened.

The insurance industry has appointed an ombudsman for short-term insurance as well as for long-term insurance to play a mediatory role in dispute-resolution between insurers and policy-holders.

Market abuse

The Directorate: Market Abuse is a committee of the FSB and is responsible for combating market abuse in the financial markets in South Africa.

Retirement funds

Retirement funds can be classified as either pension funds or provident funds.

The main differences are:

- Under a pension fund, at least two thirds of the benefit must be paid as a pension for the rest of the pensioner's life. A maximum of one third of the retirement fund benefit may be taken as a lump sum.
- Under a provident fund, the full amount of the benefit may be taken as a lump sum.

Both pension and provident funds can be either defined contribution funds or defined benefit funds. With a defined benefit fund, the rules will specify the contributions of the employer and the member, but not the amount or guarantee of the benefit. With a defined contribution fund, the rules will specify the contribution of the member as well as a retirement benefit defined according to a formula.

In this case, the employer usually pays the balance of costs. In terms of the Pensions Funds Act, 1956 (Act 24 of 1956), (as amended), all retirement funds to which the State does not contribute to must be registered with the FSB and must comply with the provisions of the Act.

If a complainant is not satisfied with a reply by the fund or the employer or the fund fails to reply within 30 days of receipt thereof, the complainant may lodge a complaint with the Pension Fund Adjudicator, who acts as a mediator between funds and members.

Financial markets

Primary capital-market activity

Government bond

Retail bonds can be purchased from government outlets and selected private retailers. Since the introduction of RSA fixed-rate retail savings bonds in May 2004, a cumulative amount of some R3,3 billion were raised up to March 2009.

In 2008, government relaunched the retail savings bond and introduced an inflation-linked instrument. Interest rates on the South African Government fixed-rate and inflation-linked retail bonds are priced off the Government bond yield curves.

From a high of 10,82% in July 2008, the daily average yield on the R157 government bond (maturing in 2015) declined significantly to 7,04% in December 2008 alongside an improvement in inflation expectations, the lower international price of oil and the downward adjustment in the repo rate.

Subsequently, the notable increase in the supply of government bonds as well as the release of higher-than-expected inflation figures counteracted the positive effect of the prevailing interest-rate easing cycle since December 2008, the lower international oil prices, as well as the appreciation in the exchange value of the Rand. From the low of 7,04% in December, the bond yield fluctuated higher to 8,18% in May 2009.

From July 2008, the level of the yield curve kept a steady downward trend across almost all maturities, reflecting a moderation in inflation expectations. Subsequently, from December 2007 the zero-to-two year maturity range of the yield curve declined significantly in response to decreases in the repo rate as well as expectations of further declines, while the medium-to-long end recorded a notable increase. Consequently, the yield gap, measured as the difference between the yields at the extreme long and short ends of the curve, narrowed distinctly from a negative 520 basis points on 18 December 2008 to a negative 26 basis points on 26 May 2009.

After declining from July 2008, an upward trajectory in the break-even inflation rate became evident from the beginning of February 2009, following the release of higher-than-expected inflation figures as well as movements in the exchange value of the Rand.

The break-even inflation rate in the four-year maturity range fluctuated higher from 3,88% on 10 February 2009 to 5,87% on 26 May, as nominal yields on conventional government bonds increased while real yields on inflation-linked government bonds recorded significant declines.

National Treasury announced that the inflation-linked bond calculations would be based on the new Headline CPI for all urban areas.

The currency risk premium on South African government bonds moved into negative territory in October 2008 after yields on dollar-denominated bonds increased by 258 basis points from September. Thereafter, the premium reached 14 basis points in February 2009 and widened to 103 basis points in April 2009. This was on account of an overall increase in the yield on domestic rand-denominated bonds, while the corresponding yield on dollar-denominated bonds declined.

The bond point spread for South Africa (rate at which South Africa has to pay its creditors compared to the USA) has been steadily falling since 2001. This shows that the risk of investing in South Africa has fallen compared to other emerging markets. This is largely due to macroeconomic stability, industrial policies that add to domestic value and increase the country's competitiveness and positive global assessment of the country's socio-political prospects. The rising premium since 2007 is largely a result of the global reaction to the financial crisis in the USA.

Investor participation in emerging markets' financial assets, however, improved as inferred from the JP Morgan Emerging Markets Bond Index Plus (EMBI+) spread, which narrowed from a high of 718 basis points in November 2008 to 529 basis points in April 2009. Similarly, the sovereign risk premium on South African government dollar-denominated bonds in the five-year maturity range trading in international markets narrowed significantly from an average 720 basis points in November 2008 to 384 basis points in April 2009.

Private-sector bond issuance

The elevated risk premiums in the wake of the global financial crisis, higher inflation, together with less optimistic economic growth, probably contributed to a more cautious approach towards bond issuance by private-sector companies in 2008 and early 2009.

With securitised assets leading the decline in funding activity, the net issuance of private-sector bonds on the Besa of R52 billion in 2007 changed to net redemptions of R2,3 billion in 2008 and R1,5 billion in the first four months of 2009.

In contrast to the reduced funding activity through bonds in 2008, the net issuance of commercial paper by non-bank corporations escalated – probably due to investors' preference for shorter-term exposure to risk.

Thus, after recording net redemptions of R2,1 billion in 2007, the nominal value of commercial paper issued by non-bank corporations increased by R24,4 billion in 2008, before declining slightly by R2,7 billion in April 2009.

Eurorand bonds

Interest in rand-denominated bonds in the European bond markets was subdued from late 2008 into early 2009. Foreign borrowers steered clear of rand-denominated bonds as no issuances were recorded in the past six months to February 2009, probably due to unfavourable international market conditions.

Net issuance by both residents and non-residents amounted to R8,1 billion in 2008, compared to R13,2 billion in 2007, reflecting lower gross issuance and higher redemptions in 2008. Although R240 million was issued in March 2009, net redemptions for the first four months of 2009 amounted to R2,9 billion, compared with net issues of R6,3 billion recorded in the corresponding period of 2008.

Uridashi bonds

Issuance of rand-denominated bonds in the Japanese Uridashi bond market by non-residents remained strong in 2008, as indicated by the net issuance of R20,5 billion, which was 56% more than the R13,1 billion net issues in 2007. In the first four months of 2009, net issuance amounted to R6,8 billion, some 44% less than the net issues of R12,2 billion recorded in the same period of 2008.

Secondary capital-market activity

Domestic bonds

The steady growth in market turnover recorded by Besa since the 1990s attests to the continued development of the domestic bond market, with the development of the repo market helping to improve market liquidity.

Monetary and fiscal policy decisions, as well as global financial market developments influenced trading on the secondary bond market in 2008 as the value of turnover (consideration) recorded on

Besa reflected a rising trend from January 2008 to September.

Although turnover recorded in the closing months of 2008 moderated substantially, Besa still recorded record turnover of R21,3 trillion in 2008, up from the previous record of R16,2 trillion in 2007.

The market recorded a liquidity ratio of 23 times higher in 2008, up from 18 in 2007, while the total number of trades was 15% more in 2008 compared to 2007. Besa remained the fourth-largest exchange in terms of the turnover recorded for bond trades in 2008, among those exchanges monitored by the World Federation of Exchanges.

Alongside lower trading volumes and bond prices, the value of turnover on Besa reached a monthly low of R1,0 trillion in April 2009, contributing towards turnover of R5,3 trillion in the first four months of 2009, which was 18% lower than the value traded in the corresponding period of 2008.

Non-residents' participation in the South African secondary bond market, measured by their purchases and sales as a percentage of total purchases and sales, declined to an average of 11% in the first four months of 2009, compared with 13% in 2008.

Domestic currency market

On balance, the nominal effective exchange rate of the Rand increased marginally by 8% in the first quarter of 2009, compared with a decline of 7,8% in the fourth quarter of 2008. Having decreased by 4,2% in January 2009, the weighted average exchange rate of the Rand regained some vigour and rose by a similar magnitude in February and further by 1,1% in March 2009. The relatively stable performance of the exchange value of the Rand during the first quarter of 2009 was buoyed by an increase in commodity prices and more positive investor sentiment towards emerging-market economies.

The international financial markets were dominated by volatility in international currency markets as reflected partly by the divergence in the performance of the Rand against the major currencies.

The exchange rate of the Rand strengthened strongly during April 2009, lifting the nominal effective exchange rate of the Rand by 12,8%.

The strengthening in the exchange value of the domestic currency over this period partly reflected the impact of a more accommodative monetary policy stance, non-resident investors' net purchases of South African equity securities, as well as an improvement in the trade balance for February and March 2009.

Exchange control

Exchange control is administered by the SARB on behalf of the Minister of Finance. The bank is assisted in this task by a number of banking institutions that have been appointed by the Minister of Finance as authorised dealers in foreign exchange.

These institutions undertake foreign-exchange transactions for their own account with their clients, within limits, and subject to conditions laid down by the SARB.

The Government is committed to an open capital market and the gradual relaxation of exchange controls.

The following dispensations regarding exchange control are allowed:

Institutional investors

Exchange-control limits on foreign investment by institutional investors – insurers, pension funds, CIS and investment managers – have been gradually liberalised since 1996.

Foreign diversification of investment portfolios, consistent with prudential limits, has largely been achieved. This allowed the authorities to replace exchange controls on institutional investors with a system of prudential regulation.

This shift entails the removal of the pre-application process for foreign investment and its replacement with a system of quarterly reporting on and monitoring of foreign exposures.

Retirement funds, long-term insurers, CIS management companies and investment managers are allowed to transfer funds from South Africa for investment abroad:

- Retirement funds and the underwritten policy business of long-term insurers may invest up to 20% of total retail assets. Investment managers registered as institutional investors for exchange-control purposes, CIS management companies and investment-linked businesses of long-term insurers are restricted to 30% of total retail assets under management.
- Institutional investors will be allowed to invest an additional 5% of their total retail assets by acquiring foreign-currency denominated portfolio assets in Africa through foreign-currency transfers from South Africa or by acquiring approved inward-listed instruments based on

foreign reference assets or issued by foreign entities listed on the JSE Ltd.
- Foreign companies, governments and institutions may list instruments, including derivative instruments, based on foreign reference assets, on South Africa's bond and securities exchanges.
- Institutional investors are required to report on a quarterly basis on the allocation of assets according to the major asset classes and provide information from institutions in excess of the foreign-asset limit on proposed portfolio adjustments to bring foreign asset levels back in line.

South African corporates

With effect from 20 February 2008, the pre-approval process for FDI was removed for transactions totalling less than R50 million per company per year. Authorised dealers will administer the directives and guidelines on these types of investments. The exchange-control requirement that a shareholding of at least 25% is obtained was replaced with the requirement that at least 10% of the foreign target entity's voting rights must be acquired.

By September 2009, where the total cost of FDI exceeded R50 million per company per calendar year, an application had to be submitted to Exchange Control prior to the investment being made.

As a further alternative mechanism of financing offshore investments or to repay existing offshore debt, applications by corporates to engage in corporate asset or share-swap transactions and requests for share placements offshore by locally listed companies will be considered.

The corporates that have existing approved subsidiaries abroad are allowed to expand such activities without prior approval, subject to certain conditions. Dividends declared by the offshore subsidiaries of South African corporates may be retained offshore and used for any purpose, without recourse to South Africa.

Authorised dealers may also extend foreign currency-denominated facilities to South African corporates for financing approved FDI.

To further enable South African companies, trusts, partnerships and banks to manage their foreign exposure, they are, with effect from 20 February 2008, permitted to participate without restriction in the Rand futures market on the JSE Ltd. This dispensation is also extended to investment in inward listed (foreign) instruments on the JSE Ltd.

Emigrants' blocked assets

A system of exchange-control allowances for the export of blocked assets when persons emigrate, has been in place in South Africa for a number of decades.

Emigrants' blocked assets in excess of the emigration allowance were placed in emigrants' blocked accounts to preserve foreign reserves. Reflecting the improved strength and resilience of the South African economy, these blocked assets are now being unwound.

By September 2009, the following applied:
- Emigrants qualified for a foreign capital allowance of R2 million per individual or R4 million in respect of family units emigrating.
- Since 2003, emigrant-blocked assets are being unwound. Amounts of up to R2 million, inclusive of amounts already exited, were eligible for exit without the 10% exit levy. Holders of blocked assets wishing to exit more than R2 million, inclusive of amounts already exited, had to apply to the Exchange-Control Department of the SARB to do so. Approval was subject to an exiting schedule and an exit levy of 10% of the amount requested.
- New emigrants wishing to exit more than R2 million, inclusive of amounts already exited, could similarly apply to the Exchange-Control Department to do so, with approval subject to an exiting schedule and an exit levy of 10% of such additional amount.

Private individuals residing in South Africa

Private individuals residing in South Africa qualify for a foreign-capital allowance of R2 million per private individual who is a taxpayer in good standing and over the age of 18 years, for investment purposes outside the common monetary area (such as Swaziland, Lesotho, Namibia and South Africa).

A single discretionary allowance of R500 000 per year, which may be apportioned for the purpose of travel, gifts, donations to missionaries and maintenance, may be availed of without the requirement to obtain a tax clearance certificate.

Local financial assistance to affected persons and non-residents

To improve access to domestic credit in financing FDI in South Africa or for domestic working-capital requirements, foreign companies or foreign-owned South African companies are permitted to make greater use of local finance.

Foreign companies or foreign wholly owned subsidiaries can borrow locally up to 300% of the total shareholders' investment.

This ratio does not apply to emigrants, the acquisition of residential properties by non-residents or affected persons, and certain other financial transactions, such as portfolio investments by non-residents, securities lending, hedging, repurchase agreements, etc. In these cases, the 100% ratio still applies.

JSE Limited

As South Africa's only full-service securities exchange, the JSE Ltd connects buyers and sellers in the following different markets: equities, which include a primary and secondary board; equity derivatives; agricultural derivatives; and interest rate instruments. The JSE Ltd is one of the top 20 exchanges in the world in terms of market capitalisation.

The JSE Ltd is the market of choice for local and international investors looking to gain exposure to the leading capital markets in South Africa and the broader African continent. The JSE Ltd also provides companies with the opportunity to raise capital in a highly regulated environment through its markets: the Main Board and AltX, the Alternative Exchange. A respected brand associated with high market integrity, the JSE Ltd is regarded as a mature, efficient, secure market with world-class regulation, trading, clearing, settlement assurance and risk management.

The exchange has been part of that process, playing an instrumental role in creating the internationally prominent King II Code on Corporate Governance. The JSE's listing requirements require all companies to adhere to key concepts of King II and all companies are required to report on their level of compliance with the code in their annual financial statements. Furthermore, the JSE Ltd has harmonised its listing requirements, disclosure and continuing obligations with those of the London Stock Exchange and offers superb investor protection.

The JSE Ltd renders a diversified range of products and services. It provides investors with the opportunity to trade a multitude of financial instruments and at the heart of its diversified product offerings are single stock futures (SSFs). This area has grown substantially to become one of the five largest in the world.

SSFs are ideal for conservative investors seeking to hedge their share portfolios, or for sophisticated speculators seeking geared exposure to anticipated share price movements. This market also offers investors derivatives on indices, Kruger rands, dividend futures as well as can-do options, which give investors the advantage of listed derivatives with the flexibility of over-the-counter contracts.

The JSE's Agricultural Products Market reflects the commitment to providing versatility in the product offering. It is a transparent electronic market used vigorously in the price-risk management of commodities through futures. This market continues to grow due to a greater understanding of its function and the development of a broader base of marketing strategies based on the derivative products. It is the first market in the world for trading both the cash spot bond (secondary trading) as well as the interest-rate derivative products, on one trading platform.

The JSE Ltd provides total price transparency through its world-class information systems. The trading activity on the markets generates a wide range of data that assist market participants with make-or-break investment decisions.

The JSE Ltd has both domestic and global reach in terms of the provision of all its information, through data-providers, investment banks, other financial industry stakeholders and directly through the exchange.

Bond Exchange of South Africa

Besa's roots reach back to the 1980s when two government-appointed commissions investigated the market for public-sector securities and financial futures. As a result of their recommendations, the Financial Markets Control Act, 1989 (Act 55 of 1989), was passed, which led to the formation of the Bond Market Association in the same year.

It was this association that was formally licensed as the Besa in 1996. Besa operated as an independent, licenced exchange until 22 June 2009, when it became a wholly-owned subsidiary of the JSE Ltd – a consequence of Besa's shareholders agreeing to sell the business to the JSE Ltd.

In the 13 years that Besa operated as an exchange, it effectively delivered on its philosophy of building better markets by providing a range of platforms and services to address the needs of capital-market participants, be it issuers, market-makers, traders or investors.

The exchange operated as a mutual association (owned by its members) until December 2007, when it entered a new era, successfully converting to a public company. This was followed by a well-supported rights issue, which was concluded in October 2008, successfully injecting fresh

capital into the business and introducing new strategic partners to the exchange.

In the same month, the JSE Ltd's offer to purchase the entire issued share capital of Besa was announced, paving the way for a new era in South Africa's financial markets.

The South African bond market is a leader among emerging-market economies. Prior to the transaction with the JSE Ltd being concluded in June 2009, bond-market turnover reported on Besa reached an annual record of R19,2 trillion in 2008.

Given listed debt securities of R825 billion, nominal, overall market velocity (the number of times an exchange "turns over" its market capitalisation) in the local market was 23%, up from 17,7% reported in 2007. However, when offshore online trading system trades are included, turnover velocity for 2008 was 29%, up from 24% in 2007. As at December 2008, Besa listed some 1 102 debt securities, issued by 100 sovereign and corporate borrowers, with a total market cap of R935 billion.

Interest rate market

Yield-X, the interest-rate exchange, is dedicated to trading a wide range of interest rate products that enable participants to manage interest rate exposure and risk. The product range includes bonds, bond futures, swaps and more.

Strate Limited

Strate is the authorised Central Securities Depository for the electronic settlement of all financial instruments in South Africa.

Its core purpose is to mitigate risk, bring efficiencies to the market and improve South Africa's profile as an investment destination.

Strate handles the settlement of equities, warrants and bonds for the JSE Ltd. In future, Strate will also settle money-market instruments. In addition, Strate is the provider of a growing number of products, data and services in line with market demands and trends.

Strate is aligned to international best practices and continually strives to bring further efficiencies and enhancements for the good of southern Africa's financial community.

Strate is a public unlisted company.

Financial-sector continuity planning

The South African financial sector collaborates extensively in contingency planning for systemic risks that may disrupt settlement, financial intermediation and possibly economic activity in general. The primary objective of this cooperative arrangement is to identify crisis events that may threaten the stability of the South African financial sector and to propose appropriate plans, mechanisms and structures to mitigate such threats.

This arrangement also facilitates cooperation between key financial-sector institutions and regulators in times of a significant catastrophic event, to have the best chance of protecting staff, facilitating recovery and sustaining both a stable financial market and consumer confidence.

Although individual firms are responsible for managing and mitigating risks for their respective operations, the broader collaborative effort is focused on risks that threaten the financial sector as a whole. Such risks range from the impact of global economic threats to potential causes of major operational disruption.

These risks are regularly analysed and appropriate response strategies devised.

Acknowledgements

Bond Exchange of South Africa
Business Day
Development Bank of Southern Africa
Development Indicators, 2009
Estimates of National Expenditure 2009, published by National Treasury
Financial Services Board
National Gambling Board
National Treasury
Office of the Auditor-General
Quarterly Bulletin, September 2009, published by the South African Reserve Bank
South African Reserve Bank
South African Revenue Service
www.bondexchange.co.za
www.dti.gov.za
www.ffc.co.za
www.fsb.co.za
www.gov.za
www.jse.co.za
www.landbank.co.za
www.news24.co.za
www.nlb.org.za
www.responsiblegambling.co.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.samint.co.za
www.sars.gov.za
www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Bähre, E. 2007. *Money and Violence: FInancial Self-Help Groups in a South African Township*. Leiden: Brill.

Botha, M *et al*. 2009. *South African Financial Planning Handbook, 2009*. Durban: LexisNexis.

Clarke, GRG *et al*. 2007. *An Assessment of the Investment Climate in South Africa.* Washington, DC: World Bank.

Engels, R (ed). 2009. *Financial Adviser's Handbook, 2009*. Durban: LexisNexis.

Fan, Q. 2008. *The Investment Climate in Brazil, India and South Africa.* (e-book). Washington, DC: World Bank.

Green, P. 2008. *Choice, Not Fate: The Life and Times of Trevor Manuel*. Johannesburg: Penguin Books.

Hübschle, A. 2007. *Terrorist Financing in Southern Africa: Are we Making a Mountain out of a Molehill?* Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.

Jackson, RDC. 2007. *Auditing Notes for South African Students*. 6th ed. Hilton: Audit Education.

Kriek, JH, Beekman, E and Els, G. 2008. *Fundamentals of Finance: A Practical Guide to the World of Finance*. 4th ed. Durban: LexisNexis Butterworths.

Marx, GL and Hanekom, K (eds). 2008. *The Manual on South African Retirement Funds and Other Employee Benefits*. 2008 ed. Durban: LexisNexis.

Moeti, K (ed). 2007. *Public Finance Fundamentals*. Cape Town: Juta.

Motlatsi, J and Godsell, B. 2008. *Do it! Every South African's Guide to Making a Difference*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.

Pauw, JC *et al*. 2009. *Managing Public Money: Systems from the South*. Sandton: Heinemann.

Peterson, GE and Annez, PC (eds). 2007. *Financing Cities: Fiscal Responsibility and Urban Infrastructure in Brazil, China, India, Poland and South Africa*. Washington, DC: World Bank.

South Africa. 2008. *Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act and Regulations, 56 of 2003*. 2nd ed. Edited by Juta's Statutes editors. Cape Town: Juta Law.

South Africa. 2008. *SAICA Legislation Handbook, 2008/2009*, South African Institute of Chartered Accountants. Durban: LexisNexis.

South Africa. National Treasury. 2008. *Budget Speech, 2008, Minister of Finance, Trevor A. Manuel.* Pretoria: National Treasury.

Swart, N. 2007. *Manage Your Money: Basic Financial Life Skills for South Africans*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Van Zyl, C *et al* (eds). 2009. *Understanding South African Financial Markets*. 3rd ed. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Wille, C *et al.* 2007. *Principles of Financial Law*. Durban: LexisNexis.

GOVERNMENT SYSTEM

Following the general election in April 2009, a new administration, under the leadership of President Jacob Zuma, took over. This saw a number of changes being introduced. These included:

- The Department of Minerals and Energy was split into two separate departments of mineral resources and of energy, each with a minister.
- The Department of Education was split into separate ministries, one for Basic Education and the other for Higher Education and Training.
- The Department of Housing was renamed the Department of Human Settlements to take on a more holistic focus.
- A new Department of Rural Development and Land Affairs was created.
- The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry became the Department of Water Affairs.
- A new Economic Development Department was established to focus on economic policy-making. The implementation functions, however, remain with the Department of Trade and Industry.
- A new Department of Tourism was created.
- The Department of Agriculture became the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries.
- The Department of Local and Provincial Government became the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs.
- A new ministry was created for Women, Youth, Children and People with Disabilities to emphasise the need for equity and access to development opportunities by the vulnerable groups in South Africa.

Government has committed to host the best Soccer World Cup ever in 2010. The success of the Confederations Cup that was held in June 2009 communicated a clear message that South Africa and its people, and the people of Africa, are ready to deliver a world-class 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

The Constitution

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, was approved by the Constitutional Court on 4 December 1996 and took effect on 4 February 1997.

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. No other law or government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution.

South Africa's Constitution is one of the most progressive in the world and enjoys high acclaim internationally.

The Preamble

The Preamble states that the Constitution aims to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people, and in which every citizen is equally protected by law
- build a united and democratic South Africa that is able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

Founding provisions

As Chapter One of the Constitution stipulates, South Africa is a sovereign and democratic state founded on the following values:

- human dignity, the achievement of equality and the advancement of human rights and freedom
- non-racialism and non-sexism
- supremacy of the Constitution
- universal adult suffrage, a national common voters' roll, regular elections and a multiparty system of democratic government to ensure accountability, responsiveness and openness.

Fundamental rights

The fundamental rights contained in Chapter Two of the Constitution seek to protect the rights and freedom of individuals. The Constitutional Court guards these rights and determines whether actions by the State are in accordance with constitutional provisions.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres, which are distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. The powers of the law-makers (legislative authorities), government (executive authorities) and courts (judicial authorities) are separate from one another.

South African President Jacob Zuma was named Best African President at the 2009 Africa Consciousness Media Leadership Awards. These awards honour those who have contributed to the liberation and development of the continent.

Parliament

Parliament is the legislative authority of South Africa and has the power to make laws for the country in accordance with the Constitution.

It consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public. Since the establishment of Parliament in 1994, a number of steps have been taken to make it more accessible and to motivate and facilitate public participation in the legislative process. The website *www.parliament.gov.za* encourages comment and feedback from the public.

National Assembly

The National Assembly is elected to represent the people and to ensure democratic governance as required by the Constitution. It does this by electing the President, providing a national forum for public consideration of issues, passing legislation and scrutinising and overseeing executive action.

The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members elected through a system of proportional representation.

The National Assembly, which is elected for a term of five years, is presided over by the Speaker, assisted by the Deputy Speaker.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP consists of 54 permanent members and 36 special delegates, and aims to represent provincial interests in the national sphere of government. Delegations consist of 10 representatives from each province. The NCOP must have a mandate from the provinces before it can make certain decisions. It cannot, however, initiate a Bill concerning money, which is the prerogative of the Minister of Finance. *NCOP Online* (*www.parliament.gov.za/ncop*) links Parliament to the provincial legislatures and local government associations. It provides information on draft legislation and allows the public to make electronic submissions. The NCOP came into existence on 6 February 1997.

Law-making

Any Bill may be introduced in the National Assembly. A Bill passed by the National Assembly must be referred to the NCOP for consideration.

A Bill affecting the provinces may be introduced in the NCOP. After it has been passed by the council, it must be referred to the assembly.

The Presidency, January 2010

President	Jacob Zuma
Deputy President	Kgalema Motlanthe

A Bill concerning money must be introduced in the assembly and referred to the NCOP for consideration and approval after being passed.

If the council rejects a Bill or passes it subject to amendments, the assembly must reconsider the Bill and pass it again with or without amendments. There are special conditions for the approval of laws dealing with provinces.

The President

The Head of State is the President and he/she leads the Cabinet. The President is elected by the National Assembly from among its members, and leads the country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution and the law.

The Deputy President

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly. The Deputy President assists the President in executing government functions.

The Presidency

There are two ministers in The Presidency: one responsible for the National Planning Commission (NPC) and the other for Monitoring and Evaluation as well as Administration in The Presidency.

The NPC is responsible for strategic planning for the country to ensure one national plan to which all spheres of government would adhere.

The *Green Paper on National Strategic Planning*, launched in September 2009, sets out the rationale for planning and the institutional structures, processes and outputs of the national planning process.

A monitoring and evaluation competency in The Presidency was also created to monitor and evaluate the performance of government in all three spheres. The policy document on perform-

The Presidential Hotline was officially launched in October 2009. The hotline enables citizens to escalate their queries and suggestions to the President's Office if they don't get assistance from other call centres. The contact details are: telephone: 17737, fax: 086 681 0987 and e-mail: *president@po.gov.za.*

The service is toll-free.

By May 2009, female representation in the National Assembly totalled 45%, putting South Africa third when it comes to the international representation of women in Parliament. The country is on course to achieve the Southern African Development Community target of 50% women in political decision-making by 2015.

ance monitoring and evaluation, *Improving Performance in Government: Our Approach,* launched on the same day, outlines government's approach to improving its performance. Government has improved access to services for people who were previously denied.

This document forms the basis of plans to improve the quality of service delivery.

Cabinet

The Cabinet consists of the President, as head of the Cabinet, the Deputy President and ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President and ministers, assigns their powers and functions and may dismiss them.

The President may select any number of ministers from among the members of the National Assembly, and may select no more than two ministers from outside the assembly.

The President appoints a member of the Cabinet to be the leader of government business in the National Assembly.

Deputy ministers

The President appoints deputy ministers from among the members of the National Assembly.

Traditional leadership

Chapter 11 of the Constitution states that the institution, status and roles of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised, subject to the Constitution.

Government remains committed to strengthening the institution of traditional leadership and appreciates the role it plays in society.

The reconfiguration of the Department of Provincial and Local Government into the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs signifies the importance that is placed on the role and place of traditional leaders in the lives of people, especially in rural areas.

Government regards traditional leaders as partners in the implementation of its programmes.

A number of departments have put in place legislation that clearly defines the role of traditional leaders in the areas of justice, in the establishment of traditional courts and the administration of tribal land, demonstrating government's willingness to effect the power and recognition of traditional authorities and leadership. Numerous pieces of legislation have been passed and a variety of programmes implemented to ensure that traditional leadership makes an important contribution to the development of society.

The Chief Directorate: Traditional Leadership and Institutions in the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs provides support to traditional leaders and institutions, and is responsible for the development of policy in this regard.

It renders an anthropological service, and provides advice and support regarding governance and development matters. It advises and supports the National House of Traditional Leaders and maintains a database of traditional leaders and institutions.

It is also responsible for developing and implementing a regulatory framework for the protection of the rights of cultural, religious and linguistic communities.

In August 2009, there were amendments to the two principal laws on traditional leadership before Parliament, namely the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Amendment Bill and the National House of Traditional Leaders Bill.

Legislation

National House of Traditional Leaders Bill

The Council of Traditional Leaders Act, 1997 (Act 10 of 1997), was amended through the Council of Traditional Leaders Amendment Act, 1998 (Act 85 of 1998), and the National House of Traditional Leaders Amendment Act, 2000 (Act 206 of 2000).

To improve the functionality and broaden the scope of the work of the national house, the National House of Traditional Leaders Bill provides for the following key issues:

- the continued existence of the National House of Traditional Leaders with added responsibilities
- the composition of the national house to be representative of all provinces, including the provinces that have recently acquired traditional communities after the redetermination of provincial boundaries
- streamlining the process of electing members of the national house in the provinces
- determining powers and duties of the national house in line with the *White Paper on Traditional Leadership and Governance*

Cabinet ministers and deputy ministers, as at January 2010

Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries	Tina Joemat-Pettersson	Dr Pieter Mulder
Arts and Culture	Lulu Xingwana	Paul Mashatile
Basic Education	Angie Motshekga	Enver Surty
Communications	Siphiwe Nyanda	Dina Pule
Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	Sicelo Shiceka	Yunus Carrim
Correctional Services	Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula	Hlengiwe Mkhize
Defence and Military Veterans	Dr Lindiwe Sisulu	Thabang Makwetla
Economic Development	Ebrahim Patel	Gwen Mahlangu-Nkabinde
Energy	Dipuo Peters	-
Finance	Pravin Gordhan	Nhlanhla Nene
Health	Dr Aaron Motsoaledi	Dr Molefi Sefularo
Higher Education and Training	Dr Blade Nzimande	-
Home Affairs	Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma	Malusi Gigaba
Human Settlements	Tokyo Sexwale	Zoliswa Kota-Fredericks
International Relations and Cooperation	Maite Nkoana-Mashabane	Ebrahim Ebrahim
		Sue van der Merwe
Justice and Constitutional Development	Jeff Radebe	Andries Nel
Labour	Membathisi Mdladlana	-
Mineral Resources	Susan Shabangu	-
Police	Nathi Mthethwa	Fikile Mbalula
Public Enterprises	Barbara Hogan	Enoch Godongwana
Public Service and Administration	Richard Baloyi	Roy Padayachie
Public Works	Geoff Doidge	Hendrietta Bogopane-Zulu
Rural Development and Land Reform	Gugile Nkwinti	Dr Joe Phaahla
Science and Technology	Naledi Pandor	Derek Hanekom
Social Development	Edna Molewa	Bathabile Dlamini
Sport and Recreation	Rev Makhenkesi Stofile	Gert Oosthuizen
State Security	Dr Siyabonga Cwele	
The Presidency National Planning Commission	Trevor Manuel	-
The Presidency Performance Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration	Collins Chabane	-
Tourism	Marthinus van Schalkwyk	Thozile Xasa
Trade and Industry	Dr Rob Davies	Thandi Tobias
		Bongi Maria Ntuli
Transport	Sbusiso Ndebele	Jeremy Cronin
Water and Environmental Affairs	Buyelwa Sonjica	Rejoice Mabhudafhasi
Women, Youth, Children and Persons with Disabilities	Noluthando Mayende-Sibiya	-

- enhancing the functioning and management of the national house
- providing support to the house by government in respect of administration, finances, capacity-building and resources
- providing for the relationship between the national house and the provincial houses
- providing for the relationship between the national house and kings and queens
- providing for the relationship between the national house and government.

Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Amendment Bill

The Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Amendment Bill provides for the following amendments:

- recognition of kingships or queenships and the withdrawal of such recognition
- disestablishment of paramountcies and the withdrawal of recognition of paramount chiefs
- establishment of kingship or queenship councils and the determination of their functions
- the determination of the membership of traditional councils and kingship or queenship councils by premiers and the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs respectively, in line with provincial peculiarities
- establishment of a traditional subcouncil where the area of jurisdiction of a traditional community occupies two or more geographical areas apart from each other
- extension of the original one year to five years, the period within which the traditional authorities must be transformed in line with the Act
- alignment of the terms of office of all the structures.

Institutions

Traditional councils

The stipulations of Chapter 12 of the Constitution and the advent of democracy required the transformation of the composition of traditional councils. Therefore, legislation has transformed the composition of traditional councils to provide for elements of democracy (40% of members must be elected) and gender representivity (one third of members must be women).

Legislation has also opened a window of opportunity for municipalities and traditional councils to achieve cooperative governance. Traditional councils have been given a strong voice in development matters and may now enter into partnerships and service-delivery agreements with government in all spheres.

Houses of traditional leaders

The Constitution mandates the establishment of houses of traditional leaders by means of either provincial or national legislation.

The National House of Traditional Leaders was established in terms of the National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 1997. Its objectives and functions are to promote the role of traditional leadership within a democratic constitutional dispensation, enhance unity and understanding among traditional communities and advise national government.

Provincial houses of traditional leaders were established in all six provinces that have traditional leaders, namely the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State, Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West.

The Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003 (Act 41 of 2003), provides for the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders.

The national and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders will deepen and cement the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims

The commission was established in terms of Section 22(1) of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003. The main objective of the commission is to investigate and make findings on traditional-leadership disputes and claims.

Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs

In May 2009, the Department of Provincial and Local Government became the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs. The mandate of the department is derived from chapters three and seven of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996.

The Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Leadership has a new and expanded mandate, focusing on:

- improved vertical coordination across the three spheres of government and public entities
- greater horizontal coordination across the various sectors in government and public entities
- better strengthening, supporting and overseeing of provincial government

Members of the executive councils of provincial governments, as at October 2009

Eastern Cape	
Noxolo Kiviet	Premier
Mbulelo Sogoni	Agriculture and Rural Development
Mahlubandile Qwase	Education
Mcebisi Jonas	Finance, Economic Development and Environmental Affairs
Sicelo Gqobana	Local Government and Traditional Affairs
Phumulo Masualle	Health
Nombulelo Mabandla	Housing
Pemmy Majodina	Roads and Public Works
Ghishma Gloria Barry	Transport and Safety
Xoliswa Tom	Sport, Recreation, Arts and Culture
Nonkosi Mvana	Social Development
Free State	
Sekgobelo Elias Magashule	Premier
Mamiki Qhabathe	Agriculture
Tate Pule Makgoe	Education
Mosebenzi Zwane	Cooperative Governance, Traditional Leadership and Human Settlements
Sisi Mabe	Health
Seeiso Mohai	Provincial Treasury
Thabo Manyoni	Police, Roads and Transport
Fezi Ngumbentombi	Public Works and Rural Development
Sefora Sisi Ntombela	Social Development
Dan Khothule	Sport, Arts, Culture and Recreation
Mxolisi Dukwana	Economic Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs
Gauteng	
Nomvula Paula Mokonyane	Premier
Nandi Mayathula-Khoza	Agriculture and Rural Development
Barbara Creecy	Education
Mandla Nkomfe	Finance
Dorothy Qedani Mahlangu	Health and Social Development
Kgaogelo Lekgoro	Local Government and Housing
Khabisi Mosunkutu	Community Safety
Nelisiwe Mthimkulu-Mbatha	Sport, Arts, Culture and Recreation
Firoz Cachalia	Economic Development and Planning
Nonhlanhla Faith Mazibuko	Infrastructure Development
Bheki Simon Nkosi	Roads and Public Transport

KwaZulu-Natal	
Dr Zweli Mkhize	Premier
Lydia Johnson	Agriculture and Rural Development
Senzo Edward Mchunu	Education
Mike Mabuyakhulu	Economic Development and Tourism
Catharina Cronje	Finance
Sibongiseni Maxwell Dlomo	Health
Nomusa Dube	Local Government and Traditional Affairs
Dr Bonginkosi Radebe	Social Development
Magasvarie Govender	Human Settlements and Public Works
Nonkululeko Mbathe	Transport and Community Safety and Liaison
Weziwe Thusi	Arts, Culture, Sport and Recreation
Limpopo	
Cassel Charlie Mathale	Premier
Namane Dickson Masemola	Education
Saad Cachalia	Provincial Treasury
Mirriam Segabutla	Health and Social Development
Soviet Lekganyane	Local Government and Housing
Pitsi Moloto	Economic Development, Environment and Tourism
Dipuo Letsatsi-Duba	Agriculture
Dr Happy Joyce Mashamba	Sport, Arts and Culture
Pinky Kekana	Roads and Public Transport
Dikeledi Magadzi	Public Safety and Liaison
Muthundinne Phadagi	Public Works
Mpumalanga	
David Mabuza	Premier
Meshack Malinga	Agriculture, Rural Development and Land Administration
Jabu Mahlangu	Economic Development, Environment and Tourism
Regina Mhaule	Education
Dikeledi Mahlangu	Health and Social Development
Madala Masuku	Human Settlement
Clifford Mukansi	Public Works, Roads and Transport
Yvonne Pinky Phosa	Finance
Vusi Shongwe	Culture, Sport and Recreation
Sibongile Manana	Community Safety, Security and Liaison
Norman Mokoena	Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs

- improved collaboration between government and communities
- the institution of traditional leadership in a single system of governance.

The values of the department as adopted in accordance with the Batho Pele ("People First") principles focus on the following:

- dedication to professional development and service delivery
- professionalism in the conduct of all employees
- leadership and participation in service delivery
- being goal-orientated in undertaking its mandate.

Members of the executive councils of provincial governments, as at October 2009

Northern Cape	
Hazel Jenkins	Premier
Norman Shushu	Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development
Grizelda Cjiekella	Education
John Block	Finance, Economic Affairs and Tourism
Mxolisi Simon Sokatsha	Health
Kenny Mmoiemang	Corporate Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs
Patrick Mabilo	Transport, Safety and Liaison
Alwin Botes	Social Services and Population Development
Pauline Williams	Sport, Arts and Culture
Sylvia Lucas	Environmental Affairs and Nature Conservation
Dawid Rooi	Roads and Public Works
North West	
Maureen Modiselle	Premier
Grace Pampiri	Sport, Arts and Culture
Boitumelo Tshwene	Agriculture, Conservation, Environment and Rural Development
Wendy Matsemela	Economic Development and Tourism
Mothibedi Kegakilwe	Local Government and Traditional Affairs
Rev. Johannes Tselapedi	Education
Rebecca Kasienyane	Health and Social Development
Moruakgomo Mabe	Finance
Mahlakeng Mahlakeng	Public Works, Roads and Transport
Howard Yawa	Public Safety
Desbo Sefanyetso	Human Settlements
Western Cape	
Helen Zille	Premier
Gerrit van Rensburg	Agriculture
Adv. Lennit Max	Community Safety
Donald Grant	Education
Anton Bredell	Local Government, Environmental Affairs and Development Planning
Alan Winde	Finance, Economic Development and Tourism
Theuns Botha	Health
Bonginkosi Madikizela	Housing
Robin Carlisle	Transport and Public Works
Ivan Meyer	Social Development
Sakkie Jenner	Cultural Affairs and Sport

The department oversees the implementation of, among other things, the following:

- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005)
- Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004)
- Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003)
- Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003
- Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002)
- Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 57 of 2002)
- Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 of 1998)
- Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998 (Act 27 of 1998)
- *White Paper on Local Government (1998)*.

Strategic priorities

The Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs' strategic posture is guided by the imperative of building a developmental state. It is the department's intention to achieve the following between 2011 and 2014:

- complaints by people regarding local government are reduced significantly by 2011
- municipal debt, which has increased to more than R41 billion, is reduced by half by 2014
- greater progress in working towards a debt-free society, by promoting a culture of saving and paying for services
- all municipalities should have clean audits by 2014
- fraud and corruption in municipalities are reduced to a minimum by 2011
- clean cities, through the management of waste, in such a way that it creates employment and wealth, by 2014 (the establishment and maintenance of people's parks is one such example)
- ward committees should be given the necessary powers and resources to develop and implement a ward development plan by 2011
- increased and effective monitoring of service-providers by public representatives, officials and communities
- trained and competent councillors, traditional leaders, officials, ward committee members, community development workers (CDWs) and community activists by 2014
- a reformed regime of remuneration and provision for tools and trade for councillors, ward committee members and CDWs by 2011
- the number of service-delivery protests are reduced significantly
- Thusong Service Centres to be viewed at the face of cooperative governance in local communities.

By June 2009, the department had identified five strategic priorities for the term 2009 to 2014:

- build and strenghthen cooperative governance in a developmental state to ensure universal access to basic services and adequate infrastructure for economic development
- promote a clean government and develop a high level of responsiveness and accountability at all government levels
- accelerate service delivery and development to ensure that vulnerable groups receive targeted and tailored support by provinces and municipalities
- assist the intitution of traditional leaders to transform into a key partner with government in the development of communities in rural areas
- foster development partnerships, social cohesion and community mobilisation to give meaning to cooperative governance by unleashing the energy and resources of civil society to build the country.

Provincial government

In accordance with the Constitution, each of the nine provinces has its own legislature, consisting of between 30 and 80 members. The number of members is determined in terms of a formula set out in national legislation. The members are elected in terms of proportional representation.

The executive council of a province consists of a premier and a number of members (MECs). Premiers are appointed by the President of the country.

Decisions are taken by consensus, as is the case in the national Cabinet. Besides being able to make provincial laws, a provincial legislature may adopt a constitution for its province if two thirds of its members agree.

However, a provincial constitution must correspond with the national Constitution.

According to the Constitution, provinces may have legislative and executive powers, concurrent with the national sphere, over:

- agriculture
- casinos, racing, gambling and wagering
- cultural affairs
- education at all levels, excluding university and university of technology education
- environment
- health services
- housing
- language policy
- nature conservation
- police services
- provincial public media
- public transport
- regional planning and development
- road-traffic regulation
- tourism
- trade and industrial promotion
- traditional authorities
- urban and rural development
- vehicle licensing
- welfare services.

These powers can be exercised to the extent that provinces have the administrative capacity to assume effective responsibilities.

Provinces also have exclusive competency over a number of areas, which include:

- abattoirs
- ambulance services
- liquor licences
- museums other than national museums
- provincial planning
- provincial cultural matters
- provincial recreation and activities
- provincial roads and traffic.

The President's Coordinating Council (PCC) is a consultative forum where the President discusses issues of national, provincial and local importance with the premiers.

The forum addresses issues such as:

- enhancing the role of provincial executives regarding national policy decisions
- strengthening the capacity of provincial governments to implement government policies and programmes
- integrating provincial growth and development strategies within national development plans
- improving cooperation between national and provincial spheres of government
- improving cooperation on fiscal issues
- ensuring that there are coordinated implementation programmes and the necessary structures in place to address issues such as rural development, urban renewal, and safety and security.

The form and functions of the PCC are expected to be reviewed to address gaps in intergovernmental coordination.

Local government

There are 283 municipalities in South Africa. They are focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and services.

In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act, 1997 (Act 52 of 1997), which formally recognise organised local-government associations, organised local

government may designate up to 10 part-time representatives to represent municipalities and to participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

The Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs aims to build and strengthen the capability and accountability of provinces and municipalities. This includes:

- continued hands-on support through the established system and capacity-building programme, focusing on critical areas such as integrated development planning, local economic development (LED), financial management, service delivery and public participation
- evaluating the impact of government programmes in municipal areas, enhancing performance and accountability by improving the quality of reporting on the Local Government Strategic Agenda (LGSA) and improving the monitoring, reporting and evaluation of capacity in local government.

The department is also responsible for coordinating and supporting policy development and the implementation of the LGSA, and monitoring and supporting service delivery.

Municipal Demarcation Board

The board is a constitutional institution established by the Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998.

The main function of the board is to determine municipal boundaries in accordance with the Act and other related legislation, and to advise on demarcation matters.

In addition, the board is tasked with delimiting wards into metropolitan and local municipalities.

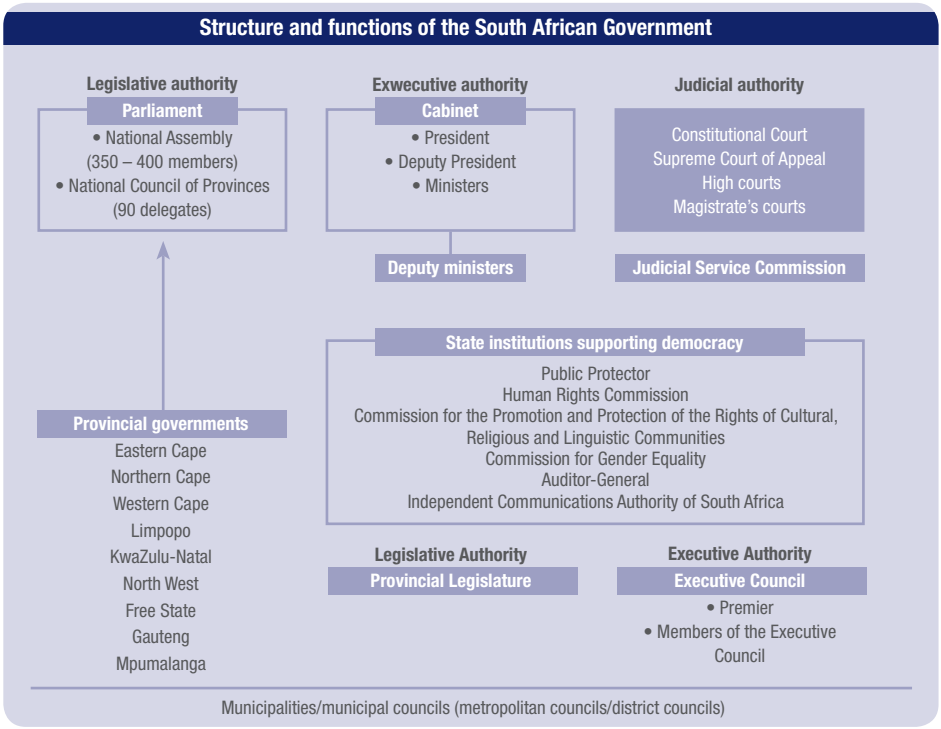
South African Local Government Association (Salga)

Salga is a listed public entity, established in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), and recognised by the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs in terms of the Organised Local Government Act, 1997.

Salga represents local government on numerous intergovernmental forums such as the PCC, Minister and MECs (MinMec) forum, the Budget Forum, the NCOP and the Financial and Fiscal Commission.

Salga aims, among other things, to:

- transform local government to enable it to fulfil its developmental role
- enhance the role of provincial local government associations as provincial representatives and consultative bodies on local government



- raise the profile of local government
- ensure full participation of women in local government
- act as the national employers' organisation for municipal and provincial member employers
- provide legal assistance to its members, using its discretion in connection with matters that affect employee relations.

Salga is funded through a combination of sources, including a national government grant, membership fees from provincial and local government associations that are voluntary members, and donations from the donor community for specific projects.

Local Government Strategic Agenda (2006 – 2011)

In 2006, Cabinet approved the five-year LGSA to intensify government-wide hands-on support to accelerate alignment of government programmes in municipalities. The implementation of this agenda had seen steady progress in the five key performance areas. For example:

- The appointment of municipal managers increased from 78% in 2006 to 89% by the end of 2008.
- The number of Section 57 managers with performance agreements increased from 58% to 68%.
- The number of chief financial officers appointed increased from 83% to 87%.
- The establishment of performance audit committees increased from 65% to 78%.
- There was a recorded improvement in the quality of integrated development plans (IDPs).
- There had been an increase in the number of municipalities able to spend 100% of the Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG). By the close of the municipal financial year, the reported spending of this grant was in excess of 95% for the past few years.

Municipalities

The Constitution provides for three categories of municipalities.

As directed by the Constitution, the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 contains criteria for determining when an area must have a category-A municipality (metropolitan municipalities) and when municipalities fall into categories B (local municipalities) or C (district municipalities).

The Act also determines that category-A municipalities can only be established in metropolitan areas.

Metropolitan councils have single metropolitan budgets, common property ratings and service-tariff systems, and single employer bodies.

South Africa has nine metropolitan municipalities, namely:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekwini (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Msunduzi Municipality (Pietermaritzburg)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Metropolitan councils may decentralise powers and functions. However, all original municipal, legislative and executive powers are vested in the metropolitan council.

In metropolitan areas, there is a choice of two types of executive system: the mayoral executive system where executive authority is vested in the mayor, and the collective executive committee system where these powers are vested in the executive committee.

Non-metropolitan areas consist of district councils and local councils.

District councils are primarily responsible for capacity-building and district-wide planning.

The Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 provides for ward committees whose tasks, among other things, are to:

- prepare, implement and review IDPs
- establish, implement and review municipalities' performance-management systems

The Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs has established a multi-stakeholder ministerial team with municipal unions and the employer body, the South African Local Government Association (Salga), in an effort to improve relations between the two while improving service delivery to communities. The Ministerial Strategic Team (MST) comprises Salga, the South African Municipal Workers' Union, the Independent Municipal and Allied Trade Union, National Treasury and the Department of Public Service and Administration. The team will, among other things, advise the minister on the development of a code of conduct to guide behaviour during industrial actions. The MST will seek to strengthen relations between Salga and local government unions to ensure that organised labour fully participates in the management of local government affairs and supports the efficient delivery of services to communities.

- monitor and review municipalities' performances
- prepare municipalities' budgets
- participate in decisions about the provision of municipal services
- communicate and disseminate information on governance matters.

By March 2009, there were ward committees in 98% of the country's municipal wards.

Integrated development plans

In terms of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000, all municipalities are required to prepare IDPs. Integrated development planning is a process by which municipalities prepare five-year strategic plans that are reviewed annually in consultation with communities and stakeholders.

The aim is to achieve service delivery and development goals in municipal areas in an effective and sustainable way. National and provincial sector departments, development agencies, private-sector bodies, non-governmental organisations and communities all have a key role to play in preparing and implementing IDPs.

The IDP Nerve Centre provides a single, web-based information system that allows multiple stakeholders involved in municipal service delivery to access, capture, revise and report a core set of planning, funding, programme and project-based information over a multi-year period in a consistent manner.

By March 2009, IDPs were adopted in all provinces. The IDPs and LED strategies of municipalities must reflect the priorities of the entire public sector, including those of public entities and local business.

The IDPs will be reviewed to ensure that the criterion, which determine to what extent adopted IDPs are credible or realistic, include critical aspects on LED strategies, plans, budgeting and implementation.

Legislation

The Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 establishes a framework for planning, performance-management systems, effective use of resources and organisational change in a business context.

The Act also establishes a system for municipalities to report on their performance, and provides residents with an opportunity to compare this performance with that of municipalities.

It also regulates public-private partnerships. The Act allows municipalities significant powers to corporatise their services, to establish utilities for service delivery, or to enter into partnerships with other service-providers. The Act provides for the adoption of a credit-control policy for municipalities that will provide for the termination of services in the event of non-payment. Municipalities have the power to pass by-laws to implement the policy.

The Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 is aimed at modernising municipal budgeting and financial management. It facilitates the development of a long-term municipal lending/bond market. It also introduces a governance framework for separate entities created by municipalities.

The Act is a critical element in the overall transformation of local government in South Africa. It fosters transparency at local government level through budget and reporting requirements.

The Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 regulates the power of a municipality to impose property rates, excludes certain properties from rating in the national interest, provides fair and equitable valuation methods of properties, and for municipalities to implement a transparent and fair system of exemptions, reductions and rebates through their rating policies.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant

The largest infrastructure transfer programme is the MIG, currently administered by the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs.

The MIG was introduced in 2004/05 through consolidating various sector infrastructure grants, each administered by different departments, into a single programme. This was intended to make the system of transfers to municipalities simpler, more certain and more supportive of municipal infrastructure priorities. The programme is designed to supplement the capital budgets of municipalities, with a focus on providing basic infrastructure services to the poor, while stimulating job creation over the medium term.

Funding for electrification has not yet been incorporated into the MIG, due to uncertainties associated with the restructuring of the electricity distribution industry. MIG funds are distributed to all municipalities based on a formula that accounts for existing backlogs in service delivery as well as the functions assigned to individual municipalities.

Between 2006 and 2007, the MIG spent about R32 billion. Over the next three years, infrastructure grants to municipalities will total R67 billion as government is fully committed to the 2014 universal access target.

A government initiative to ensure clean audits, transparency and improved service delivery in government by 2014, was launched in Boksburg, Gauteng, in July 2009.

The initiative, called "Operation Clean Audit 2014", was launched by the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs, Mr Sicelo Shiceka.

The initiative is not only a financial-management project but also a way to ensure clean audits and improved service delivery to the people of South Africa.

Some departments, such as the Department of Water Affairs, have decided to allocate an additional budget to the MIG and the Bulk Infrastructure Grant. The Department of Water Affairs provided an additional R500 million in 2009/10 to deal with some of the challenges faced in the provision of water and sanitation.

Local economic development

LED is a key feature of government's overall strategy to address economic challenges.

All metropolitan and district municipalities have convened growth and development summits. The focus in most municipalities is on implementing the decisions and outcomes of these summits.

The National Framework for LED for stimulating and developing sustainable economies promotes a strategic approach to the development of local economies and a shift away from narrow municipal interests focused only on government input and ad-hoc projects, which do not have impact in terms of scale.

There are two major policy thrusts identified in the framework: public-sector leadership and governance and sustainable community-investment programmes. Four key strategies emanate from these policy thrusts with accompanying main actions. These are:

- improving good governance, service delivery, and public and market confidence in municipalities
- spatial development planning and exploiting the comparative advantage and competitiveness of districts and metros
- enterprise support and business infrastructure development
- introducing sustainable community-investment programmes focusing on organising communities for development and maximising circulation of public spend in local economies.

Project Consolidate

In 2004, Project Consolidate, a hands-on support and engagement programme, focusing on targeted municipalities, was launched.

Project Consolidate had a direct impact on improving access to basic services. When the initiative was launched, there were 155 municipalities where 60% of households were without access to water in their yards or dwellings. By 2008, this was reduced to 115 municipalities.

In 2004, there were 203 municipalities where 60% of households did not have access to sanitation at the level of a flush toilet. This was reduced to 150 municipalities. There were 122 municipalities where 60% of households did not have access to electricity. This was reduced to 45.

Over 1 280 technical experts were deployed to 268 municipalities since the start of Project Consolidate at the end of December 2008. These were in the areas of engineering (civil), finance (billing systems), town and regional planning (IDPs), project management and human-resource development (HRD). Stakeholders include national sector departments such as the departments of cooperative governance and traditional affairs, environmental affairs, tourism, water affairs, trade and industry and National Treasury.

Partnering stakeholders include the Development Bank of Southern Africa (Siyenza Manje Programme), Ilima Trust, United Nations (UN) Development Programme, German Technical Cooperation, South African Institute for Civil Engineers, South African Association of Consultation Engineers, Institute of Municipal Finance Officers and United States Agency for International Development.

Disaster management

The Disaster Management Act, 2002 was promulgated in 2003. The National Disaster-Management Centre with functional disaster-management centres and advisory forums were established in eight provinces. The National Disaster-Management Advisory Forum has been recognised by the UN as the national platform for disaster-risk reduction.

South Africa has also made significant progress in respect of the implementation of the Hyogo Framework for Action – a global blueprint for disaster risk-reduction whose goal it is to substantially reduce disaster losses by 2015.

Through the National Disaster-Management Centre, the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs has registered unit standards for levels three to seven with the South African Qualifications Authority for a national certificate in disaster-risk management. The department has also developed regulations for

recruiting and using disaster-management volunteers every year.

In 2008/09, the department established the 2010 National Disaster-Management Steering Committee and adopted a 2010 Disaster-Management Policy.

Cooperative governance

The importance of cooperative governance and intergovernmental relations in South Africa is reflected in Chapter Three of the Constitution, which determines a number of principles.

A number of intergovernmental structures promote and facilitate cooperative governance and intergovernmental relations between the respective spheres of government.

These include:

- the PCC, comprising the President, the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs and the nine premiers
- ministerial clusters, director-general clusters, and the Forum of South African Directors-General, which promote programme integration at national and provincial level
- ministerial forums between responsible line-function ministers at national level and their respective counterparts at provincial-government level, which normally meet quarterly and are supported by technical committees
- a number of intergovernmental forums that facilitate cooperative governance and intergovernmental relations.

Oversight, monitoring and early-warning systems play a critical role in helping to make cooperative governance work more effectively.

To improve integration among all spheres of government in both policy development and implementation, the Intergovernment Relations Framework Act, 2005 was promulgated in August 2005.

Government and communication

The vision of the Government Communication and Information System (GCIS) is government communication that empowers and encourages citizens to participate in democracy and improve the lives of all.

Some of the chief directorates include the following:

- The Communication Service Agency provides core communication services to the GSIS and other government departments, both in-house and through outsourcing. It also produces the *South Africa Yearbook* and *Pocket Guide to South Africa*.
- Government and Media Liaison coordinates effective, integrated and comprehensive communication and media-liaison services across government. It is also responsible for BuaNews, a government news service.
- Policy, Media Analysis and Research contributes to the development of policy in the fields of media, communication and information and to the monitoring of government policy in general from a communication perspective. It is also responsible for communication research.
- Provincial Coordination and Programme Support supports development communication and extends government's information infrastructure through partnerships with provincial and local government. It facilitates the establishment of Thusong Service Centres to make services and information more accessible to the public, particularly the disadvantaged. In October 2009, there were 139 Thusong Service Centres in South Africa.
- The Project Desk implements project management and coordinates services to cross-cutting projects driven by the GCIS, on behalf of other departments.
- *Vuk'uzenzele* is published bimonthly and focuses on economic and other opportunities created by South Africa's democracy.
- The 2010 Communication Project Management Unit facilitates the achievement of the communication objectives for the first African World Cup in 2010.

The chief executive officer of the GCIS is the official spokesperson for government.

The GCIS is central to developing communication strategies and programmes for government's transversal campaigns.

It also assists departments with specific campaigns and events, as well as in developing departmental communication structures.

The GCIS is responsible for maintaining the website, *Government Online* (*www.gov.za*), which includes an information portal for general information about government, and a services portal, which is a source of information about all the services rendered by national government.

Government Information website usage statistics increased from 17,8 million in 2007/08 to 20,8 million in 2008/09. Usage statistics for the Government Services website totalled 4,78 million in 2008/09 compared to 4,47 million in 2007/08.

The GCIS leads or is involved in various communication partnerships and joint processes, including the following:

- An intersectoral programme to set up Thusong Service Centres and provide information about how to access government services. A strategy for setting up one Thusong Service Centre in each of the country's municipalities by 2014 has been approved.
- The transformation of the advertising and marketing industry.
- The Public Participation Campaign of direct interaction between government and the public.

The following entities report to the GCIS:

- the International Marketing Council (IMC)
- the Media Development and Diversity Agency.

(See chapters 4 and 5: *Arts and culture* and *Communications*.)

International Marketing Council

The IMC, the custodian of Brand South Africa, is a presidential initiative under the auspices of the GCIS.

The IMC's role is to build a general climate of positive opinion, domestically and abroad, that will encourage a stronger flow of tourism and increased direct investment into South Africa, and build national pride among South Africans as a nation.

The IMC creates the space on which more direct marketing initiatives by the private sector and government departments play out. It also works closely with South African Tourism to ensure that marketing initiatives in tourism and in investment and trade are complementary.

On the domestic front, the IMC's activities seek to build a nation that is proud of itself and reflects the spirit of a country that is *Alive With Possibility*.

Particular support is provided to individuals or institutions that interact regularly with visitors to the country or who are particularly active abroad in profiling the opportunities on offer in South Africa.

The IMC has country managers in the United States of America, United Kingdom and India. The country managers work with the South African diplomatic missions in the various capitals to build South Africa's image and deal with challenges to the country's reputation. IMC activities fall into the following main categories:

- marketing, which uses various forms of advertising and promotion to reach the broad South African public and influential business and opinion leaders in key markets abroad
- public relations, with a strong media-relations emphasis, which reinforces the marketing campaigns and promotes the values associated with Brand South Africa through editorial coverage domestically and abroad
- brand integration, involving the development of a substantial cadre of "brand ambassadors" within key organisations, influencing the quality of their interaction with tourists and business visitors to South Africa
- direct representation to priority countries through the country managers whose role in terms of media relations and partnership-building has proven invaluable
- online communication through the official South African web portal, *www.southafrica.info,* which rivals major media houses in terms of the volume it attracts
- initiatives in the area of media relations.

The IMC produces a number of newsletters, including the online *Alive with Possibility*, which is published on a weekly basis and contains positive stories about the country.

The Boundless Opportunities newsletter is produced in partnership with the JSE Limited and targets JSE stakeholders domestically and abroad.

The IMC produced *South African Story III* – the third edition of a booklet that contains facts, quotes and anecdotes that illustrate extraordinary South African stories and the challenges facing the country.

In the build-up to the 2010 World Cup, the IMC intensifies its efforts to foster good working relationships with journalists at home and abroad.

In May 2009, the IMC launched a major campaign to spark enthusiasm and unite the country and the continent behind the 2009 FIFA Confederations Cup and 2010 World Cup.

Anchoring the campaign were two television adverts, one inviting Africa to rally behind the 2010 FIFA World Cup™, and the other celebrating ordinary South Africans as the "champions" who would make the World Cup a success.

The Government Communication and Information System has begun harnessing cellular phones as a platform with tremendous reach across the population. MXit is used to profile the *16 Days of Activism for No Violence against Women and Children* Campaign. MXit is a free instant messaging programme for cellphones and personal computers. The 16 Days splash screen (visual advertisement) on MXit was delivered to 2,8 million users during the 2008 campaign and some six million text messages were sent.

In April 2009, visually impaired South Africans voted secretly for the first time on a Braille ballot sheet during the general election. The Independent Electoral Commission developed the Braille template to ensure that visually impaired South Africans enjoyed similar rights as others at polling stations countrywide.

In November 2009, Cabinet approved a new international marketing logo for Brand South Africa.

Elections

The Constitution of South Africa places all elections and referendums in the country in all three spheres of government under the control of the Independent Electoral Commission (IEC), established in terms of the IEC Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996).

A general election took place on 22 April 2009. Voter turnout in all but one province was above 70%. Twenty-six parties contested the election for the National Assembly and 11 parties contested the ballot for the National Assembly and for all nine provincial legislatures.

Parties nominated 9 289 candidates for the national and provincial election; 61,6 % of them male and 38,4% female. Of the 23,18 million people registered to vote, 17,6 million voted (77,3%).

Public Service

The Department of Public Service and Administration leads the modernisation of the Public Service by assisting government departments to implement their management policies, systems and structural solutions within a generally applicable framework of norms and standards to improve service delivery.

Support efforts have been combined with measures to promote compliance with the Public Service prescripts, including a comprehensive amendment to the Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 93 of 1994), enacted in 2007.

The scope of the minister's policy-making powers in terms of the Public Service Act, 1994 includes the structure and functioning of the Public Service; conditions of service and other employment practices in the Public Service; labour relations; health and wellness of employees; information management in the Public Service; e-government; integrity, ethics, conduct and anti-corruption in the Public Service; transformation; reform; innovation; and any other matter to improve the effectiveness of the Public Service and its service delivery to the public.

The department has led the implementation of a range of policies and processes, including the Batho Pele programme. It has also initiated the CDW Programme in the Public Service, which brings government closer to the people by deploying public servants into communities to advise citizens on their civil rights and learn about their needs. The department also pioneered the Government Employees Medical Scheme (Gems), which had more than 370 000 principal members and more than one million members at the end of August 2009.

The department was the focal point for the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM) process, which culminated in the adoption of the *Country Self Assessment Report and Programme of Action* in 2006 and the *Country Review Report* by the Panel of Eminent Persons in 2007. The Minister of Public Service and Administration was chairperson of the Pan-African Ministers' Conference from 2003 to 2008 and championed a capacity-building programme on governance and administration for the continent.

Seats in the National Assembly, following the election in April 2009

African National Congress	264
Democratic Alliance	67
Congress of the People	30
Inkatha Freedom Party	18
Independent Democrats	4
Freedom Front Plus	4
United Democratic Party	4
African Christian Democratic Party	3
United Christian Democratic Party	2
African People's Convention	1
Azanian People's Liberation Organisation	1
Minority Front	1
Pan Africanist Congress	1

Size of the Public Service

By the end of March 2008, the Public Service had 1 204 525 people in its employ (including members of the South African National Defence Force). Of these employees, 63% were attached to the social services sector (health, social development, education and home affairs), followed by 20% in the criminal justice sector.

Human-resource management (HRM) and development in government

In 2008/09, a framework for the strategic repositioning of HR functions in line departments was developed.

The HRD Strategic Framework was rolled out in 2009, and a monitoring and evaluation implementation concept was developed at the same time.

The Leadership Development Management Strategy was finalised and launched at the Senior Management Conference in September 2008.

A framework on HR planning has also been developed, as well as a handbook on appointing board members.

The roll-out of the HR Connect skills database is proceeding well. HR Connect will ensure that departments can analyse skill levels in relation to required posts, occupations and job profiles. An additional benefit is that personal and structural information on the Persal system is being updated in the process.

The Employment Health and Wellness Policy Framework was developed and the HIV and AIDS Workplace Policy in the Public Service reviewed. The curriculum on HIV and AIDS monitoring and evaluation has been developed and quality was assured. The first training programme began in November 2008.

Conditions of service

Occupation specific dispensations (OSDs) are tailor-made remuneration dispensations for categories of occupations in the Public Service. The introduction of OSDs aims to improve government's ability to attract and retain skilled employees.

Agreements have been reached on OSDs for nurses, educators and legally qualified employees, while OSDs for social workers, health professionals and correctional officials have been developed. A remuneration policy framework for the Single Public Service has been prepared.

Policy on Incapacity Leave and Ill-Health Retirement (Pilir)

The Pilir was implemented in 2006 to improve the management of incapacity leave and ill-health retirement benefits. The administration of Pilir is expected to be decentralised to departments.

Medical assistance

Gems was established by government in 2005 to provide public-service employees with equitable access to affordable and comprehensive healthcare benefits. It commenced operations in 2006.

Single Public Service

The department provides leadership to the Public Service in service-delivery improvement, including the implementation of the Single Public Service initiative, the Batho Pele programme and the expansion of access to public services and e-government.

Legislation has been developed and was submitted to Parliament in June 2008 to create a Single Public Service from the national, provincial and local spheres of government, by providing a framework of norms of standards regulating employment and other matters.

Batho Pele ("People First")

The Department of Public Service and Administration continues to support the implementation of Batho Pele through change-management engagement workshops, learning platforms and service-delivery improvement plans. In 2008, the Batho Pele Change Management Programme was rolled out to 55 municipalities to change the behaviour of public servants at local government level to focus on service delivery.

Best practices from municipalities have been captured on DVD and in a booklet, which was disseminated to all municipalities. A Batho Pele learning network in November 2008 was attended by more than 700 delegates. The learning network aimed to share best practices and offer opportunities for structured networking.

In 2008/09, as part of the *Know Your Service Rights* Campaign, 60 000 booklets on the Social Cluster were translated into all official languages and disseminated. A 10-episode drama series was aired on community radio stations.

Centre for Public-Service Innovation (CPSI)

The CPSI has played a leading role in the implementation of several innovative projects since its establishment in 2002. Many of these initiatives have sought to bring the benefits of improved use of information and communications technologies (ICTs) to the public sector. These have included the Batho Pele Gateway Portal, the installation of general services counters at Thusong Service Centres and mobile and wireless technologies.

The CPSI Public-Sector Innovation Awards pay tribute to public servants or people working closely with government who have made a real contribution to improving service delivery. Innovative projects from South Africa have also been entered in the UN Public Service Awards since 2002. Four South African projects were shortlisted

for the 2008 Commonwealth Association of Public Administration and Management Awards.

In 2008/09, the CPSI produced various publications to mainstream innovative, successful and appropriate solutions to service-delivery challenges, for example innovation insights, the future watch series and case studies of successes in addressing innovation challenges.

The CPSI is the regional partner of the UN Public Administration Network, a global online network on public administration and finance. The CPSI is responsible for uploading content on the portal on behalf of the Southern African Development Community (SADC).

State Information Technology Agency (Sita)

Sita consolidates and coordinates the State's information technology (IT) resources to save costs through scale, to increase delivery capabilities and to improve interoperability.

Sita is committed to government's IT Strategy, which seeks to leverage economies of scale, enhance the interoperability of government systems, ensure system security, eliminate duplication and advance Black Economic Empowerment. The strategic priorities for 2009 to 2012 are:

- improving financial sustainability
- optimising infrastructure
- extending the service footprint
- modernising public-service operations
- reducing operational costs
- achieving operational excellence
- developing and retaining personnel.

Key policy developments impacting on departmental spending plans are, among other things:

- establishing an open-source programme office
- contributing to the development of a catalytic next-generation e-government prototype
- developing the framework for a new enterprise resource planning system in government
- developing a government-wide enterprise architecture framework
- developing a framework for adopting a service-orientated architecture in government.

Government Information Technology Officers' (Gito) Council

The Gito Council advises government on the application of IT to improve service delivery. Its membership consists of the chief information officers from national departments and offices of the premiers. The council has been involved in developing an IT security policy framework, IT procurement guidelines and e-government policy and strategy. It also monitors government IT projects to avoid duplication.

Fighting corruption

The fight against corruption remains extremely high on government's agenda. A guide on the minimum anti-corruption capacity requirements has been issued to departments. The National Anti-Corruption Forum, consisting of government, business and civil society, has strengthened the country's partnership approach to promote ethical conduct.

As part of the roll-out of the Local Government Anti-Corruption Strategy, 227 municipalities had fraud-prevention plans or anti-corruption strategies in place by March 2009.

The Department of Public Service and Administration has developed a conflict-of-interest framework for officials in the Public Service to deal with issues of corruption.

South Africa acceded to the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) Convention on Combating Bribery of Foreign Public Officials in International Business Transactions in June 2007 as the first African country and the 37th member of the OECD Working Group on Bribery in International Business Transactions.

The third Anti-Corruption Summit was held in August 2008. The next summit is scheduled for 2010.

International and African affairs

A draft report was adopted by the APRM's National Governing Council in December 2007 to formulate partnerships between government and civil society to implement the programme of action.

The African Association for Public Administration and Management South Africa was launched in August 2008. The department participated in a meeting with the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad), the Institute for Security Studies and Burundi in August 2008 in Burundi, as part of the department's contribution to post-conflict reconstruction and development.

A post-conflict reconstruction and development cluster was convened and a programme of action aligned with the African Union (AU) framework. The sixth Pan-African Conference of African Ministers of Public Service was hosted in October 2008 and Kenya was elected as chair.

Among the achievements of this conference was the African Public Service Charter.

Public Service Commission (PSC)

The PSC is an independent and impartial body created by the Constitution to enhance excellence in government and within the Public Service by promoting a professional and ethical environment and adding value to a public administration that is accountable, equitable, efficient, effective, corrupt-free and responsive.

The PSC derives its mandate from sections 195 and 196 of the Constitution. Section 195 sets out the following values and principles governing public administration that should be promoted by the commission:

- a high standard of professional ethics
- efficient, economic and effective use of resources
- a development-orientated public administration
- providing services in an impartial, fair and equitable way, without bias
- responding to people's needs and encouraging the public to participate in policy-making
- an accountable public administration
- transparency
- good HRM and career-development practices
- a representative public administration with employment and personnel-management practices based on ability, objectivity, fairness and the need to redress the imbalances of the past.

In terms of Section 196(4) of the Constitution, the functions and powers of the commission are:

- promoting the values and principles, as set out in Section 195, throughout the Public Service
- investigating, monitoring and evaluating the organisation; administering personnel practices of the Public Service, and in particular, adhering to the values and principles set out in Section 195 and public-service procedures
- proposing measures to ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service
- giving directives aimed at ensuring that personnel procedures relating to recruitment, transfers, promotions and dismissals comply with the values and principles set out in Section 195
- reporting on its activities and the performance of its functions, including any findings it may make and directions and advice it may give; and providing an evaluation of the extent to which the values and principles are complied with
- investigating and evaluating the application of personnel and public-administration practices, and reporting to the relevant executive authority and legislature
- investigating grievances of employees in the Public Service concerning official acts or omissions, and recommending appropriate remedies
- monitoring and investigating adherence to applicable procedures in the Public Service
- advising national and provincial organs of state regarding personnel practices in the Public Service, including those relating to the recruitment, appointment, transfer, discharge and other aspects of the careers of employees in the Public Service.

The PSC is accountable to the National Assembly and it must also report to the legislature of the province concerned on its activities in that particular province.

Leadership and human resource reviews

The quality of the administrative leadership of the Public Service is critical and influences the extent to which service delivery takes place.

It is imperative for senior managers, in particular heads of departments (HoDs), to be held accountable for the mandates of their departments. Since 2000, the PSC has been responsible for facilitating the evaluation of HoDs, and in the process has acquired extensive experience on the performance of HoDs and insights into departments.

Labour-relations improvement

The promotion of sound and fair labour relations in the workplace is an essential aspect of HRM.

As part of its role in enhancing public-service labour relations and management practices, the PSC assists departments to improve their capacity in managing grievances. It held several bilateral meetings and conducted numerous sessions to enlighten departments on the importance of adherence to the grievance procedures. The PSC maintains a database of grievances referred to it for research purposes.

During 2008/09, the PSC received 654 grievances compared to 588 grievances in the 2007/8 financial year – an 11% increase. Of the 654 grievances received, 191 cases were finalised and recommendations made to departments.

About 280 grievances were referred back to departments on the basis of non-compliance with the grievance rules. In 98 cases, the grievances were resolved internally by departments.

In 105 cases, the matters were closed due to the withdrawal of the grievance by aggrieved employees.

By 31 March 2009, 77 cases were pending because of incomplete information provided to the PSC. The non-compliance by departments to provide complete information or information on time remains problematic and accounts for delays in the finalisation of grievances.

Governance monitoring

Good governance is defined by the PSC as compliance with the values governing public administration in Section 195 of the Constitution.

The PSC has, therefore, put in place monitoring and evaluation systems and undertakes specific commissioned evaluations to establish the level of compliance with the values and principles of public administration.

During 2008/09, the PSC produced 25 evaluation reports, comprising seven national and 18 provincial departments, through the application of the PSC's Monitoring and Evaluation System.

Drawing from departmental monitoring and evaluation reports completed during the 2007/08 financial year, the fifth *Consolidated Monitoring and Evaluation Report* was produced. The report did not only provide an overview of the overall performance of the individual departments that were evaluated, but also an assessment of the trend of adherence to the standards for each principle for the period 2000 to 2008.

The seventh edition of the *State of the Public Service Report* was produced under the theme *The State of Readiness of the Public Service for 2010 and Beyond*.

As part of this series, the PSC completed an evaluation of the Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Programme. Drawing from its work, the PSC initiated a series of dialogues on poverty-reduction strategies and interventions.

The PSC also piloted meta-evaluation (defined as an evaluation of an evaluation) by completing a meta-evaluation of the Expanded Public Works Programme. It found that good evaluations were available for the programme and that a solid evaluation base had been laid by the Department of Public Works.

Service delivery and compliance evaluations

South Africa is about to host the 2010 FIFA World Cup™, one of the biggest sporting events in the world.

The Public Service is the mechanism through which most services will be rendered during the event, as it remains the primary provider of services to citizens at large.

During 2008/09, the PSC directed a significant section of its service-delivery assessments towards the readiness of the Public Service to host the World Cup. The PSC continued to deepen its work in the promotion of citizen participation in 2009.

Recognising that "Batho Pele" remains the central policy framework for transforming public-service delivery, the PSC continued with its evaluations on the implementation of the individual principles of "Batho Pele".

Public-administration investigations

The PSC has introduced various mechanisms aimed at preventing and combating corruption and promoting professional ethics.

The PSC introduced access mechanisms through which public servants and members of the public can report corruption, namely the PSC's Complaints Rules and the National Anti-Corruption Hotline (NACH) – 0800 701 701.

The PSC also conducts investigations of own accord and produces research reports reflecting on the management of specific public-administration practices.

In 2009, the PSC continued to pursue the promotion of good governance by conducting a number of audits and investigations into public-administration practices. The investigations emanated from complaints lodged with the PSC, and requests from, among others, executive authorities, public servants and whistle-blowers. The complaints received predominantly related to maladministration and irregularities regarding HR and procurement practices.

Professional ethics

The PSC continues to promote transparency, accountability and integrity in the Public Service. During 2008/09, the PSC promoted these values through its management of the Financial Disclosure Compliance, the NACH and professional ethics research.

The PSC's role in promoting integrity and professional ethics is not limited to the Public Service alone. As secretariat to the National Anti-Corruption Forum, an anti-corruption coalition that promotes dialogue and collective action against corruption among the different sectors of the South African society, the PSC was instrumental in hosting the third National Anti-Corruption Summit during August 2008. A total of 32 resolutions were adopted in support of the development of the National Integrity Framework for South Africa.

The PSC has also produced a report on the *Management of Conflicts of Interest through the Financial Disclosure Framework*, which reflected on a sample of 30% of the disclosure forms received for the 2007/08 financial year (2 036).

Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy (Palama)

Palama (Sesotho for "ascend") was opened in August 2008. The academy, which has evolved from the South African Management Development Institute, aims to achieve a massive increase in training courses for managers in the Public Service by involving public- and private-sector education and training institutions in an expanded training programme.

Through its training interventions, Palama contributes to deepening the capacity of public servants to respond with equal strengths to service-delivery challenges.

The academy has identified the following strategic objectives through which it will achieve its mandate:

- developing and administering a training framework of curricula and materials oriented to service delivery to be used by providers of transversal skills training for junior and middle managers
- coordinating the provision of executive development programmes for senior management
- capacitating public-sector departments to identify and meet their management-development and training needs in relation to their service-delivery objectives
- developing and implementing a suitable quality management and monitoring system
- establishing and maintaining partnerships and linkages with national and international management-development institutes and training-providers
- arranging customised training programmes in support of South African foreign policy within the AU and Nepad.

In 2009, Palama signed partnership agreements with 15 universities in three consortia to roll out the Executive Development Programme.

Palama is able to make a major contribution towards ensuring that the Public Service has the skills it needs to meet the economic and social challenges facing South Africa. Apart from universities, Palama has also developed partnerships with academies and training units within provinces and local governments.

Palama developed the Gender Mainstreaming Programme for managers in the Public Service. The one-day monitoring and evaluation and performance-management courses were piloted with senior managers in KwaZulu-Natal in December 2008.

A total of 16 000 public servants were trained from April 2008 to January 2009 on the Massified Induction Programme (MIP). This represents a 43% achievement against the 2008/09 target of 37 000. Strategies are in place to help improve the uptake of this programme. This includes a drive by Palama to present the MIP in top management meetings across the Public Service to ensure management endorsement and therefore improvement in participation levels by departments.

Department of Home Affairs

The Department of Home Affairs provides individual status-determination services and has a network of offices in all provinces and 56 offices abroad. Mobile offices service areas on a regular pre-arranged basis where the establishment of fixed offices is not warranted.

The Department of Home Affairs' Strategic Plan for 2009/10 has identified, among other things, the following key strategic priorities:

- putting in place strong management and governance measures to lead transformation and take control of the operating environment
- empowering officials with the right skills and values to build effective systems and fight corruption
- ensuring that out-of-date systems that have been contaminated by years of data corruption are modernised, cleaned and properly maintained.

Statutory bodies falling under the department are the:

- Immigration Advisory Board
- Standing Committee for Refugee Affairs
- Refugee Appeal Board.

The Government Printing Works, a division of the Department of Home Affairs, provides printing, stationery and related services to all government departments, provincial governments and municipalities. It also publishes, markets and distributes government publications. Based in Pretoria, the printing works provides a variety of related services to departments, the printing industry and other African countries, including manufacturing and supplying fingerprint ink to the South African Police Service (SAPS), and printing postage stamps for the Democratic Republic of Congo and Lesotho.

In April 2009, the Department of Home Affairs won the prestigious Public Service Delivery to

Citizens Award at the biannual Technology in Government in Africa (TIGA) Awards held in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.

Held under the auspices of the UN's Economic Commission for Africa (ECA), the TIGA Awards aim to recognise the work of African governments in the effective use of ICTs for public-service delivery. This forms part of the ECA's African Information Society Initiative and Canada's ICTs for Development Programme.

The Public-Service Delivery to Citizens Award recognises outstanding achievements by organisations or teams in developing and implementing innovative projects to improve online government service delivery.

The Department of Home Affairs submitted four projects, namely:

- Automated Fingerprint Identification System and Online Fingerprint Verification
- Operations Management
- Client Service Centre
- Track and Trace.

Online fingerprint verification is based on technology that analyses a person's fingerprints and matches them with fingerprints stored on the fingerprint database at Head Office.

The Automated Fingerprint Identification System (linked to online fingerprint verification) electronically stores all fingerprints in a central database for people who have applied for an identity document (ID) and can trace them electronically when necessary. Through this system, South Africa has the largest civilian automated fingerprint database in the world.

Track and Trace is an IT-based system that allows people who have applied for an ID or passport to check the status of their application by SMS, Internet or phone.

The Client Service Centre project allows call-centre agents to resolve queries about IDs telephonically and trace applications by logging into a central system and getting information instantly to assist clients calling the centre.

Operations Management is a project that streamlines the production process for IDs, making every step of the production transparent, and fast and making it possible to detect where there are problems before the ID is printed.

Civic services

The Branch: Civic Services is mainly responsible for the National Population Registration and civic services. National population registration entails recording personal particulars with a view to issuing IDs; identification by means of fingerprints and photographs; and dealing with matters pertaining to the status of persons, such as births, marriages and deaths.

Civic services entail issuing passports, registering foreign births, determining citizenship and issuing certificates of naturalisation or resumption of South African citizenship.

Citizenship matters

South African citizenship is regulated by the South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995), and regulations issued in terms thereof. South African citizenship may be granted by way of:

- birth or descent
- an application for naturalisation as a South African citizen
- an application for resumption of South African citizenship
- the registration of the birth of children born outside South Africa to South African fathers or mothers
- an application for exemption in terms of Section 26(4) of the Act.

Population Register

The Population Register hosted by the Department of Home Affairs stores and provides citizenry-identification information, including unique identification numbers, birth dates and marriage status. In essence, this system forms the core of citizenry-information systems within the department.

The department is running a campaign to register all children from 0 to 15 years old by the end of 2011.

After 2011, the department will ensure that babies are registered before their first birthday and do away with late registration of birth, which is the main entry point for those who want to access documents fraudulently.

Working in partnership with the Department of Basic Education, the Department of Home Affairs will, over the next two years, run a campaign to proactively ensure that all youth from 16 years old obtain an ID.

The department will also delink the capturing of fingerprints from the ID application process to ensure the security of enabling documents. This will also facilitate the faster processing of ID applications.

Immigration

The National Immigration Branch is responsible for control over the admission of foreigners for residence in and departure from South Africa.

This entails:

- processing applications for visas, temporary residence permits and immigration permits
- maintaining a travellers' and foreigners' control system
- tracing and removing foreigners who are considered undesirable or who are in South Africa illegally.

The Refugees Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998), gives effect within South Africa to the relevant international legal instruments, principles and standards relating to refugees; provides for the reception into South Africa of asylum seekers; regulates applications for and recognition of refugee status; and provides for the rights and obligations flowing from such status, and related matters.

In recent years, the department has sought to control illegal immigration through a variety of measures:

- The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), provides for a stricter immigration policy. The implementation of administrative fines and other measures came into effect in 2003. The Immigration Act, 2002 was amended to clarify and revise immigration and permit procedures to facilitate importing skills in line with the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa and the Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition.
- The department works closely with the South African Revenue Service and the SAPS to ensure effective border control.
- A computerised visa system was instituted to curb the forgery of South African visas and has been extended to all South African missions abroad.

The final immigration regulations came into effect on 1 July 2004. The release of these regulations followed the signing of the Immigration Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 19 of 2004), into law on 12 October 2004.

The immigration policy aims to:

- discourage illegal migration into South Africa by encouraging foreign nationals to apply for different permits to legalise their stay in the country
- create an enabling environment for foreign direct investment in South Africa
- attract scarce skills required by the economy in accordance with the 2014 vision of eradicating poverty and underdevelopment.

The final immigration regulations furthermore aim to establish a new system of immigration control to ensure that:

- temporary and permanent residence permits are issued as expeditiously as possible and according to simplified procedures
- security considerations are fully satisfied and the State regains control over the immigration of foreigners to South Africa
- economic growth is promoted through the employment of needed foreign labour, foreign investment is facilitated, the entry of exceptionally skilled or qualified people is enabled and academic exchange programmes in the SADC are facilitated
- tourism is promoted
- the contribution of foreigners to the South African labour market does not adversely affect existing labour standards and the rights and expectations of South African workers
- a policy connection is maintained between foreigners working in South Africa and the training of South African citizens
- a human-rights-based culture of enforcement is promoted.

The Department of Home Affairs' mandate emphasises regulation and control of the movement of persons at each of the 72 designated ports of entry. Technological advances and opportunities brought about by globalisation make it possible for the department to carry out its immigration functions beyond the country's national borders.

In strengthening the regulations and control of the movement of persons at the designated areas of entry, the department is moving towards the provision of an integrated basket of services, including Advanced Passenger Processing,

In April 2009, the Department of Home Affairs started producing the new South African passport with improved security features. The new passport, introduced as part of the department's turnaround programme, is aimed at improving customer service and eliminating forgery. The introduction of the new process improves the integrity and security of the passport, bringing it in line with the International Civil Aviation Organisation's standards for technology and security.

Applicants are required to submit high-resolution colour photographs upon application. The new passport contains several high-security features that are tamper-proof, making it impossible to forge. The passport-holder's biographical data is laser-engraved on a polycarbonate page and the paper used for the other pages of the passport includes a watermark of Chief Albert Luthuli. Fine-line security background designs depicting the Big Five are printed on the pages.

biometric verification and a seamless integrated movement-control system.

As part of the services for the Confederations Cup in 2009, the department successfully piloted the concept of an event visa, in Cairo, Egypt, in June 2009, which was issued to Egyptians who could show proof that they were travelling to South Africa to attend the soccer tournament.

Such a visa, which has no precedence in the world, will also be used for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. To contribute to the smooth but secure flow of international visitors expected to attend the World Cup, the department's immigration services branch is focusing on the following:

- facilitating operations in respect of the large account unit, which was set up to assist companies with large requirements of scarce skills
- introducing new and faster ways of processing travellers
- improving traveller screening and using mechanisms that will prevent the entry of undesirable elements
- gathering intelligence through closer cooperation with other law-enforcement agencies, both foreign and domestic.

The department prioritised the issuance of quota work permits to foreigners who fall within specific occupational classes or specific professional categories. In this context, details of specific occupational classes and specific professional categories and the applicable quotas are published annually in the *Government Gazette* after consultation with other stakeholder departments.

The Directorate: Refugee Affairs manages refugee services in South Africa. It has established the Asylum Seekers Unit and Country of Origin Information Unit.

The units advise refugee-reception offices on policy-related matters and on the background information of an applicant's country of origin. After being recognised, refugees are issued with refugee IDs, which give them access to the basic services in South Africa, including basic healthcare, education and employment.

The South African Government, through the Department of Home Affairs, issues UN travel documents to refugees. Since May 2005, refugees have been issued with a refugee smart ID, which contains security features that are not forgeable.

This directorate seeks to professionalise the functioning of the refugee regime in preparation for mass influxes in the future. The department also seeks to assist those who wish to return to their countries of origin after changes in the circumstances that led to their forced migration, by engaging in campaigns of voluntary repatriation jointly with the UN High Commissioner for Refugees.

Amendments to the Refugees Act, 1998, tabled in Parliament in March 2008, will establish the Refugee Appeals Authority and bring the legislation in line with the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005). The draft Refugees Amendment Bill seeks to dissolve the existing Standing Committee for Refugee Affairs and the Refugee Appeal Board and establish the Refugee Appeals Authority.

The Bill will have the authority to invite representations from the UN Human Rights Commission, make its own inquiries and ask the asylum-seeker to appear before it. The Bill proposes that unaccompanied children seeking asylum be issued with an asylum-seeker permit and brought before the Children's Court.

The Directorate: Information Coordination manages information on the National Immigration Branch to facilitate regional and national operations.

The directorate's main objectives are to:

- establish an information repository, which acts on risks and urgent immigration matters
- ensure dynamic real-time support on tactical and legal matters to immigration officers globally.

Visas

Foreigners who wish to enter South Africa must be in possession of valid and acceptable travel documents. They must have valid visas, except in the case of certain countries whose citizens are exempt from visa control. Such exemptions are normally limited to permits, which are issued for 90 days or less at the ports of entry. The visa system is aimed at facilitating the admission of acceptable foreigners at ports of entry. The visa becomes a permit upon entry; therefore, no additional permit will be issued.

Control of travellers

The travel documents of persons entering or departing South Africa are examined by immigration officers at recognised ports of entry, to determine whether such persons comply with the requirements.

Control of sojourn

Foreigners who are in the country illegally and who are therefore guilty of an offence may be classified into three categories, namely those who:

- entered the country clandestinely
- failed to renew the temporary residence permits issued to them at ports of entry
- breached the conditions of their temporary residence permits without permission, such as holiday visitors who took up employment or started their own businesses.

Depending on the circumstances, persons who are in South Africa illegally are either prosecuted, removed, or their sojourn is legalised. Officers at the various regional and district offices of the department are in charge of tracing, prosecuting and removing illegal foreigners from the country. Employers of illegal foreigners may also be prosecuted.

Permanent residence

Government allows immigration on a selective basis. The Department of Home Affairs is responsible for:

- processing applications for immigration permits for consideration
- admitting persons suitable for immigration, such as skilled workers in occupations in which there is a shortage in South Africa.

The department particularly encourages applications by industrialists and other entrepreneurs who wish to relocate their existing concerns or to establish new concerns in South Africa.

The department is not directly involved in an active immigration drive. In categories where shortages exist, the normal procedure is for employers to recruit abroad independently and, in most cases, initially apply for temporary work permits.

The department considers the applications for immigration permits of prospective immigrants who wish to settle in the relevant provinces. In terms of new regulations, regions will be responsible for issuing permits previously issued by the regional committees in respect of permanent residence. They will also do so in respect of temporary residence. Enquiries in this regard may be made to the nearest office of the Department of Home Affairs in South Africa, to missions abroad, or to the Director-General of Home Affairs for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting in Pretoria.

Temporary residence

In terms of the Immigration Act, 2002, temporary residence permits are divided into the following categories:

- visitor's permits
- diplomatic permits
- study permits
- treaty permits
- business permits
- crew permits
- medical permits
- relative's permits
- work permits with the following categories:
  - quota work permits
  - general work permits
  - intra-company transfer work permits
  - exceptional skills work permits
  - corporate work permits
  - retired person permits
  - exchange permits
- asylum permits.

In terms of Section 11, a visitor's permit may be issued to a person who intends to enter South Africa for less than 90 days for the purpose of tourism, business, education or medical treatment.

Foreigners who are exempt from visa requirements may therefore proceed to a port of entry where visitors' permits for the mentioned period will be issued, provided such persons can produce evidence to prove their bona fides.

Foreigners who are citizens of countries that are exempted from visa requirements for less than 90 days may likewise obtain visitors' permits at a port of entry. Such foreigners enjoy exemption for the period only. Foreigners who require a visa prior to proceeding to South Africa, or who intend to enter South Africa for any period longer than the period for which they are exempt from the visa requirement, must apply for and obtain a visa prior to proceeding to the country.

Foreigners who intend to accept an offer of employment, start a business, take up studies or enter South Africa for any purpose for which a temporary residence permit is provided for in the Act, must apply for an appropriate temporary residence permit via the South African diplomatic representative in their countries of origin/residence. In countries where there are no representatives, applications must be submitted in the nearest country where there is a foreign representative.

The outcome must be awaited outside South Africa and applicants may only proceed to South Africa once the permit as applied for has been issued to them.

The overriding consideration when dealing with applications for work permits is whether the employment or task to be undertaken cannot

be performed by a South African citizen or an approved permanent immigrant already residing in South Africa.

Applications for the extension of temporary residence permits must be submitted at least 30 days prior to the expiry date of the permit, to the nearest regional/district office of the Department of Home Affairs where the applicant is employed. Any enquiries related to temporary residence permits may be directed to the nearest district/regional office of the Department of Home Affairs in South Africa, to South African diplomatic representatives abroad, or to the Director-General of Home Affairs, for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting.

Removal of undesirable persons

In terms of legislation, the Minister of Home Affairs may order the deportation of any person who is declared undesirable or prohibited, other than an asylum seeker.

The establishment of the Department of Home Affairs' Client Service Centre means that people no longer have to go to a Home Affairs office just to check on the status of their application.

The centre also benefits those who have to travel long distances to reach an office, those who cannot afford to travel and those who cannot leave work during the day to visit the department.

The Client Service Centre's toll-free number is 0800 60 11 90.

These are foreign nationals who are in South Africa illegally and should be deported to the countries of which they are citizens or territories where they have rights of domicile or residence.

Any person who has become a deportation subject may, pending his or her deportation, be detained in a manner and at a place determined by the Director-General of the Department of Home Affairs.

Acknowledgements

2008 Local Government Budgets and Expenditure Review 2003/04 to 2009/10
BuaNews
BuaBriefs
Budget Vote 2009
Department of Home Affairs
Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
Department of Public Service and Administration
Estimates of National Expenditure 2009, published by National Treasury
Green Paper: National Strategic Planning
Government Communication and Information System
International Marketing Council
Office of the Public Service Commission
State of the Nation Address
www.cpsi.co.za
www.dplg.gov.za
www.gcis.gov.za
www.gov.za
www.imc.org.za
www.MediaClubSouthAfrica.com
www.salga.net

Suggested reading

Basedau, M, Erdman, G and Mehler, A (eds). 2007. *Votes, Money and Violence: Political Parties and Elections in Sub-Saharan Africa.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

Botes, L *et al*. 2007. *The New Struggle: Service-Delivery Related Unrest in South Africa: Two Case Studies.* Bloemfontein: Centre for Development Support, University of the Free State.

Crawford-Brown, T. 2007. *Eye on the Money*. Cape Town: Umuzi.

Chipkin, I. 2007. *Do South Africans Exist? Nationalism, Democracy and the Identity of "The People".* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

De Villiers, B (ed). 2008. *Review of Provinces and Local Governments in South Africa: Constitutional; Foundations and Practice*. Johannesburg: Konrad-Adenauer Stiftung.

Feinstein, A. 2007. *After the Party: A Personal and Political Journey Inside the ANC*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.

Geyer, Y. 2007. *How Local Government Works: Handbook for CBOs.* Cape Town: Institute for Democracy in Africa (Idasa).

Lalu, P. 2009. *The Deaths of Hintsa: Post-Apartheid South Africa and the Shape of Recurring Pasts.* Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press.

Leon, T. 2008. *On the Contrary.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.

Levy, M. 2007. *From Dakar to Democracy: A History of Idasa*. Cape Town: Idasa.

Mafeje, A (ed). 2008. *The Disenfranchised: Perspectives on the History of Elections in South Africa*. Pretoria: University of South Africa Press.

Mangcu, X. 2008. *To the Brink: The State of Democracy in South Africa. Scottsville:* University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

Ndebele, NS. 2007. *Fine Lines from the Box: Further Thoughts about our Country*. Cape Town: Umuzi.

Ramphele, M. 2008. *Laying Ghosts to Rest: Dilemmas of the Transformation in South Africa*. Cape Town: Tafelberg.

Reddy, PS, Wallis, MAH and Naidu, RA (eds). 2008. *Traditional Leadership and Local Governance in a Democratic South Africa: "Quo Vadis"*. Durban: Democracy Development Programme.

Salih, MA (ed). 2007. *African Parliaments: Between Governance and Government*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Saul, J. 2007. *The Next Liberation Struggle*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal.

Southall, R and Daniel, J (eds). 2009. *Zunami! The South African Elections of 2009*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.

Steinberg, J. 2007. *Notes from a Fractured Country*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.

Van der Waldt, G (ed). 2007. *Municipal Management: Serving the People*. Cape Town: Juta.

Van Donk, M *et al* (eds). 2008. *Consolidating Developmental Local Government: Lessons from the South African Experience*. Cape Town: University of the Cape Press.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

HEALTH

In the current Medium Term Strategic Framework period, the Department of Health aims to transform the public health system to reduce inequalities in the health system, improve quality of care and public facilities, boost human resources (HR) and step up the fight against HIV and AIDS, tuberculosis (TB) and other communicable diseases as well as lifestyle and other causes of ill-health and mortality.

The Health Technical Task Team for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™, led by the Department of Health, is focusing on various areas such as emergency medical services (EMS), communicable diseases, environmental health, port health, stadiums, provision of primary healthcare (PHC) and the establishment of command and control points.

There is collaboration with the South African National Defence Force in providing the necessary back-up for emergency events. It also collaborates with the South African Red Cross Society in terms of support for aeromedical transportation in cases of need. The experience provided by the FIFA Confederations Cup in 2009 will contribute vastly to ensuring world-class health and medical services in 2010.

In 2009, the Department of Health also finalised and costed the Communicable Disease-Control Strategic Plan for the Soccer World Cup in 2010.

Statutory bodies

Statutory bodies for health-service professionals include the Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA), the South African Dental Technicians' Council, the South African Nursing Council (SANC), the South African Pharmacy Council (SAPC) and the Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa (AHPCSA).

Regulations in the private health sector are effected through the Council for Medical Schemes. The Medicines Control Council is charged with ensuring the safety, quality and effectiveness of medicines.

Health authorities

National

The Department of Health has adopted the 10-Point Plan for the 2009 to 2012 period. The plan includes:

- providing strategic leadership and creating a social compact for better health outcomes
- implementing a National Health Insurance (NHI) system
- accelerated implementation of the HIV and AIDS plan and increased focus on TB and other communicable diseases
- overhauling the healthcare system and improving its management
- improved HR planning, development and management
- improving the quality of health services
- revitalising health infrastructure
- mass mobilisation for better health for the population
- reviewing the drug policy
- strengthening research and development.

Provincial health departments

Provincial health departments provide and manage comprehensive health services at all levels of care. The basis for these services is a district-based PHC model.

The major emphasis in developing health services in South Africa at provincial level has been the shift from curative hospital-based healthcare to that provided in an integrated community-based manner.

The provincial health departments are responsible for:

- providing and/or rendering health services
- formulating and implementing provincial health policy, standards and legislation
- planning and managing a provincial health information system
- researching health services to ensure efficiency and quality
- controlling quality of health services and facilities
- screening applications for licensing and inspecting private health facilities
- coordinating the funding and financial management of district health authorities
- consulting effectively on health matters at community level
- ensuring that delegated functions are performed.

The national department assists provincial health departments to develop service-transformation plans to reshape and resize the health services and develop appropriate, adequately resourced and sustainable health service-delivery platforms, which are responsive to needs.

Legislation

National Health Act, 2003 (Act 61 of 2003)

The National Health Act, 2003 provides a framework for a single health system for South Africa. It highlights the rights and responsibilities of health-providers and healthcare users, and ensures broader community participation in healthcare delivery from a health facility level up to national level. It establishes provincial health services and outlines the general functions of provincial health departments.

The Act provides for the right:

- to emergency medical treatment
- to have full knowledge of one's condition
- to exercise one's informed consent
- to participate in decisions regarding one's health
- to be informed when one is participating in research
- to confidentiality and access to health records
- to complain about service
- of health workers to be treated with respect.

Tobacco Products Control Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 63 of 2008)

The Tobacco Products Control Amendment Act, 2008 seeks to amend the Tobacco Control Act, 1993 (Act 83 of 1993), to provide anew for advertising, sponsorship, promotion, distribution and information required in respect of the packaging and labelling of tobacco products; to make the standards that apply to manufacturers of tobacco products applicable to importers of tobacco products; to prohibit the sale of tobacco to and by persons under the age of 18 years; to extend the provisions in respect of free distribution of tobacco products; to provide anew for tobacco sales by means of vending machines; to extend the minister's power to make regulations; and to adjust the provisions in respect of offences and penalties.

International World AIDS Day is celebrated on 1 December each year. In 2009, government commemorated this day by introducing the following new measures:

- all children under one year of age will get treatment if they test positive – treatment will not be determined by the level of CD cells
- patients with both tuberculosis (TB) and HIV will get treatment with antiretrovirals (ARVs) if their CD4 count is 350 or less
- TB and HIV/AIDS will now be treated under one roof
- all pregnant HIV-positive women with a CD4 count of 350 or with symptoms regardless of the CD4 count will have access to treatment
- all other pregnant women not falling into this category, but who are HIV-positive, will be put on treatment at 14 weeks of pregnancy to protect the baby
- government will ensure that all the health institutions in the country are ready to receive and assist patients and not just a few accredited ARV centres.

The changes would be implemented from April 2010

Medicine and Related Substances Amendment Bill

The Bill aims to amend the Medicines and Related Substances Act, 1965 (Act 101 of 1965), to provide for the establishment of the South African Health Products Regulatory Authority (SAHPRA); to provide for the certification and registration of products, which include medicines, medical devices, certain foodstuffs and cosmetics; and for the control of scheduled substances.

Nursing Act, 2005 (Act 33 of 2005)

The Nursing Act, 2005 provides for the introduction of mandatory community service for nurses. This contributes significantly to efforts to ensure equitable distribution of nurses to meet the health needs of communities.

The Act seeks to ensure that nursing-education programmes are registered with the National Qualifications Framework so that nurses can gain recognised credits and retain them for future studies. The main objectives of the Act are to:

- serve and protect the public in matters involving health services provided by the nursing profession
- ensure that the SANC serves the best interests of the public and does so in accordance with national health policy
- promote the provision of acceptable nursing care
- regulate the nursing profession and the way in which nurses conduct themselves
- promote the operations and functions of the SANC and the registrar
- promote liaison regarding health, nursing education and training standards
- ensure that the SANC advises the Minister of Health on matters affecting the profession
- provide for the registration of nurses and the keeping of registers.

Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002)

The Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 introduced a

process to develop and redesign mental-health services in line with the rights of mental-health-care users, as guaranteed by the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996. This legislation grants basic rights to people with mental illnesses, and prohibits various forms of exploitation, abuse and discrimination.

The Act provides for:

- empowering the users themselves so that they can engage service-providers and society
- allocating adequate resources
- a commitment to the cause of mental health at all levels of society.

To achieve this, a series of innovative processes and procedures regarding the care, treatment and rehabilitation of mental-health users, as well as clear guidelines on good practice in relation to the role of mental-healthcare practitioners, will be introduced.

Although the Act reserves the right to involuntary hospitalisation, it also contains accompanying conditions for strict admission and reviewing processes and procedures before any decision on psychiatric referrals may be made.

All provinces have established independent mental-health review boards, charged in terms of the Mental Healthcare Act, 2002, to oversee the care, treatment and rehabilitation of patients who were admitted without their consent.

National School Health Policy

The aim of the National School Health Policy and guidelines is to ensure that all children, irrespective of race, colour and location, have equal access to school-health services.

The policy is in line with the UN Convention on the Rights of the Child, which affirms the State's obligation to ensure that all segments of society, in particular parents and children, are informed and have access to knowledge of child health and nutrition, hygiene, environmental sanitation and the prevention of accidents.

Department of Health officials will be visiting all provinces, especially those with a school-health programme, to embark on a major training campaign of PHC nurses.

The nurses will be trained to:

- provide children with health education
- impart life skills
- screen children, especially those in Grade R and Grade One, for specific health problems, and at puberty stage when children undergo physiological changes
- detect disabilities at an early age
- identify missed opportunities for immunisation and other interventions.

National Health Insurance

The Department of Health seeks to establish an NHI system, which will introduce the necessary funding and service-delivery mechanisms to enable the creation of an efficient, equitable and sustainable health system in South Africa.

The key policy proposal is that the NHI be funded from two sources of revenue, namely, general tax revenue and an earmarked mandatory contribution. All employed individuals would make an appropriately determined mandatory contribution to an intermediary health fund.

The Government aims to make a universal subsidy contribution on behalf of the indigent and poor to this fund to provide for their services. To effectively realise the objective of universal healthcare for all, a number of reforms have to be undertaken, which should include regulatory, financing, health-service delivery and complementary reforms.

Steps in the development of the NHI system require reaching consensus on matters relating to the Basic Benefits Package (Essential Healthcare Package), the structure of the National Health Fund (NHF) and the role of private funders and providers.

With regard to the Basic Benefits Package, one of the key components of adopting an NHI system is defining the set of healthcare services that individuals and households would be covered for and how much it would cost the State to provide these services to the national population.

In terms of the structure of the NHF, there is a need for public and stakeholder engagement on the exact form that the proposed fund would take.

The role of private funders and providers is also important. The private health sector in South Africa holds a huge share of the country's national health resources, human and financial. There is a need to engage with stakeholders on the best way the NHI system would draw on the resources in the private sector for the benefit of the national population – not just those with private health insurance. There is also a need to resolve the role of private funders, as well as medical schemes in an NHI environment.

During the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period 2009 to 2012, the department aims to continue working towards the design of a NHI system for South Africa that promotes health-

system integration and ensures universal access for all South Africans.

In November 2009, the Minister of Health, Dr Aaron Motsoaledi, announced the appointment of a 25-member committee to advise him on an implementation plan for the NHI system.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

By September 2009, the Department of Health's 2010 Health Technical Coordinating Committee, comprising provincial and local government, military, private-sector and other stakeholders, was preparing for the 2010 World Cup.

EMS is the cornerstone of the Department of Health's service provision for the event. About 700 new ambulances had been purchased, and five modern state-of-the-art communications systems were in the process of being completed. This will enhance the ability to track the department's mobile resources at all times.

By September 2009, a software-based in-field diagnostic tool had been piloted in the Western Cape and would soon be rolled out across the country. Aeromedical services had been improved and five out of the eight hosting provinces had modern dedicated aeromedical helicopter services. The remaining three provinces were expected to implement similar services shortly after.

As part of the initiative to improve EMS, the training of emergency-care practitioners was enhanced with the provision of additional funding to provincial colleges of emergency care.

Services at major tourist destinations will be improved. Strategies were expected to be in place to ensure speedy responses to rural areas, and hospitals that serve those areas would be adequately prepared and supported.

Environmental health plans were reviewed in conjunction with host cities and the FIFA Organising Committee. The plans incorporate all the activities required to ensure that venues meet international standards in relation to food safety, water integrity, and sanitation and waste management. South Africans will benefit from these activities beyond 2010.

Free PHC will be provided for all spectators at official venues, including a script or referral to a health facility, if necessary. However, any investigations, procedures or admissions will be paid for by the patient.

Dispensing machines will be situated throughout the stadiums for basic drug purchases. Twenty-four-hour pharmacies will be in place for the duration of the event.

Health professionals

Physicians

There are more than 34 500 doctors registered with the HPCSA. These include doctors working for the State, those in private practice and specialists. The majority of doctors practise in the private sector. In selected communities, medical students supervised by medical practitioners provide health services at clinics.

In terms of the Continuing Professional Development (CPD) system, all doctors, irrespective of earlier qualifications, must obtain a specified number of points to retain their registration.

The system requires that doctors attend workshops, conferences, refresher courses, seminars, departmental meetings and journal clubs. Non-compliance with the requirements of the system could result in a doctor being deregistered.

Applications by foreign health professionals are subject to assessment by the Examinations Committee of the Medical and Dental Professions Board. Those admitted have to write an examination, after which they can be registered in the particular category for which they applied and were assessed.

Oral health professionals

By December 2008, there were 948 oral hygienists, 477 dental therapists and 4 799 dentists registered with the HPCSA.

Dentists are subject to the CPD and community-service systems. Oral health workers render services in the private and public sectors.

Pharmacists

All pharmacists are obliged to perform one year of remunerated pharmaceutical community service in a public-health facility. Those who have not completed this year of service may not practise independently as pharmacists.

The primary object of the SAPC is to assist in the promotion of the health of South Africans. This is achieved in the fields of registration, education, practice and professional discipline.

The SAPC assists in the promotion of the health of the population on a national basis by establishing, developing, maintaining and controlling standards of education and practice of persons required to be registered in terms of the Pharmacy Act, 1974 (Act 53 of 1974).

The council is responsible for promoting the provision of pharmaceutical care, and for upholding and safeguarding the rights of the general public to universally acceptable standards of pharmacy practice in both the public and the private sectors. The council also advises the min-

The International Organisation for Migration and the United States Agency for International Development launched a R50-million programme to reduce HIV-vulnerability among South African farm workers in 2009.

The three-year programme, known as Ripfumelo (which means "believe" in Xitsonga), aims to target 20 000 farm workers, including migrant labourers, in Limpopo and Mpumalanga. Ripfumelo focuses on prevention and care services as well as the external factors that contribute to HIV-vulnerability.

ister or any other person on any matter relating to pharmacy.

The SAPC is a statutory council, which receives no grants or subsidies from government or any other source. The council is funded wholly by the profession who registers with the SAPC. The main consumer of its services, namely the public, does not and is not expected to contribute financially to the functioning of the council.

An important characteristic of the profession is that it is self-regulatory, and that non-professional authorities such as governments or governmental agencies do not dictate to the profession on matters of professional responsibility and training.

The council is a statutory body and the country's official "keeper of pharmacy registers". To safeguard the public, registration with the council is a legal prerequisite for practising pharmacy.

The council is vested with statutory powers of peer review and is responsible for funding itself.

It is the vision of the council to ensure that pharmaceutical services in the country are the best to meet the healthcare needs of the people.

Categories

In terms of the Act, the following categories of natural and juristic persons are registered with the council: pharmacy students, pharmacist interns, pharmacists performing community service, pharmacists, specialist pharmacists, pharmacist assistants, responsible pharmacists and providers and assessors.

Pharmacy training

Pharmacy training is provided by eight pharmacy schools that have been approved by the SAPC.

This training consists of four years of full-time study, which leads to the awarding of a BPharm Degree, followed by a 12-month pre-registration practical training period. The practical training year is of extreme importance for the pharmacy graduate. It is an opportunity for the pharmacist intern to gain practical experience and knowledge in the practice setting.

This practical training period may be carried out in a community pharmacy, institutional pharmacy, manufacturing pharmacy or at a provider of a qualification in pharmacy approved by the council for such training.

After successful completion of the year of practical training, as well as a pre-registration evaluation, the intern is registered as a pharmacist, and must do one year of pharmaceutical community service in a public-sector facility before he/she can practise independently as a pharmacist.

A list of institutions that offer pharmacy education are available from the SACP (*www.sapc.za.org*), and all enquiries regarding undergraduate and postgraduate studies should be addressed directly to these institutions.

Provincial departments of health also offer bursaries.

During academic training, a candidate registers as a pharmacy student after successful completion of the first year of study. This registration enables students to work in a pharmacy under the supervision of a pharmacist. Such registration is cancelled when a candidate discontinues his or her studies.

Nurses

The SANC sets minimum standards for the education and training of nurses in South Africa. It accredits schools that meet the required standards and only grants professional registration to nurses who undergo nursing education and training at an accredited nursing school.

Nurses are required to complete a mandatory 12-month period community service programme and once they have completed it, they may be registered as a nurse (general, psychiatric or community) and midwife.

The key roles of the nursing council are to protect and promote public interest, and to ensure the delivery of quality healthcare by prescribing minimum requirements for the education and training of nurses and midwives, approving training schools, and registering or enrolling those who qualify in one or more of the basic or post-basic categories.

The implementation of the OSD for nurses continued in 2009.

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS is the single largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa with over 265

laboratories serving 80% of the country's population. All laboratories provide diagnostic services to the national and provincial departments of health, provincial hospitals, local authorities and medical practitioners.

The NHLS conducts health-related research, appropriate to the needs of the broader population into, among other things, HIV and AIDS, TB, malaria, pneumococcal infections, occupational health, cancer and malnutrition.

The NHLS trains pathologists, medical scientists, occupational health practitioners, technologists and technicians in pathology disciplines.

Its specialised divisions comprise the:

- National Institute for Communicable Diseases, whose research expertise and sophisticated laboratories make it a testing centre and resource for the African continent, particularly in relation to several of the rarer communicable diseases
- National Institute for Occupational Health, which investigates occupational disease and has laboratories for occupational environment analyses
- National Cancer Registry, which provides epidemiological information for cancer surveillance.

Medical Research Council (MRC)

The MRC was established in accordance with the MRC Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991), and is the largest health research body in South Africa.

The aims of the MRC are to promote the improvement of the health and quality of life of South Africans.

Health research is the core business of the MRC and must be validated and of high quality if it is to impact on the health of South Africans.

The MRC's peer review and audit systems ensure that such high standards are met. MRC research, development and technology transfer encompass all spheres of knowledge-generation that impact on health and quality of life – from basic to applied research.

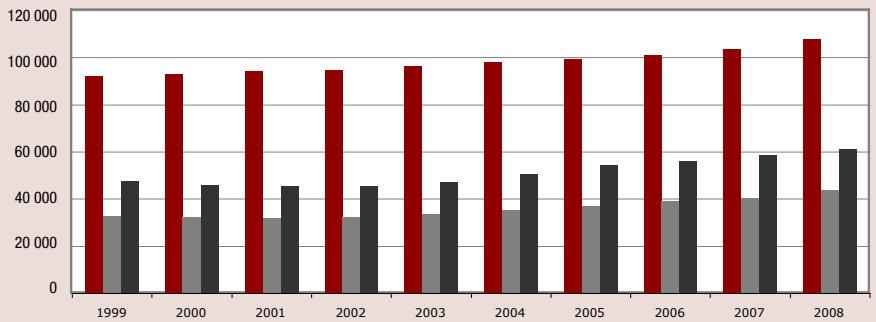
Following international best practice, all the broad disciplines of human-health research are within the ambit of the MRC; from laboratory to clinical, public health, policy and implementation. This work is often done in an integrated, multidisciplinary fashion.

Frequently, a participatory approach is used in setting the research agenda, performing and analysing the research and disseminating the research results.

Health research is the primary instrument by which the MRC seeks to gain a better understanding of people's bodies and minds and their interaction with the environment, as well as discovering methods by which the department can preserve and promote physical, mental and spiritual health.

The portfolio of MRC research must also address the health and development priorities of South Africa as defined by the National Health Research Committee, set up under the National

South African Nursing Council – growth in registers



Between 1999 and 2008, there was an overall increase in the total number of nurses on the registers from 172 893 to 212 806 (more than 23,1% growth).

- Nursing figures as at 31 December each year.
- Excludes persons staying outside South Africa
- ■ RN/RM = registered nurses and registered midwives
- ■ EN/EM = enrolled nurses and enrolled midwives
- ■ ENA = enrolled nursing auxiliaries.

Source: South African Nursing Council

Health Act, 2003, to advise the Minister of Health on health-research priorities for South Africa.

The MRC research priorities are agreed upon annually in consultation with the Minister of Health.

Furthermore, the MRC's vision of "building a healthy nation through research" can only be achieved if research results are translated into policy, practice, health promotion and products.

The principal stakeholder of the MRC is the national Department of Health.

The role of local government

Local government is responsible for rendering the following:

- preventive and promotive healthcare, with some municipalities rendering curative care
- environmental health services, including the supply of safe and adequate drinking water, sewage disposal and refuse removal
- regulation of air pollution, municipal airports, fire-fighting services, licensing and abattoirs.

Many local authorities provide additional PHC services. In some instances, these are funded by provincial health authorities, but in major metropolitan areas the councils carry some of the costs.

Non-governmental organisations

Many NGOs at various levels continue to play a crucial role in healthcare and cooperate with government's priority programmes.

They make an essential contribution in relation to HIV, AIDS and TB, and also participate significantly in the fields of mental health, cancer, disability and the development of PHC systems.

Through the Partnership for the Delivery of PHC Programme (PDPHCP), including the HIV and AIDS Programme, the department has strengthened its collaboration with NGOs. The PDPHCP has empowered communities and NGOs working in the health sector by focusing on three key areas:

- providing skills to NGOs in the rural nodes by using accredited service-providers
- reducing unemployment by ensuring that NGO workers are provided with stipends
- ensuring accountability by requiring NGOs to include community members in their administration structures.

The involvement of NGOs extends from national level, through provincial structures, to small local organisations rooted in individual communities. All are vitally important and bring different qualities to the healthcare network.

Medical schemes

The private medical-aid scheme industry is regulated by the Council for Medical Schemes (in terms of the Medical Schemes Act, 1998 [Act 131 of 1998]). The council is funded mainly through levies on the industry in terms of the Council for Medical Schemes Levies Act, 2000 (Act 58 of 2000).

In September 2009, there were 112 medical schemes. The total number of principal members of registered medical schemes increased by 6% from 3 178 127 at 31 December 2007 to 3 366 383 at September 2008.

The number of beneficiaries increased by 4,6% from 7 478 040 in 2007 to 7 823 137 in 2008. The total gross contribution income for all medical schemes amounted to R55,5 billion for the period ended 30 September 2008, 1,2% lower than the budget of R56,2 billion for the same period.

The gross contributions per average beneficiary per month of R800 was for the period ended 30 September 2008, an increase of 9% compared to the previous year. Gross relevant healthcare per average beneficiary per month was about R722 for the period ended 30 September 2008.

Tariffs for admission to private and provincial hospitals differ. Cost differences also exist between various provincial hospitals, depending on the facilities offered. Provincial hospital patients pay for examinations and treatment on a sliding scale in accordance with their income and number of dependants. If families are unable to bear the cost in terms of the standard means test, patients are classified as hospital patients. Their treatment is then partly or entirely financed by the particular provincial government or the health authorities of the administration concerned.

Provincial hospitals offer treatment to patients with medical-aid cover, charging a

In July 2009, Anglo Coal South Africa was recognised by the Global Business Coalition on HIV and AIDS, Tuberculosis and Malaria for its pioneering workplace programme focused on tackling HIV and AIDS in South Africa.

The Business Excellence Award for Best Workplace Programme was presented to Mr Ben Magara, CEO of Anglo Coal South Africa, at an awards dinner held in Washington DC. The event was attended by global health leaders.

The awards recognise companies which have demonstrated extraordinary commitment, action and results, and have achieved exceptional success in putting their assets to work in the fight against the greatest health threats of our time.

tariff designed to recover the full cost of treatment. This private rate is generally lower than the rate charged by private hospitals. The Medical Schemes Amendment Act, 2001 (Act 55 of 2001), improves the regulatory capacity of the Registrar for Medical Schemes and regulates reinsurance. The Act:

- provides improved protection for members by addressing the problem area of medical insurance, revisiting the provision on waiting periods, and specifically protecting patients against discrimination on grounds of age
- promotes efficient administration and good governance of medical schemes by insisting on the independence of individuals in certain key positions
- introduced mechanisms to address problematic practices in the marketing of medical schemes and brokerage of services.

Minimum benefits are also prescribed.

Primary healthcare, hospital services and emergency medical care

Access to PHC services, as measured by headcounts, reflects a consistent upward trend. Headcounts increased from 67 021 961 in 1998/99 to 99 365 898 in 2004/05, to 101 758 377 in 2005/06, stabilised at 101 644 080 in 2006/07 and increased to 101 748 188 in 2007/08.

By December 2008, a total of 83 111 282 people had used PHC services in the public sector, which marked an increase from the figure of 73 747 763 recorded in December 2007.

The national PHC utilisation rate was 2,5 visits per person in September 2008. Although this figure was lower than the set target of 2,7 visits per person, it was higher than the 2,2 visits per person achieved in 2007/08, and the 2,1 visits per person recorded in 2006/07.

The national PHC supervisory rate reflected an improvement from 56% in December 2007 to 69,4% in December 2008, against a national target of 100%. The Department of Health aims to achieve a PHC supervisory rate of 100% in 2009/10, and for the two outer years of the MTEF period.

In April 2008, the department convened a National PHC Conference in Gauteng to commemorate 30 years since the PHC Conference that adopted the Alma Ata Declaration. The Birchwood Declaration was adopted, which recommitted the health sector in its entirety to the ideals of the PHC approach.

In 2008, two external reviews of the health sector's performance over the last 14 years observed that the development of the District Health System (DHS) as a vehicle for the delivery of PHC services appeared to have stagnated in the country, and that some gains made in the first few years of the democratic Government appeared to have been reversed.

The external reviews accentuated the need to revitalise PHC in South Africa, to improve the functioning of the DHS, to ensure support from provinces and the national department to district management teams (DMTs) and to hold DMTs accountable for performance. These issues are encompassed in the Birchwood Declaration. It was therefore essential that the implementation of key provisions of the declaration was vigilantly monitored and consistently reported on during the 2009/10 MTEF period, with interventions made to unblock areas of slow progress.

During 2008/09, the Department of Health produced the Draft Disaster Management Policy. Over the 2009/10 MTEF period, the department aims to produce an Integrated Disaster Management Plan in terms of the Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002), and the Disaster Management Framework of 2005. This plan is expected to be implemented in phases.

The first phase, expected to take place in 2009/10, includes implementation by the national Department of Health and all nine provincial health departments. Phase Two aims to involve 45 pre-identified hospitals for 2010. By the end of the MTEF period, an additional 200 hospitals are expected to be implementing the Integrated Disaster Management Plan. By the end of December 2008, the emergency centre regulations were 70% completed.

Finalisation of these regulations was to be accelerated in 2009/10.

The EMS Business Plan, completed in 2008, envisaged the development of a fully functional EMS Information System. A selection of EMS performance indicators has been included in the District Health Information System (DHIS).

Hospital Revitalisation Project

During 2008/09, 33 hospitals were under construction as part of the Hospital Revitalisation Project and 11 more hospitals were in the planning phase. Five hospitals were nearing completion, namely Dilokong and Nkhensani in Limpopo, St Lucy's and St Patrick's in the Eastern Cape and Barkley West in the Northern Cape.

The Eastern Cape also completed the specialised eye clinic in the Frontier Hospital. Mamelodi Hospital outside Pretoria was expected to be opened in 2009.

In 2009/10, the Department of Health was planning to complete the evaluation of five tertiary hospitals, namely New Nelspruit; New Limpopo Academic; King Edward VIII KwaZulu-Natal; and Kimberley; and Rustenburg hospitals. It is intended that these five hospitals, when completely revitalised, would render tertiary services and serve as provincial referral hospitals. Subject to the outcome of the review and the availability of resources, construction of these hospitals will start by the end of this MTEF period.

Hospital management was also strengthened in various ways during 2008/09. A total of 122 out of 400 hospital managers were enrolled for a hospital-management training programme offered by institutions of higher learning, and approved by the national department. This was in keeping with the 2008/09 target of training 120 managers. By the end of 2011/12, a total of 240 of the targeted 400 hospital managers will have undergone the hospital-management training.

In 2008/09, 286 of the more than 380 hospitals nationally had appointed health-information officers. About 12 of the targeted 17 hospitals implemented standardised electronic cost centres.

A total of 25 hospitals developed their health-facility improvement plans, as part of the process of improving quality of care. About 57 hospitals were expected to produce and implement these facility-improvement plans by March 2010. By the end of the MTEF period, 190 of the 381 public hospitals will have implemented these plans.

Health status

Child health

The South African demographic and health surveys, conducted by the Department of Health in 2003, reflected that the infant mortality rate had decreased marginally from 45 per 1 000 in 1998 to 43 per 1 000 in 2003. The three mortality audit reports namely *Saving Mothers*, *Saving Babies* and *Saving Children*, reported an under-five mortality rate of 69 deaths per 1 000 live births.

During 2008/09, the health sector implemented a combination of interventions to decrease infant and child mortality. Key among this was the Expanded Programme on Immunisation, which has over the last decade and a half made a significant contribution towards protecting South African children against vaccine-preventable diseases such as measles, diphtheria and pertussis.

Immunisation coverage figures indicate a progressive increase in the number and percentage of children fully immunised, from 78% in 2002 to 82% in 2006/07, to 84% in 2007/08, and to 84,6% in December 2008. There were, however, districts that did not attain the expected 90% coverage in 2008/09, and targeted support was provided to them.

The department submitted the country's Polio-Free Certification document to the Africa Regional Certificate Committee (ARCC) of the World Health Organisation (WHO) in August 2008. A wild poliovirus outbreak and importation preparedness plan was also updated, submitted and accepted by the ARCC. This was in keeping with the set target for 2008.

During the MTEF period 2009/10 to 2011/12, the Department of Health aims to implement a package of key interventions to steer the health sector towards Millennium Development Goal (MDG) Four, which aims to reduce childhood mortality by two thirds by 2015. Two new vaccines will be introduced to help prevent deaths from pneumonia and diarrhoea, namely Prevenar and Rotatrix, respectively.

Provincial departments were expected to introduce these two vaccines in a phased manner in 2009/10.

The anticipated reduction in morbidity and mortality might take longer to manifest itself than was originally anticipated. Other key interventions during the next planning cycle will include increasing the proportion of PHC facilities saturated with health workers trained in the Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses (IMCI) to 80% by 2011/12, strengthening the implementation of the Household and Community Component of the IMCI, as well as the Perinatal Problem Identification Programme in the 18 priority districts.

The 18 districts are located across the nine provinces. The Department of Health expanded the Reach Every District Strategy to 44 of the 52 districts. A total of 238 of the 545 health facilities with maternity beds were accredited as providing baby-friendly services, against a target of 245 facilities. There are strict criteria that these facilities had to comply with to achieve this accreditation.

Maternal and women's health

One of the key challenges that had confronted the health sector's efforts to improve maternal and women's health over the last few years had been the increase in the Maternal Mortality Ratio (MMR).

In 1998, the *South African Demographic and Health Survey* (SADHS) reported an MMR of 150 per 100 000 live births, while in 2002, Statistics South Africa estimated MMR to be at 124 per

100 000. However an MMR of 124 per 100 000 is still considered high for a middle-income country such as South Africa.

The MDG Five requires countries to improve maternal health and reduce their MMR by 75% by 2015.

During 2008/09, the department continued to implement diverse interventions to reduce maternal mortality. Key among these were the 10 recommendations from the *Saving Mothers: Third Report on Confidential Enquiries into Maternal Deaths in South Africa 2002 – 2004*, which were as follows:

- Protocols on the management of important conditions causing maternal deaths must be available and utilised appropriately. All midwives and doctors must be trained in the use of these protocols.
- All pregnant women should be offered information on screening for and appropriate management of communicable and non-communicable diseases.
- Criteria for referral and referral routes must be established and used appropriately in all provinces.
- Emergency-transport facilities must be available for all pregnant and post-partum women and their babies with complications (at any site).
- Staffing and equipment norms must be established for each level of care and for every health institution concerned with the care of pregnant women.
- Blood for transfusions must be available at every institution where caesarean sections are performed.
- The use of contraceptives must be promoted through education and service provision and the number of mortalities from unsafe abortion must be reduced.
- Correct use of partograms should become the norm in each institution conducting births. A quality-assurance programme should be implemented, using an appropriate tool.
- Skills in anesthesia should be improved at all levels of care, particularly at level one hospitals.
- Women, families and communities at large must be empowered, and should participate actively in projects and programmes aimed at improving maternal and neonatal health as well as reproductive health in general.

By the end of December 2008, 87% of institutions were implementing recommendations from the *Saving Mothers* and *Saving Babies* reports, against a 2008/09 target of 90%. However, the Department of Health encountered challenges in monitoring this objective, because of the complexity of measuring which of the 10 recommendations were being implemented.

To address this, the department initiated discussions with the National Committee for Confidential Enquiries into Maternal Deaths about a new approach to tracking the proportion of health facilities implementing these recommendations.

In 2008, 50% of community health centres (CHCs) provided Choice on Termination of Pregnancy (C-TOP) services, which was consistent with the target for 2008/09 of cascading C-TOP to PHC facilities.

A cervical cancer screening coverage of 22% was attained by 2008, against a 2008/09 target of 40%.

In the 2009/10 planning cycle, key priorities for strengthening maternal health included ensuring that 95% of pregnant women are tested for HIV by 2011/12, that 95% of eligible pregnant women are placed on antiretroviral prophylaxis, using dual therapy, and that at least 50% of post-partum women are reviewed within three days.

Communicable disease control

HIV and AIDS

Key milestones were achieved in combating communicable diseases such as HIV and AIDS, TB and malaria. The public health sector continued to implement the Comprehensive Programme for HIV and AIDS Care, Management and Treatment (CCMT).

Prevention remained the cornerstone of the CCMT, with voluntary counselling and testing (VCT) and prevention of mother-to-child transmission services being provided in more than 95% of public health facilities in 2008/09.

By the end of December 2008, more than 206 million male condoms had been distributed, building towards the 2008/09 target of 450 million male condoms. About 2 894 000 female condoms were distributed.

About 95% of districts had a turnaround time of six days or less for CD4 tests. By the end of January 2009, a total of 695 293 patients had been initiated on antiretroviral therapy (ART) of which 625 062 were adults and 70 231 were children.

The *Antenatal Care Survey* for 2007 reflected a 1% reduction in HIV prevalence between 2006 and 2007, and a 2% reduction between 2005 and 2007.

In 2009/10, the Department of Health aimed to accelerate the implementation of the National

Strategic Plan for HIV and AIDS and Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs), in keeping with the 10-Point Plan for 2009 to 2014.

With regard to prevention, the department aims to maintain the availability of VCT services in 100% of its PHC facilities, and strives to ensure that by March 2010, 50% of South African men will have undertaken an HIV test. Distribution of both male and female condoms will be expanded.

Care and support will also be fortified through community-based services. About 27 000 community care-givers are expected to be receiving a stipend by March 2010. With regard to treatment, by September 2009, 700 000 people were receiving ART. Efforts are to be made to ensure that 85% of these patients remain on ART after completing one year of treatment.

Tuberculosis

One of government's priorities is to increase the national TB cure rate from 60% in 2008 to 70% in 2010 by improving interventions for TB control and management. The TB cure rate of 60% in 2008 decreased from 63% in 2007.

TB-tracer teams are being appointed and placed in districts across South Africa to help reduce the defaulter rate, resulting in a decrease in the rate from 10% in 2005 to 7,9% in 2008.

A national prevalence survey of TB was expected to be conducted in 2009/10.

The management and control of TB also reflected positive outcomes during 2008/09.

More than 80% of TB patients who presented to the health facilities in 2008 were tested for HIV.

Provinces are being trained on an ongoing basis in the TB Control Programme. Key challenges in 2008/09 included the lack of reliable data on the magnitude of multidrug-resistant TB (MDR-TB) and extensively drug-resistant TB (XDR-TB).

A study was initiated to generate this data. In keeping with the departmental policy, all patients with MDR-TB and XDR-TB are admitted to hospital for the intensive phase of treatment; for the evaluation of treatment; for the purpose of evaluation, initiation and monitoring of side effects; education and counselling; and discharge planning.

The criteria for discharge include the patient's stability, culture conversion to negative and a good support system for patients to ensure treatment compliance.

In 2008/09, the Department of Health encountered several challenges in the implementation of this policy. These included patient-based factors such as resistance to hospital admission by some patients with XDR-TB and MDR-TB; poor response to treatment, resulting in late conversion of patients; and treatment failures, such as patients not responding positively to treatment after one year.

Health-system factors included poor infection-control in some health facilities due to dated health infrastructure, and inadequate clinical skills among some health workers to manage patients with MDR-TB and XDR-TB.

The department implemented a diversity of interventions to overcome these constraints. Funding was provided to provinces to improve hospital infrastructure and enable the implementation of appropriate infection-control measures.

More than 6 000 health professionals were trained on the clinical management of TB, including XDR-TB and MDR-TB, as well as on infection-control measures.

New culture facilities (laboratories) were established by the NHLS in Limpopo and Mpumalanga and three additional facilities to conduct second-line drug-sensitivity tests for XDR-TB were created.

Community care and defaulter tracing were also improved. About 72 tracer teams were appointed to track TB defaulters, which contributed to discharge planning, and follow-up visits were conducted by health workers.

The key issue going forward is monitoring compliance with infection-control measures, particularly in cases where isolation at home would not be possible.

The department identified the reduction of mortality due to TB and associated diseases as a key priority, which is also consistent with MDG Six. The department aims to enhance the screening of TB patients with HIV. In 2009/10, 80% of TB patients were expected to be counselled and tested.

The quality of counselling will facilitate acceptance of testing. About 2 000 health professionals and 2 500 non-health professionals will be trained in TB management annually from 2009 to 2012. All patients presenting with MDR-TB and XDR-TB will be started on treatment.

Malaria

A 48% increase in the number of malaria cases was observed in 2008, compared to 2007. In 2007, 5 210 malaria cases were reported compared to 7 727 in 2008. About 44 malaria deaths were reported in 2008, compared to 48 in 2007, reflecting an 8% decrease.

However, the 10% target in the reduction of malaria cases was not met. South Africa contin-

ues to collaborate with neighbouring countries on malaria control.

A Trans-Limpopo Malaria Initiative meeting was held in Zimbabwe in August 2008.

An implementation plan for collaboration with the Democratic Republic of Congo around malaria control was also developed. Technical skills were also shared with Mozambique and Swaziland through the Lubombo Spatial Development Initiative.

The current malaria-control targets were expected to be sustained in 2009/10. These include maintaining a malaria case fatality rate of not more than 0,5%; sharing technical skills in malaria control with four countries, namely Botswana, Mozambique, Swaziland and Zimbabwe; conducting a formal review of the malaria-control programme; and assessing national epidemic preparation and response in line with international health regulations.

Measles

No measles outbreaks occurred in the country in 2008. However, there was a measles outbreak in 2009, particularly in Gauteng.

Cholera

A source of concern nationally was the increase in the number of confirmed cholera cases across the country, with the highest number of cases and deaths reported in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and Gauteng respectively.

By February 2009, about 8 100 cases had been confirmed countrywide, with about 51 deaths.

The national case fatality rate was 0,63%. Joint intervention between the national and provincial departments of health, as well as other departments such as home affairs, defence and water affairs, assisted in curbing the impact of cholera.

About 22% of health workers responsible for environmental health and communicable diseases were trained to prevent and respond to food-borne diseases in 2008.

H1N1 Influenza

In 2009, the H1N1 Influenza pandemic hit South Africa. The pandemic started in Mexico and the United States of America in April 2009 and rapidly spread to 166 countries globally with a cumulative number of 174 913 laboratory-confirmed cases and 1 411 confirmed deaths by August 2009.

By September 2009, the number of confirmed cases in South Africa had risen to 5 841, with 27 deaths reported.

On 6 July, the WHO described the spread of the pandemic within affected countries and to new countries as inevitable and largely unstoppable. Fortunately though, they noted that the virus was largely mild and not virulent at all. The WHO recommended that countries should take steps to mitigate the impact on communities.

The Department of Heath took the following measures:

- Letters co-signed by the ministers of health, basic education and higher education and training were sent to all school principals, and rectors/principals of institutions of higher learning. These letters described the challenges and advised school principals on what action they needed to take.
- The Minister of Health also sent letters to leaders of all major faith groups, calling on religious leaders to share information on the virus with their congregations.
- Similar letters were also sent to organised labour and business, traditional healers, community development workers and social workers.
- The department also embarked on TV and radio campaigns to get the message across South Africa.
- Pamphlets and posters were distributed in local communities in local languages to create awareness.

Non-communicable diseases (NCDs)

A report on the National Burden of Disease (BoD), commissioned by the Department of Health, was completed in 2008/09.

The objectives of this report were to describe the pattern and distribution of diseases, disabilities and injuries seen in the public and private health facilities using the ICD10 classification system, and to describe the pattern and distribution of risk factors recorded for diseases, disabilities and deaths.

The report provided further evidence of the increasing contribution of NCDs to the BoD in South Africa. The report classified patients attending public health-sector facilities into broad groups of diagnosis.

Of the 1 486 089 sampled records of patients who attended PHC clinics in the public sector between 2002 and 2006, about 32,1% were found to have presented with NCDs. This was higher than the proportion of patients presenting with communicable diseases (24,2%) and those afflicted by injuries and trauma (11,4%).

The picture was slightly reversed when the records of hospital patients were reviewed, as 37,4% of patients were found to have presented with communicable diseases; 29,3% with NCDs; and 16,7% were affected by injuries and trauma. In summary, for both PHC clinic- and hospital-based patients, NCDs accounted for about 30% of broad patient diagnosis.

During 2008/09, the department implemented various measures to improve the management of NCDs. The department collaborated with five provinces, the Eastern Cape, Free State, Limpopo, North West and the Western Cape, to ensure that PHC facilities in these provinces adhered to national NCD-management guidelines.

Guidelines for the implementation of free healthcare for people with disabilities were also disseminated in all provinces.

The Department of Health continued implementing interventions to curb the impact of NCDs in 2009/10. Primary focus will be on diabetes and hypertension as proxy conditions, but effort will also be devoted to other chronic conditions.

The Diabetes Strategy is expected to be implemented jointly with other departments in the Government's Social Cluster.

The goals of the strategy include preventing diabetes and related NCDs, ensuring early diagnosis, improving quality of life of people living with diabetes, reducing morbidity and premature mortality and promoting research into NCDs.

The department will also implement the Long-Term Care Service Model to improve the management of NCDs in 35 districts in 2010/11.

To improve cancer reporting and provision of services, cancer-registration regulations were expected to be promulgated in 2009/10.

Mental healthcare services will also be improved, with a particular emphasis on the reduction of harmful use of alcohol. The national strategy to reduce the harmful use of alcohol will be implemented incrementally, starting with three provinces in 2009/10, and covering all nine provinces by March 2011/12.

Government introduced free health services for people with disabilities. Beneficiaries include people with permanent, moderate or severe disabilities and those who have been diagnosed with chronic irreversible psychiatric disabilities.

Frail older people and long-term institutionalised state-subsidised patients also qualify for these free services.

People with temporary disabilities or a chronic illness that do not cause a substantial loss of functional ability, and people with disabilities who are employed and/or covered by relevant health insurance, are not entitled to these free services.

Beneficiaries receive all in- and out-patient hospital services free of charge. Specialist medical interventions for the prevention, cure, correction or rehabilitation of a disability are provided, subject to motivation from the treating specialist and approval by a committee appointed by the Minister of Health.

All assistive devices for the prevention of complications, and cure or rehabilitation of a disability, are provided. These include orthotics and prosthetics, wheelchairs and walking aids, hearing aids, spectacles and intra-ocular lenses. The Department of Health is responsible for maintaining and replacing these devices.

By the end of December 2008, the waiting period for a wheelchair in all nine provinces was eight weeks or more. During 2009/10, the department aimed to continue working with provinces to further reduce this waiting period.

Public-sector hospitals have been made more accessible to people with disabilities. Guidelines on the implementation of the National Rehabilitation Policy have been finalised, and the revision of the price list for orthotic prosthetic devices completed.

In supporting the health needs of the elderly, the department's policy is to keep the elderly in the community with their families as long as possible.

The department continues to develop national policy guidelines on the management and control of priority diseases or conditions of older persons, to improve their quality of life and access to healthcare services.

These include developing exercise posters and pamphlets, and guidelines that focus specifically on older persons, for example, national guidelines on falls in older persons, guidelines on active ageing, guidelines on stroke and transient ischemic attacks and national guidelines on osteoporosis.

Healthy lifestyles

During 2008/09, the department focused on three key areas of promoting healthy lifestyles, namely health-promoting schools, healthy nutrition and tobacco control, working in unison with other government departments such as the Department of Basic Education.

Health-promoting school guidelines were finalised and disseminated, and workshops on the implementation of the guidelines were conducted in the provinces.

This is consistent with the 2008/09 target. By the end of 2008/09, 4 100 schools were expected to become health-promoting schools. Food gardens were also established in 1 266 clinics.

National legislation to reduce tobacco use was implemented.

All health facilities, including private-sector health institutions (100%) are smoke-free areas. Tobacco-control policies were also implemented in schools, targeting the youth.

The department also used local media to communicate with the public on a diversity of health issues. Health messages focusing on breast, cervical and prostate cancer, mental health, World No Tobacco Day, World Health Day and the launch of two new child vaccines were covered in the print media.

Nutrition

During 2008/09, joint efforts of government departments to eradicate malnutrition among South African children, especially those under five years of age, continued to yield significant milestones.

The *Development Indicators, 2009*, published by The Presidency, indicated that severe malnutrition among children under five years of age decreased from 29 176 in 2006 to 26 373 in 2008.

About 78% of children aged 12 to 59 months were reached during the *Vitamin A* Campaign in September 2008. The 2008/09 targets were to provide Vitamin A supplementation to 100% of children aged six to 11 months; 35,7% of children aged 12 to 59 months; and 75% of post-partum mothers.

A total of 610 000 eligible people living with HIV, AIDS and TB received nutritional supplements, which exceeded the set target of 500 000.

During 2009/10, the Department of Health continued to improve the micronutrient status of children, women and the general population.

In 2009/10, 50% of children aged 12 to 60 months will be receiving two doses of Vitamin A. This figure is expected to increase to 80% by 2011/12.

The department aims to support all hospitals in the 18 priority districts (169 hospitals) to implement the WHO's 10 Steps to the Management of Severe Malnutrition.

The Department of Health plans to develop and implement the Integrated Food Production Strategy in collaboration with the departments of agriculture, forestry and fisheries; and of basic education. This will be implemented in 18 priority districts in 2009/10, and will cover 25 districts by the end of the MTEF period.

Improving access to safe and affordable medicines

In 2009, the Department of Health continued with its efforts to improve access to safe and affordable medicines. The PHC Essential Drug List (EDL) and Standard Treatment Guidelines 2003 were reviewed to ensure their continued utility in PHC service delivery. The *EDL Book for Quaternary Services* was also reviewed.

A few challenges were experienced with drug supply in the first few months of 2008/09, but these were successfully resolved. With regard to TB drugs, the two contracted suppliers for Streptomycin, which are the sole suppliers of the registered product in South Africa, were unable to supply. However, the product was sourced internationally and successfully brought into the country through a Section 21 permit.

Moving into the 2009/10 MTEF period, the department aims to maintain a 0% stock-out rate of ARV medicines on tender (45 items) in all nine provinces. The department aims to ensure a 0% stock-out rate of TB drugs on tender (35 items) in all nine provinces. The Department of Health also aims to implement the Drug-Supply Management Information System to improve the monitoring of drug availability.

The process is expected to start with four provinces participating, with at least seven provinces using the system by the end of 2011/12.

Progress was also made with the licensing of pharmacies and dispensers that met the requirements.

A policy on African traditional medicine was published in the *Government Gazette* for public comments before 31 October 2008. The Research Colloquium on African Traditional Medicine was convened in September 2008.

During 2008/09, the Department of Health completed a benchmarking exercise that compared the prices of medicines and pharmaceutical products in South Africa against countries such as Australia, Canada, New Zealand and Spain, which have a similar regulatory framework for medicines. The principle of the benchmarking exercise was that South Africans should not pay more for medicines than citizens of countries with similar features. Based on the benchmarking results, the Medicine Pricing Committee finalised and submitted its recommendations on medicine prices to the minister in 2008.

The recommendations were published in the *Government Gazette* in August 2008, with a time frame of 30 days provided for stakeholders to respond. Implementation of these recommendations would potentially reduce medicine prices by 30%, resulting in a net saving of about R3 billion.

However, this process has several challenges, including resistance from the pharmaceutical industry. A process of resolving this was underway and was expected to be completed in 2009/10.

The efforts to reduce the prices of medicines are consistent with MDG Eight, which urges nations of the world to develop a global partnership for development. Target 17 of this goal implores countries to work in cooperation with pharmaceutical companies to provide access to affordable drugs in developing countries.

In 2009, the department was in the process of establishing the SAHPRA. The purpose of the SAHPRA is to improve the efficiency of medicines' regulatory processes and reduce the long timelines for the registration of medicines. Under the SAHPRA, the department will regulate, among other things, complementary medicines, which are not well regulated and pose a serious public health risk.

It is the department's intention to regulate medical devices, in vitro medical diagnostic products, food with medical claims as well as African traditional medicines under the SAHPRA.

Toxicological aspects related to animal medicine residues will also be strengthened.

Health information, epidemiology, evaluation and research

Data comprehensiveness and reliability have improved steadily over recent years. Health information is being used across all provinces for management, developing various health plans and monitoring their implementation.

However, the use of information varies across the 52 districts. In the 2009/10 MTEF period, the department was expected to migrate from the existing system of manual submission of data from the DHIS by health facilities, to an electronic submission system. About 80% of facilities will be using this system by March 2012. Phase One of the Electronic Health Record for South Africa will also be implemented.

A national mid-term review of the Comprehensive Plan for HIV and AIDS was produced and disseminated. Monitoring of the Comprehensive Plan for HIV and AIDS was strengthened, with all nine provincial datasets being available. Continuous capacity-building sessions continued to improve data quality and reporting.

In 2009/10, the department was expected to commence with the development of the country's 2008/09 report to the United Nations (UN) Assembly Session on AIDS. Consultation, data collation and production of the report will be completed.

A preliminary report on the BoD survey, commissioned by the department, was completed and shared with provincial departments of health. Furthermore, to harness the efforts of all provinces conducting BoD studies, a national BoD workshop was held in July 2008. The final report on the BoD survey will be presented to the Technical Committee of the National Health Council.

In 2008/09, Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) agreed on a joint process of improving the quality of health information. Health-sector officials participated in data-quality assessment workshops conducted by Stats SA.

A link to the DHIS dataset was also created for Stats SA. Furthermore, officials from Stats SA participated in capacity-building sessions for monitoring and evaluation officers responsible for tracking progress of the Comprehensive Plan for HIV and AIDS. This collaboration will continue over the next MTEF period, and will assist to generate reliable data for health-service planning and monitoring.

Improving quality of care

During 2008/09, the Department of Health began to develop and implement a quality-assurance programme, focusing on the functioning of individual health facilities.

A policy framework for establishing national core standards for health facilities and a system for ensuring compliance were developed.

The department published the National Core Standards in April 2008, which covered seven domains, namely patient safety, clinical care, governance and management, patient experience of care, access to care, infrastructure and environment, and public health.

Appraisals of 27 priority hospitals were conducted by national teams between June and August 2008, and the results informed the development of the health-facility improvement plans of each hospital. By the end of September 2008, facility-improvement plans had been developed for 25 hospitals.

Supportive facilitation was provided to these facilities by the national and provincial departments of health as well as health districts.

The nature of the support provided aimed at assisting facilities to focus on achieving results to turn around specific problems in the short term, thus building their capacity to improve quality in the long term.

Many public health-sector institutions assessed during this process were found to be performing well. However, communication of their best practices was limited and needed expansion.

Key constraints identified included patient waiting times, referral pathways and management, maintenance of facilities and utilities, communication of best practices, medical-waste management, implementation of infection prevention and control policies and lack of formal systems to measure and prevent adverse events.

These are expected to be addressed over the 2009/10 MTEF period. The provincial departments of health continue to provide support and increase the number of facilities involved in this quality-assurance initiative. The national department continues to improve leadership, planning, standard-setting and monitoring.

The National Colloquium on Quality was held in November 2008 with stakeholders from all sectors of the health services, both private and public sectors as well as regulatory bodies, professional associations, organised labour, academics and non-governmental organisations (NGOs).

As an outcome of this colloquium, a concerted move towards the National Quality-Improvement Programme and the institutional arrangements aimed at underpinning its implementation was expected to be realised in 2009/10.

Initial concrete steps are expected to be achieving consensus across the health system on standards and indicators for quality and building the contributions of all partners into short- and medium-term action plans to improve quality through quality-improvement projects.

Over the next planning cycle, the Department of Health aims to produce national organisational standards, norms and clinical guidelines. By the end of March 2010, the department would have benchmarked the performance of 54 facilities (out of 4 029) in the public and private sectors against the set of national standards. By the end of the MTEF period, 1 610 facilities would have been benchmarked.

About 100 public-sector facilities are expected to be supported to implement quality-improvement projects, including infection-prevention and -control plans by March 2010.

By the end of the MTEF period, 1 500 public-sector facilities would have produced these plans.

The Department of Health aims to establish a system of call centres to ensure that patients and users of healthcare services have access and are able to raise their concerns. This will also enhance capacity for independent review by means of an ombudsperson.

Human resources

Steady progress was made with the introduction of various categories of mid-level workers in 2008/09. A total of 23 students were enrolled at the Walter Sisulu University in the Eastern Cape in January 2008 for the Clinical Associates Programme.

Key milestones were also achieved in the planning process for the implementation of the Clinical Associate Programme at the University of Pretoria and the University of the Witwatersrand in 2009. The target was to enrol 36 students nationwide as part of the first pilot programme.

Three provincial colleges for EMS and the South African Military Health Services implemented the Emergency Medical Technician Programme. A draft scope of practice for these technicians was produced.

The scope of practice and qualifications for radiography technicians were reviewed in 2008/09. The Pharmacist Technician Scope of Practice was also completed. The department also initiated negotiations with the HPCSA regarding the approval of forensic-pathology officer qualifications.

The department reviewed the implementation of the Community Caregiver (CCG) Policy by provinces through visits and national workshops. By the end of 2008/09, the existing CCG Framework was expected to have been revised.

The allocation of newly qualified health professionals for community service was also completed for doctors, pharmacists, dentists and allied health professionals.

An impact assessment of the South Africa-Cuban Medical Training Programme was also completed and a report produced.

To strengthen oversight of health professionals, the South African Dental Technicians Council and the SANC were inaugurated by the Minister of Health on 27 June 2008 and 10 July 2008, respectively.

During 2008/09, the department continued with the implementation of the Occupation Specific Dispensation (OSD). Discrepancies in the implementation of this policy were identified in collaboration with the provincial departments of health, which in many instances consisted of

The Port Health Service is responsible for the prevention of quarantinable diseases in the country as determined by the International Health Regulations Act, 1974 (Act 28 of 1974). These services are rendered at sanitary airports (OR Tambo, Cape Town and Durban international airports) and approved ports. An aircraft entering South Africa from an epidemic yellow-fever area must make its first landing at a sanitary airport. Passengers travelling from such areas must be in possession of valid yellow-fever vaccination certificates.

Every aircraft or ship on an international voyage must also obtain a pratique from a port health officer upon entering South Africa.

overpayment of nurses. The Office of the Auditor-General assisted in this process by conducting audits of the implementation of the OSD. In 2009/10, the department aimed to continue working with provinces to monitor the outcome of the OSD.

Regular reports will be submitted to the technical and policy committees of the National Health Council on outcomes of audits to inform decision-making regarding the recovery of over-remuneration.

Another key priority for the 2009 to 2012 planning cycle is the implementation of the OSD for doctors, dentists, pharmacists and EMS personnel.

International relations

During 2008/09, the Department of Health strengthened its bilateral, trilateral and multilateral relations with numerous African countries, including Namibia, Cameroon, Guinea Bissau, Mali, Malawi and Zambia.

In June 2008, a surgical team from South Africa visited Namibia and conducted nine open-heart surgical procedures at Windhoek Central Hospital, which were the first of their kind. South Africa signed the Agreement on Health Matters with Namibia in August 2008 in Windhoek. With the support of medical specialists from South Africa, the Namibian Cardiac Unit at Windhoek Central Hospital was officially opened in August 2008.

A team of Namibian experts also participated in an MDR-TB and XDR-TB workshop in South Africa in September 2008.

South Africa also signed the Agreement on Health Matters with Cameroon in September 2008 during a WHO-Regional Office for Africa meeting in that country.

The Department of Health provided support to countries involved in post-conflict reconstruction. The Agreement on Health Matters between South Africa and Burundi was signed in September 2008 in Bujumbura, Burundi. A draft programme of action for the implementation of this agreement was also developed. An agreement with Sudan on health matters was finalised. The Department of Health, together with the SANC, visited the DRC in August 2008 to assist in establishing the Congo Nursing Council.

In September 2008, health officials from the DRC participated in workshops in South Africa, focusing on diverse health issues, including maternal; women; child's health and nutrition; management of MDR-TB and XDR-TB; the establishment of national core standards for health facilities; and malaria control.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Budget Vote, 2009
Development Indicators, 2009
Medical Research Council
Estimates of National Expenditure 2009, published by National Treasury
Department of Health Budget Vote, 2009
National Health Laboratory Service
South African Nursing Council
South African Medical Research Council
South African Pharmacy Council
Sapa

www.gov.za
www.hasa.co.za
www.lovelife.org.za
www.nhls.ac.za
www.mrc.co.za
www.soulcity.org.za
www.health24.com
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.thetimes.co.za

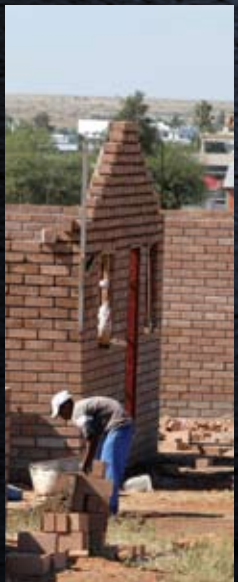
Suggested reading

Booysens, SW (ed). 2008. *Introduction to Health Services Management*. 3rd rev ed. Cape Town: Juta.
Brook, R. 2007. *More Than Eyes Can See: A Nine-Month Journey Through the AIDS Pandemic.* London: Marion Boyars.
Challenges. 2008. Pietermaritzburg: Cluster Publications.
Chirambo, K and Steyn, J. 2009. *AIDS and Local Government in South Africa: Examining the Impact of an Epidemic on Ward Councillors*. Pretoria: Institute for Democracy in Africa (Idasa).
Chirando, K. 2008. *The Political Cost of AIDS in Africa: An Overview.* Cape Town: Idasa.
Cullinan, K and Thom, A (eds). 2009. *The Virus, Vitamins and Vegetables: The South African HIV/AIDS Mystery.* Auckland Park: Jacana.
De Villiers, JC. 2008. *Healers, Helpers and Hospitals*. Pretoria: Protea Book House.
Deacon, H and Stephney, I. 2007. *HIV/AIDS Stigma and Children.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Flint, KE. 2008. *Healing Traditions: African Medicine, Cultural Exchange, and Competition in South Africa, 1820 – 1948*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Hassim, A, Heywood, M and Bergen, J. 2007. *Health and Democracy: A Guide to Human Rights, Health Law and Policy in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Tokai, Cape: Siberlink.
Hinga, TM *et al* (eds). 2007. *Women, Religion and HIV/AIDS in Africa: Responding to Ethical and Theological Challenges*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
HIV/AIDS, TB and Nutrition: Scientific Inquiry into the Nutritional Influences on Human Immunity with Special Reference to HIV Infection and Active TB in South Africa. Pretoria: Academy of Science of South Africa.
Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC). 2007. *Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health Research Programme. The Impact of and Responses to HIV/AIDS in the Private Security and Legal Services Industry in South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Isaacs, M and Hara, M. 2008. *Mainstreaming of HIV and AIDS into South African Fisheries Policy*. Bellville: Programme for Land and Agrarian Sudies.
Kalichman, SC. 2009. *Denying AIDS: Conspiracy Theories, Pseudoscience, and Human Tragedy.* New York: Copernicus Books.
Lawson, L. 2008. *Side Effects: The Story of AIDS in South Africa*. Cape Town: Double Storey.
Natrass, N. 2007. *Mortal Combat: AIDS Denialism and the Struggle for Antiretrovirals in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Obi, CL *et al*. 2007. *Molecular Relatedness of Enteric Pathogens Isolated from Water Resources and HIV/AIDS Patients with Diarrhoea in Rural Communities in the Limpopo and Eastern Cape Provinces.* Gezina: Water Research Commission.
Oppenheimer, GM and Bayer, R. 2007. *Shattered Dreams? An Oral History of the South African AIDS Epidemic*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
Pendleton, W, Crush, J and Lefko-Everett, K. 2007. *Haemorrhage of Health Professionals from South Africa*. Cape Town.

Simbayi, LC *et al*. 2007. *The Impact of and Response to HIV/AIDS in the Private Security and Legal Services Industry in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC.
Steinberg, J. 2008. *Three-Letter Plague: A Young Man's Journey Through a Great Epidemic.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Thornton, RJ. 2008. *Unimagined Community: Sex, Networks, and AIDS in Uganda and South Africa*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
Youde, JR. 2007. *AIDS, South Africa, and the Politics of Knowledge*. Aldershot, UK: Ashgate.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

HUMAN SETTLEMENTS



Supplying housing is interrelated with social and economic dynamics, which are fundamental to maintaining a person's livelihood. It is also an expression of the Government's resolve to rid the country of poverty and to achieve a better life for all.

Following the appointment of a new administration in May 2009, the Department of Housing's name was changed to the Department of Human Settlements. The aim is to transform the country's residential areas and build communities with closer access to work and social amenities, including sports and recreational facilities. Government aims to speed up delivery of housing for the poor and have all South Africans accommodated in formally planned settlements by 2014. The Department of Human Settlements determines, finances, promotes, coordinates, communicates and monitors the implementation of policy for housing and human settlement.

By the end of March 2009, government had provided 2,8 million houses, giving shelter to more than 13,5 million people, free of charge.

In 2008, the then Department of Housing concluded four memoranda of understanding with external stakeholders:

- Intersite, to facilitate access to certain land parcels
- the Development Bank of Southern Africa, for programme and implementation-capacity support
- Anglo Platinum, for integrated human-settlement development around large mining operations
- the former Umsobomvu Youth Fund, for youth service in housing development.

Despite many challenges, there is strong collaboration between government and financial institutions. Over R40,5 billion has been released for financing housing development and/or ownership.

Within the context of a government-wide review of the development finance institutions, the transformation of the National Housing Finance Corporation (NHFC) and the increase in lending to lower-income groups are being implemented.

On the introduction of measures to ensure affordable and sustainable home ownership, by March 2009, well over 100 000 units had been planned in mixed-income and multiple-use projects. By March 2009, the subsidy voucher system for building material in rural areas, to support the self-build initiative, had been completed pending a policy decision and was due for implementation in 2009.

Expenditure on housing service delivery increased by 23% to R10,9 billion in the 2008/09 financial year.

Funds allocated to national pilot projects for the 2009/10 financial year included R400 million for the N2 Gateway, R120 million for the Zanemvula Housing Project and R150 million for disaster relief in KwaZulu-Natal.

By June 2009, nationally, over 570 housing projects had been approved and a housing grant of R12,4 billion was allocated for the 2009/10 financial year for expenditure on the construction of 226 000 new housing units across all nine provinces.

The homes being built are of a larger size and better quality, with more houses of 40 to 45 square metres (m^2) being constructed.

Sustainable human settlements

Cabinet approved the Comprehensive Housing Plan for the Development of Integrated Sustainable Human Settlements (Breaking New Ground [BNG]) that aims, among other things, to eradicate informal settlements in South Africa in the shortest possible time.

The plan provides for programmes that promote the development of the entire residential property market, including the development of low-cost housing, medium-density accommodation and rental housing; stronger partnerships with the private sector; social infrastructure; and amenities.

The plan aims to change spatial settlement patterns by building spatially, economically and socially integrated human settlements.

The Comprehensive Housing Plan is being implemented through informal settlement-upgrading pilot projects in each province, which will improve the living conditions of 103 000 households. The informal-settlement upgrading projects provide for phased, area-based development and emphasise community participation and social and economic development as an integral part of housing projects. The goal of upgrading all informal settlements by 2014/15 is aligned to the United Nations millennium development goals to improve the lives of 100 million slum dwellers worldwide.

The plan's strategic focus includes ensuring the delivery of affordable housing in sustainable and habitable settlements. Its strategic priorities are to:

- accelerate housing delivery
- improve the quality of housing products and environments to ensure asset creation
- ensure a single, efficient formal housing market
- restructure and integrate human settlements.

Key focus areas identified by the Comprehensive Housing Plan include:

- accelerating housing delivery as a key strategy for poverty alleviation
- using housing provision as a major job-creation strategy
- ensuring that property can be accessed by all as an asset for wealth creation and empowerment
- leveraging growth in the economy, combating crime and promoting social cohesion
- using housing development to break down barriers between the First-Economy residential property boom and the Second-Economy slump
- using housing as an instrument for the development of sustainable human settlements in support of spatial restructuring
- diversifying housing products by emphasising rental stock.

As part of the housing programme, government provides a 40-m^2 house with two bedrooms, a kitchen, lounge and separate bathroom to qualifying households earning from R0 to R3 500 a month. The focus on security of tenure aims to encourage poor households to invest resources in housing and build an asset.

The department developed and launched a number of instruments to guide the implementation of the Comprehensive Plan for Sustainable Human Settlements in all three spheres of government. These include the monitoring, evaluation and impact-assessment policy and implementation guidelines, and the operating system for the policy and guidelines. The department has also initiated a project-monitoring process to measure the performance of provincial housing departments against targets set in their business plans, to identify constraints and assist with addressing them swiftly.

The Women in Housing Indaba, which is held every year in August, aims to encourage more women to participate in the construction industry. The 2009 indaba looked at opportunities for women in the building of sustainable human settlements by investigating initiatives undertaken by the Department of Human Settlements.

The indaba, under the theme *Entrenching Women's Participation in Housing Delivery,* provided a platform for women in housing to share experiences and to network. The indaba addresses the role of women in housing-delivery processes and in construction, while training and skills and enterprise development were other key focus areas.

Legislation, policy and initiatives

The Department of Human Settlements has several legislative proposals in the pipeline to accelerate the achievement of ideal human settlements for the people and strengthen the legal environment. These include:

- Amendments to the Housing Act, 1997 (Act 107 of 1997), to align it to the ethos and principles that underpin the creation of sustainable human settlements.
- The Sectional Titles Management Bill, to deal with the management and administration of sectional titles schemes.
- The Community Scheme Ombud Service legislation, to establish a dispute-resolution mechanism for all community housing schemes.
- The Land Use Management Bill that is being piloted by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform.
- Tabling a new National Housing Code, which is required in terms of the Housing Act, 1997. The 2009 code was approved by MinMec in February 2009.

Housing Act, 1997

The Housing Act, 1997 provides for, among other things, facilitating a sustainable housing-development process and for this purpose lays down general principles applicable to housing development in all spheres of government; defining the functions of national, provincial and local government in respect of housing development; provides for the establishment of the South African Housing Development Board; the continued existence of provincial boards under the name of provincial housing development boards; and financing national housing programmes.

Section Two of the Housing Act, 1997 compels all three spheres of government to, among other things, give priority to the needs of the poor in respect of housing development.

Inclusionary Housing Policy

Private-sector developers, in collaboration with financial institutions, have undertaken several inclusionary housing initiatives.

These include housing projects in Bertrams, Johannesburg; Olievenhoutbosch, Pretoria; Cosmo City in Johannesburg; Hlanganani, Springs; and Blythedale, outside Durban.

Multiple housing projects that are designed as mixed-income housing developments serve to ensure cross-subsidisation and achieve inclusionary housing objectives.

Housing Development Agency (HDA)

The HDA Act, 2008 (Act 23 of 2008), provides for the establishment of the HDA as a statutory body to ensure that the delivery of housing is facilitated. The HDA was launched in March 2009. The objectives of the HDA are to:

- identify, acquire, hold, develop and release state, communal and privately owned land for residential and community purposes and for the creation of sustainable human settlements
- project manage housing-development services for the purposes of creating sustainable human settlements
- monitor centrally coordinated planning and budgeting of all infrastructure required for housing development
- monitor the provision of all infrastructure required for housing development.

The HDA will also assist in cutting red tape that prohibits the acquisition of suitable land, as well as in the approval of development both by government and the private sector.

The provincial housing departments will be responsible for assisting local authorities in developing their land needs assessments and in coordinating individual municipal submissions into a provincial plan.

The agency is also expected to assist municipalities and provinces with the rapid release of land and landed property, which will fast-track housing delivery in a way that supplements government capacity. The rapid release of land is key to the implementation of the BNG Programme and will improve the efficient location of human settlements. The housing institutions, Servcon and Thubelisha, will be integrated into the agency.

Housing delivery, 2008/09 financial year

Eastern Cape	20 180
Free State	14 667
Gauteng	80 469
KwaZulu-Natal	36 068
Limpopo	16 686
Mpumalanga	17 626
Northern Cape	4 914
North West	15 912
Western Cape	31 011
Total	**239 533**

Source: Department of Human Settlements

Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act 50 of 1999)

The Rental Housing Act, 1999 defines the responsibility of government in respect of the rental housing market. It creates mechanisms to promote the provision of rental housing property and promotes access to adequate housing through creating mechanisms to ensure proper functioning of the rental housing market.

It furthermore provides for the establishment of rental housing tribunals; defines the functions, powers and duties of such tribunals; and lays down general principles governing conflict resolution in the rental housing sector. The Act provides for the facilitation of sound relations between the tenants and the landlords and for this purpose lays down general requirements relating to leases. It repeals the Rent Control Act, 1976 (Act 80 of 1976), and provides for matters connected therewith.

Among other things, the Act prescribes that:

- Leases may be oral or in writing. Tenants can demand a written lease.
- The landlord must give the tenant a written receipt for all payments received by the landlord from the tenant.
- The landlord may require that the tenant pay a deposit before moving in.
- The balance of deposit and interest must be refunded to the tenant by the landlord not later than 21 days after the expiry of the lease.

The Act gives tribunals the power to make rulings, which are deemed to be rulings of a magistrate's court in terms of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1993 (Act 120 of 1993), and which are enforced in terms of the Act.

The Rental Housing Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 43 of 2007), was approved by Cabinet to, among other things, amend the Rental Housing Act, 1999 to make further provision for rulings by rental-housing tribunals, to expand the provisions pertaining to leases and to extend the period

allowed for the filling of vacancies in rental-housing tribunals.

Rental housing for the poor

About 1,8 million South African households in the middle- to lower-income groups live in rented accommodation, as opposed to about 5,2 million households that own property. There has been an improvement in the incomes of the poorest, rising from R783 per month in 1993 to R1 041 per month in 2008. *(Development Indicators, 2009)*

Nationally, 71,14% of households rent accommodation, and 71,76% of people renting in metropolitan areas live in formal structures. Black households comprise the largest percentage of renters, followed by coloured households.

The demand for rental housing nationally is expected to increase substantially in the middle- to lower-income groups.

The Department of Human Settlements aims to address this demand by means of various options.

The department has formulated an affordable rental-housing programme for people in the low-income bracket who may live in housing stock arising out of:

- provision made by previous departments
- public-sector hostels for housing migratory labour in the previous dispensation
- municipal rental stock, which has not been transferred to the households who inhabit the units, and which will continue to be used as rental accommodation because of the low economic status of the households
- new high-rise housing stock that will be built for the specific purpose of accommodating low-income households in rental accommodation.

Policy exists that will allow for the increased allocation of housing units to ex-combatants for Truth and Reconciliation Commission reparations, on a preferential basis. Over the next few years, an average of 30% of subsidised units are expected to be allocated to this target group.

Social Housing Act, 2008 (Act 16 of 2008)

The Social Housing Act, 2008 aims to establish and promote a sustainable social housing environment. It defines the functions of the national, provincial and local spheres of government in respect of social housing. It provides for the establishment of the Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA) to regulate all social housing institutions obtaining or having obtained public funds and it allows for the undertaking of approved projects by other delivery agents with the benefit of public money. It furthermore gives statutory recognition to social housing institutions and provides for matters connected therewith.

Over the years, the social housing sector has grown, and has been the beneficiary of significant funding from government. It is, however, characterised by a patchwork of policies, findings and institutions that neither supports the growth of the sector nor allows for proper regulation and monitoring of funding and policy. For these reasons, the Department of Human Settlements has taken steps to assist the governance and regulatory processes through the promulgation of the Social Housing Act, 2008 and the establishment of the SHRA, all framed by the approved Social Housing Policy.

The objectives of the Social Housing Act, 2008 are to establish and consolidate general definitions and principles, which can then be recognised as the authoritative guidelines for the sector as a whole.

The Act also provides for the recognition and accreditation of social housing institutions. In providing for specific functions and responsibilities for the three tiers of government, the Act requires the national Government to, among others things, create the kind of legislative, regulatory, financial and policy frameworks that will enable the sector to grow. Provincial governments are given responsibilities to, among other things, approve, allocate and administer capital grants, as well as to administer the social housing programme and, for this purpose, approve any projects in respect thereof.

Local governments are required to ensure access to land, municipal infrastructure and services for approved projects in designated restructuring zones. Local governments are furthermore responsible to initiate the identification of these restructuring zones.

The Act's major purpose is the establishment of the SHRA, the body that in accordance with the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), will, among other things, be responsible for accrediting social housing institutions, administer and disburse capital and institutional grants as well as conduct compliance monitoring to norms and standards through regular inspections.

It will have powers to intervene in the affairs of social housing institutions, to resolve maladministration issues and take remedial steps where necessary.

N2 Gateway Project

The project entails the transformation of the informal settlements along the N2 outside Cape Town. This is the biggest housing project ever undertaken.

Government is piloting the integration of communities and different income groups, auditing and updating the database of housing needs to ensure the list and choice of beneficiaries is credible, building human settlements with basic economic and social amenities and pursuing a new way of intergovernmental relations.

The project will see the development of about 30 000 dwellings at sites along a 30-km stretch of the N2, from District Six to Joe Slovo, Netreg, New Rest and Boys Town to Delft.

Community Residential Unit (CRU) Programme

The CRU Programme aims to facilitate the provision of secure, stable rental tenure for lower-income people. The programme, which was approved by the Housing MinMec, provides a coherent framework for dealing with the many different forms of existing public-sector residential accommodation.

The CRU Programme targets low-income persons and households earning below R3 500 a month, who are not able to be accommodated in the formal private rental and social housing market. The programme seeks to support the development of affordable rental stock.

Capacity-building

One of the major constraints in housing delivery is the lack of capacity, in terms of an efficient workforce and the installation of appropriate technology, equipment and systems for monitoring, evaluation and reporting purposes.

The Department of Human Settlements continues to assist provinces in ensuring effective and efficient implementation of the National Housing Programme. The strategy and guidelines for housing capacity-building, as well as guidelines for provincial housing-capacity business plans, have been developed.

The Department of Human Settlements has undertaken several initiatives to support small enterprises within housing and to promote Black Economic Empowerment and gender mainstreaming.

Based on extensive consultation with stakeholders in the construction and housing industry, the department has developed a framework for emerging contractor support that has resulted in a support programme that focuses initially on training emerging contractors.

Emergency housing

The National Housing Programme for Housing

The South African Housing Subsidy Scheme quantum amounts for the period 2008/09 in respect of a 40-m² house

Individual subsidies	Top structure funding only	Own contribution	Product price
R0 - R1 500 R1 051 - R3 500	R43 506 R41 027	None R2 479	R43 506 R43 506
Indigent: aged, disabled and health-stricken R0 - R3 500	R43 506	None	R43 506
Institutional subsidies			
R0 - R3 500	R41 027	Institution must add capital	At least R43 506
Consolidation subsidies			
R0 - R1 500 R1 501 - R3 500	R43 506 R41 027	None R2 479	R43 506 R43 506
Indigent: aged, disabled and health-stricken R0 - R3 500	R43 506	None	R43 506
Rural subsidies			
R0 - R3 500	R43 506	None	R43 506
People's Housing Process			
R0 - R3 500	R43 506	None	R43 506

Source: Department of Human Settlements

Assistance in Emergency Housing Circumstances was instituted in terms of the Housing Act, 1997.

The amendment relates to the provision of the Constitution that everyone has the right to access adequate housing, and that the State must take reasonable legislative and other measures as permitted by available resources to achieve the progressive realisation of this right.

The main objective of this programme is to provide temporary housing relief to people in urban and rural areas who find themselves in emergency situations, such as when:

- their existing shelters have been destroyed or damaged
- their prevailing situation poses an immediate threat to their lives, health and safety
- they have been evicted or face the threat of eviction.

Assistance involves prioritising funds from the provincial housing allocations to municipalities to accelerate land development, and the provision of basic municipal engineering services and temporary shelter.

An additional R150 million had been allocated in 2009/10 for the housing disaster-relief grant to KwaZulu-Natal. This was for rehabilitating and constructing houses and related infrastructure that were damaged by storms in November 2008.

Housing subsidies

New housing-subsidy programmes are being developed and certain existing programmes have been enhanced, including rental and social housing subsidies. The housing-subsidy programmes have been revised and incorporated in the Housing Code, which aims to provide more flexibility to allow for local and project-specific needs.

Integrated Residential Development Programme

This housing-subsidy mechanism replaces the project-linked subsidy mechanism and enables the development of projects that provide a mix of income groups and land uses. The new programme aims to encourage the development of integrated settlements, which are socially, economically and environmentally sustainable.

Individual subsidies

An individual subsidy provides qualifying beneficiaries with access to housing subsidies to acquire ownership of improved residential properties (stand or house) or to acquire a house-building contract that is not part of approved housing-subsidy projects. The latter option is only available to beneficiaries who will access housing credit.

Consolidation subsidies

This subsidy mechanism affords former beneficiaries of serviced stands, financed by the previous housing dispensation (including the Independent Development Trust's site and service schemes), the opportunity to acquire houses.

Institutional subsidies

Institutional subsidies are available to qualifying housing institutions. The subsidy is paid to approved institutions to provide subsidised housing on deed of sale, rental or rent-to-buy options, on condition that the beneficiaries may not be compelled to pay the full purchase price and to take transfer within the first four years of receiving the subsidy.

Institutions must also invest capital from their own resources in the project.

Project-linked subsidy

This mechanism enables a qualifying household to access a complete residential unit, which is developed within an approved linked housing subsidy project for ownership by the beneficiary.

Subsidy for people with disabilities

People with disabilities who qualify for a housing subsidy will receive additional amounts to improve their houses with special additions such as paving and ramps to their doors, grab rails in bathrooms, and visible door bells for the deaf.

In November 2009, the National Housing Audit, headed by the Special Investigations Unit (SIU), was instituted to address corrupt contractors and officials who build substandard houses for the poor. In the Northern and Eastern Cape alone, 3 000 houses would have to be destroyed as a result of shoddy and corrupt workmanship. Those found guilty would face civil or criminal action. For those found within government ranks, suspension with pay was not an option. Unscrupulous subcontractors and service-providers would be blacklisted.

By November 2009, some R20 million had already been recovered by the SIU after 800 government officials had been found to be unlawful beneficiaries of housing subsidies. A total of 120 of these were municipal employees who had been arrested. More than R12 billion of the funds allocated to the department in the medium term budget would be spent on housing delivery.

Discount Benefit Scheme

The Discount Benefit Scheme promotes home ownership among tenants of state-financed rental stock, including formal housing and serviced sites.

Tenants receive a maximum discount of up to R7 500 on the selling price of the property. Where the discount amount equals or exceeds the purchase price or loan balance, the property is transferred free of any further capital charges.

Rural subsidies

These housing subsidies are available to beneficiaries who enjoy only functional tenure rights to the land they occupy. This land belongs to the State and is governed by traditional authorities.

These subsidies are only available on a project basis and beneficiaries are supported by implementing agents.

Beneficiaries also have the right to decide on how to use their subsidies, either for service provision, for the building of houses, or for a combination of these.

People's Housing Process (PHP)

The PHP is a government housing-delivery mechanism that supports households who wish to enhance their subsidies by building their own homes or organising between themselves the building of their homes. The process allows beneficiaries to establish a housing-support organisation that will provide them with organisational, technical and administrative assistance.

The assistance includes training and guidance to the beneficiaries to build their own homes. The subsidy is available to beneficiaries enjoying functional tenure rights to the land they occupy. The land is normally in rural areas and belongs to the State and is given by the State and the authorities.

In April 2009, a R98,3-million housing development project was launched in Jouberton in the North West. Houses built by the Masizakhe PHP as part of the Masizakhe Women's Group's 10 years' anniversary celebrations, were also handed over. The group was awarded the Best Performing Women in Housing Award during the 2008 Provincial Govan Mbeki Inaugural Housing Awards.

Human-settlement planning

The emphasis towards human-settlement planning is highlighted in the housing plan of 2004. A unit that focuses on this aspect was created in 2008 in the then Department of Housing.

In accordance with the Memorandum of Understanding signed by Anglo Platinum Limited and government, the construction of 1 000 houses for mineworkers started in April 2009.

The R190-million Phase Two of the Seraleng Integrated Housing-Settlement Development Project is part of a R2,4-billion investment towards integrated and vibrant human settlements.

This is part of 125 housing development projects to provide 79 325 housing units in the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality at a budgeted cost of R1,3 billion.

Anglo Platinum South Africa will spend more that R137 million towards land and services to benefit 20 000 households as part of its contribution to assist government to eradicate informal settlements by 2014. Government subsidies over 10 years will total over R87 million.

The mission and value proposition of the unit are the promotion of a non-racial, integrated society through the management and implementation of rigorous human-settlement development planning frameworks.

More specifically, its mission is to manage human-settlement development planning processes and support the implementation of human-settlement and housing-development planning frameworks. Furthermore, the unit adds value by acting as a catalyst and facilitator for housing-development planning in all spheres of government within the housing sector.

Services include:

- supporting provincial housing departments to develop multi-year housing-development plans
- supporting municipalities to develop housing chapters for their municipal integrated development plans
- reviewing the multi-year housing-development plans of provincial housing departments
- developing the national Human Settlements Plan
- maintaining the existing, and developing new housing planning instruments
- promoting the alignment of national sectoral planning.

Furthermore, the unit seeks to achieve its mission by engaging in the following strategic initiatives:

- enhancing and facilitating the involvement of provincial housing departments and municipalities in the development of housing
- providing training and capacity to provincial housing departments and municipalities on the drafting of housing-development plans

- regular engagements with relevant sector departments
- rationalising both the processes and products demanded by various sectors in different spheres of government.

Stakeholder management

Given the challenges of urban poverty, with a projected rise of 1,4 billion by 2020 from one billion slum dwellers, the private sector is a vital partner that must be engaged if the world's cities are to be achieved sustainably. A further challenge is to increase operations through new partnerships to address the daunting challenges of rapid urbanisation.

The Department of Human Settlements has been at the forefront in addressing this challenge in South Africa. In 2006, the Chief Directorate: Stakeholder Management was established. The unit's primary objective is to mobilise sector stakeholders to partner with government towards fast-tracking housing delivery.

The unit facilitates stakeholder engagement through various dialogue forums, which led to collaboration in the implementation of the Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery and Rural Housing Contract, Stakeholder Engagement, Women in Housing, Youth in Housing (YiH) and the Govan Mbeki Housing Awards.

In October 2009, in recognition of its efforts in providing decent shelter the Gauteng Provincial Government's Alexandra Renewal Project (ARP) was awarded the United Nations (UN) Scroll of Honour Award.

The ARP scooped the award at the World Habitat Day event held in Washington DC. With the award, the UN Habitat aims to acknowledge initiatives that have made outstanding contributions in various fields, such as shelter provision, highlighting the plight of the homeless, leadership in post-conflict reconstruction, and developing and improving the human settlements and the quality of urban life.

The ARP was launched in 2001 as an urban regeneration project that is aimed at reviving the social, economic and physical outlook of the township north of Johannesburg.

It was also aimed at building houses, fixing infrastructure and the Jukskei River, building parks, converting hostels into family units and changing the urban landscape of the township. The successful implementation of the project has improved the living conditions and human development potential within Alexandra.

People who have previously lived on the flood lines now have access to decent and habitable shelter in the form of new housing-development initiatives. Residents have found employment on the ARP-related construction sites, while others have established small businesses in the area.

The project's key achievements lies in the innovation shown in improving the lives of existing residents, despite a range of technical, social and political difficulties they confront on a daily basis.

This award was launched by the UN Settlements Programme in 1989 and is the most prestigious human settlements award in the world.

Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery

The Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery was signed in September 2005 during the Housing Indaba in Cape Town. The contract was signed by the then Department of Housing, provincial housing departments, national housing institutions and private stakeholders that form part of the supply value chain in the delivery of housing.

Among these private stakeholders are the banks, established construction companies and organisations, as well as non-governmental organisations that are all important partners in the effort to fast-track the delivery of sustainable human settlements.

The discussions for the Social Contract Pre-Plenary were structured according to five broad themes, namely capacity-building; product and delivery; development planning and land; finance and economic; and communication. By April 2009, three pre-plenary sessions had been held, the last one serving as a platform to review progress made towards achieving the 2005 Social Contract goals and objectives.

Women in Housing

This is a programmatic process to entrench participation of women in the housing-delivery value chain. The programme is socio-economic in nature with a clear 30% annual participation quota. The programme was conceived to provide redress for the construction-sector legacy that marginalised women's participation over decades. The few women who made strides found themselves faced with various challenges in the housing construction sector.

The 2008 Women's Build was celebrated concurrently with the Women in Housing Indaba and 52 houses were constructed in Kimberley, Northern Cape. In all, 18 female contractors were contracted to deliver the houses and 30 young female volunteers were organised to participate in the process. As a result of initiatives like these, the participation of women in the construction industry is projected to significantly increase to

reach the 50% target for female-owned projects in housing construction by 2014, including disabled women and youth.

Youth in Housing

The YiH Programme is geared towards enhancing participation of youth in the construction and building of housing units. It is a service programme that is based on voluntary participation, using letsema/ilima principles. The programme is managed and based on the National Youth Service Model, which is characterised by three components, namely structured learning, service and exit opportunities. The programme is implemented through provinces and municipalities where housing units are built.

In all provinces, the programme targets 100 youth to undertake a service programme in respect of housing. The programme prepares youth by providing technical training through the National Home-Builders' Registration Council (NHRBC). The youth are given the opportunity to construct houses to perfect their skills in housebuilding under the mentorship of experienced contractors. While on site, the contractors identify star performers who are recommended for emerging contractor training and further education and training.

The NHBRC is leading the process by preparing youth before they go to build houses on site with technical training, while the National Youth Service Unit empowers the youth with life skills. Provinces supply housing subsidies and municipalities provide sites where houses are constructed. The provincial youth commissions mobilise youth participation in the programme.

Govan Mbeki Housing Awards

The Govan Mbeki Housing Awards were launched in 2008. It serves as the prime annual event that demonstrates the success to which the sector is collaborating regarding the delivery of quality human settlements. Receiving a trophy in a category is the highest recognition to an organisation or individual, while the certificates demonstrate acknowledgement of performance.

The awards are not limited to recognising winners or losers but set to acknowledge all role players who have gone the extra mile in delivering houses to qualifying beneficiaries.

Housing institutions

Government has established the following national institutions to facilitate the specific housing and housing-related needs of the market, in addition to the role provincial governments and municipalities play.

The department's support institutions play an important role in enhancing the norms and standards of housing, as well as making housing more accessible to all South Africans.

The institutions are the NHBRC, NHFC, National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency (Nurcha), Servcon Housing Solutions, Thubelisha Homes, SHF, Rural Housing Loan Fund (RHLF) and the HDA.

National Home-Builders Registration Council

The NHBRC was established in terms of the Housing Consumers Protection Measures Act, 1998 (Act 95 of 1998), to provide regulatory control over the home-building industry and warranty protection to housing consumers against any failure of a home-builder's statutory obligations. Building activity is inspected to ensure compliance and protect housing consumers. In addition, the council is involved in evaluating new or alternative house-building technologies.

In recent years, the council has prioritised training and capacity-building to promote a

The Women's Build is an annual event organised to commemorate the historic 1956 Women's March to the Union Buildings in Pretoria. In the spirit of letsema, volunteers from government, the private sector, non-governmental organisations and the community are mobilised to participate in the construction of houses for beneficiaries in poor communities.

It is a partnership project of the Department of Human Settlements with sector stakeholders and is hosted in one or more provinces to commemorate Women's Month. The 2009 Women's Build was hosted by Mpumalanga in August 2009.

The Women's Build was celebrated under the theme *Together Let's Do More.*

The objectives of the event are to:

- raise consciousness about the construction sector and women's role in it
- demonstrate how cooperative governance and partner institutions support the Department of Human Settlements' Women in Housing initiatives
- promote women's access to economic opportunities within the housing sector
- promote volunteerism and partnerships.

The targeted beneficiaries of the Women's Build include among others, the elderly, female-headed households, women with disabilities and women caring for orphans and other vulnerable children.

satisfactory level of technical standards in the home-building environment. In 2008, the training programme was improved to cater for different types of geographical typologies. The council created a fund to promote training and capacity-building for women, youth and the unemployed.

During 2008, the NHBRC opened 10 new offices in the Eastern Cape (East London and George), Free State (Bethlehem), Gauteng (Pretoria), KwaZulu-Natal (Newcastle and Port Shepstone), Limpopo (Tzaneen and Bela Bela), Mpumalanga (Emalahleni) and North West (Klerksdorp).

In 2009, a further six new mobile offices were introduced in the Eastern Cape, Free State, Northern Cape, Limpopo, North West and Western Cape. Dedicated NHBRC engineers visited provinces regularly in 2009 to evaluate geotechnical and related enrolment documentation.

Over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period, the council will implement e-learning for training emerging home-builders and establish accredited training centres in the provinces. Furthermore, products and services will be expanded through research and development.

During 2008, the Council Advisory Committee was appointed, as is provided for in the Housing Consumers Protection Measures Act, 1998 to advise the council on matters related to housing consumer protection, insurance, competition and construction-dispute resolution.

National Housing Finance Corporation

The NHFC is a Schedule 3A public entity. It was established in 1996 as a development finance institution to contribute to reducing South Africa's housing backlog by mobilising, raising and deploying housing finance from sources outside the public sector.

The NHFC's revenue is derived from interest and service charges for its wholesale lending and financial services.

Traditionally, the NHFC employed the model of a financial wholesaler, providing wholesale finance on an institutional level to financial intermediaries, as well as funding for social housing. However, the NHFC's mandate has been expanded to enable it to lend directly to low- and medium-income end users. A new business model for the corporation has been developed and approved for implementation.

The NHFC has disbursed R2,4 billion in funding and delivered 264 130 housing opportunities since 1996.

The NHFC will continue to act as a wholesale and project financier over the MTEF period. It will also play a major role in the social housing sector through the ongoing implementation of the recommendations of the Presidential Job Summit, thus stimulating the supply of much-needed housing stock.

National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency

Nurcha is the result of a partnership between the South African Government and the Open Society Institute of New York, established in 1995. The agency's strategic focus is on financing building contractors in the housing industry, specifically for subsidised, affordable housing and related community infrastructure.

Nurcha differentiates between established and emerging contractors. Finance is provided to established contractors directly, while a separate, specialised intermediaries channel is used to provide finance to emerging contractors. In this way, risks associated with this market segment by the traditional financial institutions are normalised. The intermediaries assist the emerging contractors with a range of construction support services. Partnerships between intermediaries and the agency are being reviewed on a strategic level to ensure their future commitment, secure continuity and broaden the regional presence of the institution.

Nurcha is specially geared to provide construction finance for contractors or developers who cannot easily get access to finance through the conventional financial institutions. Each contractor or developer has unique needs and levels of experience. Some require a more closely managed approach than others, including assistance with project and cash-flow management and material procurement. Nurcha assesses the needs of each applicant and structures the loan accordingly.

Emerging contractors with little or no project-management experience, and who require a high level of support, are funded and managed through a system of Nurcha intermediaries. In this programme, the project loan account is jointly managed by the contractor and the intermediary to ensure controlled payment for material, labour and services. More established contractors and developers who do not require close management are funded directly by Nurcha.

As the agency is dependent on subsidised projects, it will continue with proposals to improve payment processes to mitigate the risk of conducting business with emerging contractors.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 6,7% over the medium term, rising from R62,6 million in 2008/09 to R76,1 million in 2011/12, mainly from goods and services, and interest, dividends and rent on land.

Servcon Housing Solutions

Servcon's activities for the 2009/10 financial year included:

- finalising the Ring-Fenced Portfolio (184 properties remained uncooperative)
- normalising low-income housing portfolios
- finalising service level agreements with provinces.

Servcon ceased to exist towards the end of 2009. Some of its functions, particularly those of land and landed properties, will be transferred to the newly established HDA.

Social Housing Foundation

The SHF was established as a Section 21 company by the then Department of Housing. It is mandated to develop and build capacity for social housing institutions, and to develop a policy framework for the sector.

The strategic objectives of the organisation, based on its mandate, mission and vision, are to:

- provide strategic information to the social housing sector
- mobilise resources for the social housing sector
- facilitate the capacitation of sectoral participants
- facilitate sectoral stakeholder alignment
- achieve SHF business-service excellence
- provide social-housing-institution support
- provide sector communication and knowledge management.

Its revenue is derived from grant funding provided by the Department of Human Settlements and donor organisations.

To further strengthen rural housing development, the Department of Human Settlements, in collaboration with the Rural Housing Loan Fund (RHLF), developed an individual rural-subsidy instrument for people living in communal areas with no or limited security of tenure.

The instrument will enable beneficiaries to access building material for self-building purposes, assisted by the RHLF and the network of registered non-traditional lenders operating in these communities.

It is expected that the SHF will be consolidated under the new SHRA, as envisaged by the Social Housing Act, 2008.

Rural Housing Loan Fund

The RHLF is a Section 21 company, which was established in 1996 by the then Department of Housing in partnership with the German Development Bank. It is a world-class rural housing social venture capital fund that creates new financial arrangements and opportunities for rural families to improve their housing, economic and living environments.

The mandate of the RHLF is to facilitate access to housing microfinance for low-income earners who intend to improve their housing conditions largely in non-metropolitan areas, such as communal land, small and secondary towns and rural nodes.

The RHLF operates as a wholesale finance institution and, to achieve its mandate, the RHLF lends to intermediary housing lenders who, in turn, lend to individual borrowers. The RHLF is also a social venture capital fund in that it takes equity in some of its intermediaries to enhance business growth. Traditionally, the RHLF has facilitated loans for rural housing through approved housing lenders who are willing and able to lend to people who want to build and improve their living conditions in rural areas. In addition, the RHLF has invested in a number of its approved intermediary lenders. Since its inception, the RHLF has disbursed more than 157 000 loans to the cumulative value of some R600 million.

The RHLF has proved that the market for rural-housing finance credit does exist.

The institution intends to continue with the implementation of the growth strategy, with the aim to reach "broader" and "deeper" into rural areas, through increasing the number of intermediaries supported, including community-based origination partners, while providing existing intermediaries with funding and support to grow the existing loan books. An increase in the number of end-user loans from 45 438 in 2008/09 to 60 000 in 2011/12, is projected.

During 2008, the RHLF facilitated 37 643 loans valued at R106,3 million, which significantly exceeded the budgeted R72,8 million disbursements and 30 000 individual loans. A significant portion of the loans were made in presidential rural nodes and other rural district municipalities: 9 340 loans valued at R44,7 million were dis-

bursed in rural nodes. This demonstrates the commitment of the RHLF and its intermediaries to enable access to disadvantaged rural communities.

In 2008, some R365,6 million, representing 46 489 individual loans, was disbursed by the RHLF's intermediaries from other sources of private-sector finance.

The Department of Human Settlements will transfer R50 million in 2010/11 and R50 million in 2011/12 for the recapitalisation of the RHLF.

Thubelisha Homes

Thubelisha was a Schedule 3A public entity and established as a non-profit, special purpose vehicle to create appropriate housing stock for the right-sizing of the Servcon housing portfolio.

It contributed to the BNG Strategy through the following programmes:

- upgrading informal settlements
- unblocking projects through delivery-enhancing interventions
- fast-tracking housing solutions, using the emergency housing circumstances programme for people living in areas of stress
- implementing mega projects.

As with Servcon, Thubelisha ceased to exist in 2009. Its functions will be absorbed by the HDA.

International relations

Among the significant areas of activity with regard to international relations, officials of the department were tasked with providing secretariat functions for the African Ministerial Conference on Housing and Urban Development (AMCHUD). Among the duties of the secretariat were:

- institutionalising the secretariat
- supporting the Bureau of African Ministers, elected by the conference, to run the body
- hosting the AMCHUD II Conference held in Abuja, Nigeria, in July 2008
- marketing AMCHUD and its agenda to encourage broader continental participation and stakeholder support.

Acknowledgements

A Review of the UUDP's Support to the South African Housing Sector, published by the German Technical Cooperation
BuaNews
Department of Human Settlements
Development Indicators, 2009
Estimates of National Expenditure 2009, published by National Treasury
Nurcha Annual Review, 2008
Servcon
Thubelisha Homes
Rural Housing Loan Fund
Rural Housing Loan Fund Annual Report, 2008
The Sowetan
The Star
Pretoria News
http://allafrica.com
http://housingnc.ncape.gov.za
www.eumunicipaloutreach.org.za
www.gov.za
www.housing.gov.za
www.info.gov.za
www.pmg.org.za
www.propertyscene.co.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.servconhousing.co.za

Suggested reading

Berrisford, S (ed). 2008. *In Search of Land and Housing in the New South Africa: The Case of Ethembalethu* (e-book). Washington, DC: World Bank.

Mohamed, SI. 2007. *Tenant, Landlord & Sectional Titles in South Africa: Weekly Articles, Property Law Digest Articles, 2004 – 2007; with Reference to the Rental Housing Act and Rental Housing Tribunals.* Durban: Organisation of Civic Rights.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS AND COOPERATION

South Africa's growth in stature in international relations resulted in increased demands on the country to play a significant role in contributing towards efforts aimed at the creation of a more democratic, peaceful, prosperous continent and a better world.

The name change of the Department of Foreign Affairs to the Department of International Relations and Cooperation in May 2009, was in line with international trends and informed by the need to give greater clarity on the mandate of the department.

In this regard, over and above its normal functions, the department will also engage in dynamic partnerships for development and cooperation.

Accordingly, the foreign-policy features still remain:

- pushing back the frontiers of poverty and underdevelopment in South Africa and Africa, based on the continental economic and developmental plan, the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)
- creating peace and pursuing the peaceful resolution of conflicts
- contributing to peace efforts in Africa and the world
- building and consolidating strategic partnerships to advance the country's developmental agenda
- building and reforming African continental institutions
- the continued exertion of influence on global political and economic issues.

As South Africa seeks to attain its foreign-policy objectives, it simultaneously pursues a developmental agenda on the continent and in the developing world.

South Africa and Africa

South Africa recognises that its destiny is inextricably linked to that of the developing world in general and the African continent in particular.

Africa faces the challenge of positioning itself to address the marginalisation of the continent by engaging global role players on socio-economic development and facilitating a fair and just global order.

African Union (AU)

The AU is Africa's premier institution and principal organisation for the promotion of the continent's accelerated socio-economic integration, which will lead to greater unity and solidarity between African countries and people.

South Africa was instrumental in establishing the AU and its organs, namely the:

- Assembly
- Executive Council
- specialised technical committees
- financial institutions
- Permanent Representatives Committee (PRC)
- Peace and Security Council (PSC)
- Pan-African Parliament (PAP)
- Economic, Social and Cultural Council (Ecosocc)
- Court of Justice
- African Court on Human and Peoples' Rights
- African Commission on Human and People's Rights.

The financial institutions, namely the African Monetary Fund, African Central Bank and African Court of Justice, still have to be operationalised.

The 53-member AU was officially launched in Durban in July 2002, following its inaugural summit.

It replaced the Organisation of African Unity (OAU), which was established on 25 May 1963 in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.

The AU's objectives include:

- achieving greater unity and solidarity between African countries and the peoples of Africa
- defending the sovereignty, territorial integrity and independence of its member states
- accelerating the political and socio-economic integration of the continent
- encouraging international cooperation
- promoting peace, security and stability on the continent

Guarantees that are binding on the Department of International Relations and Cooperation (formerly Foreign Affairs) for the FIFA 2010 World Cup ™ are:

- no country will be excluded from participating in the 2010 World Cup
- national anthems of all participating countries will be played
- national foreign flags of all participating countries will be flown
- any violation of the above would constitute an offence
- the provision of protocol services at official government and FIFA 2010-related events.

- promoting democratic principles and institutions, popular participation and good governance
- promoting and protecting people's rights
- establishing the necessary conditions to enable the continent to play its rightful role in the global economy and in international negotiations
- promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, and integrating African economies
- promoting cooperation in all fields of human activity to raise living standards
- promoting research in all fields
- eradicating preventable diseases and promoting good health on the continent.

The AU has made notable progress towards the political and economic integration of the continent:

- the permanent home of the PAP will be completed in 2010
- the AU has developed the PSC, which is responsible for the resolution of conflicts, peacekeeping and post-conflict reconstruction in conjunction with the United Nations (UN)
- a common defence policy has been adopted, which includes the Standby Force, with a nucleus of five brigades, one from each region
- the Human and Peoples' Rights Court has been established with Judge Bernard Ngoepe as one of the first judges
- the Protocol on the Rights of Women in Africa and the Declaration on Gender Equality is being implemented
- the Protocol on the Court of Justice is underway

The eight existing regional economic communities (RECs), which include the Southern African Development Community (SADC) and the Economic Community of West African States, have begun to determine time lines to achieve free trade agreements and customs unions.

In February 2009, Dr Salim Ahmed Salim, former Secretary-General of the African Union (AU) and AU special envoy for the inter-Sudanese political talks on Darfur, paid a visit to South Africa in his capacity as a member of the Panel of the Wise. The panel was established by the AU in 2007 to support the efforts of its Peace and Security Council and those of the chairperson of the commission, mainly in the areas of conflict prevention on the continent of Africa.

Members of the panel were appointed in January 2007 for a period of three years and inaugurated on 18 December 2007. The members are: Salim Ahmed Salim, Ahmed Ben Bella, Elisabeth Pognon, Miguel Travota and Brigalia Bam.

In May 2009, the Deputy Minister of Defence, Mr Thabang Makwetla, attended the third Ordinary Meeting of Ministers of Defence and Safety and Security at the African Union (AU) Headquarters in Addis Ababa.

The purpose of the meeting was to consider the progress made in the operationalisation of the African Standby Force, and consider proposals for further implementation. The meeting was also attended by African chiefs of defence and heads of security.

The African Standby Force was established by the AU to support and keep peace in Africa. To this end, the AU has recommended the development of a common security policy and, by 2010, the establishment of the African Standby Force capable of rapid deployment to keep or enforce peace.

Once fully operational, the African Standby Force will comprise standby brigades in each of the five regions, and incorporate a police and civilian expert capacity.

Promoting peace, security and stability on the continent

The AU is responsible for the peaceful resolution of conflict among member states, through such appropriate means as may be decided upon by the AU Assembly.

The PSC Protocol took effect in December 2003 and comprises 15 member states. The PSC was launched in Addis Ababa in May 2004.

As a collective security and early warning arrangement, the PSC allows for a timely and effective response to conflict and crises in Africa.

In terms of PSC statutes, all African countries should establish their own early warning centres.

The AU PSC Protocol provides for the creation of the African Standby Force, to be operationalised over 10 years.

The second extraordinary session of the AU Assembly, held in Libya in February 2004, adopted the Common African Defence and Security Policy.

South Africa is sparing no effort in conflict resolution and/or peacekeeping missions in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Côte d'Ivoire, Sudan, Comoros, Ethiopia and Eritrea.

Socio-economic development and integration of the continent

The AU is the principal institution responsible for promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, as well as integrating African economies.

RECs are recognised as the building blocks of the AU, necessitating the need for their close involvement in formulating and implementing all AU programmes.

To this end, the AU must coordinate and take decisions on policies in areas of common interest to member states, as well as coordinate and harmonise policies between existing and future RECs, for the gradual attainment of the AU's objectives.

Seven specialised technical committees are responsible for the actual implementation of the continental socio-economic integration process, together with the PRC.

New Partnership for Africa's Development

South Africa played a role in the establishment of Nepad and the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM), and hosted the secretariats of these two bodies. Nepad, as a blueprint for Africa's socio-economic development, represents the incarnation of the objectives of the AU at a practical level to intensify the struggle against poverty and underdevelopment.

Nepad remains the main frame of reference for intra-African relations and Africa's partnerships with international partners such as the European Union (EU)-AU Strategic Partnership, Forum for Africa-China Partnership, the Group of Seven Most Industrialised Nations plus Russia (G8), New Asian-African Strategic Partnership (NAASP) and the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development.

The primary objective of Nepad is to eradicate poverty, halt the marginalisation of Africa in the globalisation process, promote the empowerment and economic integration of women and achieve the millennium development goals (MDGs).

The underlying principles of Nepad are:

- Accountability: Nepad recognises the importance of good political, economic and corporate governance in creating the conditions for development, with African governments embracing greater accountability to their constituents. Nepad also seeks to base Africa's partnership with the North on mutual accountability.
- Ownership: Nepad is a long-term vision that is African-led and -owned. Ownership should be promoted through broad and deep participation by all sectors of society, and by tapping into indigenous knowledge/expertise to define needs and solutions.
- Partnership: While Nepad is a partnership between and among Africans, it seeks to accelerate sustainable development in Africa through partnerships with the South, and to forge a new partnership with the developed North that changes the unequal relationship with Africa.

Resources for Nepad are mobilised by way of increasing savings and capital inflows via debt relief, increased targeted official development aid (ODA) and private capital investment, as well as through better management of public revenue and expenditure.

Over the past few years, Nepad's activities evolved from the conceptualisation of frameworks for the actualisation of the new vision and onwards to implementation strategies and action plans in the identified priority areas. Consequently, sectoral frameworks and mechanisms have been developed and are being implemented in the programmes and projects in those priority areas. Such areas include:

- the comprehensive African agriculture development programme
- the short-term action plan for infrastructure development

Mission operations

	2001/02	2002/03	2003/04	2004/05	2005/06	2006/07	2007/08	2008/09
Africa	27	28	32	37	38	39	43	46
Latin America	10	10	10	10	10	11	11	11
Asia/Australasia	22	26	27	27	28	30	31	32
North America	6	6	6	7	7	7	7	7
Europe	26	26	26	26	26	27	27	28
All missions	**91**	**96**	**101**	**107**	**109**	**114**	**119**	**124**

Source: *Development Indicators, 2009*

Peacekeeping operations

Personnel	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009
MONUC (DRC)	1	113	161	1 430	1 430	1 230	1 242	1 248	1 958	1 198
IEMF (DRC)				22						
TPVM (DRC)			3	3						
UNMEE (Eritrea and Ethiopia)	3	6	6	6	10	6	6	6	1	
OLMEE (Eritrea and Ethiopia)	2	2	5	5	4	1	1	1	1	
SAPSD (Burundi)		701	750							
AMIB (Burundi)				1 500						
ONUB (Burundi)					1 100	930	865			
BINUB (Burundi)								1		
AUPF (Burundi) - AUSTF (Burundi)					337	337	337	750	950	1 042
UNMIL (Liberia)					3	3				
UNMIS (Southern Sudan)								4	4	
AMIS (Southern Sudan)					10	339	620	620		
UNAMID (Southern Sudan)								651	614	
Southern Sudan - Uganda								2		2
Total number of personal deployed	118	870	925	7 966	2 894	2 846	3 071	2 632	3 054	2 242
Central African Rep (CAR)									66	
Nepal								5	1	
Other peace operations								2	2	3

Source: *Development Indicators, 2009*
The data provided reflects the maximum number of personnel that were deployed in the specific peacekeeping operations during the specific year.
Other peace operations include special envoys in Burundi, Sudan and Uganda.

- the science and technology (S&T) consolidated action plan
- the environment plan
- the AU/Nepad health strategy
- the education action plan
- the tourism action plan
- standards and guidelines for the APRM
- the Africa productive capacity initiative.

Nepad introduced the APRM, accepted by member states of the AU as an African self-monitoring mechanism.

The peer review process is aimed at addressing corruption, poor governance and inefficient delivery of public goods and services to the citizens of African countries. It encourages the adoption of policies, standards and practices that lead to political stability, high economic growth, sustainable development and accelerated regional and continental economic integration through the sharing of experiences and best practices, and is important to the sustainability of Nepad.

In June 2009, Cape Verde acceded to the APRM as the 29th member.

Structures

Heads of State and Government Implementation Committee (HSGIC)

The Nepad HSGIC reports annually to the summit of the AU. The chairperson of the AU Commission is an ex-officio member of the Implementation Committee, and the AU Commission is expected to participate in steering committee meetings.

The HSGIC comprises 20 states (four per AU geographic region), including the five initiating states: South Africa, Nigeria, Algeria, Senegal and Egypt.

The main function of the HSGIC is to set policies, priorities and Nepad's programme of action.

Steering Committee

The Steering Committee comprises representatives of the 20 HSGIC members. It is tasked with developing the terms of reference for identified programmes and projects, and overseeing the Secretariat.

Secretariat

The Nepad Secretariat coordinates implementation of projects and programmes approved by the HSGIC.

The full-time core staff of the Secretariat, located at the Development Bank of Southern Africa in Midrand, provides liaison, coordination, and administrative and logistical functions for Nepad.

The AU's mechanisms for peer review and conflict resolution reflect commitment to human rights, democratisation, good governance and peace and security.

Southern African Development Community

The SADC has been in existence since 1980, when it was formed as a loose alliance of nine majority-ruled states in southern Africa known as the Southern African Development Coordination Conference, with the main aim of coordinating development projects to lessen economic dependence on the then apartheid South Africa.

The founding member states are: Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Swaziland, United Republic of Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

South Africa assumed the chair of the SADC in August 2008 against the milieu of a number of important political developments.

As a community of nations, the SADC had to work together in confronting various challenges of political and socio-economic nature.

The year 2009 saw elections in, among other countries, Namibia, South Africa, Malawi, Angola, Botswana, Mozambique and Mauritius.

The launch of the Free Trade Area (FTA) in 2008 will lay a firm foundation for regional economic integration.

The FTA Agreement is part of the SADC's ongoing efforts to create strong relations with southern African countries through trade. The SADC also aims to create a regional customs union.

In 2009, the DRC took over the chair of the SADC from South Africa.

Relations with southern Africa

Angola

Relations between the people of South Africa and Angola were cemented during the anti-colonial and anti-apartheid struggles, which saw South Africa and Angola's liberation movements, the African National Congress (ANC) and the Movement for the Liberation of Angola, forging an alliance leading to the independence of their respective countries. These relations were transformed into state-to-state relations following the dawn of peace, democracy and justice in South Africa in 1994. Many South Africans regard Angola as their second home.

South Africa committed itself to assisting Angola with its post-conflict reconstruction projects and programmes. The first session of the Joint Commission of Cooperation (JCC) was held in Pretoria in February 2003. Subsequently, significant progress has been made in identifying, negotiating and finalising numerous agreements.

South Africa formed part of a SADC team, which monitored the elections in Angola in September 2008.

Bilateral relations between the two countries were further strengthened by the visit of the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Ms Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, to Angola in May 2009. She held discussions with her Angolan counterpart and paid a courtesy call on President Jose Eduardo Dos Santos.

In August 2009, President Jacob Zuma paid his first state visit to Angola – accompanied by 11 ministers and more than 150 businesspeople

South Africa ratified the African Youth Charter in May 2009, and deposited the instrument of ratification with the Commission of the African Union (AU) on 8 July 2009. South Africa was the 14th country to ratify the charter, which entered into force in August 2009.

The African Youth Charter is a legal instrument for youth empowerment and provides a framework for youth-development programmes across the AU member states. This charter prioritises youth development on the AU's agenda and ensures that challenges relating to youth development are adequately addressed. These include unemployment, HIV and AIDS, illiteracy, restricted access to information and gender violence.

In South Africa, the Department of Women, Youth, Children and People with Disabilities; the National Youth Development Agency; and the Youth Desk in The Presidency will monitor the implementation process through the National Youth Policy 2009 to 2014.

Countries that have ratified the charter include: Rwanda, Mali, Gabon, Mauritius, The Gambia, Niger, Libya, Uganda, Namibia, Mozambique, South Africa, Togo, Djibouti, Guinea Bissau and Burkina Faso.

– the biggest business delegation ever taken on a state visit by a president since 1994. During this visit, various cooperation agreements were signed, such as in the fields of regular political consultations, infrastructure, industry, trade, sport and recreation, air services and human settlements.

Botswana

South Africa and Botswana signed the Joint Permanent Commission for Cooperation (JPCC) in 2003. The JPCC provides a legal and institutional framework for further cooperation in identified strategic areas. The last South Africa-Botswana JPCC meeting was held in November 2007, and took stock of progress regarding JPCC projects.

Democratic Republic of Congo

The DRC has made remarkable progress and presents real opportunities for intraregional economic cooperation, foreign direct investment (FDI) and sustained growth and development. However, cycles of conflict have severely undermined both African and foreign-investor confidence, further weakened indigenous economic development and increased dependence on foreign loans and assistance.

South Africa is fully committed to continued engagement with the DRC, and to assisting the democratically elected Government with its consolidation of democracy, in line with its foreign-policy objectives.

South Africa has also committed to providing ongoing assistance to the DRC in reforming the country's economy and is supporting measures to encourage a predictable and stable economic environment to unlock investment and trade opportunities between the two countries.

South Africa's assistance to the DRC is broadly based on the following priority areas: health, education, water and sanitation, infrastructure, with security-sector reform being an all encompassing priority.

The Presidential Binational Commission (BNC) between South Africa and the DRC, which has been in existence since 2004, provides a legal framework to manage the post-conflict reconstruction and development projects in that country.

In April 2008, former President Thabo Mbeki hosted his counterpart from the DRC, President Joseph Kabila, for the fifth BNC Summit.

Bilateral relations between the two countries were further strengthened by the visit of former President Kgalema Motlanthe to the DRC in October 2008, during which the implementation of bilateral projects formed part of the discussions.

In October 2009, President Zuma hosted President Kabila during the South Africa-DRC BNC.

Lesotho

The most significant and visible beacon reflecting South Africa's bilateral relations with Lesotho is the Lesotho Highlands Water Project (LHWP), which was started in 1986 and qualifies as a Nepad project.

The LHWP is a joint venture between the two countries to supply water to South Africa (Gauteng in particular) and to meet Lesotho's electricity needs. The project delivers 780 million cubic metres of water to South Africa a year. The implementation of the LHWP Phase Two is underway.

South Africa and Lesotho signed a Joint Bilateral Commission of Cooperation (JBCC) Agreement in 2001 to assist Lesotho to progress from least developed status to a developing country and to promote the consolidation of relations between the two countries.

Current projects are:

- spatial development initiatives (SDIs)
- Metolong Dam (African Renaissance Fund [ARF] funds approved in June 2008)
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Park
- Sani Top-Mokhotlong Road (ARF funds approved in June 2008).

The former Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs, Ms Fatima Hajaig, attended the launch of the JBCC Economic Projects in April 2009, as identified by an SDI scoping exercise that was conducted under the auspices of the Department of Trade and Industry, the Development Bank of Southern Africa and the South African High Commission in Maseru, Lesotho. The economic projects are intended to promote cross-border cooperation and stimulate local economic development.

The South Africa-Lesotho Bilateral Task Team on the Facilitation of Movement of Citizens met in Mohale, Lesotho, in February 2009. The purpose of the meeting was to report on progress on preparations towards the implementation of the agreement signed by the two states.

The Facilitation of Movement of Citizens Agreement reduced the administrative burden on Lesotho and South African visitors crossing the common border and reduced opportunities for corruption and criminal activity.

It recognises the uniqueness of Lesotho's geographical situation: being the only country in the world that is entirely surrounded by a single other country.

Malawi

The inaugural meeting of the JCC between South

While on a three-day State visit to Zambia in December 2009, President Jacob Zuma was conferred with the Order of the Eagle of Zambia First Division, one of Zambia's highest and distinguished recognition awards, by President Rupiah Banda at the Mulungushi International Conference Centre in Lusaka.

President Zuma was accompanied by various ministers, senior officials and a business delegation representing 60 companies in the sectors of energy and petroleum, information and communications technology, infrastructure, financial services, healthcare, mining as well as agroprocessing. Agreements were signed in the fields of cooperation in energy, geology, mining and mineral beneficiation.

In addition, bilateral agreements and memoranda of understanding were signed in the areas of regular diplomatic consultations, trade and industrial cooperation, mineral resources, agriculture and livestock and health.

Africa and Malawi took place in Blantyre, Malawi, in June 2008. In May 2009, President Zuma conveyed South Africa's congratulations to President Bingu Wa Mutharika on his re-election as the President of the Republic of Malawi.

Mozambique

South Africa and Mozambique enjoy warm political relations both in a bilateral and multilateral context. To this end, the respective heads of state play a leading role in the promotion of the SADC and AU policies and the effective implementation of Nepad programmes.

A successful Heads of State Economic Bilateral Forum meeting was held in April 2008 in Mozambique.

The JPCC was held in Mozambique in August 2008.

The emphasis was placed on the need for both countries to play their part to ensure stability and development in the SADC and throughout the continent. Both countries affirmed their commitment to regional integration and advancement of the SADC.

The inaugural meeting of the JPCC on Defence and Security was held in November 2008.

Work towards the establishment of the South African Developmental Partnership Agency is underway. This agency will be tasked with the management of South Africa's developmental assistance to contribute to capacity- and institution-building, as well as support socio-economic and human-resource development.

The fifth Annual General Meeting of the Maputo Corridor Logistics Initiative (MCLI) was held in August 2009.

The MCLI aims to grow national economies and contribute to the overall growth of the region. Under the MCLI, the corridor links Maputo with Gauteng, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and other landlocked countries within the SADC region and the continent. The key elements of this corridor are the N4 toll road, the rail corridor, the Lebombo/Ressano-Gracia border post and the Maputo port and terminal facilities.

Namibia

South Africa and Namibia enjoy close cooperation in a number of areas, which is further enhanced by high-level engagements such as the heads of state economic bilateral meeting, the last of which was held in August 2008.

The meetings focus on joint economic cooperation projects such as SDIs, tourism, energy matters and matters related to the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) and the SADC.

The annual meetings of the Joint Commission on Defence and Security between the two countries aim to identify, discuss and promote bilateral and regional cooperation in the security area.

South Africa is one of Namibia's most important economic partners. Bilateral trade between South Africa and Namibia accounts for two thirds of Namibia's total foreign trade.

The two countries are also part of the SADC and the Economic Partnership Agreement (EPA) configuration that is negotiating with the European Commission.

Both South Africa and Namibia share a common interest in ensuring that the EPA fosters regional integration and development.

In July 2009, the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, Ms Tina Joemat-Pettersson, signed a memorandum of understanding (MoU) with her counterpart, Minister John Mutorwa.

Areas covered in the memorandum include:

- South Africa/Namibia agricultural agreements
- training of Namibian veterinary students
- protection of Karakul genetic material.

In November 2009, President Zuma co-chaired the South Africa-Namibia Bilateral Economic Forum with President Hifikepunye Pohamba.

Swaziland

Relations between South Africa and Swaziland are cordial.

Former President Mbeki undertook a working visit to Swaziland in April 2008 to strengthen bilateral relations between the two countries. During the visit, both parties reaffirmed the importance of the JBCC as a strategic platform for strengthening bilateral relations between South Africa and Swaziland.

Tanzania

Strong relations between South Africa and Tanzania began when the ruling party, Chama Cha Mapinduzi, supported the ANC during the South African liberation struggle. This was cemented by formalising bilateral relations in 1994. The Presidential Economic Commission (PEC) was enacted in 2005 with the most recent meeting held in April 2007 in South Africa.

The PEC provides the required cooperative framework to manage the development and implementation of bilateral projects and the SDI programmes, in particular the Mtwara and central development corridors, which have been identified as regional Nepad priorities.

Zambia

Presidential elections were held in Zambia in October 2008, following the death of President Levy Patrick Mwanawasa.

In November 2008, the former South African President and SADC Chairperson, Mr Kgalema Motlanthe, led a South African delegation to Zambia to attend the inauguration of President Rupia Banda.

Former President Motlanthe also led a South African delegation to Lusaka to attend the North-South Corridor Conference in April 2009.

Zimbabwe

South Africa played a constructive role in support of the SADC-mandated mediation process on Zimbabwe. This led to the historic power-sharing agreement that was signed in September 2008 between the Zimbabwean African National Union-Patriotic Front and the two Movement for Democratic Change formations, as well as the establishment of the inclusive government in February 2009.

South Africa, working with the SADC and other relevant authorities in Zimbabwe, initiated the establishment of the Zimbabwe Humanitarian and Development Assistance Framework, a transparent, non-partisan and all-inclusive coordinating mechanism, which was set up to manage the SADC's humanitarian assistance to the people of Zimbabwe.

South Africa's bilateral engagement with Zimbabwe took place in the form of the third session of the JPC in March 2009 at Victoria Falls.

South Africa negotiated an assistance package in support of the Zimbabwean Government's Short-Term Emergency Recovery Programme.

In August 2009, President Zuma paid a two-day official visit to Zimbabwe. During this time, he opened the Harare Agricultural Society Show. He also met key political partners of the inclusive government as part of his efforts aimed at assisting to implement the Global Political Agreement.

Uganda

Official diplomatic relations between South Africa and Uganda were established in 1994.

The Department of Science and Technology hosted the Ugandan Minister of Science and Technology and a high-profile delegation to South Africa in April 2009. The visit culminated in the signing of the bilateral agreement on scientific and technological cooperation between the two countries.

The signing of the agreement signals the commitment by both parties to work together in the advancement of S&T and innovation and will pave the way for the development of a plan of action, which will facilitate the identification of priority areas and the consolidation of resources to implement the agreement.

Kenya

In December 2008, the former KwaZulu-Natal Premier, Mr Sibusiso Ndebele, led a delegation on a two-day official visit to Kenya to share experiences and strengthen relationships between Kenya and KwaZulu-Natal, particularly in the area of cooperative movement. The cooperative movement in Kenya is ranked first in Africa, and seventh in the world by the International Co-operative Alliance.

The delegation held meetings with the Deputy Prime Minister and Minister for Local Government of Kenya, Mr Musalia Mudavadi, as well as with the Minister of Cooperatives, Mr Joseph Nyaga.

In partnership with the Cooperative College of Kenya, the KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Government is working towards developing, promoting, co-ordinating and facilitating a cooperative training programme for the province, which will culminate in the establishment of the KwaZulu-Natal Co-operative College.

Ethiopia

Bilateral economic relations with Ethiopia were

revived in 1995 when South Africa opened an embassy in Addis Ababa.

The former Minister of Defence, Mr Charles Nqakula, paid a two-day official visit to Ethiopia in February 2009. During the visit, he signed an agreement on defence cooperation between South Africa and that country.

Indian Ocean islands

South Africa's political, economic and diplomatic relations with countries in the Indian Ocean islands remain strong.

Bilateral relations have been strengthened since 1994, especially in trade and investments, culture, sport and recreation. There was also progress towards the finalisation of the General Cooperation Agreement as well as agreements in other areas such as education, scientific and technical cooperation, shipping and maritime, environment and tourism as well as social development.

Comoros

South Africa and the Comoros have had official relations since 1993. Following the signing of the Fomboni All-Party Framework Agreement of 17 February 2001, presidential elections for the three sister islands and for the Union of Comoros were held in March and April 2002.

South Africa, as the AU-mandated coordinator of the Countries of the Region on the Comoros, is facilitating and closely monitoring the transition process.

Development cooperation

South Africa is not a donor country, but development cooperation with countries in Africa is integral to the country's foreign policy.

Assistance is wide-ranging and includes educational visits by agriculturists, establishing viable training centres, conserving the environment, and rendering medical assistance and technology-exchange programmes.

Technical and financial assistance aimed at capacity-building, especially to SADC countries, is a major instrument for promoting economic development, peace and stability, democracy and the African Renaissance on a regional basis.

Relations with central Africa

South Africa continued to strengthen its bilateral relations with the countries in the central African region during 2009/10.

The embassies in Cameroon, Gabon, Congo and Equatorial Guinea are fully staffed and officials represent South Africa in Chad and São Tomé and Principe.

An honorary consul has been appointed in the Central African Republic (CAR) to assist with South Africa's programmes in that country.

Gabon

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Gabon were established in 1992. A legal framework was created through the signing of a co-operation agreement, and further agreements were since signed.

In June 2009, President Zuma extended South Africa's condolences to the Government and people of Gabon following the passing of the Gabonese President, El Hadj Omar Bongo Ondimba, on 7 June 2009.

São Tomé and Principe

Diplomatic relations between São Tomé and Principe and South Africa were established in May 1994. South Africa operates a satellite office in São Tomé and Principe under the accreditation of the embassy in Libreville, Gabon. A general cooperation agreement between São Tomé and Principe and South Africa was signed in 2005.

Congo

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and the Republic of Congo were established in March 1993. South Africa opened an embassy in Brazzaville in Congo in 2005. An MoU on defence between South Africa and Congo was signed in April 2008 in Pretoria.

In August 2009, Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe attended the inauguration of President-elect, Mr Denis Sassou Nguesso, in Congo Brazzaville.

Equatorial Guinea

Diplomatic relations between Equatorial Guinea and South Africa were established in May 1993. The two countries have signed bilateral agreements in the following areas: general co-operation, defence and regular diplomatic consultation. South African oil company Petro-SA is involved in oil-exploration activities in that country.

Cameroon

During 2006, South Africa and Cameroon signed

a general cooperation agreement, a trade agreement and an MoU on economic cooperation.

These agreements set the framework for the strengthening of relations and business activity between the two countries.

Central African Republic

South Africa has enjoyed full diplomatic relations with the CAR since August 1993.

In May 2008, Cabinet approved the deployment of 15 South African National Defence Force (SANDF) members to the CAR. In March 2009, Cabinet approved the extension of deployment of SANDF personnel to the CAR to assist with capacity-building of the local defence force.

Chad

The South African Embassy in Chad became fully functional in 2007. The Chadian Government is planning to open an embassy in Pretoria in the near future. Interaction between the two governments on bilateral issues continues to take place.

Rwanda

Full diplomatic relations were established between South Africa and Rwanda in May 1995. The two countries maintain good political relations. Their cooperation focuses on the post-conflict reconstruction of Rwanda and has extended to the coordination of Nepad on the continent.

To further strengthen this bilateral structure, the Implementation Monitoring Committee has been established at director-general level to provide the necessary coordinating, planning and monitoring framework to manage effective implementation of approved programmes, and to ensure the delivery of cross-cutting training and human-resource (HR) capacity-building programmes.

In March 2009, the former Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma, and her Rwandan counterpart, Ms Rosemary Museminali, co-chaired the South Africa-Rwanda JCC at Groote Schuur, Rondebosch, Cape Town.

The two ministers met to consolidate structured political relations between the two countries and to take stock of the progress made since the last session of the South Africa-Rwanda JCC, held in August 2006 in Kigali.

Bilateral relations between the two countries have been characterised by close contact at a high political level. Rwanda has been a partner in championing the consolidation of the African Agenda by being among the first countries to volunteer for the APRM and by contributing troops to African peacekeeping missions in the Comoros and Darfur, respectively.

Burundi

South Africa's good relations with Burundi are demonstrated by the leading role the Government played in the Arusha Peace and Reconciliation Agreement signed by representatives of the main Hutu and Tutsi political parties, the Government of Burundi, and the National Assembly on 28 August 2000. South Africa's contribution towards the establishment of peace and stability in Burundi included the deployment of SANDF troops, with an African peace mission in Burundi, known as the UN Operation in Burundi.

South Africa has committed itself to working with the regional leadership, the Government and the people of Burundi, including the leadership of the Palepehutu-FNL, in finding a long-lasting solution to their current challenges.

An agreement between South Africa and Burundi was signed in September 2008 in Bujumbura to facilitate the implementation of a cooperation agreement between the two countries in the field of health, including strengthening interventions for safe motherhood, hospital services, reducing malaria morbidity and mortality and the referral of Burundian patients to the South African public health sector.

On 8 August 2009, the South African flag was lowered in Burundi, marking the end of one of the most successful deployments in Africa.

South Africa's role as facilitator in the Burundi process was mandated by the regional initiative and came to an end on 31 December 2009. As a result of South Africa's engagement in Burundi, the FNL, the last armed rebel group in Burundi has returned home. Over 21 000 FNL combatants have been disarmed, demobilised and reintegrated into Burundi society. They include more than 1 000 women combatants and over 500 child soldiers who have been reunited with their families.

Another 4 000 FNL combatants have been integrated into the Burundi security services. The FNL has registered as a political party and is participating in the election scheduled for 2010.

Relations with North and West Africa and the Horn of Africa

During 2009/10, South Africa expanded and consolidated its bilateral relations with the region. The following key performance areas were achieved in the region:

- promoting the African Agenda in North Africa

- strengthening AU structures in the region
- contributing towards peace, stability, security and democracy in North Africa
- consolidating and enhancing strategic and structured bilateral relationships with the countries of North Africa
- promoting economic diplomacy and tourism
- enhancing public diplomacy
- promoting South-South and North-South agendas.

Algeria

South Africa and Algeria have maintained a strategic relationship since the establishment of the Presidential BNC in 2000. Bilaterally, South Africa and Algeria have developed close relations in the field of defence and military technological and industrial cooperation. In this regard, the JCC in the Field of Defence has agreed to expand the range of bilateral interactions, including training programmes, joint exercises, technology transfer and exploring production capabilities and partnerships.

During 2008/09, South Africa also maintained close contact with two AU institutions headquartered in Algeria, namely the Africa Centre for the Study and Research on Terrorism and the African Energy Commission.

South Africa and Algeria also continued their cooperation over the long-standing international dispute over Western Sahara, including collective support for the AU and UN multilateral efforts to find an equitable, peaceful and lasting solution to the conflict between the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic (SADR) and the Kingdom of Morocco.

To strengthen relations with the people of Algeria, the Minister of Arts and Culture, Ms Lulu Xingwana, signed a cultural agreement and a programme of cooperation with her Algerian counterpart in July 2009. Subsequently, a MoU was signed between the National Film and Video Foundation and its Algerian counterpart.

Western Sahara

With regard to the issue of the illegal occupation of Western Sahara, the Africa Branch of the former Department of Foreign Affairs presented a successful international conference in conjunction with the University of Pretoria in December 2008, entitled *The Conference on Multilateralism and International Law with Western Sahara as a Case Study*. The conference, attended by international experts and scholars, focused on critical issues of self-determination and decolonisation, the exploitation of natural resources in the occupied territories, the responsibilities of occupying powers and multilateral efforts towards finding a solution to the question of Africa's last colony.

During 2008/09, high-level political consultation regularly took place between the SADR and senior government officials, while the Parliamentary Portfolio Committee on Foreign Affairs visited the refugee camps in Tindouf during August 2008. South Africa, in this respect, continued its humanitarian assistance programme to the SADR.

In addition, two bilateral development assistance projects were approved during 2008 by the ARF to render bilateral support to the SADR with humanitarian landmine removal and assistance towards the establishment of a youth sports complex.

Egypt

South Africa and Egypt continue to enjoy cordial relations and the State Visit by Egyptian President, Mr Hosni Mubarak, in July 2008 further strengthened bilateral relations and political dialogue.

A substantive legal framework of more than 30 bilateral agreements exists between the two countries and a number of new proposals were tabled during 2008/09. An agreement on cooperation in the Civil Service was concluded in October 2008.

It is envisaged that the conclusion of an MoU on economic cooperation will provide a basis to resolve outstanding trade issues between the two countries. The department also facilitated the provision of humanitarian assistance to the Gaza Strip through Egypt by the Gift of the Givers Organisation.

Tunisia

Political relations between South Africa and Tunisia remain strong. Tunisia views South Africa as a strategic partner on the continent and anticipates that the two countries should form closer economic, trade and cultural ties. In this regard, a successful ministerial meeting of the South Africa-Tunisia Joint Bilateral Committee (JBC) was held in September 2008 in Tunis.

The constructive medical exchange programme between South Africa and Tunisia also succeeded in a substantive manner in providing health services to rural communities in South Africa. A solid framework for cooperation between the SANDF and the Tunisian Defence Force was established during 2008, with the commencement of joint training for continental peacekeeping purposes.

Libya

High-level political dialogue regularly took place during 2008/09, particularly on the AU and other multilateral issues. Former President Motlanthe visited Tripoli in December 2008 to discuss African unity, including peace and security issues pertaining to the African Agenda. Although a South Africa-Libya JBC is functioning at ministerial level, the JBC has not convened since its inception in 2002.

The two sides agreed during 2008 to reinvigorate the strategic focus of bilateral relations in terms of the conclusion and implementation of outstanding bilateral agreements, cooperation and synergy on matters relating to the peace and security agenda of the AU and the resolution of conflicts in Africa, as well as the socio-economic reconstruction and development programme of the continent.

Morocco

Relations between Morocco and South Africa remained strained during 2008 as a result of South Africa's principled position on the issue of the illegal occupation of Western Sahara. The conflict around Africa's last colony remains a priority and South Africa bases its policy objectives on the following principles in support of stabilisation efforts in Western Sahara:

- promote the right to self-determination of the Saharawi people as enshrined in the UN Charter
- support for the principle of decolonisation and the sanctity of colonial borders
- respect for international humanitarian law and the promotion of universal human rights
- support for international legality and multilateralism in the resolution of conflict
- oppose exploitation of natural resources of the occupied territory
- support for sustainable humanitarian and development assistance to the Saharawi people
- promote the integration and security and stability of the Maghreb region.

Mauritania

The establishment of a South African diplomatic mission in Nouakchott was consolidated during 2008 with the deployment of a resident ambassador.

Following the military coup in August 2008, relations between South Africa and Mauritania took a strain due to the suspension of the latter from the AU and the imposition of targeted sanctions by the AU PSC.

South Africa has demanded a return to constitutional order in the country and subsequently recalled its ambassador.

Côte d'Ivoire

South Africa established full diplomatic relations with Côte d'Ivoire in May 1992. South Africa continues to promote the restoration of peace and stability in that country.

In this regard, South Africa's mediation efforts, under the auspices of the AU, culminated in the signing of the Pretoria Agreement in April 2005.

South Africa continues to support peace efforts in Côte d'Ivoire.

Sudan

South Africa and Sudan enjoy good bilateral relations and South Africa is the chair of the AU Ministerial Committee on Post-Conflict Reconstruction and Development of the Sudan. The opening of the South African Consulate in Juba, in April 2009, will consolidate South Africa's presence in the Sudan and strengthen the support for peace efforts and the implementation of the post-conflict reconstruction and development-related projects in Southern Sudan, including the implementation of the comprehensive peace agreement, which was signed in 2005, marking an end to the civil war in that country.

The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Ms Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, accompanied by the Minister for Monitoring and Evaluation in The Presidency, Mr Collins Chabane, and senior government officials, visited Khartoum and Juba in Sudan during September 2009.

During the visit, the minister held discussions with her Sudanese counterpart on post-conflict reconstruction and development, the conflict in Darfur, the 2010 election and other matters related to the implementation of the Sudan Comprehensive Peace Agreement. Minister Nkoana-Mashabane participated in the High-Level Conference on the role of the international community in the implementation of the Sudan Comprehensive Peace Agreement Conference organised by the United States of America (USA) in June 2009.

The Darfur conflict was the main focus of the Special Session of the Assembly of the AU in Libya on 31 August 2009, with the theme *Consideration and Resolution of Conflicts in Africa*. South Africa has also deployed troops and civilian police to Darfur as part of the UN-AU Mission in Darfur.

The AU High-Level Panel on Darfur was held in consultation with various stakeholders from all sections of the Darfurian society to find a compre-

hensive and lasting solution to the conflict in that country. The panel was expected to hand over its report to the AU in September 2009.

In October 2009, Deputy President Motlanthe, supported by Minister Chabane and senior government officials, undertook a working visit to the Sudan.

The visit took place within the context of the advancement of the African Agenda and South Africa's commitment to assist the Sudanese people in efforts to restore peace and contribute to the post-conflict reconstruction of Sudan.

President Salva Kiir Mayadirt of the Government of Southern Sudan also paid a working visit to South Africa.

Liberia

In March 2009, the former Minister of Minerals and Energy, Ms Buyelwa Sonjica, led a South African delegation to the International Colloquium on Women's Empowerment, Leadership Development, International Peace and Security 2009, which took place in Monrovia, Liberia.

The colloquium, conceptualised in 2006 during the inauguration of Africa's first female President, Ms Ellen Johnson Sirleaf, brought together 400 international participants and 400 Liberian national participants.

Nigeria

In 2009, South Africa and Nigeria celebrated 10 years of formal and good diplomatic relations. Nigeria is one of South Africa's largest trading partners on the African continent.

Former South African Deputy President, Ms Baleka Mbete, co-chaired the second Review Council Meeting of the South Africa-Nigeria BNC with her Nigerian counterpart, Vice-President Dr Goodluck Jonathan, in February 2009.

The second Review Council Meeting followed a meeting of senior officials, which focused on:

- the status of bilateral political, economic and trade relations between the two countries
- strengthening the structures of the BNC
- activities for the commemoration of the 10-year anniversary of the BNC
- political, socio-economic and continental and regional developments
- issues of global interest.

In October 2009, Deputy President Motlanthe hosted the 10th anniversary celebrations of the South Africa-Nigeria BNC. Vice-President Jonathan was part of the activities, which promoted trade and investment and aimed at building cooperation between South Africa and Nigeria.

Deputy President Motlanthe also attended the 10th anniversary celebrations of the BNC in Abujo, Nigeria, in November 2009.

Ghana

Diplomatic relations were established between Ghana and South Africa in 1994.

South Africa and Ghana have agreements in the areas of mining, defence, taxation, investment and aviation.

In January 2009, the former South African Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Dlamini Zuma, represented South Africa during the inauguration ceremony of President-elect, Prof. John Atta Mills. At the same time, South Africa reaffirmed its commitment to work together with Ghana for the political unity and integration of the African continent within the framework of the AU and through support for Nepad.

Burkina Faso

South Africa and Burkina Faso established non-resident diplomatic relations in May 1995. In 2006, South Africa established a diplomatic mission in Burkina Faso.

Although Burkina Faso has limited exploitable resources, opportunities exist for South African mining companies to mine gold, zinc and manganese. Since agriculture is the dominant industry, opportunities exist for the trade of various agricultural products. Trade between the two countries is limited.

Benin

Diplomatic relations were established between Benin and South Africa in May 1994. South Africa and Benin maintain good bilateral relations. The two countries signed a general cooperation agreement in October 2003. They have, among other things, identified agriculture, arts and culture, and justice as areas of corporation.

An embassy was opened in Cotonou in February 2007. Benin opened an embassy in

The evolution of South African foreign policy ushered in an era of trilateral cooperation whose practical expression is found in the developmental projects that South Africa is undertaking in various parts of the continent. These range from the electricity-generation project in Guinea-Conakry, the rice and vegetable production project conducted jointly with the Government of Vietnam in Guinea-Conakry, the India-Brazil-South Africa livestock development and agricultural project in Guinea-Bissau, to the Cuban Medical Brigade in Mali.

Pretoria in 1999. An agreement to develop and formulate procedures for military cooperation between South Africa and Benin, was signed in June 2008.

The agreement also includes promoting the training of military personnel through the exchange of trainees, instructors and observers.

Republic of Togo

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Togo were established in 1997. South Africa and Togo maintain good bilateral relations.

The South African Ambassador to Abidjan, Côte d'Ivoire, is accredited on a non-residential basis to Togo.

Cape Verde

South Africa and Cape Verde established diplomatic relations in 1994. South Africa's ambassador to Senegal is also accredited as South Africa's non-resident ambassador to Cape Verde, while the Cape Verdean ambassador to Angola is accredited to South Africa as non-resident ambassador.

In line with expanding South Africa's effort to expand its diplomatic reach on the African continent, regular interaction with Cape Verde is envisaged in the coming years, including exploring mutually beneficial business opportunities.

The Gambia

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and The Gambia were established in August 1998. While South Africa's ambassador to Senegal is accredited to The Gambia as non-resident ambassador, the Gambian ambassador to the AU in Addis Ababa is accredited to South Africa as that country's non-resident ambassador. South Africa maintains an honorary consul office in The Gambia to look after South African interests.

Guinea

Diplomatic relations were established with the Republic of Guinea in 1995. South Africa opened a diplomatic mission in Conakry in November 2005.

Guinea-Bissau

South Africa opened a diplomatic mission in Guinea-Bissau in February 2008. The opening of the diplomatic mission will contribute to the strengthening of bilateral relations between South Africa and Guinea-Bissau.

South Africa is also a member of the Country-Specific Configuration on Guinea-Bissau with the UN Peace-Building Commission. As part of this group, South Africa strives to mobilise the international community to contribute to the rebuilding of that country, in both political and economic terms.

In September 2008, a framework cooperation agreement was signed between South Africa and Guinea-Bissau.

Mali

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Mali were established in 1994. The latter established an embassy in Pretoria in December 1995. A South African embassy was established in Bamako in November 2002, and the first South African ambassador to Mali was appointed in November 2003.

The two countries are committed to promoting democracy and good governance, and there is substantial South African involvement in the Malian gold-mining sector.

Mali is a strong supporter of the African Renaissance initiative and Nepad. In August 2002, the Agreement on the Preservation of the Ancient Manuscripts in the Ahmed Baba Institute of Higher Learning and Islamic Research in Timbuktu was concluded between the two countries. South Africa is supporting a project aimed at improving the preservation of these ancient manuscripts.

They vary in content from religious treatises and poems to documentary letters dealing with legal and commercial matters, while others relate to slavery, mathematics, astronomy, medicine and history – all of them subjects of immense interest to scholars and the African population at large. Three major objectives of the project are to:

- implement a conservation programme to protect and improve environmental storage conditions for the manuscripts
- rebuild the Ahmed Baba Centre to one of international stature while ensuring its architectural harmony with ancient Timbuktu
- promote academic study and public awareness of the magnificent and ancient African and Islamic heritage at Timbuktu.

In January 2009, former President Motlanthe attended the official opening of a new facility that was built in Mali to preserve the manuscripts.

Senegal

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Senegal are based mainly on the Senegalese Government's strong support for the African Renaissance initiative and Nepad, and its strong commitment to promoting democracy and good governance.

In September 2009, the Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Mr Ebrahim Ebrahim, co-chaired the South Africa-China Strategic Dialogue Forum with his counterpart from the People's Republic of China (PRC), Assistant Minister Zhai Jun.

The South Africa-China Strategic Dialogue Forum is an annual consultation between South Africa and the PRC.

Accordingly, the 2009/10 session of the forum examined ways to further build on strong relations by focusing, among other things, on:

- reviewing bilateral relations
- African issues and China's policy towards Africa
- multilateral cooperation and international developments.

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Senegal were established in May 1994 and the two countries' representative offices were upgraded to embassy level.

The former Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Dlamini Zuma, co-chaired the inaugural session of the South Africa-Senegal Joint Commission for Bilateral Cooperation, with her Senegalese counterpart, Dr Cheikh Tidiane Gadio, on 30 April 2008. During the session, the two countries agreed to cooperate in various areas.

The session also enabled the signing of the bilateral Defence Cooperation Agreement. Agreements on sports cooperation, agriculture, livestock development and minerals and energy were signed in 2008.

Sierra Leone

South Africa and Sierra Leone established diplomatic relations in 1998. The South African ambassador in Côte d'Ivoire was accredited to Sierra Leone in December 2002.

Although the country remains poor, various accomplishments towards promoting democracy and development have been achieved.

Niger

Diplomatic relations were established between Niger and South Africa in May 1994. South Africa and Niger maintain good bilateral relations.

South Africa is represented in Niger on a non-residential basis by its ambassador in Côte d'Ivoire. Niger is represented in South Africa by its ambassador in Ethiopia.

Relations with Asia and the Middle East

The People's Republic of China

The South Africa-China bilateral relationship continues to be one of the most dynamic partnerships of its kind. During 2008, South Africa and China celebrated 10 years of diplomatic relations, which were observed through a series of high-level political and economic exchanges; journalistic exchanges; think-tank seminars and academic engagements; as well as trade expos; cultural shows; and a hospitality suite in China.

In 2009, South Africa started its preparations for participating in the Shanghai World Expo 2010, under the theme *Better Cities, Better Life* where it will have a national pavilion of 2 000 m^2 that will allow the country to be showcased as a modern, vibrant economy. Regarded as the Olympics of economy and S&T, the expo will also afford South Africa the platform to promote the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ and leverage further opportunities for trade and FDI.

During 2008/09, the countries also continued to work on common positions through coordinated high-level meetings between President Hu Jintao and former President Motlanthe to address the global financial crisis. The two countries shared ideas on how to deal with peace, security and developmental challenges on the African continent. In this regard, the Forum for China-Africa Cooperation Senior Officials meeting in Egypt and the launch of the offices of the China-Africa Development Fund (CADF) were among some of the significant developments.

More opportunities for Chinese investment into Africa opened up with the announcement that China was to bolster the CADF by an additional R19,8 billion. The state-run equity fund had already invested in 20 projects, totalling R3,9 billion in Africa since it was established in June 2007. The CADF opened its first South African office in Johannesburg in March 2009. The CADF set up offices in more African countries to accelerate the level of mutual cooperation. This was a major step for Sino-African cooperation and a positive sign for economic development in Africa.

The fund, which is the first of its kind, was launched after Chinese President Jintao made a pledge in 2006 to increase Chinese aid to Africa. The president was speaking at the China-Africa Cooperation Summit held in Beijing.

China planned to double its assistance to Africa by 2009. This encompassed an amount of R29,8 million in preferential loans, R19,9 million in preferential buyers' credits to Africa, the establishment of the R49,7-billion CADF and the waiving of debts owed to China by a number of poor African countries.

In 2008, the Industrial and Commercial Bank of China acquired a 20% stake in Standard Bank. The deal, valued at R54 billion was the largest single investment into South Africa, and was also China's biggest financial investment ever. China had also invested in the mining, construction and motoring sectors, as well as the electronic goods industry in South Africa, its major trading partner on the continent. South Africa, in turn, has several major investments in China.

Central and East Asia

Japan

In 2008/09, South Africa's bilateral relationship with Japan continued to expand across a wide spectrum and is strengthened with regular interaction under the auspices of the Partnership Forum. The forum provides a framework for continued discussions on various areas of cooperation to strengthen, develop and broaden bilateral relations.

Japan hosted South Africa at the ninth Partnership Forum meeting in Tokyo in January 2009.

South Africa continued to place high priority on economic diplomacy in its relations with Japan, which is an important source of FDI and tourism.

In 2008, Japan remained South Africa's largest trading partner worldwide.

On the multilateral front, the Tokyo International Conference on African Development (TICAD) is aimed at promoting high-level policy dialogue between African leaders and development partners.

The TICAD also seeks to mobilise support for African-owned development initiatives. As such, Japan promoted African socio-economic development in line with AU and Nepad priority projects, through ODA and financing provided in terms of the TICAD programme of action.

At TICAD IV in May 2008, "Africa's Voice" was reflected in the Yokohama Declaration and an outcomes document (OD) was adopted for the first time in the 15-year history of the TICAD process.

A follow-up mechanism to monitor the implementation of the OD was also adopted.

In March 2009, the TICAD IV ministerial follow-up meeting was held in Gaborone, Botswana, to report on the implementation of the TICAD IV OD and to formulate a common message to the G20 London Summit on the impact of the global economic crisis on Africa.

In spite of the global economic crisis, Japan has continued with financial support for African development and committed itself to doubling ODA to and private investment in Africa by 2012.

South Africa is not eligible for Japanese grant-aid but benefited through capacity-building training of officials through the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) and Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa) focused activities of the Japan International Cooperation Agency in South Africa.

Volunteers also provide educational training, especially in Mathematics and Science.

The Republic of Korea (Rok)

Relations between South Africa and the Rok continue to be enhanced through regular interaction under the auspices of the Policy Consultative Forum.

The Rok hosted South Africa at the fourth Policy Consultative Forum in Seoul in December 2008. Trade relations between the two countries remain strong with the Rok becoming South Africa's fourth-largest trading partner in Asia.

As part of Korea's contribution to Jipsa, the Rok has offered a number of skills-training opportunities to the South African youth.

The Rok demonstrated a growing commitment to Africa, and hosted the Korea-Africa Economic Conference in October 2008, during which development assistance agreements were concluded with nine African states. These include: infrastructure development, sustainable natural-resources development, agriculture and rural development and capacity-building for information and communications technology excellence.

Democratic People's Republic of Korea (DPRK)

Relations between South Africa and the DPRK are cordial. In 2008, the two countries celebrated six years of diplomatic relations.

Central Asia

The economies of Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, Turkmenistan, Kyrgyzstan and Tajikistan are all at various stages of change and development.

Diplomatic representation has been established with that country and a senior delegation from the then Department of Foreign Affairs paid a working visit to that country in December 2008.

Discussions with the ministry included mechanisms to strengthen the bilateral relationship in both political and economic fields.

New Asian-African Strategic Partnership

South Africa and Indonesia were instrumental in the launch of the NAASP in Bandung in 2005 on the 50th anniversary of the Asia-Africa (Bandung) Conference, which cemented Afro-Asian solidarity. NAASP represents a commitment to help build closer economic and development cooperation between Africa and Asia.

A conference on capacity-building for Palestine (a joint initiative by the NAASP and co-chaired by Indonesia and South Africa) took place in 2008 in Indonesia. Almost 220 participants from 56 countries participated in the conference.

The first NAASP Summit is due to be held in South Africa during 2010.

Indian Ocean Rim-Association for Regional Cooperation (IOR-ARC)

The IOR-ARC is a multilateral organisation comprising countries that share a shoreline along the Indian Ocean. It was launched in March 1997 in Mauritius to focus mainly on trade-related issues. The IOR-ARC plays an important role as building block for the promotion of South-South cooperation and for complementing African-Asian regional integration.

South Africa has given its full weight to the economic and strategic significance of the Indian Ocean Rim, and to the importance of regional cooperation in fulfilling the region's substantial economic potential.

South Africa's total trade with IOR countries stands at more than R140 billion. The ninth annual Council of Ministers Meeting took place in Yemen in June 2009.

South Africa, India and Brazil (IBSA)

In 1999/00, the idea of South-South cooperation as a counterpoint to the G8 was conceptualised among a number of heads of state and government from developing countries. Following this, trilateral consultations between South Africa, India and Brazil were formally launched in Brasilia on 6 June 2003.

The main objectives of the IBSA Dialogue Forum are to:

- promote South-South dialogue and co-operation on global political and multilateral issues of importance
- promote trade and investment opportunities between the three regions
- exchange information, expertise, technologies and skills
- promote intragovernmental cooperation in a broad range of areas, including agriculture, climate change/environment, culture, defence, education, energy, health, human settlements, information society, public administration, revenue administration, S&T, social development, trade and investment, tourism and transport.

The first IBSA Summit took place in Brasilia in 2006, the second in South Africa in 2007 and the third in New Delhi in 2008. In May 2008, the first joint IBSA naval exercises took place in South African waters. The next summit took place in Brazil in October 2009, where the emphasis was on finding ways to enhance implementation of the 20 bilateral agreements already signed by this tripartite initiative.

Apart from strengthening trilateral cooperation, IBSA countries are committed to collective efforts to reform the UN Security Council (UNSC), as well as the international financial architecture and to take joint steps to mitigate the effects of the global financial crisis.

The three countries have also agreed to redouble their efforts to promote transport interconnectivity through the adoption of cooperative maritime and aviation frameworks that will assist in facilitating the new intra-IBSA trade target of US$25 billion by 2015.

The IBSA Facility Fund for Hunger and Poverty Alleviation focuses on poverty-alleviation initiatives to benefit developing countries most in need. In 2006, IBSA received the South-South Alliance Award at the South-South Partnership Awards ceremony in New York for "spearheading the transformation of South-South concepts of development into action through strategic public-private partnership alliances". In addition to the already implemented and operational projects in Haiti (solid waste management) and Guinea-Bissau (agricultural development), projects in Cape Verde (safe drinking water and rehabilitation of a community centre); Palestine (sports facility); Lao People's Republic (watershed management); and Burundi (HIV and AIDS capacity-building) were approved during 2008.

Minister Nkoana-Mashabane, the Minister of External Affairs of India, Mr SM Krishna, and the Minister of External Relations of Brazil, Ambassador Celso Amorim, met in Brasilia on 31 August and 1 September 2009 for the sixth IBSA Trilateral Ministerial Commission.

In October 2009, President Zuma undertook a state visit to Brazil, supported by several ministers and senior government officials.

South Asia

Key countries in the region are India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh and Afghanistan, all with which South Africa has cordial and growing relations. The escalation of terrorist activities in the region, apart from the conflict in Afghanistan and its spill-over into Pakistan, has become a major concern as it threatens regional stability and economic growth, as well as international security. The civil war in Sri Lanka has ended. However, a lasting political solution still needs to be secured.

In line with strengthening South Africa's bilateral political and economic ties with Sri Lanka, a full high commission with a resident high commissioner was established in January 2008.

The opening of a fully fledged South African high commission in Colombo was based on growing bilateral trade links, historic links with the Tamil community in South Africa and a desire to contribute to the peaceful resolution of conflict in Sri Lanka, as well as the importance of the island state in multilateral affairs and within the South Asian region.

With the opening of South Africa's high commission in Sri Lanka, diplomatic relations with Bangladesh were no longer covered by the South African high commission in India, but by the South African mission in Colombo.

Bilateral trade between South Africa and India has continued to grow since the establishment of diplomatic relations between the two countries after South Africa's democratisation. India is one of South Africa's top 10 trading partners globally.

India is South Africa's dominant political and economic partner in the South Asian region – both within bilateral and multilateral contexts. Bilateral trade relations continue to strengthen, as the ever-increasing trade volumes between the two countries suggest (up from R22 billion in 2007 to R47 billion in 2008).

The seventh session of the Joint Ministerial Commission (JMC) took place in Pretoria in February 2008 and demonstrated India's commitment to cooperation with South Africa in many areas of mutual interest, especially in the area of support to HR development.

The inaugural Africa-India Summit in April 2008 was witness to the possible advent of a welcome opening of Indian markets for African products. The forum aims to develop a sustainable partnership based on the joint acceptance of globalisation and the establishment of a strong commitment to the development and industrialisation of Africa.

Its important components are to engage through revolving lines of credit, capacity-building programmes and supporting Africa in attaining the MDGs.

Following the Mumbai terrorist attacks and the March 2009 attack on the Sri Lanka cricket team in Pakistan, the Indian Premier League cricket tournament was moved to South Africa, confirming the strong bilateral relations, and especially substantial two-way tourism growth between South Africa and India.

South-East Asia

The regional grouping, the Association of South-East Asian Nations (Asean), has emerged as one of the most important groupings within the Asia Pacific region. South Africa maintains resident missions in six of the 10 member states of Asean, namely in Indonesia, Malaysia, Singapore, Thailand, Vietnam and the Philippines. These six Asean states, as well as Myanmar (Burma), also maintain resident missions in South Africa.

There has been an exchange of state visits between South Africa and countries of the region since the normalisation of relations post-1994. During 2008/09, bilateral relations with South-East Asia remained steady and cordial and were further strengthened through numerous ministerial visits to the region for either bilateral purposes or to attend international meetings.

There are many long-term trade and investment opportunities for South African companies in the region. Trade with South-East Asia continues to grow, totalling around R18 billion annually in 2007.

Thailand has emerged as the most important trading partner. Indonesia, with its population of almost 250 million, offers interesting market opportunities. Singapore has important investments in the Coega project in the Eastern Cape, and in the ship-building project at Richards Bay in KwaZulu-Natal.

The trilateral project between South Africa, Vietnam and the Republic of Guinea relating to the production of rice and vegetables in Guinea was implemented during 2008. It is progressing well, contributing to food security in Africa and is receiving international interest.

The ruling party in South Africa has long-standing solidarity links with the present Government of Timor Leste and is eager to assist that country in its reconstruction. While South Africa served as a non-permanent member of the UNSC from 2007 to 2008, it was appointed as Lead Nation on Timor

Leste. At the UN General Assembly (UNGA) 63, South Africa signed the Framework Agreement for Technical Cooperation with Timor Leste, paving the way to assist the country in its development.

The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation hosted her counterpart from Timor Leste, Dr Zacarias da Costa, during an official visit in August 2009.

South Africa deals with Myanmar mostly through multilateral organisations. Following the devastating cyclone that struck Myanmar in May 2008, South Africa made a donation to the UN's humanitarian system to alleviate the plight of the people of Myanmar.

Australasia and the Pacific islands

Relations with Australia and New Zealand have shown sound development over the years, with strong growth trends in terms of trade and tourism. Total bilateral trade with Australasia and the Pacific Islands increased by 47% from R16 billion to R23 billion between 2004 and 2007.

Similarly, tourism showed an increase of more than 10% annually and visitors from Australasia constitute nearly half the total number of tourists from Asia and the Middle East.

Australia and New Zealand have been significant recipients of South African emigrants over the past 16 years. These two countries have become home to an estimated 130 000 and 60 000 South African emigrants, respectively.

From an economic point of view, Australia is South Africa's most significant partner in the region. In 2007, Australia was South Africa's 12th-largest export and 16th-largest import market.

South Africa and Australia established diplomatic relations in 1947 and enjoy cordial political and economic ties. As campaigns for the international isolation of South Africa intensified in the 1970s and 1980s, successive Australian governments placed Australia firmly in the anti-apartheid camp, supporting UN resolutions against apartheid and implementing the oil, trade and arms embargo as well as a sports boycott against South Africa.

Since 1994, political, economic and social links between the two countries have improved significantly. A South Africa-Australian JMC came into being with the signing of a joint communiqué by the respective ministers of trade in July 1997.

In 2006, former Deputy President Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka led a delegation to Australia and New Zealand to reinvigorate the relationship. As a result, Australia offers 10 annual scholarships and five fellowships to South Africans in terms of Jipsa. Australia's Federal Parliamentary Secretary for International Development Assistance visited South Africa in September 2008.

Senior officials meetings (SOMs) have been held on a regular basis since 2004. The political relationship has been further strengthened through visits by numerous high-level delegations to Australia to gain expertise in their different fields and to exchange knowledge to enhance capacity-building in central, provincial and local-government structures.

South Africa and Australia enjoy wide-ranging multilateral relations. Both – together with New Zealand, Argentina, Chile and Uruguay – are members of the Valdivia Group (Group of Temperate Southern Hemisphere Countries on Environment), which aims to promote southern-hemisphere views in international environmental meetings and enhance scientific cooperation. They enjoy a close working relationship within the context of the Antarctic Treaty and Indian Ocean fisheries, and also interact regularly within the context of the World Trade Organisation (WTO) and the Cairns Group.

South Africa and Australia also work closely on Commonwealth issues, particularly those affecting Africa.

On 26 February 2009, South Africa and Australia issued a joint communiqué, committing to enhance collaboration in the development of a coordinated scientific and technical programme for the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) pathfinder telescopes, the South African pathfinder MeerKAT and the Australian SKA pathfinder.

South Africa and Australia continue their high level of cooperation in sport matters after the signing in May 2009 of an agreement of co-operation that will benefit both countries.

Australia assists with several successful sport-development programmes, particularly in the Eastern Cape and the agreement will see the aligning of those programmes with the policies and programmes of Sport and Recreation South Africa.

The agreement focuses on the exchange of information, particularly in the fields of coaching, technical sport matters and Australia's expertise in stadium and sport-facility management.

New Zealand has a high commission in Pretoria. The South African high commission in Wellington was opened in April 2009.

Since 1994, political, economic and social links between the two countries have improved significantly. In 1996, the Cape Town Communiqué

was signed, seeking to strengthen cooperation between South Africa and New Zealand. New Zealand's former Prime Minister, Ms Helen Clark, visited South Africa in 2006 to attend the Progressive Summit.

In February 2008, the former Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Dlamini Zuma, held bilateral discussions with her counterpart from New Zealand, Mr Winston Peters. The fourth SOMs between South Africa and New Zealand were hosted by South Africa in October 2008.

The two countries also work closely on Commonwealth issues, particularly those affecting Africa.

The South African Government has strengthened relations with the Pacific Islands region, opening a resident high commission in Suva, Fiji, in 2006.

The high commissioner in Canberra, Australia, has been accredited to the Cook Islands, Federated States of Micronesia, the Republic of Marshall Islands, the Republic of Vanuatu and the Independent State of Samoa.

Relations with the Middle East

South Africa and Qatar enjoy good bilateral relations dating back to 1994. Qatar contains oil reserves of 15,21 billion barrels, while its natural gas reserves exceed 25 trillion cubic meters.

The first round of bilateral consultations were held in February 2009 with the Assistant Foreign Minister for Follow-Up Affairs of the State of Qatar, Mr Mohammed Al-Rumaihi.

Kuwait has become an increasingly important market for South African exports and several Kuwaiti companies have made major multimillion-rand investments in the construction and development of hotels and real estate in South Africa, as well as on the JSE Limited.

The third session of the South Africa-Saudi Arabia Joint Commission (JC) was held in February 2009 in Johannesburg. The JC, which promotes multilayered relations between the two countries, had a special focus on trade and investment initiatives.

During the JC, a joint business council was established to promote commercial relations between South Africa and Saudi Arabia. To enhance scientific and technological cooperation, an agreement on cooperation in the field of S&T was also signed.

Since the re-establishment of diplomatic relations with the Islamic Republic of Iran in May 1994, South Africa and that country have shared mutually beneficial trade and political relations.

In July 2008, former Minister Dlamini Zuma attended the 10th session of the South Africa-Iran JC in Tehran. The JC serves as a vehicle to promote and advance bilateral cooperation in the areas of drug trafficking, disaster management, health, housing, arts and culture, tourism, sport, investment, mining, S&T, agriculture, labour, transport and energy.

The fourth South Africa-Iran Deputy Ministerial Working Group was held in September 2009 in Teheran.

South Africa and the Sultanate of Oman established diplomatic relations in 1995 and, with a view to strengthening relations, a number of bilateral agreements have been signed, which include an S&T cooperation agreement, an MoU in the field of law, as well an agreement on double taxation and the prevention of fiscal evasion.

The United Arab Emirates (UAE) and South Africa have enjoyed good bilateral relations since the formal establishment of diplomatic relations in 1994. This bilateral relationship has been characterised by several high-level visits and a high degree of trade and economic interaction, with thrice daily flights between Dubai and Johannesburg and a large South African expatriate community in the UAE.

With regard to the Middle East Peace Process, South Africa supports just, equitable and comprehensive peace between Israel and Palestine and an end to the illegal occupation of land that has led to conflict and violence between the peoples of the region.

Peace and security for the Israelis and the Palestinians cannot be achieved without the fulfilment of the inalienable right of the Palestinian people to self-determination within their own sovereign state.

South Africa has continued to call on all parties to the conflict in Israel and Palestine to avoid actions that could add to an already volatile situation. The country has been consistent in calling for the immediate implementation of the Road Map, without preconditions, to achieve comprehensive and lasting peace between Israel and Palestine.

South Africa has been supporting all international efforts to help the people of Palestine and Israel in their endeavour to find lasting peace. In this regard, South Africa has supported resolutions in the UNSC and in the UNGA, calling for parties to take certain steps to normalise the situation and for an end to Israeli settlement activity in the occupied Palestinian Territory.

South Africa has also voiced its concern with respect to the continued blockade of Gaza and

has urged all parties within Gaza and the occupied West Bank and Israel, to find a solution to the insurmountable suffering being experienced by ordinary people on the ground. South Africa strongly condemned the Israeli war against Gaza.

Relations with the Americas

United States of America

The overall bilateral relationship with the USA remains strong with cooperation expanding on matters of common interest and mutual benefit.

The election of President Barack Obama in August 2008 presents new opportunities for the bilateral relationship and global interactions in coordinating a response to serious challenges.

Efforts within the bilateral relationship to enhance cooperation on issues of mutual importance were underscored by various high-level visits and included the visit of US Secretary of State, Ms Hillary Clinton, to South Africa in 2009.

Minister Nkoana-Mashabane participated in the African Growth Opportunity Act (AGOA) deliberations, which took place in Kenya during August 2009. Under the AGOA:

- South Africa is one of the three beneficiaries, the others being Nigeria and Angola
- South Africa's exports to the USA are the most diversified when compared to other sub-Saharan African countries' exports
- bilateral trade between the USA and South Africa is boosted and it is estimated that about 98% of South African and other sub-Saharan African countries' exports to the USA receive preferential treatment.

In May 2008, the South Africa-USA Annual Bilateral Forum was held to assess the progress made on bilateral cooperation activities, to identify areas for further cooperation enhancement and to address the challenges of the bilateral relationship.

Through the global economic slowdown, South Africa remained one of the USA's leading trading partners in Africa with trade amounting to about R100 billion, and South Africa enjoying a trade surplus of about R20 billion. In addition, the Trade and Investment Development Cooperation Agreement was signed on 14 July 2008.

The USA has further played a supportive role in South Africa's efforts in its fight against communicable and infectious diseases, especially in the context of the President's Emergency Plan for AIDS relief, which received a commitment of R4,3 billion in 2008.

South Africa and the USA have also had continued interaction regarding military medical research within the Phidisa Programme, and the African Contingency Operations Training Assistance Programme, which is aimed at enhancing peacekeeping and humanitarian assistance.

Another important pillar of South Africa's relations with the USA is "people-to-people" interaction where a wide range of individuals and institutions continue to interact on a regular basis.

Canada

In May 2008, the fifth bilateral annual consultations (ACs) between South Africa and Canada took place in Pretoria. The AC is the primary forum in which issues of mutual interest and concern receive specific focus. It also serves to direct and focus all areas of cooperation between South Africa and Canada for the year. The agenda continued to increase in terms of scope, including issues such as Africa, peace and security cooperation, trade and investment, mining and nuclear cooperation, S&T, arts and culture, policing and capacity-building in the context of Jipsa and AsgiSA. There was progress on the draft mutual customs cooperation and bilateral nuclear cooperation agreements and a sports-exchange programme, including cooperation on the hosting of sport events such as the 2010 World Cup, was signed.

A steady growth in regular high-level visits in both directions further serves to cement and expand the mutually beneficial interaction in all spheres.

Canada's ODA to South Africa is aimed at fostering social upliftment, policy development, welfare transformation, training programmes, capacity-building, education and skills exchange. For the period 2008 to 2013, the amount of Canadian ODA to South Africa amounts to R250 million.

Canada is one of the largest foreign direct investors in South Africa to the amount of about R30 billion. South Africa is Canada's major trading partner in sub-Saharan Africa.

The implementation of a trade and investment round-table consultative process was recognised as a significant step in creating a dedicated and hands-on approach to address the trade and investment relationship between South Africa and Canada. It was also agreed that a similar approach be adopted with mining issues and the first mining round-table was held in November 2008.

At the time, Canada was one of the largest foreign investors in the South African mining sector, with 17 Canadian exploration and mining companies active in this country. Of the total Canadian FDI in South Africa, an estimated R14,5 billion represented capital assets in the mining sector.

Canada is particularly involved in Africa in areas such as the Great Lakes and Sudan. Canada was expected to invest up to R2 billion in Sudan during 2008/09 in security, diplomacy and aid.

The first South Africa-Canada bilateral co-operation projects in the region were also identified and implemented. South Africa and Canada also cooperated on preparations for the Ghana Conference on Aid Effectiveness.

The Caribbean

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the countries of the Caribbean (Caricom). The South African embassy in Cuba is accredited to the Dominican Republic, while the South African high commission in Kingston, Jamaica, is accredited to 15 Caricom countries. A high commission, headed by a *chargé d'affaires*, was established in Trinidad and Tobago in 2006.

The majority of the people of the Caribbean are of African descent and thus have strong historical and cultural links with the continent of Africa. South Africa's endeavour, in conjunction with the AU, to strengthen cooperation between Africa and the African Diaspora in the Caribbean, has given added impetus to bilateral and multilateral relations.

Trinidad and Tobago has vast resources of natural gas and is a manufacturing and transport hub in the region. In formulating South Africa's policy in relation to the emerging markets of the Caribbean, it is important to strengthen relations and develop common positions on global issues such as access to the markets of the industrial North, reform of international institutions and the promotion of the development agenda.

Jamaica, Trinidad and Tobago, the Dominican Republic and Suriname have established resident missions in South Africa.

The Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Mr Ebrahim Ebrahim, co-chaired the seventh South Africa-Cuba Joint Consultative Mechanism meeting in June 2009, in Havana, Cuba.

In September 2009, President Jacob Zuma, supported by a number of top government officials, visited Isla Margarita in Venezuela for the second Africa-South America Summit.

While in Venezuela, President Zuma also used the opportunity to hold bilateral meetings with his Latin American counterparts, Venezuela's President Hugo Chavez, Chilean President, Dr Michelle Bachelet, and Uruguay's President, Mr Tabare Vazquesz.

The European Union is South Africa's largest development partner, representing about 70% of all overseas development assistance, with South Africa earmarked to receive €980 million between 2007 and 2013. The European Investment Bank has also approved a loan mandate of €900 million for South Africa.

Latin America

The South American community of nations covers 17 million square kilometres, with 361 million inhabitants, a gross domestic product of more than US$973 billion and exports of more than US$180 billion.

The developing countries in Central America and the Andean Community are playing an increasingly important role in international political bodies and formations such as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) and the UN.

Bilateral relations with Latin America and the Caribbean will continue advancing the development agenda of the South and the strengthening of cooperation among developing countries through active participation in groupings of the South at regional, interregional and multilateral levels. Of particular importance is the need to build stronger and balanced relationships with Latin American countries.

Bilateral relations with Latin America will be used to enhance economic, scientific, technical and business opportunities through bilateral mechanisms such JBCs. Opportunities for interactions with the G5 will be monitored continually.

There is also significant potential for co-operation with the Mercosur (Southern Common Market) trading bloc, which consists of Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay, Uruguay and Venezuela as full members (Venezuela still to be ratified by Brazil and Paraguay), and a steadily increasing number of associate members in the Latin American region. A partial preferential trade agreement with the Mercosur was completed in mid-2008. Negotiations are expected to continue towards a full FTA.

Brazil remains a significant player in the multilateral context, particularly regarding the interests of the South. With its like-minded approach to a number of significant issues affecting the developing world, it remains a strategic partner for South Africa.

In the bilateral sphere, a broad range of contacts and exchanges are ongoing between Brazil and South Africa in a variety of fields.

President Zuma undertook a state visit to Brazil in October 2009, supported by several ministers and senior government officials. The visit took

place within the context of consolidating South-South cooperation, strengthening the existing bilateral ties and regional partnership and deepening cooperation on the trilateral and multilateral levels between South Africa and Brazil.

The JC with Brazil was held in Pretoria in 2009, as was the JMC.

A range of technical and commercial agreements are either in place or being negotiated with several of the countries in the region.

The second meeting of the South Africa-Argentine JC took place in Buenos Aires in December 2008, co-chaired by former Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Dlamini Zuma, and her Argentine counterpart, Mr Jorge Taiana.

Official and study visits to countries of the Southern Cone by ministers and officials are ongoing.

Relations with Europe

European Union

President Zuma co-chaired the second South Africa-EU Summit with his Swedish counterpart, Prime Minister Fredrik Reinfeldt, in September 2009 in Kleinmond, outside Cape Town.

The EU delegation was led by Mr Reinfeldt and included Mr José Manuel Barroso, President of the European Commission (EC), Dr Javier Solana, Secretary General of the Council of the EU and High Representative for Common Foreign and Security Policy, and other senior EU officials.

The primary objectives of these joint discussions were to further deepen South Africa-EU relations and to address issues of mutual interest and concern, including many of the key national priorities, namely health, education, rural development, job creation and combating crime.

The summit assessed progress on the implementation of the South Africa-EU strategic partnership. Other issues on the agenda of discussions included:

- the ongoing negotiations on the SADC-EU economic partnership agreements
- the global financial crisis
- climate change
- peace and security in Africa
- the Middle East
- preparations for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

A key outcome during the summit was the signing of the amending agreement to the South Africa-EU Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement (TDCA). The amending agreement included 35 new and revised non-trade chapter articles, which were negotiated following the mid-term review of the TDCA.

The summit was preceded by the ninth South Africa-EU Ministerial Troika meeting to discuss the implementation of the South Africa-EU strategic partnership joint action plan and future areas of cooperation, as well as EU-Africa relations and issues of peace and security in Africa.

African, Caribbean and Pacific (ACP) States-European Union relations

South Africa assumed full membership of the ACP group of countries in 1996. It became a qualified member of the Lomé Convention in 1997 and of its successor, the Cotonou Partnership Agreement (CPA), signed in Cotonou in June 2000.

The CPA is a framework for cooperation between the 78 countries of the ACP group and the EU. The new EU members that acceded in May 2004 adopted the agreement as part of the EU's legislative infrastructure.

Qualified membership means that South Africa is excluded from the trade regime provided in the agreement and from the provisions on ODA. South Africa can, however, tender for projects in all ACP countries and participate fully in all political instruments of the agreement. South Africa's economic relations with the EU are governed by the TDCA.

The CPA differs significantly from its predecessor in that its duration will be 20 years, with a revision clause every five years and a financial protocol for each five-year period. The agreement underscores the importance of regional economic cooperation.

The most far-reaching changes are to be introduced in the area of trade, through regional economic partnership agreements, where non-reciprocal preferences will be gradually abolished and regional integration processes encouraged. One of the key aspects of South Africa's membership of the ACP is its active participation in the three ACP-EU joint political organs, namely the Council of Ministers, the Joint Parliamentary Assembly and the Committee of Ambassadors.

South Africa takes part in dialogue on important issues such as peace-building, conflict resolution, respect for human rights, democratic principles and the rule of law. South Africa regularly participates in ACP summits, Council of Ministers' meetings, trade ministers' meetings and the ACP Forum on S&T.

The interest and commitment shown by the EU regarding the African continent and its development is encouraging. Within that context, the EC and the Nepad Secretariat are closely cooperating through established structures and

regular dialogue and information-sharing. They have also agreed to increase coherence between EU member states and the EC in support of Nepad projects, the AU and its institutions, and the RECs.

Benelux countries

The Benelux countries remain important trade and investment partners of South Africa, and major tourist-providers.

South Africa enjoys close political relations with the Netherlands and Belgium, and engages in substantial and fruitful cooperation partnerships with these countries.

The focus on establishing trilateral cooperation to promote peace, security and economic diplomacy are continuing, with special emphasis on initiatives in support of Jipsa and AsgiSA.

The Belgian Government continues to take a keen interest in South and southern Africa, and the Great Lakes Region, particularly the DRC.

There is a regular exchange of views between South Africa and Belgium on the issues and the complicated processes necessary to find durable solutions to the conflicts in the region.

In October 2007, the second session of the Belgium-South Africa JC was held in Pretoria, with the focus on bilateral political and economic relations, promotion of the African Agenda, development cooperation and collaboration within the context of the UNSC.

Cooperation with Flanders is very strong. A substantial portion of the total Flemish ODA budget is devoted to South Africa and the programme is in line with AsgiSA and Jipsa, especially in the areas of skills development and the development of small, medium and micro-enterprises.

The Dutch Government has consistently supported South Africa in terms of bilateral and multilateral relations. A large number of bilateral agreements have been signed and high-level bilateral ministerial meetings are held frequently.

In April 2008, former Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka led a government delegation on an official visit to the Netherlands. The visit served to strengthen bilateral relations and emphasised human development support from that country.

Luxembourg and South Africa enjoy good bilateral relations. High-level visits between the two countries take place regularly. The Deputy Prime Minister of Luxembourg, Mr Jean Asselborn, visited South Africa in November 2008. The visit served to strengthen bilateral and economic relations, especially in the financial services and funds sectors.

German-speaking countries

Since 1994, the relationship between South Africa and Germany has developed into a strong socio-economic and political partnership that has shown considerable growth in many areas.

In March 2009, the former South African Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Dlamini Zuma, visited Berlin for bilateral discussions with German Foreign Minister, Mr Frank-Walter Steinmeier.

The four-nation European visit was aimed at consolidating bilateral political, economic and trade relations with European countries while advancing North-South relations and consolidating the African Agenda. In this context, former Minister Dlamini Zuma visited Switzerland, the United Kingdom (UK), Germany and Denmark.

Discussions between Dr Dlamini Zuma and Minister Steinmeier focused on, among other things:

- a review of bilateral political, economic and trade relations between the two countries
- the forthcoming G20 meeting
- reform of the global financial architecture
- consolidation of the African Agenda
- preparations for the Confederations Cup and the 2010 World Cup.

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Germany remain sound, dynamic and wide-ranging. Relations cover a wide variety of issues, including investment and trade, S&T, defence, culture, environment, tourism, sport, development cooperation and energy.

Relations between South Africa and Switzerland have continued to grow since 1994. As a result of democratic changes in South Africa, Switzerland decided to grant South Africa special status on the Swiss foreign-policy agenda as one of the focus areas for Swiss interests outside Europe.

Bilateral relations with the Republic of Austria are sound. Besides engaging the Austrian Government at national level in support of development programmes, increased economic involvement, and support for the African Agenda, provincial partnerships with key Austrian provinces have also resulted in increased business ties and commitments to support training programmes for South African students. Closer cooperation in the field of renewable energies is expected to intensify in the future.

Nordic countries

South Africa enjoys good relations with all the Nordic countries (Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway and Sweden). Flowing from the strong grassroots support in these countries for demo-

cratisation in South Africa, relations have been established in virtually every field at both public and official levels. The scope of Nordic development cooperation is broad and has benefited civil society and government.

Relations in the international arena have seen close cooperation on multilateral issues. The Nordic countries are strong supporters of Nepad and are directly involved in conflict resolution and reconstruction projects in Africa. This was reinforced through the signing of the Declaration of Intent on Partnerships in Africa in June 2008, which laid a framework for future trilateral cooperation.

In March 2009, the former Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Dlamini Zuma, joined Nordic and African foreign ministers at the eighth session of the Nordic-African Informal Foreign Ministerial Meeting in Copenhagen. They discussed, among other things, climate change and its effects on Africa, peace and security challenges in Africa and UN issues.

South Africa and Denmark signed a Declaration on Bilateral Relations during the visit to South Africa in January 2009 by the Danish Foreign Minister, Ms Ulla Toernaes.

Minister Nkoana-Mashabane held a meeting with Ms Toernaes on the margins of the World Economic Forum on Africa, in Cape Town in June 2009.

Issues for discussion, among other things, included:

- bilateral cooperation between the two countries
- South Africa's candidature for the position of the Director-General of the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA)
- the situation in Zimbabwe
- Conference of the Parties (CoP15) of the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) and climate change.

Denmark was a very strong supporter of the anti-apartheid struggle and a major force in sanctions and disinvestment. In addition, Denmark has always had a very active development cooperation programme with South Africa, which was transformed into official assistance from 1995.

In the 2009 to 2013 programme, over R7 billion is being disbursed to projects ranging from water, energy, education, governance, the South African Police Service (SAPS), and support to business and HIV and AIDS. Denmark remains a strong supporter of Nepad and African development.

Denmark hosted the UNFCCC in Copenhagen in December 2009.

At the end of November 2009, King Harald V and Queen Sonja of Norway paid a state visit to South Africa. They were accompanied by a delegation of more that 100 business leaders. A number of bilateral agreements were signed that will improve cooperation between South Africa and Norway.

United Kingdom and Ireland

The UK is one of the largest foreign direct investors into South Africa and consistently occupies the third position in terms of South African exports. With the number of tourists per year approaching half a million, the UK is also South Africa's most important overseas tourism market.

The UK, through its Department for International Development as implementing arm, seeks to promote development and reduce poverty in Africa and spends on average £20 million a year in South Africa. The UK took the lead initiatives in putting the plight of Africa on the agenda of the G8 discussions held in the UK in 2005, advocating for additional resource requirements to tackle poverty and vulnerability in Africa.

This was continued through the UK Government's hosting of the "London Summit" in April 2009, which focused on the alleviation of the effects of the global financial crisis on developing nations.

South Africa's relationship with the UK covers a wide spectrum and remains sound. The main areas of cooperation are political, trade and investment, security, defence, finance, tourism and other technical sectors. The defence relationship remains important for the strategic interest of both countries. The UK contributed R2,3 million to the establishment of the South African National Peace Mission Training Centre in Pretoria.

The eighth meeting of the South Africa-UK Bilateral Forum was held in Pretoria in July 2008. The MoU on the Reciprocal Exchange of Healthcare Concepts and Personnel was signed on this occasion.

Former Irish Prime Minister, Mr Bertie Ahern, paid a working visit to South Africa in January 2008, accompanied by 50 Irish business leaders investigating investment and joint venture opportunities in South Africa.

In February 2008, former Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka launched the Irish and South African Heritage Project at the Nelson Mandela

Gateway to Robben Island in Cape Town. The project is based on historical research of bilateral relations that both Ireland and South Africa have shared since 1994. The project will extend relations between the two countries, through potential exchange programmes on e-schools.

The second session of the Ireland-South Africa Partnership Forum was held in Dublin in April 2009.

Mediterranean Europe

South Africa and the countries of Mediterranean Europe maintain excellent relations through several institutionalised mechanisms such as the South Africa-France Political Dialogue, South Africa-Spain annual consultations and various commissions on trade and industry; health; education; arts, culture, and S&T; and sport.

These countries are among South Africa's top trading partners and remain large investors in the South African economy, providing not only capital inflow but also thousands of jobs.

Mediterranean Europe has excelled in providing several opportunities for training in terms of Jipsa through government and business interventions.

In addition to this area of work, relations between the two countries are growing and hold much promise for the future.

South Africa and France enjoy excellent political relations characterised by regular high-level dialogue, diverse bilateral cooperation programmes and growing bilateral trade. South Africa acknowledges France's strong influence on the continent, especially in Francophone Africa and seeks to cooperate with France wherever possible in promoting the African Agenda.

France is the largest donor to and trading partner with Africa, a major investor on the continent and is a traditional champion of Africa and the developing world on issues such as debt relief, sustainable development and mitigating the negative effects of globalisation.

Italy and South Africa have agreed to deepen the level of exchanges on a number of issues critical to development on the African continent, especially regarding peace and stability in the Horn of Africa and post-conflict reconstruction in the DRC and the Great Lakes Region.

Economic relations between South Africa and Spain have grown at a very rapid pace, with total trade between the two countries amounting to R19 billion, having doubled over the past four years.

The Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Ms Sue van der Merwe, paid an official visit to Spain in February 2009.

South Africa and Greece have strong cultural ties through the Hellenic community in South Africa, which plays a positive and constructive role in the reconstruction and development of this country. The Hellenic community in South Africa is estimated at 60 000.

Greece is the oldest and largest market for South Africa in the Balkan Region. While Greece is not a major donor country, it has contributed to education and health programmes in South Africa. These include a US$200 000-donation to a health clinic in Sebokeng and a US$40 000-donation to sports facilities in Soweto and Alexandra.

Central Europe

South Africa enjoys excellent relations with all the countries of Central Europe. Subsequent to the official visit by former Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka to the Czech Republic and the Republic of Slovakia in May 2008, 17 South African students got scholarships for a master's programme in Textiles Engineering and a degree in Road-Transport Management, as part of bilateral cooperation to support South Africa's Jipsa priorities.

The accession of seven Central European countries to the EU not only influenced South Africa's political and economic relations with these countries but has impacted on South Africa's strategic and multifaceted relations with the EU. The new EU member countries have opened greater scope for mutually beneficial cooperation. Since most of the countries in Central Europe play an important role in the field of S&T, emphasis on developing more programmes of cooperation in this area and skills development projects will continue to receive priority attention.

During the 2008/09 financial year, successful bilateral political and economic engagements were held with Poland, Hungary, Bulgaria, Lithuania, the Czech Republic, Slovenia and Slovakia.

The department's focus in the 2009/10 financial year was to facilitate the implementation of decisions taken at bilateral meetings, including the integration of the Government's key priorities in bilateral programmes.

In February 2009, Dr Dlamini Zuma hosted the Bulgarian Deputy Prime Minister and Foreign Minister, Mr Ivailo Kalfin, for bilateral political, economic and trade discussions.

Eastern Europe

The Eastern Europe region is of crucial impor-

tance to South Africa's strategic objectives, straddling across a wide spectrum of political and economic interests. The region is well endowed with strategic commodities/minerals that are of vital importance to South Africa's economic livelihood. Cooperation in gas and oil and peaceful use of nuclear energy can go a long way in alleviating South Africa's energy shortcomings.

Cooperation with Eastern European countries is, given their advancements in the field of S&T, likely to contribute effectively to South Africa and Africa's development priorities.

South Africa continues to use structured bilateral mechanisms and other high-level engagements to strengthen political and economic relations with Eastern European countries. Thus, relations with Eastern European countries, properly nurtured in the next three years, will contribute effectively to the achievement of South Africa's strategic objectives and the African Agenda at large.

Russian Federation

The Russian Federation is by far the most important strategic partner in Eastern Europe. The Russian Federation's membership of the G8 and the UNSC offers South Africa an influential strategic partner in global governance. South Africa's relations with Russia were significantly consolidated over the past few years through continued high-level political dialogue. Bilateral relations also expanded strongly under the umbrella of the Intergovernmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation (Itec), a mechanism which is likely to enhance mutual beneficial trade and economic ties between the two countries.

The seven Itec subcommittees cover the following sectors: agriculture, education, health, S&T, minerals and energy, trade and industry, justice and the South Africa-Russia Business Council. They facilitate strategic interactions in these fields and hold a great promise for economic growth and investment opportunities.

The seventh Itec Intersessional Meeting, held in November 2008, registered significant progress in the Subcommittee on Water Resources and Forestry, especially the signing of the Action Plan that concretises and sets timelines in the work of the subcommittee for the coming year. It also made noteworthy headway in the area of the peaceful uses of outer space, especially the launch of the Sumbandila satellite in September 2009. Cooperation in peaceful uses of nuclear energy was also progressing well. The JCC on Nuclear Energy Cooperation was hosted by South Africa in 2009, which was preceded by a workshop on nuclear-safety regulations and nuclear power reactors.

The eighth session of Itec was held in October 2009. Ministers committed to exploit new trade and investment opportunities and resolve potential obstacles to bilateral cooperation.

South Africa and the Russian Federation control vast reserves of the word's platinum-group metals and there exists a massive opportunity for mutually beneficial cooperation in this area.

Further, Russia's natural energy endowment in oil and gas, coupled by technological advancement in nuclear energy, offers South Africa opportunities of addressing energy challenges.

Republic of Belarus

The relations between South Africa and the Republic of Belarus are progressing well. The annual political consultations between the ministers of international relations of the two countries have been a foundation to explore areas for mutual beneficial cooperation.

Following the September 2008 political consultations between the former Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Dlamini Zuma, and her counterpart, Mr Sergei Martynov, a South African consul-general office was opened in Belarus.

These burgeoning relations were greatly enhanced by the establishment of the Itec. In the main, the endeavour has identified S&T cooperation (especially in the areas of laser technology), the automotive sector and the consumer goods sector as areas that offered good potential for mutual benefit. The second Itec meeting was held in 2009 in South Africa. The Subcommittee on S&T meets annually to map out areas for future cooperation.

The former Minister of Arts and Culture, Dr Pallo Jordan, visited Belarus in July 2008 to sign the Programme of Action that activated the Agreement on Arts and Culture Cooperation.

Turkey

Turkey is South Africa's largest trading partner in Eastern and Central Europe. Bilateral relations between the two countries are growing and senior officials held political consultations in March 2009, which set the platform for the enhancement of political relations in the next five years.

The Joint Economic Commission was established in April 2008 and agreed to facilitate cooperation in clothing and textiles, the automotive sector, jewellery manufacturing, energy and

construction services. Furthermore, South Africa continues to strengthen cooperation to facilitate the implementation of the Africa-Turkey Summit Declaration (i.e. the Istanbul Declaration) and enhance multilateral cooperation in the UN.

Multilateral diplomacy

The adoption of the UN World Summit Outcome document in New York in 2005 by more than 150 heads of state and government marked one of the most prominent efforts to protect and strengthen multilateralism.

Expectations of wholesale change and reform of the UN, however, proved not to be realistically attainable. The Review Summit nonetheless agreed on a number of reforms to address events and issues that continue to undermine global peace and security and the multilateral system of governance. South Africa remains an active participant in these ongoing efforts to implement the 2005 World Summit Outcome document to reform the UN. It also believes that the multilateral system should be fully engaged in human development and poverty eradication, starting with the achievement of the MDGs; the common struggle to address environmental degradation; the pursuit of an overarching human-rights agenda; the promotion of democracy and good governance; and all efforts to combat terrorism and the proliferation of weapons, both of mass destruction and small arms. South Africa maintains that issues such as these pose major threats to world peace and security.

Through participation in organisations and groups such as the UN, the AU, the NAM, the G77 and the Commonwealth, South Africa seeks to ensure that national interests and objectives, as well as those of the continent and developing countries generally, are taken on board in discussions in multilateral forums and reports.

United Nations General Assembly

South Africa's priorities for participation in the UNGA, its main committees and organs, include:

- pursuing an overarching human-rights agenda, including the right to development
- promoting global peace and security
- protecting and promoting multilateralism, international law and the centrality of the UN Charter
- addressing human development, poverty eradication and environmental degradation
- advancing the active follow-up and implementation of the MDGs, international development goals and the outcomes of major UN conferences
- advancing South-South cooperation through active participation in the NAM and other South-South cooperation arrangements
- promoting the reform of the UNSC General Assembly, Ecosocc and regional organisations, and generally revitalising the UN system
- promoting the Common Africa Position on the reform of the UN, including the equitable representation of Africa on the UNSC
- disarmament, arms control and non-proliferation of both weapons of mass destruction and conventional arms
- implementing the Johannesburg Plan of Action of the World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD)
- humanitarian assistance
- promoting the AU and Nepad in the UN context
- promoting gender mainstreaming
- supporting the global campaign against terrorism.

In September 2009, President Zuma addressed the 64th UNGA debate in New York.

United Nations reform

The adoption of the 2005 World Summit Outcome by more than 150 heads of state and government, set in motion a number of reforms in the UN system that include:

- establishing a peace-building commission
- establishing a human-rights council
- implementing management reforms in the UN Secretariat
- reviewing the mandates of UN activities and programmes
- finalising the comprehensive Convention against Terrorism and developing a broader counter-terrorism strategy
- maintaining and strengthening political momentum for development.

South Africa supports and actively participates in all negotiations.

United Nations Security Council

The UNSC has primary responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security. It is organised so as to be able to function continuously, and a representative of each of its members must be present at all times at the UN.

The comprehensive reform of the UNSC remains work in progress. The Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Mr Ebrahim Ebrahim, participated in the UNSC on Post-Conflict Peace-Building in July 2009.

Science and technology

The South African Government has recognised the importance of harnessing S&T as an integral part of a wider political and economic strategy to address national and regional development priorities.

A major vehicle to achieve this objective is South Africa's bid to host the proposed SKA as an extraordinary opportunity for advancing South Africa and its people through scientific and industrial development, developing regional scientific capacity, human capacity-development in the region, creating business opportunities and providing state-of-the-art infrastructure for South African scientists and engineers as well as those in the region.

In ensuring the implementation of the Tunis Commitment and Tunis Agenda for Information Society, as the outcome of the second phase of the World Summit on the Information Society, South Africa will remain involved in the ongoing discussions on Internet governance as well as bridging the digital divide between developed and developing countries.

Human rights

A commitment to promoting human rights is one of the central considerations in the implementation of South Africa's foreign policy. South Africa is a major player in the development of international human-rights law at the UN, continually evaluating the effectiveness of existing human-rights treaties, proposing additional instruments and striving to advance the progressive realisation of all human rights, both globally and nationally.

South Africa played an active role in the establishment of the UN Human Rights Council (UNHRC) in Geneva, which replaced the former Commission on Human Rights. South Africa is a member of the UNHRC, where it has strongly advocated for a treaty on the right to development. It also sponsored an HRC resolution on the rectification of the legal status of the Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights, which will elevate the committee to be on par with all other treaty-monitoring bodies.

For the same reason, South Africa has supported the elaboration of an optional protocol to the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights to create an individual complaints mechanism for the covenant, thereby strengthening economic, social and cultural rights globally.

South Africa was one of the first countries to sign and ratify both the International Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities and its optional protocol, becoming a state party to the convention in November 2007.

Humanitarian issues

As a signatory to the 1951 Geneva Convention Relating to the Status of Refugees, its 1967 Protocol and the 1969 OAU Convention Governing the Specific Aspects of Refugee Problems in Africa, South Africa has committed itself to protecting refugees. These international treaties have been domesticated through the Refugee Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998).

South Africa's foreign-policy interventions on migration are guided by its adherence to the major international human-rights instruments, including the Universal Declaration on Human Rights, and the various refugee conventions and conventions related to, among other things, the rights of women and children. This includes the understanding that migration, if properly managed, could contribute significantly to enhancing sustainable development in African countries.

South Africa's participation in humanitarian assistance is strongly embedded in the principles of UNGA Resolution 46/182 and its guiding principles of providing humanitarian assistance on the basis of neutrality, impartiality and humanity. South Africa plays an active role in providing humanitarian assistance globally, with a particular focus on the African continent in conjunction with the UN and other international organisations, to alleviate the plight of thousands of victims of natural sudden-onset disasters and complex humanitarian emergencies.

During recent times, the world has witnessed a serious disregard for international humanitarian law (IHL) and its fundamental principles during conflicts, especially where civilians are indiscriminately targeted. South Africa will continue to coordinate the country's internalisation and compliance with relevant instruments of IHL. Following its commitment to the development and implementation of IHL, South Africa will continue to co-host, support and participate in initiatives aimed at disseminating relevant instruments of IHL.

Environment

South Africa is committed to maintaining the political momentum gained in the sphere of sustainable development, through the outcomes of the WSSD and the Johannesburg Plan of Implementation.

Through the implementation of various UN environmental conventions, such as the UN Convention to Combat Desertification, the UNFCCC and the Convention on Biological Diversity, South Africa supports the sustainable use of natural resources while striving to reach the internationally agreed to MDGs to, among other things, reduce poverty, promote gender equality and ensure environmental sustainability

Climate change is regarded as one of the major stumbling blocks to achieving sustainable development. International efforts are aimed at both the mitigation of climate changes by stabilising the concentration of greenhouse-gases (GHGs) in the atmosphere and measures to enable countries to adapt to the adverse effects of climate change.

South Africa participated in the CoP14 of the UNFCCC and the fourth Meeting of the Parties of the Kyoto Protocol, held in December 2008 in Poznan, Poland.

In Poznan, there was slow progress. However, discussions succeeded in moving the process towards full negotiation-mode in 2009. A clear process and milestones for both negotiating tracks under the Bali Road Map had been agreed on. On substantive issues, most of the negotiations have been referred to the 2009 work programmes.

These negotiations were concluded in 2009 for the governments to ratify them before 2012 and to avoid any gap between the first and second commitment periods on the reduction of GHG emissions.

South Africa is firmly committed to the protection of the oceans and the sustainable management of its marine resources. It has ratified all the major treaties dealing with marine, maritime, fisheries and Antarctic matters, such as the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea and its related instruments, the International Maritime Conventions, the UN Food and Agriculture Organisation Compliance Agreement, and the Antarctic Treaty.

Disarmament

South Africa continues to reinforce its position as an active and substantive role player on disarmament, non-proliferation and arms-control issues at regional, national and international levels.

It actively participated in the various nuclear disarmament and non-proliferation forums, including the 2005 Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty (NPT) Review Conference.

The failure by some states to implement their obligations under the NPT (particularly on nuclear disarmament) and to roll back agreements made at previous conferences created a climate that made it difficult to progress with key challenges facing the nuclear disarmament and non-proliferation regime.

Together with other role players in the nuclear field, South Africa actively participated in the meetings of the policy-making organs of the IAEA. Important issues considered by the IAEA Board of Governors included the implementation of NPT safeguards in Iran and Korea.

South Africa actively participates in the structures of the Chemicals Weapons Convention, the Biological and Toxic Weapons Convention (BWC) and the Organisation for the Prohibition of Chemical Weapons.

South Africa continues to emphasise the importance of the BWC and the need to strengthen it to adequately address the threat posed by the possible use of biological and toxic weapons by terrorists and other non-state actors.

South Africa was admitted as the first African state to join the Wassenaar Arrangement (conventional arms and dual-use technology-control regime) in December 2005, and became a full participating state on 28 February 2006.

In the context of South Africa's participation in various international arms-control bodies, such as the Nuclear Suppliers Group, the Zangger Committee and the Missile Technology Control Regime, South Africa continues to promote the principle of access to advanced technologies for peaceful purposes, thereby ensuring that non-proliferation controls do not become a means whereby developing countries are denied access to technologies required for their development.

Crime and crime prevention

Following its ratification of the UN Convention against Transnational Organised Crime and its three supplementary protocols, the Protocol Against Smuggling of Migrants by Land, Air and Sea; the Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, Especially Women and Children; and the Protocol Against the Illicit Manufacturing of and Trafficking in Firearms, their Parts and Components and Ammunition, South Africa participated in the CoP of the Convention Against Transnational Organised Crime in October 2005. Following its ratification of the UN Convention against Corruption, South Africa participated in the first CoP of the Convention against Corruption in 2006.

Kimberley Process Certification Scheme (KPCS)

The KPCS is a voluntary tripartite international

forum, intent on preventing the use of diamonds in the promotion of conflict, while encouraging the contribution of diamonds to prosperity.

The KPCS forum comprises all major diamond-producing, -trading and -processing countries, as well as the diamond industry and civil society.

The department participates actively in the standing bodies of the KPCS.

One of the department's primary objectives in monitoring the KPCS and participating in the business of KPCS standing and ad-hoc bodies is to support government's efforts to ensure that the collective interests of African diamond-producing countries are protected.

North-South cooperation

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation serves as the focal point for North-South dialogue, engaging key global economic institutions such as the WTO, the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) and the World Intellectual Property Organisation. To achieve this objective, South Africa ensures that the development agenda remains part of the focus of key economic forums, particularly the annual G8 Summit and World Economic Forum meetings.

South-South cooperation

In advancing the development agenda of the South and within the overall context of promoting multilateralism, South Africa is an active member of groups and movements such as the G77 and China and the NAM.

Progressively, the importance of South-South cooperation is being acknowledged, especially in terms of global, regional and country-level efforts to achieve the MDGs. Rather than being a substitute for North-South cooperation, the modalities of South-South cooperation are complementary.

In September 2008, Minister Dlamini Zuma participated in the ministerial meetings of the G77 and China and the NAM, held in New York on the margins of the 63rd session of the UNGA. South Africa ensured that the G77 Ministerial Declaration adopted principles for South-South cooperation to avoid it being defined by developed countries.

South African foreign policy seeks to, among other things, persuade the international community to support the efforts of developing countries to expand such cooperation, with a special focus on the needs of Africa.

In this regard, South Africa led the negotiations of the African Group on the landmark political declaration on Africa's development, which was adopted by the General Assembly in September 2008. Through active participation in other cooperation arrangements such as IBSA, South Africa seeks to contribute to strengthening South-South cooperation and the development of innovative cooperation programmes.

Since its inception in 2004, the IBSA Trust Fund has financed IBSA projects in Burundi, Cape Verde, Guinea-Bissau, Haiti, Lao People's Democratic Republic and Palestine.

Global finance

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation has in its engagements solicited the international community to fulfil its Monterrey commitments. It recognises the need for increased and more predictable resources for development.

As such, it supports initiatives such as Action Against Hunger and Poverty to implement innovative financing mechanisms for development on a public, private, domestic or external basis, to complement ODA.

As one of the G20 countries within the Bretton Woods Institutions (BWIs), the department contributes to developing the global partnership between developed and developing countries pragmatically. Within this context, South Africa is committed to the continuous review of the representivity, operations and strategies of the BWIs and more effective participation by developing countries in these bodies.

With the advent of the global financial and economic crisis in 2008, the G20 met at summit-level to discuss a global response to the crisis.

Social development

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation aims to promote and advocate social development issues to remain high on the international agenda. This is achieved through consolidation of the African Agenda relating to social development as well as promoting and mainstreaming social- and population-, global health- and UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco)-related issues.

In pursuit of the country's foreign-policy objectives on social development matters, the Department of International Relations and Cooperation interacts with the following multilateral structures and organisations: the UN Commission for Social Development, the UN Commission on Population and Development, UN Population Fund, Unesco, UN Joint Programme on HIV and AIDS and the WHO.

Participation in United Nations budgetary and programmatic issues

South Africa continues to play a prominent role in the context of UN budgetary and programmatic issues.

The former Minister of Public Service and Administration, Ms Geraldine Fraser-Moleketi, was elected vice-president of the second UN Committee of Experts on Public Administration and Finance for the period 2006 to 2009.

Another South African, Judge Mervyn King, who chaired the King Commission on Corporate Governance in South Africa, was elected chairperson of a high-level steering panel to evaluate governance in the UN.

Active participation in administrative and budgetary issues is aimed at ensuring, to the fullest extent possible, that UN programmes as well as budgetary and administrative priorities adequately cater for development and poverty eradication. In this regard, priority areas for South Africa include the funding of UN structures and programmes that focus on Africa and Nepad, and sufficient funding for peacekeeping operations on the continent. South Africa believes that active participation in the administrative and budgetary activities of the UN contributes to the strengthening of multilateralism and a system that is more responsive to the needs of all member states.

South African representation on United Nations bodies and organs

South Africa strives to be active in all bodies and functional committees of the UN dealing with its foreign-policy priorities or objectives, and thus serves/served on the following:

- International Criminal Tribunal for Yugoslavia (2005 to 2009): Judge J Moloto
- UNHRC, successor to the Commission on Human Rights (2006)
- International Criminal Court (2003 to 2009): Judge M Pillay
- International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea (2005 to 2014): Judge A Hoffmann
- Board of Auditors (until 30 June 2012): Auditor-General of South Africa
- International Law Commission (1 January 2007 to 31 December 2011): Prof. CJR Dugard
- UN Commission on International Trade Law: (2007 to 2013).

South Africa serves/served on the following subsidiary bodies of the Ecosocc:

- Commission for Social Development (2006 to 2009)
- Statistical Commission (2006 to 2009)
- Commission on Sustainable Development (2007 to 2010)
- Commission on Population and Development (2007 to 2010)
- Commission on Crime Prevention and Criminal Justice (2007 to 2010).

United Nations Country Team (UNCT) in South Africa

The United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) seeks to implement programmes that are relevant to government's transformation and development imperatives. The UNDP has a country office in Pretoria, which is headed by the resident representative, who is also the UN resident coordinator for all UN operational activities in South Africa.

The UN Development Assistance Framework (UNDAF) is a mechanism to establish an integrated framework for cooperation for development assistance between the UN system, represented through 16 UN funds, programmes and agencies present in South Africa and government.

The UNDAF reflects the priorities conveyed to the UN by government and is based on the Common Country Assessment (CCA). The previous UNDAF ended in December 2006. The department worked with the UNCT in South Africa and numerous other departments to prepare the new UNDAF, which will guide UN support in South Africa from 2007 to 2010. In this process, a CCA has been drafted by government and accepted by the UN and the new UNDAF.

In 2008, the government and the UN Evaluation Group undertook a joint evaluation of the impact of the presence of the UN in South Africa. This was the first time that an evaluation was conducted at country level on a system-wide basis. The overall objective of South Africa's foreign policy, namely to work towards "a better South Africa" within "a better Africa" and "a better world", was used as the conceptual framework for the evaluation. The joint evaluation was concluded in December 2008 and the findings were submitted to government and the UN in early 2009.

International law

The importance of international law as a mechanism for enhancing a rule-based international order, particularly in areas such as law of the sea, climate change, resolution of disputes and terrorism, remains important. In exercising its rights under international law, South Africa launched its claim for Extended Continental Shelf in May 2009.

Through this claim, South Africa has the opportunity to exercise its jurisdiction to a very large area of maritime territory around its mainland and sub-Antarctic Prince Edward islands.

International law continues to play a role in support of the African Agenda, enhancing Africa's own initiatives in developing architecture to ensure peace, security and stability on the continent and to address the challenges of underdevelopment, poverty alleviation, democratisation and good governance. In this regard, the establishment and integration of the African Court on Human and People's Rights and the African Court of Justice and the strengthening AU structures through international law will be important.

Legal advice in respect of South African law concerning all departmental issues will be provided in support of the department.

With Cabinet's endorsement of the department as the official treaty custodian of South Africa, the maintenance and administration of a complete and up-to-date record of the treaty collection of South Africa remains a priority and the department will continue to render an information service specialising in international law. The electronic *South African Treaty Register* was officially launched in April 2009 on the department's intranet.

Commonwealth

The Commonwealth comprises 53 member countries on every continent and with a combined population of 1,8 billion (one quarter of world population), making up one fifth of world trade. It is an important multilateral institution uniting countries with common historical backgrounds.

The Commonwealth is united by its shared ideals and common traditions manifested in similar structures of governance, public administration and law, a common working language, and commercial and business practices and understanding. It is an important multilateral institution, both uniting and serving its member countries and providing a lobby on global issues.

Its programmes of action, such as the Commonwealth Fund for Technical Cooperation, the Commonwealth Youth Programme and the Commonwealth Foundation, are focused on capacity-building, economic and social development, the removal of disparities in living standards across the world, and the alleviation of poverty and illiteracy. These programmes are committed to the UN MDGs, Nepad and the plight of small and less-developed countries.

South Africa actively participates in the various ministerial meetings and governing bodies of the Commonwealth.

Non-Aligned Movement

The NAM with its 114 member states is the largest political grouping of countries outside of the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs.

South Africa formally joined the movement in 1994 and has played a leading role ever since.

A major contribution under the South African chairship was a comprehensive review of the decisions taken by the movement since 1992. The review aimed at revitalising the movement and focusing it on the new challenges of the 21st century. Popularly referred to as the Zimbali Process, the outcome was taken up in the Kuala Lumpur Declaration of the XIII NAM Summit in Malaysia on the revitalisation of the movement in the 21st century.

After Malaysia, Cuba chaired the movement, which in turn handed over the chairship to Egypt in July 2009.

In July 2009, President Zuma, addressed the XV Summit of the Heads of State and Government of the NAM, in Sharm-El-Sheikh, Egypt.

Bilateral agreements signed between 1 January 2008 and 31 March 2009

Date signed	Country/organisation	Title	Entry into force date:
25 January 2008	United States Agency for International Development	Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) between the Government of the Republic of South Africa through the Department of Education and the Government of the United States through the United States Agency for International Development on Cooperation in the Development of Textbooks and Learning Materials	25 January 2008
6 February 2008	Netherlands	Arrangement on Bilateral Police Cooperation (not a treaty)	6 February 2008
22 February 2008	India	Agreement on Cooperation and Mutual Assistance in Customs Matters	22 February 2008
22 February 2008	India	Programme of Cooperation in Science and Technology	25 February 2008
25 February 2008	Malawi	MoU on Defence Cooperation	28 February 2008
28 Ferbruary 2008	Egypt	Executive Programme of Cooperation for the Implementation of the Agreement on Cooperation in the Fields of Arts and Culture	28 February 2008
28 Ferbruary 2008	France	Agreement on Cooperation in the Field of Energy	28 February 2008
28 Ferbruary 2008	France	Agreement on Cooperation pertaining to Tourism	28 February 2008
28 Ferbruary 2008	France	Agreement on Scientific and Technological Cooperation	28 February 2008
28 Ferbruary 2008	France	Agreement on Transport-Related Matters	28 February 2008
28 Ferbruary 2008	France	Declaration on South Africa-French Cooperation on the Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition	28 February 2008
28 Ferbruary 2008	France	Statement of Intent on the Extension of the Continental Shelf, the Surveillance of Fisheries and Scientific Research Cooperation in the Waters Adjacent to the French Southern and Antarctic Territories and Marion and Prince Edward Islands	28 February 2008
29 Ferbruary 2008	European Molecular Biology Conference	Cooperation Agreement between the Government of the Republic of South Africa and the European Molecular Biology Conference	29 February 2008
8 March 2008	Switzerland	MoU on Strengthening Mutual Cooperation	8 March 2008
17 March 2008	Indonesia	Joint Declaration on a Strategic Partnership for a Peaceful and Prosperous Future	
17 March 2008	Indonesia	MoU on Cooperative Activities in the Field of Defence	17 March 2008
17 March 2008	Indonesia	MoU on Cultural Cooperation	17 March 2008
17 March 2008	Indonesia	Statement on the New Asian-African Strategic Partnership	
18 March 2008	Ethiopia	Agreement for the Promotion and Reciprocal Protection of Investments	
18 March 2008	Ethiopia	Agreement on the Establishment of a Joint Ministerial Commission (JMC)	18 March 2008
18 March 2008	Ethiopia	Agreement on the Establishment of a JMC	18 March 2008
18 March 2008	Ethiopia	MoU regarding Industrial and Technical Cooperation	
28 March 2008	African Union	MoU Contributing Military Resources to the African Union Mission in the Sudan	28 March 2008
31 March 2008	Australia	Protocol Amending the Agreement for the Avoidance of Double Taxation and the Prevention of Fiscal Evasion with respect to Taxes on Income	12 November 2008
7 April 2008	International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA)	Agreement concerning the Hosting of IAEA Meetings	7 April 2008
10 April 2008	International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD)	Global Environment Facility (GEF) Trust Fund Grant Agreement (Renewable Energy Market Transformation Project) between South Africa and IBRD Acting as an Implementing Agency of the GEF	

Bilateral agreements signed between 1 January 2008 and 31 March 2009

Date signed	Country/organisation	Title	Entry into force date:
14 April 2008	Congo	Agreement on Defence Cooperation	14 April 2008
17 April 2008	Norway	Joint Declaration on Climate Change and Energy Issues	
30 April 2008	Senegal	MoU on Defence Cooperation	30 April 2008
11 May 2008	Brazil	Agreement regarding Mutual Assistance between their Customs Administrations	
8 June 2008	Oman	MoU on Cooperation in the Legal Field	8 June 2008
24 June 2008	Benin	Defence Cooperation	24 June 2008
26 June 2008	Germany	Exchange of Notes Constituting an Agreement between the Government of the Federal Republic of Germany and the Government of the Republic of South Africa on Capacity and Institution-Building for Southern Sudan: Legal Affairs and Correctional Services Training Programmes	26 June 2008
1 July 2008	Food and Agriculture Organisation	Agreement on Sustainable Food Production and Nutrition Education in Schools in Support of the National Schools Nutrition Programme	1 July 2008
3 July 2008	United Kingdom	General Security Arrangement concerning the Protection of Classified Information Exchanged for the Purpose of Defence Cooperation, Production, Research and Procurement between the Two Countries	
8 July 2008	Netherlands	Protocol Amending the Convention between the Republic of South Africa and the Kingdom of the Netherlands for the Avoidance of Double Taxation and the Prevention of Fiscal Evasion with respect to Taxes on Income and on Capital with Protocol	28 December 2008
17 July 2008	Botswana	Agreement on Water Supply across the Border	17 July 2008
17 July 2008	International Telecommunications Union (ITU)	Agreement regarding the Holding, Organisation and Financing of the World Telecommunications Standardisation Assembly of the ITU	17 July 2008
29 July 2008	Egypt	Declaration of Intent on Cooperation	29 July 2008
31 July 2008	Ireland	Agreement regarding Funding for a Water Supply and Sanitation Sector Support Programme	31 July 2008
5 August 2008	Namibia	Cooperation in the Field of Health	5 August 2008
14 August 2008	Germany	Exchange of Notes concerning the Project FIFA World Cup 2010™ - Modernisation and Development of Urban Infrastructures in Johannesburg	
15 August 2008	India	Programme of Cooperation on Cooperation in the Fields of Arts and Culture	15 August 2008
1 September 2008	Sudan (Southern)	Statement of Intent on the Establishment of a Liaison Office in South Africa	
2 September 2008	Venezuela	Cooperation in the Field of Energy	
2 September 2008	Venezuela	Framework Agreement on Cooperation	
3 September 2008	Cameroon	Agreement on Cooperation in the Field of Health	3 September 2008
9 September 2008	Germany	Agreement for the Avoidance of Double Taxation with respect to Taxes on Income and on Capital plus Protocol	
16 September 2008	Republic of Korea	Cooperation in the Field of Health	16 September 2008
22 September 2008	Burundi	MoU on the Establishment of a South Africa-Korea Information and Communications Technologies Cooperation Centre in South Africa	22 September 2008
25 September 2008	Guinea-Bissau	Agreement on a Framework for Cooperation	25 September 2008
26 September 2008	Germany	Agreement on Cooperation in the Field of Veterinary Affairs	26 September 2008
26 September 2008	Timor Leste	Framework Agreement on Technical Cooperation	26 September 2008
9 October 2008	African Union (AU)	Host Agreement on an Interim AU Office for the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM) operating outside the AU Headquarters	9 October 2008
9 October 2008	AU	Host Agreement on an Interim AU Office for the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) operating outside the AU Headquarters	9 October 2008

Bilateral agreements signed between 1 January 2008 and 31 March 2009

Date signed	Country/organisation	Title	Entry into force date:
15 October 2008	Multilateral	MoU on Cooperation in the Field of Women's Development and Gender Equality Programmes India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA)	15 October 2008
6 November 2008	Nigeria	Agreed Minutes of the Fourth Session of the Special Implementation Committee of the Binational Commission (BNC), between the Republic of South Africa and the Federal Republic of Nigeria held from 4 to 6 November 2008 in Tshwane, South Africa (not an agreement)	
10 November 2008	China, People's Republic of	Letter of Intent on Cooperation in the Field of Geology and Minerals	10 November 2008
14 November 2008	United Nations Population Fund (UNFPA)	Agreement on Establishing a Regional and Subregional Team Office of the UNFPA in South Africa	14 November 2008
26 November 2008	Lithuania	MoU on the Establishment of a Bilateral Consultation Mechanism	26 November 2008
1 December 2008	Lesotho	MoU in respect of the Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area	
3 December 2008	Argentine Republic	Agreed Outcome and Minutes of the Second Meeting of the BNC (not an agreement)	
3 December 2008	Argentine Republic	Agreement on Cooperation in the Peaceful Uses of Nuclear Energy	
4 December 2008	Mozambique	Agreement on Cooperation in respect of Fisheries and Integrated Marine and Coastal Management and Development	4 December 2008
10 December 2008	Finland	Agreement between the Government of the Republic of South Africa and the Government of the Republic of Finland concerning the Finnish-South African Partnership Programme to Strengthen the Nepad/South African Network for Biosciences (SANBIO) Network	10 December 2008
23 January 2009	Denmark	Declaration of Intent on Bilateral Consultations	23 January 2009
5 February 2009	Mauritius	MoU on Economic Cooperation	5 February 2009
12 February 2009	Malawi	Agreement in the Field of Health	12 February 2009
19 February 2009	Mexico	MoU for the Establishment of a BNC	19 February 2009
20 February 2009	Hong Kong	Agreement concerning Mutual Legal Assistance in Criminal Matters	
20 February 2009	Hong Kong	Agreement concerning Surrender of Fugitive Offenders (Extradition)	
25 February 2009	Saudi Arabia	Agreement on Scientific and Technological Cooperation	
2 March 2009	Burkina Faso	Agreement on Cooperation in the Fields of Arts and Culture	2 March 2009
2 March 2009	Finland	Declaration of Intent concerning the Deepening of Bilateral Relations and Strengthening of Partnerships	2 March 2009
9 March 2009	France	Priority-Solidarity-Funds Funding-Agreement for the Implementation of Project No 2006-81: Fight against Transnational Crime and Terrorism in South Africa-Enhlangano Project	9 March 2009
10 March 2009	China, People's Republic of	Exchange of Notes on the Construction of an Aquaculture Technical Demonstration Centre	10 March 2009
25 March 2009	Rwanda	Agreement on Cooperation in the Fields of Arts and Culture	25 March 2009
25 March 2009	Rwanda	Agreement on Scientific and Technological Cooperation	25 March 2009

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Estimates of National Expenditure 2009, published by National Treasury
Department of International Relations and Cooperation
www.dfa.gov.za
www.gov.za
www.iol.co.za
www.tshwane.gov.za
www.thepresidency.gov.za

Suggested reading

Adebajo, A, Adedeji, A and Landsberg, C (eds). 2007. *South Africa in Africa: The Post-Apartheid Era.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

Abegunrin, O. 2009. *Africa in Global Politics in the Twenty-First Century: A Pan-African Perspective.* Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Akokpari, J (eds). 2008. *The African Union and its Institutions*. Johannesburg: Fanele.

Davies, JE. 2007. *Constructive Engagement? Chester Crocker & American Policy in South Africa, Namibia & Angola, 1981 – 8*. Johannesburg: Jacana Media.

Erwee, R and De Lange, R. 2007. *Global Business: Environments and Strategies: Managing for Global Competitive Advantage.* Editors J Hough and R de Lange. Cape Town: Oxford University Press.

Kagwanja, P and Kondlo, K (eds). 2009. *State of the Nation: South Africa 2008*. Pretoria: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press.

Le Pere, G and Shelton, G. 2007. *China, Africa and South Africa: South-South Cooperation in a Global Era*. Midrand: Institute for Global Dialogue.

Research and Information System for Developing Countries. 2008. *Trinity of the South: Potential of India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA) Partnership.* New Delhi: Academic Foundation.

Thomas, A. 2008. *US Foreign Policy Towards Apartheid South Africa, 1948 – 1994: Conflict and Interests.* New York: Palgrave Macmillan.

Williams, V and Tsanco, T. 2007. *Prospects for Migration Data Harmonisation in the SADC*. Cape Town: Institute for Democracy in Africa.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

JUSTICE AND CORRECTIONAL SERVICES

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development's mandate is to uphold and protect the Constitution and the rule of law. The department is also responsible for overseeing the administration of justice in the interests of a safer and more secure South Africa.

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development comprises six core branches – Court Services, the Master of the High Court, Legal Advisory Services, the Litigation Unit, the Legislative Development Unit, and the Justice College – and two support branches – Corporate Services and the Office of the Director-General.

The department's responsibilities include:

- ensuring the provision of integrated court services through the establishment and maintenance of court facilities
- promoting cost-effective and quality court services
- facilitating effective case-flow management
- providing appropriate human resources (HR), including the appointment of judicial, prosecutorial and administrative staff
- facilitating the adjudication of criminal, civil and family law-related disputes.

The department facilitates constitutional development, drafts legislation, conducts research to support legislative development, provides legal advisory services to other government departments, provides litigation services to protect the organs of state, oversees the administration of deceased and insolvent estates and administers the Guardian's Fund.

The department is administratively accountable for ensuring the independence of and support to its entities, the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA); Legal Aid South Africa (previously the Legal Aid Board); and constitutional institutions such as the South African Human Rights' Commission (SAHRC), the Commission on Gender Equality (CGE), the Public Protector, the Special Investigating Unit (SIU), including the administration of the Represented Political Parties' Fund and the President's Fund.

Between 2004/05 and 2010/11, the department's budget is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 13,4%, from R5,5 billion to R11,7 billion.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

The Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority awarded R1 million to the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development to train volunteers for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

The department will target mainly young, unemployed citizens from all provinces and train them in fields related to the administration of justice and equip them with skills that will be valuable beyond 2010. The volunteers' duties will include, among other things, to:

- assist in the courts designated to handle event cases with 2010 information and administration
- act as info guides in courts when event cases are activated
- capture data in courts.

To deal with all criminal cases in a fast and efficient way, especially where foreigners are involved, the following special measures will be implemented:

- at least one dedicated district court and one dedicated regional court per host city to deal with 2010-related cases
- the dedicated courts will be operational two weeks before, during and two weeks after the event
- dedicated skilled and experienced magistrates, prosecutors, Legal Aid South Africa attorneys, local and foreign court-language interpreters and other court officials will be assigned to each of the 2010 dedicated courts within each host city in each province
- all 2010-related cases outside of the host city will be prioritised and dealt with in a court with jurisdiction.

Legislation

Significant strides have been made in developing legislation in a number of important areas, including the protection of vulnerable groups, in particular, women and children. The department intended to finalise important outstanding pieces of legislation in 2009/10.

These include the Traditional Courts Bill, the Criminal Law (Forensic Procedures) Amendment Bill, the Superior Courts Bill and the Constitution Amendment Bill.

The Traditional Courts Bill is intended to regulate anew the role and functions of traditional leaders in the administration of justice in accordance with constitutional imperatives.

In finalising this Bill, extensive work is required from the department, which is represented on a

subcommittee appointed by the Portfolio Committee on Justice and Constitutional Development, consisting of representatives of various groups.

The Superior Courts Bill, presumably the only Bill that has stretched beyond the tenure of the two previous parliaments, was expected to be re-introduced during 2009/10. The Bill seeks to consolidate all outstanding aspects relating to the transformation of the judiciary, including the rationalisation of the courts, establishing an efficient court-administration model consistent with South Africa's constitutional democracy and the rationalisation and harmonisation of the rules of courts to enhance access to justice.

The Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Bill has been published for comment. The Bill is intended to give effect to the South African Law Reform Commission's (SALRC) legislative recommendations relating to trafficking in persons. It will offer protection to the most vulnerable in society, against highly organised crime syndicates. The current law is fragmented with low reporting and conviction rates. The Bill also gives effect to South Africa's international obligations as a signatory to the United Nations (UN) Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, especially Women and Children.

Judicial system

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 is the supreme law of the country and binds all legislative, executive and judicial organs of state at all levels of government.

In terms of Section 165 of the Constitution, the judicial authority in South Africa is vested in the courts, which are independent and subject only to the Constitution and the law. No person or organ of state may interfere with the functioning of the courts, and an order or decision of a court binds all organs of state and persons to whom it applies.

Chapter Eight of the Constitution provides for the following courts:

- Constitutional Court
- Supreme Court of Appeal (SCA)
- high courts, including any High Court of Appeal that may be established by an Act of Parliament to hear appeals from high courts
- magistrates' courts
- any other court established or recognised in terms of an Act of Parliament, including any court of a status similar to either high courts or magistrates' courts.

In line with this, Parliament has also established special income tax courts, the Labour Court and the Labour Appeal Court, the Land Claims Court, the Competition Appeal Court, the Electoral Court, divorce courts, "military courts" and equality courts.

Constitutional Court

The Constitutional Court, situated in Johannesburg, is the highest court in all constitutional matters. It is the only court that may adjudicate disputes between organs of state in the national or provincial sphere concerning the constitutional status, powers or functions of any of those organs of state, or that may decide on the constitutionality of any amendment to the Constitution or any parliamentary or provincial Bill. The Constitutional Court makes the final decision on whether an Act of Parliament, a provincial Act or the conduct of the President is constitutional. It consists of the Chief Justice of South Africa, the Deputy Chief Justice and nine Constitutional Court judges.

On 1 October 2009, President Jacob Zuma announced the appointment of Justice Sandile Ngcobo as the new Chief Justice of South Africa. Chief Justice Ngcobo assumed office on 12 October 2009. Justice Dikgang Moseneke is the Deputy Chief Justice.

Supreme Court of Appeal

The SCA, situated in Bloemfontein in the Free State, is the highest court in respect of all other matters. It consists of the President and Deputy President of the SCA, and a number of judges of appeal determined by an Act of Parliament. The SCA has jurisdiction to hear and determine an appeal against any decision of a high court.

Decisions of the SCA are binding on all courts of a lower order, and the decisions of high courts are binding on magistrates' courts within the respective areas of jurisdiction of the divisions. The SCA comprises 25 judges, including its president.

High courts

A high court has jurisdiction in its own area over all persons residing or present in that area.

These courts hear matters that are of such a serious nature that the lower courts would not be competent to make an appropriate judgment or to impose a penalty. Except where a minimum or maximum sentence is prescribed by law, their penal jurisdiction is unlimited and includes handing down a sentence of life imprisonment in certain specified cases

There are 13 seats of the High Court. In terms of the Renaming of the High Courts Act, 2008 (Act 30 of 2008), they are: Western Cape High Court, Cape Town; Eastern Cape High Court, Grahamstown; Eastern Cape High Court, Port

As from August 2009, 15 branch courts across the country enjoy the status of being full service courts.

Previously, these courts were set up in townships and rural areas as an extension of courts in the main towns and/or cities, and offered limited services relating mainly to criminal matters.

As a result, communities had to travel to the main courts to access services such as child maintenance, protection orders, deceased estates, adoption orders or legal remedies to any civil disputes.

The branch courts will now bring these services closer to the people. The conversion of these courts will alleviate the case loads in the main courts, resulting in improved service delivery.

Elizabeth; Eastern Cape High Court, Mthatha; Eastern Cape High Court, Bhisho; Northern Cape High Court, Kimberley; Free State High Court, Bloemfontein; KwaZulu-Natal High Court, Pietermaritzburg; KwaZulu-Natal High Court; Durban, North Gauteng High Court, Pretoria; South Gauteng High Court, Johannesburg; Limpopo High Court, Thohoyandou; and North West High Court, Mafikeng.

Circuit local divisions

These itinerant courts, each presided over by a judge of the provincial division, periodically visit areas designated by the Judge President of the provincial division concerned.

Other high courts

The Land Claims Court and the Labour Court have the same status as the High Court. The Land Claims Court hears matters on the restitution of land rights that people lost after 1913 as a result of racially discriminatory land laws. The Labour Court adjudicates matters relating to labour disputes. Appeals are made to the Labour Appeal Court.

Decisions of the Constitutional Court, the SCA and the high courts are an important source of law. These courts are required to uphold and to enforce the Constitution, which has an extensive Bill of Rights binding all state organs and all persons. The courts are also required to declare any law or conduct that is inconsistent with the Constitution to be invalid, and to develop common law that is consistent with the values of the Constitution, and the spirit and purpose of the Bill of Rights.

Regional courts

The Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development may divide the country into magisterial districts and create regional divisions consisting of districts. Regional courts are then established per province at one or more places in each regional division to hear matters within their jurisdiction.

The Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 31 of 2008), empowers regional magistrates to preside in civil matters. Processes are underway to pave the way for the implementation of the Act. Prime among those is the need to build capacity at regional court level to deal with civil and divorce matters. The divorce courts will be subsumed under the regional-court divisions. This will address the jurisdictional challenges in terms of which litigants have to travel to remote courts to get legal redress.

The formal training of magistrates and legal practitioners around this legislation and other areas of judicial work will be the responsibility of the newly established South African Judicial Education Institute. Preparations were at an advanced stage in October 2009 for the institute to commence with its work.

The Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008 will, in the medium to long term, reduce the workload in the high courts. In this way, divorce and other family-law matters and civil disputes of an amount determined from time to time will be within the jurisdiction of regional courts. This therefore means that attorneys will have the opportunity of representing their clients in matters where they ordinarily brief counsel. This will in turn reduce the cost of litigation and therefore increase access to justice.

There are nine regional court presidents and 343 regional court magistrates.

Magistrates' courts

Magisterial districts have been grouped into 13 clusters headed by chief magistrates. This system has streamlined, simplified and provided uniform court-management systems applicable throughout South Africa, in terms of judicial provincial boundaries.

It has also facilitated the separation of functions pertaining to the judiciary, prosecution and administration; enhanced and developed the skills and training of judicial officers; optimised the use of limited resources in an equitable manner; and addressed imbalances in the former homeland regions. In terms of the Magistrates' Act, 1993 (Act 90 of 1993), all magistrates in South Africa fall outside the ambit of the Public Service. The aim is to strengthen the independence of the judiciary.

Although regional courts have a higher penal jurisdiction than magistrates' courts (district

courts), an accused cannot appeal to a regional court against the decision of a district court; only to the High Court.

By mid-2009, there were 366 magisterial districts and main magistrates' offices, 80 branch courts and 282 periodical courts in South Africa. There were 1 906 magistrates in the country, including regional court magistrates.

In addition, full jurisdiction was conferred to courts in rural areas and former black townships that exercise limited jurisdiction and depend entirely on the main courts in urban areas to deliver essential justice services.

Criminal jurisdiction

Apart from specific provisions of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1944 (Act 32 of 1944), or any other Act, jurisdiction regarding sentences imposed by district courts is limited to an imprisonment of not more than three years or a fine not exceeding R60 000. A regional court can impose a sentence of not more than 15 years' imprisonment or a fine not exceeding R300 000.

Any person charged with any offence committed within any district or regional division may be tried either by the court of that district or by the court of that regional division.

Where it is uncertain in which of several jurisdictions an offence has been committed, it may be tried in any of such jurisdictions.

Where, by any special provision of law, a magistrate's court has jurisdiction over an offence committed beyond the limits of the district or regional division, the court will not be deprived of such jurisdiction.

A magistrate's court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason, murder and rape. A regional court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason. However, the High Court may try all offences. Depending on the gravity of the offence and the circumstances pertaining to the offender, the Directorate of Public Prosecutions decides in which court a matter will be heard and may even decide on a summary trial in the High Court.

Prosecutions are usually summarily disposed of in magistrates' courts, and judgment and sentence passed.

The following sentences may, where provided for by law, be passed upon a convicted person:

- imprisonment
- periodical imprisonment
- declaration as a habitual criminal (regional courts and high courts)
- committal to an institution established by law
- a fine with or without imprisonment as an alternative, correctional supervision or a suspended sentence
- declaration as a dangerous criminal (regional courts and high courts)
- a warning or caution
- discharge.

The sentencing of "petty" offenders to do community service as a condition of suspension, correctional supervision or postponement in appropriate circumstances, has become part of an alternative sentence to imprisonment. Where a court convicts a person of any offence other than one for which any law prescribes a minimum punishment, the court may, at its discretion, postpone the passing of sentence for a period not exceeding five years, and release the convicted person on one or more conditions; or pass sentence, but suspend it on certain conditions.

If the conditions of suspension or postponement are violated, the offender may be arrested and made to serve the sentence. This is done provided that the court may grant an order further suspending the operation of the sentence if offenders prove that circumstances beyond their control, or that any other good and sufficient reason prevented them from complying with the conditions of suspension.

Other criminal courts

In terms of statutory law, jurisdiction may be conferred upon a chief or headman or his deputy to punish an African person who has committed an offence under common law or indigenous law and custom, with the exception of certain serious offences specified in the relevant legislation. The procedure at such trials is in accordance with indigenous law and custom. The jurisdiction conferred upon a chief and a magistrate does not affect the jurisdiction of other courts competent to try criminal cases.

Community courts

South Africa's community courts provide timely judicial services – usually within 24 hours of an arrest of a criminal suspect. This assists in easing the country's court case backlog. Community courts, such as the Hatfield Community Court in Pretoria, are normal district magistrates' courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the local community and businesses. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

The business community and other civil-society formations contribute significantly to the establishment and sustainability of these courts.

Thirteen community courts have been established. Four are fully operational and had been formally launched in Hatfield, Fezeka (Gugulethu), Mitchells Plain and Cape Town.

Another nine pilot sites commenced in Durban (Point), KwaMashu, Mthatha, Bloemfontein, Thohoyandou, Kimberley, Phuthaditjhaba, Hillbrow and Protea (Lenasia).

Courts for income tax offenders

In October 1999, the South African Revenue Service (Sars) opened a criminal courtroom at the Johannesburg Magistrate's Office, dedicated to the prosecution of tax offenders.

The court deals only with cases concerning failure to submit tax returns or to provide information requested by Sars officials. It does not deal with bigger cases such as tax fraud.

Another Sars court operates twice a week at the Roodepoort Magistrate's Office. A tax court facility was opened in Megawatt Park, Sunninghill, Gauteng, in 2005.

Family courts

A family court structure and extended family advocate services are priority areas for the department. The establishment of family courts in South Africa was motivated by three broad aims, namely to:

- provide integrated and specialised services to the family as the fundamental unit in society
- facilitate access to justice for all in family disputes
- improve the quality and effectiveness of service delivery to citizens who have family law disputes.

In 2009, there was an increase in the number of appointments compared to the previous years in family-law sections of the magistrates' courts.

Many new applications were received countrywide and the number of children receiving maintenance increased. The number of new applications for child support recorded in 2009 was 32 828 while 22 806 maintenance orders were made for beneficiaries, of whom 99% were women.

Operation Isondlo (a Department of Justice and Constitutional Development initiative) has led to many children's maintenance defaulters being traced, appearing in court and paying maintenance. The following were recorded during 2008/09:

- 5 107 garnishee orders were issued
- 218 writs of execution were issued
- 3 469 criminal proceedings for maintenance default were issued
- 3 469 warrants of arrest were issued for defaulters
- the Justice Deposits Account System (JDAS) was introduced, which is used to operate a manual process and administer money received at magistrates' courts.

The JDAS provides better and faster service with shorter queues, and easy retrieval of information. Child-maintenance beneficiaries can make telephonic enquiries and get faster responses.

By mid-2009, of the 459 child-maintenance pay-points, 458 had been installed with JDAS, except Botshabelo in the Free State.

The effort of continuous identification of branch courts is progressing well with two additional branch courts, Motherwell in the Eastern Cape, and Richards Bay in KwaZulu-Natal, identified.

The JDAS was expected to be implemented in these courts during 2009.

Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) developments

The EFT, launched in 2005, allows people to access maintenance payments through their bank accounts.

Some of the major banks assisted the department with the opening of bank accounts and the placement of automated teller machines at shops in the local communities.

This system has reduced the regular absence of women from their jobs to queue for their child maintenance during working days as they can access the money in their leisure time.

In 2009, there were 130 000 beneficiaries receiving their maintenance through the EFT system.

Mediation in maintenance matters

In dealing with maintenance, there is an inevitable link of dealing with mediation, although it is not really recognised as mediation as such. The Maintenance Act, 1998 (Act 99 of 1998), provides for an element of mediation to be used as a mechanism in resolving disputes. A need has been identified to train officials to deal with mediation as this provides an opportunity for both parties to talk things through. Both parties contribute towards the amicable resolution of maintenance and bring about restoration of dignity to the aggrieved party.

The Johannesburg Family Court and Pretoria Magistrate's Court have been identified as pilot

sites as they are centrally located. It would also be easier for the national office to monitor and maintain contact for their progress, before moving to other regions. Once this is fully operational, it will reduce high volumes of maintenance cases that block the court and reduce the high turnaround time in finalising family-law matters. The department is investigating the roll-out of mediation services to other courts.

Domestic violence

The overall strategic objective of the Domestic Violence Programme is to strengthen the effectiveness of the Domestic Violence Act (DVA), 1998 (Act 116 of 1998). This will be implemented through a series of review projects aimed at identifying challenges and best practice in the implementation of the DVA, 1998. The projects will lay the foundation for informing the development of a framework for the effective and coordinated implementation of actions aimed at providing victim-friendly court-support services. This will include a holistic approach to all implementation initiatives aimed at the eradication of domestic violence.

The Domestic Violence Programme supported and facilitated the development of the Guidelines for Implementation of the DVA, 1998. The guidelines were developed by magistrates for magistrates and will be used as reference material.

In strengthening the effective implementation of the DVA, 1998, the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, through the Family Directorate, has entered into a partnership with the South African Safety and Security Education and Training Authority (SASSETA), the Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (SOCA) Unit and the Justice College in the establishment of a family-law learnership, which will include domestic-violence training for 100 clerks and advice-officers from non-governmental organisations.

This SASSETA-led Family Law Learnership started with the development of material, including the domestic violence module, which is in its final stages of completion.

As the implementation of domestic violence-management can only be effective from a holistic and integrated perspective, the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is part of the Ndabezitha Project, which aims to train 80 traditional leaders and 45 domestic violence clerks on the DVA, 1998, social context of domestic violence, effective management of domestic violence, restorative justice and conflict management in domestic violence cases.

Sexual offences courts

As part of its transformation and the improvement of access to justice, particularly for vulnerable groups, and as a means of recognising the scourge of sexual violence in society, the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007), has provided a legal framework to provide an integrated approach to the management of sexual offences, thereby aiming to reduce secondary trauma to victims of such violence.

The Sexual Offences Programme conducted a number of projects in 2008/09 to enhance the effective implementation of the Sexual Offences Amendment Act, 2007.

In ensuring that the legal framework and the rights of victims are realised and operationalised to ensure effective service delivery, the Act prescribes in Section 62 the establishment of the Inter-Sectoral Committee for the Management of Sexual Offence Matters, a monitoring framework overseen by the most senior government officials. This structure aims to eradicate the fragmented nature of service delivery by ensuring that the directors-general of the relevant departments meet regularly to ensure coordination.

The functions of this committee are to develop the Draft National Policy Framework, which must include:

- implementing the priorities and strategies contained in the Draft National Policy Framework
- measuring progress on the achievement of the framework
- ensuring that the various organs of state comply with the roles and responsibilities allocated to them in the Draft National Policy Framework
- monitoring the implementation of the framework.

The first Directors-General's Inter-Sectoral Committee on the Management of Sexual Offences convened on 17 February 2009. By mid-2009,

On 1 June 2009, Justice Richard Goldstone received the prestigious MacArthur Foundation Award for International Justice.

Justice Goldstone's contribution to the Goldstone Commission was integral to the democratic transition in the country. His contribution to international criminal justice and the fight against impunity is of great pride to all South Africans. Justice Goldstone is the second recipient of this award. Former United Nations Secretary-General, Mr Kofi Annan, received the award in 2008.

the committee was considering the Draft National Policy Framework.

Equality courts

The establishment of equality courts seeks to achieve the expeditious and informal processing of cases, which facilitates participation by the parties to the proceedings. The courts also seek to ensure access to justice to all persons in relevant judicial and other dispute-resolution forums.

South Africans' rights are entrenched in and protected by the South African Constitution and its Bill of Rights. In turn, laws give effect to the various rights. The right to equality, as one of these rights, is protected by law in the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000), and the Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998). The two acts work in synergy.

The 2000 Equality Act, 2000 aims to:

- prevent and prohibit unfair discrimination and harassment
- promote equality
- eliminate unfair discrimination
- prevent and prohibit hate speech.

The Act also provides for:

- remedies for victims of any of the above
- compliance with international law obligations, including treaty obligations
- measures to educate the public and raise public awareness on equality.

By May 2009, the remaining magisterial districts were being designated as equality courts. The process was envisaged to be completed in 2009.

By May 2009, the department had trained 98 equality court clerks before the completion of the designation of the remaining magisterial districts as equality courts. The training was held in the Eastern Cape, Free State and Limpopo.

Civil jurisdiction

Except when otherwise provided by law, the area of civil jurisdiction of a magistrate's court is the district, subdistrict or area for which the court has been established. South African law, as applied in the Western Cape, is in force on Prince Edward and Marion islands which, for the purpose of the administration of justice, are deemed to be part of the Cape Town magisterial district.

On 1 May 1995, the civil jurisdictional limits of magistrates' courts were increased for both liquid and illiquid claims, from R50 000 and R20 000 respectively, to R100 000.

In addition to the considerable increase, the previous distinction between jurisdictional limits regarding the different causes of action was abolished.

Unless all the parties in a case consent to higher jurisdiction, the jurisdiction of a magistrate's court is limited to cases in which the claim value does not exceed R100 000 where the action arises out of a liquid document or credit agreement, or R50 000 in all other cases.

Small claims courts

Small claims courts have been established in terms of the Small Claims Court Act, 1984 (Act 61 of 1984), to adjudicate small civil claims. They are created to eliminate the time-consuming adversary procedures before and during the trial of these claims. The limit of cases involving civil claims in these courts is R7 000.

Matters within small claims courts are presided over by commissioners who are usually practising advocates or attorneys, a legal academic or other competent person. The service is voluntary as there are no fees paid to the commissioners.

In 2008/09, the department appointed 114 commissioners and 113 advisory board members to assist small claims courts.

Neither the plaintiff nor the defendant may be represented or assisted by counsel at the hearing. The commissioner's decision is final and there is no appeal to a higher court; only a review process is allowed.

The department has developed a national programme on re-engineering small claims courts, which aims to strengthen and roll out these courts to rural and peri-urban areas by pursuing the strategic objectives of:

- providing access for all, especially the poor and the vulnerable
- establishing systems and rules of court that are accessible and easy to understand
- providing trained administrative support staff
- attracting and retaining commissioners.

The department continues to strengthen the capacity of small claims courts.

The improvement of the functioning of the small claims courts is a key priority area. The small claims courts constitute an inexpensive tool that was created to settle minor civil disputes in an informal manner.

By June 2009, there were 188 small claims courts. The department, in partnership with representatives of the legal fraternity and the Swiss Agency for Development and Cooperation, was in the process of finalising manuals for commissioners for small claims and for court officials, to be

followed by training programmes in conjunction with the Justice College.

Other civil courts

An authorised African headman or his deputy may hear and determine civil claims arising from indigenous law and custom, brought before him by an African against another African within his area of jurisdiction.

Courts constituted in this way are commonly known as chiefs' courts. Litigants have the right to choose whether to institute an action in the chief's court or in a magistrate's court. Proceedings in a chief's court are informal. An appeal against a judgment of a chief's court is heard in a magistrate's court.

Transforming the judiciary

A key aspect of the transformation of the justice system concerns the department's key strategic partners and stakeholders. The considerable effort put into transforming prosecution and allied services into a prestigious professional force, in accordance with the Constitution, is paying off.

By mid-2009, of the 205 judges, 45,37% (93) were white, 38,4% (78) were African, 7,80% (16) were coloured and 8,78% (18) were Indian. Overall, 20,49% were female and 79,51% male.

In terms of the lower-court judiciary, of the 1 906 magistrates, 46% were white, 39% African, 7% coloured and 8% Indian. Overall, 33% were female and 67% male.

The transformation of the judiciary is closely linked with the transformation of the legal profession and of legal scholarship. The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development has worked in partnership with law schools in transforming the curriculum of the basic law degree to bring it in line with modern best practices. In addition to encouraging law schools to widen access to students from previously disadvantaged communities, these institutions will further be encouraged to forge linkages with leading law firms, prominent practitioners and relevant international organisations. This will:

- ensure the relevance of the training they offer to the practical demands of the profession
- expose students, especially those from previously disadvantaged communities, to the profession and vice versa to facilitate professional training prospects
- engage the legal profession in the evolution of a new legal system that fully expresses the constitutional and cultural aspirations of the new dispensation.

The department assists law graduates through its internship programme, which also provides research training, to give much-needed assistance to state legal officers, prosecutors, public defenders, the judiciary and the magistracy.

Transformation of the legal profession includes making judicial services accessible to the poor, the uneducated and the vulnerable. This entails establishing a physical presence in rural areas and in townships, offering affordable fees and providing speedy and empathetic services. It also entails facilitating access of all aspects and levels of the profession to aspirant lawyers, especially to those from previously marginalised backgrounds.

The provision of alternative dispute-resolution mechanisms is another key aspect of transforming justice services, thus making justice more accessible and more affordable.

The department gives prominence to integrating and modernising justice services through technology. It seeks to evolve simplified, cheaper and faster processes geared for the poor and vulnerable in townships and rural areas. It seeks to achieve this in partnership with its customers, other government departments and stakeholders.

The South African Judicial Education Institute Act, 2008 (Act 14 of 2008), will, for the first time in history, introduce a state-sponsored judicial education programme for judges. The institute will provide training for both judges and magistrates.

The Judicial Service Commission (JSC) Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 20 of 2008), assented to law by the President in November 2008, was expected to come into operation in 2009. The Act establishes internal systems for judicial accountability. The JSC relies solely on its constitutional mandate to deal with any matter involving impropriety or incompetence and its mandate extended only to impeachable conduct on the part of a judge.

In 2009, the department was finalising a consolidated policy framework document to address other outstanding aspects relating to the transformation of the judicial system. These include rationalising high courts, harmonising the appointment procedures for judges and magistrates and addressing aspects relating to language use in courts.

Transforming the judicial system also includes transforming traditional courts. Traditional leaders are conferred with criminal and civil jurisdiction to exercise judicial authority in respect of certain offences and claims. The conferment is by virtue of sections 12 and 20 of the Black Administration Act, 1927 (Act 38 of 1927).

Since the Act is not consistent with the existing constitutional dispensation, it was repealed in November 2005.

Only sections 12 and 20, which deal with the establishment and functioning of traditional courts, were kept in operation until 30 September 2007. This deadline was extended by the repeal of the Black Administration Act, 1927 and Amendment of Certain Laws Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 7 of 2008), to 30 December 2009.

The extension allowed the department to formulate policy on the role of traditional leaders under a democratic dispensation, which will be followed by appropriate legislation to replace the repealed sections.

An interdepartmental task team, comprising officials of the departments of justice, former provincial and local government, and former land affairs, was appointed to draft the required policy in conjunction with the national and provincial houses of traditional leadership.

The policy was approved by Cabinet and launched in March 2008 in Nelspruit, Limpopo.

The Traditional Courts' Bill has also been introduced into Parliament.

Integrated case-flow management (CFM)

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is engaged in the development of an enhanced version of the CFM Framework for implementation by involving all stakeholders. In the process, participants from other partner organisations will make meaningful contributions on the issues and blockages affecting the proper implementation of CFM in the court environment. Efforts to eradicate such blockages will be proposed by adopting workable solutions. These include the following:

- continuous cooperation of stakeholders to implement and maintain CFM at all courts
- establishing judicial leadership and CFM buy-in processes in the lower and higher courts in the form of CFM forums
- facilitating and monitoring the creation of CFM governance structures to sustain productivity in the courts environment
- maintaining the CFM concept (guidelines, plans, governance, reporting and systems).

Systems that support CFM in the courts include the:

- E-Scheduler: This application is used to register criminal case information for the district court environment.
- Integrated Case-Management System: The application, an evolvement from the E-Scheduler, is designed to provide case-management information for a number of integrated systems within the department, which include the regional criminal and civil courts; high courts (criminal and civil); district courts (civil); small claims courts; masters, specialised and family courts; and the *National Sexual Offences Register.*
- Video Remand System: The system provides for the use of technology in conducting proceedings from a venue outside the court room, which is regarded as an extension facility of the court. Amendments to the respective legislation to support this application have been approved and the associated regulations are being developed.
- Digital Court Recording System (DCRS): The DCRS has been rolled out to all courts to replace the outdated analogue recording machines.
- Document Management System: This application has been successfully pilot tested in early 2009 at the Pretoria and Krugersdorp courts. Court records are filed at an off-site location and this is supported by technology and processes to ensure the speedy recovery of court records and files, eliminating the delays associated with misfiled and misplaced files.
- Transcription services: Service-providers have been appointed to support individual provinces and assist in facilitating the provision of transcription services in a fast and efficient manner.
- Re Aga Boswa/Court Capacitation Programme: The programme focuses on the provision of resources to support regional offices and courts.
- Case Backlog Project: The project has been introduced to reduce case backlogs and to increase the performance in regional court centres. The project has created additional capacity for these centres to concentrate on the finalisation of trials.

The Case-Reduction Backlog Project has been integrated into the Review of the Criminal Justice System process, which entails that where required, in terms of interventions on an urgent basis – for example, the xenophobia matters, inquest backlogs and election criminal matters – the backlog courts will also be used.

Between November 2006 and March 2009, the project received 11 978 cases and finalised 8 855 of them (73,9%).

Actual implementation at the courts will be facilitated by the regional offices in each province. This approach will provide for a uniform CFM framework, which will be streamlined in the

entire court system. This will have the benefits of cases being managed better, the customers of the court seeing quicker results and confidence in the justice system being restored.

Court performance

The sub-branch Court Performance is responsible for the development and monitoring of processes and systems; introducing CFM that facilitates efficient and effective court and case management; developing and facilitating the implementation of a court-management policy framework; evaluating the quality of services and performance within the courts; and facilitating the development of uniform performance standards to enhance institutional performance. It is also responsible for providing effective and responsive management and administrative support for the judicial decision-making process within the court environment.

As a service-delivery improvement programme, the CFM Project seeks to put in place institutional arrangements for integrated CFM in the court system. Given the broad and large sector of the justice system, this will be done incrementally over the years. The project therefore supports the institutional arrangements in the following ways:

- establishing judicial leadership regarding CFM – as the judiciary is in control of the court, it makes sense to facilitate extending such control to judicial pre-adjudication stages to achieve a holistic CFM judicial leadership
- re-engineering CFM support structures in the courts to respond adequately to the CFM regime.

The Court Performance Programme focuses on:

- increasing capacity at regions and courts to effect service delivery
- increasing and improving skills and competencies
- continued efforts to reduce case backlogs
- reviewing outdated court procedures/processes and the regulatory framework
- facilitating organisational efficiency
- facilitating efforts to secure skills required to operate the new systems and processes.

The Directorate: Court Efficiency's key priorities include:

- facilitating integrated CFM with stakeholders
- supporting the implementation of the Re Aga Boswa Project
- facilitating the implementation of multilingualism in courts and the development of indigenous languages in line with constitutional imperatives
- supporting the Administration of Justice Project for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™
- facilitating the securing of standardised transcription services for courts across all regions
- rendering case-management business intelligence support to information system management (ISM) in the development of information technology (IT) tools and systems.

The Directorate: National Operations Centre's (NOC) key priorities include:

- ensuring the necessary technical capacity within the NOC to become the management-information hub for the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development
- expanding the NOC services to cover all branches and all departmental service points
- improving the quality of the NOC tools data and the E-Scheduler/Integrated Case-Management System data through data auditing and regular quality assessments.

Special Investigating Unit

The SIU, created in terms of the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 (Act 74 of 1996), is an independent statutory body that is directly accountable to Parliament and the President of South Africa. It was established to conduct investigations at the President's request, and to report to him on the outcomes of these.

The SIU functions in a manner similar to a commission of inquiry, in that the President refers cases to it by way of a proclamation. It may investigate any matter set out in Section Two of the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 regarding:

- serious maladministration concerning the affairs of any state institution
- improper or unlawful conduct by employees of any state institution
- unlawful appropriation or expenditure of public money or property, and any unlawful, irregular or unapproved acquisitive act, transaction, measure or practice that has a bearing on state property
- intentional or negligent loss of public money or damage to public property
- corruption in connection with the affairs of any state institution
- unlawful or improper conduct by any person who has cause to or may cause serious harm to the interest of the public or any category of the public.

The unit can also take civil action to correct any wrongdoing it uncovers during an investigation and can therefore, for example, obtain a court order to:

- compel a person to pay back any wrongful benefit received
- cancel contracts when the proper procedures were not followed
- stop transactions or other actions that were not properly authorised.

A critical factor contributing towards the success of the SIU has been the development of an integrated forensic service to state institutions that require an intervention to address allegations of corruption, maladministration and fraud, which include forensic audit and investigation; remedial legal actions encompassing civil, criminal and disciplinary action; as well as the recommendation and facilitation of systemic recommendations.

The SIU's output-driven approach to investigations is supported by an effective national presence and excellent relations with other law agencies such as the National Prosecution Service (NPS), the core prosecuting division of the NPA, and other attached divisions, such as the Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU) in the case of fraud and other related matters, and the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU) in cases where the powers of this unit are more suitable for recovering the proceeds of crime.

National Prosecuting Authority of South Africa

South African society post-1994 has been marked by profound political changes and the establishment of progressive legislation, policies and programmes that have served to lay the basis for a new society. Key milestones along the way have been the adoption of the Constitution in 1996 that outlined the formation of the NPA and Section 179 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, that created a single NPA.

Also vital within the criminal justice system (CJS) was the formation of the Office of the National Director of Public Prosecutions (NDPP), established on 1 August 1998.

Legislation governing the prosecuting authority is the NPA Act, 1998 (Act 32 of 1998). The Constitution, read with the said Act, provides the prosecuting authority with the power to institute criminal proceedings on behalf of the State and to carry out any necessary functions incidental to instituting criminal proceedings.

Over the years, various units have been added, resulting in a formidable prosecuting and crime-fighting force that has made its mark on the South African scene and has gained a reputation as a professional organisation of note. The NPA structure includes the NPS, the AFU, and specialised units such as the SCCU, the Witness Protection Programme (WPU), the Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU) and the SOCA Unit.

In October 2008, Parliament approved the NPA Amendment Bill and the South African Police Service (SAPS) Amendment Bill, which provided for the dissolution of the Directorate: Special Operations (DSO). The DSO and SAPS Organised Crime Unit will become a single agency known as the Directorate: Priority Crime Investigation, within the SAPS. The Bills were signed into law in January 2009. The Acts are expected to strengthen the investigative capacity of the police in relation to organised and serious crime.

While the core work of the NPA will remain prosecutions and being "the people's lawyer", the NPA Strategy seeks to ensure that the organisation becomes more proactive so as to:

- contribute to economic growth
- contribute to freedom from crime
- contribute to social development
- promote a culture of civic morality
- reduce crime
- ensure public confidence in the CJS.

National Prosecutions Service

A significant majority of the NPA's prosecutors are housed in the NPS, the organisation's biggest unit. The NPS is headed by the Deputy National Director who reports to the NDPP. Directors of public prosecutions head the organisation in each region, with public prosecutors and state advocates manning the nation's district, regional and high courts.

The NPA represents and acts on behalf of the people in all criminal trials. The NPA does not seek only to secure convictions but rather to ensure that the interest of justice is served in all cases. Prosecutors are significant drivers of the CJS, controlling the speed and direction of court proceedings.

Witness Protection Programme

In 2001, the WPU was transferred from the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development to the Office of the NDPP. The office was created in terms of the Witness Protection Act, 1998 (Act 112 of 1998), to provide for temporary protection, pending placement under protection; placement of witnesses and related persons under protection; and services related to the protection of witnesses and related persons.

The Office for Witness Protection had 428 witnesses, including family members, on the programme in 2007/08. No witnesses or fam-

ily members were harmed or threatened. The definition of a walk-off was amended in 2007/08 to include all people that voluntarily left the programme before testifying, were given notice to leave the programme due to misconduct, or left the safe house without prior notice. Under the new definition, 24% of witnesses walked off the programme in 2007/08 against a target of zero. In the first half of 2008/09, 16% (27) walked off.

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU was created in 1999 in terms of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998). The AFU can seize and forfeit property that was bought with the proceeds of crime, or property that has been used to commit a crime.

The AFU has two major strategic objectives, namely to:

- develop the law by taking test cases to court and creating the legal precedents necessary to allow for the effective use of the law
- build capacity to ensure that asset forfeiture is used as widely as possible to have a real effect in the fight against crime.

In 2009/10, the AFU made a significant impact in the fight against crime. The AFU had a good year in terms of the value of its cases and exceeded most of its targets. It had the best year ever for the number and value of deposits into the Criminal Assets Recovery Account at R66 million, the highest ever number of seizures and total orders and the highest ever number of forfeitures applied for and forfeitures completed.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit

The SCCU was established on 1 August 1999 as a pilot project to combat the deteriorating situation pertaining to commercial crime. The SCCU aims to reduce commercial crime by the effective investigation and prosecution of complex commercial crime.

The SCCU's mandate is to accept responsibility for the investigation and prosecution of commercial crime cases emanating from the commercial branches of the SAPS in Pretoria and Johannesburg, respectively. The client base of the SCCU comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals and corporate bodies to state departments.

The investigation and prosecution process of the SCCU is driven through a combined prosecutor and investigator approach conducive to the methodical planning of the outcome and speedy finalisation of cases registered.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit

The PCLU is a specialist unit mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security. The PCLU was created by Presidential proclamation and is allocated categories of cases either by the President or by the NDPP. The primary function of the PCLU is to manage and direct investigations and prosecutions in respect of the following areas:

- the non-proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (nuclear, chemical and biological)
- the regulation of conventional military arms
- the regulation of mercenary and related activities

The Women's Justice and Empowerment Initiative (WJEI) was launched in South Africa in April 2009. This follows a US$55-million pledge made in 2005 by the United States of America towards the roll-out of the initiative. The programme intends to assist African countries such as South Africa, Zambia, Kenya and Benin to safeguard rights and provide protection to victims of sexual violence and abuse.

The victim-support component of the WJEI in South Africa is a three-year US$11,7-million initiative funded by the United States Agency for International Development (USAID) under a bilateral agreement with the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. It provides support to the Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (SOCA) Unit of the National Prosecuting Authority and is implemented by RTI International.

Launched in 2001 in Mannenberg, Cape Town, as part of South Africa's Anti-Rape Strategy, Thuthuzela care centres (TCCs) are multidisciplinary care facilities intended to address high levels of sexual violence against women and children, specifically rape. The centres seek to improve the process of reporting and prosecution of rape and other sexual offences in a dignified and caring environment.

USAID assistance will help advance the South African Government's programme to upgrade and expand its one-stop TCC network, a pioneering effort to better protect the rights of women and children by providing critical assistance to victims of sexual violence and abuse through the justice system.

The WJEI has four objectives:

- upgrading and expanding the TCC network
- improving care and treatment for survivors of sexual assault
- awarding targeted grants to medical, legal and psychosocial service-providers for follow-on care to survivors
- strengthening the SOCA Unit's management and communications systems for TCC sustainability.

Targeted support will expand the TCC network to a further 23 new TCCs over the next three years across all nine provinces.

- the International Court created by the Statue of Rome
- national and international terrorism
- prosecutions of persons who were refused or failed to apply for amnesty in terms of the Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC) processes.

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit

The SOCA Unit aims to:

- reduce victimisation of women and children by enhancing capacity to prosecute sexual offences and domestic violence cases
- reduce secondary victimisation of complainants and raise public awareness of the scourge of sexual offences and domestic violence
- ensure proper management of young offenders.

SOCA acts against the victimisation of women and children, with specialised prosecutors positioned in dedicated sexual offences courts. Supporting activities operated by SOCA include its multidisciplinary Thuthuzela care centres (TCCs), recognised by the UN General Assembly as a "world best-practice model" in the field of gender-violence management and response. TCCs are one-stop facilities that have been introduced as a critical part of South Africa's anti-rape strategy, aiming to reduce secondary trauma for the victim, improve conviction rates and reduce the cycle time for finalising cases.

TCCs are in operation in, among other things, public hospitals in communities where the incidence of rape is particularly high. They are also linked to sexual offences courts, which are staffed by prosecutors, social workers, investigating officers, magistrates, health professionals, non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and police, and located in close proximity to the centres. The centres are managed by a top-level interdepartmental team comprising various role players.

Legal practitioners

The legal profession is divided into two branches – advocates and attorneys – that are subject to strict ethical codes.

Advocates are organised into Bar associations or societies, one each at the seat of the various divisions of the High Court. The General Council of the Bar of South Africa is the coordinating body of the various Bar associations. There is a law society for attorneys in each of the provinces. A practising attorney is *ipso jure* a member of at least one of these societies, which seek to promote the interests of the profession.

The Law Society of South Africa is the coordinating body of the various independent law societies.

In terms of the Right of Appearance in Courts Act, 1995 (Act 62 of 1995), advocates can appear in any court, while attorneys may be heard in all of the country's lower courts and can also acquire the right of appearance in the superior courts.

Attorneys who wish to represent their clients in the High Court are required to apply to the registrar of a provincial division of the High Court. Such an attorney may also appear in the Constitutional Court. All attorneys who hold an LLB or equivalent degree, or who have at least three years' experience, may acquire the right of audience in the High Court.

The Attorneys Amendment Act, 1993 (Act 115 of 1993), provides for alternative routes for admission as an attorney. One of these is that persons who intend to be admitted as attorneys and who have satisfied certain degree requirements prescribed in the Act, are exempted from service under articles or clerkship. However, such persons must satisfy the society concerned that they have at least five years' appropriate legal experience.

State law advisers give legal advice to ministers, government departments, provincial administrations and a number of statutory bodies. In addition, they draft Bills and assist the minister concerned with the passage of Bills through Parliament. They also assist in criminal and constitutional matters.

Other legal practitioners

In terms of the NPA Act, 1998, state advocates and prosecutors are separated from the Public Service in certain respects, notably by the determination of salaries.

State attorneys derive their power from the State Attorney Act, 1957 (Act 56 of 1957), and protect the interests of the State in the most cost-effective manner possible. They do this by acting on behalf of the State in legal matters covering a wide spectrum of the law.

State attorneys draft contracts for the State and also act on behalf of elected and appointed officials in the performance of their duties, e.g. civil and criminal actions instituted against ministers and government officials in their official capacities.

Human rights

The Bill of Rights is the cornerstone of South Africa's democracy. It enshrines the rights of all people in South Africa and affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom.

While every person is entitled to these rights, they also have a responsibility to respect these rights.

The Bill of Rights binds the legislature, the executive, judiciary and all organs of state.

The rights contained in the Bill of Rights are subject to the limitations contained in or referred to in Section 36 of the Constitution, or elsewhere in the Bill of Rights.

They apply to all laws, administrative decisions taken and acts performed during the period in which the Constitution is in force. In terms of the Constitution, every person has basic human rights such as:

- equality before the law and equal protection and benefit of the law
- freedom from unfair discrimination
- the right to life
- the right to human dignity
- the right to freedom and security of the person.

Since 1994, and in keeping with the promotion of a human-rights culture, the focus is progressively shifting from an adversarial and retributive CJS to that of a restorative justice system.

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime, approved by Cabinet, seeks to consolidate the present legal framework in South Africa relating to the rights of and services provided to victims of crime, and to eliminate secondary victimisation in the criminal justice process.

The ultimate goal is victim empowerment by meeting victims' material or emotional needs. The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development has embarked on a programme of information sessions in all nine provinces to raise awareness of the Service Charter for Victims of Crime.

Crime prevention

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is one of the core departments in the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster that has been tasked with implementing the National Crime-Prevention Strategy (NCPS). This is government's official strategy to combat, control and prevent crime. (See Chapter 17: *Police, defence and intelligence*.)

The main responsibilities of the department in implementing the NCPS are to:

- promote legislation to create an effective CJS
- create an effective prosecution system
- create an effective court system for the adjudication of cases
- coordinate and integrate the departmental activities of all role players involved in crime prevention.

Integrated justice system (IJS)

The IJS, approved in 2002, aims to increase the efficiency and effectiveness of the entire criminal justice process by increasing the probability of successful investigation, prosecution, punishment for priority crimes and ultimately rehabilitation of offenders. A second version of the IJS was published in May 2003. Issues receiving specific attention include overcrowding in prisons and awaiting-trial prisoner problems, as well as bail, sentencing and plea-bargaining.

Government wants to eliminate duplication of services and programmes at all levels. The need for strategic alignment of cluster activities has also been raised at a series of governmental meetings and forums.

The benefits of proper alignment include:

- less duplication of services
- effective use of scarce and limited resources and skills
- joint strategic planning and a planned approach instead of simply reacting to problems.

The JCPS has structured itself to focus on two main areas of responsibility, namely operational and developmental issues relating to the justice system, and improving the safety and security of citizens.

Modernising the justice system

This includes establishing proper governance structures, effective monitoring mechanisms based on proper review findings and the integration and automation of the justice system. While each department within the JCPS Cluster must have its own IT plan to achieve its specific vision, mission and objectives, the IJS Board coordinates the broader and shared duty to integrate information flow throughout the CJS.

Child justice

The department continues to prioritise access to justice for vulnerable groups, including:

- implementing relevant legislation and enabling policy, for example, accelerating the finalisation and implementation of the Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008)

- the Sexual Offences Amendment Act, 2007 which, among other things, broadens the definition of sexual assault
- ensuring assistance from prosecutors and public defenders for child maintenance
- enforcing the right of children to receive support from earning parents
- prioritising child justice and all cases involving children, especially those in prison awaiting trial.

The Child Justice Act, 2008 assists with formalising legislation and practice, many parts of which have already been successfully piloted in South Africa.

The aim of the Child Justice Act, 2008 is to:

- establish a CJS for children who are in conflict with the law and are accused of committing alleged offences, in accordance with the values underpinning the Constitution and international obligations
- create, as a central feature of this new CJS for children, the possibility of diverting children away from the CJS
- provide for the minimum age of criminal capacity of children as being 10 years of age
- make provision for child-justice courts to hear all trials of children who are charged with certain serious offences
- extend the sentencing options available in respect of children who have been convicted
- entrench the notion of restorative justice in the CJS in respect of children who are in conflict with the law
- provide for related matters.

Children awaiting trial

The national and provincial focus to fast-track all children awaiting trial in correctional centres and police cells has led to a reduction in children awaiting trial.

Specific interventions to address the backlog of cases pending trial include moving away from placing children who are in trouble with the law in correctional detention centres. Children awaiting trial will be placed under home-based supervision, in places of safety or in the care of parents or caregivers.

Three one-stop child-justice centres have been established in Port Elizabeth, Bloemfontein and Port Nolloth. The National Inter-Sectoral Committee on Child Justice monitors and evaluates all child-justice issues and reports to the JCPS Cluster. This forum has also been established at regional level. With the expected implementation of the Child Justice Act, 2008 in 2010, the departments have gone ahead with practical steps to improve the lives of children going through the CJS. The number of children being diverted from the CJS during the past five years has increased every year. Statistics from the NPA indicate that 19 066 children were diverted from the CJS between April 2007 and March 2008 while 8 088 children were diverted from the CJS between April 2008 and March 2009.

Legal Aid South Africa has appointed children's units to legally represent children in conflict with the law and appearing in courts. The number of children assisted in this regard increases by 20% every year.

A time policy for children awaiting trial has further been agreed upon:

- three to six months for children's cases in district courts
- six to nine months for children's cases in regional courts
- nine to 12 months for children's cases in high courts.

Implementation of the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005)

The department has prioritised the planning for and implementation of the Children's Act, 2005, especially relating to the protection and care of

The sheriff profession is one of the important role players in the civil justice system. The transformation of the sheriffs sector will become a focal point of the review of the civil justice system. The institution is entrusted with the service and execution of court processes and is a vital link in the civil justice chain.

Since the inception of democracy, they have assumed a very important role as a vital interface between the justice system and the public. Without a sheriff, it would be impossible to secure the attendance of the defendants in court or have the court decisions and orders enforced. It is therefore important that sheriffs themselves are legitimate and exercise their powers in terms of the law and the Constitution.

The finalisation and publication of the rules of courts that allow for promoting a competitive profession, enable the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development to appoint, in deserving areas, two or more sheriffs. In all, 14 areas have been identified as possible competition sites and will be investigated by the department and the Board for Sheriffs.

The legal requirement introduced into law that sheriffs must attend a compulsory training course will bring enhanced efficiency and ensure compliance and respect for constitutional values.

children through children's court processes. The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is working closely with the Department of Social Development to ensure an integrated and uniform approach to the Children's Act, 2005.

Forty-three of the 315 sections of the Children's Act, 2005 have been operational since 1 July 2007. These sections' tasks, among other things, are:

- lowering the age of majority from 21 to 18 years of age
- setting the best interest of the child as standard
- a child's right of participation
- the right of access to courts for children
- the right to enforcement of the rights of children through courts
- parental responsibilities and rights
- rights of unmarried fathers.

The role of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is to ensure that courts, and especially children's courts, are capacitated to handle disputes affecting children.

To improve general service delivery in the children's courts, the department intends to continuously train the administrative personnel in children's courts, especially in view of the new legislation.

The remainder of the Children's Act, 2005, will be put into operation once the regulations to support the Act, including regulations on children's courts, have been finalised.

Section 28(3) of the Constitution provides that a child is anyone under the age of 18 years.

All children's rights are protected through court processes, and the department therefore foresees that courts will be requested to help protect and enforce children's rights in a rights-based approach.

The department also believes that approaching the courts should be a measure of last resort. The department has started consultations with the relevant role players in this regard.

The first port of call for the protection, promotion and realisation of children's rights should be the children's families, caregivers, the community and service-delivery departments.

For the abovementioned purpose, measures to resolve disputes outside the formal court procedures have also been provided for in the Children's Courts Chapter of the Children's Act, 2005, such as family-group conferences, mediation services and pre-trial conferences.

Restorative justice

Restorative justice is a response to crime that focuses on the losses suffered by victims, holding offenders accountable for the harm they have caused and building peace in communities.

Restorative justice means the promotion of reconciliation, restitution and responsibility/accountability through the involvement of a child, the child's parent, the child's family members, communities and all interested parties in all matters of a criminal or civil nature.

Restorative justice elements in many pieces of legislation, such as the Child Justice Act, 2008, the Traditional Courts Bill and the Children's Act, 2005, will promote the use of restorative justice in the handling of matters within and outside the criminal and civil justice systems.

The JCPS Cluster ensures that the many practical steps and programmes that have been developed during the past few years, both in government and NGO sectors, will be aligned and will have an impact towards nation-building, restorative justice and the healing of past and present wounds caused by crimes.

The South African Law Reform Commission (SALRC) finalised a report on community dispute-resolution structures in 2009. The report addresses issues to be considered when establishing an effective structure for resolving community-level disputes, which will add to programmes that focus on restorative justice.

Victim-Empowerment Programme

This programme aims to improve services rendered to victims of crime.

The NPA has court-preparation officials on contract who provide support to crime victims and especially abused children, in preparing them for court proceedings.

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime is expected to go a long way towards assisting crime victims and contributing to interdepartmental and cluster coordination and cooperation. The Development Committee is mandated to align and coordinate cluster activities across the various departments, with the ultimate aim of improving service delivery, policy coordination and planning.

It consists of senior representatives from each of the partner departments participating in the IJS, and is chaired by the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. National Treasury, the judiciary and the Department of Home Affairs are also represented on the committee.

E-Justice Programme

The E-Justice Programme supports the fundamental reforms necessary to establish a more fair, accessible and efficient justice system in South Africa. The programme aims to reform and modernise the administration and delivery of justice through re-engineering work processes by using technologies, and strengthening strategic planning and management capacity, organisational development and human-resource interventions.

The E-Justice Programme has evolved into the ISM Programme, which has 25 projects in addition to the three main ones, namely the Court Process Project, Digital Nervous System Project and Financial Administration System Project. The E-Justice Programme is funded mainly by the Justice Vote and supplemented with donor funding from the European Union Commission, the Royal Netherlands Embassy and the Irish Embassy.

Legislative development

The Legislative Development Branch of the department administers the Constitution and over 160 principal Acts. The branch is also responsible for researching, developing and promoting supporting legislation, reflecting the basic constitutional ideals, which facilitates a justice system that is simple, fair, inexpensive and responsive to the needs of the diverse communities in South Africa.

The branch consists of three main components, namely the research activities of the SALRC, the Secretariat for the Rules Board for Courts of Law and the Legislative Development component.

Legislative Development researches, develops and promotes appropriate legislation affecting the department's line functions.

Apart from the legislation referred to in other sections of this chapter, the following pieces of legislation were passed in 2008:

- Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communications-Related Information Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 48 of 2008). The Act regulates the interception of communications and associated processes, such as applications for and authorisation of communications.
- The General Laws (Loss of Membership of National Assembly, Provincial Legislature or Municipal Council) Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 55 of 2008). The Act, among other things, makes certain consequential amendments relating to the abolition of the so-called floor-crossing provisions.
- NPA Amendment Act, 2008, (Act 56 of 2008). This Act repeals the provisions relating to the DSO.
- Constitution 14th Amendment Act, 2008. This Act abolishes floor-crossing in the National Assembly.
- Constitution 15th Amendment Act, 2008. This Act abolishes floor-crossing in municipal councils.
- Criminal Procedure Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 65 of 2008). This Act provides for the postponement of certain criminal matters by audiovisual link and for the expungement of certain criminal records.

State Legal Services

The Office of the Chief Litigation Officer provides a reliable, cost-effective and efficient litigation, advice and representation service to the State and its organs. It comprises the State Attorney, Law-Enforcement and Civil-Litigation units.

The main functions of the branch include:

- managing the state attorney services of national, provincial and local government, departments and their officials on civil and criminal matters
- establishing competitive and professional state-litigation services
- facilitating alignment of government litigation to policy
- strengthening in-house capacity for government litigation
- tracking and interacting with Constitutional Development spurned by litigation
- providing strategic and policy leadership to the Legal Administration division, comprising Legal Process and Law Enforcement.

International legal relations

The main functions of the Chief Directorate: International Legal Relations in the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development are to identify and research legal questions that relate to matters pertaining to the administration of justice between South Africa and other states/bodies/institutions.

The chief directorate is involved in direct liaison and negotiations at administrative and technical level with foreign states to promote international legal cooperation, and for the possible conclusion of extradition and mutual legal-assistance agreements. The chief directorate also aims to establish greater uniformity between the legal systems of southern African states, especially with the Southern African Development Community (SADC).

The chief directorate coordinates human-rights issues at international level under the auspices of the UN and the African Union.

The functions of the chief directorate are divided into eight broad categories:

- regular liaison with SADC states
- coordinating all Commonwealth matters pertaining to the administration of justice
- interacting with other international bodies, such as the UN, the Hague Conference and the International Institute for the Unification of Private Law
- interacting with foreign states outside the SADC region
- negotiating extradition and mutual legal-assistance agreements with other countries/ international bodies
- preparing Cabinet and Parliament documentation for the ratification of human-rights treaties, including report writing
- processing requests for extradition, mutual legal assistance in criminal matters, interrogatory commissions and service of process
- processing requests for maintenance in terms of the Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act, 1963 (Act 80 of 1963).

International Criminal Court (ICC)

As required by the Rome Statute of the ICC, South Africa promulgated the Implementation of the Rome Statute of the ICC Act, 2002 (Act 27 of 2002).

This Act provides for a framework to:

- ensure the effective implementation of the Rome Statute of the ICC in South Africa
- ensure that South Africa conforms with the obligations set out in the statute
- address the crime of genocide, crimes against humanity and war crimes
- address the prosecution in South African courts of persons accused of having committed said crimes in South Africa and beyond the borders of the country in certain circumstances
- deal with the arrest of certain persons accused of having committed said crimes and their surrender to the ICC in certain circumstances
- enhance cooperation between South Africa and the ICC.

Legal structures

Master of the High Court

The master's office's main divisions strive to protect the financial interest of persons whose assets or interests are being managed by others. These divisions are:

- deceased estates
- liquidations
- registration of trusts
- administration of the Guardian's Fund.

Each year, the value of estates under the supervision of the masters' office amounts to about R18 billion. This includes about R4 billion in the Guardian's Fund.

The key statutory functions of the masters' offices are to:

- control the administration of deceased and curatorship estates
- control the administration of insolvent estates and the liquidation of companies and close corporations
- control the registration and administration of both testamentary and *inter vivos* trusts
- manage the Guardian's Fund
- assess estate duty and certain functions with regard to estate duty
- accept and take custodianship of wills in deceased estates
- act as an office of record.

Deceased estates

On 15 October 2004, the Constitutional Court declared Section 23 and regulations of the Black Administration Act, 1927 unconstitutional.

In 2005, legislation to repeal the Black Administration Act, 1927 was finalised. This decision implied that the Master of the High Court takes over the powers of supervision in all deceased estates, and that all estates have to be administered in terms of the Administration of Estates Act, 1965 (Act 66 of 1965), as amended.

All intestate estates must be administered in terms of the Intestate Succession Act, 1987 (Act 81 of 1987), as amended. This ensures that all South Africans are treated equally, and that the dignity of each person is restored.

The institutional structures are the following:

- The Chief Master heads the national office and is responsible for coordinating all the activities of the masters' offices.
- There are masters' offices in Bhisho, Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Durban, Grahamstown, Johannesburg, Kimberley, Mafikeng, Polokwane, Port Elizabeth, Pietermaritzburg, Pretoria, Thohoyandou and Mthatha.
- Suboffices are located in places where the High Court does not have a seat, but where workloads require the presence of at least one assistant master.
- At service points, officials attached to the Branch: Court Services deliver services on behalf of, and under the direction of, the master. Each magistrate's court is a service point.

Each service point has at least one designated official who is the office manager or a person of equal rank. They only appoint masters' representatives in intestate estates of R50 000 or less, in terms of Section 18(3) of the Administration of Estates Amendment Act, 2002 (Act 47 of 2002).

Curatorships

On 26 December 2004, the Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002), came into effect, repealing the Mental Health Act, 1973 (Act 18 of 1973).

The new Act provides that where a person falls within the ambit of this Act, the master can appoint an administrator to handle the affairs of the person. The administrator, in this instance, replaces the appointment of a curator, as was done in the past.

In terms of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998, the master also appoints curators in these estates to administer the assets of persons and legal entities attached by the AFU, in terms of a court order.

Guardian's Fund

The fund holds and administers funds that are paid to the master on behalf of various persons, known or unknown.

These include minors, persons incapable of managing their own affairs, unborn heirs, missing or absent persons, or persons having an interest in the money of a usufructuary, fiduciary or fideicommissary nature.

The money in the Guardian's Fund is invested with the Public Investment Corporation and is audited annually. Interest is calculated monthly at a rate per year determined from time to time by the Minister of Finance. The interest is compounded annually at 31 March. Interest is paid for a period from a month after receipt up to five years after it has become claimable, unless it is legally claimed before such expiration.

By June 2009, the management and administration of the Guardian's Fund had been automated and the former manual system was in the final stages of being phased out. The Master's Office in Pretoria was the last office to be automated. The computerisation of the administration of the Guardian's Fund aims to allow for more accurate reporting on the activities of the fund. It is expected to reduce the opportunity to manipulate the system for purposes of committing fraud and corruption.

As part of the Right-Sizing Project, initiated a few years ago to increase capacity, 600 new posts were created and filled nationally in 2007/08 and 2008/09.

Rules Board for Courts of Law

The Rules Board for Courts of Law is a statutory body, which was established by the Rules Board for Courts of Law Act, 1985 (Act 107 of 1985), to review the rules of courts and to make, amend or repeal rules, subject to the approval of the Minister of Justice. Details of the Rules Board's members, representations under consideration and the draft amendments for comment can be found at *www.justice.gov.za/rules_board/rules_board.htm.*

Justice College

The Justice College provides vocational training to all officials of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. It also presents training to autonomous professions such as magistrates and prosecutors. Training is integral to the department's efforts to widen and improve citizens' access to justice, enable the department to meet its strategic objectives and empower employees to heighten their performance.

The Justice College is being transformed by reviewing the governance structure, processes and systems, and revamping the curriculum to ensure that the college serves the training and development needs of all its stakeholders.

By February 2009, the college had been granted full accreditation status and was extending its scope of accreditation as a training-provider. The transformed college aims to extend training to all professionals and officials of the department, including state attorneys, masters, family advocates, registrars, court managers and interpreters, as well as all justice-sector personnel.

The college provides training in legislative drafting to officers working with legislation in the various government departments. The department recognises that well-drafted laws facilitate good governance and enhances democracy. Training is given to national, provincial and municipal officers and officers working for statutory bodies.

The training focuses on creating awareness in officers of the constitutional imperatives in legislative drafting generally, and this should minimise constitutional challenges to legislation. Focus is also put on developing policies and drafting laws that are easily understood by the target audience, thus facilitating access to justice by all. Training interpreters is a departmental priority.

The college continues presenting courses that focus on complex concepts, including but not

limited to, environmental crimes; cyber crimes; the National Credit Act, 2005 (Act 35 of 2005); and developing legal terminology in indigenous languages.

The college is developing curricula on cross-cutting, non-legal, but essential training programmes, such as management and leadership, project management, service excellence and general administrative training.

Office of the Family Advocate

The role of the Family Advocate is to promote and protect the best interests of the child in civil disputes over parental rights and responsibilities.

This is achieved through monitoring pleadings filed at court, conducting enquiries, filing reports, appearing at court during the hearing of the application or trial and through providing mediation services in respect of disputes over parental rights and responsibilities of fathers of children born out of wedlock.

The Family Advocate derives its duties and obligations from the Mediation in Certain Divorce Matters Act, 1987 (Act 24 of 1987), and other related legislation. In certain instances, the Family Advocate also assists the courts in matters involving domestic violence and maintenance. The Office of the Chief Family Advocate is the designated central authority regarding the implementation of the Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction, to which South Africa became a signatory in 1996. Under this Act, the Chief Family Advocate assists in securing the return of, or access to, children abducted or unlawfully retained by their parents or caregivers.

The sections of the Children's Act, 2005 that came into operation on 1 July 2007 have significantly expanded the Family Advocate's responsibilities and scope of duties, as the Act makes the Family Advocate central to all family-law civil litigation. Furthermore, litigants are now obliged to mediate their disputes before resorting to litigation, and unmarried fathers can approach the Family Advocate directly for assistance without instituting any litigation at all.

In addition, children's rights to participation in, and consultation on, decisions affecting them have been entrenched and the Family Advocate is the mechanism whereby the voice of the child is heard.

Legal Aid South Africa

Legal Aid South Africa continues to provide legal assistance to the indigent, in accordance with the Constitution and other legislative requirements. This is done through a system of in-house outsourcing to private lawyers (a system of judicare) and co-operation partners.

Legal Aid South Africa and the SAPS are working on systems that will allow legal-aid applications to be submitted electronically from police stations, to facilitate access to legal representation and ensure that arrested people have legal representation when they first appear in court. This is expected to reduce delays caused by accused people having to find attorneys.

In 2009, Legal Aid South Africa extended its national footprint by three new justice centres (in Botshabelo, Bellville and Soshanguve) to 62 justice centres countrywide and by eight satellite offices (mostly in rural areas) to 55 satellite offices.

There is demand for civil legal-aid services in the communities of South Africa and the limited capacity to render civil legal-aid work remains one of the challenges.

For example, only 7% (30 309) of new matters taken on by Legal Aid South Africa during 2008/09 were civil matters and the rest (404 613) were criminal matters.

It has prioritised the representation of children for both civil and criminal matters. About 10,5% (45 268) of new matters taken on by the Legal Aid South Africa were on behalf of children. As a result, dedicated children's units have been established at a number of justice centres to ensure specialised representation for children.

Public Protector

The Public Protector was established in terms of Chapter Nine of the Constitution to strengthen constitutional democracy. The Public Protector investigates any conduct in state affairs or public administration (including national, provincial and municipal administrations, or government entities such as Eskom and Transnet) that is suspected to be improper or that results in impropriety or prejudice. The Public Protector may not investigate court decisions.

Despite the high-profile cases involving politicians that have been investigated, most of the office's work involves complaints from people in townships, shack dwellers and those in rural areas who are struggling to access services to which they are entitled.

Some of the cases investigated include long delays in pension payouts from government and parastatals; the adverse impact of a decision or policy on individuals, institutions or groups; denial of access to information; and insufficient reasons provided for a decision taken.

With a staff complement of about 200, the Public Protector resolves about 17 000 cases per year. The bulk of the cases are resolved within three months.

The Public Protector's services are free and available to anyone who has a complaint. Complainants' names are kept confidential as far as possible.

The President appoints the Public Protector on recommendation of the National Assembly and in terms of the Constitution for a non-renewable period of seven years.

The Public Protector is subject only to the Constitution and the law, and functions independently from government or any political party. No person or organ of state may interfere with the functions of the Public Protector.

The Public Protector has the power to report a matter to Parliament, which will debate it and ensure that the Public Protector's recommendations are followed.

Magistrates' Commission

The Magistrates' Commission ensures that the appointment, promotion, transfer or discharge of, or disciplinary steps against judicial officers in the lower courts take place without favour or prejudice, and that the applicable laws and administrative directions in connection with such actions are applied uniformly and correctly.

The commission also attends to grievances, complaints and misconduct investigations against magistrates. It advises the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development on matters such as the appointment of magistrates, promotions, salaries and legislation.

The commission has established committees to deal with appointments, misconduct, disciplinary inquiries and incapacity; grievances; salary and service conditions; and the training of magistrates.

South African Law Reform Commission

The SALRC is an independent statutory body, established by the SALRC Act, 1973 (Act 19 of 1973). The SALRC and its secretariat are responsible for research in respect of the law of South Africa with a view to advising government on the development, improvement, modernisation and reform of the law of South Africa in all its facets, by performing, among other things, the following functions:

- executing the law-reform programme of the SALRC by conducting legal research, including legal comparative research, by developing proposals for law reform and, where appropriate, by promoting uniformity in the law
- preparing legislative proposals
- establishing a permanent, simplified, coherent and generally accessible statute book, complying with the principles of the Constitution
- consolidating or codifying any branch of the law
- assisting parliamentary committees during the deliberation of draft legislation emanating from the SALRC
- advising ministers and state departments on proposed legislation and recommendations.

In 2009, the SALRC was investigating the following issues:

- statutory law revision (including Hindu marriages and a review of the Interpretation Act, 1957 [Act 33 of 1957])
- arbitration (specifically the areas of community dispute-resolution structures and family mediation)
- custody of and access to minor children
- aspects of matrimonial property law
- adult prostitution
- the use of electronic equipment in court proceedings
- assisting adults with impaired decision-making capacity
- prescription periods
- the law of evidence
- administration orders
- civil action in respect of consequential damages arising from hoaxes.

Cabinet has endorsed the SALRC's investigation into statutory law revision. This investigation is of considerable magnitude. The SALRC has identified the speedy completion of the review of pre-1994 statutes with a focus on statutes that are absolute, or redundant, or that blatantly violate Section Nine of the Constitution, as priority.

In 2008, the SALRC released reports on the following:

- trafficking in persons
- protected disclosures
- stalking
- customary law of succession
- international cooperation in civil matters
- administration of estates (interim report).

Judicial Service Commission

In terms of the Constitution, the President, in consultation with the JSC, appoints the Chief Justice and the Deputy Chief Justice, and the President and Deputy President of the SCA. The President appoints other judges on the advice of the JSC. In the case of the Chief Justice and the Deputy Chief

Justice, the leaders of parties represented in the National Assembly are also consulted.

The JSC was established in terms of Section 178 of the Constitution to perform this function. It also advises government on any matters relating to the judiciary or to the administration of justice.

When appointments have to be made, the commission gives public notice of the vacancies that exist and calls for nominations.

The JSC shortlists suitable candidates and invites them for interviews. Professional bodies and members of the public have the opportunity to comment prior to the interviews or to make representations concerning the candidates to the commission.

The JSC has determined criteria and guidelines for appointments, which have been made public.

The interviews are conducted as public hearings and may be attended by anyone who wishes to do so. Following the interviews, the JSC deliberates and makes its decisions in private. Its recommendations are communicated to the President, who then makes the appointments.

South African Human Rights Commission

The SAHRC is a national institution that derives its powers from the Constitution and the South African Human Rights Commission Act, 1994 (Act 54 of 1994). It is also given additional powers and responsibilities by other national legislation. Since its inauguration in October 1995, the commission has taken up the challenge of ensuring that the noble ideals expressed in the Constitution are enjoyed by all in South Africa.

The SAHRC works with government, civil society and individuals, both nationally and abroad, to fulfil its constitutional mandate.

In terms of Section 184(1) of the Constitution, the SAHRC must:

- promote respect for human rights and a culture of human rights
- promote the protection, development and attainment of human rights
- monitor and assess the observance of human rights in South Africa.

The operations of the SAHRC consist of the following programmes:

- Strategic Management and Support Services
- Commissioners
- Education, Training and Public Awareness
- Legal Services
- Research and Documentation
- Parliamentary Liaison and Legislation and Treaty Body Monitoring
- Information and Communication
- Special Programmes
- Coordinators
- Civil-Society Advocacy Project.

Structure

The SAHRC is made up of two sections: the commission, which sets out policy; and a secretariat, which implements policy. The chairperson is overall head, and the chief executive officer is head of the Secretariat, accountable for the finances of the SAHRC and responsible for the employment of staff.

As set out in Section Five of the Human Rights Commission Act, 1994, the SAHRC has established standing committees to advise and assist it in its work. The SAHRC appoints the members of the standing committees, each of which is chaired by a commissioner. The SAHRC has also established provincial offices to ensure its services are widely accessible.

Education and Training

The objectives of the Education and Training Subprogramme are to conduct training workshops, seminars, presentations and capacity-building programmes on equality, economic and social rights, promotion of access to information and other focus areas of the SAHRC. The SAHRC continues its collaboration with the SADC region.

Legal Services

This subprogramme implements the commission's protection mandate, deals primarily with complaints of human-rights violations in pursuance of redress, monitors the agencies of the justice system, submits recommendations and conducts hearings and public inquiries.

Research and Documentation

This subprogramme implements the commission's monitoring and assessment of the observance of the human-rights mandate. It has three components: the Equality Unit, the Economic and Social Rights Unit and the Library.

Commission on Gender Equality

The CGE is one of six state institutions set up in terms of the Constitution to promote democracy and a culture of human rights in the country. The commission's role is to advance gender equality in all spheres of society and to make recommendations on any legislation affecting the status of women.

The CGE has the following powers and functions:

- developing, conducting or managing information and education programmes to foster public understanding of matters pertaining to the promotion of gender equality and the role and activities of the commission
- monitoring and evaluating the policies and practices of state organs, statutory and public bodies, as well as the private sector, to promote gender equality
- investigating any gender-related complaints received or on its own initiative
- liaising with institutions, bodies or authorities with similar objectives
- conducting research to further the objectives of the CGE.

Complaints are received from the public at large and dealt with either through personal consultations, telephonically or in writing, including electronically.

In cases where the complaint does not fall within the CGE's mandate, it may be referred to a relevant institution or forum.

Truth and Reconciliation Commission Unit

The TRC was dissolved in March 2002 by way of proclamation in the *Government Gazette*. The TRC handed its final report to the President in March 2003. The TRC made recommendations to government in respect of reparations to victims and measures to prevent the future violation of human rights and abuses.

Four categories of recommendations were approved by government in June 2003 for implementation, namely:

- final reparations: the provision of a once-off individual grant of R30 000 to individual TRC-identified victims
- symbols and monuments: academic and formal records of history, cultural and art forms, as well as erecting symbols and monuments to exalt the freedom struggle, including new geographic and place names
- medical benefits and other forms of social assistance: education assistance, provision of housing and other forms of social assistance to address the needs of TRC-identified victims
- community rehabilitation: rehabilitating whole communities that were subject to intense acts of violence and destruction, and which are still in distress.

The TRC Unit, located within the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, was established in 2005 to monitor, coordinate and audit the implementation of the TRC recommendations.

Progress in respect of Phase One (payment of once-off individual reparations)

The TRC identified 21 769 people as victims of gross human-rights violations. Of the total identified victims, 16 837 applied for reparations. By May 2009, 15 881 beneficiaries had been paid the once-off grants of R30 000 as a final reparation.

Payments of the once-off reparation amounts are made from the President's Fund, established in terms of Section 42 of the Promotion of National Unity and Reconciliation Act, 1995 (Act 34 of 1995).

The fund is located within the office of the Chief Financial Officer in the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development.

The department has experienced some difficulties with tracing some of the beneficiaries because of incorrect or changed addresses, or in some cases, victims died.

By May 2009, there were 956 outstanding beneficiaries of which 248 were deceased and the President's Fund was attempting to establish their rightful next of kin. Government continues to search for the remaining beneficiaries.

Progress in respect of Phase Two

The following departments participate in the implementation of Phase Two:

- The former Department of Education set aside R5 million for bursaries to enable the TRC identified victims and their immediate dependants to pursue their studies. Bursary forms have been sent to them to register with the relevant higher education institutions in the country. Relevant regulations have also been drafted.
- The Department of Social Development has been rendering counselling services to the victims and their families countrywide in the wake of exhumations and reburials.
- The Department of Home Affairs assists by issuing death certificates as symbolic reparation to families. The department has also in the past assisted in the tracing of the TRC identified beneficiaries from its database.
- The Department of Health offers medical assistance to victims who were identified through the TRC process and are in need of continuous medical treatment.
- The Department of Human Settlements assists by rendering preferential treatment to identified victims in line with the TRC recommendations.

Handing over and the reburial of the remains

As at September 2008, the TRC Unit handed over 32 remains of exhumed individuals to their families for proper and dignified reburial. These are the people who were reported missing to the TRC and assumed dead.

The handover took place at the Freedom Park, Pretoria, after the remains were exhumed and identified by the Missing Persons Task Team located in the NPA.

Department of Correctional Services

The responsibility of the Department of Correctional Services is not merely to keep individuals who have committed crimes out of circulation in society, or to enforce a punishment meted out by the courts, but also to correct offending behaviour in a secure, safe and humane environment to avoid repeat offending/recidivism.

However, corrections is also a societal responsibility and rehabilitation cannot be complete or sustainable without reintegrating offenders back into their communities upon their release.

The department's parole system reflects the principles of social reintegration. While the offender on parole is under the supervision of a correctional official, the community should assume a bigger role in ensuring that lasting corrections/rehabilitation takes place.

The department strives to establish new and strengthen existing partnerships with many community organisations, NGOs and the business sector to ensure that this view becomes entrenched in the fabric of South African society.

The department structurally operates within six geographic regions. This means that some of the provinces have been lumped together to form one region. The six regions are Gauteng, Limpopo/Mpumalanga/North West, Free State/Northern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Western Cape and the Eastern Cape.

Inmate profile

In March 2009, there were 165 230 inmates in correctional service centres, accommodated in 239 facilities throughout the country.

In June 2009, two facilities were closed for renovations. There are two private prisons in South Africa. Of the 239 centres, eight are female centres, 13 are for the youth, 130 are male centres and 86 are mixed (for both females and males).

Overcrowding

Overcrowding continues to pose a challenge and impacts on how the department functions and on its service delivery. At the close of the 2008/09 financial year, the department's facilities were overcrowded by 43,3% at an average cost of incarceration estimated at R123,37 per day.

In 2009, the actual capacity in the department's facility stood at 114 822 with 25 000 meant for awaiting-trial detainees and 89 822 earmarked for sentenced offenders.

Overcrowding has an impact on the provision of programmes in that officials are often not able to reach the targets they set. It puts constraints on building infrastructure and has created a shortage of beds, thus increasing the demand for more space. The department is implementing a strategy to address overcrowding.

The department partly manages overcrowding through the transfer of offenders between centres and releases resulting from sentence conversion. The construction of new centres should alleviate the pressure put on facilities and staff because of overcrowding.

There is an intersectoral team, the Management of Awaiting-Trial Detention Project and continued efforts to encourage the judiciary to use the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act 51 of 1977), to reduce overcrowding.

In March 2009, there were 49 477 awaiting-trial detainees and 115 753 sentenced offenders in the department's correctional centres.

Policy development

The Department of Correctional Services' guiding policy is the *White Paper on Corrections*, which was adopted by Cabinet in 2005. Since its adoption, the department has undergone various changes that included policy review and amendment of the Correctional Services Act, 1998 (Act 111 of 1998). By mid-2009, more than 44 policies had been reviewed and aligned to the White Paper. The department has also gone a step further to ensure implementation takes place. More than 400 officials have been trained on policy development and implementation.

Departmental achievements

Some of the department's achievements include the following:

- Between 2003 and 2009, the department was making progress in reducing the number of escapes.
- In 2008, Corrections Week was launched in Pretoria.

- In 2008, resolutions were taken and a pledge was signed to renew commitment for building a corrections community that will serve as a joint programme of action, at a stakeholder conference.
- Nineteen pharmacists were allocated to the department to undertake community service.
- Eleven computer-based training centres for offenders were established. The training forms an integral part of the subject Life Orientation within the National Curriculum Statement for grades 10 to 12 as well as the National Curriculum Vocation.
- In 2008/09, the former National Youth Commission trained 217 Adult Basic Education Training facilitators on National Qualifications Framework Level Five.
- During the 2008/09 financial year, 43 847 submissions for placement on parole, including placement under correctional supervision, were dealt with by the 52 national parole boards. Of the 48 967 cases that served before the boards, 41 677 were approved.

Improving service delivery

The focus of the department continues to be on improving service delivery and it has been enhancing a number of initiatives that will improve how it functions and enhance service delivery.

These include:

- Integrated Human-Resource (HR) Strategy
- Compliance Improvement Plan
- Risk-Management Framework
- key strategic projects
- Service-Delivery Improvement Plan
- security enhancement
- care and development of inmates.

Integrated Human-Resource Strategy

The department developed and launched the Integrated HR Strategy in 2007/08 aimed at establishing a framework providing for effective work organisation, recruitment, retention and development of its employees. In 2008/09, this three-year strategy was in the implementation phase and was expected to be reviewed in the 2009/10 financial year. The department recognises personnel as a critical asset for the implementation of its mandate and seeks to serve as a unifying vision to develop the department as a learning organisation with a culture of respect, service and accountability. The focus areas include recruitment and retention, training and retraining, enhancing capacity to deliver, employee relations and wellness, organisational culture, career management and organisational design.

Compliance Improvement Plan

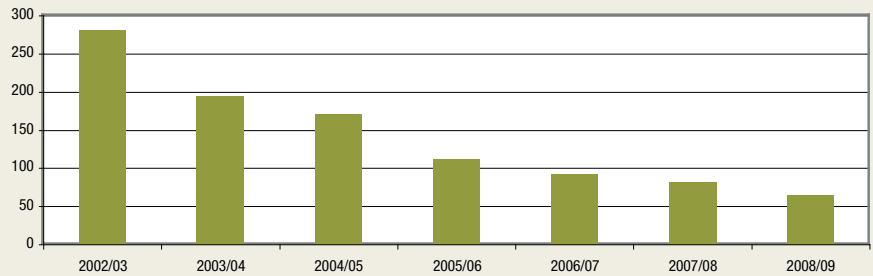
Since its inception in 2005/06, this plan has been used as a system to monitor the performance of management areas and centres on matters that have been recurring in the findings of the Auditor-General's reports.

Accountability has been built into the system by requiring regional offices to submit bimonthly certifications on the progress, which is made by different management areas under their jurisdiction.

These certifications are followed by inspections, which are quantified and recorded to monitor the performance trends of each management area and centre falling under it. Performance trends are used in the performance assessments of different regional and area commissioners. The results of these inspections are also used in quarterly progress reports to the department's Risk-Management Committee and Audit Committee.

Since 2006/07, the overall improvement in compliance had moved from 79% to 84% in 2007/08. The challenge of non-compliance has

Escapes



Source: Department of Correctional Services

entrenched itself over some time in the department but management is determined to change the situation around within a reasonable period. Compliance Improvement Plan inspections are monitored by the Risk-Management Committee.

Risk-Management Framework

The Risk-Management Committee, established in 2002, meets on a quarterly basis to assess the risks and progress on the mitigation of identified risk in the department. The Risk-Management Committee functioned effectively throughout the 2008/09 financial year and created a sound appetite for risk management.

Quarterly risk-mitigation reports generated from each meeting on the 2008/09 Significant and Prioritised Risk Profile were presented to the Executive Management Committee and focused on recommendations to enhance the mitigation of each risk.

The Risk-Management Committee will be focusing on the 14 prioritised risks of the 2009/10 Corporate Risk Profile.

Key strategic projects

The department has identified eight projects to deliver on its mandate as per the *White Paper on Corrections*. The aim of these projects is to prioritise objectives and deliver them within a period of one to 10 years. The projects identified are the following:

- infrastructure development: to procure and manage new facilities and maintain all facilities
- social reintegration: to strengthen the support system for the reintegration of the offenders into communities
- offender rehabilitation path: to conduct an analysis of the identified centres in terms of infrastructure, HR, policies, procedures and budget to implement the offender-rehabilitation path requirements in the centres
- security enhancement: to improve the safety of offenders, personnel, service-providers and the public through improved safety and security
- management of awaiting-trial detainees: to improve the safety of remand detainees and Cabinet mandate proposals for strategic decision-making on the management of remand detainees in the department
- monitoring, evaluation and reporting: to develop a monitoring, evaluation and reporting system for the department
- seven-day establishment and job refinement: to provide HR capacity in the centres to align the department to the seven-day work week
- centres of excellence: to provide holistic, integrated and needs-based services aimed at producing socially responsible persons.

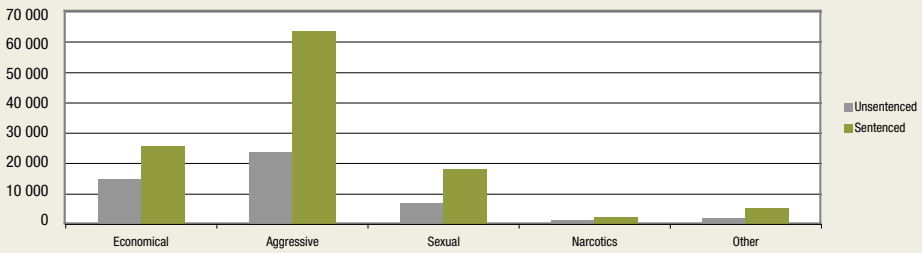
Other projects involve improvements in management and control over all critical challenges that could have a significant impact on rehabilitation. This is done through competent rehabilitation-orientated personnel who are recruited, trained, retrained and developed.

Service-Delivery Improvement Plan

The department identified service-delivery improvement projects, which rolled over in April 2009 and will continue until March 2012. They involve:

- improving the management of access of service-providers and other stakeholders to correctional centres
- improving telephones/switchboards at all service points
- managing the payment of bail and fines at correctional centres

Crime categories offenders in custody, 31 March 2009



Source: Department of Correctional Services

- improving the scheduling of visitations to offenders to support family ties between offenders and their families.

Enhancing security

Security continues to receive attention as one of the core pillars of the department's legal mandate.

As a continuation of the process of upgrading security at correctional centres, the installation of security fences with motion detection and CCTV monitors at 46 correctional centres were completed.

Special focus was also placed on ensuring adherence to security measures and procedures by staff through increased management interventions, security-compliance inspections and special security operations, which further contributed to a more secure environment with a further decrease in escape figures.

Care and development of inmates

The department continues to improve the healthcare of inmates.

In 2007/08, four facilities were accredited for the provision of antiretroviral treatment, bringing to 16 the total number of facilities accredited.

The implementation of the Occupation Specific Dispensation for nurses will also ensure availability of suitably qualified nurses to take care of the health of inmates and assist in the retention strategy in relation to nurses.

In 2008, the department entered into a mass literacy programme partnership with the Department of Education to address illiteracy in the country. The programme is themed *Kha Ri Gude*, a Tshivenda expression meaning "let us learn".

By March 2009, 3 378 offenders in correctional centres countrywide were actively participating in the programme. The department also introduced the Early Childhood Development Programme in 2008 to the babies of incarcerated mothers. By March 2009, 27 babies aged between 0 to two years participated in the programme.

Acknowledgements

Beeld
BuaNews
Budget Vote, 2009
Commission on Gender Equality
Department of Correctional Services
Department of Justice and Constitutional Development
Estimates of National Expenditure 2009, published by National Treasury
Public Protector
South African Law Reform Commission
www.dcs.gov.za
www.financialmail.co.za
www.gov.za
www.idasa.org.za
www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Bizos, G. 2007. *Odyssey to Freedom*. Johannesburg: Random House.

Bruyns, H. 2007. *Correctional Services Management I and II.* (DVD). Pretoria.

Dawes, A *et al* (eds). 2007. *Monitoring Child Well-Being: A South Africa Rights-Based Approach.* Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press.

Gibson, JL. 2009. *Overcoming Historical Land Injustices in South Africa*. New York: Cambridge University Press.

Joubert, JJ (ed). 2008. *Essays in Honour of CR Snyman = Huldigingsbundel vir CR Snyman*. Pretoria: University of South Africa (Unisa) Press.

Meierhenrich, J. 2008. *The Legacies of Law: Long-Run Consequences of Legal Development in South Africa, 1652 – 2000*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Mofokeng, LL. 2009. *Legal Pluralism in South Africa: Aspects of African Customary, Muslim and Hindu Family Law*. Hatfield, Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Skelton, A and Tshehla, B. 2008. *Child Justice in South Africa*. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.

Sloth-Nioelsen, J and Du Toit, Z (eds). 2008. *Trials and Tribulations, Trends and Triumphs: Developments in International, African and South African Child and Family Law*. Cape Town: Juta Law.

Wells, JC. 2007. *Rebellion and Uproar: Makhanda and the Great Escape from Robben Island, 1920*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

MINERAL RESOURCES

South Africa is richly endowed with mineral resources. Mining remains an important contributor to the country's economic growth, with an average of 50% of the country's export earnings being derived from mining, while the sector is also a leading contributor to the country's coffers through taxation.

In 2009, following the appointment of a new administration, the Department of Minerals and Energy was divided into two separate departments: mineral resources and energy.

The Department of Mineral Resources aims to formulate and implement policy to ensure optimum use of the country's mineral resources.

In 2009, the mining sector was under severe strain as a result of the unfavourable economic conditions. At the start of the global financial crisis, conservative projections of anticipated job losses were in excess of 100 000 during the first year of the economic slump.

Government initiated a process to lessen the impact of the global financial crisis on the South African mining industry. To this end, the aggregated commodity prices of minerals produced in the country lost some 40% of its value, while job losses were contained to less than 25 000, representing about 5% of total employment in the industry.

This was a result of the cooperation among all stakeholders in the sector, represented by government, business and labour. This collaborative work was rooted in the departmental-led Mining Industry Growth, Development and Employment Task Team.

In 2009, the team was also tasked with developing recommendations that would ensure optimal development of the mining industry to benefit South Africa once the crisis is over.

The Mineral Policy and Promotion Branch of the Department of Mineral Resources is responsible for formulating and promoting mineral-related policies that will encourage investment in the mining and minerals industry, making South Africa attractive to investors.

The Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate (MHSI) is responsible for implementing mine-health and -safety legislation.

The Mineral Regulation Branch regulates the mining and minerals industry to achieve transformation and contribute to sustainable development.

Policy and legislation

Mining and minerals policy is based on the principles of the Freedom Charter, according to which the mineral wealth beneath the soil will be transferred to the ownership of the people as a whole.

The Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRDA), 2002 (Act 28 of 2002), has opened doors for the substantial and meaningful participation of black people in the exploration and exploitation of mineral resources. The MPRDA, 2002 enshrines equal access to mineral resources, irrespective of race, gender and creed.

Since May 2004, an unparalleled number of applications for prospecting, exploration and mining have been received, reaching more than 18 000 and resulting in the development of several new projects. All prospecting/exploration applications are processed within six month, while mining rights are processed within a year.

The South African Diamond Board was established in 1987 in terms of the Diamond Act, 1986 (Act 56 of 1986), to regulate control over the possession, purchase, sale, processing and export of diamonds.

The Diamond Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 30 of 2005), the Diamond Second Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 30 of 2005), and the Precious Metals Act, 2005 (Act 37 of 2005), broaden the legal mandate of the board to also regulate precious metals. Subsequently, the South African Diamond Board was de-listed as a Schedule 3A public entity in March 2007 and replaced by the South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator (SADPMR), which was established by Section Three of the Diamonds Act, 1986 (as amended in 2005).

The SADPMR and the State Diamond Trader (SDT) were officially launched in February 2008.

Their establishment signalled a number of significant changes in the regulation of diamonds and precious metals and heralded a new era where the SDT began to sell rough diamonds to those South Africans who were previously excluded. The two entities are a product of the Department of Mineral Resources' commitment towards maximising value addition of South Africa's mineral resources, with particular reference to diamonds and precious metals.

The SDT opened in Johannesburg and is expected to move to Kimberley in the Northern Cape at a later stage.

The Precious Metals Act, 2005 provides for the acquisition of smelting, refining, using and disposing of precious metals, with the emphasis on adding increased value.

The SDT was severely affected by the global economic crisis, with diamond prices losing considerable value.

The challenges facing the SDT are compounded by the standing financial model, which is essentially not developmental, but a classical business model.

The department is assessing the prospect of a new business model for the SDT, which will allow the trader to continue implementing its core mandate of promoting equitable access to and beneficiation of diamond resources, addressing distortions in the diamond industry and correcting historical market failures to develop and grow South Africa's diamond cutting and polishing industry.

The Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 49 of 2008), provides for the amendment of the MPRDA, 2002, so as to make the minister the responsible authority for implementing environmental matters in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998), and specific environmental legislation as it relates to prospecting, mining, exploration, production and related activities.

The Geoscience Amendment Bill aims to align the Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993), with the MPRDA, 2002 and expand the functions of the Council for Geoscience (CGS). The Bill was introduced to Cabinet in January 2008, but was referred back for further consultation with other departments.

The department, in conjunction with other key departments as well as relevant state-owned enterprises, launched the Beneficiation Strategy in March 2009 after approval was granted by the Cabinet Committee for the strategy to be circulated for broader consultation.

Once comments are incorporated into the strategy, it will be sent to Cabinet for approval as a policy position for the country.

The Beneficiation Strategy provides for a framework within which South Africa can implement an orderly development of the country's mineral value chains to leverage benefit from inherent comparative and competitive advantages.

The strategy is intended to support national programmes such as the National Industrial Policy Framework, consistent with the provisions for a sector-specific strategy and key action plans for downstream mineral beneficiation as well as the development of nuclear-power capacity, for instance, which is intended to diversify the country's energy basket and ensure security of energy supply.

Mine environmental management

Mine environmental management, which forms an integral part of the management of mineral resources, focuses on:

- the approval and monitoring of the implementation of environmental management plans and mine environmental management programmes
- regular inspections to strengthen enforcement to prevent mining legacies
- identifying and managing "hot spots"
- approval of mine-closure applications and the monitoring of the implementation of these
- rehabilitating abandoned and ownerless mines.

Considering the extent of environmental damage caused by mining in South Africa, the Department of Mineral Resources entered into a three-year agreement with the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, the CGS and Mintek to find solutions for long-term rehabilitation and environmental management. The Sustainable Development Through Mining Programme was established and resulted in addressing the following:

- a database of derelict and ownerless mines
- a regional mine-closure strategy for the Witwatersrand Water Basin
- a sustainable development strategy for minerals and mining
- mine environmental management guidelines for implementation, monitoring and mine closure
- instruments and tools to assist with evaluating, inspections and decision-making.

The inaugural Mining Technology World Exhibition and Conference took place in July 2009 in Midrand, Johannesburg. The event highlighted the importance of technology in mining and the role it will play in future. Topics covered geostatistics, safety and security in mining, geotechnical services and products, maintenance management, metallurgy and mineralogy, information technology in mining, environmental technology, mine surveying and mapping, and management of mines. Participants represented stakeholders involved in mining technology across the African continent.

The long-term approach is to replicate the concept of regional mine-closure strategies to other areas of cumulative and integrated environmental impacts during 2010 to 2012, such as the coal fields in KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga as well as other mining areas of concern.

Mining outcomes of the World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD)

Representatives from nearly 200 countries assembled at the WSSD in Johannesburg in September 2002 to reaffirm their commitment to sustainable development. As a follow-up to the WSSD mining outcomes, the then Department of Minerals and Energy initiated a process in 2005 by developing a strategy to address the WSSD outcomes for minerals and mining.

The department is finalising the strategy to achieve the mining priorities of the Johannesburg Plan of Implementation. The key strategic objectives of the strategy are:

- That the South African mining sector reflects the sustainable development values, principles and aspirations of the country. All stakeholders in the sector must share a sustainable development vision based on a culture of mutual respect.
- That the vision of sustainable development in the sector must be communicated effectively to all stakeholders.
- To recognise that the Sustainable Development Strategy and Policy must transcend both the Government of the day and the requirements of the United Nations Conference on Science and Technology for Development and should be valid and appropriate across all time scales. Furthermore, that community empowerment and environmental and social rights are central and enduring tenets of the sector and that all those operating within the minerals sector earn a social licence to do so.
- That the Sustainable Development Strategy facilitates the transition from finite resource-based industries and economies to sustainable knowledge-based economies and that building and accounting for social and natural capital is implicit.
- That the Sustainable Development Strategy promotes economic diversification in existing and future mining industries and that the minerals sector should take due cognisance of globalisation's influence on sustainable development and the consequences of these (including the implications of trade barriers, global market forces and international agreements, requirements and conventions).
- That the Sustainable Development Strategy acknowledges the potential and realised contribution of the industry for socio-economic empowerment and that policy creates conditions to ensure the continuation of this contribution.
- That value extraction from South Africa's minerals sector benefits vulnerable groups and value addition from South Africa's mineral resources is maximised locally.
- That government is empowered to facilitate sustainable development outcomes and link to national and international sustainable development strategies and initiatives and that all role players realise the synergies achieved through effective cooperation.
- That the minerals sector moves towards sustainable end states and internalises negative costs and associated consequences, and that the cumulative and life-cycle aspects of the sector are fully aligned with sustainable development principles.
- To align beneficiation strategies with appropriate national development objectives, including poverty alleviation, small-scale mining, environmental management and social upliftment.

African Mining Partnership (AMP)

The AMP was established to champion, among other things, the mining and mineral-related initiatives of the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad).

The Global Mining Dialogue was also established to promote WSSD mining outcomes in the international arena.

The sixth AMP meeting was held in February 2009, during which the objective of becoming an official institutionalised affiliate of the African Union (AU) was achieved. The AMP will be merged with the AU Conference of Ministers Responsible for Mineral Resources Development and will be the only AU ministerial organ responsible for mineral-resources development and management in Africa.

The Department of Mineral Resources, as the Secretariat of the AMP, was mandated to lead the merger process, which is envisaged to take two years. The recognition of the AMP by the AU is a milestone as the partnership had been seeking this ever since its formation.

Sustainable development on the African continent

The Intergovernmental Memorandum of Understanding on the Western Power Corridor Project (Westcor) was signed in October 2004.

This Nepad flagship programme intends to pilot the use of hydroelectric energy of the Inga rapids site in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC). It will ensure the security of supply in the Southern African Development Community. The participating utilities are those of Namibia, South Africa, the DRC, Botswana and Angola. A joint-venture company has been formed to initiate studies determining the viability of the project and to build, own and operate the infrastructure.

Mining industry

South Africa produces 10% of the world's gold, and has 40% of the world's known resources. It is estimated that 36 000 tons (t) of undeveloped resources – about one third of the world's unmined gold – still remains. These ores are increasingly difficult to exploit due to the great depths where they are situated and their fairly low-grade quality.

With the implementation of the MPRDA, 2002 and the Mining Charter, there has been an increase in the number of women participating in the mining industry. The most significant transactions approved recently saw the creation of black-owned companies.

Anglo Platinum sold a majority stake in the Lebowa Platinum Mines to Anooraq, the third-largest producer of platinum in South Africa. Furthermore, Anglo Platinum sold its 22% shareholding in Northam to Mvelaphanda Resources, making Northam a black-owned and -controlled mine. Anglo Platinum also sold 50% of its stake in the De Brochen Project to Mvelaphanda, making this project 100% black-controlled.

In relation to coal, Anglo Operations, through Anglo Coal, facilitated the creation of a new coal company Anglo Inyosi Coal, wherein historically disadvantaged South Africans (HDSAs) own 26% of its equity. Kgalagadi Manganese is 80%-owned by an empowerment company.

A number of community projects have been approved, wherein communities are holders of mining rights. Some examples of these are Itereleng Bakgatia Resources, Marual Platinum and Lesizwe Platinum.

Following the successful conclusion of the protracted land claim by the Richtersveld community, the state-owned mining firm Alexkor is in a period of transition and has entered into a process of restructuring.

Black Economic Empowerment (BEE)

The introduction of the Mining Charter in South Africa was aimed at transforming the mining industry to redress historical imbalances engendered by apartheid so that the industry is consistent with the changes in South Africa's overall transformation of its social, political and economic landscape.

Embedded in the Mining Charter are provisions to assess the extent of progress towards the attainment of its objectives and to review the charter within five years of implementation. In reviewing the charter, community upliftment will be among the key focus areas to ensure that mining development does not continue at the exclusion of communities.

The commitments of the charter are not intended for compliance purposes only. They do not end in 2014, but are meant to permanently transform the industry to be truly reflective of South Africa.

The Codes of Good Practice and the Housing and Living Conditions Standards for the Mineral Industry were gazetted in April 2009.

The Department of Mineral Resources' focus over the last five years has been on the transformation of the minerals and mining industry. The department has driven the process of ensuring black participation in the mining sector as operators, investors and managers. This will continue for as long as the minerals and mining sector remains untransformed.

The department has, as of 2009, conducted inspections on all social and labour projects to ensure that companies deliver on their commitments.

As the department reviewed the charter in 2009 objectively, it assessed progress in all areas of the charter to inform a review process.

Mineworkers

According to the Chamber of Mines, the South African mining sector in 2007:

- Directly employed 495 474 workers, compared with 458 600 in 2006. It was estimated that another 165 000 workers were employed in associated industries that either supplied products to, or used products from the mining industry (the multiplier linkages of the industry). Around five million people are directly dependent for their daily subsistence on mine employees.
- Accounted for 6% of those employed in the non-agricultural formal sector of the economy and 7,5% of the total private sector of non-agricultural employment.

- Paid R50 billion in wages and benefits to employees, which accounted for about 5,9% of the total compensation paid to all employed people in the country. This contributed substantially to domestic demand in the South African economy.

Mine health and safety

The Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate (MHSI) of the Department of Mineral Resources, established in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act (MHSA), 1996 (Act 29 of 1996), is responsible for protecting the health and safety of mineworkers or people affected by mining activities.

The activities of the MHSI focus on achieving a safer and healthier mining industry for all. The MHSI works closely with industry and worker unions to reduce the incidence of mine accidents, with stakeholders committing themselves to continuously reduce fatalities by at least 20% a year. The inspectorate is also pursuing a strategy to eliminate silicosis and noise-induced hearing loss or occupational deafness by 2013, and to reduce the social costs of diseases and injuries to vulnerable communities in particular.

The levels of death, ill health and injuries at mines remain a serious concern for the Department of Mineral Resources. The industry's stakeholders, had, in 2008, managed to record a 24% improvement in fatalities due to mine accidents when compared to the previous year, 2007, when 220 miners had lost their lives.

In early 2009, the Presidential Audit of Mines was conducted. The auditing programme covered mainly the high-risk mines in the country, which amounted to 355.

Among other things, the audit indicated:

- an overall compliance of 66% with the number of items critical for ensuring that there were effective management systems at mines
- the Mine Health and Safety Council (MHSC) had to develop and implement a programme that would promote a culture of health and safety at mines
- an urgent need to develop a national mine seismic network that will be fully integrated with the CGS' seismic network.

Stakeholders, through the MHSC, developed an implementation plan to address the recommendations contained in the report. By June 2009, some of the recommendations were being implemented to ensure complete eradication of accidents and ill-health in the mining industry.

The department introduced the Mine Health and Safety Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 74 of 2008), which aims to enhance the State's ability to address the mine-health and -safety challenge of high injuries, ill health and deaths.

The amendment introduces more strict sanctions for non-compliance with health and safety standards by individuals and corporate bodies as well as prosecution.

The Act establishes the MHSI as a juristic person. This amendment is significant as it provides a platform upon which the critical question of capacity to effectively enforce health and safety regulatory requirements can be addressed.

The department continues to work with security forces to develop a strategy to combat illegal mining, which is one of the biggest threats to mineworkers' health and safety.

South Africa is committed to combating HIV and AIDS in the mining industry.

The department has developed the Human-Resource Development Plan to address the acute shortage of inspectors. The department intends to create its own skills pool to improve the race and gender profile of inspectors.

Three projects are being implemented to address capacity:

- A bursary scheme with 16 students at universities and technikons who will complete their course in the next four years.
- About 23 learners are undergoing experiential training at the Goldfields Training Academy. Upon successful completion, they will be employed as trainee inspectors in the department.
- The ongoing internal training programme in different engineering and occupational health disciplines.

The Mining Qualifications Authority (MQA) aims to train more than 100 mining inspectors at a cost of R4,2 million in 2010. The department is also developing a tailor-made mine-inspector training programme through the University of the Witwatersrand as a long-term measure to address the department's capacity constraints.

Mining Qualifications Authority

The MQA was established as a sector education and training authority under the leadership of the Department of Labour. The MQA aims to facilitate the development of appropriate knowledge and skills in the mining, minerals and jewellery sectors to:

- enable the development and transformation of the sector
- contribute to the health, safety and competitiveness of the sector

- improve access to quality education and training for all
- redress past inequalities in education and training.

The MQA is responsible for:

- developing and monitoring the implementation of a sector skills plan
- registering skills-development facilitators at workplaces within the sector
- approving work-skills plans and annual training reports of companies in the sector
- developing unit standards and qualifications
- maintaining the quality of standards, qualifications and learning provision in the sector
- establishing, registering, administering and promoting learnerships
- administering existing apprenticeship systems
- administering and disbursing skills-development levies.

The MQA has introduced several initiatives to address skills shortages that specifically aim to support transformation across the mining and minerals sector. Two strategic documents support BEE in the mining industry. Firstly, the service-level agreement signed with the Department of Labour commits to targets set by the National Skills Development Strategy that are underpinned by equity principles aimed at accelerating Broad-Based BEE and employment equity.

Therefore, of all people trained, 85% should be black, 54% women and 4% people with disabilities.

The second strategic document that supports BEE in the mining industry is the MQA Mining Charter Support Strategy. In support of the Mining Charter, the MQA has introduced the Executive Preparation Programme, the Graduate Development Programme, a bursary scheme (including support for undergraduate practical training), the Universities Employment Equity Project, and support for small-scale miners. The MQA also supports small, medium and micro-enterprises in the sector through grants for training in small-scale mining, mineral beneficiation, jewellery manufacturing and diamond processing.

The human-resource development guidelines provide for enhanced opportunities to be made available to HDSAs within the mining and minerals sector. The guidelines specify that by 2010, 40% of managers controlling the full spectrum of activities should be from historically disadvantaged backgrounds and that women must occupy 10% of all positions.

Consequently, the MQA Executive Preparation Programme was created to aid HDSAs. Its focus is on developing strategic and in-depth understanding of the mining and minerals sector in some 26 learners per six-month term.

The Graduate Development Programme was introduced for unemployed graduates from universities of technology who had qualifications and skills that were scarce and critical according to the Mineral Sector Skills Plan, but who needed to gain work experience.

In April 2009, the former Department of Minerals and Energy presented certificates to candidates who had completed a programme in mining skills in Nongoma, KwaZulu-Natal.

The programme is aimed at training and equipping illegal miners and ex-mine workers with the necessary basic mining skills, and to take steps to legalise their operations. It also seeks to consolidate the department's intervention on mitigating the current global economic crisis.

South Africa's mineral reserves, 2007

Commodity	Unit	Reserves	%	World ranking
Alumino-silicates	Kt	51	n/a	n/a
Antimony	t	200	4,7	4
Chrome ore	Mt	5 500	72,4	1
Coal	Mt	27 981	6,1	8
Copper	Kt	13 000	1,4	14
Fluorspar	Mt	80	16,7	2
Gold	t	36 000	40,1	1
Iron ore	Mt	1 500	0,9	9
Lead	Kt	3 000	2,1	6
Manganese ore	Mt	4 000	80	1
Phosphate rock	Mt	2 500	5	4
Platinum-group metals	Kg	70 000	87,7	1
Silver	t	n/a	n/a	n/a
Titanium minerals	Mt	244	16,9	2
Uranium	Kt	341	7,2	5
Vanadium	Kt	12 000	32	1
Vermiculite	Kt	80 000	40	2
Zinc metal	Kt	15 000	3,3	8
Zirconium	Kt	14 000	19,4	2

Mt=megaton, Kt=kiloton, t=ton, n/a=not available, Kg=kilogram

Source: Department of Mineral Resources

The department realised this initiative with the assistance of the MQA and Mintek. About 200 people from the Nongoma area people have been identified to undergo training.

Other initiatives included:

- a strategic partnership was entered into between the MQA and the Jewellery Council of South Africa in terms of the MQA's strategy to support beneficiation in the mining and minerals sector
- the National Skills Fund funded a special project for an additional 1 000 artisans in the mining and minerals sector
- the small-scale and artisanal mining programme of the MQA was introduced to ensure that potential trainees can be trained.

Chamber of Mines

The Chamber of Mines was established in 1889, and consists of independent mining-finance corporations, individual mines and mining companies. The members account for more than 85% of South Africa's mineral output.

The Chamber of Mines provides an advisory and service function to its members and to the industry on a cooperative basis. It covers areas such as industrial relations; education and training; security and healthcare; technical, legal and communication services; and the provision of statistical data.

Subsidiary companies provide training, examination administration, visits to operational gold and diamond mines, the monthly newspaper *Mining News*, mine-rescue, environmental management, and centres for human development to the South African mining industry and, in some instances, also to customers outside the mining industry.

Other areas of industry networking include:

- the Employment Bureau of Africa (Teba)
- Teba-Bank, which provides efficient and cost-effective banking services for mineworkers
- Rand Mutual Assurance, which provides compensation benefits for accidental injury or workers' death while on duty
- Rand Refinery Limited, the world's largest gold refinery
- the Nuclear Fuels Corporation
- Colliery Technical Services, which includes the Colliery Training College
- Rescue Drilling Unit
- Collieries Environmental Control Services
- Mintek, which specialises in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas.

Small-scale mining in South Africa

The potential of small-scale mining as a tool to reduce poverty and create employment, especially in the rural areas, is recognised by the Department of Mineral Resources.

This led to the formation of the Small-Scale Mining Directorate in 2003/04, which promotes the establishment of small-scale mining businesses across South Africa.

Although alluvial diamond mining as well as inland salt mining also play a significant role in the small-scale mining sector, the bulk of the demand for small-scale mining ventures is associated with industrial commodities, such as slate, sand, clay, sandstone, dolerite and granites for the production of infrastructural development products such as tiles, clay and cement bricks, aggregates and dimension stone for cladding.

This is evidenced from the more than 90% of small-scale mining applications received for these commodities and taken through the process of legalisation, feasibility studies, limited capitalisation, monitoring and auditing.

By November 2008, about 38 small-scale mining projects were fully operational.

National Treasury funds, used in 2008/09 via administrative assistance of the Industrial Development Cooperation to cover some work, such as issuing contracts for capitalisation of projects and rehabilitation, amounted to R24 million.

In 2009/10, it was envisaged that 17 new small-scale mining projects would be added to the operational projects.

In terms of job creation, it is estimated that 35 projects will create some 2 000 jobs and sustain another 8 000 workers. Small-scale mining information sessions are also planned to disseminate information about the assistance afforded to potential small-scale miners.

The small-scale mining sector is faced with many challenges such as lack of access to finance and markets, shortage of skills and inadequate or non-compliance with regulatory requirements.

Mineral wealth

South Africa's mineral wealth is typically found in the following well-known geological formations and settings:

- the Witwatersrand Basin yields some 94% of South Africa's gold output and contains considerable resources of uranium, silver, pyrite and osmiridium
- the Bushveld Complex is known for its platinum-group metals (PGMs) (with associated copper,

nickel and cobalt mineralisation), chromium and vanadium-bearing titanium-iron ore formations as well as large deposits of industrial minerals, including fluorspar and andalusite
- the Transvaal Supergroup contains enormous resources of manganese and iron ore
- the Karoo Basin extends through Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State as well as Limpopo, hosting considerable bituminous coal and anthracite resources
- the Phalaborwa Igneous Complex hosts extensive deposits of copper, phosphate, titanium, vermiculite, feldspar and zirconium ores
- kimberlite pipes host diamonds that also occur in alluvial, fluvial and marine settings

South Africa's mineral production, 2007

Commodity	Unit	Reserves	%	World ranking
Aluminium	Kt	914	2,4	9
Alumino-silicates	Kt	265	59,0	1
Antimony	t	3 354	2,5	7
Chrome ore	Mt	9 683	n/a	n/a
Coal	Mt	247,8	4,5	5
Copper	Kt	110	0,7	16
Fluorspar	Mt	285	6,0	4
Gold	t	253	10,3	2
Iron ore	Mt	41,3	2,5	7
Lead	Kt	42,0	1,2	11
Manganese ore	Mt	5 589	14,2	2
Nickel	Kt	42,0	3,1	9
Phosphate rock	Mt	2 556	1,7	10
Platinum-group metals	Kg	304 031	56,7	1
Silver	t	70	0,3	21
Titanium minerals	Mt	1 181	19,5	2
Uranium	Kt	639	1,6	11
Vanadium	Kt	23,5	40	1
Vermiculite	Kt	200	38,5	1
Zinc metal	Kt	31,4	0,3	25
Zirconium	Kt	405	41,6	2

Mt=megaton, Kt=kiloton, t=ton, n/a=not available, Kg=kilogram
Source: Department of Mineral Resources

- heavy mineral sands contain ilmenite, rutile and zircon
- significant deposits of lead-zinc ores associated with copper and silver are found in the Northern Cape near Aggeneys.

The bulk of the known mineral resources and reserves were discovered using conventional exploration methods, but the country still has significant potential for additional discoveries of world-class deposits, using modern exploration technologies.

South Africa has the world's largest resources of PGMs (87,7% of world total), manganese (80%), chromium (72,4%), gold (40%) and alumino-silicates. South Africa also accounts for over 40% of the global production of the following mineral commodities: ferrochromium, PGMs and vanadium.

It is also the world's leading producer of chrome ore, vermiculite and alumino-silicates, and is among the top three producers of gold, manganese ore, titanium minerals and fluorspar.

The South African mining industry contributes 50,9% of world ferrochromium exports and 34,4% of alumino-silicates, and is one of the world's largest exporters of PGMs, gold and vanadium, and a significant exporter of manganese ore. Other important export commodities include ferro-manganese and fluorspar.

Although South Africa is probably the largest exporter of vanadium, gold and PGMs, it is not possible to rank it because of the unavailability of export data from other producing countries.

South Africa's total sales of primary minerals increased to R223,9 billion in 2007. The value of exports of primary minerals in 2007 increased to R161,8 billion.

The Directorate: Mineral Economics of the Department of Mineral Resources monitors and analyses the global supply and demand of minerals that affect the South African economy.

Gold

South Africa's gold production decreased by 7,2% from 272,1 t in 2006 to 252,6 t in 2007, largely as a result of the mining of lower-grade ore, made economic by higher rand gold prices, as well as new safety procedures, which involved the temporary closure of a shaft where a fatal incident had occurred to facilitate an audit with a view to improving safety.

Gold's total sales revenue increased by 1,6% to R38 billion, due to a 19,7% rise in the average Rand price for the year, despite lower sales volumes.

Silver

South Africa's silver-mine production in 2007, at 69,8 t, was 19,7% lower than the 2006 figure of 86,9 t. Silver was produced as a by-product of the gold, lead-zinc, copper and PGM mines. Local sales value decreased from R11 million to R10,9 million due to the higher price, despite lower sales volumes. The export sales value decreased from R239,6 million to R224,1 million.

Coal

In 2007, South African mines produced 247,7 million tons (mt) of coal. Of this 182,8 mt were sold locally for R19,7 billion, and 67,7 mt realised R24,4 billion on export markets. South Africa has estimated recoverable coal resources of 31 billion tons.

Platinum-group metals

South African PGM production dropped by 1,7%, to 304 t in 2007, from 309,3 t in 2006. Production of platinum and palladium decreased by 5,3% to 160,9 t and by 3% to 83,6 t respectively, while the production of rhodium rose by 7,2% to 21,1 t.

PGM export sales revenue increased by 23,1% to R66 billion, due to a higher average rand basket price for 2007, despite lower sales volumes.

Non-ferrous minerals

This sector comprises a mixture of metals and metal concentrates. Copper, nickel and cobalt production and sales are, for the most part, reported as metals, whereas titanium (actually ilmenite and rutile concentrates), zirconium, zinc, lead and antimony are reported either as tons of concentrate or tons of metal in concentrate.

Of the latter, very little, if any, titanium or antimony concentrate ever reaches the metallic stage, and in the rest of the world, these are regarded as industrial minerals (i.e. non-metallics). In 2007, sales in this sector totalled R19 billion, representing 8,5% of total mineral sales. Local sales made up 40,8% of total non-ferrous mineral sales.

Ferrous minerals

South Africa is an important source of ferrous minerals, being the largest producer of chromium and vanadium ores and a leading supplier of their alloys. It is also a significant producer of iron and manganese ores and a significant supplier of manganese alloys, ferrosilicon and silicon metal.

International crude and stainless steels manufacturing industries, which consume over 90% of ferrous mineral production, drive the demand of these minerals.

In May 2009, a rare 7,3-carat blue diamond discovered in South Africa, sold for more than $8,4 million, the highest price ever for a gem of its kind, according to auctioneers, Sotheby's.

Including commission, the successful bidder paid around $9,5 million.

The gem, which is smaller than a dime, shaped like a cushion and one of only a few blue diamonds ever found, was among the 346 lots auctioned in Geneva, Switzerland.

The blue diamond, cut from a 26,58-carat rough, was discovered in 2008 at Petra Diamonds' historic Cullinan Diamond Mine in South Africa. The Gemological Institute of America graded the stone as fancy vivid blue in colour and internally flawless in clarity, the highest possible grading for a blue diamond.

The recent tightness in raw material supply/demand has pushed ferrous mineral prices to record levels. As a result, revenues generated from mineral sales increased by 40% to R49,8 billion in 2007, when compared to 2006, despite the 4% weakening of the Rand/Dollar exchange rate.

Around R38 billion of sales revenues were derived from exports, which consist of less than 1% of primary minerals, mainly iron ores. When compared to the past two to three decades, the South African ferrous minerals industry has made good progress in mineral beneficiation and has the potential to improve on further downstream beneficiation as security of supply as well as proximity to supply could become priority in future.

Industrial minerals

This sector comprises a wide variety of generally non-metallic minerals, with local sales accounting for some 88% of total revenue from industrial minerals in 2007. Local sales increased by R900 million from R6,9 billion to R7,8 billion in 2007.

The greatest contributor to the local sales value was sand and aggregate (43%), with limestone and lime (21,8%) being the second-biggest contributor. Fluorspar (28,7%), andalusite (26,4%), vermiculite (18,3%) and granite (14,9%) were significant contributors to the value of exports.

Processed minerals

Ferro-alloys and aluminium are the greatest revenue earners in this sector, contributing 78% to the R54,76 billion sales in 2007. In rand terms, processed mineral sales were 21% more than in 2006. Exports yielded 76% of the total sales of processed minerals.

Other minerals

This sector is dominated by diamonds and includes hydrocarbon fuel and uranium oxide. Revenue from these minerals increased by 0,7% over that of 2006, to R15 billion. New investments by companies such as Uranium One and First Uranium have contributed greatly to the recovery of this sector.

Geology

South Africa has a long and complex geological history dating back more than 3 700 billion years. Significant fragments of this geology have been preserved and along with them, mineral deposits.

The preservation of so much Archaean geology, dating back more than 2 500 million years, has resulted in the Archaean Witwatersrand Basin, as well as several greenstone belts, being preserved. Ten of the more significant geological formations in South Africa are discussed below.

Barberton mountain land

This beautiful and rugged tract of country with some of the oldest rocks on Earth is found south of Nelspruit, Mpumalanga. The renowned Barberton Greenstone Belt, the largest of its kind in South Africa, contains remnants of original crust, dated at around 3,5 billion years old.

The greenstone formations represent the remains of some of the earliest clearly decipherable geological events on the Earth's surface. Silica-rich layers within the greenstone have revealed traces of a very early life form – minute blue-green algae. Granites surround the formations and gneisses that are more than 3 000 million years old. Gold, iron ore, magnesite, talc, barite, chrysotile asbestos and verdite are mined in the area.

Witwatersrand

The geology and gold mines of the "Ridge of White Waters" are world famous. Nearly half of all the gold ever mined has come from the extensive Witwatersrand conglomerate reefs that were discovered in 1886, not far from Johannesburg's city centre. The Witwatersrand is the greatest goldfield known to mankind. More than 50 055 t of gold have been produced from seven major goldfields distributed in a crescent-like shape along the 350-km long basin, from Welkom in the Free State in the south-west, to Evander in the east.

The geology of the region can be seen at many outcrops in the suburbs of Johannesburg. The sequence is divided into a lower shale-rich group and an upper sandstone-rich group. The latter contains the important gold-bearing quartz-pebble conglomerates. These "gold reefs" were formed from gravels transported into the basin and reworked 2,75 billion years ago. The gold and uranium originated from a rich source in the hinterland.

Bushveld Complex and escarpment

The Bushveld Complex extends over an area of 65 000 km^2 and reaches up to 8 km in thickness. It is by far the largest known layered igneous intrusion in the world and contains most of the world's resources of chromium, PGMs and vanadium.

This mega-complex was emplaced in a molten state about 2 060 billion years ago into pre-existing sedimentary rocks, through several deep feeder zones.

The impressive igneous geology of the Bushveld Complex is best viewed in Mpumalanga, in the mountainous terrain around the Steelpoort Valley. The imposing Dwars River chromitite layers, platinum-bearing dunite pipes, the discovery site of the platinum-rich Merensky Reef, and extensive magnetite-ilmenite layers and pipes near Magnet Heights and Kennedy's Vale are in this area.

The Great Escarpment of Mpumalanga is one of South Africa's most scenic landscapes. This area features potholes at Bourke's Luck, the Blyde River Canyon and the dolomite formation in which giant stromatolites bear witness to the 2,5-billion-year-old fossiled remains of vast oxygen-producing algae growth.

Drakensberg Escarpment and Golden Gate Highlands National Park

The main ramparts of the Drakensberg range, reaching heights of more than 3 000 m, lie in KwaZulu-Natal and on the Lesotho border. These precipitous mountains are the highest in southern Africa and provide the most dramatic scenery.

They were formed by the partial erosion of a high plateau of basaltic lava, which is more than 1 500 m thick, and covers the Clarens sandstones. Prior to its erosion, the continental basalt field covered significantly more of the continent.

The northern area of the Drakensberg has been declared a world heritage site. More than 40% of all known San cave paintings in southern Africa are found here.

The scenic Golden Gate Highlands National Park in the Free State features spectacular sandstone bluffs and cliffs. The sandstone reflects a sandy desert environment that existed around 200 million years ago. Dinosaur fossils are still found in the area.

Karoo

Rocks of the Karoo Supergroup cover about two thirds of South Africa and reach a thickness of several thousand metres. The sedimentary portion of this rock sequence reveals an almost continuous record of deposition and life, from the end of the Carboniferous into the mid-Jurassic periods, between 300 million and 180 million years ago.

Karoo rocks are internationally renowned for their wealth of continental fossils, and particularly for the fossils of mammal-like reptiles that show the transition from reptiles to early mammals, and for their early dinosaur evolution.

During this long period of the Earth's history, southern Africa was a lowland area in the centre of the Gondwana supercontinent.

Initially, the prehistoric Karoo was a place of vast glaciation. It then became a shallow inland sea, before this was replaced by huge rivers, with lush flood plains and swampy deltas, which dried out to form a sandy desert. Finally, vast outpourings of continental basaltic lava accompanied by the break-up of Gondwana occurred.

Diamond fields

Kimberlite is the primary host-rock of diamonds and was first mined as weathered "yellow ground" from the Kimberley mines, starting in 1871 at Colesberg koppie, now the site of the Big Hole of Kimberley. At increasing depths, less-weathered "blue ground" that continued to yield diamonds was encountered.

The discovery of kimberlite-hosted diamonds was a key event in South Africa's economic and social development, and paved the way for the later development of the Witwatersrand goldfields.

Kimberlite originates as magma from very deep below the surface, and typically occurs as small volcanic pipes and craters at the surface. Included within solidified kimberlites are fragments of deep-seated rocks and minerals, including rare diamonds of various sizes.

The Orange and Vaal rivers' alluvial diamond fields and the rich West Coast marine diamond deposits all originated by erosion from primary kimberlite pipes.

Meteorite impact sites

Impacts by large meteoritic projectiles played a major role in shaping the surface of the Earth.

One such site is the Vredefort Dome, the oldest and largest visible impact structure known on Earth.

Declared a world heritage site in 2005, it lies some 110 km south-west of Johannesburg, in the vicinity of Parys and Vredefort in the Free State and North West.

This spectacular and complex geological feature, measuring 70 km across, was caused by the impact of a 10 km-wide asteroid some two billion years ago. Only a partial ring of hills remains of the dome, created by the rebound of rock below the asteroid's impact site. The original crater – now eroded – is estimated to have been between 250 km and 300 km in diameter.

The Vredefort structure comprises a core zone of granitic rocks, surrounded by a ring-like collar zone of younger bedded formations. Only the north-western portion of the structure remains visible. The south-eastern half was flooded by sediments of the Karoo Supergroup, which cover the Free State. About 40 km north of Pretoria is a small bowl-shaped meteorite-impact crater, termed Tswaing. Just one kilometre in diameter, this is one of the best-preserved and accessible impact craters of its kind on Earth. It was created about 220 000 years ago when a meteorite of about 50 m wide slammed into the Earth, and is one of the few impact craters containing a crater lake.

Pilanesberg

The Pilanesberg Complex and National Park, located some 120 km north-west of Johannesburg in North West, is a major scientific attraction which includes a number of unique geological sites.

The complex consists of an almost perfectly circular, dissected mountain massif some 25 km in diameter, making it the third-largest alkaline ring complex in the world.

The geology reflects the roots of an ancient volcano that erupted some 1,5 billion years ago. The remains of ancient lava flows and volcanic breccias can be seen.

A 507-carat white diamond was discovered at the Cullinan Mine outside Pretoria in September 2009.

The diamond was discovered alongside three other special white stones of similar colour and clarity in the same production run. Another very large stone of 168 carats and two other stones of 58,50 and 53,30 carats were found.

At 507 carats (just over 100 grams), the diamond is considered to be among the top-20 largest high-quality rough diamonds ever found worldwide, and ranks alongside other illustrious diamonds recovered at the mine.

The dominant feature of the complex is the concentric cone sheets formed by resurgent magma that intruded ring fractures, created during the collapse of the volcano.

There are old mining sites for fluorite and dimension stone, and a non-diamond-bearing kimberlite pipe in the region.

Cradle of Humankind

This world heritage site extends from the Witwatersrand in the south to the Magaliesberg in the north, and is considered to be of universal value because of the outstanding richness of its fossil hominid cave sites.

The Sterkfontein area near Krugersdorp is the most prolific and accessible fossil hominid site on Earth. It comprises several scientifically important cave locations, including Sterkfontein, Swartkrans, Drimolen, Kromdraai, Gladysvale and Plover's Lake, all of which have produced a wealth of material crucial to palaeoanthropological research material.

Table Mountain and the Cape Peninsula

Table Mountain is, arguably, South Africa's best known and most spectacular geological feature, comprising a number of major rock formations.

The earliest of these are the deformed slates of the Malmesbury Group which formed between 560 million and 700 million years ago.

Coarse-grained Cape granite intruded around 540 million years ago. The Table Mountain Group, which started forming about 450 million years ago, consists of basalt, reddish mudstone and sandstone that is well exposed along Chapman's Peak. Overlying this is the light-coloured sandstone that makes up the higher mountains and major cliff faces of the Cape Peninsula, as far south as Cape Point.

Much younger sandy formations make up the Cape Flats and other low-lying areas adjacent to Table Mountain. The Table Mountain Group continues further inland across False Bay in the strongly deformed Cape Fold Belt.

Acknowledgements

Business Day
Chamber of Mines
Council for Geoscience
Department of Mineral Resources
Developmental Indicators, 2009
Digest of South African Energy Statistics – 2006 published by the Department of Minerals and Energy
Eskom
Mining Weekly
South Africa's Mineral Industry, 2007/08
www.cef.org.za
www.globaldialogue.info
www.gov.za
www.hartrao.ac.za
www.miningweekly.co.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sabcnews.com
www.sasol.co.za
www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Coetzee, B and Horn, R. 2007. *The Theft of Precious Metals from South African Mines and Refineries*. Tshwane: Institute for Security Studies.

Deep South Africa: A Celebration of the South African Mining Industry. 2007. Cape Town: Nelida Publishing.

Duminy, K (comp). 2007. *50 Years on the Diamond Fields: 1870 – 1920*. Kimberley: Africana Library Friends.

Eales, H. 2007. *Riddles in Store: Controversies, Theories and Myths about Southern Africa's Geological Past*. Johannesburg; Witwatersrand: Witwatersrand University Press.

Gray, A. 2007. *The Fence*. Cape Town: Human and Rousseau.

Hodgson, FDI *et al*. 2007. *Investigation of Water Decant from the Underground Collieries in Mpumalanga, with Special Emphasis on Predictive Tools and Long-Term Water Quality Management*. Gezina: Water Research Commission.

Machens, EW. 2009. *Platinum, Gold and Diamonds: The Adventure of Hans Merensky's Discoveries.* Pretoria: Protea Book House.

Masilo, P and Rautenbach, G. 2008. *Commentary on the Mine Health and Safety Act and Regulations*. Cape Town: Juta.

Meredith, M. 2007. *Diamonds, Gold, and War: The Making of South Africa*. London: Simon and Schuster.

Rainmakers and Potstirrers. 2008. Sandton: Miningmx.

The South African Mining Industry's Sustainability and Transformation Report 2007. 2008. Marshalltown: Chamber of Mines of South Africa.

Tshitereke, C. 2007. *GEAR and Labour in Post-Apartheid South Africa: A Study of the Gold Mining Industry, 1987 – 2004*. Ann Arbor, Mich: UMI.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

POLICE, DEFENCE AND INTELLIGENCE

The fight against crime is part of an integrated approach to achieve the goal of a better life for all.

The appointment of the new executive in 2009 brought some changes to the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JPCS) Cluster. The Ministry of Safety and Security changed to the Ministry of Police.

The Minister of Police is responsible for policing in general and is accountable to Cabinet and Parliament. Important features of the minister's responsibilities include determining national policing policy and providing civilian oversight. The following three structures fall under the Minister of Police:

- Secretariat for Safety and Security
- Independent Complaints Directorate (ICD)
- South African Police Service (SAPS).

The aim of the SAPS is to prevent, combat and investigate crime, maintain public order, protect and secure the inhabitants of South Africa and their property, and uphold law enforcement.

The name of the Department of Defence was changed to the Department of Defence and Military Veterans. This is in acknowledgement of the veterans' role in attaining peace and democracy in South Africa. The Department of Defence and Military Veterans defends South Africa's territorial integrity and its people.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

South Africa is ready to ensure a safe and secure 2010 FIFA World Cup™. The Government is responsible for general security, while the Organising Committee (OC) is in charge of venue security.

In June 2008, the OC submitted a comprehensive security plan to FIFA, which was reviewed and endorsed.

Government has invested about R1,3 billion in World Cup security.

The SAPS is set to deploy 41 000 police officers for the World Cup, made up of 31 000 permanent members and 10 000 police reservists. About 700 officers will be deployed around the stadiums for each match.

Interpol will be setting up an office in South Africa for the World Cup.

Secretariat for Safety and Security

In terms of the SAPS Act, 1995 (Act 68 of 1995), the Secretariat for Safety and Security's functions are to:

- advise the minister
- promote democratic accountability and transparency in the SAPS
- provide the minister with legal services and advice on constitutional matters
- monitor the implementation of policy
- conduct research on any policing matter in accordance with the instructions of the minister, and evaluate the performance of the SAPS.

Independent Complaints Directorate

The ICD's primary role is to ensure that complaints about alleged criminal offences and misconduct committed by SAPS members are investigated effectively. Police conduct or behaviour that is prohibited in terms of the SAPS standing orders and police regulations includes neglect of duties and failure to comply with the SAPS Code of Conduct. It is governed by Chapter 10 of the SAPS Act, 1995.

The ICD has additional mandates in respect of monitoring the SAPS' implementation of the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998), and overseeing municipal policing services.

The ICD investigates all deaths in police custody or as a result of police action. An investigation is conducted to determine any indications of criminal conduct by the SAPS. Where there are no indications of criminal conduct, the matter is left to the police to investigate, while the ICD monitors and supervises the investigation. If information is received indicating criminal conduct on the part of the police, the ICD conducts a full investigation.

Upon completion of an investigation, the ICD may make recommendations to the Director of Public Prosecutions about the prosecution of any implicated SAPS member, and to SAPS management regarding the departmental prosecution of a police member. The ICD reports to Parliament through the Minister of Police. However, it operates independently from the SAPS.

The ICD started in 1997 with a staff complement of 36 and a budget of R17 million. In 2009,

In March 2009, the then Department of Safety and Security (now the Department of Police) signed an agreement with the French Embassy to strengthen the country's capacity in the fight against transnational organised crime and terrorism.

The Priority Solidarity Funds Agreement reinforced the South African Police Service's (SAPS) capacity to respond to terrorist threats and tackle international criminal networks.

French training of SAPS members in specialised fields, procurement of specialised technical equipment and the sharing of expertise in the field of tracking all strengthened the country's fight against crime.

The three-year cooperation agreement encompasses a financial commitment of more than R15 million to the SAPS. The agreement will focus on reinforcing South Africa's borders and enhancing specialised detective and investigative departments and continued development of forensics.

it had a staff complement of 287 and a budget of R114,9 million.

The ICD is the Secretariat of the African Policing Oversight Forum and has influenced the creation of oversight mechanisms in several African countries.

In 2008/09, the number of complaints received by the ICD increased by 5% to 6 119 compared to 2007/08.

South African Police Service

The vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all South Africans. The constitutional mandate of the SAPS is reflected in Section 205 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996.

The mission of the SAPS is to:

- prevent anything that may threaten the safety or security of any community
- investigate any crimes that threaten the safety and security of any community
- ensure criminals are brought to justice and participate in efforts to address the root causes of crime.

The values upheld by the SAPS are to:

- protect everyone's rights and be impartial, respectful, open and accountable to the community
- use its powers responsibly
- provide a responsible, effective and high-quality service with honesty and integrity
- evaluate its service continuously and strive to improve it
- use its resources efficiently
- develop the skills of its members through equal opportunities
- cooperate with the community, all levels of government and other role players.

Strategic Plan for 2005 – 2010

The key policy documents governing policing are Section 205 of the Constitution, the SAPS Act, 1995, and the *White Paper on Safety and Security 1998,* which advocates a dual approach to safety and security, namely a reactive and a proactive approach. The National Crime Prevention Strategy was adopted in 1996 to implement crime-prevention initiatives. The National Crime Combating Strategy was adopted in 2000 to stabilise and normalise crime over a 10-year period.

The SAPS' Strategic Plan provides a clear framework for personnel members to focus their efforts during a five-year period. It also provides the community with information on the direction of policing during this period. The department's Strategic Plan for 2005 to 2010 lays down the following key priorities for the medium term, namely:

- combating organised crime and focusing on drug and firearm trafficking, vehicle theft and hijacking, commercial crime and corruption
- combating serious and violent crime by adopting strategies aimed at countering the proliferation of firearms
- improving safety and security in high-crime areas
- combating crimes such as taxi and gang violence and faction fighting
- maintaining security at major public events
- combating crimes against women and children, focusing on rape, domestic violence, assault and child abuse
- improving basic service delivery by the SAPS.

Annual Performance Plan

Section 11 (2) (a) of the SAPS Act, 1995 requires the National Commissioner to develop a one-year plan, setting out the priorities and objectives of policing for the following financial year. The Annual Performance Plan for the SAPS is developed in accordance with the SAPS Act, 1995 and

In September 2009, President Jacob Zuma called for a tougher, more effective fight against crime at a meeting with police station commanders. The meeting was part of a series of meetings the President had with public servants who are at the coalface of service delivery.

Government has identified the fight against crime as one of its top five priorities.

is an extension of the SAPS Strategic Plan. The Annual Performance Plan takes into consideration the JCPS Cluster priorities, the Government's Programme of Action (PoA) and the President's State of the Nation Address (SoNA) for that particular year.

Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster

Government departments have been clustered into groups comprising departments with similar sectoral challenges, to promote integrated governance. The Department of Police is an integral part of the JCPS Cluster, which coordinates interdepartmental crime prevention and security initiatives across the integrated justice system (IJS).

The broad JCPS Cluster priorities in relation to the SAPS are:

- crime prevention and public safety
- organised crime
- improving the effectiveness of the IJS
- upholding national security
- matters outstanding from the Truth and Reconciliation Commission
- big events.

JCPS priorities are revised annually by the substructures of the JCPS Cluster, namely the Joint Operational and Intelligence Structure, the IJS Development Committee and the Border Control Coordinating Committee (BCOCC), based on the January Lekgotla and the President's SoNA.

Organisational profile

The National Commissioner heads the SAPS. Four deputy national commissioners (under whom the divisions and components of the SAPS fall) and nine provincial commissioners (under whom the provinces fall) report to the National Commissioner.

Administration

Career development

SAPS career centres are used to recruit suitable candidates in terms of the Human Resources (HR) Plan and the equity targets in the Section 20 Plan, as well as to support the objectives of informing and educating SAPS employees about career opportunities in the organisation.

Fixed and mobile career centres are fully functioning in all provinces and at national level. These centres are monitored continuously through feedback received from the community and SAPS employees. The extent to which the centres are being used is growing steadily.

The career-centre initiative gives impetus to Cabinet's priority of addressing poverty in South Africa by informing the community of job and career opportunities offered by the SAPS.

Training

Personnel are developed by providing needs-based training in terms of the Training Provisioning Plan. There are 24 training institutions countrywide that strategically provide quality training to members.

During 2008/09, some 137 780 members attended operational training, 15 865 attended support training, 5 992 attended management and leadership development training and 19 853 attended entry-level training.

To enhance the crime-investigation function, the SAPS continues to focus on developing detectives by providing general, specialised and management learning programmes. Training was provided to detectives in the Detectives' Learning Programme; the Family Violence, Child Abuse and Sexual Offences Investigators' Learning Programme (Crime against Women and Children); the Detective Commanders' Learning Programme; and Organised Crime.

To support the successful investigation of crimes against women and children, the two-week Sexual Offences Investigators' Course was finalised for roll-out in 2009/10.

A number of initiatives are underway to overhaul the criminal justice system to make it more efficient. These interventions include the following:

- Police personnel will be increased by 24 680 from 180 180 to 204 860 over the next three years.
- The capacity of the Forensic Science Laboratory was increased by additional funding of R150 million for the 2008/09 financial year, and a further R50 million per year will be allocated to the 2011/12 financial year.
- A total of 14 977 new constables would be allocated to the Detective Services in the provinces after completing in-service training during 2009/10.
- The number of awaiting-trial detainees was reduced by 1 802 from 48 547 to 46 745 between April and July 2009.
- By November 2009, the number of prosecutors had increased by 83 since April 2009, from 2 488 to 2 571.
- To assist the speedy resolution of trials, 45 backlog courts have been established countrywide to finalise long-outstanding, trial-ready cases. At the end of August 2009, a total of 10 799 cases were finalised at an average of 10,8 cases per court per month.

The proficiency of all members in handling firearms is crucial to ensuring the safety of all citizens. In 2008/09, the street survival and tactical survival techniques learning programmes continued to provide functional members with the competencies required to ensure their own safety and that of their communities.

The development of station commissioners has been identified as a priority and the Station Management Learning Programme (SMLP) was developed to train all station commissioners. The programme consists of six modules, which address key aspects of a station commissioner's responsibilities. In 2008/09, 1 486 station commissioners completed the SMLP.

All 10 basic training institutions have received full accreditation. Graaff-Reinet, Oudtshoorn and Chatsworth have been declared institutes of sectoral and/or occupational excellence by the Department of Labour through the Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority.

As part of providing members with skills for major forthcoming events to be held in the country, such as the 2010 World Cup, trainers from the SAPS Bomb Disposal Unit were trained in Canada and the knowledge and skills gained were ploughed back into the SAPS by training other experts and by reviewing and aligning current related learning programmes.

In a further initiative, SAPS members were trained in post-blast investigations and search skills by a group of experts from the United Kingdom's Counter Terrorism Branch.

Operational police officials at national/provincial public-order units and crime-combating units at station level attended the new Crowd-Management Course to establish an adequately skilled specialised capability for dealing with any incident of public order, ranging from low to high-level threats.

In June 2009, the SAPS Executive Management and Leadership Development Centre was officially opened in Paarl, Western Cape.

Personnel services

The Personnel Services division consists of three components:

- Employee Assistance Services, which maintains a professional occupational social-work service, as well as a disability and HIV- and AIDS-support service. It offers a professional spiritual-support service; conducts psychological interventions and evaluations; and manages, develops and enhances sport and recreation within the SAPS. It provides a national call-centre service, which functions as a 24-hour helpline for the wellness of SAPS members.
- Personnel Provision and Maintenance comprises the promotions and awards, and personnel provision sections.
- Service Terminations and Behaviour Management comprises three sections, namely Medical Administration; Service Absence and Terminations; and Behaviour Management.

The SAPS grew from 173 241 members at the end of March 2008 to 182 754 members at the end of March 2009. The maintenance of a minimum workforce of 92% in terms of the approved establishment of 183 180 was therefore exceeded.

The number of employees is expected to grow to 192 240 by March 2010, 199 300 by 2011 and 204 860 by 2012.

Financial and administration services

Expenditure increased rapidly between 2005/06 and 2008/09, from R29,4 billion to R41,5 billion. It is expected to reach R55 billion by 2011/12. The strong growth in expenditure over the medium term mainly reflects the employment of large numbers of police officers, investment in capital infrastructure and concomitant resources such as the Electronic Vehicle Monitoring for Command and Control (Automated Vehicle Location [AVL] System), the security requirements for the 2010 World Cup, the upgrading of the information technology (IT) network, and additional human and physical resource capacity for the forensic-science and crime-intelligence functions.

Legal services

Legal Services provides a legal-advisory service to

In September 2009, the Minister of Police, Mr Nathi Mthethwa, introduced the 2009 crime statistics.

So-called contact crime accounted for 32% of all crime. Murder was down by 3,4% to 18 148 during the 12 months ending in March 2009, compared to the previous year and attempted murder dropped by 4,3%. More that 70% of business robberies target small and informal businesses and there was a 41,5% increase in this sector. Truck hijacking increased by 15,4% and car hijacking by 5%. Bank robberies were down by 29,2% and ATM attacks by 10%. Cash-in-transit robberies declined by 2,3%. House robberies increased by 27%.

Violent crime was down by 2,8%, common assault decreased by 4,3% and violent assault was down by 4,7%. Sexual offences increased by 10,1%.

the SAPS in respect of the development, interpretation, application and implementation of policy; the drafting of legislation; the management of litigious matters; the administration and management of contracts and agreements; arbitration; the management of national and international crime operations; special projects; the promotion of corporate identity and good governance; and the general administration and management of legal services.

Strategic management

The functions of the Strategic Management component include facilitating the development and compilation of a strategic plan and a one-year performance plan for the SAPS, facilitating the development of operational plans in support of the strategic plan at all levels, coordinating the strategic implementation of plans, and coordinating strategic monitoring and evaluation in the SAPS. The component has a research unit that coordinates all research requests and conducts surveys.

Various plans such as the Service-Delivery Improvement Programme, Prevention of Attacks and Killings of Police Officials, the Corruption and Fraud Prevention Plan and the Risk-Management Strategy have been developed to focus on implementation in respect of specific organisational priorities.

Information and systems management

The SAPS is upgrading the network and hosting services; replacing outdated computer equipment and implementing various systems, including the Firearm Control System, to address the issuing of firearm permits to SAPS members; implementing the AVL System to ensure that SAPS vehicles are effectively dispatched; scanning case dockets to prevent lost, sold or stolen dockets (E-Docket); and creating video images for exhibit/identity purposes within the IJS through the National Photo Image System (NPIS) and Crime Intelligence Information System.

Identification capabilities include:

- The NPIS: The facility to capture video images was being digitally stored as a critical success factor for the IJS for exhibit/identity-management purposes. It was implemented at 150 sites during 2008 and was expected to be implemented at 265 sites during 2009.
- Fingerprint Enrolment System: This is a facility for digitally enrolling fingerprints. This capability was implemented at 150 sites during 2008.
- Geographical Information System (GIS): The SAPS maintained and enhanced the GIS at 580 police stations and implemented it at an additional 40 police stations in 2008/09.
- Gun control: The first module of the newly developed Firearm Control System, namely the Firearm Permit System Module, was deployed in 2008/09. It deals with the issuing of permits to members of the SAPS and will interface with other resource systems. The Firearm Permit System was implemented at four sites in 2008.
- AVL System: The purpose of this system is to ensure that SAPS vehicles are dispatched effectively for improved service delivery. The system can determine the whereabouts of SAPS vehicles. A total of 24 609 vehicles have been fitted with AVL units.

Communication and liaison

Communication and Liaison Services promotes the image, identity and heritage of the SAPS by:

- meeting the organisation's communication needs through internal and external communication, and by dealing with the local and international media
- building community relations
- doing communication planning, research and marketing
- effectively using various mediums of communication such as *POL TV, When Duty Calls*, the *SAPS Journal*, the SAPS website and intranet.

Visible policing

Operational coordination

Visible policing provides for services at police stations, specialised interventions and the policing of South Africa's borderlines.

The Deputy National Commissioner: Operations is responsible for coordinating the planning and monitoring of identified major joint intelligence and operational structure events, such as the Confederations Cup and the general election in 2009, and the 2010 World Cup.

The Deputy National Commissioner: Operations is also responsible for the functioning of the JCPS Cluster in terms of its administration and liaison with other departments regarding all interdepartmental issues, for example, the Government's PoA, the Forum of South African Directors-General, Southern African Regional Police Chiefs Cooperation Organisation (SARPCCO) and the African Union (AU) Standby Force.

Contact crimes

Eight categories of serious crime are grouped together as contact crimes or violent crimes against persons or victims. These crimes are murder, attempted murder, rape, assault with the intent to inflict grievous bodily harm (assault GBH), common assault, indecent assault, aggravated robbery and other robbery. The crimes in question account for 33% of South Africa's recorded serious crime. The consequences of contact crimes and the fact that South Africa experiences exceptionally high levels of these crimes are generally acknowledged.

The JCPS Cluster identified and prioritised 169 police stations that register the highest levels of contact crime. Working and acting in consultation with the provincial administrations, the cluster developed sociographic profiles of these priority police-station areas. On the basis of these area profiles, relevant developmental projects have been developed to prevent crime.

In 2008/09, 1 223 505 arrests were made. Of these, 44% (536 991) were for priority crimes, which include contact crimes, property crimes and crimes dependent on police action for detection. Of the 44% arrests made for priority crimes, 48% (259 534) arrests were made within the boundaries of the 169 high-contact crime stations.

Crime prevention

Integrated law-enforcement operations focus on a number of priority areas to address the incidence of contact crimes, violent organised crimes and crimes dependent on police action for detection.

During 2008/09, the SAPS conducted 42 601 roadblocks and 1 006 186 stop-and-search operations. More than 1,2 million arrests were made, and 13 675 stolen or lost firearms and 39 838 stolen and robbed motor vehicles were recovered. More than 144 408 000 kg of cannabis were confiscated.

In July 2006, a specific operational strategy was adopted to combat violent crime.

The focus was on arresting perpetrators wanted for murder, attempted murder, rape, aggravated (armed) robberies and vehicle hijacking. The strategy included executing warrants of arrest for repeat offenders and suspects identified from crime-scene investigations who had been linked to three or more cases. Competent tracing teams were established to focus on wanted suspects. In 2008/09, about 39 697 suspects who had been involved in 55 963 cases were arrested.

When Duty Calls, a new television programme that gives information on wanted and missing persons and urges the public to come forward with information about crimes, was launched in October 2009. It builds on the success of *Police File*, a former programme that yielded impressive results in finding missing persons and locating and arresting criminals.

Social-crime prevention

The SAPS contributes to various social-crime prevention initiatives relating to the Anti-Rape Strategy, the Domestic Violence Programme, youth crime-prevention capacity-building programmes, violence-prevention programmes, the Victim-Empowerment Programme and community-based crime-prevention projects in the Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Programme and Urban Renewal Programme nodes.

More than 600 victim-friendly facilities had been established by the end of March 2008. These facilities provide for all victims of crime, but specifically for victims of violent and intimate crimes, such as domestic violence, sexual offences, rape, child abuse and assault.

Reservists

The strength of the Reserve Police Force stood at 53 200 active reservists on 31 March 2009.

Reservists are appointed in terms of the following categories:

- Category A: Functional deployment
- Category B: Support personnel at stations
- Category C: Specialised support, for example doctors and pilots
- Category D: Rural and urban safety.

A total of 14 011 reservists were trained in 2008/09, of whom 12 541 were found competent. In addition to this, short-skills programmes, aimed at enhancing the skills and knowledge of reservists in performing policing functions, were presented. These programmes include administration of the Community Service Centre, crime investigation, crime prevention and street survival.

At the Reservist Summit, held in March 2009, the Minister of Safety and Security, Mr Nathi Mthethwa, instructed that the current legislative/regulatory framework for reservists be reviewed. The minister also instructed that a national task team be established to consider employment-related matters, and that this task team interfaces with provinces in facilitating the recruitment of qualifying reservists as permanent employees of the SAPS.

By September 2009, the enlistment requirements had been finalised and were implemented in the provinces.

Sector policing

Sector policing had been implemented at 129 of the 169 high-contact crime police stations by the end of March 2009. It is a policing model that focuses on the geographical division of a police-station area into smaller manageable sectors, based on the geographical constraints, the composition and diversity of communities and the specific interests and needs of a community.

The aim of sector policing is to mobilise the community and other role players in the sector through practical problem-solving initiatives and/or targeted intervention programmes to improve relations between the community and the police and to identify the policing needs of the sector.

The success of sector policing depends, among other things, on dedicated and well-trained sector commanders, active participation of community role players and sufficient resources on a 24-hour basis.

Community policing

Crime prevention in South Africa is based on the principles of community policing, recognising the interdependence and shared responsibility of the police and the community in establishing safety and security. The key to this approach is the establishment of active partnerships between the police and the public through which crime and community-safety issues can be jointly addressed.

Police/community partnerships have been structured by means of community police forums (CPFs), as prescribed in Section 27 of the SAPS Act, 1995. CPFs are actively involved in crime-prevention and awareness programmes, and allow the SAPS to mobilise and involve communities in the fight against crime. By July 2009, CPFs were fully operating at 95% of the 1 116 police stations.

The National Community Policing Consultative Forum represents role players from the SAPS, the Secretariat for Safety and Security and the provincial chairpersons of the CPFs. This forum serves as a communication mechanism to share good practices and address current matters relating to community policing and challenges or problems that exist.

The building of partnerships between the SAPS and communities gained momentum and included entities such as the Big Business Working Group, Churches against Crime, Community-Building Credible Ownership, the Consumer Goods Council Crime-Prevention Programme, crime reporting boards and a partnership with the University of Pretoria aimed at alerting students to the concept of CPFs.

Primedia Crime Line, a partnership between the Primedia Group and the South African Police Service (SAPS) was officially launched in June 2007. The purpose of the partnership is to encourage the community to blow the whistle on crime by reporting it anonymously via SMS to the number 32211 or reporting it on the website *www.crimeline.co.za*.

The information is passed on electronically to the SAPS' Crime Stop office, from where it is disseminated to nodal points in each province. Although the original partnership was between the SAPS and Primedia, it has since been expanded to include other partners such as the South African Broadcasting Corporation, Jacaranda FM, Algoa FM and several other community radio stations. Other supporters include Pick 'n Pay, Mimmos, NetStar and E-block Watch.

From June 2007 to mid-May 2009, 758 arrests were made as a result of this partnership and stolen goods worth R20 million were seized.

Emergency response services

The Police Emergency Services responds to crimes in progress and provides services through dog, mounted, hostage and suicide negotiation, police diver and uniformed units such as the 10111 emergency centres and the Flying Squad.

Police Emergency Services is also responsible for optimising the Integrated Crime-Prevention Road Policing Strategy, which aims to improve safety and order in the road environment by preventing and combating criminality and lawlessness.

Firearm and liquor control

Firearms and Liquor Control eradicates the proliferation of firearms for use in crime and violence in South Africa. It also ensures compliance and effective enforcement of firearm, liquor and second-hand goods control legislation.

Since the 2006/07 financial year, the SAPS has focused on operationalising the Firearms Strategy (FS) to address the proliferation of firearms and ammunition. Since the implementation of the FS, a total of 291 541 firearm-licence renewals (compared to 216 208 renewals in 2007/08) and 351 148 competency certifications (compared to 232 741 certifications in 2007/08) had been processed by the SAPS.

The accreditation of business entities, associations and organisations forms an integral part of the implementation of the firearm-control legislation in South Africa. A total of 1 715 institutions (compared to 1 605 at the end of March 2008), including training-providers, shooting ranges, hunting associations and sport-shooting organisations were accredited.

Medium and high-risk operations

Specialised Operations provides a rapid-response capacity for intervening in extreme situations where normal policing is ineffective, such as: combating public violence, stabilising serious- and violent-crime incidents, policing public gatherings, rendering specialised operational support (including the Air Wing and Special Task Force) and handling high-risk operations.

The Special Task Force conducted 230 operations during 2008/09, which included hostage situations and crime-prevention operations in support of the SAPS' strategic priorities. During the same period, six Robinson helicopters were procured for the SAPS Air Wing. These small, cost-effective helicopters are deployed in the provinces and serve as an additional tool in aerial observation to combat crime.

The SAPS' Air Wing recorded 9 305 flying hours, which included crime-prevention operations, call-outs, information-driven operations, assistance to foreign countries, special-forces operations, dagga-spraying operations, communication flights, shows, training and maintenance flights.

Assistance was rendered to Botswana and the Namibian Police in establishing their own police air wing units and providing training to these countries.

Borderline control

Borderline Operations combats cross-border crimes at air, sea and land borderlines. Land Borderline Control polices the South African land borderline. Air Borderline Control polices more than 1 200 smaller airfields and airstrips. Sea Borderline Control is responsible for policing smaller sea harbours and slipways, including the South African ocean.

The operational area of responsibility extends seawards by 200 nautical miles and 10 kilometres inland off the shoreline. In November 2009, Cabinet approved the request to deploy the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) to render borderline control and protection. The deployment of the SANDF will be incorporated into the border-control strategy being finalised by the JCPS Cluster.

Crime combating

Crime-Combating Operations is responsible for the deployment of a standby force on international peace-support missions, protecting the diplomatic community, combating crime and maintaining public order.

The Diplomatic Policing Unit's main responsibility is to create a safe and secure environment for the foreign diplomatic community in Pretoria. Various complaints, motor-vehicle accidents and the policing and safeguarding of official diplomatic functions were attended to.

As a result of combating public violence, 1 959 arrests were made during 2008/09.

Regional and continental initiatives

The SAPS has provided support to government's regional and continental objectives by implementing the Southern African Development Community (SADC) Protocol on the Control of Firearms through the SARPCCO and the AU Convention on the Prevention and Combating of Terrorism.

The SAPS' Crime-Combating Operations component is responsible for, among other things, the deployment of a standby force on international peace-support missions.

Rendering specialised policing services to neighbouring countries

The SAPS renders specialised policing services to neighbouring countries, which include the deployment of SAPS members on peacekeeping missions and cross-border operations.

- In 2008/09, 145 members were deployed to Sudan. They were required to render assistance in developing proactive public confidence, establishing and maintaining contact with local police authorities by collaborating in day-to-day activities; and monitoring and reporting on the effectiveness of the local police's service delivery.
- Assistance was provided during Operation Rachel, a joint exercise between South Africa and Mozambique, to prevent arms from crossing the border into South Africa.
- Six members attended a planning conference of the SADC and AU Standby Brigade in Botswana; 23 members attended the Command Post Exercise of the SADC and AU Standby Brigade; and 13 members attended a seminar on Standard Operational Procedures and Map Exercise of the SADC and AU Standby Brigade in Angola.

Detective services

Detective Services is responsible for maintaining

an effective crime-investigation service. It investigates crimes and gathers all related evidence required by the prosecuting authority to redress crime.

General investigations

General Investigations accommodates detectives at police stations who investigate crimes of a general nature, as well as serious crime and organised crime.

During 2007/08, 2 029 406 cases of serious and violent crime were reported to the SAPS.

During 2007/08, 802 514 (34,94%) cases were referred to court.

Organised crime

In terms of the Government's PoA, the neutralising of organised crime syndicates is a priority. Organised crime spans a wide area, from illegal drugs and substances, smuggling and trading in counterfeit goods, the plundering of mineral and marine resources, smuggling firearms, human and child trafficking, car and truck hijacking, aggravated robberies, cable theft and money laundering to fraud.

In 2008/09, in terms of the Organised Crime Project Investigation process, 145 organised crime groups (projects) composed of 750 targets were identified and investigated, of which 41 were successfully terminated, resulting in the arrest of 374 suspects.

Commercial crime

The Commercial Branch of the SAPS is responsible for policing 54 Acts of Parliament, including the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), the Close Corporations Act, 1984 (Act 69 of 1984), the Insolvency Act, 1936 (Act 24 of 1936), the Merchandise Marks Act, 1941 (Act 17 of 1941), the Counterfeit Goods Act, 1997 (Act 37 of 1997), the Banks Act, 1990 (Act 94 of 1990), and the South African Reserve Bank (SARB) Act, 1989 (Act 90 of 1989), which deal with counterfeit currency and the investigation of corruption in state departments and the private sector.

The Commercial Branch is also responsible for investigating fraud, forgery and uttering, and certain types of theft such as theft of trust money or funds that were manipulated to the extent that the services of a chartered accountant are required. During 2008/09, the Commercial Branch received 26 683 cases and 11 668 persons were arrested or made their first appearance in court.

Police stations that were built in 2008/09 have victim-friendly facilities for the victims of sexual offences. There are 594 such facilities across the country. The personnel who render services at these facilities are mostly volunteers from the various levels of medical care and social services in South Africa.

Criminal records and forensic sciences

The function of the Criminal Record Centre is to identify and confirm any previous convictions of suspects in crimes being investigated by the SAPS. The Forensic Science Laboratory (FSL) renders a support service to investigating officers by analysing any physical evidence that is collected from various crime scenes.

Various technologies have been implemented in the forensic science environment, including the installation of the national Integrated Ballistics Identification System (IBIS) database. This has improved case turnaround time and examination quality. The Genetic Sample Processing System has increased the capacity to process more DNA-related entries. A three-dimensional correlation system has been implemented as part of the IBIS, and has improved the accuracy of firearms identification.

Analysts at the FSL investigated 244 248 cases during 2008/09, which included ballistic evidence and biological material, for example DNA and primer residue analysis, chemistry and documents.

During the 2008/09 financial year, a total of 19 504 ballistics entries were received. Of these, 3 418 projectiles, 17 833 cartridge cases and 10 292 firearms were placed on the IBIS. A total of 14 111 positive hits were made with the assistance of the IBIS during this period.

During 2008/09, the Biology Section received 54 568 items of biological material that needed to be examined. The examinations of 52 533 of these items were completed.

The Forensic Amendment Bill was introduced in 2008/09. The Bill is aimed at focusing on real evidence, namely fingerprints, DNA and other forensic exhibit material to improve the conviction rate in South African courts. The legislation will provide the legislative framework for building a national DNA database in South Africa.

Crime intelligence

This division of the SAPS is responsible for centralised intelligence and for managing, coordinating and analysing information gathering. It also provides technical-intelligence support to the operational components of crime intelligence and,

where necessary, to other operational divisions of the SAPS.

Through its various national and provincial linked components, Crime Intelligence has established coverage throughout the country, which extends to station level. Cooperation with foreign law-enforcement agencies is done through platforms such as Interpol and the SARPCCO. This extends the range of crime intelligence beyond the national borders.

Protection and security services

The VIP Protection Service provides for the protection, while in transit, of the President, Deputy President, former presidents and their spouses, national ministers, premiers, members of provincial executive committees and any other office bearer whose safety is of national importance. This component is also responsible for protecting visiting foreign dignitaries who qualify for protection, and judges and magistrates presiding over trials where their safety may be threatened.

Static and Mobile Security provides for the protection of other local and foreign VIPs, the places in which all VIPs, including those related to the President and Deputy President, are present, as well as valuable government cargo.

During 2008/09, Static Guard Services protected 25 installations and government buildings, as well as 90 presidential and national ministerial residences.

Mobile Operations, which is responsible for safeguarding valuable cargo, including cash currency escorts for the SARB, conducted 209 operations.

Railway Policing prevents and combats organised crime, serious and violent crime, and crimes against women and children in the rail environment. Regular national and provincial operations were conducted in the railway environment.

A total of 13 167 priority crimes and 27 261 other crimes were recorded in 2008/09. This led to 35 161 arrests (15 055 arrests for priority crimes and 20 106 for other crimes) and the recovery of goods to the value of more than R21 million in 2008/09.

In 2008/09, an additional six new railway police stations were rolled out at Bellville and Philippi in the Western Cape, Escombe and Cavendish in KwaZulu-Natal and Mount Ruth and Swartskop in the Eastern Cape. A total of 19 railway police facilities were completed (including provincial command structures and SAPS railway police stations). The deployment of railway police personnel to Metrorail totalled 1 994 while 405 were used for mainline services.

The South African Police Service (SAPS) Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 57 of 2008), was finalised in 2008/09.

The SAPS Amendment Act, 2008 provides for the establishment of a new division in the SAPS, the Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation, to prevent, combat and investigate priority crimes, including serious organised crime, serious commercial crime and serious corruption.

The Act was assented to by the President on 27 January 2009 and put in operation on 20 February 2009. The new division, dubbed "the Hawks", was officially launched on 6 July 2009. The SAPS Amendment Act, 2008, together with the National Prosecuting Authority Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 56 of 2008), jointly provided for the disestablishment of the Directorate of Special Operations (DSO).

The Acts also provided for the transfer of investigative personnel and the functions of the DSO to the SAPS to form a new integrated and multidisciplinary capacity to combat priority crimes, together with members of the SAPS' commercial crime and organised crime components.

Railway police deployments are focused on local Metrorail trains, as well as on long-distance cross-border trains and rail routes to prevent and combat crime.

The Government Security Regulator provides for security regulation and administration relating to national key points and strategic installations.

The security of government institutions and key economic infrastructure is continuously receiving attention. Developments in this regard include the establishment of the Government Sector Security Council, which is tasked with enhancing the monitoring and evaluating initiatives of protection and security in the government sector and the revision of the National Key Points Bill.

Business Against Crime South Africa (BACSA)

BACSA was formed in 1996 at the request of former President Nelson Mandela. BACSA is a Section 21 (not-for-profit) organisation mandated to support government in the fight against crime. The organisation is primarily funded by business-sector donations, and has a presence in seven provinces, with a national office in Johannesburg.

BACSA is one of the key strategic partners of the SAPS in the fight against crime and is the primary channel through which the business sector interacts with government on broad crime-related matters. The objective is to provide the specialist skills and expertise of business to assist the SAPS in building the necessary capacity to effectively tackle crime.

BACSA engages with the SAPS at all levels, from national to station level, and has offices in Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, the Western Cape, Eastern Cape, Mpumalanga, North West and the Northern Cape.

Focus areas include:

- The Criminal Justice Review and Improvement Programme, which is a Cabinet-approved initiative led by the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, aims to strengthen the capacity in the CJS.
- The Violent Organised Crime Reduction Programme is a multifaceted programme for dealing with trio crimes, namely business, residential and vehicle robberies. Partnerships are created between business and the SAPS across the country. Specific areas of co-operation include:
  - improving the 10111 service in Gauteng
  - attending to a number of vehicle theft and hijacking issues, including the expansion of the use of microdot technology to combat vehicle crime
  - examining the wreck environment to recommend tighter classificatory controls across the industry to reduce the scope for vehicle and insurance fraud
  - implementing a best-practice model at more than 30 motor-vehicle registration and licensing authorities to reduce opportunities for illegal activities
  - improving legislation such as the Second-Hand Goods Act, 2009 (Act 6 of 2009)
  - supporting the SAPS at cluster and provincial level in the creation of war rooms, trio task teams and specialised prosecution support.

Defence

Department of Defence and Military Veterans

The 1996 Constitution and the Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002), stipulate the mandate for the Department of Defence and Military Veterans.

The White Paper on Defence (1996) and the *Defence Review (1998)* articulate South Africa's post-apartheid national defence policy. These laws and policies direct and guide the functions and roles of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans.

Mission

The mission of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans is to provide, manage, prepare and employ defence capabilities commensurate with the (security) needs of South Africa and its people, as regulated by the Constitution, national legislation, and parliamentary and executive direction. The department's mission success-factors involve:

- national consensus on defence
- excellent strategic direction
- excellent resource management
- effective combat and support forces
- professionalism in the conduct of operations
- successful implementation of the transformation process.

Legislation

Defence Act, 2002

The Defence Act, 2002 regulates the defence function.

Functions

The role and mandate of the SANDF in the defence of South Africa and its people is a direct derivative from the Constitution and the Defence Act, 2002, stating that the SANDF is mandated to be employed for the following functions:

- service in the defence of the country, for the protection of its sovereignty and territorial integrity
- service in fulfilling the international obligations of the country to international bodies and other states
- service in preserving life, health and/or property
- service in providing or maintaining essential services
- upholding of law and order in the country in cooperation with the SAPS under circumstances set out in legislation, where the SAPS is unable to maintain law and order
- service in support of any department of state for the purpose of social-economic upliftment.

Strategic orientation of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans

Defence strategy

The Department of Defence and Military Veterans's Strategy is based on the Constitution, the *White Paper on Defence,* the *Defence Review* and the National Security Strategy. The Defence Strategy articulates the functions of defence as set out in legislation and policy, which include defence and protection of the country and its people against military and non-military threats and the promotion of regional and continental security initiatives of the government.

The Defence Strategy promotes good departmental governance and the continuous improvement of defence capabilities, and also ensures that resources are provided to all required elements of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans.

Force preparation

The chiefs of the South African Army (SA Army), South African Airforce (SAAF), SA Navy (SAN) and the South African Military Health Service (SAMHS) are responsible for providing defence capabilities in accordance with the military strategic objectives and their preparation and maintenance for mission readiness and operational employment. Each division must structure, position and maintain itself to provide forces able to participate successfully, as part of a joint, interdepartmental and multinational grouping, in the execution of all missions.

Each formation has its own commander. A formation includes, where practical, all units and support elements related to a specific user-system type. Each formation is capable of providing a fully supported user-system to a commander responsible for the exercising and combat-readiness of land, air, maritime and military health capabilities, such as a brigade or division commander. A formation can provide the same service to a task-force commander appointed by the Chief of Joint Operations. This is a considerable improvement in cost-effectiveness, while it also provides the best way of retaining core defence capabilities, especially expertise in critical mass function. Some examples of formations established by the different services are:

- SA Army – infantry, artillery or armour formations
- SAAF – air capabilities within the Air Command
- SAN – the fleet
- SAMHS – military-health formations.

A formation's specific geographical location depends on where its combat and support units are concentrated.

Force employment

The SANDF exists to employ military capabilities in the execution of operations. The complexity of contemporary military operations demands a high level of integration between force elements contributed by the various services of a defence force. The Chief of Joint Operations, on behalf of the Chief of the SANDF, is responsible for employing forces of the SANDF and is supported by the services of other divisions. For internal operations, nine tactical-level headquarters have been established, one in each province. If required, temporary joint task-force headquarters may be created for specific operations. Services and divisions are responsible to prepare, provide and support combat-ready units as and when required for employment by the Chief of Joint Operations.

Force support

The preparation and employment of the SANDF is supported by the acquisition, maintenance and disposal/retirement of HR, finances, logistic supplies (including facilities and infrastructure) and information systems and which are administered by internal controls within the business rules derived from the applicable resource regulatory framework.

Military strategy

The Military Strategy of South Africa is derived from the Constitution, the *Defence Review*, the *White Paper on Defence* and the National Security Strategy.

Military strategic objectives

The purpose of military strategic objectives is to defend South Africa in accordance with the United Nations (UN) Charter, which allows for any country to defend itself. This self-defence aims at protecting the country and its territorial integrity. The military strategic objectives of the SANDF are the following:

- Enhancing and maintaining comprehensive defence capabilities by providing self-defence in accordance with international law against any external aggression which endangers the stability of South Africa.
- Promoting peace, security and stability in the region and on the continent. The purpose is to provide armed forces for external deployment in accordance with international obligations, or support to enhance security of decisions by the executive.
- Supporting the people of South Africa by being employed for service in this country by means of operations other than war during periods when the responsible state departments do not have the capacity to do so.

Missions

The SANDF uses a mission-based approach to achieve the military strategic objectives of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans. This approach allows for wartime and peacetime

missions to direct the peacetime strategy for force preparation, and to guide joint, interdepartmental and multinational force preparation and force employment during times of conflict. The missions envisaged for the next 10 years include:

- countering of a conventional, unconventional or non-conventional threat or attack
- peace-support operations
- health support
- defence diplomacy
- special operations
- support to other government departments
- disaster relief and humanitarian assistance
- presidential tasks.

Military strategic concepts

The military strategic concepts describe the procedures to be followed to meet military strategic objectives:

- Providing mission-essential training: The SANDF educates, trains and develops its soldiers in the essential skills required to execute the tasks necessary to accomplish its missions. It focuses on force training and preparation aligned with the allocated budget.
- Establishing a mission-trained force: The SANDF is to have the capability to establish a mission-trained force that can engage in specific missions. The force will be relatively small, but must ultimately be prepared according to the missions and capabilities required.
- Selective engagement where possible: The SANDF will execute all missions as ordered, but will be selective in the courses of action it will follow, the force levels it will field, as well as the capabilities and resources it will provide and maintain. It focuses on consciously taking calculated strategic and operational risks.
- Strategic positioning: This entails establishing early-warning mechanisms, such as deploying military attachés and getting involved in subregional institutions to enhance peace and security in the region. This supports development initiatives such as SADC and the AU.

Military strategic capabilities

The SANDF's capabilities constitute the means of the strategy and consist of:

- command and control, information and communications technology, information, intelligence, infrastructure, reconnaissance and surveillance capabilities
- light mobile capability
- conventional warfare capability
- support capability.

Employment of the South African National Defence Force

Conventional operations

In the event of a conventional military threat against South Africa, the broad joint concept of operations will be as follows:

- land operations: the SANDF will conduct offensive, proactive and reactive land operations directed at stopping and destroying the enemy before it can penetrate South African territory
- air operations: opposing air power will be neutralised mainly by the employment of offensive and defensive counter-air operations assisted by air-mobile land operations aimed at destroying the adversary air force on the ground
- maritime operations: opposing maritime forces will be attacked at range, while the defence of own and friendly shipping will be enhanced by defensive patrols and escort
- SAMHS operations: during conventional operations, the SAMHS deploys its mobile formation in direct support of land, air and maritime operations.

Non-conventional operations

The broad non-conventional concepts of operations are as follows:

- support to the SAPS in maintaining law and order will be provided by general support tasks and focused rapid-reaction operations directed at priority crime and the conduct of special operations
- border control will be exercised on land, sea and air by high-technology surveillance supported by rapid-reaction forces
- general area protection will be provided by a combination of high-density and rapid-reaction operations.

Operational commitments

Operational commitments include:

- achieving international and regional defence cooperation aims
- executing peace operations
- effective land, sea and air-border control
- maintaining law and order in support of the SAPS
- controlling South African maritime areas of responsibility, including the Exclusive Economic Zone
- when requested, providing support to civil authorities within the scope of regulations regarding:

- the preservation of life, health and property
- the maintenance of essential services
- the provision of medical and health services
- search-and-rescue operations
- missions to the Antarctic and the southern oceans
- diplomatic initiatives

- air-transport missions, including for diplomatic commitments and scheduled departmental flights
- area-defence operation missions
- joint interdepartmental and multinational force-preparation missions
- special forces missions.

Border safeguarding

The SANDF is to be deployed to patrol and protect South Africa's borders.

Members of the SANDF would be better placed to fight cross-border crime, such as cars being smuggled to neighbouring countries after they were stolen in South Africa.

Soldiers will gradually replace the police both along the country's frontiers and at border posts.

There will be an intermediate phase where some parts will be guarded by the police and some by the SANDF.

Other defence commitments

The Department of Defence and Military Veterans' other commitments are to:

- achieve a reasonable level of military diplomacy by:
  - placing and managing defence attachés
  - establishing and maintaining bi- and multilateral agreements
  - participating in the activities of the defence structures of multinational organisations such as the UN, AU and SADC (especially in the Interstate Defence and Security Committee)
- meet the international obligations of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans in line with international agreements, which may include search-and-rescue and hydrography
- provide healthcare for the President and Deputy President.

Peace operations

The Charter of the UN and the Constitutive Act of the AU respectively enjoin the international community and Africa to unite their strength to maintain international peace and security, and to promote peace, security and stability on the continent. The commitment to realise these objectives galvanised the AU and its Peace and Security Council as well as regional organisations to find durable solutions to the countries affected by conflict.

The promotion of peace and security is one of South Africa's most important objectives. This includes strengthening the region's conflict-prevention and resolution capabilities, rendering assistance in monitoring and addressing domestic issues that affect stability.

South Africa remains a significant actor and a major contributor to peacekeeping operations on the continent and elsewhere in the world.

The SANDF has formed part of and participated in various peace missions on the continent since 1994.

These include:

- capacity-building of the Central African Republic Defence Force
- the UN Mission in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC)
- integration and training assistance in the DRC
- the AU Special Task Force in Burundi
- the UN Mission and AU Mission in Ethiopia and Eritrea
- the AU/UN Hybrid Mission in Darfur
- the Security Sector Reform in the DRC
- the deployment of military observers to the AU Mission in Northern Uganda/Southern Sudan
- the Specialist Advisory Team in the DRC.

In addition to these deployments on the continent, South Africa had also deployed observers to support the UN Political Mission in Nepal.

Organisational structure

The Department of Defence and Military Veterans

The first Polish International Military Film Festival, *The Military Camera 2009*, was held in Warsaw, Poland, in May 2009.

The South African National Defence Force's (SANDF) Corporate Communication subsection, Defence TV, entered two military films, namely *A Season for Goodwill* and *Eye of the Forces*, both of which made it into the final selection of 20 entries chosen from the 15 countries that participated in the competition.

A Season for Goodwill is a docu-drama, on the Goodwill Parcel Project, a project that was initiated by the SANDF to show its gratitude to soldiers who sacrificed spending time with their friends and family during the festive season because they are deployed as part of various peacekeeping and border patrol missions during this period. This entry won the Prize of the Commander of the Polish Navy during the festival.

adheres to the principles of civil control and oversight through the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans, through various parliamentary committees such as the Joint Standing Committee on Defence (JSCD) and the Defence Secretariat. While the minister is responsible for providing political direction to the department, the JSCD ensures that the Executive Authority (Minister of Defence and Military Veterans) remains accountable to Parliament.

However, for day-to-day administration and the coordination of strategic processes, the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans relies on the Defence Secretariat, which is the civilian component of the department.

Secretary for Defence

The Secretary for Defence manages the Secretariat and is the accounting officer of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans. He/she is the principal adviser to the minister regarding defence policy and matters that may be investigated by the JSCD. The Secretary for Defence performs such duties and functions as may be necessary for democratic and civilian management of the defence function and to enhance parliamentary and ministerial control over the SANDF. The Secretary for Defence monitors compliance with directions issued to the Chief of the SANDF by the President or the minister.

Chief of the South African National Defence Force

The functions of the Chief of the SANDF include:

- advising the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans on any military, operational and administrative matters
- complying with directions issued by the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans under the authority of the President, as prescribed by the Constitution
- formulating and issuing policies and doctrines
- exercising command by issuing orders, directives and instructions
- directing management and administration
- executing approved programmes of the defence budget
- employing the armed forces in accordance with legislation
- training the armed forces
- maintaining defence capabilities
- planning contingencies
- managing the defence force as a disciplined military force.

The South African National Defence Force Specialist Contingent, which was deployed as part of the African Union Special Task Force in Burundi, formally withdrew its troops and lowered its flag on 8 August 2009.

The primary function of this military force was to provide high-quality protection to the returning leaders participating in the Burundi Transitional Government. The signing of a number of ceasefire agreements between the belligerents involved provided a new momentum for the implementation of the peace process in Burundi. The withdrawal of troops was completed in September 2009.

The withdrawal signified a proud moment in South Africa's and Africa's history as it moved towards the resolution of this long-standing and violent conflict.

In February 2009, military chaplains from all corners of the globe met in Cape Town for the first International Military Chief of Chaplains Conference.

This ground-breaking conference was hosted by the Chaplain-General Division of the South African National Defence Force.

The conference focused on the importance of reconciliation and healing in post-conflict reconstruction.

Defence capital programmes

Army acquisition

In January 2009, the department bought three new-generation Milan ADvanced Technologies (ADT) firing posts and training simulators. South Africa became the first export client for the Milan ADT firing post, which is compatible with the future Milan Extended Response missile. The system incorporates new digital technologies supporting target acquisition and reconnaissance. The systems are planned for deployment with the South African Infantry (currently deployed in the DRC and Burundi) as well as the special forces.

The focus in the medium term will be on the light and mobile capabilities, which include:

- infantry capabilities regarding soldier systems, anti-tank capabilities and mobility together with engineering capabilities dealing with water purification and earth-moving capabilities
- upgrades of existing armour equipment
- artillery and air-defence artillery projects addressing the command and control functions, censors and weapon systems to satisfy the requirement for light and mobile forces

- battlefield surveillance as a priority while various logistics projects will ensure sustainment of the landward forces.

Air Force acquisition

The full fleet of Hawk lead-in fighter trainer aircraft has been delivered to the SAAF, and flying training at Air Force Base Makhado is progressing according to the scheduled training programme.

The full compliment of nine dual-seat Gripen D aircraft was delivered to the SAAF by July 2009. The single-seat Gripen C aircraft deliveries commenced in November 2009 with the final delivery expected in January 2012.

Twenty-nine of the ordered 30 light-utility helicopters have been delivered. The aircraft had entered operational service at most of the designated squadrons. All four Super Lynx maritime helicopters were delivered to the SAAF during July 2007. The full release to service in all maritime-related roles on board the SAN frigates will be in place for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

A binational development programme of a fifth-generation short-range air-to-air missile between South Africa and Brazil was launched, and progress has been made in almost every critical area of design and verification. Once the missile reaches operational status, it will be used by both countries.

A capital programme aimed at the avionics upgrade of the Pilatus Astra basic training aircraft has been initiated, and a contract for this work was awarded to Pilatus Switzerland by the end of 2008. The first prototype will be delivered within 18 months from contract placement.

The ongoing life-extension programme of the dynamic components of the Oryx medium helicopter fleet was extended to include the upgrade of some avionics and the replacement of the communications suite. This project will run over a four-year period and is expected to deliver the last upgraded aircraft by 2012.

Several smaller projects have been started, such as the replacement of the inventory of outdated pilot personal-locator beacons and the replacement of the radio-switching network for air operations. These projects will enhance existing operational capabilities and close critical gaps in mission-support systems that were hampering the successful conduct of air operations.

Command and Management Information System

The project to provide a tactical telecommunications system for the SANDF has finalised the full system's architecture and it was envisaged that formal acquisition studies of the first components to the system would commence during the course of 2008, with the commencement of the acquisition of some products in 2009.

The projects for a mobile and transportable power-provision system, static and mobile telecommunications carrier system as well as a static electronic warfare system are continuing with their respective definition phases.

The definition of the joint tactical command and control system for brigade level and lower has been completed and the process of acquiring a solution has commenced.

South African Military Health Service Institute for Aviation Medicine

In March 2009, a memorandum of agreement was signed between the then Department of Defence and the Innovation Hub in Pretoria for the transfer of land to the department on which a new state-of-the-art specialist aeromedical facility will be established.

Specialised musterings such as SAAF aircrew (fighter pilots, helicopter pilots, transport pilots and cabin crew of various musterings), airborne special forces, divers and submariners are the backbone of the SANDF's military capability.

To cater for these requirements, the South African Aeromedical and Specialist Training Facility is being established. It will include:

- a human centrifuge
- hypobaric and hyperbaric chambers
- disorientation demonstrator with night-vision integration
- helicopter disorientation trainer with G-capabilities and night-vision integration
- anti-G-straining manoeuvre trainer
- ejection trainer
- underwater escape training system.

The *SAS Queen Modjadji I*, the last of three new submarines acquired by the South African Navy (SAN), arrived in Simon's Town, Cape Town, in May 2008. The submarine was united with her two sister ships, the *SAS Manthatisi* and *SAS Charlotte Maxeke*, which had already been taken into service by the SAN.

The fleet of three submarines was bought as part of South Africa's multibillion rand strategic arms-acquisition programme, in which the SAN also received four new patrol frigates as part of the package, as well as four Super Linx helicopters to be operated by the South African Air Force from the ships.

Biochemical Radiological Defence System

The system for both urban and conventional employment will be finalised in 2010.

High-level defence interventions

Defence transformation

Defence transformation aims to:

- maximise defence capabilities through an affordable and sustainable force design and structure
- minimise defence costs using business processes, for example, engineering and restructuring of especially the support structures
- institutionalise appropriate leadership, command and management practices, philosophy and principles
- align defence policies, plans and management with overall government transformation and administrative-reform initiatives
- ensure compliance with the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), as amended by Act 29 of 1999 and National Treasury regulations.

Shared defence values

After comprehensive research, seven shared values for the department were approved:

- military professionalism
- human dignity
- integrity
- leadership
- accountability
- loyalty
- patriotism.

Human Resource 2010 Strategy

A key initiative to sustain the Department of Defence and Military Veterans's state of readiness in the context of people-centred transformation is the HR 2010 Strategy (HR 2010).

HR 2010 aims to ensure that the department has the most effective, efficient and economical HR composition of both uniformed and civilian members to deliver on its mandate and support for government.

Military Skills Development System (MSDS)

The MSDS was launched in 2003 and since its inception more than 20 000 South Africans have participated. The MSDS aims to ensure a continuous intake of young, healthy South Africans into the SANDF to rejuvenate the Regular Force of the SANDF, as well as to supply the Reserve Force in an effort to maintain mission readiness.

In September 2009, Cabinet approved the establishment of the National Defence Force Service Commission. The commission is an independent body established to provide expert advice to the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans on all matters pertaining to the conditions of service of the members of the military.

Members of the commission comprise experts from civil society, academia and business. In doing its work, the commission carries out interviews with members of the military, conducts research and embarks on international benchmarking exercises to ensure that the conditions of service are in line with international best practice.

There has been a 40% improvement in the rank-age profile of SANDF troops and, as the number of youth intakes increases over the next three years, the capacity of the reserves will be addressed.

The MSDS not only provides young South Africans with military skills, but also contributes to their social upliftment by providing them with skills that they will use in their civilian lives after completing their military service.

Bases

Bases are lower-level structures provided by all the services. Units are generally clustered in or around bases, and share common facilities and services.

Bases exercise administrative control, but not command over attached units.

One Force

"One Force" comprises the regular and reserve-force components of the SANDF. The Regular Force consists of highly trained soldiers to operate and maintain a core capability, as well as sophisticated equipment and defence systems. The Reserve Force is the former part-time component of the SANDF. Members are trained to support the core defence commitment.

Resettlement

The Directorate: Personnel Separation has executed programmes at various levels in terms of HR 2010.

The directorate serves as a nodal point for redeployment and resettlement.

The Department of Defence and Military Veterans established the Personnel Rationalisation Advisory and Coordinating Committee to ensure efficient and cost-effective support programmes for resettling and redeploying the department's members and employees affected by separation.

The directorate has established and implemented the Social Plan, which addresses the re-skilling and psychosocial needs of the department's employees.

Professional multidisciplinary teams execute this support programme. The HR Planning Instruction guides the process of interdepartmental transfers of redeployable members and employees.

Military veterans

The Military Veterans Affairs Act, 1999 (Act 17 of 1999), came into effect on 1 February 2001. The regulations in terms of the Act were approved for promulgation by the then Minister of Defence.

The minister appointed a chairperson and members of the Advisory Board on Military Veterans' Affairs from nominations received from the recognised military veterans' organisations. The President is designated as the Patron-in-Chief of all military veterans in terms of the Act.

In January 2009, the minister announced a new programme addressing the plight of the military veterans as a vulnerable group in the country.

The groundwork was already done in December 2008 during the Veterans Summit. The project enabled veterans to assume their rightful role in promoting their safety and that of fellow citizens.

Facilities, land and environment

Facilities, Land and Environmental Management in the Department of Defence and Military Veterans strives for the efficient management of these entities. The department has adopted the process of base conversion. The focus is on the role and responsibilities of the military process of conversion aimed at assisting role players in closing down and re-using military bases.

The *Military Integrated Training Range Guide* provides military environmental managers with information that will ensure the long-term continuation of environmentally sound management practices. It will also enhance the ability of the defence sector to sustain long-term and cost-effective range operations.

The department continues to demonstrate its responsibility as the custodian of land entrusted to it through active cooperation in government's land redistribution and restitution policies.

Over the past decade, the department has been rationalising its land portfolio and has made one-third (close to a quarter million hectares) of its original estate available for non-military use.

In October 2009, the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) marked 10 years of successful participation in peace-support operations in various war-torn parts of the continent and beyond, since the first deployment in Kampala, Uganda, in the initial stages of the Democratic Republic of Congo's peace process.

The SANDF has placed South Africa among the world's largest contributors to United Nations peacekeeping operations. The SANDF became involved in peace operations with the full understanding that for South Africa to enjoy economic prosperity, there needs to be stability on the continent.

In pursuit of this quest, the SANDF will continue to be deployed to various peacekeeping missions to assist in the resolution of conflict and in strengthening democracy in a number of African states.

The celebration of the 10th anniversary of the SANDF's participation in peace missions coincided with the Southern African Development Community Standby Force's Exercise Golfinho at Lohatlha in the Northern Cape.

National Conventional Arms Control Committee (NCACC)

The National Conventional Arms Control Act, 2002 (Act 41 of 2002), established the NCACC (a committee of ministers of which the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is a member) as a statutory body to ensure compliance with government policies in respect of arms control, and to provide guidelines and criteria to be used when assessing applications for permits.

The NCACC's Policy for the Control of Trade in Conventional Arms was promulgated in January 2004.

National conventional arms-control regulations, published in May 2004, deal with applications for permits and the list of dual-use goods, technologies and munitions that are subject to control. The NCACC oversees policy and sets control mechanisms for the South African arms trade. It also ensures that arms-trade policies conform to internationally accepted practices.

Companies interested in exporting arms have to apply for export permits, after which the Ministry of Defence and Military Veterans processes the applications.

Each application is also sent for scrutiny to the relevant government departments, such as international relations and cooperation or trade and industry.

The application is then referred to the various directors-general for their recommendations, whereafter the NCACC makes the final decision.

An independent inspectorate ensures that all levels of the process are subject to independent scrutiny and supervision, and are conducted in accordance with the policies and guidelines of the NCACC. The inspectorate submits periodic reports to the JSCD.

Public-sector South African defence industry

Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armscor)

Armscor is a statutory body established in terms of the Armaments Development and Production Act, 1968 (Act 57 of 1968), and continues its existence through the Armaments Corporation of South Africa, Limited (Ltd) Act, 2003 (Act 51 of 2003), and the Armaments Corporation of South Africa, Ltd Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 16 of 2005), which came into effect on 8 May 2006

The Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is the Executive Authority responsible for Armscor. The management and control of Armscor reside with a board of directors, while its day-to-day management vests in the hands of the management board.

In executing its functions, Armscor maintains capabilities and technologies that are required to fulfil its mandate. These include appropriate programme-management systems, the Defence Industrial Participation Programme and the management of technology projects and strategic facilities. Armscor acquires defence material for the Department of Defence and Military Veterans and, with the approval of the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans, for any organ of state, public entity or any sovereign state that may require such services.

Armscor renders a quality-assurance capability in support of acquisition and technology projects as well as for any other service required by the Department of Defence and Military Veterans. Armscor provides for a quality-assurance capability in support of acquisition and technology projects as well as for any other service required by the Department of Defence and Military Veterans. To enhance this capability, Armscor is a certified International Organisation for Standardisation 9001:2000.

Armscor is financed mainly by an annual transfer payment from the Department of Defence and Military Veterans, interest received on investments, letting of its buildings, commission from stock sales and income from subsidiaries. The acquisition of arms is transparent and fully accountable. Armscor publishes the monthly *Contracts Bulletin*, which contains all requests for proposals and bids awarded. A daily electronic bulletin is also available to the industry through a secure computer network.

Armscor Business (Pty) Limited

This subsidiary of Armscor offers defence-support services of an exceptional standard to the Department of Defence and Military Veterans. The core of these services includes defence research and development, test and evaluation, disposal of defence material and logistic support services. To fulfil this mandate, Armscor Business is structured into three groups as outlined below.

Defence, Science and Technology Institute

- The Institute for Maritime Technology aims to satisfy strategic needs for technomilitary maritime support, products and services; and to establish applicable technology and systems to further the interests of the SANDF.
- Protechnik Laboratories conducts research, and develops and implements projects in the fields of chemical and biological defence, and the non-proliferation of chemical weapons.
- The Defence Institute assists the defence community in developing informed solutions to decision-making problems over the full lifecycle of defence capabilities.
- Hazmat Protective Systems manufactures and distributes protective equipment such as filter canisters, cartridges and masks, and impregnates activated carbon.
- Ergonomics Technologies is a leading ergonomics consultancy, providing a comprehensive service in ergonomics and occupational health and safety, both locally and internationally. It is an inspection authority in occupational hygiene, approved by the Department of Labour.
- Flamengro, the Fluid and Mechanical Engineering Group, specialises in the numerical stimulation of the dynamic behaviour of fluid flow and structures, and the processing of experimental data to serve as input for improved simulations or to evaluate the accuracy of theoretical predictions.
- Armour Development provides a research and development capability for armour protection and anti-armour attacks.

Test and Evaluation Group

- Gerotek Test Facilities provides specialised services such as testing and evaluating vehicles and vehicle components, researching and developing vehicle-testing technologies and

methods, VHF/UHF and microwave antenna-testing and evaluation, environmental testing, and verifying military products against specification. The Events Division offers restaurant, conference and development facilities, whereas the Training Division offers various driver-training courses.
- Alkantpan offers an all-purpose weapon and ammunition test range for the testing of all kinds of weaponry, ranging in calibre from 20 mm to 155 mm and larger.

Defence Support Group

- Armscor Defence Asset-Management Centre provides decision-making support in the acquisition, operational and phasing-out phases of systems by rendering data and asset-management services.
- Defence Materiel Disposal is the appointed agent of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans to dispose of redundant military defence equipment.
- AB Logistics Freight is a registered and accredited customs-clearing agent with the South African Revenue Service, and a member of the Federation of Freight Forwarders Associations and the South African Association of Freight Forwarders. It also enjoys authority to act as a customs-clearing agent in South Africa. In terms of the Explosives Act, 2003 (Act 15 of 2003), AB Logistics Freight is also a registered explosives transporter, offering this specialised service to the SANDF, Armscor, foreign defence forces and the defence-related industry through its trained personnel and with its own fleet of trucks.

Denel Group of South Africa

Denel (Pty) Ltd is a commercially driven holding company, with equity of varying degrees in several defence and aerospace subsidiaries and associated companies.

With its focus on the military aerospace and landward defence domains, Denel was incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the South African Companies Act, 1973. Its defence capabilities, however, date back more than 70 years when some of Denel's first manufacturing plants were established.

As a state-owned enterprise, Denel reports to the Minister of Public Enterprises. The minister, on behalf of the South African Government as shareholder, appoints an independent board of directors while an executive management team is responsible for the day-to-day management of the company. Denel is managed in accordance with sound business principles and good governance. It conforms to the prescripts of the PFMA, 1999 and other regulatory requirements.

A key objective with Denel's turnaround strategy was to ensure that the business becomes self-sustainable and profitable. Although the restructuring of the group is still underway, some of its businesses already have equity partnerships with major international companies.

While the unbundling of the South African Government's defence company is key to refocusing its business, government considers Denel a strategic asset. It therefore retains a "golden share" in the businesses to protect the country's technological capabilities and ensure their role as key domestic suppliers to the SANDF.

Apart from being original equipment manufacturers in certain product categories, the Denel businesses are also engaged in the overhaul, maintenance, repair, refurbishment and upgrade of the SANDF's defence systems and equipment.

As such, they ensure a greater measure of strategic independence for the country, while providing the SANDF with the cost-effective means to undertake its role in peacekeeping and peace-support missions beyond South Africa's borders.

Denel provides a sustainable technology base to enable the Department of Defence and Military Veterans to acquire systems uniquely suited to African conditions. Denel also makes a significant contribution to South Africa's socioeconomic development and manufacturing base.

Unlike developing countries without an indigenous defence industry, South Africa benefits from Denel's value-add in areas such as skills development. Denel's skill-intensive approach creates an opportunity for an applied scientific and engineering base.

Through a range of high-end skills-development programmes, Denel aims to retain engineers, technicians and scientists for the industry. These programmes include:

- Denel Centre for Learning and Development, offering business and marketing training alongside its artisan and technician training
- Denel Youth Foundation Training Programme with its focus on upgrading Mathematics and Science skills of young learners
- engineering bursary schemes and internships
- school-outreach programmes to entice the youth to high-technology careers found in Denel.

Through the years, Denel has created substantial intellectual property that has been cross-leveraged

in other industries such as telecommunications, energy and mining.

International benchmarks have shown the defence industry to remain the prime technology incubator for industry at large with an added employment multiplier ratio of 6:1 (jobs for each engineer employed).

Denel's core businesses and subsidiaries

Denel's businesses and subsidiaries consist of:

- Denel Aviation
- Denel Dynamics
- Denel Integrated Systems Solutions
- Denel-Saab Aerostructures (Pty) Ltd
- Denel Land Systems (DLS)
- Denel Pretoria Metal Pressings
- Mechem (Pty) Ltd
- Overberg Test Range (OTB).

Associated companies include:

- Carl Zeiss Optronics (Pty) Ltd
- Rheinmetall Denel Munition (Pty) Ltd
- Turbomeca Africa (Pty) Ltd.

Intelligence services

There are two civilian intelligence structures, namely the National Intelligence Agency (NIA) and the South African Secret Service (SASS).

The intelligence community provides evaluated information to:

- safeguard the Constitution
- promote the interrelated elements of security, stability, cooperation and development, both within South Africa and in relation to southern Africa
- uphold the individual rights enshrined in the Bill of Rights contained in the Constitution
- promote South Africa's ability to face foreign threats and enhance its competitiveness in a dynamic world.

National Intelligence Agency

The National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994), defines the primary functions of the NIA as being to gather, correlate, evaluate and analyse domestic intelligence to:

- identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- supply intelligence regarding any such threat to the National Intelligence Coordinating Committee (Nicoc)
- gather departmental intelligence at the request of any interested department of state, and transmit such intelligence that constitutes departmental intelligence to the relevant department without delay
- fulfil the national counter-intelligence responsibility and, for this purpose, conduct and coordinate counter-intelligence to gather, correlate, evaluate, analyse and interpret information to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- inform the President of any such threat
- supply (where necessary) intelligence relating to any such threat to the SAPS for the purposes of investigating any offence or alleged offence.

South African Secret Service

Section 2(2) of the National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994, as amended, stipulates the role of the SASS as being to:

- gather, correlate, evaluate and analyse foreign intelligence, excluding foreign military intelligence, to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- supply intelligence relating to national strategic intelligence to Nicoc
- gather departmental intelligence at the request of any interested department of state and, without delay, to evaluate and transmit such intelligence and any other intelligence at the disposal of the service and which constitutes departmental intelligence to the department concerned and to Nicoc.

Intelligence oversight

Joint Standing Committee on Intelligence (JSCI)

Integral to the *White Paper on Intelligence*, drafted in 1994, was the establishment of legislative oversight mechanisms. The JSCI is a parliamentary oversight body comprising members of the six largest political parties. Selection to the committee is based on proportional representation decided on by the percentage of votes received in the last national election.

The JSCI hears complaints from the public, scrutinises the finances and operations of the services, and reports to Parliament on these.

Parliamentary members serving on the JSCI take an oath of secrecy and undergo security screening to ensure that they do not compromise the work of the services in the course of performing their duties.

Inspector-General

The President appoints the Inspector-General after two thirds of the members of the National Assembly give their approval.

The Inspector-General monitors compliance with the Constitution, laws and policies of the country. The Office of the Inspector-General reports to the Minister of Intelligence Services.

The office reviews the activities of the services, receives and investigates complaints from the general public and the JSCI, or is tasked by the Minister of Intelligence Services.

Other civilian intelligence structures

Office of Interception Centre (OIC)

The OIC was established in July 2006 in line with the Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communications-Related Information Act, 2002 (Act 70 of 2002), which was implemented in 2005. Oversight and control of this centre reside with the Minister of Intelligence Services, the JSCI and the Inspector-General. The office provides a service to all law-enforcement agencies, alleviating duplication, pooling resources and limiting abuse of this instrument.

South African National Academy of Intelligence (Sanai)

Sanai plays a central role in providing quality training to members of the intelligence services.

Training at Sanai, which was established in February 2003, is geared towards producing officers who understand the political and security realms of South Africa and Africa. The academy comprises the Academic Faculty, the Intelligence Research Institute and the Education, Training and Development Support component. Located in Mafikeng, North West, the Sanai campus is named after the late Mzwandile Piliso, a veteran intelligence officer who played an important role in establishing a non-statutory intelligence body that served the liberation movement.

Intelligence Services Council (ISC)

The work of the ISC on conditions of service, established in terms of the Intelligence Services Act, 2002 (Act 65 of 2002), is dedicated to optimalising human resources.

The council conducts continuous research towards developing effective and competitive working conditions for members as they are recruited and receive multiskill training and development, commensurate benefits, career options and eventually retirement benefits.

Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd (Comsec)

Prior to the establishment of Comsec, procurement and provision of this service was fragmented in government. The establishment of the company is a move towards greater coordination, integration, alignment and the maintenance of communications security.

Comsec was established as a private company in February 2003 to ensure that critical electronic communications of government and related organs are protected and secured. Comsec's functions include securing government communications against unauthorised access and technical, electronic or any other related threats. The company will, in concurrence with the NIA, provide verification services for electronic communications security systems, products and services used by the State. Comsec strives for greater coordination, integration, alignment and the maintenance of communications security. Research to improve products and services and training is another key function of Comsec.

National Communications Centre (NCC)

The functions of the NCC are directed at the integration and coordination of signals and interception activities of all government departments in South Africa. The NCC serves as an advisory structure to the Minister of Intelligence Services on matters related to signals-intelligence procurement, management and direction. This includes areas such as the Signals Intelligence Evaluation Centre and the OIC. The centre will regulate the applications and authorisation for interceptions and monitor all interception of communications to avoid duplication and possible mismanagement of resources.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Denel
Development Indicators, 2009
Estimates of National Expenditure 2009, published by National Treasury
Secretariat for Safety and Security
South African National Defence Force
South African Police Service (SAPS)
SAPS Annual Report 2008/09
www.gov.za
www.nia.gov.za
www.sapa.org.za
www.sass.gov.za
www.intelligence.gov.za
www.dod.mil.za
www.secdef.mil.za
www.cdpsp.mil.za
www.dfac.mil.za
www.army.mil.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za

Suggested reading

Altbeker, A. 2007. *A Country at War with Itself: South Africa's Crisis of Crime.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.

Bothma, LJ. 2008. *Buffalo Battalion: South Africa's 32 Battalion: A Tale of Sacrifice.* Bloemfontein: LJ Bothma.

Burger, J. 2007. *Strategic Perspectives on Crime and Punishment in South Africa.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Buur, L, Jensen, S and Stepputat, F (eds). 2007. *Security Development NEXUS: Expressions of Sovereignty and Securitisation in Southern Africa.* Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council Press.

Crawford-Browne, T. 2007. *Eye on the Money: One Man's Crusade Against Corruption.* Roggebaai: Umuzi.

Du Plessis, M and Ford, J (eds). 2008. *Unable or Unwilling: Case Studies on Domestic Implementation of the ICC Statute in Selected African Countries.* Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.

Diedericks, A. 2007. *Journey Without Boundaries: The Operational Life and Experiences of a SA Special Forces Small Team Operator.* Durban: Just Done Publications.

Geldenhuys, J. 2009. *At the Front: A General's Account of South Africa's Border War.* Jeppestown: Jonathan Ball.

Gumedze, S (ed). 2007. *Private Security in Africa: Manifestation, Challenges and Regulation.* Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.

Holden, P. 2008. *The Arms Deal in Your Pocket.* Jeppestown: Jonathan Ball.

Irish-Qobosheane, J. 2007. *Gentlemen or Villains, Thugs or Heroes: The Social Economy of Organised Crime in South Africa.* Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs.

Kirsten, A. 2008. *A Nation Without Guns: The Story of Gun Free South Africa.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

Lord, D. 2008. *From Fledgling to Eagle: The South African Airforce During the Border War.* Johannesburg: 30 Degrees South.

Okamu, W and Botha, A (eds). 2007. *Understanding Terrorism in Africa: In Search for an African Voice.* Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.

Robbins, D. 2007. *On the Bridge of Goodbye: The Story of South Africa's Discarded San Soldiers.* Johannesburg: Jonanthan Ball.

Singh, A-M. 2008. *Policing and Crime Control in Post-Apartheid South Africa.* Aldershot, UK: Ashgate.

Van der Walt, N. 2008. *To the Bush and Back: A Story About the Last Phase of the South African Border War as Experienced by a Junior Officer of 32-Battalion.* Pretoria: N Van Der Walt.

Webb, S. 2008. *OPS Medic: A National Serviceman's Border War.* Alberton: Galago.

Williams, D. 2008. *On the Border: The White South African Military Experience, 1965 – 1990.* Cape Town: Tafelberg.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

In 2009, the Department of Land Affairs became the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform.

Rural development, food security and land reform

Rural development, food security and land reform have now been incorporated into the Medium Term Strategic Framework, which sets policy priorities for the next five years and beyond. While these priorities cut across all activities within the agricultural economy, land reform and food security are now receiving a higher level of priority.

In the next five years, systems and processes will be put in place to ensure that rural areas become vibrant places worth living in and that land reform facilitates the development of the rural economies through transformation of agriculture, forestry and fisheries to ensure food security, competition and the elimination of abject poverty.

The five-year strategic plan for the new Government's term of office (2009 – 2014) will be influenced by its new mandate and key objective and strategic goals.

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform's key objective is the achievement of vibrant and sustainable rural communities. The overall outcome has to be social cohesion and development, meaning shared growth and development, full employment, equity and cultural progress. The following strategic goals or enablers will be pursued in the quest for vibrant and sustainable rural communities:

- establishing business initiatives, agro-industries, cooperatives, cultural initiatives and vibrant local markets in rural settings
- empowering rural people and communities, especially women and the youth, through facilitating and mediating strong organisational and institutional capabilities and abilities to take full charge of their collective destiny
- training rural people in technical skills, combining them with indigenous know-how and knowledge, to mitigate community vulnerability to, especially, climate change, soil erosion, drought, snow, animal diseases, flooding, tornadoes, other natural disasters and emergencies and hunger and food insecurity
- revitalising and revamping old, and creating new, economic, social and information communications infrastructure and public amenities and facilities in villages and small rural towns.

The focus of the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform is the creation of a rural development intervention that uses land and agricultural development as a solid foundation for food security and self-sufficiency, and providing enhanced land rights to all citizens of South Africa, with particular emphasis on previously disadvantaged individuals. This will result in increased income levels and job opportunities, productive land use and well-planned human settlements.

Comprehensive Rural Development Programme

The Comprehensive Rural Development Programme is a national collective strategy to fight poverty, hunger, unemployment and lack of development in rural areas. It was launched in August 2009 by President Jacob Zuma at Muyexe Village, Limpopo.

A number of interventions are in the pipeline. Government has pledged over R2,6 billion in conditional grants to provinces over the medium term. This will be used for agricultural infrastructure, training, advisory services and marketing, and for upgrading agricultural colleges. One of the priorities is to ensure that land reform, through redistribution and restitution, is more coherently linked to the creation of livelihoods for the poor.

Government will investigate less costly alternative ways of land acquisition, by engaging with all stakeholders within the sector.

A critical part of the Rural Development Programme is to stimulate agricultural production to contribute to food security. Government will support the provision of agricultural implements and input to support emerging farmers and households nationally, also making agricultural loans accessible and ensuring agricultural extension services of a high quality.

Over the medium term, the aim is to bring about a measurable increase in agricultural output. Therefore, the Ilima/Letsema Campaign that aims to enhance household food security will be intensified. To promote food security, government will also work to protect valuable agricultural land from encroachment by other developments.

Departments that are responsible for the delivery of these services will develop spatially targeted strategies to respond to the diverse needs of rural areas.

Improving rural service delivery will ensure that South Africa meets the development targets for 2014, which are linked to the millennium development goals.

Government will also intensify the implementation of the Rural Transport Development Programme. The objective is to promote rural transport infrastructure and services. Transport is critical for enhanced socio-economic activity and, broadly, a better quality of life.

Rural further education and training colleges have to be strengthened and equipped to address a range of relevant rural development skills challenges.

As part of the Rural Development Programme, government will also support initiatives that promote other forms of economic potential, including tourism, light manufacturing and cultural work. Various cultural activities such as traditional music, arts, crafts and sports can be useful income-generating activities in rural areas and should be harnessed.

The Comprehensive Rural Development Programme is also expected to create job opportunities so that every household will have at least one person employed over the two-year piloting period.

This will apply equally to all rural areas where the project is being implemented. In this period of two years, those contracted in the created job opportunities will be provided with training. There will be an exit strategy, implemented six months before the two-year contract ends.

This will ensure that participants in the programme will be able to get jobs or start a business enterprise to sustain themselves when the contract ends. The indicator of the measure of the success of the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme will, among other things, be the level of social cohesion and development facilitated in rural areas.

The extent to which rural communities have the infrastructure found in urban areas as well as possibilities of income-generating activities, will also be a performance indicator.

The programme is expected to ensure the delivery of clean water, decent shelter, proper sanitation and enterprise-development support. The department's collective developmental interventions will initially focus on meeting people's basic needs, especially food security.

The next step is the entrepreneurial stage and large-scale infrastructure development. The intervention will finally culminate in the emergence of small, medium and micro-enterprises and village markets.

Although land and agrarian reform forms the nucleus of the successful implementation of rural development, it is important to note the crucial contribution of other government programmes towards rural development.

Land reform

South Africa's land reform is premised on three programmes: Land Tenure Reform, Redistribution and Restitution. While the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform implements land tenure reform and redistribution, the Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights (CRLR) implements the Land Restitution Programme.

By October 2009, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform was undergoing restructuring. At the time, it consisted of four branches, namely Land and Tenure Reform (LTR); Restitution; Land Planning and Information (LPI); and Corporate Services.

Branch: Land and Tenure Reform

The Branch: LTR is responsible for implementing redistribution, tenure reform and state-land administration and disposal. Its components are the Chief Directorate: Strategic Management and Technical Support Services and the Chief Directorate: Land Reform Implementation Management and Coordination (LRIMC).

The Chief Directorate: Strategic Management and Technical Support Services consists of the Public Land Support Services, Tenure Reform Implementation Systems and the Redistribution Implementation Systems. This chief directorate is responsible for developing and refining legislation, systems and procedures to enable provincial land-reform offices (PLROs) to deliver land at

In April 2009, the then Department of Land Affairs handed land back to the Seventh-Day Adventist Church and the Uniting Reformed Church in the Buffalo City municipal area in East London, in the Eastern Cape.

A total of 7 110 m^2 of land was purchased for the claimant to the total value of R546 600. The title deed and financial redress were handed over to about 500 congregants who were forcefully removed from their land during apartheid.

The Seventh-Day Adventist Church and the Uniting Reformed Church are two churches that opted for alternative land as a form of redress, out of the 23 churches that lodged claims with the Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights.

scale. It also supports PLROs in the areas of capacity-building, information management and communication. The Chief Directorate: LRIMC is responsible for coordinating the actual implementation of the land- and tenure-reform programme and manages state land at provincial level through the PLROs, and at district level through the district land-reform offices.

Land-reform implementation

The aim of land reform is to redistribute 30% of white-owned commercial agricultural land by 2014. To achieve this, 3% has to be redistributed every year. The branch delivered a total of 443 600, 4886 ha for the 2008/09 financial year. In total, 500 projects were approved and implemented with 14 457 individuals benefiting from them.

In line with the objective of increasing the pace of land delivery, an implementation framework for the Pro-Active Land Acquisition Strategy (PLAS) was developed. Land acquired through PLAS for the financial year 2008/09 totalled 226 986,1940 ha, which had been registered in the name of the State. In certain instances, the State provides access to land by means of lease or caretakership agreements, until land is transferred permanently to suitable beneficiaries.

Plans for the disposal of land to potential beneficiaries are being finalised. Land will be disposed or transferred to beneficiaries in terms of the provisions of the Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development (LRAD) Grant, the Settlement and Production Land Acquisition (SPLA) Grant and the Commonage Grant.

Land acquired through the LRAD, Commonage and SPLA grants for 2008/09 totalled 216 614,2946 ha.

The LRAD provides grants to black South African citizens to access land for agricultural purposes. The LRAD encourages applicants to design what works best for them. Beneficiaries can access a range of grants between R111 152 and R430 857, depending on the amount of their own contribution in kind, labour and or cash. Beneficiaries must provide a contribution of at least R13 000. The grant and beneficiaries own contribution are calculated per individual (18 years and older). If people choose to apply as a group, the required contribution and the total grant are both scaled up by the number of individuals represented in the group. The approval of the grant is based on the viability of the proposed project, which takes into account total project costs and projected profitability.

The LRAD Grant is flexible and accommodates different types of projects, which include, but is not limited to the following:

- food safety-net projects: grant acquired for food crop and/or livestock production to improve household food security
- equity schemes: grant acquired to receive equity in an agricultural enterprise
- production for markets: grant acquired to engage in commercial agriculture.

Vesting and disposal of state land

One of the strategic objectives of the Branch: LTR is to ensure that efficient state-land management is provided, which supports land reform and rural development. This objective is a focus area of the Directorate: Public Land-Support Services (PLSS).

Guidelines and policies on various aspects of state-land management, technical assistance and legal advice and the necessary databases and electronic systems are provided by this directorate. Implementation of the constitutional requirement for the confirmation of vesting of ownership of state land (either in the name of national government or a provincial government), via the issue of certificates for land that was registered as state land on 27 April 1994, is of utmost importance and can facilitate development.

The department, in collaboration with the Department of Public Works and provincial departments, is focusing on expediting the issuing of these certificates. At the end of April 2009, some 29,9% of surveyed state land had been confirmed vested, leaving a challenge to cover the remaining 70,1%.

The Directorate: PLSS facilitates the survey of state land. The nine provincial state-land disposal committees are clearing houses where vesting recommendations are made. A more streamlined process for vesting was approved, whereby the Director-General will be authorised as a competent authority to sign such certificates. The former Minister of Land Affairs was the only competent authority prior to this authorisation. An electronic

In April 2009, the former Minister of Agriculture and Land Affairs, Ms Lulama Xingwana, handed over 2 740,9316 ha of land to the KwaDube community in the Ilembe District Municipality, in KwaZulu-Natal, at a cost of more than R754 million to the State. A total of 687 households and 4 206 individuals from the community benefited from the settlement of the KwaDube community claim.

tracking system to track submissions for vesting and disposal was also implemented in April 2009.

A strategy to manage and expedite the intergovernmental vesting programme was being compiled in collaboration with other custodians and users of state land. The Directorate: PLSS supports this programme with technical assistance, information, guidelines, systems and training. The strategy was expected to be completed in 2009/10. The disposal of state land to beneficiaries is also a focus area and is supported by policies and guidelines.

An important focus when referring to state land is system development and land information, namely to:

- obtain, maintain and develop systems and products aligned with the cadastre and other spatial information
- facilitate effective state-land administration
- make public land data (including state land data) available to government departments, local governments and other clients
- gather and maintain relevant information on public land.

A database is maintained, consisting of about two million records on public land alone, which includes data on more than 260 000 state land properties.

The State Land Lease Debtor System was approved and implemented to promote the proper management of leases, other agreements and the collection of lease rentals on state land under the department's control.

The production of various maps in a broad range of information applications is also done by PLSS. Legal advice and assistance are provided to PLSS clients in collaboration with the Legal Services Directorate of the department, where required.

The department has finalised the audit of state land, which consisted of 280 000 land parcels totalling 23 million ha.

This exercise was key in ensuring that there is efficient public land administration.

The former Department of Land Affairs achieved a milestone in advancing the implementation of its Disability Strategy by producing the first-ever Braille atlas of maps in Africa. It was launched in March 2009 at Philadelphia Secondary School in Soshanguve, Gauteng.

At a land hand-over ceremony in June 2009, 172 households from the Riemvasmaak community in the Northern Cape received title deeds in respect of 46 595 ha of commercial agricultural land comprising several properties in the area.

The return of the land to the Riemvasmaak community has been planned to coincide with the 96th anniversary of the infamous Natives Land Act, 1913, promulgated by the apartheid government, and resulting in the forceful removals of a large number of black people in South Africa.

A total amount of R70 million was approved by the State as part of this second phase of the settlement of the Riemvasmaak community claim.

Branch: Land Planning and Information

The Branch: LPI is responsible for:

- the surveying, mapping and registration of land
- providing planning and spatial information services
- redressing apartheid settlement patterns
- overseeing the national land-use management system
- regulating the planning profession
- establishing and maintaining the national spatial data infrastructure
- providing environment-related services.

Surveys and mapping

The Chief Directorate: Surveys and Mapping is the national geodetic surveying and mapping organisation of the country. It is responsible for the national map series, as well as for providing the survey control network, which enables all surveys in South Africa to be spatially uniquely connected.

Surveys and Mapping provides national mapping, aerial photography and other imagery, integrated spatial reference frameworks and other geospatial information in support of the national infrastructure and sustainable development programmes of government. It also provides professional and technical services in support of land reform and other public services.

This chief directorate provides infrastructure (a survey-control network) to define any position on the Earth in terms of mathematical coordinates.

Professional land surveyors in private practice base their surveys of land and real rights on this control network and in relation to other existing land rights.

The National Mapping Agency provides maps in useful formats to show what exists on the ground.

Spatial planning

The Chief Directorate: Spatial Planning:

- provides policy so that government can control planning
- defines how the country should be planned
- provides spatial information to organisations.

Cadastral surveys

The Chief Directorate: Cadastral Surveys Management defines land rights in terms of where the right is and ensures that the boundaries of such rights are secure. The six surveyors-general offices in South Africa are in Pretoria, Nelspruit, Polokwane, Pietermaritzburg, Cape Town and Bloemfontein.

The chief directorate consists of four pillars:

- private-sector professional land surveyors
- surveyors-general
- private-sector conveyancers
- the registrars of deeds.

The surveyors-general support cadastral surveys through the adjudication of every cadastral survey performed by the professional land surveyors in private practice to ensure that they comply with all legislation (Land Survey Act, 1997 [Act 8 of 1997], and the Sectional Titles Act, 1986 [Act 95 of 1986]) and can be registered by the Registrar of Deeds. Surveyors-general also provide a repository for all documents (general and sectional plans and diagrams) that identify the position of immovable property rights lawfully created.

Conveyancers register cadastral documents approved by the Surveyor-General and lodge them with the registrars of deeds to register ownership. The registrars of deeds also provide a repository of all title deeds registered and transferred.

All the information emanating from these functions is available as hard-copy maps as well as in digital format.

Deeds registration

The 10 deeds registries are located in Pretoria, Cape Town, Johannesburg, Pietermaritzburg, Bloemfontein, Kimberley, King William's Town, Vryburg, Mthatha and Nelspruit. These offices register deeds and documents relating to real rights in more than eight million registered land parcels consisting of township erven, farms, agricultural holdings, sectional title units and sectional title exclusive-use areas in terms of the Deeds Registries Act, 1937 (Act 47 of 1937), and the Sectional Titles Act, 1986.

To take deeds-registry services to the people, the department aims to establish a deeds registry in every province. This project entails establishing a deeds registry in Polokwane, Limpopo.

The Deeds Registry is open to any member of the public to access information with regard to the following:

- the registered owner of a property
- the conditions affecting such property
- interdicts and contracts in respect of the property
- purchase price of the property
- rules of a sectional title scheme
- a copy of an antenuptial contract, deeds of servitude and mortgage bonds
- a copy of a sectional title plan
- township-establishment conditions
- information relating to a property or deed.

Branch: Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights

The CRLR is a statutory body set up in terms of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994), as amended. The role of the commission is to provide redress to victims of dispossession of rights in land, as a result of racially discriminatory laws and practices that took place after 19 June 1913.

The commission is led by the Chief Land Claims Commissioner and has nine regional offices headed by regional land claims commissioners.

Since its establishment in 1994, the CRLR has settled 75 400 out of 79 696 land claims lodged, at a cost of R20 billion. It is expected that all outstanding claims could be settled by 2011.

Policy and legislation development

The Policy and Legislation Development Unit is responsible for the drafting, reviewing and assessing of policy guidelines aimed at amplifying the core objectives of the department. The unit is further responsible for the drafting of departmental legislation (including subordinate legislation) and the analysis of other legislation that may have an impact on departmental functions. The unit has built on a number of lessons emerging from various internal and external reviews and the ongoing implementation of land-reform programmes.

In respect of the regulation of the ownership of land by foreigners, the unit has done extensive research and consultation, which culminated in the drafting of a policy framework and Bill. On

request of the executive, further consultation is taking place and it was envisaged that the policy and Bill would be finalised in the 2009/10 financial year.

A third draft of the *Willing Buyer-Willing Seller Review* has also been completed. However, further work on the compensation formula linked to the expropriation model was expected to be finalised in 2009/10.

The unit also assisted in the finalisation of the Provision of Land and Assistance Amendment Bill. This Bill was approved by Parliament and promulgated as the Provision of Land and Assistance Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 58 of 2008).

Despite the capacity constraints faced by the unit, work on the classification and collation of submissions received on the draft regulations under the Communal Land Rights Act, 2004 (Act 11 of 2004), and the interrogation and evaluation of such comments were all completed in 2008/09.

Acknowledgements

Department of Rural Development and Land Reform
www.info.gov.za
Pretoria News

Suggested reading

Atkinson, D. 2007. *Going for Broke: The Fate of Farm Workers in Arid South Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press.

Binswanger-Mkhize, HP, Bourguignon, C and Van den Brink, R (eds). 2009. *Agricultural Land Redistribution: Toward Greater Consensus*. Washington, DC: World Bank.

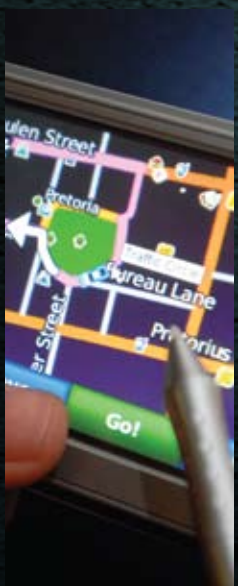
Hall, R (ed). 2009. *Another Countryside? Policy Options for Land and Agrarian Reform in South Africa*. Bellville: School of Government, University of the Western Cape.

James, D. 2007. *Gaining Ground? "Rights" and "Property" in South African Land Reform*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Ntsebeza, L and Hall, R. eds. 2007. *The Land Question in South Africa: The Challenge of Transformation and Redistribution*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY



South Africa's scientists and infrastructure are world-class and the country is rapidly positioning itself among the global leaders in innovation, science and technology (S&T).

The aim of the Department of Science and Technology is to realise the full potential of S&T in social and economic development, through development of human resources (HR), research and innovation.

Policy framework

The framework for the work of S&T in South Africa was set in 1996 in the *White Paper on Science and Technology*, which established the concept of the National System of Innovation (NSI) and the need to harness S&T to contribute to economic growth, environmental sustainability and an improved quality of life.

The ideas of the White Paper were taken further in the 2002 National Research and Development Strategy (NRDS), which rests on the pillars of innovation to achieve mastery of technological change in the economy and society; human-capital development and transformation to increase investment in South Africa's science base; and alignment of the Government's S&T system to make it more effective.

It called, among other things, for a substantial increase in national expenditure on research and development (R&D), which in 1994 was a mere 0,7% of gross domestic product (GDP).

Expenditure on research and development

The Department of Science and Technology had been given the task of developing the National S&T Expenditure Plan to provide a coherent approach to government's S&T investment.

Over the past five years, government has improved funding to S&T and innovation. The budget has grown from R2 billion in 2005/06 to R5,1 billion projected for 2011/12. In the 2009/10 financial year, the budget was R4,2 billion.

Moreover, in 2006, South Africa's gross expenditure on R&D was more than R16,5 billion.

Although this is close to the target of 1% of GDP, the investment is modest, and it is time the target is increased beyond the 1% of GDP funding for research.

To encourage private-sector investment in R&D, the R&D Tax Incentive Programme was introduced, giving a 150% deduction on eligible activities, and an accelerated depreciation allowance on assets used for R&D over three years, at a rate of 50:30:20.

While the South Africa's Revenue Service administers the R&D tax incentives, the Department of Science and Technology collects information on the programme to evaluate its effectiveness.

As uptake increases, more detailed statistics will become available. Annual national surveys on R&D are carried out to measure the country's progress in S&T and innovation.

These give information on expenditure in R&D by major research field and type of research, as well as on the number of full-time equivalent researchers in the country, and their demographic make-up.

Human-capital development

In the 2008/09 budget, some R195 million was set aside to strengthen the scientific capacity of higher education (HE) institutions, which includes increasing the number of research chairs by creating and filling 210 new research chairs by 2010, under the South African Research Chairs Initiative.

Over the medium term, about R323 million had been allocated to the development and renewal of science, engineering and technology (SET) human capital. This would include strengthening programmes such as the Research Professional Development Programme, which targets young students doing senior SET degrees, the Postdoctoral Fellowship Programme and the Centres of Excellence Programme.

This investment is in line with the NRDS, which places enormous value on human-capital and skills development, as South Africa's HR for SET are not being increased and renewed at the rate required to keep the country competitive in an increasingly knowledge-based global economy.

In 2009, the Department of Science and Technology was committing R150 million over three years for new research chairs. By December 2008, 72 research chairs had been awarded in key areas aligned to the national priorities, and a total of 374 postgraduate students had been supported through supervision or mentorship.

In 2009, 10 more research chairs were awarded, bringing the total to 82.

One of South Africa's most important initiatives to address this problem is the Youth into Science Strategy. Among other projects, it develops and distributes information about careers in SET, nurtures young people with talent and potential through Science and Mathematics camps and olympiads (particularly those from disadvantaged backgrounds) and equips Science and Mathematics teachers with the skills they need through an educator support programme.

The Women in Science Awards encourage women to enter and remain in SET careers.

The country's National Research Foundation (NRF) has established several centres of excellence to take the lead in their respective disciplines (biomedical tuberculosis [TB] research, birds as key to biodiversity conservation, invasion biology, tree-health biotechnology, catalysis, strong materials, and epidemiological modelling and analysis).

They work at the cutting edge of research and collaborate with top researchers and leading laboratories all over the world, producing substantial research output and providing excellent training and support for postgraduate students and future researchers.

Other centres of excellence are planned, including one for indigenous knowledge systems (IKS).

Indigenous knowledge systems

The importance of identifying and protecting indigenous knowledge is receiving increasing attention from policy-makers the world over.

South Africa's IKS policy was approved by Cabinet in 2004, and in 2006 the national IKS Office was established to foster a better understanding of the interface between culture and S&T, as well as between indigenous and Western knowledge systems. The Ministerial Advisory Committee for IKS was established.

Government is planning to develop IKS databases, including a multimedia recordal system, following an audit of those residing at various institutions.

The first IKS Research Chair on Traditional Medicine, based at the Nelson Mandela School of Medicine in the Eastern Cape, is expected to lead the production of knowledge on traditional medicines that could result in the development of health products to cure diseases.

The development of the Bachelor of IKS qualification started in 2006 and was completed in 2008. The qualification was developed in collaboration with the North West University, University of Limpopo and Venda University.

The South African Qualifications Authority (Saqa) guided the Department of Science and Technology and its partners throughout the process of developing the qualification until it was registered with Saqa in November 2008.

It is a four-year professional degree with six main streams covering indigenous knowledge development and management, public health and medicine, food technology, socio-ecological studies, law and African technological innovations.

The Department of Science and Technology is in the process of marketing the qualification while at the same time developing unit standards for the courses under each stream. The honours and masters qualifications were developed and submitted to Saqa in June 2009 and the outcome was expected to be submitted to the Department of Science and Technology in November 2009.

Plans are underway to use the North West University as a pilot as of 2010, since the Mafikeng Campus has an established IKS within the Department of Arts and Culture. Lessons learnt from the pilot will be used to implement the qualification in other universities throughout the country from 2011.

Ten-Year Innovation Plan

In 2008, Cabinet approved the 10-Year Innovation Plan for South Africa, intended to provide strategic leadership and direction for S&T in pursuit of national socio-economic goals. It aims to bridge the innovation chasm, ensuring that knowledge generated by research is developed into marketable products and services.

The plan focuses on the following five "grand challenges":

- Farmer to Pharma (aimed at strengthening the bio-economy and making South Africa a world leader in biotechnology and pharmaceuticals, using the nation's indigenous resources)
- Space S&T (making South Africa a key contributor to global space S&T with the National Space Agency, a growing satellite industry, and a range of innovations in space sciences, Earth observation, communications, navigation and engineering)
- Energy Security (ensuring a safe, clean, affordable and reliable energy supply for South Africa)
- Global Change Science (using South Africa's geographic position to play a leading role in climate-change science)
- Human and Social Dynamics (contributing to a better global understanding of shifting social dynamics, and the role of science in social dynamics).

Legislation

Parliament has approved several laws, including the Intellectual Property Rights from Publicly Financed Research and Development (IPR) Act, 2008 (Act 51 of 2008), and the South African National Space Agency Act, 2008 (Act 36 of 2008).

The National Space Agency Act, 2008 provides for the establishment of a national space agency, in line with the space S&T challenge, while the IPR Act, 2008 promotes the protection and commercialisation of intellectual property derived from publicly financed R&D for the benefit of all South Africans.

It establishes the National Intellectual Property Management Office and provides for the establishment of offices of technology transfer at institutions.

The Technology Innovation Agency (TIA) Act, 2008 (Act 26 of 2008), provides for the establishment of the TIA to help stimulate scientific innovation in the country.

Science bodies

These include the:

- TIA
- Innovation Fund (IF)
- National Advisory Council on Innovation (Naci).

Technology Innovation Agency

The TIA was launched in 2009 and is intended to enhance the country's capacity to translate local R&D outcomes into commercialisable products and services.

This should result in the establishment of new high-tech companies, a wider tax base, the creation of new jobs, advanced technological solutions for socio-economic problems, exports of high value-added products, and a diversified export portfolio, moving away from dependency on natural resources.

This will be achieved by providing financial and non-financial support during the applied research and technology stages of the innovation value chain, sourcing foreign and domestic funding opportunities and facilitating strategic partnerships between HE and public research institutions, industry and relevant government players.

The agency aims to take over some of the budget and functions of existing programmes, such as the IF; Tshumisano; the Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy (AMTS); the Advanced Metals Initiative; the Hydrogen and Fuel Cell Research, Development and Innovation Strategy of South Africa; as well as the National Biotechnology Strategy (NBS).

Innovation Fund

The IF, managed by the NRF, promotes technological innovation through investments into novel technologies that will lead to established successful companies or the expansion of industrial sectors.

It has a series of investment instruments, structured to fund end-stage R&D, commercialisation, start-up companies and intellectual-property management. Between 1999 and 2009, the IF invested R1,2 billion in 270 projects.

These are specifically tailored to foster the pursuit of high-risk technologies by business entities, and by creating partnerships that draw on technical expertise in the public research enterprise.

The incentive to the business partners is the equal sharing of the R&D costs of the market-oriented research agenda.

The fund provides funding to near-market and end-stage research, which produces new intellectual property and commercial enterprises, and expands existing industrial sectors.

Of the fund's more recent projects, three contributed to protecting the ecosystem, reducing greenhouse-gas emissions (GHGs), and improving South Africa's global competitiveness. The first of the projects, the Industrial Plant Simulator, aimed to reduce the level of GHGs released into the atmosphere by making electricity power stations more efficient.

In March 2009, the Department of Science and Technology launched the National Space Policy Initiative. South Africa is increasingly reliant on space-based services for communications, broadcasting, navigation and Earth observation. The country is also emerging as a regional hub of space science and technology (S&T).

The Government Lead Users Group was established to compile a user-requirements document for government applications of space S&T. This document will highlight the uses of space technology among various government departments, thereby allowing potential synergies to be identified and potential duplication of effort and/or costs to be avoided. The work of the Government Lead Users Group is to be complemented by a document under development by the National Working Group on Space S&T, which will provide an analysis of the benefits of improved co-ordination in the South African space arena. These two discussion documents will be supplemented by the results of a survey of the South African space arena, which was conducted in early 2009.

The second project was the Aircraft Laser Paint-Stripping Project, which used laser technology to reduce the amount of environmentally harmful chemicals used in paint stripping.

The third project was an investment into the development of the Joule, South Africa's first fully battery-operated multipurpose vehicle, by Optimal Energy, a company based in Cape Town. This will reduce GHGs, even when using coal-generated electricity.

Adept, a South African engineering company based in Cape Town, designed and built a sports aircraft, the Ravin 500. This is the first African-designed aircraft using an African-designed engine. The engine design is state-of-the-art with regard to internal combustion-engine technology, using the most advanced material and techniques (including electronic components) and is environment-friendly, with excellent fuel efficiency. The engine is not just suitable for new designs, but can also be fitted in existing aircraft.

Another R&D project consortium has led to the development of a process to manufacture thin film solar modules based on technology that uses elements that are alternative to the silicon-based modules.

In 2009, the solution developed was then the most efficient thin-film technology for the production of solar modules. Johanna Solar Technology, an international company located in Germany, has been established to manufacture these modules.

The successful establishment of a solar-panel industry, driven by local expertise, will offer tremendous potential for addressing the economic and social challenges that South Africa faces.

HE students, particularly first-degree engineering students, can take advantage of the IF by developing projects resulting in the creation of new intellectual property or the establishment and/or expansion of commercial enterprises, as part of their final-year work.

The annual Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy (AMTS) Symposium was held in September 2009.

The purpose of the symposium was to:

- create an information-sharing opportunity for the AMTS stakeholders
- highlight the impact of the AMTS
- report on the progress of technical and human-capital development projects
- present project progress and successes to the AMTS network and encourage cooperation and learning.

The AMTS develops critical competencies aimed at strengthening the technological base and competitiveness of the South African manufacturing sector. It has delivered some 25 world-class projects, valued at more than R140 million.

These include:

- a project to develop panels for aircraft interiors using natural fibres
- developing capabilities to produce high-quality casting from titanium alloys
- establishing advanced manufacturing technology laboratories.

National Advisory Council on Innovation

Naci is appointed by the Minister of Science and Technology to advise on the role and contribution of innovation, including S&T, in promoting and achieving national objectives. These include:

- improving and sustaining the quality of life of all South Africans
- developing HR for S&T
- building the economy
- strengthening the country's competitiveness in the international sphere.

Naci membership is broadly representative of all sectors and is constituted to ensure a spread of expertise and experience regarding national and provincial interests, scientific and technological disciplines, innovation regarding the needs and opportunities in different socio-economic fields, and R&D in all sectors.

Tshumisano

Tshumisano, a joint venture between government, the German Agency for Technical Cooperation and the Committee of University of Technology Principals, was established in 2002 to provide support for the small, medium and micro-entreprise (SMME) sector through its Technology Stations Programme.

One of the aims of this programme is to strengthen technological innovation activities and related skills-upgrading, increasing the relative competitiveness of SMMEs in targeted sectors such as automotive, agrifood processing, electronics, metal value-adding, chemicals, metal casting, and composite and moulded plastics sectors.

Technology stations are based at various universities of technology across the country and provide assistance to SMMEs by helping them to improve their operations through technology assimilation and by upgrading their innovation capabilities.

Tshumisano has also rolled out three institutes for advanced tooling in Soshanguve, outside Pretoria (training and SMME development), East London (design) and Stellenbosch (R&D).

Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy

The AMTS guides efforts in the manufacturing sector, including the aerospace industry; develops technology platforms that increase current and create new competitive advantages; establishes partnerships and develops human capital; and enhances the knowledge base and intensity of South Africa's manufacturing sector.

The Centre for Innovation, focusing on craft and design, opened in Cape Town in July 2006. The centre was the first of its kind in the world and a state-of-the-art resourced venue aimed at promoting innovative design, product development and process technologies for crafters and designers.

It incorporates a fabrication laboratory, sponsored by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). The centre's activities are linked to SMME development and market-access support programmes.

Government has set aside R16 million to establish 10 fabrication laboratories (FabLabs) around the country, providing disadvantaged communities with opportunities in the design, testing and fabrication process.

FabLabs are part of the department's provision of SET platforms for social development, but also benefit private-sector competitiveness and growth.

Advanced manufacturing technology is brought to ordinary people as an accessible platform to empower them through hands-on participation in an environment that enables the freedom to experiment and encourages peer-to-peer learning. FabLabs are co-sponsored by the MIT's Centre of Bits and Atoms.

Biotechnology

The NBS sets the agenda for the development of South Africa's biotechnology industry.

The biotechnology sector is attracting a fast-growing portion of R&D funding. South Africa is also committed to developing biotechnology in Africa. In August 2005, the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) initiated a southern regional hub of the New Partnership for Africa's Development's (Nepad) African Biosciences Initiative.

Research related to agriculture, human and animal health, environment and industry is being prioritised. Other initiatives include the establishment of biotechnology regional innovation centres (Brics), namely the Biotechnology Partnership for Africa's Development (Biopad), Cape Biotech, LIFElab and the Plant Biotechnology Innovation Centre. Brics were created as instruments for implementing the NBS, and cover a wide spectrum of subdisciplines in biotechnology. These include human and animal health, biopharmaceuticals, industrial bioprocessing, mining biotechnology, bioinformatics and plant biotechnology.

Over the past five years, they have supported the establishment of 30 new start-up biotechnology companies, stemming from university research and intellectual property generated by South African innovators. More than a 1 000 research jobs have been created. Innovative products and services are growing year-on-year.

One of the challenges facing the South African biotechnology sector is the public's lack of understanding and knowledge of biotechnology applications and benefits. As a result, the Public Understanding of Biotechnology Programme was initiated to provide South Africans with information, enabling them to participate meaningfully in debates about biotechnology and to make informed decisions in this regard.

In addition, the implementation of the NBS saw the development of the National Bioinformatics Network at eight universities, investing in technology R&D, infrastructure and teaching.

The results of biotechnology investments have long lead times, sometimes up to 15 years. However, some success stories resulting from the investments and interventions made by the biotechnology institutions are already being reported. The goal is to expand the country's biotechnology platform and develop a bio-economy base.

International collaboration is important in this regard, and since 2007, the world's third component of the International Centre for Genetic Engineering and Biotechnology (ICGEB) has been hosted in Cape Town.

The ICGEB is a centre of excellence promoted by the United Nations Industrial Development Organisation. In 2009, the Cape Town component focused its research and training activities primarily on infectious diseases (HIV and AIDS, malaria, TB and hepatitis), as well as on plant-biotechnology research aimed at improving staple crops.

In a major boost for South Africa's ambitions to host the Square Kilometre Array (SKA), a construction team installed the first antenna of the Karoo Array Telescope, a seven-dish prototype of the SKA, near Carnarvon in the Northern Cape, in July 2009.

The SKA is a planned future-generation international radio telescope that will enable astronomers to probe the early evolution of the galaxy. It will comprise about 3 000 antennae that, put together, will cover a square kilometre.

South Africa is competing against Australia to be selected as the preferred site for the SKA; the two countries having beaten bids from Argentina and China to make the SKA shortlist.

The International SKA Steering Committee in the Netherlands is expected to make a final decision on the host country in 2012.

Astronomy

The Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act, 2007 (Act 21 of 2007), provides for the preservation and protection of areas in South Africa that are uniquely suited to optical and radio astronomy; and intergovernmental cooperation and public consultation on matters concerning nationally significant astronomy advantage areas.

South Africa continues to promote high-technology investment to ensure that local researchers and students are able to participate in international astronomy. A key result was the launch of the Southern African Large Telescope (Salt) in November 2005, in Sutherland in the Northern Cape.

This is a multimillion-rand project involving Germany, Poland, the United States of America (USA), New Zealand and the United Kingdom (UK). It is the largest single optical telescope in the southern hemisphere.

South Africa has been shortlisted, along with Australia, as a possible host for the biggest radio telescope ever built, the Square Kilometre Array (SKA). A final decision in this regard is expected in 2011. The SKA will be the only instrument able to answer the most basic questions of the origin of the universe and the birth and evolution of stars and galaxies. It will be used to investigate the origin of magnetism in the universe and will be the most powerful instrument ever to search for extraterrestrial intelligence.

South Africa has developed a partnership with eight other countries to locate SKA stations in each country. The countries are Botswana, Ghana, Kenya, Madagascar, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia and Zambia. The report indicated that the only two remaining bidding countries are South Africa and Australia. The SKA initiative will benefit information and communications technology (ICT) infrastructure development and postgraduate student training in engineering, ICT and astronomy. The bid will cost R1,6 billion over a three-year period.

In October 2009, Cabinet approved the establishment of an interministerial committee to oversee the preparations to award the bid for the SKA.

The country has also assembled a team to build the Karoo Array Telescope, which is working with researchers in the UK, the Netherlands, Australia and the USA to develop digital signal processing for the telescope, and software and innovative telescope antennae, using composites.

There is also the MeerKAT radio telescope, which is both an SKA demonstrator telescope and an indigenous initiative to build a hi-tech centimetre-wave radio telescope, and which is expected to be a world leader for many years.

South African scientists and engineers began the design, development and construction of MeerKAT in 2005, in collaboration with the universities of Cambridge, Oxford, Manchester and California, as well as Caltech, the Netherlands Institute for Radio Astronomy and others.

MeerKAT will be completed and in service by late 2012 and will consist of up to 80 12-metre antennae.

The SKA and MeerKAT projects are important for developing high-level skills and expertise in South Africa, and have provided funding for graduate-study associated with these projects.

This programme is being extended to South Africa's partners in the SKA bid – Botswana, Ghana, Kenya, Madagascar, Mauritius, Mozambique and Namibia.

Space science

South Africa's 10-Year Innovation Plan identifies space S&T as one of five priority areas.

The National Space Agency Act, 2008 aims to promote the peaceful use of outer space; foster research in astronomy, Earth observation, communications, navigation and space physics; foster international cooperation in space-related activities; and advance scientific, engineering and technological competencies through human-capital development and outreach programmes.

The agency will facilitate the development of space missions; develop technology platforms; and acquire, assimilate and disseminate space-satellite data for any organ of state. It will also implement the National Space Strategy, which

was approved by Cabinet in December 2008, to stimulate the capability to place South Africa among the leading nations in the innovative use of space S&T.

In September 2009, the R26-million low-Earth orbiting satellite, SumbandilaSat, was successfully launched into space. The 81-km micro-satellite blasted into space from Baikonour in Kazakhstan, aboard a Russian Soyuz rocket.

The satellite is the result of a three-year programme commissioned by the Department of Science and Technology and developed by the University of Stellenbosch's engineering faculty and its commercial spin-out Sun Space.

The satellite carries a high-resolution camera that produces images for use in monitoring agriculture, mapping infrastructure and land use, tracking population movement and measuring dams' water levels. Data will be streamed to the CSIR's Satellite Applications Centre (SAC) at Hartebeesthoek, near Pretoria, for analysis and policy-development purposes.

The SAC will carry out command and communications functions by tracking the satellite using a large dish antenna. In addition to the camera, the satellite carries a secondary communications payload from the Department of Communications and experimental payloads for the scientific community in the areas of low-frequency radio waves, radiation, software-defined radio, forced vibrating string and radio-amateur transponders.

Nanotechnology

Known as "the technology of the very small" (that is about 1/80 000 of the diameter of a human hair), nanotechnology comprises a wide range of technologies, techniques and multidisciplinary research efforts for application in a range of cross-cutting industries and activities.

These include aerospace, manufacturing and automotive industries; energy conversion, storage and distribution; the hydrogen economy; chemicals; electronics and information processing; as well as biotechnology and medicines.

The South African industry and researchers have been involved in nanotechnology and the practical application of nanoscience for several years (for example, Sasol's chemical processing by catalysis), but new generations of emerging nanotechnology-based products require that South Africa develops its ability to derive more benefits from global advances in this area.

The National Nanotechnology Strategy, launched in 2006, recognises the needs of local industry and focuses on the essential building blocks of nanoscience, namely synthesis, characterisation and fabrication.

The strategy positions South Africa as a global player in this emerging area and seeks to strengthen government's integrated development focus by:

- supporting long-term nanoscience research that will lead to a fundamental understanding of the design, synthesis, characterisation, modelling and fabrication of nanomaterial
- supporting the creation of new and novel devices for application in various areas
- developing the required human-capital and supporting infrastructure

The strategy is expected to stimulate new developments in technology missions, such as

- advanced material for advanced manufacturing
- nanobiomaterial for biotechnology
- precious metal-based nanoparticles for resource-based industries
- advanced material for ICTs.

The strategy is aimed at increasing the number of nanotechnology characterisation centres in South Africa. In 2007, National Treasury allocated R450 million to implement the strategy over three years.

The country's first two nanotechnology innovation centres, based at Mintek and the CSIR, were established in 2007. These centres play a central role in implementing the Nanotechnology Strategy and are expected to provide a platform for world-class research in the fields of nanoscience and nanotechnology.

Information and communications technology

South Africa devotes 10,5% of its R&D expenditure to ICT. South African researchers have the advantage of using massive computing power in their quest for new knowledge and applications.

The Centre for High-Performance Computing (CHPC) in Cape Town was the first of its kind in South Africa. Hosted by the University of Cape Town and managed by the CSIR's Meraka Institute, the CHPC is making scientific supercomputing a reality for South Africa.

It supports a diverse base of researchers and scientists, and facilitates the collaboration and multidisciplinary approach needed to solve complex computational problems, advancing South Africa's research capabilities in areas such as advanced manufacturing, space science and research into infectious diseases.

The High-Performance Computing Facility was officially launched by the Department of Science and Technology at the North West University's Potchefstroom Campus in October 2009.

The facility was established in response to the ongoing demand for computing power, particularly in the field of natural-sciences research. It will enhance the university's capacity to deliver research excellence, ensuring that it remains one of the country's top research institutions.

The facility opened its doors at the beginning of 2009, and by October almost 1 700 research assignments were completed.

The field of high-performance computing is at the cutting edge of computing technology, incorporating the areas of processing, networking, storage and visualisation. It is a critical enabler in numerous applications that advance the frontiers of science.

The high-speed computational infrastructure has 50 terabytes of storage space and 160 computer nodes (640 processors) in a clustered architecture. It has a peak performance of around 2,5 teraflops per second.

To maximise the benefit and use of this infrastructure, the research communities in South Africa are self-assembled into 10 special-interest groups, and the CHPC adds significant computational power to accelerate the research agenda of these groups.

The CHPC and the South African Research Network are the backbone of an emerging cyberinfrastructure in South Africa that aims to support research initiated in other elements of the country's S&T infrastructure, such as the SKA, the National Bioinformatics Network and the Global Earth Observation System of Systems (GEOSS).

The GEOSS aims to enable globally coordinated Earth observations across a number of domains, to provide better and more reliable data in areas of benefit to society, including agriculture, weather, climate, water, disasters, health, energy, biodiversity and ecosystems.

International science and technology cooperation

By 2009, the strategy to use southern Africa's local (geographical) advantages and efforts to attract large international science-based investments was paying off.

Examples of these investments included the construction of the High-Energy Stereoscopic System observatory in neighbouring Namibia and the Salt in Sutherland in the Northern Cape, as well as winning the bid to host the European Developing Countries Clinical Trials Partnership.

International breakthroughs included South Africa's leading role in the European Union's Framework Programme, and in implementing Africa's Consolidated S&T Plan of Action.

In 2009, South Africa was involved in developing an S&T platform in the subregion through the Southern African Development Community (SADC) Ministers' Council on S&T, which was developing a SADC protocol to guide the implementation of the subregional S&T plan.

The Department of Science and Technology's flagship project is developing a high-speed broadband network in the region.

The UbuntuNet Project is set to link the South African National Research Network to Europe, via the Geant connection, to give South Africa and its research community a high-speed network.

The first phase of implementing this network began with funding of R178 million over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework.

The country has successfully leveraged support for human-capital development through international S&T agreements. This has resulted in jointly funded projects with 16 countries in areas such as agriculture, manufacturing and biotechnology.

South Africa's role at the forefront of Nepad is, to a significant extent, based on its ability to deploy scientific knowledge and technological solutions on the continent.

The International Council for Science (ICSU) launched a regional office for Africa in Pretoria in 2005. South Africa hosts the office at the premises of the NRF.

The country leads the international process to establish the GEOSS, participated in developing the 10-year implementation plan and was elected co-chair of the GEOSS.

South Africa hosts the Nepad focal points such as the African Laser Centre (ALC), the African Institute for Mathematical Sciences (Aims) and the biosciences initiatives.

Every two years, the ALC hosts summer schools co-funded by the United States of America (USA)-based National Science Foundation, and Aims is establishing a network of institutes on the rest of the continent.

South-South cooperation has been strengthened and enhanced by fostering partnerships with the countries of the South, and in particular African countries. South Africa is spearheading a number of bids to host significant international

facilities in Africa and is doing so in collaboration with its partner African countries.

National Research Foundation

The NRF is the intermediary agency between the policies and strategies of government and those institutions that perform research.

Unlike other science councils whose role is research performance, the NRF primarily fulfils an agency role, with a smaller portion of its activity allocated to research performance through the national research facilities.

The NRF's three main functions are to:

- support research and innovation, through its agency, Research and Innovation Support and Advancement (Risa)
- encourage an interest in S&T through its business unit, the South African Agency for Science and Technology Advancement (Saasta)
- facilitate high-end research through its national research facilities.

Funding from the NRF is largely directed towards academic research, developing high-level HR and supporting the nation's national research facilities. Funding opportunities cover the full spectrum of beneficiaries: from students and researchers through to institutions and staff, and from scientists involved in bilateral and multilateral joint research projects to private individuals or companies and science councils.

Through Risa, the NRF:

- invests in knowledge, people and infrastructure
- develops the workforce, particularly black men and women, to help all researchers unlock their full creative potential
- facilitates partnerships and knowledge networks
- supports and provides S&T information to guide and steer strategic decisions.

Through Saasta, the NRF:

- steers young minds towards careers in S&T and innovation
- interacts with the public on SET issues
- communicates the advances of S&T to the public.

Through the national research facilities, the NRF:

- provides access to unique technologies, research methods and information
- provides state-of-the-art research platforms
- offers access to networking opportunities and international collaboration.

In 2008, the NRF Board approved the NRF Strategic Plan, NRF Vision 2015. Its objectives include:

- promoting internationally competitive research as a basis for a knowledge economy
- growing a representative S&T workforce in South Africa
- providing cutting-edge research, technology and innovation platforms
- operating world-class evaluation and grant-making systems
- contributing to a vibrant national innovation system.

The National Research Foundation's role in the National System of Innovation

The NRF performs a dual function in the NSI: as an agency that steers the system according to strategic policies, and as a research performer. These are some of the areas it is involved in:

- The NRF supports the Department of Science and Technology's Youth into Science Strategy. This strategy promotes S&T literacy among the public in general, and the youth in particular. Through Saasta, the NRF supports competitions, camps and olympiads, all of which aim to identify those who have talent and potential from an early age, and which support the country's youth to participate in science.
- The South African Nanotechnology Strategy aims to increase the number of nanotechnology characterisation centres in South Africa. The Nanotechnology Equipment Programme that resides in the NRF, provides the infrastructure that forms the foundation of nanotechnology flagship research projects.
- The Department of Labour, together with the departments of basic education and higher education and training and the Department of Science and Technology, was responsible for ensuring that training in scarce skills takes place, especially in the fields of S&T. To deliver on this objective, the Department of Labour makes available funds for bursaries and scholarships from the National Skills Fund and the NRF manages the funds allocated for this purpose.

The NRF contributes to the Department of Science and Technology's 10-year innovation plan through developing:

- knowledge capital
- human capital
- knowledge infrastructure.

Business units

Research and Innovation Support and Advancement

Risa is the intermediary between government strategies, research institutions and researchers. Its key objectives are to ensure appropriately qualified people and high-level infrastructure to produce the knowledge that makes South Africa a global competitor.

It disburses funding from various sources, such as the funds:

- allocated to the NRF via the Parliamentary core grant
- received from various government departments.

These ring-fenced and contract funds are disbursed according to strict criteria laid down by the respective sponsors.

Risa's investment in knowledge, people and infrastructure focuses on seven areas:

- established researchers
- human-capital development and unrated researchers
- strategic knowledge fields
- strategic platforms (including research at the national research facilities)
- international initiatives
- applied and industrial research and innovation
- research on community engagement in SET.

South African Agency for Science and Technology Advancement

Saasta supports all science-advancement interventions across the NRF in the following ways:

- education-related programmes (preparing future scientists and innovators)
- SET awareness platforms (engaging the public with the phenomena of SET)
- science communication (communicating the advances of S&T to the public).

Saasta is integrally involved in promoting science at school level and creating public awareness. These efforts are designed to translate into a broader base from which tertiary level institutions can draw HR.

As such, it helps to grow the size and enhance the quality of the feeder system that can benefit from NRF support at postgraduate level.

National research facilities

The seven national research facilities managed by the NRF are clustered on the basis of their areas of specialisation aligned to the science missions of the NRDS.

South African Astronomical Observatory (SAAO)

The SAAO performs fundamental research in astronomy and astrophysics at a national and international level. It is the national facility for optical and infrared astronomy in South Africa and is also responsible for managing the operations of the Salt.

Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory (HartRAO)

The HartRAO was established as the national facility for radio astronomy research in South Africa. Its primary function is to support research and training in radio astronomy and space geodesy.

Hermanus Magnetic Observatory (HMO)

The HMO is part of a worldwide network of magnetic observatories that monitor and model variations of the Earth's magnetic field. It also performs fundamental and applied space physics research, and provides geomagnetic field-related services on a commercial basis.

South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (Saiab)

The Saiab serves as a research hub for aquatic biodiversity in southern Africa by housing and developing the National Fish Collection and associated resource collections as research tools and sources of aquatic biodiversity data.

It also generates knowledge on aquatic biodiversity through interactive and collaborative scientific research, and disseminates scientific knowledge at all levels.

South African Environmental Observation Network (Saeon)

The Saeon establishes and maintains nodes (environmental observatories, field stations or sites) linked to an information-management network. These nodes serve as research and education platforms for long-term studies of ecosystems that aim to advance the understanding of ecosystems and enhance the ability to detect, predict and react to environmental change.

National Zoological Gardens (NZG)

The NZG is the national facility for research in terrestrial biodiversity and an active participant in terrestrial biodiversity research. It houses one of the largest animal collections in the world, operates three biodiversity centres and has almost 8 000 hectares available at different locations for its respective activities.

iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences (Labs)

The iThemba Labs provides advanced, viable, multidisciplinary facilities for training, research and services in the fields of sub-atomic nuclear science and applied radiation medicine.

Special initiatives

The following projects, selected from a range of current initiatives, reflect some of the activities in which the NRF is involved:

South African PhD Project

The South Africa PhD Project is focused on attracting new doctoral candidates and providing them and current doctoral students with information and peer- and mentor-support mechanisms.

The NRF has embarked on this initiative in partnership with the Department of Science and Technology with the vision of increasing the number of doctoral graduates ten-fold by 2025.

International science activities

It is the NRF's task to build the capacity of South African researchers so that they can become leaders in the international research context.

To achieve this, the NRF creates opportunities for constructive international collaboration with other researchers so that knowledge can be generated, transferred and exchanged.

Some of the initiatives that aim to fulfil this goal were:

- providing administrative support to the ICSU
- participating in special research projects as part of International Polar Year, 2009
- leading programmes in the African region for the International Year of Astronomy, 2009
- negotiating inter-agency agreements with science councils in, among other countries, India, the USA, the Czech Republic and the United Kingdom.
- establishing binational S&T agreements with a variety of regions and countries, including Algeria, China, France, Hungary, Kenya, Japan, Mozambique, Namibia, Nigeria, Norway, Poland, the Republic of Korea, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, and The Flanders.

South African architect Shaun Killa, who is the brain behind the world's first wind-powered building, was lauded along with several international engineering minds in New York, in June 2009.

The University of Cape Town graduate, then head designer of Atkins Middle East, became the face of sustainable building design for his bold new approach to energy-saving in 2009. Killa's approach gave birth to the internationally renowned Bahrain World Trade Centre.

At 240 metres high, the twin-tower complex has been hailed as the largest integration of electricity-generating turbines in building design.

It uses wind power to reduce energy consumption and has three 275 kilowatt (kw) turbines that produce a total of 700 kw.

National Research Foundation rating system

Since research excellence is the cornerstone of the NRF, evaluation features prominently across all its programmes and capacity-building initiatives.

This positions the organisation as the guardian of a rating system that accurately and fairly defines world-class researchers, whatever their fields.

The system initially provided for A, B and C categories but those have been expanded to include categories for young researchers, those with demonstrated potential as well as late entrants into the research system.

To qualify for an "A" rating, researchers must be "unequivocally recognised by their peers as leading international scholars in their field", while a P-rating is assigned to younger researchers who, on the basis of exceptional potential demonstrated in their published doctoral work and/or their research outputs, are considered likely to become future leaders in their field.

In 2008, 15 new A-rated scientists were honoured and six P-rated young scientists were recognised.

Science councils

The statutory science councils are a key part of South Africa's NSI. Through them, government is able to directly commission research in the interest of the nation, and to support technology development in its precompetitive phase.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC is a statutory body established in terms of the Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990). It comprises research institutes that were previously part of the Department of Agriculture, the oldest of which dates back to 1902.

As the principal agricultural research institution in South Africa, the ARC is committed to agricultural research, technology development and

technology transfer within the macro-framework of the agricultural sector, thereby contributing to the quality of life of South Africans.

The ARC's research goals are aligned with the objectives of the Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture.

The ARC's research activities address major government priorities, namely integrated rural development, natural-resource management, job creation, regional integration, urban renewal, HR development, crime prevention, farmer settlement, support-service improvement, infrastructure development, food security, and trade development and support.

The ARC comprises the following business units:

- Natural Resource and Engineering Business Division
  - Institute for Soil, Climate and Water
  - Institute for Agricultural Engineering
  - Plant Protection Research Institute
- Grain and Industrial Crops
  - Grain Crops Institute
  - Small Grain Institute
  - Institute for Industrial Crops
- Horticulture
  - Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops
  - Roodeplaat Vegetable and Ornamental Plant Institute
  - Infruitec/Nietvoorbij
- Livestock
  - Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute
  - Livestock Business Division: Animal Production.

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

The CSIR's mandate is stipulated in the Scientific Research Council Act, 1998 (Act 46 of 1988), as amended by Act 71 of 1990, Section Three.

The aim of the CSIR is, through directed and particularly multidisciplinary research and technological innovation, to foster industrial and scientific development, either by itself or in co-operation with principals from the private or public sectors, thereby contributing to the improvement of the quality of life of the people of South Africa.

The CSIR is one of the leading S&T, R&D and implementation organisations in Africa. The CSIR's main site is in Pretoria, and the organisation is represented in other provinces of South Africa through regional offices.

The CSIR transfers the knowledge generated through research activities by means of technology and skilled people. The generation and application of knowledge reside at the core of the CSIR.

These take place in domains such as biosciences; the built environment; defence, peace, safety and security; materials science and manufacturing; modelling and digital science; and natural resources and the environment.

Emerging research areas

These are areas of science, explored by the CSIR, that could be unique to local circumstances or successful internationally and need to be established for local competitiveness. Examples include nanotechnology, synthetic biology and mobile autonomous intelligent systems.

National research centres

The CSIR houses specialist facilities of strategic importance for African science. These include ICTs, and laser and space-related technology.

Research and development outcomes

Activities include intellectual property (IP) management, technology transfer (for commercial gain as well as for social good), knowledge dissemination and impact assessment.

Consulting and analytical services

The CSIR has a group of facilities that manages standard technology-based services. The experts in this group use the value of CSIR knowledge-application activities by providing specialised consulting, analysis and testing services to address the clients' needs.

Services include forensic fire investigations, food and beverage analysis, environmental consulting and laboratory services, engineering forensics, wire-rope testing, mechanical testing, fires and explosion tests, self-contained self-rescuer testing, sports technology and analysis, and project management.

Supporting national imperatives

South Africa's national imperatives and global challenges provide the macro-strategic framework within which the CSIR conducts its research.

In an effort to contribute to placing Africa on a path of sustainable growth and development, the organisation supports and participates in Nepad.

The CSIR contributes to the national programme of development by:

- building and transforming human capital
- strengthening the SET base and performing relevant R&D

- transferring technology and skilled human capital.

Operations

The CSIR receives an annual grant from Parliament, through the Department of Science and Technology, which accounts for about 40% of its total income.

The remainder is generated from research contracts with government departments at national, provincial and municipal levels; the private sector; and research-funding agencies in South Africa and abroad. Additional income is derived from royalties, licences and dividends from IP management and commercial companies created by the CSIR.

The parliamentary grant is focused on the knowledge base and facilities in the CSIR to ensure that these stay at the leading edge of technological development. It is invested in developing new areas of expertise, undertaking "pre-competitive" research too risky for the private sector to fund and for training young researchers.

Mintek

South Africa's national mineral-research organisation, Mintek, is one of the world's leading technology organisations specialising in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas. Working closely with industry and other R&D institutions, Mintek provides service testwork, process development, consultation and innovative products to clients worldwide.

Mintek is an autonomous statutory organisation that reports to the Minister of Mineral Resources. About 30% of the annual budget is funded by the State Science Vote, with the balance provided by contract R&D, sales of services and products, technology-licensing agreements and joint-venture operating companies.

Mintek's objectives are to research, develop and transfer to industry novel and improved technologies to optimise processing, extracting and refining and using minerals and mineral products to:

- enhance the competitiveness of South Africa's minerals industry in the global market
- assist local mining and engineering companies to expand internationally
- promote job creation, economic growth and regional development.

Mintek's activities include:

- providing essential services (information, consulting and experimental)
- increasing the competitiveness of the industry by developing appropriate technology to cut costs and improve and optimise recoveries
- developing breakthrough process technologies and novel uses for metals and their products
- marketing its commercial products and technologies to industry
- establishing strategic partnerships and joint ventures
- participating in regional development initiatives and SADC activities and projects
- maintaining and expanding international scientific links
- developing the HR potential of the region through education and training activities.

Mintek offers a complete range of process-development services, from preliminary bench-scale investigations to large-scale piloting and integrated flowsheet development in support of bankable feasibility studies. Engineering design, plant construction and commissioning are conducted in conjunction with international partners.

Comprehensive laboratory and piloting facilities for sample preparation, milling, flotation, physical separation, smelting, leaching, pressure leaching, and metal recovery and purification are supported by internationally accredited analytical laboratory and mineralogical services.

Mintek's R&D activities are focused particularly on mineral commodities that are important to the South African economy:

- Gold-improving technologies, such as biotechnology and ion-exchange processes are developed and introduced to simplify processing and increase recoveries, particularly from ores that are difficult to treat. A major joint venture with industry and other research groups is exploring new industrial uses of gold in the fields of catalysis, nanotechnology and biomedicine.
- Platinum-group metals' (PGMs) R&D is aimed at increasing the cost-effectiveness of PGM production and stimulating industrial demand for these metals. In association with an industrial partner, Mintek is developing the ConRoast process for treating PGM concentrates that cannot be smelted directly using conventional technology.
- Ferrous-metal products and technical services are developed to increase the cost-effectiveness of ferro-alloy production, as well as stainless steels and other alloys with improved properties.
- Mintek has conducted a large amount of work for non-ferrous metals, such as new copper,

nickel and cobalt, through projects in southern and central Africa. Processes are also developed for aluminium, lead, magnesium and zinc. The major emphasis is on the introduction of cleaner technologies.
- R&D includes the beneficiation and processing of industrial minerals, including commodities such as heavy mineral, chromite, iron and manganese ores, andalusite, phosphates, fluorite and diamonds.
- With the upswing in the uranium market, Mintek has re-established itself as one of the foremost uranium laboratories in the country, and has played a significant role in developing and optimising several new projects on the African continent.

Minerals policy and development

Mintek conducts surveys, evaluations and commodity and market studies to support initiatives by governmental, international, regional or industry associations. It also identifies and evaluates potential development projects, assesses and provides technology, and conducts feasibility studies.

The organisation cooperates with industry and other research institutions and academia to maintain and enhance the mineral sector's contribution to society, by providing strategic direction and procedures that promote value addition and sustainable development in the mining industry.

Mintek is frequently called upon to support strategy and policy issues at all levels in South Africa, including participation in Nepad and the African Mining Partnership, through research into Black Economic Empowerment-development issues around mining and minerals.

Mintek is growing its capacity to lead and support multiple initiatives in small-scale mining and beneficiation. It is well positioned to lead projects that will benefit economies on the African continent and support government initiatives to create employment in mining, manufacturing and agriculture at local and rural levels.

Environment

Mintek continues to focus on developing environmentally responsible technologies for the recovery and recycling of metals from metallurgical residues. A major programme is in place to monitor cyanide species in various locations around gold plants, from both an environmental and a processing point of view. A new cross-disciplinary effort is focused on increasing the energy and water efficiency of mineral-processing operations. Mintek's environmental-management system is certified as meeting the requirements of the International Organisation for Standardisation 14001.

Education

The development of appropriate HR is crucial for the long-term sustainability of the minerals industry. Mintek's education and training initiatives focus on developing and training South Africans from historically disadvantaged communities as technicians, technologists and engineers. Training programmes include:
- artisanal and small-scale mining training
- jewellery-manufacturing training
- upgrading Mathematics and Science skills
- science promotion through participation in various SET initiatives (sponsored by the departments of science and technology and mineral resources), corporate events, university open days and the Minquiz national schools' science competition
- corporate social investment and responsibility through Mintek's Adopt-a-School Programme and Grade 11 and 12 Learner Programme
- undergraduate and postgraduate bursary schemes

In November 2009, scientists at the University of the Witwatersrand announced the discovery of a new species of dinosaur. Fossils from two aardonyx were found, one which was seven metres long and the other nine. They are an estimated 195 million years old, dating from the early Jurassic period, and were herbivores.

Due to their underdeveloped bone structure, it is believed that the fossils recovered were from juveniles between seven and 10 years old. An adult aardonyx may have been larger than those found.

The dinosaurs shared traits of evolutionary precursors with the sauropods, which were plant eaters that walked on four legs and dominated the Jurassic period. Aardonyx, by contrast, walked on two legs but is believed to have occasionally also used its forelegs to walk. However, like sauropods living at the time, aardonyx grazed by stripping vegetation from branches with its small teeth.

The aardonyx were found on a farm in the Senekal district of Free State. It was one of three new dinosaur species found in the area. Also found was a single tooth from a carnivorous dinosaur near the aardonyx's remains. Because of the number of dinosaurs found in the area, it is likely that the area was the location of a "paleontological oasis", a lush, green spot amid the arid floodplain, which was prehistoric South Africa.

- in-training programmes for recently qualified engineers and technicians
- specialised advanced technical programmes.

Promoting industrial growth

Mintek is promoting a number of major new industrial projects based on mineral beneficiation, using existing and newly developed technologies. These include the recovery of PGMs from metallurgical waste material, ferro-nickel production and the establishment of local magnesium and titanium industries.

Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC)

South Africa's statutory research agency, the HSRC, conducts research that generates critical and independent knowledge, relative to all aspects of human and social development.

Poverty alleviation and public policy development and implementation are central to all its research activities. Its research extends beyond South African borders through projects and collaborations in other African countries and abroad.

As a national public entity, the HSRC adheres to best-practice requirements in relation to its corporate governance as well as financial and performance reporting. The HSRC reports annually to Parliament.

The HSRC is committed to making a difference in the quality of life of all South Africans and is often commissioned to undertake large-scale research on behalf of government departments at national, regional and local levels. The organisation also serves the research needs of parastatal organisations, the private sector and local and international development agencies to track service delivery, evaluate performance and measure the efficacy of interventions.

The HSRC's collaborative approach to research provides a platform for interaction with research experts in South Africa, elsewhere in Africa, and internationally. The organisation proactively disseminates its research findings in peer-reviewed and other publications, and through seminars, invited lectures and media briefings.

Functioning as a knowledge hub, the HSRC contributes to bridging the gap that so often exists between research, policy and action.

The HSRC is a non-partisan organisation that provides critical information to different role players, whether in policy development, media analysis, advocacy or in debates. It aims to be an instrument for providing independent information, free from political, religious and/or racial bias. The HSRC generates scientific knowledge through its research and analytical work in the social and human sciences.

The South African HIV and AIDS Research and Innovation Platform (Sharp) was launched in July 2009.

Sharp is one of many South African government initiatives to fight HIV and AIDS.

Sharp is intended to provide a platform for evidence-based solutions that will contribute to the HIV and AIDS and Sexually Transmitted Infections Strategic Plan for South Africa. Sharp aims to do this through scientific and technological advancement to support all aspects of the fight against HIV and AIDS, from the development of new drugs and phytotherapies, to diagnostic tests and vaccines.

The Department of Science and Technology has established Sharp as part of carrying out its mandate to ensure a better life for all South Africans through the use of science and technology. Stakeholders in both the public and private sectors were consulted during the establishment process to determine priority areas in the HIV and AIDS research field.

The department has committed R45 million to Sharp over a three-year period. It will also call on other partners to join in funding Sharp.

Research focus

Research capabilities have been aligned into the following interdisciplinary, problem-orientated, research programmes:

- Education, Science and Skills Development
- Child, Youth and Family Development
- Social Aspects of HIV and AIDS and Health
- Democracy and Governance.

The former national initiatives have now become centres of excellence. Additionally, a former research programme, Urban, Rural and Economic Development has been unbundled to become a centre for service delivery.

Centres of excellence at the HSRC include the:

- Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth
- Centre for Service Delivery
- Centre for Education Quality Improvement.

In addition, a number of cross-cutting research initiatives support the work of the HSRC as a whole, its research programmes, as well as external stakeholders.

Cross-cutting research units include the:

- Research Network (the Social Aspects of AIDS Research Alliance)
- Knowledge Systems
- Policy Analysis and Capacity Enhancement, which consists of:

The three-yearly General Conference of the Academy of Sciences for the Developing World (TWAS), themed *Science for Africa's Development*, took place in Durban in October 2009.

Hosted by the Department of Science and Technology and the Academy of Science of South Africa, an entity of the department, the conference was intended to mobilise the scientific community to generate collective, evidence-based solutions to national problems, and to play a critical role in global endeavours to promote science and technology.

TWAS, an autonomous international body, was founded in Italy in 1983 by a distinguished group of scientists from the South. Its aim is to promote scientific excellence and capacity in the region for science-based sustainable development.

- Capacity Development
- Gender
- Policy Analysis
- Centre for Africa's Social Progress.

The Policy Analysis Unit has a dual mandate. The first is to serve as a think-tank and provide a platform for public discourse and critical social issues. The second is to pursue time-limited, multi-year analyses into specific priority areas, namely poverty reduction, employment, quality education, HIV and AIDS and service delivery. The work of the unit is centred upon various crossroads between these policy issues and heuristic parameters drawn from the National HR Development Strategy.

The support functions of the HSRC are primarily intended to support its core activity, namely research, while also ensuring that the organisation complies with regulatory requirements.

Medical Research Council (MRC)

The MRC's mission is to improve the nation's health and quality of life through promoting and conducting relevant and responsible health research.

Although the MRC is an autonomous body, it reports to the Department of Health and receives 60% of its budget from the Department of Science and Technology. Its head office is situated in Cape Town, with provincial offices in Pretoria and Durban.

The MRC's research activities are aligned with the health priorities of the nation, the national S&T imperatives and the health priorities defined by the Department of Health. Activities are grouped into the following programmes:

- National Programme for Research in Molecules to Disease
- National Programme for Health Systems and Policy Research
- National Programme for Infection and Immunity Research
- National Programme for Non-Communicable Disease Research
- National Programme for Environment and Development Research
- National Programme for Women and Child Health Research
- South African National Health Knowledge Network.

Council for Geoscience (CGS)

The CGS is the legal successor of the Geological Survey of South Africa, which was formed in 1912 by the amalgamation of three former surveys, the oldest of which – the Geological Commission of the Cape of Good Hope – was founded in 1895.

The Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993), established the CGS in its present form. The council is a modern institution, boasting excellent facilities and expertise, ranking among the best in Africa.

The main functions of the CGS are:

- documenting the surface of the Earth within the borders of South Africa; compiling geological, geophysical, geochemical and other geoscientific information; and publishing this information in the form of maps and documents
- conducting geoscientific research into, among other things, rocks, minerals, ores and fossils in South Africa and publishing research results in national and international journals
- collecting and conserving all geoscientific information and data on South Africa in national collections and electronic databases
- supplying geoscientific services and advice to the national and provincial governments and ensuring informed decisions regarding the optimal and efficient use of the Earth's surface.

The objectives of the CGS are to:

- minimise the geological and geoscientific investment risk for national and international entrepreneurs in the South African mining sector (the quality of available geological information – known as the "geological risk grading" – contributes to about 61% of the investment risk in any country)

- supply the country with basic geoscience data to establish a safe, cost-effective physical infrastructure
- supply basic knowledge to ensure safe, cost-effective and environmentally acceptable urbanisation and housing development
- carry out research into raw material needed to clothe, transport, feed and provide shelter for the nation.

To accomplish these functions and objectives, the CGS maintains a specialised workforce, consisting of Earth scientists supplemented by technical, support and administrative staff at its headquarters in Pretoria, and at branch offices in the Western Cape, Northern Cape, Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

The CGS maintains the following national institutions:

- The National Geoscience Library in Pretoria is probably the most comprehensive geoscience library in Africa. It includes the Map Library, which contains a collection of South African and African geoscience maps.
- The National Core Library contains a representative stratigraphic-borehole core collection, representing most of the lithological units located within the borders of South Africa. This collection is housed at Donkerhoek, east of Pretoria.
- The Geoscience Museum, in the Transvaal Museum in Pretoria, exhibits rocks and minerals, catering for the Earth-science education of the public, especially schoolchildren.

An extensive laboratory at the CGS head office uses various specialised techniques to analyse rock and soil samples.

Geoscience information and services provided by the CGS are particularly important for the sustainable development of the country. In South Africa's arid regions, the management of groundwater resources (both the quantity and quality thereof) is aimed at providing enough clean water to communities. In addition, the CGS has established the Environmental Geoscience Unit to provide services in this highly competitive and very important field.

Although South Africa is situated on a relatively stable part of the Earth's crust, the CGS maintains a seismic network for recording such events within the national borders and coastal waters off South Africa's coastline. This information is available to interested parties and helps mitigate the problems associated with mining-related seismic events.

The CGS is a world leader in the domain of geophysical surveys, using a detection system deployed on light aircraft. This significantly reduces the cost of very high-resolution geophysical data for mineral exploration. An aircraft (a Cessna Caravan 208B) and a helicopter carry large sensors, increasing the CGS' capability to conduct high-resolution geophysical surveys.

The CGS leads an initiative by the Department of Mineral Resources to assist upcoming mining entrepreneurs, particularly those from historically disadvantaged groups, to exploit South Africa's mineral resources in a cost-effective and environmentally friendly way.

Because the CGS plays a leading role in the SADC, several geoscience publications covering the region have been produced, describing heavy mineral sand, diamond, gold, copper and cobalt, bauxite and dimension-stone deposits in the region. A seismic hazard map of the region, a lithostratigraphic table comparing the geological formations in the region, and maps of the Kalahari Basin have also been produced.

In addition to its national responsibilities, the CGS is also active internationally, mainly in Africa. Geological and metallogenic maps of, among other countries, Angola, the Democratic Republic of Congo, Mozambique, Gabon and Morocco have been produced.

South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS was established in terms of the Standards Act, 1945 (Act 24 of 1945), and operates in terms of the latest edition of the Standards Act, 2008 (Act 8 of 2008), as the national institution for the promotion and maintenance of standardisation and quality in connection with commodities and the rendering of services.

The SABS' vision is to be the trusted third party that offers uncompromised value-added standardisation services.

Its mission is to protect the integrity of the South African market and the end consumer, create a competitive advantage for the South African industry and improve market access locally and internationally.

The SABS' core objectives are to:

- promote standardisation in industry and commerce
- prepare, modify or amend specifications and codes of practice
- undertake educational work in connection with standardisation

- assist government departments, public bodies, and provincial and local authorities in the preparation of any specification or code of practice they require
- provide input and advice to government departments in the areas of standardisation and conformity assessment
- cooperate with industry, government departments, provincial and local authorities and other public bodies or individuals to ensure the standardisation of products or services
- collaborate with relevant international organisations to protect and advance South Africa's interests.

Other objectives of the SABS include:

- controlling the use of standardisation and distinctive marks
- providing conformity assessment services to industry and the State, such as:
  - laboratory-testing services
  - product certification
  - system certification
  - consignment inspections
- issuing relevant SABS marks for approved products as proof that their manufacturers have complied with required specifications
- providing facilities for testing and calibration of precision instruments, gauges and scientific apparatus
- providing facilities for examination and testing of products and any material or substances from which they are manufactured.

The SABS provides products and services in standards, testing, certification, training and design promotion in the following sectors:

- chemicals
- electrotechnical
- food and health
- mechanical and materials
- mining and minerals
- services
- transportation.

The SABS' range of services cover quality, risk, environmental, occupational health and safety, and product-specific certification. The SABS Training Centre offers outcome-based training in all management-system standards.

Other scientific and research organisations and structures

Biotechnology Partnership for Africa's Development (Biopad)

Biopad is a biotechnology regional innovation centre established by the Department of Science and Technology. The centre, initiated in 2002, aims to boost biotechnology development in the region. The core objective is to implement South Africa's NBS.

Eskom

Eskom's Technology Services International group is a multidisciplinary industrial laboratory and consulting organisation. It undertakes testing, investigation studies, project management, engineering services and applied research for Eskom and other customers.

Sasol

Sasol Technology conducts most of its fuel- and chemical-related R&D at Sasolburg in the Free State. It also maintains R&D programmes at external centres of excellence, including St Andrews University in Scotland, Twente University in the Netherlands and the University of Cape Town in South Africa.

Sasol Polymers operates a polymer technology centre near Johannesburg, and Sasol Nitro and Sasol Wax maintain R&D programmes in South Africa and Germany, respectively.

ArcelorMittal

ArcelorMittal is the world's number one steel company, with over 320 000 employees in more than 60 countries. It led the consolidation of the world steel industry and today ranks as a truly global steel-maker, with an industrial presence in 27 countries. ArcelorMittal is the leader in all major global markets, including automotive, construction, household appliances and packaging.

The group is a leader in R&D and technology, holds sizeable captive supplies of raw material, and operates extensive distribution networks.

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

With 265 laboratories nationwide, the NHLS provides diagnostic services to the more than 5 000 clinical facilities around the country.

Bureau for Economic Research (BER)

The BER at the University of Stellenbosch, Western Cape, is an independent economic research organisation. It renders a service to organisations ranging from small one-person businesses to policy-makers at the highest level of government.

National Institute for Tropical Diseases

The National Institute for Tropical Diseases in Tzaneen, Limpopo, is responsible for the ongoing

assessment of malaria-control programmes carried out by various authorities in South Africa.

Control methods are assessed and recommendations made to the appropriate authorities regarding equipment, insecticide usage and application. A malaria-reference service is also provided. Malaria tests are carried out by the institute, and statistical analyses of data pertaining to the programme is undertaken.

Institute for Economic Research on Innovation (Ieri)

Ieri was established as a public-good research organisation with a core competence in the analysis of systems of innovation.

Its mandate is to provide research, capacity-building and community engagement in this field of study. The tasks of the Ieri involve:

- conducting research on the political economy and policy dimensions of innovation and development
- contributing thought-leadership on the relationship between knowledge and development across economic, social and political domains
- building capabilities and competencies in the understanding of the political economy and policy dimensions of innovation and development
- focusing across local, provincial, national, regional and international geographies.

General research areas

Mine-safety research

The activities of the Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee are aimed at advancing the safety of workers employed in South African mines. The committee is a statutory tripartite subcommittee of the Mine Health and Safety Council. It has a permanent research-management office managing the rock engineering, engineering and mine occupational health fields of research.

Energy research

The Chief Directorate: Energy of the Department of Energy manages a policy-directed research programme. This includes transport energy, renewable energy, energy for developing areas, coal, electricity, energy efficiency, energy economy and integrated energy-policy formulation.

Agricultural research

Agricultural research is conducted by the ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations. Provinces are responsible for farm management and technological development. These activities are aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms.

The Directorate: Scientific Research and Development in the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries coordinates all agricultural R&D activities.

The National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF) coordinates agricultural R&D within the national agricultural research system. The NARF also provides a platform for stakeholder consultations on R&D matters.

Biannual meetings are held to debate and agree on research needs, programmes and budgeting. Efforts are made to ensure that the bulk of research serves the needs of small-scale producers.

Research initiatives have been integrated into the various industries in line with the overall objectives of each agricultural sector.

Water research

The Water Research Commission (WRC) was established in 1971 through the Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971), following a period of water shortages. The WRC is responsible for:

- promoting coordination, cooperation and communication in the area of water R&D
- establishing water-research needs and priorities
- stimulating and funding water research according to priority
- promoting the effective transfer of IT
- enhancing knowledge and capacity-building within the water sector.

The WRC functions as a "hub" for water-centred knowledge. This is reflected in the WRC's

In June 2009, South African-born scientist, Peter Jones, received the United States of America's highest cancer research award for pioneering an entire new field of science, called epigenetic therapy.

About 358 patients in 15 countries were involved in the international trial, which found that those receiving the therapy survived an average of 9,4 months longer than those on conventional treatment, with a two-year survival rate that was nearly doubled.

Instead of killing cancer cells with chemotherapy or radiation, the new form of therapy activates dormant genes in the affected cells and instructs them to become healthy again.

mission, which provides the organisation with a framework for its strategic and operational initiatives. The WRC functions as a networking organisation, linking the nation and working through partnerships. Being an innovative organisation, it is continuously providing novel (and practical) ways of packaging and transferring knowledge into technology-based products for the water sector and the community at large, both locally and globally.

Many decades of R&D and science-based knowledge have provided the basis for the development of policies and strategies that allow for the sustainability of South Africa's water resources.

This emphasises not only the important role that water-centred knowledge has played in the past, but also its increasingly important role in providing South Africa with knowledge, which will allow it to deal successfully with the many new challenges that will face the limited water resources in future years. The WRC plays a crucial role in this regard. It leads and coordinates research, which, in turn, creates the knowledge that facilitates the judicious management of water quantity and quality and, in so doing, to achieve sustainability.

The Water Research Act, 1971 established the Water Research Fund, which derives income primarily from levies on water consumption.

In supporting the creation, dissemination and application of knowledge, the WRC focuses on five key strategic areas:

- water-resource management
- water-linked ecosystems
- water use and waste management
- water use in agriculture
- water-centred knowledge.

The WRC also calls for specific mechanisms to address key strategic issues of national importance. These issues are dealt with in four cross-cutting domains:

- water and society
- water and the economy
- water and the environment
- water and health.

The organisations that participate in water research are:

- universities and universities of technology
- professional consultants
- science councils
- water and waste utilities
- non-governmental organisations (NGOs).

The main areas of research are surface hydrology, groundwater, hydrometeorology, agricultural water use, water pollution, municipal effluents, industrial water and effluents, drinking water, membrane technology, water ecosystems, hydraulics, mine-water management, water policy, developing communities and the transfer of technology.

The Division: Water, Environment and Forestry Technology (Environmentek) of the CSIR specialises in research into water quality, including technology to meet effluent and water-quality standards, and to establish reclaimed water as an additional water source.

Environmentek is a world leader in research into activated sludge processes and the biological monitoring of water to detect potentially toxic substances. It is also involved in research into the effects of afforestation and veld management on the quantity and quality of catchment water-yield.

Environmental research

The Chief Directorate: Environmental Management of the Department of Environmental Affairs annually finances several research and monitoring programmes.

The programmes comprise subjects such as waste management and pollution, nature conservation, river management, coastline and marine environment, and the atmosphere.

Some programmes are conducted in collaboration with the NRF, while others are undertaken on behalf of the department by the CSIR and universities. Research into human-environment interaction, sponsored by the department, is coordinated by the HSRC.

In addition, institutes of the ARC are concerned with environmental research insofar as environmental problems impact on agriculture or are caused by agricultural practices.

The South African Weather Service (SAWS) is a statutory body functioning under the Department of Environmental Affairs.

The SAWS delivers public-good services, mainly for the protection of life and property, as well as commercial services to the private sector, as stipulated in the Weather Service Act, 2001 (Act 8 of 2001).

The implementation of NiNjo, the new forecasting workstation, will be a major step towards improving the quality of forecasting products and services. The SAWS will be the first national meteorological service in the southern hemisphere to have access to this state-of-the-art technology, which presents product development

and research opportunities for South Africa's forecasters and researchers.

Among other activities, the SAWS runs the Global Atmospheric Watch Programme, which measures and monitors GHG datasets. The SAWS has also rolled out a number of ozone-monitoring stations in the SADC region.

The NRF directs the multidisciplinary Conservation and Management of Ecosystems and Biodiversity Focus Area, primarily in collaboration with universities and museums, to promote and support research into living resources and terrestrial, freshwater, marine, coastal and atmospheric ecosystems.

Some 170 projects are approved annually, and global issues such as climate change and biological diversity are also included. The sustainable use of natural resources is a priority area, resulting in an increase in projects relying on sociology and the humanities. The NRF also supports a range of environmental research network organisations, such as the Arid Zone Ecology Forum, the Fynbos Forum, the Indigenous Plant-Use Forum and the Savanna Ecology Forum.

Fisheries research

Research into South Africa's fish resources, and their conservation and judicious exploitation, is carried out by research personnel of the Chief Directorate: Marine and Coastal Management, a division of the Department of Environmental Affairs, and by several universities and NGOs.

Research is designed to provide parameters for estimates of stock sizes and sustainable yields for the different fisheries.

Coastal and marine research

The Chief Directorate: Marine and Coastal Management advises on the use of marine living resources and the conservation of marine ecosystems, by conducting and supporting relevant multidisciplinary scientific research and by monitoring the marine environment.

Sustainable use and the need to preserve future options in using marine ecosystems and their resources are guiding objectives in the research and advice provided by the chief directorate.

The NRF supports marine and coastal research in partnership with the Department of Environmental Affairs, and the South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research.

Private-sector involvement

South Africa's gold-mining industry works at deeper levels and under more difficult conditions than any other mining industry in the world. The research into gold mining conducted by the CSIR's Mining Technology group is concerned primarily with ensuring the health and safety of the workforce. It includes those working in the areas of rock engineering and the underground environment.

Mining Technology's coal-mining research takes place on a smaller scale than that of gold mining, because the coal-mining industry can make use of various overseas developments.

Areas in which research is undertaken include strata control, mining, maximising the extraction of coal, and the underground environment.

Research is also carried out by a large number of industrial companies with facilities to meet their specific needs.

The more important ones are the:

- Anglo American Corporation of South Africa (applied metallurgy, processing of precious metals, base metals and coal)
- Agricura (synthesis and testing of veterinary remedies, insecticides, herbicides and entomology)
- Cullinan Holdings (refractories and electrical porcelain)
- De Beers Industrial Diamond Division (manufacturing and application of synthetic diamonds and other super-hard material)
- Johannesburg Consolidated Investment Company (metallurgy, mineralogy, chemistry and chemical engineering)
- National Chemical Products (chemistry, microbiology and animal nutrition)
- Metal Box Company of South Africa (corrosion mechanisms and microbiology)
- Tellumat (development of electronic instruments)
- Rembrandt Group (development and improvement of tobacco and liquor products)
- South African Pulp and Paper Industries (wood technology, paper manufacturing and water treatment)
- Standard Telephones and Cables SA (long-distance transmission of information and lightning protection).

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Council for Geoscience
Estimates of National Expenditure 2009, published by National Treasury
Human Sciences Research Council
Medical Research Council
National Health Laboratory Service
National Research Foundation
Water Research Commission
www.csir.co.za
www.dst.gov.za
www.eskom.co.za
www.gov.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.co.za
www.naci.org.za
www.sabs.co.za
www.saneri.org.za
www.southafrica.info
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sasol.co.za

Suggested reading

Bonner, P, Esterhuysen, A and Jenkins, T. 2007. *A Search for Origins: The Cradle of Humankind and the South Africanisation of Science*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Huigen, S. 2009. *Knowledge and Colonialism: Eighteenth-Century Travellers in South Africa*. Leiden: Brill.

Phahlamohlaka, J (ed). 2008. *Community-Driven Projects: Reflections on a Success Story: A Case Study of Science Education and Information Technology in South Africa*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Pudi, TI (ed). 2007. *Understanding Technology Education from a South African Perspective*. Pilot ed. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Simkins, CEW, Rule, S and Bernstein, A. 2007. *Doubling for Growth: Addressing the Maths and Science Challenge in South Africa's Schools*. Johannesburg: Centre for Development and Enterprise.

Tlabela, K, Roodt, J, Paterson, A and Weir-Smith, G. 2007. *Mapping ICT Access in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Van der Merwe, D *et al*. 2008. *Information and Communications Technology*. Durban: LexisNexis.

Van Rooyen, H and De Beer, J *et al*. 2007. *Teaching Science in the OBE Classroom*. Braamfontein: Macmillan.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

The Constitution enshrines the rights of all people in the country to dignity, equality before the law, freedom and security. The Constitution commits government to take reasonable measures, within its available resources, to ensure that all South Africans enjoy an acceptable standard of living.

The main objective of the Department of Social Development is to build a caring and integrated system of social-development services that facilitates human development and improves the quality of life for all people, in particular those living in poverty or confronted by other vulnerabilities.

The department's key programmes include:

- assistance through the South African Social Security Agency (Sassa)
- social-welfare services
- integrated developmental services, including community development
- research in the area of population and development issues and social policy to enhance evidence-based policy development and planning.

The departmental mandate has also widened in recent years to include initiatives aimed at improving the livelihoods of South Africans by coordinating home- and community-based care (HCBC) for people living with HIV and AIDS (including probation services, childcare and protection, and family counselling and support services), sustainable livelihoods and food-relief programmes, with a focus on programmes for particularly vulnerable groups.

The Department of Social Development collaborates with other government departments within the framework of intergovernmental-relations legislation and cooperative governance. It also collaborates with non-governmental organisations (NGOs), faith-based organisations (FBOs), the business sector, organised labour and other role players to ensure its strategic objectives are implemented.

The department also undertakes participatory research to provide evidence for developing relevant and appropriate programmes and strategies for sustainable livelihoods and community development. This includes creating a conducive environment for facilitating community development practice and overseeing the National Development Agency (NDA).

Legislation

Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 6 of 2008)

The amendment of the Social Assistance Act, 2004 (Act 13 of 2004), saw men aged 63 to 64 for the first time qualifying and receiving social-assistance grants. The full implementation of the Act will ensure that by 2010 men too will receive social-assistance grants when they turn 60 years of age.

Older Persons Act, 2006 (Act 13 of 2006)

The Older Persons Act, 2006 provides for the protection and welfare of certain aged and debilitated persons, for the care of their interests, for the establishment and registration of certain institutions, and for the accommodation and care of older persons in such institutions

The main objectives of the Act are to:

- maintain and promote the status, well-being, safety and security of older persons
- recognise the skills and wisdom of older persons
- encourage older persons' participation in community activities to promote them as people.

Childcare legislation

The Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), sets out principles relating to the care and protection of children, defines parental responsibilities and rights and provides for matters such as children's courts, adoption, child abduction and surrogate motherhood.

The Act also:

- gives effect to certain rights of children as contained in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996
- sets out principles relating to the care and protection of children
- defines parental responsibilities and rights
- makes further provision regarding children's courts
- provides for the issuing of contribution orders
- makes new provision for the adoption of children
- provides for intercountry adoption
- gives effect to the Hague Convention on Intercountry Adoption

- prohibits child abduction and trafficking, and gives effect to the Hague Convention on International Child Abduction
- provides for surrogate motherhood
- creates certain new offences relating to children
- provides for matters relating to the trafficking of children and the implementation of the relevant protocol.

The Children's Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 41 of 2007), provides for:

- the partial care of children
- early childhood development (ECD)
- further protection of children
- prevention and early-intervention services
- children in alternative care
- foster care
- child- and youthcare centres, shelters and drop-in centres
- certain new offences relating to children
- the plight of child-headed households
- respect for parental rights by providing that no person may take or send a South African child out of the country without consent of parents or guardians
- the discipline of children.

The Children's Act, 2005 provides for the establishment of the *National Child Protection Register* that records all persons found unsuitable to work with children.

It also lists all persons found by the Children's Court and criminal courts to be unsuitable to work with children.

In terms of this law, childcare facilities, including welfare organisations offering foster care and adoption, are able to check prospective employees, foster parents and adoptive parents against the register.

The register, however, is not open to the public, and all requests for information must be directed to the Department of Social Development.

Sustainable livelihoods

The persistence of poverty calls for the development of innovative and sustainable community-development and poverty-eradication policies, strategies and programmes that will not only create opportunities for sustainable jobs and income generation, but that will also harness and strengthen resources within households and civil society to achieve sustainable livelihoods.

Eradicating poverty is the highest priority in government's efforts to build a better life for all. In this regard, the Department of Social Development manages the Sustainable Livelihoods Programme, which aims to assist communities in a range of developmental projects and to develop best practices that link social grants to the livelihood strategies of direct and indirect beneficiaries and income-generating vehicles, such as cooperatives.

In the department's quest to strengthen communities' sustainable livelihoods, the department participated in two initiatives of the Community Works Programme, which is part of Phase Two of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP).

The programme was piloted in Munsieville, Mogale City, Bokfontein near Brits, Sekhukhuneland and 10 villages in the Alfred Nzo Municipality to supplement other livelihood strategies by providing regular and predictable work opportunities for all South Africans. In addition to this, the department also formed a partnership with Soul City to spearhead the implementation of the Kwanda Programme, which is a social-mobilisation, multimedia development-communication platform showcasing integrated government programmes. Government has introduced various measures to enhance households and community food production, primarily for consumption and to generate income from the sale of surplus food. The households are provided with agricultural starter packs such as implements, vegetable seedlings and fertilisers. By November 2009, the programme had been rolled out to 8 234 households countrywide.

Based on a food-security model promoted by the Global FoodBanking Network, FoodBank SA will act as the national governing body for a network of community-based foodbanks, the first of which was established in March 2009 in Cape Town.

The community foodbanks as well as the national body actively procure food on behalf of agencies (social-services organisations and NGOs) operating in the area of food security. Food is mainly acquired through donations from major retailers and manufacturers as well as government agencies, private organisations and individuals. The food is then stored safely and sorted into nutritional packages before being made available or delivered to relevant agencies.

Over the next three years, FoodBank SA plans to open 20 foodbanks around the country and increase its food supply by five-fold. In addressing their own mandate to eradicate hunger, the South African Government signed a memorandum of understanding (MoU) with FoodBank SA, showing their support for the programme. By November 2009, four foodbanks had been established in four

provinces, namely Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, the Western Cape and Eastern Cape. Together, these foodbanks distributed between 400 and 600 tons of food via 900 agencies to more than 100 000 people who are in need of emergency food relief. The national target of establishing two foodbanks by March 2010 was achieved earlier.

In addition to providing social assistance, the Department of Social Development is implementing poverty-relief initiatives.

War on poverty

In August 2008, government launched the national War on Poverty Campaign to reduce poverty among the country's poorest citizens. The most deprived households identified in the poorest wards will be visited periodically by a team of professionals and community workers to identify their specific needs and accelerate access to government services and provide safety nets.

The Department of Social Development facilitated the establishment of 20 vegi-tunnels in Limpopo (Ga-Kgatla) in support of the War on Poverty Campaign. This project was implemented in partnership with the Department of Agriculture.

Comprehensive anti-poverty interventions

Poverty remains one of the key challenges facing South Africa. Government, therefore, has in place a number of interventions geared at minimising its impact on the people. By the end of 2008, government had formulated a draft anti-poverty strategy and a national plan to implement this strategy as part of fast-tracking its efforts to lift more people out of poverty.

A draft poverty matrix has been compiled through the identification of key projects in the social and economic clusters. This matrix will be completed once the development of the national database of households living in poverty has been completed.

The Anti-Poverty Strategy is premised on an approach that integrates social security, investment in people through education and skills development and a set of economic and industrial policies. Central to this strategy is the determination to root out intergenerational poverty.

The attainment of this goal will require the department to integrate its intersectoral interventions with measurable targets, social indicators and time frames.

The Social Protection and Community Development Cluster leads the Anti-Poverty Strategy and facilitates synergies between government and other sections of society.

Only when the poor have decent employment or are gainfully self-employed, will the demand for social grants reduce. Investment in human and physical assets will need to be complemented by an economy that absorbs people and lays the basis for decent jobs.

The Department of Social Development has some very specific contributions to make. In the first instance, investment in the development of children is one of the primary means to improve society's human capital and over time contribute to a reduction in intergenerational poverty.

The ECD Programme lies at the heart of the department's goal. The Department of Social Development intends to accelerate the registration of ECD sites from 13 734 to 14 401 and increase the number of children in registered ECD centres to 758 000.

Other interventions envisaged by the Anti-Poverty Strategy are to focus on service delivery at household level with the aim of linking individuals and families with key government services. The department has been tasked with assessing and collecting information on the needs of households and communities in 150 wards. This was done in partnership with the provincial departments of social development, relevant NGOs and the Independent Development Trust.

Another contribution is in respect of the EPWP. The Department of Social Development coordinates the social sector's efforts to create

To mark the International Day for the Eradication of Poverty, the Minister of Social Development, Ms Edna Molewa, launched the Hemp Project on 17 October 2009. This is a partnership between government, the private sector and female cooperatives, which is aimed at uplifting emerging black female farmers in the Eastern Cape.

The Department of Social Development has entered into a cooperation agreement with the Hemp Industrial Park to set up a hemp cottage industry in partnership with Silindithemba Cooperative and Indalo (a black-owned farming enterprise).

The project targets mainly rural women, most of whom are caregivers of the beneficiaries of social grants. The intention is to link social-grant beneficiaries to sustainable livelihoods and cooperatives, which will in the long term graduate them out of poverty.

At the launch, the cooperatives of this R20-million venture showcased a variety of hemp products, including clothes, food supplements and health products.

and sustain jobs. The department aims to provide training to an additional 1 500 community caregivers and over 2 500 ECD practitioners.

Comprehensive social security

Government has committed itself to specific goals concerning a comprehensive social-security system. The Cabinet-approved framework of the new system seeks to ensure access to social security, including appropriate social assistance as provided for in Section 27 of the Constitution.

Government has embarked on a process of social security and retirement reform. By November 2009, the Interdepartmental Technical Task Team on Comprehensive Social Security had completed a consolidated document, with several proposals and policy options. The document will be released as a basis for public consultation once it has been approved by Cabinet.

The department is determined to create a comprehensive and inclusive retirement system to ensure that the majority of South Africa's poor, marginalised and vulnerable benefit from the new retirement provisions. Through these reforms, the department intends to lay a foundation for a retirement system that will resonate with the needs of the majority of South Africans as well as with international trends.

The ultimate goal of social development is to engender self-reliance and social cohesion. While appropriate social-security provisioning plays a critical role in addressing the basic needs of the poorest of the poor, it is only meant to be a temporary measure.

The Government recognises that empowering people, particularly women, to strengthen their own capacities is a main objective of development and its principal resource. With this goal in mind, the department has begun piloting various initiatives, which will enable poor communities to become architects of their own development.

Social assistance

In the context of South Africa's main challenges of high levels of poverty and inequality, the Department of Social Development continues to expand the social safety net. The Social Assistance Act, 2004 (Act 13 of 2004), creates uniform norms and standards that apply countrywide. It provides for the publication of regulations on performance management and on adherence to the Batho Pele ("People First") principles of customer service.

The Act provides for the rendering of social assistance to persons, mechanisms for the rendering of such assistance, the establishment of an inspectorate for social assistance and related matters.

Social-assistance transfers are funded from general revenue and are appropriated on the Budget Vote of the Department of Social Development. Social-assistance cash grants provide targeted income support to those whose livelihoods are most at risk. The available grants are the old-age; disability; child-support; foster-care; care-dependency and war-veterans' grants; and temporary grant-in-aid relief.

The country's social-grants programme is one of the most comprehensive and sophisticated in the developing world.

Government has progressively expanded social grants to vulnerable groups since the dawn of South Africa's democracy, and more than a quarter of the population is receiving income transfers.

By August 2009, more than 13 million citizens were receiving social-assistance benefits. Of these beneficiaries, over nine million were children.

In October 2009, Cabinet announced the approval of the extension of the Child-Support Grant (CSG) to eligible children between the ages of 15 and 17 years. This decision only applies to children from poor households. Caregivers of the beneficiaries have the responsibility to ensure that the beneficiaries remain in school.

The CSG for 15-year-olds will start on 1 January 2010, 16-year-olds on 1 January 2011 and 17-year-olds on 1 January 2012. These grants will benefit about two million children from poor households. The total cost will be R1,3 billion, R2,6 billion and R3,5 billion, respectively over the three-year period.

The department is making progress with phasing-in the equalisation of eligibility for the Old-Age Grant. By the end of September 2009, there were

Amounts of grants per month, 2009

Grant type	Amount
Old-Age Grant	R1 010
Disability Grant	R960
War-Veterans' Grant	R960
Foster-Care Grant	R680
Care-Dependency Grant	R1 010
Child-Support Grant	R240
Grant-in-Aid	R210

Source: Department of Social Development

17 800 men aged 61 to 64 years of age receiving old-age pension. The Social Assistance Act, 2004 provides for men of 60 years of age to qualify from April 2010 and National Treasury has made the necessary budget allocation for this final phase.

The growing number of child-support beneficiaries has been the main source of increased expenditure over recent years, with the increase in disability grants taking up a rising share of the total.

Government allocated R500 million towards the Social Relief of Distress (SRD) Grant in November 2008. The money allocated to the SRD increased from R13,6 million in November 2008 to R57,2 million in January 2009.

SRD is a temporary provision of assistance intended for persons who are unable to meet their families' most basic needs. The SRD may be in the form of a food parcel or a voucher to buy food. Some provinces give this assistance in the form of cash. SRD is given for a short time only, usually for up to three months, and sometimes for six months.

Sassa is responsible for SRD for categories relevant to social grants, and provides it in cases where the person:

- is awaiting permanent aid in the form of a social grant
- is found to be medically unfit for a period of less than six months
- has appealed the suspension of a grant
- needs help while waiting for the children's grants to be processed by government
- has experienced a crisis or disaster, for example, the house has burnt down
- is unable to get maintenance from the other parent of the child or children, or the breadwinner has died, or has been sent to prison for a short time (less than six months)
- has been affected by a disaster in the area that has not been declared a disaster area.

Implementing social-assistance programmes

Before 2006, the nine provincial departments each had its own administration for social assistance. This situation posed significant challenges for government concerning lack of norms and standards of social-assistance service delivery. The Sassa Act, 2004 (Act 9 of 2004), was introduced to create a single entity for the delivery of social grants.

The agency's delivery model aims to ensure that the administration and payment of social grants become more customer-focused, while ensuring regular reviews of beneficiaries' eligibility. Regular reviews and a comprehensive fraud strategy should reduce levels of fraud, leakage and corruption in the social-grants system.

Sassa has 40 mobile units that take services to remote and rural communities. The trucks are one-stop shops where beneficiaries can apply for identity documents and grants.

To ensure that Sassa operates optimally, the Department of Social Development initiated a business re-engineering process. Among other things, this will improve the turnaround time for processing grant applications. The department is working on measures to reduce the cost of grant payments through migrating people towards electronic payments instead of cash. Reducing cash payments should also improve safety and accessibility.

The Integrated Community Registration Outreach Programme, aimed at promoting accessibility to grants by eligible beneficiaries in remote areas, is on course. By September 2009, about 112 000 beneficiaries, mainly from rural communities, were able to access services through its mobile units. The department aims to get to the stage where all applications are processed and approved in one day by all Sassa offices.

Government remains vigilant to root out corruption and fraud within the social security system. For this reason, the Department of Social Development continues to work with the Special Investigation Unit to ensure that culprits are brought to book.

Dealing with corruption

The department's national facilities to combat

Social-assistance grant recipients

Grant type	1998/99	2008/09
Old-Age Grant	1 812 695	2 390 543
War-Veterans' Grant	9 197	1 500
Disability Grant	633 778	1 286 883
Foster Care Grant	46 696	474 759
Child-Dependency Grant	16 835	107 065
Child-Support Grant	21 997	8 765 354
Total	**2 540 998**	**13 026 104**
Growth rate	5%	5,2%
Grant-in-Aid	8 496	46 069

Source: *Development Indicators, 2009*

fraud and corruption in the social-security system consist of:

- a toll-free national security fraud hotline (0800 60 10 11) that operates 24 hours a day, seven days a week
- an e-mail address (fraud@socdev.gov.za) and a free-call fax-service number (0800 61 10 11).

As part of the Anti-Corruption and Fraud Prevention Strategy, internal control systems have been improved, and forensic and investigating teams deployed in all provinces.

By the end of 2009, the department had brought 2 000 civil servants to book who were found to have defrauded the grant system. Sassa has turned its attention to people in the private sector who are defrauding the social grants system.

Improving community development and service delivery

During the 2008/09 financial year, the Department of Social Development reached a number of milestones with respect to the development of a community development policy framework.

A major outcome of this process was the establishment of a reference group and interdepartmental task team to drive and provide advice on community development policy issues. To inform the policy-development process, an audit report on policies and legislation, which impact directly and indirectly on community development, was printed and disseminated to stakeholders. Information gathered through the national and provincial consultation workshops was consolidated into a draft policy framework.

Uniform and improved community development practice

The department has partnered with the South African Qualifications Authority for the generation and registration of unit standards and qualifications for community development.

The development of core unit standards of the Community Development Further Education and Training College Certificate at National Qualifications Framework (NQF) Level Four has been developed. By August 2009, eight new unit standards at NQF Level Three had been developed and two generic unit standards at NQF Level Four had been taken for consultation with stakeholders.

Another notable achievement was a skills audit of 927 community-development practitioners (CDPs), which was carried out in 2008/09. The skills audit provides information on the geographical spread and skills requirements for CDPs.

Professionalising community development

During 2008/09, the department established a database of CDPs. The National Community-Development Professionalisation Task Team to drive the professionalisation process that will eventually lead to the registration of practitioners with the South African Council for Social Service Professions (SACSSP) has been established. The professionalisation process is not limited to the Department of Social Development's CDPs but embraces all other practitioners in different departments. The SACSSP plays a crucial advisory role in this process.

Meaningful participation in community development

The department conducted a study to assess challenges and support required by community-based organisations (CBOs) in relation to the coordination and integration of services at a local point.

A major outcome of the study was the development of a draft tool for the support of CBOs. Consultations on the draft tool were expected to be carried out during the 2009/10 financial year.

A notable result of a seminar on integrated service delivery in community development was the training of 86 CDPs in the integrated development training processes.

About 90% of trained CDPs underwent competency assessments for certification by an accredited service-provider. The department also successfully coordinated and compiled two integrated sustainable rural development/urban renewal programme reports.

Responding to the impact of HIV and AIDS

The National Strategic Plan (NSP) for HIV and AIDS and Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) 2007 – 2011 serves as South Africa's primary HIV and AIDS policy document. Recognising the growing need to combat the further spread of the pandemic, the plan hinges on four key priorities, namely:

- prevention
- treatment, care and support
- monitoring, research and surveillance
- human rights and access to justice.

The sustained national response is beginning to pay some dividends as data indicates that the infection rate among women younger than 20 had decreased significantly while the average national HIV prevalence among young pregnant

women had shown signs of stabilisation in the three years to 2006.

The Department of Social Development has also developed a framework for an integrated and coordinated response to HIV and AIDS.

The framework includes sourcing reliable research and information; providing social protection to those infected and affected, especially children; protecting children's rights; providing services; special programmes such as the HCBC Programme; empowering women; and capacitating officials to deal with HIV and AIDS.

Partnerships with other government departments, NGOs, CBOs, FBOs, the business sector, volunteers and international agencies underpin the department's response to HIV and AIDS.

The main objectives of the Gender, HIV and AIDS Programme are to:

- facilitate the mainstreaming of HIV and AIDS into policies, and of gender into HIV- and AIDS-prevention programmes
- monitor the development and implementation of policies and programmes.

HIV and AIDS Youth Programme

The expansion of the loveLife Groundbreaker Partnership Programme aims to strengthen the loveLife Mphintshi Initiative by linking it to the EPWP and the prevention programme in relation to HCBC and support.

The HIV and AIDS Youth Programme's services now reach marginalised and vulnerable youth in rural areas. It focuses on preventing the spread of HIV and AIDS among young people. Behaviour-changing programmes have been implemented to help reduce vulnerability.

HIV and AIDS Workplace Policy and Strategy

The Department of Social Development's HIV and AIDS Workplace Policy and Strategy is managed according to strategic focus areas.

In addition, a set of indicators has been developed to monitor the implementation of the workplace strategy.

Research has been undertaken to monitor the HIV and AIDS Workplace Policy and Strategy, and assess related capacity-building and training needs. The impact of the department's HIV and AIDS workplace initiatives will also be assessed. The aim is to develop a comprehensive programme that addresses, among other things, sexual behaviour and creates awareness about accurate and scientific facts on HIV and AIDS.

The National Action Committee for Children Made Vulnerable by HIV and AIDS (NACCA) established reference teams to accelerate the implementation of the National Action Plan (NAP) for Children Made Vulnerable by HIV and AIDS, 2006 – 2008 and to ensure that critical focal areas towards the implementation of the NAP received urgent priority. A review of the NAP 2006 – 2008 was completed and the draft report circulated for input. A draft NAP 2009 – 2011 has been developed and circulated for final input.

A situational analysis of child-headed households in South Africa was conducted and the subsequent report disseminated to organisations and participants during feedback workshops conducted in all the provinces.

HIV and AIDS advocacy, awareness and outreach

Achieving a meaningful and clear understanding of the scientific facts about HIV and AIDS will lead to individual self-management regarding the risk of HIV infection. The awareness programme has the following main pillars:

- disclosure
- communication
- rights
- facilitation.

The programme also deals with the physical and emotional consequences of HIV and AIDS. It addresses the following challenges:

- the lack of accurate and current information on HIV and AIDS
- the lack of access to care, support, treatment and new healthcare developments
- discrimination against the infected and affected.

The programme aims to involve people living with HIV and AIDS in initiatives that directly help affected and infected people to alleviate stigmatisation.

The prevention of STIs and HIV was a priority during 2008/09, and the department contributed to the country's STI and HIV NSP's objective of reducing new HIV infections by 50% by 2011. To realise this goal, the department signed an MoU with loveLife and the Planned Parenthood Association of South Africa and piloted its monitoring and evaluation tool for prevention in five provinces. The department also carried out an assessment of available information, education and communication material on loveLife sites. A situational analysis was undertaken in all provinces to assess the alignment of prevention work

to the NSP and capacity of NGOs to carry out behaviour-change programmes.

Furthermore, the department developed awareness and promotional material, some of which was distributed at events such as the STI Week, Candlelight Memorial, World AIDS Day, the South African World AIDS Conference and Human Rights Day. Prevention programmes for out-of-school youth have been developed through loveLife, while gender mainstreaming and capacity-building for partners awaits the finalisation of the situational analysis report. Programme outlines for youth- and gender-behaviour change have been developed.

Care and support

HCBC is the provision of comprehensive services, including health and social services, by formal and informal caregivers in HCBC and support programmes.

The HCBC Programme has been prioritised as a cost-effective response substituting for a significant proportion of AIDS-related hospital care. The EPWP is a critical component of the effort to deliver holistic HIV and AIDS and tuberculosis-related services. It represents a strategic opportunity to address key pressure points in current interventions.

The departments of social development and of health have taken joint responsibility for implementing the HCBC Programme nationally. HCBC organisations use the community-driven model in providing care and support to people affected and infected by HIV and AIDS, orphans and vulnerable children and child-headed households, including people suffering from other medical conditions. Government is the main source of funding for HCBC organisations. By September 2009, a total of 42 827 community caregivers received stipends. Of this number, 30 932 received a stipend of R1 000 while 11 895 received a lower stipend.

The 2008/09 financial year saw the development of a policy framework for HCBC. The policy sets parameters of practice for the establishment and implementation of a comprehensive and integrated support programme within HCBC in South Africa. The goals of the policy were refined to include monitoring and evaluation of HCBC.

Similarly, a module for monitoring and evaluating HCBC was developed and the data-collection tools for the module implemented by 28 HCBC organisations in KwaZulu-Natal and North-West.

The department continued to prioritise training for caregivers. As a result of this, 41 908 community caregivers received accredited training in terms of NQF levels one to four through NGOs.

Draft modules on psychosocial care and support were also developed as part of the implementation of the NAP on psychosocial support for children and adults living with HIV and affected by AIDS.

Services to orphans made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS

A policy framework for orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS was developed, which reflects the collective commitment of government, FBOs, CBOs, civil society and the business sector, and serves as a guiding tool to all people involved in HIV and AIDS and in the children's sector. It seeks to reinforce existing commitments and efforts to create a supportive and enabling environment for children.

An NAP was then developed to clearly define the value-adding role of various stakeholders in addressing the social impact of HIV and AIDS.

The Department of Social Development is developing a national database of orphans and vulnerable children (OVC), which will include child-headed households. The programmes that are in place to assist OVC include access to treatment, food, skills training and psychosocial support.

Each community should have a childcare forum that works with social workers, welfare organisations and other community structures to ensure that identified OVC receive appropriate services.

The department has established a number of community-based drop-in centres where children are given meals and a packed lunch before they go to school. Caregivers at drop-in centres also assist children from child-headed households with homework and involve them in life-skills programmes.

Partnerships

The department continues to strengthen its partnerships with national and international organisations involved in the fight against HIV and AIDS.

The department chairs the NACCA, which is a multisectoral team consisting of government, FBOs, CBOs, civil society, the business sector, the United Nations (UN) Children's Fund and Save the Children, focusing on the care and support of OVC.

Faith-based organisations and the business sector

The department has strengthened its partner-

ship with churches and other FBOs, the business sector, volunteer organisations and individuals, to assist with poverty-relief, HIV and AIDS, and social-grant registration programmes.

Promoting and protecting the rights of vulnerable groups

Children and youth

South Africa has acceded to and signed the UN Convention on the Rights of the Child, the African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the Child and other related conventions and protocols. The aim is to provide care and protection to all children, including OVC, guided by the international and national legal framework.

The national guiding tools to protect and care for children include the Constitution, the Child Care Act, 1983 (Act 74 of 1983), as amended, the *White Paper for Social Welfare (1997)* and the Children's Act, 2005 as amended. Section 137 of the Children's Act, 2005 proposes new child-protection measures for child-headed households. This section defines those children who can be regarded as child-headed households, makes provision for appointing an adult for supervising a child-headed household and allows children in child-headed households to access social grants and other material assistance.

Statutory services and community-based care services are rendered to enable orphans to continue living with their siblings in their parental homes.

Statutory services rendered to these households include:

- Therapeutic counselling: The aim of therapeutic counselling is to help family members deal with personal problems, difficulties and traumas.
- Adult supervision: In relation to adult supervision, an adult in the nearby surrounding is identified to provide the child-headed household with regular parental care and guidance. The adult supervisor stays at her or his respective home, but keeps constant supervision over the family. This is an out-of-court arrangement, but the social worker is expected to provide overall supervision.
- Poor relief and other material assistance: Food parcels and other forms of assistance are provided to child-headed households as a temporary intervention while the social worker is planning for a permanent intervention.

Children are assisted to apply for social grants they are entitled to, for example the CSG and Foster-Care Grant.

Community-based care services are rendered at drop-in centres or HCBC centres. The services are as follows:

- provision of cooked meals and food parcels
- assistance with homework for children who are attending school
- recreation
- capacity-building on parenting and life skills
- psychosocial care and support
- income-generating programmes
- provision of ECD services.

There are certain programmes such as the Isibindi Model that is used by the National Association of Child and Youthcare Workers and the Iso Labantwana and Eye on the Child as applied by Child Welfare, which have special protective measures for vulnerable children at family and community level. The provincial departments of social development support and fund these projects.

The increasing numbers of OVC in the country remain an area of major concern. Since the onset of the global financial downturn, many organisations, particularly those working with children, have reported a dramatic increase in cases of child abandonment as many families are battling to cope.

It is well recognised that the majority of children are rendered vulnerable by poverty and all its associated challenges such as HIV and AIDS. The combined effects of these factors present the greatest threat to the Government's ability to achieve its objectives and commitments towards the realisation of children's rights as enshrined in the Constitution.

In November 2009, the Department of Social Development and the German Development Bank signed a R76-million deal to improve the living conditions of child- and youth-headed households in South Africa.

The department will equip the children with life skills and ensure access to improved services offered by refurbished and adequately equipped community care centres.

The programme will be implemented over a period of three years in the Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal provinces.

The agreement follows a relationship between the two parties that began in 2007 with the commissioning of a study on child-headed households in South Africa.

The purpose of the study was to assess the needs of child-headed households and to identify services and additional resources that might be used to support them.

In 2008/09, the number of children who had become orphaned and vulnerable was estimated at 1,5 million, with the largest number in KwaZulu-Natal, the Eastern Cape and Gauteng, respectively. This number is expected to reach two million in 2010.

Together with the UN Children's Fund, the Department of Social Development launched a surveillance system for maternal orphans. Through this system, the department is able to identify, monitor and locate orphaned children in South Africa. Most importantly, this system will enable the department to effectively collaborate with other government departments and NGOs to provide services in the identified areas.

One of the department's key interventions in the care and protection of children is alternative care, which is legislated in terms of the Children's Act, 2005. Alternative care refers to the care of children outside their parental homes. With the exception of adoption, foster care and child and youthcare centres are temporary forms of alternative care.

Adoption is the traditional method of care in the field of child welfare and has for many years been regarded as the most effective means of providing a permanent and stable family life for children in distress. The Government prefers adoption as it provides stability, long-term family relationships and gives a child a sense of belonging.

The annual statistics show that adoption cases remained static over the last five years in comparison to foster care, which has seen an exponential increase. By July 2009, a total of 511 479 children were in foster care while 80 000 were in adoption. The low take-up rates in adoption can be attributed to lengthy court procedures and the general lack of information on this matter. To address this, the department has developed an adoption strategy which seeks to:

- increase the number of local adoptions
- increase the number of prospective adoptive parents locally and reduce placement of children through intercountry adoption
- make communities aware of adoption services
- contribute towards reducing the number of children placed in foster, child and youthcare centres.

In addition, the Department of Social Development appointed the Human Sciences Research Council to conduct a study into the understanding, perceptions and beliefs of adoption. The study will be conducted in four provinces. The findings of the study will assist the department to identify barriers that prevent people from adopting children as well as introduce appropriate programmes and services to promote adoption.

The department aims to put into practice the *Register on Adoptable Children and Prospective Adoptive Parents*, as legislated in terms of Section 232 of the Children's Act, 2005 in 2010. The department and adoption service-providers will then be able to ensure the placement of children within the country. The department aims to adhere to the subsidiary principle of the Hague Convention on Intercountry Adoptions, which states that all local placements in the child's country of origin need to be explored before intercountry adoption can be considered.

By late 2009, the Department of Social Development had 238 registered children's homes and 48 places of safety throughout the country. In terms of the Children's Act, 2005, all these facilities should be transformed into child and youthcare centres so that they can provide appropriate services to children.

In September 2009, the department conducted a national audit of registered and unregistered child and youthcare centres. The findings of the study will assist to determine the nature of services provided in these facilities as well compile a database of all child and youthcare centres.

The department's ability to respond effectively to the growing number and needs of OVC is continually hampered by the critical lack of social-service professionals. As a result, social work has been declared a scare skill profession. To address this, the department launched a recruitment and retention strategy for social workers in 2009. The strategy aims to entice prospective students and revive interest in the social-work profession.

The Department of Social Development has committed itself, as per the Integrated Plan on ECD, to increase the number of ECD sites from where practitioners are selected for training.

The ECD sites will also be provided with subsidies for children from poor households.

The Social Protection and Community Development Cluster had registered 688 ECD sites by the end of September 2009 and 8 014 new children were subsidised, bringing the total number of children receiving subsidies to 419 217. This number is expected to increase as new facilities are registered.

International social services (ISS)

ISS are rendered to clients in need of intercountry social services to and from South Africa, focusing on unaccompanied minors.

The South African ISS Unit works with other ISS offices worldwide. There is a good network of ISS branches, affiliated bureaus and correspondents.

There is also close collaboration and overlap on enquiries with regard to adoptions.

The ISS Unit has initiated training at provincial level to streamline referral processes in the sector across partner departments and NGOs.

Childline South Africa

Childline offers a toll-free crisis line (0800 55 555) to children and families across South Africa on a 24-hour basis. The line provides immediate assistance to children and families in crisis who need counselling and information.

Childline is a non-profit organisation (NPO) that works collectively to protect children from all forms of violence and create a culture of children's rights in South Africa.

Programmes delivered through the provincial offices include:

- crisis line
- child rights, prevention and education
- training of volunteers
- training of other professionals who work with child protection and children
- therapy for abused and traumatised children and their families
- court preparation of child witnesses
- networking and coordination
- advocacy.

Programmes delivered through the national office are:

- training and education
- analysis of law and policy
- lobbying and advocacy
- networking and coordination.

Social-crime prevention

Probation services

The Department of Social Development is implementing the Probation Services Act, 1991 (Act 116 of 1991), as amended, and at national and provincial levels provides early intervention services and prevention programmes to offenders and victims of crime.

The National and Provincial Probation Service Coordinators' Forum meets on a regular basis to deal with service-delivery issues pertaining to children awaiting trial, especially their removal from correctional facilities.

Provinces have increased the number of diversion programmes to ensure that children are diverted from the criminal justice system. One such centre is the Mangaung One-Stop Youth Justice Centre in the Motheo District in the Free State.

Home-based supervision is proving to be a successful programme for any high-risk child or child in conflict with the law. It is a cost-effective manner of bringing about behavioural changes within these children. The parents have to be co-responsible in dealing with their children to achieve the desired changes. Different programmes can be used during home-based supervision. The assistant probation officer is responsible for supervision but the probation officer remains the case manager. Regular consultations should take place between the probation officer and assistant probation officer to achieve the best results.

Overcrowding in prisons remains a concern. The national office and provinces have developed an action plan to ensure that children do not await trial in prisons.

The focus of the action plan is to provide secure-care facilities.

The 2008/09 financial year witnessed the finalisation of the reception, assessment and referral (RAR) guidelines; home-based supervision guidelines; and a national resource directory of services within the probation practice. It is envisaged that the guidelines will guide all assistant probation officers rendering home-based supervision services. RAR guidelines will also guide probation officers in running and managing assessments within the RAR centres.

During 2008/09, the department conducted a pilot programme in six correctional facilities for children awaiting trial. These services were provided by Khulisa after negotiations with the Department of Correctional Services. By the end of March 2009, a total of 1 406 children had participated in the Mirror Project in all six correctional facilities.

Together with the SACSSP, the department embarked on an initiative that saw the reorientation and training of 308 assistant probation officers. The intention of the initiative was to register the officers with the Council for Social-Service Professions as social auxiliary workers focusing on probation services.

The development of the Social Crime Prevention Strategy and the blueprint for minimum norms and standards for secure care centres were set in motion during 2008/09.

Victim-Empowerment Programme (VEP)

The VEP aims to lessen the long-term impact of crime by proactively tending to the needs of all

victims of crime and violence, with a special focus on women and children.

It also ensures that the implementation of such programmes and policies is monitored and evaluated.

The year 2009 marked the 11th anniversary of the VEP. Through the VEP, the Department of Social Development has scored several achievements. These include the establishment of 89 shelters to cater for abused women in the country. In 2001, there were only 39 shelters, which were mostly operated by civil-society organisations.

To provide better services to victims of domestic violence, the department reviewed the policy framework and strategy for shelters for victims of domestic violence in South Africa.

The policy framework will provide guidance to service-providers helping abused women in shelters and ensure that their services are aligned to the Victim's Charter. The *Resource Directory for VEP Services* has been reviewed and finalised and the audit of services completed in March 2009.

The department developed the Strategy on the Engagement of Men and Boys in the Prevention of Gender-Based Violence. It is an initiative to encourage the involvement and participation of men and boys in gender equality with special focus on the prevention of gender-based violence. The strategy was piloted for six months in North West as a trial run before the roll-out to other provinces.

The department, in consultation with provinces, also developed guidelines for victims of rape, domestic violence, violent crimes and human trafficking in 2008. The National Policy Guidelines for Victim Empowerment were approved by the justice, crime-prevention and security and social clusters. These policy guidelines will provide strategic direction to the sector and ensure availability of resources to implement programmes to support and protect victims of crime and violence.

The department developed an integrated VEP Strategy 2008 – 2010 with the National VEP Management Forum, which will guide the implementation of the policy guidelines by various departments and the various forums within the sector.

In celebrating the 10th anniversary of the VEP, the department, together with the UN Office on Drugs and Crime (UNODC), held the National VEP Conference in KwaZulu-Natal in August 2008 to commemorate the achievements of the VEP and plan for the next 10 years

In celebrating the 16 Days of Activism for No Violence against Women and Children, the department, led by the former Deputy Minister of Provincial and Local Government, played a critical role in all national functions.

The department also hosted a national event in November 2008 in partnership with the North West and UNODC to commemorate 16 Days of No Violence against Women and Children and to launch a one-stop centre for victims of abuse in Vryburg.

National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime

The *National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime*, which was launched during the 16 Days of Activism for No Violence Against Women and Children Campaign in December 2004, is updated annually in collaboration with the provincial VEP managers or coordinators and their provincial counterparts.

In July 2009, the Minister of Social Development, Ms Edna Molewa, launched the National Policy Guidelines and the *Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime*.

Care and support to families

The department developed and finalised a strategy for services to families of victims to promote coordinated and integrated services to them.

The department provided training on family-preservation services to capacitate social-service professionals to deliver services on all levels. The training programme was conducted in three provinces, and 40 service-providers were trained in each province.

The *Training Manual on Services to Families in Crises* has been approved.

In addition, the Framework of Positive Values and Guidelines for Implementation were approved during 2008/09. The Social Development Strategy for Services to Women has been redrafted and was expected to be finalised in the 2009/10 financial year.

Qualitative research on indigenous knowledge systems and practices that characterise functionality and dysfunctionality of South African families was conducted in provinces. A resource directory for services and programmes for families was developed and will be used to draft a migration plan where there are gaps in terms of services.

During 2008/09, the department, together with provinces and other stakeholders, celebrated the national and international days for families. The International Day for Families (IDF) was celebrated in partnership with the Mayor of eThekwini on 15 May 2008 and an organisation on positive values was launched.

The theme for the IDF was *Fathers and Families: Responsibilities and Challenges*. The National Day for Women was celebrated in August 2008, under the theme *Financing Gender Equality: Women in Leadership Fighting Poverty*.

Prevention and treatment of substance and drug abuse

At the release of the *UN 2009 World Drug Report* in July 2009, the Central Drugs Authority (CDA) announced that drug consumption in South Africa was twice the world norm and that the use of cocaine and dagga had increased by 20% in two years.

In 2006, 2,52 million people were using dagga. This increased to 3,2 million in 2008. According to the *UN 2009 World Drug Report*, the use of cocaine increased from 0,24 million in 2006 to 0,29 million in 2008. However, the use of heroin decreased by 20% during the same time period.

The number of South Africans in treatment for cocaine addiction increased from 1,5% in 1996 to 17,5% in 2008.

The report stated that 15% of South Africa's population had a drug problem.

A negative effect of globalisation is that South Africa has become situated at the centre of the world drug trade, being a conduit for the transfer of drugs to other destinations.

Dagga and alcohol are still the most abused substances. An estimated 2,2 million people use dagga or cannabis, followed by cocaine, heroin, speed, LSD, hashish, ecstasy, tik and others.

The social cost of illicit drug use has not been officially calculated, but up to 12 million family members of drug users face emotional and financial strain. In addition, drug usage has a negative effect on transport safety. A third of heavy-duty long-distance drivers admit to using drugs to relax and stay awake. The main drugs used in this instance are alcohol and dagga.

A conservative estimate of the economic costs to South Africa of alcohol abuse, based on research studies conducted in other countries, is between R8,7 billion and R17,4 billion a year. The social costs are also enormous. About 11 million family members have to endure the turmoil of living with problem or risky drinkers. Risky drinking affects 17,5 million South Africans. Harmful drinking is defined as people drinking first thing in the morning, drinking to the point of intoxication and taking alcohol between mealtimes.

The Ke Moja Campaign, launched in the Western Cape, is a prevention programme that targets the youth. "Ke Moja" means "no thanks", and the project aims to inform and educate the public about the dangers of drugs, as well as to mobilise them, particularly children and the youth, to say no to substance abuse.

Children and adolescents make up over half of South Africa's population. According to the South African Community Epidemiology Network on Drug Use, an increasing number of young patients is being admitted to rehabilitation centres.

The Ke Moja Campaign communicates to the youth in their own language the negative effects of drugs. In 2008/09, it reached over 20 million children.

The Prevention and Treatment of Substance Abuse Bill was passed by Parliament in November 2008. It aims to combat substance abuse through:

- prevention
- early intervention
- treatment
- reintegration programmes.

The Youth Best-Practice Treatment Model was developed, and training provided countrywide to facilitate the roll-out of the model. It proposes essential elements to be considered when offering treatment to youths in residential facilities.

Successful combating of the drug problem requires the application of three elements in an integrated and balanced manner. These are:

- supply reduction through law enforcement
- demand reduction through, among other things, prevention strategies
- harm reduction through treatment and social support.

During 2008/09 the department started with the implementation of minimum norms and standards for inpatient treatment centres in nine treatment centres located in Mpumalanga, North West, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

The Mini Drug Master Plan was approved and distributed for implementation. Capacity-building on the implementation of the National Drug Master Plan was held in Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal and the Western Cape. Two hundred service-providers were trained in Limpopo and Gauteng.

People with disabilities

In 2009, following the appointment of the new

Youth Development Month is held every June. Activities include Youth Day on 16 June, the National Entrepreneur Exhibition and National Volunteer Week.

administration, the Ministry of Women, Children and People with Disabilities was created. There are about four million people with disabilities in South Africa, with the majority being women.

The implementation of a common tool to assess disabilities has been put on hold pending the amendment of the Social Assistance Act, 2004 in the 2009 Parliamentary cycle. In the meantime though, the Department of Social Development has appointed a 40-member panel of tribunals to deal with appeals submitted for all grants.

In 2008/09, the department finalised the Implementation Strategy for the Policy on Disability.

The *White Paper on an Integrated National Disability Strategy (1997)* provides a policy framework for implementation across the whole of society and through all spheres of government. The National Skills Development Strategy calls for 4% of all people who obtain training to be people with disabilities.

The Department of Social Development supports the following national councils:

- National Council for Persons with Physical Disabilities
- Deaf Federation of South Africa
- Epilepsy South Africa
- South African Federation for Mental Health
- Cancer Association of South Africa.

The National Youth-Development Agency (NYDA) aims to create and promote coordination in youth-development matters. The NYDA resulted from the merger of the National Youth Commission and Umsobomvu Youth Fund.

The NYDA was formally launched on 16 June 2009, as pronounced by President Jacob Zuma in his 2009 State of the Nation Address. The launch formed part of the National Youth Month events championed by The Presidency.

As the primary custodians of youth development in the country, the NYDA's mandate is to:

- advance youth development through guidance and support to initiatives across sectors of society and spheres of government
- embark on initiatives that seek to advance the economic development of young people
- develop and coordinate the implementation of the Integrated Youth Development Plan and Strategy for the country.

The functions of the NYDA include the following:

- National Youth Service and social cohesion
- economic participation
- policy, research and development
- governance, training and development
- youth advisory and information services
- National Youth Fund.

Youth development

Youths form a significant percentage of the South African population. According to the results of *Census 2001*, 18,1 million people are youth between the ages of 14 to 35 years. This equates to 40,5% of the total population. Youths are thus a powerful resource for development and are critical actors in the realisation of the millennium development goals (MDGs).

Youth-work professionalisation

In March 2009, the department hosted the National Youth Policy Consultative Conference. The *Research Report on the State of Youth Work in South Africa* was launched and finalised. The process of professionalisation is continuing and the declarations of the conference clearly give direction to the process of professionalising youth work.

Regulating youth volunteerism

The 2008/09 financial year saw the hosting of four roundtables under the themes:

- *Youth Volunteers for Development*
- *Creating an Enabling Environment for Youth Volunteerism in the Private Sector*
- *Creating an Enabling Environment for Youth Volunteerism in the Public Sector*
- *Strengthening Youth Volunteerism in Civil Society.*

A draft framework on youth volunteerism has been consolidated and still requires further consultation.

Policy on youth

The goal of the National Youth Policy is to produce empowered young people who are able to realise their full potential and understand their roles and responsibilities in making meaningful contributions to the development of a non-racial and prosperous South Africa. The cultivation of the youth sector must be an integral part of economic development. Sustained growth needs to be achieved through community and youth empowerment, creating an enabling environment that allows all sectors of society access to nationwide prosperity.

Improved services for youth

The Department of Social Development developed and distributed the Youth Service Programme Toolkit to all provinces. To improve service for

youth development, the department facilitated the establishment of youth directorates in five provinces.

United Nations Population Fund (UNPFA) Third Country Support Programme for South Africa

The UNPFA and other UN partners have introduced a third cycle of assistance to South Africa in the form of the Third Country Support Programme, contextualised within the UN Development Assistance Framework.

The overall goal is to improve the quality of life by contributing to reversing the spread of HIV, reducing gender inequities in the AIDS pandemic, enhancing the centrality of population issues in development policies and programmes, and strengthening the integration of population factors in the national development agenda.

These areas reflect national priorities, articulated in government's Vision 2014. They are contextualised within the MDGs and the government-prepared country analysis, which was adopted as the basis for development cooperation with all partners. Implementation of the projects will involve and benefit all nine provinces.

The duration of the Third Country Programme from 2007 to 2010, and a total of $13 million has been pledged by the UNFPA to support the implementation of identified projects.

Welfare services

Remuneration of social workers

The process of regrading social workers was completed and implemented at national and provincial levels. Social workers on salary levels seven to 12 were regraded. The Minister of Finance allocated funds for revised salary packages to be implemented. The implementation will be evaluated to reduce disparities and ensure uniformity.

Recruitment and Retention Strategy for Social Workers

The broader Recruitment and Retention Strategy for Social Workers addresses the needs of social workers in the public and private sectors. It includes the following key components:

- increasing human resources by recruiting and retaining social workers
- promoting the education, training and development of social workers
- improving the quality of social-work services
- strengthening governance structures within the social-service professions
- promoting occupational safety standards within the workplace
- improving service conditions for social workers
- marketing and promoting social-work services and programmes.

The implementation of the strategy remains vital to the realisation of the goals of the Department of Social Development. To this end, the department was negotiating the Occupation Specific Dispensation for various categories of social workers in the Public Service. This will create better remuneration packages.

Capacity-Building Programme for Social-Service Professionals

In the 2009/10 financial year, the department allocated R210 million to the bursary scheme. There were 3 529 students on the departmental scholarship programme.

Repositioning the developmental social welfare sector

The Integrated Service-Delivery Model for Developmental Social Services aims to implement comprehensive, efficient and quality service delivery that contributes to a self-reliant society.

The model acknowledges the interdependent relationship between the department's main programmes, namely Social Security, Social Welfare and Community Development.

It determines the nature, scope, extent and level of work that constitutes service delivery by developmental social services. It also provides a basis for determining appropriate norms and standards for service delivery, which will, in turn, provide a basis for funding and greater efficiency in service delivery.

Funding of non-governmental organisations

The services rendered by NGOs as partners of the department in service delivery continue to receive support. The department continues to award funds to service-providers at national and provincial level, with 18 national bodies benefitting.

Statutory bodies

National Development Agency

The NDA is a statutory body established in terms

of the NDA Act, 1998 (Act 108 of 1998), to contribute towards the eradication of poverty and eliminate its causes.

This is achieved through the NDA's primary mandate of giving grants to civil-society organisations that implement development projects of poor communities and strengthening the institutional capacity of other civil-society organisations that provide services to poor communities.

The NDA's secondary mandate is to:

- promote consultation, dialogue and sharing of development experience between civil-society organisations and relevant organs of state
- debate development policy
- undertake research and publication aimed at providing the basis for development policy.

The NDA is a critical engine that ensures growth and skills development in the South African economy and plays an important role in the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa.

Relief boards

The Fund-Raising Act, 1978 (Act 107 of 1978), provides for relief boards to offer social relief to people in distress as a result of disasters or their displacement from another country.

Non-profit organisations

Civil society in South Africa is characterised by a variety of organisations of different sizes and shapes across the political, economic and social spectrum of society.

These range from FBOs and CBOs, charities (welfare) and traditional organisations such as social and sports clubs, to a host of other development and social forms of organisations working tirelessly on weaving and maintaining the social fabric of society.

South Africa, like any democratic society, has an enabling legal environment for civil society that supports and encourages the formation of organisations.

The NPO Act, 1997 (Act 71 of 1997), is perceived to be the entry point in the regulatory framework for organisations to derive benefits. It provides a registration facility for all public NPOs that are not organs of the State.

The Directorate: NPOs was established in terms of this Act to increase public access to information on registered organisations. The legal mandate requires that the directorate registers organisations within two months of receipt of a complete application, and provides support for organisations to register and meet reporting requirements.

The registration and reporting of organisations have increased substantially since the inception of the Act in 1998.

In its quest to provide support to civil society and empower communities, the department heightened the registration and maintenance of NPOs. During 2008/09, 14 207 applications were received and processed, and 6 819 of these met the requirements and were registered within two months. This increased the number of registered NPOs to 56 237, representing an increase of over 12% from the 2007/08 financial year.

As more NPOs comply with the requirements of the law, the department's efforts to create a robust and accountable civil society will gain still further force.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Department of Social Development
Estimates of National Expenditure 2009, published by National Treasury
National Development Agency
www.buanews.gov.za
www.childline.org.za
www.dsd.gov.za
www.info.gov.za
www.polity.org.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sassa.gov.za

Suggested reading

Amoateng, AY and Heaton, TB (eds). 2007. *Families and Households in Post-Apartheid South Africa.* Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press.

Bloom, J. 2009. *Rising Tide: How Freedom of Responsibility Uplifts Everyone*. South Africa: SA Institute of Race Relations.

Dawes, A, *et al* (eds). 2007. *Monitoring Child Well-Being: A South African Rights-Based Approach.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Earle, N. 2008. *Social Work in Social Change: The Profession and Education of Social Workers in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Erasmus, J and Breier, M (eds). 2009. *Skills Shortages in South Africa: Case Studies of Key Professions*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Kraak, A (ed). 2009. *Sectors & Skills: The Need for Policy Alignment.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Kraak, A and Press, K (eds). *Human Resources Development Review 2008: Education, Employment and Skills in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Lefko-Everett, K. 2007. *Voices from the Margins: Migrant Women's Experiences in Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Institute for Democracy in Africa (Idasa).

MacDonald, M. 2008. *Why Race Matters in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

Mazonde, IN and Thomas, P (eds). *Indigenous Knowledge Systems and Intellectual Property in the Twenty-First Century: Perspectives from Southern Africa*. Dakar: Council for the Development of Social Science Research in Africa.

Mojapelo, JS. 2009. *The Corner People of Lady Selborne*. Pretoria: University of South Africa (Unisa) Press.

Morgan, R (ed comp). 2008. *Deaf Me Normal: Deaf South Africans Tell Their Life Stories*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Reddy, V, Sandfort, T and Rispel, L (eds). 2009. *From Social Silence to Social Science: Same-Sex Sexuality, HIV & AIDS and Gender in South Africa: Conference Proceedings.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Robbins, S and Robbins, S. 2007. *Slavery Unmasked: Arousing the Conscience of Churches and Civil Society.* Johannesburg: Capsal.

Roberts, B. 2007. *Migration Audit of Poverty Reduction Strategies in South Africa*. Cape Town: Idasa.

Steyn, M and Van Zyl, M (eds). 2009. *The Prize and the Price: Shaping Sexualities in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Terry, G. 2007. *Women's Rights.* Johannesburg: Jacana.

Trotter, H. 2008. *Sugar Girls & Seamen: A Journey into the World of Dockside Prostitution in South Africa.* Auckland Park: Jacana.

Van Dijk, D. 2008. *Beyond Their Age: Coping of Children and Young People in Child-Headed Households in South Africa.* Leiden: African Studies Centre.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

SPORT AND RECREATION

Sport in South Africa transends race, politics and language groups. It unites the country by acting as a powerful nation-building tool.

In 2010, South Africa will host the biggest sport event in the world. From 11 June to 11 July 2010, 32 teams and an estimated 450 000 ticket holders will converge on South Africa for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

South Africa is ready to host the greatest tournament ever and make the nation and the continent proud.

Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA)

The Constitution of South Africa, 1996 affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom.

In line with these constitutional imperatives, the SRSA has been assigned the powers and functions to develop and implement national policies and programmes regarding sport and recreation in the country.

The SRSA acknowledges that sport is a provincial and local competence in accordance with Section Five of the Constitution of South Africa, 1996.

Two public entities assist the SRSA with the delivery of specific interventions in sport and recreation in accordance with the relevant legislation through which they were constituted, namely:

- the South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS), established through the South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport Act, 1997 (Act 14 of 1997)
- Boxing South Africa (BSA) established through the South African Boxing Act, 2001 (Act 11 of 2001).

In the delivery of services, the focus of the SRSA is on its mandate to create an enabling environment to ensure that as many South Africans as possible have access to sport and recreation activities, especially those from disadvantaged communities.

The SRSA endeavours to increase international sport successes by strengthening performances at all levels of participation. A critical area of emphasis in 2009/10 was the responsibilities of the SRSA for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

Furthermore, the SRSA continues to strengthen its international sporting relations to secure more resources for South African sport.

The ministry and the department have built valuable relationships with countries on the continent as well as abroad. The SRSA will continue to support the activities of the Supreme Council for Sport in Africa and its substructure for southern African countries, Zone VI.

The department aims to also provide support to national federations from a government perspective in the hosting of major events in the country.

In its strategic direction, the department endeavours to fulfil its responsibility in such a way that it contributes towards transforming South Africa into a country that truly reflects the diversity of its people.

The SRSA is responsible for using sport and recreation to transform and develop all parts of the country and people equally, in line with the Constitution.

Objectives and strategies

The SRSA's objectives and key strategic focus are to:

- Contribute to a healthy nation by increasing the number of participants and the development of talent within an integrated development continuum. It does this by:
  - supporting an increase in the number of participants in sport and recreation, with a particular emphasis on the youth, women, disabled, the aged and rural participants
  - assisting to identify and develop talent that will address transformation.
  - supporting national federations, individual athletes and teams
  - facilitating the development of sport and recreation clubs
  - assisting with the empowerment of the human resource (HR) base for sports development with special emphases on coaching
  - facilitating the implementation of sport in schools
  - contributing to social cohesion and peace and development
  - contributing to the functioning of a proper development continuum and academy system, streamlining the transition of talented athletes from the mass participation to high-performance programmes
  - assisting with the building and management of basic sports facilities according to the approved National Facilities Plan.

- Assist South African sportspeople to be winners on and off the field, by:
  - contributing to improving the success rate of South Africa in international competitions
  - contributing to the existence of a quality scientific support structure for elite athletes
  - contributing to the creation of an environment conducive to the development of successful athletes
  - supporting role models in sport
  - assisting with the development of a code of ethics for South African sport.
- Raise the profile of sport and recreation through addressing issues of national importance, by:
  - assisting in building a case for sport and recreation
  - contributing towards government priorities through sport and recreation
  - assisting in strengthening South Africa's continental and international relations, specifically United Nations (UN) and UN Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco) resolutions
  - supporting well-organised sport events in South Africa
  - contributing to the promotion of sport tourism to South Africa.
- Streamline sport delivery by means of effective support systems and adequate resources, by:
  - ensuring that systems are in place to accomplish business excellence within the department
  - developing a legislative and regulatory framework for the department to fulfil its obligations
  - endeavouring to unlock the resources required to achieve the objectives of the SRSA
  - providing for dispute-resolution mechanisms.
- Contribute to making the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ the best ever, by:
  - coordinating government responsibilities regarding the 17 guarantees signed with FIFA related to the 2010 World Cup
  - assisting in using 2010 to expand the base for football in South Africa
  - assisting with HR development through the training of volunteers for 2010
  - assisting in making the 2010 World Cup an African event
  - assisting in making a meaningful contribution to the 2010 legacy.

In April 2009, the 2010 National Communication Partnership, a joint effort comprising organisations involved in communication around the FIFA Confederations Cup 2009 and the 2010 FIFA World Cup™, launched a national campaign aimed at building public excitement, awareness and support.

Under the banner *Fly the Flag for Football!,* thousands of South African flags, together with information leaflets, were distributed to travellers and holiday-makers over the Easter Weekend, from Thursday 9 April to Monday 13 April.

Programmes

Sport tourism

In May 2006, the SRSA launched the Sport Tourism Project at the Durban Tourism Indaba.

The primary objective of the project is to attract foreign visitors to play and watch sport and experience traditional tourism attractions such as wildlife and cultural heritage, to boost sport's contribution to the country's gross domestic product. The project focuses on rugby, cricket, running, cycling, golf and the 2010 World Cup.

Tourism is widely recognised as a major growth sector internationally and it is estimated that internationally 30% of all tourism comprises sport tourism.

The project has produced a number of information products aimed at increasing awareness of sport in South Africa. These include a sport atlas showing the location in the country of sport events and infrastructure; an interactive multimedia CD-Rom with text, photos and video clips; a nine-minute presentation DVD; an electronic exhibition kiosk; and a full-colour brochure.

The SRSA aims to enhance the sustainability of the project by:

- promoting "home-grown" events such as the Dusi Canoe Marathon, Pick 'n Pay *Argus* Cycle Tour, Midmar Mile (swimming), Berg and Breede River canoe marathons, and the Comrades and Two Oceans marathons, which attract large numbers of international participants and spectators
- working closely with South African Tourism (SAT) and the Department of Tourism to promote attractive tourist packages for spectators who want to accompany touring sport teams to South Africa
- assisting agencies to attract major international sport events to South Africa.

In 2009, the Sports Tourism Strategy was being developed in cooperation with the Department of Tourism and the SAT. The strategy and policy were expected to be implemented in 2009/10.

This will ensure that the economy benefits from increased hotel occupancy, more internal transport being booked, more purchases being made and word-of-mouth marketing bringing more tourists to South Africa.

Mass participation

The Siyadlala Mass Participation Programme (SMPP) is the cradle of community sport in South Africa. The programme was launched in 2005.

The purpose of the SMPP is to grow communities through sport and to develop sport in the communities and schools through selected sporting activities and the empowerment of communities and schools in conjunction with stakeholders.

The expected outcomes are:

- improved sector capacity (skills development and institutional capacity)
- increased participation
- established structures (hubs and schools).

Subprogrammes

Subprogrammes include the following:

- Community Mass Participation coordinates and builds capacity in the mass participation programmes in identified hubs; promotes special projects on transformation, HIV and AIDS; celebrates national days; and monitors, measures and reports on the impact of the programmes. The subprogramme includes the mass mobilisation and 2010 legacy projects.
- School Sport coordinates, supports, funds, monitors and reports on mass-based school-sport activities.

In 2009, there were 2 910 000 members of community sport and recreation clubs who were actively participating in community sport and recreation.

Some 4 020 people were trained as coaches in the Community Sport and Recreation Programme and 1 300 life-skills training courses were presented, including on HIV and AIDS.

About 600 hubs were established with over 2 706 activity and hub coordinators employed to assist with the delivery of the programme at local level.

Over 5 000 people participated in the 2008 Heroes Walk Against HIV and AIDS Campaign. The walkers included 20 well-known sport heroes and people living with HIV and AIDS.

The 1 557-km route started at the Maponya Mall in Soweto and continued through Potchefstroom, Wolmaranstad, Vryburg, Kuruman, Kathu, Olifantshoek, Upington, Kenhardt, Marydale, Prieska, Britstown, De Aar, Hopetown and Douglas. It ended in Kimberly on 1 December 2008. About 12 municipalities received donations in the form of sporting equipment.

The 2009 event took the participants from Diepsloot near Johannesburg through places such as Bela-Bela, Marken, Tzaneen and Musina before ending on World AIDS Day, 1 December, in Thohoyandou.

According to a report on sports participation trends, released in 2008 by BMI Sporttrack:

- the total number of 13- to 18-year old sport participants exceeded 8,1 million in 2007 but this included those who participated in more than one sport
- there are four sports (soccer, netball, athletics and cricket) with more than 500 000 participants (all categories), a further six sports with more than 200 000 participants, and a further 11 sports with over 100 000 participants.

Women and Sport

This project aims to address the gender imbalances in sport and recreation both at participation and administrative level, by:

- gender mainstreaming
- equity, access opportunities, diversity, legacy, active participation, research, leadership and skills development
- sustainable programmes through tested practice initiatives, including girl-child programmes
- making available resources and capacity
- developing mentorship programmes and role modelling.

The programme also seeks partnerships with relevant stakeholders such as the Department of Basic Education.

Mass Mobilisation Programme (MPP)

The MPP has been tasked with broadening the participation in sport of youth within an integrated development continuum and mass mobilisation for the 2010 World Cup.

The MMP aims to galvanise communities around the hosting of the 2010 World Cup by increasing the spectator and support base for, but not limited to the national football team.

This process is also complemented by the Social Legacy Campaign, which aims to increase the capacity of local youth so that they are able to manage and coordinate sport by themselves, thereby directly influencing the improvement of their social environment through the use of sport as a development tool.

Roadshows

The primary focus of the roadshows was to galvanise communities around the 2010 World Cup.

The roadshows were conducted in partnership with the Organising Committee (OC) and the Government Communication and Information System to maximise resources and impact as well as to avoid duplication.

The roadshows were launched in the Kimberly-Galeshewe Stadium in the Northern Cape. Three roadshows were conducted – one in Kimberly in January 2009 and the others in Queenstown and Aliwal-North, Eastern Cape, in February 2009.

As part of the Africa mobilisation, the SRSA and the Youth Development Forum Project arranged the 2009 Peace Caravan tour of the Great Lakes Region in East Africa in March 2009.

This initiative was supported by the OC and the Rwandese Ministry of Sports and Culture and was implemented by the non-governmental organisation Esperance, based in Kigali, Rwanda.

The overall objective of the Peace Caravan was to increase public awareness of peace and cooperation in these formerly war-torn and strife-ridden zones of East Africa, using the enthusiasm for football as a catalyst for lasting positive social change.

Presentations by the groups included football theatrics, six-a-side street-style football matches involving teams made up of both participants and volunteers from the spectators, music and theatre, and football acrobatics.

Indigenous games

Together with the provincial departments responsible for sport and recreation, the SRSA annually hosts the Indigenous Games Festival in celebration of Africa's cultural diversity and in an effort to revive indigenous games. The revival of these games in South Africa evolved as a response to the national call to embrace the African Renaissance.

This revival is intended to popularise those cultural activities that have a particular appeal to vast sectors of the South African society, particularly traditional rural people. Because sport and recreation activities are predominantly practised in urban areas and are largely Eurocentric, the revival of indigenous games is essential to get more South Africans more active.

Indigenous games are a fundamental part of the SMPP, which focuses on both vertical and horizontal sport development. Apart from indigenous games, the programme also incorporates, among other things, an active inner-city programme, Women and Sport, and corporate recreation.

The indigenous games are: ugqaphu/kgati/ntimo, diketo/upuca/magave, morabaraba/mlabalaba, ncuva/ntijwa/tsoro/tshimaya/moruba, dibeke/diwiki/snuka/skununu/umabhorisha, jukskei, kho-kho and iintonga/melamu/iziduku.

The 2009 indigenous games were held in Durban in September. More than 900 participants from all nine provinces competed.

The SRSA participated in the fourth World Trex Traditional Games in Busan, Korea, from 26 September to 2 October 2008. A delegation of 120 participants from all nine provinces showcased South Africa's heritage at the games.

In June 2009, the Nelson Mandela Bay Stadium in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape was the first built-from-scratch stadium to be officially opened for the 2010 World Cup. The stadium hosted its first competitive game on 16 June 2009, when the touring British and Irish Lions rugby team played a local Southern Kings Invitational side.

Recreation Rehabilitation Programme

The project focuses on inmates and aims to promote sport and recreation participation in correctional centres. It also aims to empower inmates in event management and to become activity coordinators in the following activities: general gymnastics, indigenous games, netball, soccer and handball.

Football for Boys and Girls Programme

In mid-2009, the SRSA and the *Kreditanstalt für Wiederaufbau*, a German development bank, were in the process of establishing the Football for Boys and Girls Programme. The programme will have the following as its key components:

- construction of about 120 kick-abouts (smaller-sized football pitches)
- improvement or rehabilitation of about 30 football pitches and the provision of certain basic football equipment
- training and educational activities, including coaches, referees and grounds-maintenance courses, the promotion of football for girls, first aid, conflict resolution, HIV and AIDS and violence prevention.

Depending on community needs, other types of sport and recreation facilities will be constructed. The programme will be implemented in conjunction with the local municipalities as well as soccer and other sports structures.

The municipalities will have to apply to be included in the programme. It is envisaged that some soccer pitches will be completed before June 2010.

School sport

School-sport events include national schools aquatics; national schools athletics; and the South African schools' winter games, summer games and cross country.

In 2005, a framework of collaboration, entitled *Coordination and Management of School Sport in Public Ordinary Schools*, was signed by the ministers of sport and recreation and of education.

The framework document describes the common understanding that the SRSA and the Department of Education have about the important role of physical activity and sport in schools.

Besides emphasising the importance of providing all children with access to physical activity at school, the document also touches on teacher capacity-building, sports facilities and the importance of linking school sport to issues of national importance such as HIV and crime prevention.

The framework describes the responsibility of each of the two government departments as far as school sport goes. It matches levels of responsibility with specific activities and target groups. In broad terms, the Department of Basic Education is responsible for:

- intracurricular activities, including Physical Education in schools
- intraschool activities, including afterschool sport activities
- interschool activities and competitions below regional level
- regional and intraprovincial activities and competitions, in collaboration with provincial sport and education authorities.

The SRSA has established the Directorate: School Sport within the Chief Directorate: Mass Participation.

It consists of the competitive school sport and mass participation in school sport programmes.

It reaches about 8 000 schools competing nationally and focuses on capacity-building, providing sport equipment for use at events and sustaining the programme by supporting local sport assistants and local leagues and providing logistical support.

On 4 September 2009, South Africa launched *Football Friday* in anticipation of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. An initiative that aims to build support and enthusiasm as the countdown to Africa's first FIFA World Cup gains momentum, *Football Friday* encourages South Africans to wear the jersey of the national football team, Bafana Bafana, every Friday until the start of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

It was launched under the banner of the national *Fly the Flag for Football* Campaign. The campaign seeks to popularise the mobilising elements, including encouraging South Africans to fly the South African flag, learn to sing the national anthem and support the national team.

By early 2009, some 16 000 schools were competitive at provincial level and 32 000 at district level.

The cream of South Africa's school-sport talent took part in the National School Winter Games, held in Durban from 12 to 15 July 2009. About 2 230 children participated.

The best of the best in each province competed against each other in four ball sports. The winners took part in the prestigious Confederations of School Sport Association (Cossassa) Ball Games, the primary southern African competition for these sports on school level.

In September 2009, the SRSA hosted an official send-off ceremony for the under-17 South African football, netball and volleyball teams to participate in the Cossasa Games in Swaziland.

The main aim of the games is to expose young South African athletes to high-level competition. With this in mind, SRSA together with the relevant national federations arranged for athletes to undergo three days of intensive training at the High-Performance Centre in Pretoria.

The team consisted of 121 athletes, managers, coaches and officials. The tournament is open to all Southern African Development Community countries (Namibia, Swaziland, Zambia, Zimbabwe, Mozambique, Botswana, Angola, Mauritius, Malawi and Lesotho).

South Africa was the overall winner of the 2008 Cossasa Ball Games.

Legislation

The National Sport and Recreation Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 18 of 2007), aims to, among other things:

- create a new dispensation for sport and recreation via the recognition of the Sports Confederation as the national macro-body

for the promotion and development of high-performance sport in South Africa
- improve the governance of sports federations
- allow the Minister of Sport and Recreation to intervene where the actions of federations threaten to bring sport into disrepute
- address transformation in sport.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

The 2010 FIFA World Cup™ Government Coordinating Unit coordinates all inter- and intragovernment relations, and supports the hosting of the World Cup in South Africa.

In June 2009, South Africa successfully hosted the FIFA Confederations Cup.

During the tournament, South Africans showcased their hospitality and spirit of ubuntu to international visitors.

More than 580 000 people turned up for the 2009 FIFA Confederations Cup, held in Johannesburg, Bloemfontein, Pretoria and Rustenburg.

The success of the Confederations Cup reconfirmed that South Africa will deliver a world-class 2010 World Cup.

Bafana Bafana gave an impressive performance that saw them reaching the semi-finals of the tournament.

By August 2009, progress towards the successful fulfilment of government's 17 guarantees for the delivery of the 2010 World Cup, continued to gain momentum.

Starting from the first guarantee (the issuing of entry and exit permits) to the last guarantee (availability of comprehensive medical services), government and the OC have been working together for the successful implementation of these. Achievements included:
- launching and implementing an event-specific visa in November 2008
- finalising and implementing the Security Plan
- the delivery of elements of the information and telecommunications technology infrastructure, which was successfully tested during the Confederations Cup
- developing and testing transport operational plans
- a steady growth in the number of accommodation establishments signing up
- the testing of social-cohesion initiatives as acknowledged during the Confederations Cup.

In November 2009, South Africa honoured the 32 nations participating in the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ by raising each of their national flags during a ceremony at the South African Football Association headquarters in Johannesburg.

During the final week of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™, 32 teams from across the globe will converge on Alexandra in Johannesburg for a very different festival of football.

The Football for Hope Festival 2010 will assemble all the teams that represent the power of the game for social change.

The teams taking part will represent organisations from around the world that use soccer to tackle such issues as ethnic violence in Israel and Palestine, environmental pollution in the slums of Kenya, HIV and AIDS education in South Africa, landmine eradication in Cambodia, and the gang culture in Equador.

From 4 to 10 July 2010, mixed teams of boys and girls aged 15 to 18 will compete in a fast-paced tournament in a specially built stadium in Alexandra to be crowned Football for Hope world champions on 10 July 2010.

There will be no referees and any disagreements between the teams will be resolved through dialogue.

The symbolic flag-raising ceremony signalled yet another milestone in South Africa's readiness to host the greatest sport tournament in the world. South Africa's flag was the first to be hoisted, as the host country, followed by each of the qualifying teams in alphabetical order.

The final line-up of countries which have qualified for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ is as follows: Nigeria, Cameroon, New Zealand, Japan, the Netherlands, North Korea, South Korea, Australia, United States of America (USA), Brazil, Ghana, England, Paraguay, Spain, Denmark, Cote d'Ivoire, Chile, Germany, Italy, Mexico, Serbia, Switzerland, Argentina, Honduras, Slovakia, Algeria, Portugal, France, Slovenia, Greece, Uruguay and host South Africa.

An estimated television audience of 200 million watched the colourful final-draw ceremony, which was held on 4 December 2009, in Cape Town.

Sports organisations

South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee

Sascoc is recognised by the Minister of Sport and Recreation and is representative of sports bodies, including Olympic national federations.

It is the national coordinating macro-body for the promotion and development of high-performance sport in South Africa, including team presentation, and must consult with relevant sports bodies in this regard.

Sascoc represents Team South Africa for all multicoded sport participating in international games, including but not limited to the Olympic

Games, Paralympic Games, Commonwealth Games and All Africa Games.

Boxing South Africa

BSA is partly funded with public money. Its functions are to promote boxing and protect the interests of boxers and officials. Its main responsibilities are to:

- consider applications for licences from all stakeholders in professional boxing
- sanction fights
- implement the regulations pertaining to boxing
- promote the interests of all stakeholders in boxing.

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport

The SAIDS is the South African national anti-doping organisation, funded by the SRSA. Its mandate is to promote participation in sport, free from the use of prohibited substances or methods intended to artificially enhance performance, in the interest of the health and well-being of sportspeople.

The SAIDS is responsible for developing anti-doping policy and implementing a national anti-doping programme across all South Africa's sporting codes.

By May 2009, it had 53 part-time, accredited doping-control officers based throughout South Africa, trained to international standards, who conducted in- and out-of-competition doping controls on athletes from over 50 sports disciplines, with 53 trained and accredited chaperones to assist the doping-control officers.

The SAIDS is International Organisation for Standardisation 9001:2000 certified in compliance with the International Standard for Testing. This is the internationally recognised benchmark for quality assurance and excellence, and represents the world best-practice in doping control in sport.

The SAIDS' key focus areas are:

- Doping control: The institute conducts a comprehensive, independent and effective national doping-control programme on South African athletes competing at regional, national and international level. In 2008/09, 2 035 doping controls were conducted. The SAIDS also conducts in- and out-of-competition doping controls on international athletes on behalf of international sports federations and other international anti-doping organisations. In 2008/09, SAIDS conducted 218 of these tests.
- Education: The SAIDS provides education, information and awareness for all its target groups, namely athletes, coaches, parents, sports organisations, members of the medical and pharmaceutical and sports-science professions, tertiary-education institutions and the public. Information on national and international anti-doping issues can be accessed on *www.drugfreesport.org.za*.
- Research: The SAIDS conducts sociological research into the knowledge, attitude and use of performance-enhancing drugs among South African sportspeople, for the purpose of planning and implementing effective doping-control and education programmes.
- International collaboration: South Africa is an active participant in the global effort to combat drugs in sport. The SAIDS collaborates closely with its counterparts throughout the world to achieve international harmonisation and the improvement of standards and practices in doping control. South Africa is a member of the International Anti-Doping Arrangement and of the Executive Committee of the Association of National Anti-Doping Organisations.

World Anti-Doping Agency (WADA)

The Africa Regional Office of the WADA was established in Cape Town in 2004 to coordinate the anti-doping activities of the agency throughout Africa.

In April 2009, government announced that the feast of sporting events that were to take place in South Africa over the months that followed, showcased the country as a venue of choice for hosting international sporting events. The "sport bonanza" enabled South Africa to build momentum ahead of the 2009 FIFA Confederations Cup and 2010 World Cup.

The events kicked off with the Indian Premier League (IPL) in May, which was followed by the British Lions rugby tour and the International Cricket Council's Champions Trophy later in the year.

The IPL brought an estimated 50 000 spectators to the country and injected about R1 billion into South Africa's economy with, among other things, over 25 000 bed nights sold.

Six thousand flights were booked locally over the 40 days of the event. Fifty-nine matches were broadcast with a cumulative total television coverage of 177 hours of images of South Africa with backdrops of mountains and seas to an international audience, with ratings being 11% higher than the inaugural event held in India. About 800 000 people watched the matches in the stadiums; 40% of whom were doing so for the first time.

This includes promoting and maintaining effective lines of communication between the WADA and all the relevant stakeholders, governments and public authorities, the broad sports movement, national anti-doping agencies and laboratories.

South Africa continues to serve as the African representative on the Executive Committee of WADA.

International relations

The SRSA has embarked on a concerted effort to promote relations with international parties in the field of sport and recreation. This is done through the two subprogrammes of International Liaison and International Events.

Ten bilateral exchanges were planned for the 2009/10 financial year to contribute to peace and social cohesion and to increase the number of sport tourists visiting the country.

In November 2009, the SRSA hosted the Unesco African Region Conference on Anti-Doping for 53 African sports ministers.

It also hosted the 40th session of the Executive Committee of the Supreme Council for Sport in Africa (SCSA) in April 2008. This was followed by a meeting of the SCSA Zone VI Council of Ministers, chaired by South Africa, in Tlokwe in December 2008.

In July 2009, the SRSA implemented an initial pilot project for Sport for Peace and Development. The SRSA was approached by their counterparts in Burundi in late 2008, requesting South Africa to contribute a variety of sports balls.

The SRSA worked closely with the South African National Defence Force and its mission in Burundi and the balls were handed over to the Minister of Youth, Sport and Culture as part of South Africa's Freedom Day celebrations in April 2009.

In December 2009, South Africa hosted the 2008 Zone VI U20 Youth Games in the North West. Athletes from Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Zambia and Zimbabwe competed in eight sports codes.

2009 sports highlights

Angling

The Protea Carp Angling Team participated in the World Championships in southern France in October 2009, and was, for the second year in succession, crowned the World Champion in the 72-hour fishing format.

Athletics

In April 2009, South African Ernst van Dyk won his eighth Boston Marathon in 1:33,29 seconds – well clear of Japan's Masazumi Soejima, who was almost two kilometres adrift, and Spain's Roger Puigo Verdageur.

In July 2009, Khotso Mokoena continued his world-class form on the tracks of Europe at the 2009 Athletissima Super Grand Prix in Lausanne, Switzerland, when he won the long jump with a distance of 8,05 m.

On 19 August 2009, South Africa's Caster Semenya won the 800 m for women at the International Association of Athletics Federations World Championships in Berlin, Germany – becoming South Africa's first-ever female athletics world champion in the middle distances.

Mbulaeni Mulaudzi was crowned world champion in the 800-m race. A former Olympic silver medallist and indoor world champion, he won the race in 1:45,29.

Mokoena took the silver medal in the long jump at the Berlin World Champions with a distance of 8,47 m.

Biking

In April 2009, world downhill champion Greg Minnaar raced to victory in the final event of the *Union Cycliste Internationale* (UCI) Mountain Bike World Cup in Pietermaritzburg, KwaZulu-Natal. Burry Stander, from Port Shepstone on the KwaZulu-Natal south coast, finished third in the men's cross-country overall and first in the under-23 category.

South Africa hosted the world's leading racers in the second round of the UCI BMX Supercross World Cup in August 2009.

South African competitors won gold, silver and bronze at the 2009 UCI Mountain Bike World Championships in Australia, with Stander being crowned world under-23 cross-country champion in September 2009.

Minnaar just missed out on winning the elite downhill title, while Candice Neethling picked up a bronze medal in the junior (under-19) women's cross country category.

Boxing

In June 2009, Brian Mitchell became the country's first boxer to be enshrined into the International Boxing Hall of Fame in Canastota, New York, USA.

The former world junior-lightweight champion, now a commentator and boxing analyst, was inducted together with Lennox Lewis and Orlando Canizales.

South African fighter Simphiwe Nongqayi beat boxing superstar Jorge Arce to win the Interna-

Team South Africa excelled at the 2009 Global Games for intellectually impaired athletes, which took place in the Czech Republic in July, with swimmer Craig Groenewald winning Best Male Athlete and the men's athletics team ending up in third place overall.

Groenewald, who received the Most Successful Male Athlete Trophy, scored more points than anyone else out of the 818 athletes at the Global Games. He also received the Top Male Swimmer Award as a result of his five individual gold medals and two relay bronze medals.

tional Boxing Federation (IBF) World Junior Bantamweight title in Cancun, Mexico, in September 2009.

In November 2009, Moruti "Baby Face" Mthalane became the new IBF flyweight champion after beating Mexico's Julio Miranda over 12 rounds by points. This was the fourth IBF title won by South Africans in 2009. The other title holders were Simphiwe Nongqayi, Malcolm Klassen and Issac Hlatshwayo.

Cricket

In March 2009, South African batsman Jacques Kallis joined an elite group of cricketers when he became the first South African and only the eighth batsman in history to score 10 000 runs in test cricket. The 33-year-old passed the milestone when he scored his 12th run in South Africa's reply to Australia's 466 all out in the first Castle Lager Test at the Wanderers, Johannesburg.

In the same month, the International Cricket Council (ICC) officially named South Africa as the new host of the biennial Champions Trophy from 24 September to 5 October 2009.

South Africa was recommended by cricket's governing body in the wake of incidents in Pakistan.

In March 2009, the South African and Australian cricket teams were recognised for their achievements over the past year when presentations were made to the respective captains, Graeme Smith and Ricky Ponting, of the Reliance Mobile ICC Test Championship Mace and the Reliance Mobile ICC One-Day International (ODI) Championship Shield in Johannesburg.

The awards are annually presented to the top ranked test and ODI teams, with the annual cut-off date being 1 April.

The World Twenty20 tournament took place in June 2009 in Britain. South Africa reached the semi-final, where they lost to Pakistan.

By August 2009, South Africa was the number one ranked side on the ICC world rankings in both test cricket and the one-day format of the game.

That was the result of Australia's failure to win their test series against England, which finished at The Oval in London on 23 August with England achieving a 2-1 series victory.

South Africa's following test series was against England at the end 2009.

South Africa won the 2009 Hong Kong Cricket Sixes title in November 2009 as Farhaan Behardien hit a six off the final delivery of the tournament to Hong Kong.

In November 2009, South Africa beat Zimbabwe 2-0 in their MTN ODI series. The first victory, by 45 runs at Willowmoore Park in Benoni, was less than convincing, but South Africa hit back in the second match at SuperSport Park, Centurion, to score 331 for five, and then bowl the visitors out for 119 to win by 212 runs.

Cycling

After four months of cycling across Africa, 51 riders from 11 countries taking part in the 2009 *Tour d'Afrique* Bicycle Race and Expedition crossed the finishing line at the V&A Waterfront in Cape Town on 9 May.

The *Tour d'Afrique* features 96 cycling days or stages, averaging 123 kilometres each. The stages are broken up by 22 rest days and two days of travel for a total of 120 days.

Shaun-Nick Bester, racing for the national team, became the first South African junior male to finish on the podium at a top-graded international road cycling tour, when he claimed second place at the Vuelta al Besaya in Spain in June 2009.

In November 2009, South African champion Lynette Burger added the Continental Road Cycling Title to her list of 2009 achievements when she won the Elite Women's Road Race at the African Championships in Windhoek, Namibia.

Golf

In January 2009, Retief Goosen won the Africa Open. It was his first win on the Professional Golfers Association (PGA) Tour since the International in 2005. In March 2009, he won the US PGA Tour's Transitions Championship in Tampa Bay. He also won the Johor Open on the Asian Tour in November 2008.

In September 2009, South African golfer James Kingston won the European Tour's Mercedes-Benz Championship title at Golf Club Gut Lärchenhof in Cologne, Germany. It was his first overseas European tour victory.

On 11 July 2009, South African cricket umpire Rudi Koertzen reached the 200 One-Day International (ODI) milestone when he served in the second ODI between Ireland and Kenya in Dublin. To mark the occasion, Koertzen received a trophy from Cricket Ireland President Arthur Vince on behalf of the International Cricket Council.

His longevity in the sport has helped him to a number of records. He became the second man to do the double of 100 ODIs and 100 tests when he took to the field in the second Ashes test at Lords in July 2009.

He made his debut in a match between South Africa and India in Port Elizabeth in December 1992.

Motor racing

In January 2009, Giniel de Villiers became the first African ever to win the Dakar Rally.

Netball

South Africa took a step towards their goal of qualifying to play in the 2010 Commonwealth Games in Delhi with a 47-33 victory over Fiji in the final of the tri-nations netball challenge in May 2009 at the Rembrandt Hall at the University of Pretoria.

Rugby

The South African women's rugby sevens team put up an impressive show at the International Rugby Board (IRB) Women's Rugby World Cup (RWC) Sevens in March 2009. The IRB Women's RWC Sevens kicked off with 16 teams competing in four pools.

In the first match, South Africa claimed a 17-5 victory over Italy.

The second match saw South Africa winning Uganda 26-0. Unfortunately, the South African side lost their final group game 25-0 against New Zealand, who were reigning world champions in the 15-person version of the game. Spain was the Pool C winners and was beaten 15-7 by South Africa.

With two victories and a single defeat, South Africans ended second in Pool D and qualified for the semi-finals. Australia won by 19-10 and eventually became the first-ever IRB Women's RWC Sevens champions.

In April 2009, the South African Sevens rugby team successfully defended its IRB Sevens Series Adelaide title, establishing a lead in the series standings. In a first ever all-African final, South Africa beat Kenya 26-7.

A 33-10 victory over France and a 34-5 win over the USA on the opening day of the Edinburgh Sevens, the final stop in the IRB Sevens World Series in June 2009, ensured a first-ever overall sevens rugby world title for South Africa.

In May 2009, the Blue Bulls scored eight tries to two against the Chiefs to win the Super 14 for the second time. The final score was 61-17.

In June 2009, the South African under-20 rugby team claimed third place at the IRB Junior World Championship, following their 32-5 victory over Australia in Tokyo, Japan.

The British and Irish Lions rugby tour, which kicked off at the end of May 2009, injected around R1 billion into South Africa's economy.

In June 2009, the Springboks took a 2-0 lead in the three-match series, with a 28-25 victory over the British and Irish Lions in the second test.

Even though South Africa went down 9-28 in the final Test played at Coca-Cola Park in Johannesburg in July 2009, they clinched their first-ever series-victory over the British and Irish Lions.

In July 2009, the Springboks got their Tri-Nations challenge off to a strong start by beating the All Blacks 28-19 in Bloemfontein. The win lifted South Africa above New Zealand into first place on the IRB world rankings.

In 2009, the Springboks make history after beating New Zealand in successive tests in South Africa for the first time in 33 years.

The Springboks strengthened their chances of a third Tri-Nations title after beating Australia 29-17 at Newlands in Cape Town in August 2009. It was their third win in a row in the competition, and solidified South Africa's number one ranking in world rugby.

At the end of August 2009, the Springboks beat the Wallabies 32-25 in Perth with a commanding performance that also netted the Boks a four-try bonus point.

In September 2009, South Africa beat New Zealand 32-29 to win their first Tri-Nations title since 2004. South Africa needed one competition point to win the title and finished with 21 points.

It was the third successive loss by the All Blacks to the Springboks, and the first time since 1949 that they had lost three successive games in the same year to South Africa.

By March 2009, South Africa's journey to the 2012 London Olympic Games was off to a good start as the Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee announced a R400-million grant from the National Lottery Fund. The grant was based on a R100-million-a year payment, with focus on sport being the primary beneficiaries.

In June 2009, South Africa hosted the world's first-ever Social Rugby World Championships.

The championships saw 480 rugby players, representing 16 international teams, converge on the City of Cape Town for a two-week festival of fun, friendship and rugby.

The tournament included a social outreach programme whereby each participating team was given the opportunity to host a coaching clinic for youth in previously disadvantaged communities around Cape Town.

Frik du Preez, Bennie Osler and Barry Heatlie were inducted into the IRB's Hall of Fame at Rugby School in England in October 2009. They joined Danie Craven, who entered the hall in 2007.

South Africa was named Team of the Year by the IRB in November 2009.

Soccer

In March 2009, Bafana Bafana sneaked a 2-1 win over Norway in the Nelson Mandela Challenge in Rustenburg, North West, to pick up their first victory over European opposition since they beat Slovenia 1-0 in the 2002 FIFA World Cup™.

South Africa hosted the Confederations Cup in June 2009. The countries that participated were South-Africa, Iraq, New Zealand, Spain, USA, Italy, Brazil and Egypt.

On 17 June 2009, Bafana Bafana beat New Zealand 2-0 in the 2009 FIFA Confederations Cup match in Rustenburg.

During the Confederations Cup, South Africa managed to advance to the next round despite losing to Group A winners Spain 2-0 in Bloemfontein because Iraq was held to a 0-0 draw by New Zealand in Johannesburg.

South Africa and Brazil dished up an entertaining clash in the semi-finals at Ellis Park Stadium in Johannesburg. Bafana Bafana did not take a step back against their more illustrious opponents. It was an impressive performance from South Africa, although Brazil beat them 1-0.

In September 2009, the eight South Africans who represented the country at the Homeless World Cup in Milan, Italy, were congratulated by Parliament after finishing 16th out of 48 countries.

Special Olympics

In a first for South Africa, a team of 14 intellectually challenged athletes returned victorious from the 2009 Special Olympics World Winter Games, after winning a gold medal in the floor hockey team event in February 2009. The young champions who hail from Limpopo, were the first South African team to bring home a gold medal from the Winter Games.

The 2009 games took place in Idaho, USA, with about 2 500 athletes from 100 countries competing. South Africa's floor hockey team went head to head against teams from Chile, Honduras, Kuwait and the USA before beating Equador 2-0 in the final.

Surfing

Solid two-metre waves at Bluffs Reef proved ideal for South African surfer Jordy Smith as he won the O'Neill Cold Water Classic in Marrawah, Tasmania, in March 2009.

Smith, the world number nine, defeated world number five Damien Hobgood of the USA, with a total heat score of 15,56 to 13,17 (combined two-wave total out of a possible 20) in the final of the six-star World Qualifying Series (WQS) event.

In April 2009, South African surfer Grant "Twiggy" Baker won two categories in the Billabong XXL Global Big Wave Awards at a ceremony in California.

South Africa's surfski paddlers overcame heavy seas to trounce the international opposition at the inaugural Investec Mauritius Ocean Classic, claiming both the men's and women's titles in July 2009.

Durban-based Hank McGregor, who was the best surfski paddler in the world by July, claimed gold after racing for 28 km down the island's southern coastline.

In July 2009, Clint Pretorius won the Dunlop Surf-Ski World Cup held in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal, beating a powerful field of paddlers in 32 km of downwind racing drama to end a long streak of second places in major international races.

Footballers are teaming up with governments, companies and international health campaigners to push for action against malaria ahead of the 2010 World Cup finals in South Africa.

The *United Against Malaria* Campaign, which started in November 2009 and will run until the end of the World Cup, has won the backing of singer Bono, actress Ashley Judd and philanthropist Melinda Gates, wife of Microsoft founder Bill Gates.

Players such as United States of America captain Landon Donovan and the Ivory Coast team have confirmed their support for the campaign, while other prominent footballers backing the movement will be revealed when the campaign is officially launched.

South Africa's swimmers continued their superb form in the Fina/Arena World Cup Series in Stockholm in November 2009, winning six events and setting four World Cup records. These wins included a victory for Darian Townsend over American superstar Michael Phelps in the 200-m individual medley.

Townsend touched in 1:51,79 not far off Ryan Lochte's world record of 1:51,56. Phelps finished second, some distance behind the South African star in 1:53,93.

In August 2009, Travis Logie finished runner-up to French local Joan Duru in the final of the six-star-rated, R1,1-million Sooruz Lacanau Pro at Lacanau Ocean, on the Bay of Biscay coast of France. Logie's result saw him climb from 12th to ninth on the Association of Surfing Professionals WQS standings.

Swimming

In July 2009, Chad Ho made history at the 13th *Fédération Internationale de Natation (Fina)* World Championships in Rome, becoming the first South African to win a medal in the 5-km open-water swim, taking bronze.

In August 2009, Gerhard Zandberg came third in the 50-m backstroke on the final day of the 13th Fina World Championships in Rome as Team South Africa completed a haul of one gold medal, three bronze medals and 21 continental records at the event.

In August 2009, South African Cameron van der Burgh joined the growing list of world-record breakers at the Fina World Championships by posting a time of 26,74 seconds in the second semi-final of the men's 50-m breaststroke.

He was crowned as Aquatics Swimmer of the Year 2009 at a function held on the eve of the Fina/Arena Swimming World Cup in October 2009. He won the 100-m breaststroke in a championship record time of 56:60 seconds on the second day of the Fina/Arena Swimming World Cup at the Kings Park Aquatic Centre, Durban.

Silver medalist at the 2000 Olympics, deaf swimmer and cyclist Terence Parkin, has dominated the Deaflympics like no other athlete, accumulating 29 medals over more than a decade. At the Fina Swimming World Cup in Durban, he showed that he could still challenge the best in the world.

At the 2009 Deaflympics in Taipei, Parkin was unbeaten in the seven swimming events he entered, claiming gold in the 50-, 100-, and 200-m breaststroke, the 200- and 400-m individual medley, and the 200- and 1 500-m freestyle.

The Durban Fina World Cup produced numerous top performances, with Therese Alshammar's world records in the 100-m individual medley and 50-m butterfly the highlights, and Roland Schoeman, who edged out world-record holder Van der Burgh in the 50-m breaststroke, clocking 25:90 seconds to Van der Burgh's 25:94 seconds.

South Africa's swimmers were in superb form at the Fina World Cup in Moscow in November 2009. George du Rand broke the world record in the 200-m backstroke.

He knocked another two seconds off his best, clocking 1:47,08 to smash the previous record set by Austria's Markus Rogan by 0:76 seconds.

Tennis

Fabrice Santoro of France won the Inaugural Soweto Open, beating Rik de Voest of South Africa 7-5, 6-4 in the final at the Arthur Ashe Tennis Complex in April 2009.

In addition to the eight courts already in use at the Arthur Ashe Tennis Complex, another eight are being built, with another R9 million being injected into the facility, to bring the venue up to the standard of an international-class venue.

Two world records at the Fina/Arena Short-Course World Cup meeting in Berlin in November 2009 propelled Cameron van der Burgh to the top of the overall series standings with only one more stop, in Singapore, remaining.

Gerhard Zandberg recorded a victory in the 50-m backstroke, breaking through the 23-second barrier for the first time to edge out world record-holder Peter Marshall by one-hundredth of a second to take the win in an African record of 22,85 seconds.

Roland Schoeman also bettered a world record, but had to settle for second in the 50-m butterfly. Schoeman came second in 21,87 seconds.

Schoeman, though, did win gold in the 50-m freestyle. He set a world cup record, winning in 20,57 seconds.

Acknowledgements

Beeld
South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport
Sowetan
Sport and Recreation South Africa
The Star
www.gov.za
www.news24.com
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sapa.org.za
www.southafrica.info
www.supersport.co.za
www.superswimmer.co.za
www.sa2010.gov.za.
www.pretorianews.co.za
www.iol.co.za

Suggested reading

Black, B. 2007. *Fly-Fishing South Africa's Rivers, Lakes and Surf*. Cape Town: Struik.
Black, B. 2008. *Saltwater Fly-Fishing in South Africa*. Cape Town: Struik.
Dobson, P, Hamilton, T and Knight, M. 2008. *Derby Day: South African Schoolboy Rugby.* Editors B Hepburn, R Kemp, J Nurse. Cape Town: Laugh It Off.
Frost, S. 2008. *Salt on the Sails: 150 Years of the Royal Natal Yacht Club*. Durban: Royal Natal Yacht Club.
Jooste, G. 2007. *Rugby Stories from the Platteland*. Johannesburg: 30° South Publishers.
Jarvis, C. 2007. *South Africa 'n Surf.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Marais, J. 2008. *Great African Adventures: A Guide to the Mother Country's Ultimate Outdoor Adventures.* Cape Town: Struik.
Merrett, C. 2009. *Sport, Space and Segregation: Politics and Society in Pietermaritzburg.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Morgan, P. 2008. *International Rugby Board Rugby Yearbook*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Murray, B and Vahed, G (eds). 2009. *Empire & Cricket: The South African Experience, 1884 – 1914*. Pretoria: University of South Africa Press.
Pennington, S and Berndsen, M (eds). 2007. *2010: Africa's Time Has Come*. (Johannesburg): The Good News.
Pillay, U, Tomlinson, R and Bass, O (eds). 2009. *Development and Dreams: The Urban Legacy of the 2010 Football World Cup*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council Press.
Van der Berg, JW and Burger, W. 2008. *Blue Bulls: 70 Years of Glory*. Johannesburg: Penguin Books.
White, J and Ray, C. 2007. *In Black and White: The Jake White Story*. Cape Town: Zebra Press.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

TOURISM

South Africa has the world's richest floral kingdom and a vast variety of endemic and migratory birds. It is also home to one-sixth of the world's marine species and has more species of wild animals than North and South America or Europe and Asia together. Its diversity, sunny skies and breathtaking scenery make it a popular holiday destination. The 2010 World Cup affords South Africa a once-in-a-lifetime opportunity to showcase the best the country has as a tourist destination.

In 2009, the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism became the Department of Tourism, emphasising the importance of this sector.

Tourism has been identified as one of the key economic sectors with excellent potential for growth.

About 9,6 million foreign tourists visited South Africa in 2008, a 5,5% increase over the 9,1 million foreigners who visited the country in 2007.

The contribution of tourism to South Africa's gross domestic product (GDP) is estimated to have increased from R162,9 billion in 2007 to R194,5 billion in 2008. The estimated number of jobs created directly and indirectly in the economy through tourism increased by 10% from 946 300 in 2007 to 1 041 700 in 2008.

Over two million travellers passed through South Africa's ports of entry (arrivals and departures) in March 2009, Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) announced in June 2009. These travellers were made up of 632 581 South African residents and 1 498 571 foreign travellers.

In March 2009, there were 195 589 same-day visitors and 493 559 overnight visitors (tourists) among the foreign arrivals. The volumes showed an increase of 7,9% (same-day visitors) and 1,9% (tourists) between February 2009 and March 2009. Road transport was the most common mode of travel used by 1 429 920 (67,1%) out of the 2 131 152 travellers. The number of travellers who used air transport was 681 487 (32%).

In March 2009, overseas tourists came mainly from Europe 109 457 (67,3%); followed by North America 23 906 (14,7%); Asia 13 252 (8,2%); Australasia 7 926 (4,9%); Central and South America 4 436 (2,7%); and the Middle East 3 585 (2,2%). According to Stats SA, virtually all tourists from Africa came from the Southern African Development Community SADC countries – 316 556 (96,2%). The distribution of the remaining tourists from Africa was as follows: East and Central Africa 5 946 (1,8%); West Africa 5 649 (1,7%); and North Africa 951 (0,3%).

Business tourism

South Africa has always been popular with international leisure travellers, but it is also fast becoming a preferred business tourism destination. Large international companies are eager to host international events, conferences and trade expos in the country, and business travellers are just as willing to attend.

The Department of Trade and Industry has identified business tourism as a niche tourism segment with growth potential.

For the past few years, South African Tourism (SAT) has focused on building the leisure market with business tourism, previously known as the Mice (Meetings, Incentives, Conferences and Exhibitions) industry, playing a smaller role. In 2005, SAT started to broaden its strategy into business tourism and in 2007, completed the Business Tourism Growth Strategy that highlighted key areas of focus and attractive segments to target.

Business tourism is different from business travel, which is undertaken for the purpose of conducting commercial or formal transactions or activities that are related to one's job, for example visiting a client, signing deals or negotiating a contract (including import/export). Business tourism, on the other hand, is a trip that is undertaken with the purpose of attending a conference, meeting, exhibition or event, or as part of an incentive trip.

While current business-tourism arrivals to South Africa do not fulfil all the objectives of SAT in the way the leisure market does, SAT believes that business tourism has an important role to play in three areas, namely contributing to foreign arrivals, reducing seasonality and transforming the economy by engaging with new and different product offerings.

Business-tourism delegates typically stay for a shorter length of time than leisure travellers, but they contribute to both a higher spend per day and greater distribution across the provinces of the country.

South Africa as a business-tourism destination offers world-class facilities and infrastructure alongside accessible wildlife, luxury and style, inspiring history and diverse cultures. It has a sophisticated business-tourism sector, providing top-class, yet affordable facilities and services,

from state-of-the art convention centres located in major cities, to a wide variety of pre- and post-conference leisure experiences, and all essential support and communications services.

South Africa is fast gaining recognition as a global player in the international meetings market and is ranked 34th on the International Congress and Convention Association's 2008 destination rankings. This includes successful hosting of some of the world's largest and most important meetings.

Business tourism is well positioned for growth after the 2010 FIFA World Cup™, which will leave upgraded infrastructure and new hotels and upgraded airports, further increasing the country's capacity to host large meetings.

In the first nine months of 2008, business travellers spent R2,4 billion in South Africa, 32% more than in the same period in 2007. Although the actual number of business travellers declined during this period, they spent more. The average amount spent per business traveller rose from R760 per day in 2007 to R1 200 per day in 2008.

Business tourism also has lucrative spin-offs for the leisure tourism industry. Business travellers often book tours to explore the region they are visiting, either before or after conferences. Many return to South Africa in subsequent years for holidays with friends and family.

It appears that South Africa is also starting to give shopping destinations such as Dubai a run for its money. The *2006 Annual Tourism Report*, compiled by the SAT Strategic Research Unit, indicated that shopping was the most popular activity across all purposes of visit.

Medical tourism

Medical tourism, or the process of seeking out medical treatment in another country, is a fast-growing source of income. It covers both elective procedures and specialised operations such as joint replacement and spinal fusion.

About 50 developed and developing countries claim medical tourism as a national industry. South Africa has offered these services for some time, but only recently has begun to earn a higher profile for itself in this field.

Most people come to South Africa for cosmetic surgery, but the country's skilled surgeons can also provide organ transplants, cardiac, orthopaedic and obesity surgery, and dentistry.

Of the 9,6 million foreign visitors to South Africa in 2008, it is believed that about 410 000, or 4,3%, were medical tourists.

By the end of 2009, a national strategy for medical tourism was expected to be completed. The Deputy Minister of Tourism, Ms Thokozile Xasa, announced at the inaugural South African Health Tourism Congress, held in Johannesburg in July 2009, that the aim was to further entrench the medical tourism industry in South Africa.

The event attracted around 300 delegates from various divisions of the medical world, including insurance, hospital and government representatives, dentists, doctors, health facilitators and healthcare providers.

Adventure sports

When it comes to adventure sports, South Africa has lots to offer.

The 100-Mile, 50-Mile or 25-Mile Trail Run through the vast Addo Elephant National Park in the Eastern Cape is designed to test trail runners both mentally and physically. The trail tracks the mountains and valleys of the park. Runners are challenged to run primarily on tracks within the park itself as well as some stretches of gravel roads.

Port Elizabeth, tagged as the "Watersports Capital" of Africa, offers surf lifesaving, rubber ducking, jet-skiing, canoeing, surfing, paragliding and power-boating.

Jeffreys Bay, a neighbouring coastal town, is renowned worldwide among surfers as the home of the "perfect wave" and hosts the annual Billabong Classic, which draws the world's top surfers.

Sandboarding has become a major activity in some parts of South Africa. This sport is extremely

At a global level, the travel and tourism sector has emerged as one of the 21st century's critical drivers of economic growth, job creation and development of communities, regions and nations.

The "Tourism Economy", a vital source of employment, revenue, investment, trade and unity, has recently been recognised as a powerful stimulus for recovery from the global economic crisis.

The United Nations World Tourism Organisation and the South African Government announced on 30 October 2009 that the first international Tourism, Sport and Mega-Events Summit would be held in Sandton, South Africa, in February 2010.

The summit was expected to provide a forum for active discussion, debate and direction around the leverage of mega-events as a vital force for sector growth and advancement in national development strategies.

popular near Cape Town, in the Eastern Cape and on Gauteng's old mine dumps. Every year, an annual sandboarding competition takes place in Betty's Bay, in the Western Cape.

South Africa is a perfect playground for quad-biking enthusiasts. There are over 60 different trails to experience, and a good selection of these also offer quad bikes for hire.

In South Africa, one can cycle/go horseriding in wildlife reserves, through the winelands, along the coast, up mountains and past waterfalls – the possibilities are almost endless, with enticing trails in every province.

South Africa is also one of the best shark-diving destinations in the world.

This country is home to the highest commercial bungee jump in the world. The 216-m Bloukrans Bridge attracts adventure-seekers from all around the world. The bridge is situated along the scenic Garden Route. A new addition to Bloukrans is the 200-m flying fox cable slide. There are a range of jumps on the much lower Gouritz River Bridge, which boasts South Africa's first bridge-swinging operation.

Tourism policy and initiatives

The newly formed Department of Tourism aims to fulfil the national Government's role towards creating the conditions for responsible tourism growth and development by promoting and developing tourism, thereby increasing job and entrepreneurial opportunities and encouraging the meaningful participation of previously disadvantaged individuals. The focus will be on facilitating the growth of the tourism industry by providing support to the public and private sectors, and the broader community.

With the 2010 FIFA Soccer World Cup™ well on its way, there are exciting developments in this sector and many new opportunities for South Africa

The *White Paper on Tourism* provides a policy framework for tourism development, and entails, among other things:

- empowerment and capacity-building
- focusing on tourism-infrastructure investment
- aggressively marketing South Africa as a tourism destination to international markets
- a domestic tourism and travel campaign.

Raising general awareness about the opportunities for domestic travel remains a priority. The aim is to encourage South Africans to travel within their country, make tourism products accessible to all, facilitate the development of a culture of tourism and create a safe and welcoming environment for visitors.

Poverty-relief funding

The Department of Tourism's poverty-relief projects promote the development of community-owned tourism products and the establishment of tourism infrastructure, including roads, information centres and tourism signage.

These poverty-relief projects are categorised into product and infrastructure development, capacity-building and training, the establishment of small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs) and business-development projects.

Welcome Campaign

SAT's Welcome Campaign, launched in 2004 at the Tourist Indaba, is about encouraging every South African to make every tourist feel at home, so that all tourists take with them an experience that stands out and encourages them to return.

Welcome Awards

The Welcome Awards recognise those businesses and individuals who raise the bar in the tourism sector by offering very high standards of customer care and providing service excellence.

The awards programme forms part of the broader Welcome Campaign, which aims to ensure that South Africa's tourism industry is prepared to host many nations leading up to 2010 and beyond.

The awards were created to give credit to those providers who go the extra mile to deliver service excellence in the tourism industry by:

- offering travellers authentically African experiences
- enhancing visitors' experiences, encouraging longer stays and repeat visits
- turning guests into ambassadors for South Africa.

The Welcome Awards also promote the best businesses within each category as examples to the industry, encouraging members of the industry

In 2008, Gauteng and the Western Cape were the most popular provinces visited (enjoying 32,3% and 26,9% of visitor nights respectively). They also accounted for the bulk of expenditure on accommodation.

The third most popular province was KwaZulu-Natal with 10,7% of visitor nights. The most undervisited province in the country was the Northern Cape with 0,9% visitor nights.

to share their ideas on how they can improve customer experiences and make their stay more enjoyable.

As an increasingly important sector of South Africa's economy, tourism has the potential to fuel the economy by creating jobs, reducing unemployment and improving the quality of life of all South Africans.

Awards are given in nine categories, namely: tourist attractions, tour operators, accommodation establishments, tourist guides, restaurants, Mice, online, travel agencies and parks.

The fourth annual Welcome Awards ceremony was held at Durban's Albert Luthuli Convention Centre at the Tourism Indaba in May 2009. The Accommodation Category was won by Karkloof Spa; the Tour Operator Category by Specialised African Tour Services; the Tourist Attraction Category by South African Breweries' World of Beer; the Tourist Guides Category by Linda Leung; the Restaurants Category by Nyoni's Kraal; the Mice Category by Van Ryn's Distillery; the Online Category by City Lodge Group; the Travel Agencies Category by South African Travel Centre, Benoni; and the Parks Category by Mokala National Park.

Sho't Left Campaign

In its ongoing quest to grow and sustain a robust domestic travel market in South Africa, SAT unveiled its renewed Sho't Left Campaign in August 2008. The domestic market is an exceptionally important one for the tourism industry.

Because it targets young people, the campaign strongly features adventure, entertainment and nightlife travel experiences. It showcases South Africa as an affordable and easy-to-do destination for all. This campaign aims to show young South Africans the emotional, educational and social benefits of travel.

The campaign features a series of media advertising targeting young South Africans and encouraging them to take more holidays in South Africa.

Since the launch of the Sho't Left website in April 2009, there had been an influx of traffic to the site.

The Promotions and Deals page of *www.southafrica.net/shotleft* had become especially popular, enjoying 4 700 page views a month, with users specifically searching for travel packages.

Social networking spaces Twitter, @ShotLeft, Facebook and YouTube are in place so that the market can start talking about how they see travel and what they feel about it.

In September 2009, e.tv's top youth soap opera *Rhythm City* saw characters Fats and Mpumi taking a Sho't Left to Durban.

South Africa's national radio station, Metro FM, features Sho't Left every Thursday morning when the feature gives weekly travel tips and updates on what is happening in the local industry.

Domestic tourism growth

About a million more South Africans toured in their own country in 2008 compared to the previous year, the Minister of Tourism, Mr Marthinus

Twenty-nine South African beaches were awarded Blue Flag status in 2009 – 10 more than in 2008. With the exception of Morocco, South Africa is the only African country implementing the Blue Flag Programme, and has done so with increasing success since 2001. Blue Flag is an international award scheme that acts as a guarantee to tourists that a beach they are visiting is one of the best in the world.

It is awarded to those that have achieved the highest quality in water, facilities, safety, environmental education and management. Beaches that have received Blue Flag accreditation include:

- MacDougall's Bay, Port Nolloth (new)
- Yzerfontein main beach, Yzerfontein (new)
- Big Bay beach, Bloubergstrand, Cape Town (new)
- Clifton fifth beach, Cape Town
- Camps Bay, Cape Town
- Muizenberg, Cape Town
- Strandfontein beach, Cape Town
- Mnandi beach, Cape Town
- Bikini beach, Gordon's Bay
- Kleinmond beach, near Hermanus (back in programme)
- Hawston beach, near Hermanus
- Grotto beach, Hermanus
- Lappiesbaai, Stilbaai, Southern Cape
- Santos beach, Mossel Bay (new)
- Hartenbos beach, Mossel Bay (new)
- Robberg fifth beach, Plettenberg Bay (new)
- Dolphin beach, Jeffrey's Bay
- Humewood beach, Port Elizabeth
- Hobie beach, Port Elizabeth
- Wells Estate, north of Port Elizabeth
- Kelly's beach, Port Alfred
- Kariega main beach, Kenton-on-Sea (new)
- Boknes beach, Kenton-on-Sea (new)
- Gonubie beach, East London (back in programme)
- Trafalgar beach, South Coast, KwaZulu-Natal (new)
- Marina beach, South Coast, KwaZulu-Natal
- Ramsgate beach, near Margate
- Margate beach
- Alkantstrand, Richard's Bay (new).

van Schalkwyk, said in July 2009 at the release of SAT's domestic travel statistics for 2008. Domestic tourism is particularly valuable to the country because, unlike foreign tourism, it is not seasonal.

To continuously support the growth of the domestic industry, South Africa is:

- promoting the domestic-tourism brand
- promoting a set of experiences that relate to South African consumers
- distributing appropriate information in specific places
- facilitating the development of cooperative product packages
- developing marketing and distribution channels
- promoting repeat visitation.

About 46% of the adult South African population travelled in 2008, representing a figure of about 14 million domestic tourists.

This was compared to about 13 million domestic tourists in 2007.

Domestic tourism returned revenue of R25,8 billion in 2008, a 17% increase over the previous year.

The average spend per trip increased from R550 in 2007 to R780 in 2008 in nominal terms.

However, a fewer number of trips were undertaken in 2008 compared to the previous year. Domestic trips decreased by 8%, with 32,9 million trips being undertaken compared to 35,9 million in 2007.

Of the country's provinces, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape saw the most domestic tourists in 2008, followed closely by Gauteng and the Western Cape.

International tourism

Cabinet approved the International Tourism Growth Strategy in June 2003, which includes an analysis of core markets and their segments. Priority markets have been identified in Europe, Asia and Africa.

The strategy not only aims to increase arrivals, but also to:

- increase the duration of tourists' visits to South Africa
- increase spending by tourists
- ensure that tourists travel throughout the country and not just in a few provinces
- facilitate transformation and Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) in the local tourism industry.

South Africa has made its mark as a global destination for the Mice industry.

The New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) identified tourism as an important sector for addressing the development challenges facing Africa. The Nepad Tourism Action Plan has been developed, providing a more detailed framework for action at national and subregional levels. The action plan proposes concrete interventions in the following focus areas:

- creating an enabling policy and regulatory environment
- institution-building aimed at promoting tourism
- tourism marketing
- research and development
- investment in tourism infrastructure and products
- human-resource development (HRD) and quality assurance.

Some of the tourism initiatives South Africa is actively participating in include:

- various tourism spatial development initiatives in the SADC
- developing the SADC univisa, a single visa to cover travel within the region.

Although the Regional Tourism Organisation of Southern Africa (Retosa) agreement on the need for the univisa exists, the differing levels of development in SADC countries is a challenge that must be overcome first.

South African Tourism

SAT markets South Africa's scenic beauty, diverse wildlife, kaleidoscope of cultures and heritages, the great outdoors, sport and adventure opportunities, ecotourism and conference facilities. The website, *www.satour.co.za,* offers an online guide to travel in South Africa.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

Some R250 million has been committed to marketing South Africa internationally. The 2010 Tourism Forum has been set up to advise government on tourism-related issues. The tournament is an opportunity to market the country as a tourist destination to countries whose citizens would not normally see South Africa as such, especially South America and Eastern Europe.

The Tourism Branch has engaged with countries that have successfully hosted similar events, to learn from their experiences.

In addition, South Africa together with various other African countries, the United Nations (UN) World Tourism Organisation and FIFA agreed to a programme of work pertaining to hosting a world cup that is African in scope.

The announcement that the 2010 World Cup will, for the first time, feature non-hotel accommodation has tremendous implications for SMME entrepreneurs who run lodges, bed-and-breakfast establishments (B&Bs) and other smaller establishments.

The Department of Tourism is working with Match, the official accommodation partner of the 2010 World Cup, and the Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA) to assist SMME accommodation establishments and more specifically establishments from previously disadvantaged communities to be graded and registered as official accommodation suppliers for the event. This will provide a vital springboard to these SMMEs.

The number of graded establishments in South Africa almost doubled from 4 604 in 2005 to 8 544 in 2009 and there were nearly 100 000 graded rooms in the country. SAT, in partnership with the International Marketing Council (IMC), FIFA Organising Committee (OC) and other government departments, have been promoting South Africa's readiness to host the World Cup at major international events.

These events included the Euro 2008 Championships in Vienna, and World Travel Market in London and in Berlin. A global marketing campaign to leverage awareness of South Africa as destination through the World Cup was launched at Indaba 2009 and was expected to reach close to a billion viewers globally through global media platforms such as Cable News Network, British Broadcasting Corporation World, Eurosport, Sky Sport and Entertainment Sports Programming Network. Tool kits, which contain all 2010 promotional material for rolling this campaign out globally, have been distributed to all SAT country offices and foreign missions of the Department of International Relations and Cooperation.

2010 host cities

Bloemfontein

Bloemfontein is the judicial capital of South Africa, the provincial capital of the Free State and the largest urban centre in the Mangaung Local Municipality. Bloemfontein is popularly known as "The City of Roses", owing to the abundance of these flowers and the annual rose festival held there.

South Africa is to host a G20 tourism ministers' meeting early in 2010 in response to the global downturn in. Though not immune to the global economic downturn, tourism resisted the financial crisis better than many other sectors, such as construction, real estate and car manufacturing.

South Africa was also elected to the executive council of the United Nations World Tourism Organisation in Kazakhstan in October 2009, and will use the position to advance Africa's development agenda.

Cape Town

Cape Town is known for its beaches, sports, mountain walks, day-trips, wine-tasting, sunsets and fine dining. Cape Town is the provincial capital of the Western Cape and the legislative capital of South Africa. Cape Town is the economic hub of the Western Cape.

Durban

Durban, South Africa's third-largest city in area, is an exciting hub around a busy harbour on the edge of the warm Indian Ocean. The city is well known for its pleasant climate and welcoming beaches. It also boasts top sporting facilities, world-class resorts and nature reserves. To accommodate the 2010 FIFA World Cup™, most of Durban's iconic high-tourist season events have confirmed changed dates or venues, for example the Comrades Marathon will repeat the 2009 down run from Pietermaritzburg to Durban on 30 May 2010.

Johannesburg

Johannesburg lies in Gauteng, the wealthiest province in South Africa. Locals have nicknamed the most populous city in South Africa "Joburg", "Jozi" and "eGoli". The City of Johannesburg is one of the largest metropolitan areas in the world with a population of just over three million people.

Nelspruit/Mombela

Nelspruit, the capital city of Mpumalanga, is nestled on the Crocodile River, about 60 km west of Mozambique. Mpumalanga (which means "The Place of the Rising Sun") is the primary gateway to the Greater Limpopo Transfrontier Park, which stretches over three countries and encompasses global wilderness icons such as the more than 100-year-old Kruger National Park. With its subtropical climate, abundant sunshine and lush covered hills and valleys, Nelspruit forms the ideal base from which to explore Mpumalanga.

Polokwane

Polokwane is the capital city of Limpopo. It is the largest city in the north and a major economic centre. Wide streets, jacaranda trees, colourful

parks and sparkling fountains characterise the city.

Polokwane, which means "A Place of Safety", is situated 60 km south of the Tropic of Capricorn and is home to just over 500 000 people. It encompasses the vibrant communities of Seshego, Mankweng and other surrounding townships.

Port Elizabeth

Port Elizabeth is one of South Africa's important sea ports. The city, the largest in the Eastern Cape, lies on the south-eastern coastline of South Africa. It is known for its sunshine, temperate climate, exhilarating sea breezes and magnificent golden beaches. The city forms part of the Nelson Mandela Bay Municipality, which unites Uitenhage and Despatch, and is named after South Africa's former president, humanitarian and world icon, Nelson Mandela, who was born and spent his formative years in the Eastern Cape.

Pretoria

Pretoria's charm lies in its harmonious blend of African roots and European traditions. It is a city where history meets 21st century style and development, where vibrant township scenes complement modern shopping centres. Pretoria is an important industrial centre, with heavy industries, including iron and steel casting as well as automobile, railroad and machinery manufacture.

The city has the second-largest number of embassies in the world after Washington DC.

Rustenburg

Rustenburg is a large town situated at the foot of the Magalies mountain range in North West. Just outside the town are the largest platinum mines in the world and the largest platinum refinery, which processes about 70% of the world's platinum. The town is surrounded by fertile farming land.

Industry transformation

The gazetting of the Tourism Sector Code is a milestone in the process of achieving Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) in the tourism industry. The code, which was gazetted on 22 May 2009, was expected to help clarify any uncertainty around BEE targets in tourism and pave the way for real, measurable transformation in the sector.

The gazetting follows a year-long process of alignment between the Tourism BEE Charter and government's codes of good practice, which left the industry with a number of questions related to transformation targets and reporting mechanisms.

The Sector Code provides, in the first five years of reporting, for a greater focus on human-factor elements, namely skills development, strategic representation, employment equity and enterprise development.

The exempt micro-enterprise threshold for the tourism sector has, after a review of inputs from the comment period in 2008, been set at R2,5 million in turnover per year. This step is expected to ensure that all significant stakeholders participate actively in the transformation process.

Two industry-specific indicators have been added, which relate to the ability of the industry to create jobs and to market South Africa as a preferred tourism destination, namely:

- the recruitment of employees with no prior experience
- the status of the tourism enterprise as a tourism marketing levy for South Africa's levy collector.

The Tourism Empowerment Council of South Africa, formerly the Tourism BEE Charter Council, is in a position to drive transformation in tourism from a solid foundation and give accurate information that will not be subject to change.

The Sector Code provides for transformation in seven areas of business, namely ownership, strategic representation, employment equity, skills development, preferential procurement, enterprise development and social development. Each of these indicators will be measured proportionally to a company's compliance with that area.

Infrastructure Development Programme

In May 2008, the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and the South African National Parks completed the second year of implementation of the Infrastructure Development Programme, for which R541 million was made available over a four-year period. The programme had employed 1 357 people by May 2008. Some 50 SMMEs were empowered and transformation in the construction industry is actively supported. Some highlights include:

- 145 tourism accommodation units were upgraded and many new accommodation units constructed in the various national parks
- 89 upgraded and new staff accommodation units were put in place in various national parks.

Tourism Enterprise Partnership (TEP)

On 1 April 2008, the newly founded and independent TEP officially took over the management

of a seven-year-old economic development programme (previously known as the Tourism Enterprise Programme), facilitating the growth and development of small and medium-sized tourism businesses in South Africa.

TEP's mission is to facilitate the growth, development and sustainability of tourism enterprises, to enable them to become internationally competitive

Each year, TEP invests millions in the development of small and medium tourism businesses across South Africa. This is achieved through various projects aimed at product development (skills development, access to finance, operational efficiency, quality and service improvement, etc.) and increased provision of market access.

The TEP launched its Hidden Treasures™ concept at Meetings Africa, in February 2009. Hidden Treasures™ is a premier collection of quality craft offerings and experiences that provide visitors with an authentic taste of South Africa's rich and varied history and culture, such as:

- Andrew Clarke is serving African "gastropub" food in his B Lounge in a once derelict biscuit factory in Salt River that is more than a century old
- 13 people are working in and around Themba Masala's ramshackle home-cum-studio-cum-workshop in Raaswater, Upington, preparing papier-mâché and wooden items for the international market
- a small museum in Cape Town's Buitenkant Street features telling and touching exhibits on District Six before its destruction.

Hidden Treasures™ creates a unique and memorable encounter that is world-class, yet unmistakably South African.

Crafts, as examples of Hidden Treasures™, are unique, personal, of a quality standard and can be tailor-made to the visitor's needs. They are also innovative and support local crafting businesses around the country. On the other hand, Hidden Treasures™ experiences include artists, performers, tour guides, cuisine offerings, cultural and heritage products that add a unique and authentic flavour to any tourism itinerary.

Once the Hidden Treasure™ clusters are fully developed, South African cities will have their own unique texture and depth. TEP will then "patch" them together into extraordinarily packaged trips.

The 2010 Visitor Information Centre (VIC) was launched in Polokwane in August 2009. The newly constructed, world-class centre was developed at a cost of R8,2 million and will form part of the legacy project for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. Situated on the Great North Road to Zimbabwe, Polokwane is the heart of Limpopo. The city is also the gateway to the other Southern African Development Community countries that lie on its border, offering easy access to Botswana, Malawi, Zambia, Zimbabwe and Mozambique.

The model for this centre is based on best international practice and is expected to assist tourism authorities in providing outstanding service to tourists as well as other stakeholders. The centre is aimed at improving the South African tourism offering to enhance service excellence, grow tourism and create opportunities for local economic development.

As part of the national VIC Project, centres are being rolled out in five host cities, namely Port Elizabeth, Polokwane, Nelspruit, Rustenburg and Bloemfontein. These less visited provinces were earmarked for the VICs in preparation for the World Cup, but also to grow their tourism arrivals from both local and international visitors.

The primary objective of the VIC Project is to effectively address the tourism and information needs of the visitors expected to converge on the host cities in 2010 and beyond.

Using international best practice, the Visitor Information Centres Enterprise Network Systems (VICENCYS) was developed to be used at all the information centres. VICENSYS allows users to plan and finalise a travel itinerary by means of touch screens or Web-based technology.

Tourism Indaba

Indaba 2009, one of the biggest tourism marketing events on the African calendar, took place in May 2009 at the Albert Luthuli Convention Centre in Durban. The event showcased a huge variety of southern Africa's best tourism products, attracting exhibitors and journalists from across the world.

Indaba 2009 drew more than 13 200 delegates, confirming its status as Africa's top travel show and one of the top three in the world. There were 621 journalists in attendance, including 175 from abroad.

The event received the prestigious World Travel Award as Africa's best travel show, while SAT collected a World Travel Award as best destination-marketing organisation on the continent.

Indaba's visitor profile includes adventure, sport, business, incentive group and ecotourism tour operators and agencies, conference organisers, consulting companies, ground handlers, marketing services, online travel outfits and the media.

The Indaba is business-focused and gives opportunities to network with others in the indus-

try, combine product offerings and create new itineraries for a market that grows bigger each year.

Meetings Africa

Meetings Africa has established itself as a credible business-tourism marketing platform with the primary objective to showcase South Africa as business-tourism destination internationally and has grown its profile and attendance year on year. It is well regarded in the industry nationally and is building its profile on the international meetings calendar.

This is the only event of its kind in Africa with a specific focus on showcasing products, destinations and support services that fulfil the needs of corporate meeting planners and agents, professional conference organisers, destination-management companies, association-management companies, government and non-governmental organisations. It takes place at the Sandton Convention Centre at the end of February each year.

Human-resource development (HRD)

The Tourism HRD Strategy, which aims to encourage industry players to compete on the basis of excellence in human resources (HR), was launched in 2008. Tourism HRD is considered one of the pillars of the development of a responsible tourism culture in South Africa. In September 2009, the Department of Tourism held the National Tourism Careers Expo.

The Global Travel and Tourism Programme South Africa was established as a stand-alone programme outside of the National Business Initiative (NBI) with effect from 1 October 2009. The NBI managed the programme since 1999 with much success.

Tourism education is an integral part of the South African national curriculum, and learners have an opportunity to become educated about career opportunities in an industry that is vital to the economy.

In 2009, about 2 000 schools delivered the Tourism subject to some 300 000 learners from grades 10 to 12. The NBI had also trained over 1 000 tourism teachers as well as all Tourism subject advisers in the country by 2009.

Tourism, Hospitality and Sport Education and Training Authority (Theta)

Theta is the Sector Education and Training Authority (Seta) established under the Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998), for the Tourism, Hospitality and Sport Economic Sector. Theta comprises the following chambers:

- Hospitality
- Conservation and Tourist Guiding
- Sport, Recreation and Fitness
- Tourism and Travel Services
- Gaming and Lotteries.

Every chamber has its own committee that helps Theta to identify industry needs.

A Seta's main function is to contribute to the raising of skills, or to bring skills to the employed or those wanting to be employed in their sector. They do this by ensuring that people learn skills that are needed by employers and communities.

Tourism Learnership Project (TLP)

The TLP is a multimillion rand partnership between the Business Trust, Theta and the Department of Labour.

The TLP aims to raise the standards of South Africa's tourism industry by ensuring the development of useful, transferable and accredited skills. The TLP's three core objectives are to:

- accelerate the development of national qualifications for all primary subsectors of the tourism sector
- ensure the availability of national qualifications, which will trigger increased investment in training by employers

At the Local Government Tourism Indaba in Cape Town in March 2009, coastal municipalities deliberated on a new, integrated approach to tap into the multibillion dollar cruise tourism industry. Cruise tourism has immense potential in South Africa, with its pristine coastline, major tourist attractions and the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

According to research undertaken by *Service-Delivery Magazine*, the global cruise industry doubles every decade but a few organisations control 95% of the industry, with $22,3 billion being invested in new vessels. In the African region, there were only about 83 cruises aboard 10 vessels with an estimated 31 000 passengers, accounting for only a tiny fraction of the global industry.

To grow the industry, more resources are needed along with a focused and integrated approach by cities. It was decided that a committee, comprising provincial and municipal officials from the four coastal provinces of the Northern Cape, Western Cape, Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal and driven by the Department of Tourism, will engage with the National Ports Authority to develop a long-term plan.

Three large cruise ships with thousands of fans aboard will be docked at the Cape Town harbour for the duration of the 2010 World Cup.

- develop systems and support the training of unemployed people through learnerships that provide them with the necessary skills to find jobs.

Tourist guiding

It is estimated that 2010 will require 30 662 guides, at least half of whom should be black. By mid-2007, South Africa had about 10 000 guides, with only 30% black representation. Updating the database of tourist guides and ensuring that it interfaces with provincial structures, is a priority for the Department of Tourism.

The National Pilot Project to curb illegal guiding in South Africa was launched in September 2008. The project intends to curb illegal tourist guiding by unregistered guides and will focus on Gauteng in the pilot phase. The project focuses on increasing registration through positive means such as education and site inspections. With the growth of the industry, it has become apparent that some tour guides are practising illegally, as they are not registered with the Gauteng Tourism Authority (GTA). Through positive means such as education, consultative workshops and site inspections, the GTA aims to increase compliance of tourist guides with the relevant legislation that governs the industry.

In South Africa, tourist-guiding activities are regulated by the Tourism Second Amendment Act, 2000 (Act 70 of 2000). According to the Act, any person who wishes to be involved in tourist guiding must be registered with the Provincial Registrar for Tourist Guides.

The department has embarked on training of guides in foreign languages. By September 2008, guides had been trained in Mandarin, French, Spanish and German. Training of guides in Portuguese and Chinese was expected to take place soon.

In addition, 108 guides from across the country were expected to embark on training in advanced customer care, communication in English and the Ambassador Programme for host cities.

Research

In May 2009, the Department of Tourism, SAT and a number of partners launched the Tourism Satellite Account (TSA). It makes measurement and tracking a reality and gives the nation and its leaders in both the private and public sector a means by which to accurately determine tourism's contribution to the national economy, and to scenario plan around imperatives such as economic growth and job creation.

The TSA is a UN World Travel Organisation-approved methodology used for measuring and tracking the overall value and contribution of tourism to all sectors of the economy. Findings are the result of extensive and collaborative research by partners and give an accurate account of this growing sector of the economy. Besides tracking the number of tourism jobs created and the contribution to the country's GDP, tourism bodies are also able to tell which activities are most beneficial to the tourist and in effect, to the economy, too.

Hints for tourists

Every traveller to South Africa must have a valid passport and, where necessary, a visa.

The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), stipulates that all visitors to South Africa are required to have at least one blank page (both back and front) in their passport to enable the entry visa to be issued. If there is insufficient space in the passport, entry will be denied.

Enquiries may be directed to South African diplomatic representatives abroad or to the Department of Home Affairs in Pretoria. Visas are issued free of charge. Visitors who intend travelling between South Africa and neighbouring countries are advised to apply for multiple-entry visas. Passport-holders of certain countries are exempt from visa requirements.

Tourists must satisfy immigration officers that they have the means to support themselves during their stay and that they have return or onward tickets. They must also have valid international health certificates.

Visitors from the yellow-fever belt in Africa and the United States of America (USA), and those who travel through or disembark in these areas, have to be inoculated against the disease.

Malaria is endemic to parts of KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. It is essential to take anti-malaria precautions when visiting these areas. Remote areas in KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo are low-risk malaria areas and standard precautions should be taken.

Foreign tourists visiting South Africa can have their value-added tax (VAT) refunded, provided the value of the items purchased exceeds R20.

VAT is refunded on departure at the point of exit.

South Africa's transport infrastructure – airlines, railroads, roads, luxury touring buses (coaches) and motor cars – is such that tourists can travel comfortably and quickly from their port of entry to any part of the country.

A number of international airlines, including South African Airways, operate regular scheduled flights to and from South Africa. Several domestic airlines operate in the country. There are also mainline trains to all parts of the country. (See Chapter 23: *Transport*.)

Accommodation

The tourist-accommodation industry in South Africa provides a wide spectrum of accommodation, from formal hotels to informal holiday flats and cottages, game lodges and reserves, guest houses, youth hostels and B&B establishments.

Some hotels cater for businesspeople and the high-end luxury market, but there are diverse hotels available across the country, ranging from family-centred establishments to international chains, and a growing selection of conference hotels, casino resorts and golf hotels.

There are also spa resorts, numerous options for the budget traveller, and a charming array of B&B accommodation and guest houses. Facilities range from the ultra-luxury to the rustic, but most are noted for their high-quality, personalised service and warm hospitality. Many have restaurants on site.

A variety of promotional material on South Africa is available. Comprehensive guides and maps cover all the regions and aspects of interest to tourists, including accommodation. Various useful tourism websites can be found on the Internet.

Quality assurance

The TGCSA inspects standards in the hospitality and accommodation industry.

South Africa is home to the world's:

- largest land mammal – African elephant
- smallest mammal – a shrew the size of a human fingertip
- tallest mammal – the giraffe
- fastest mammal – cheetah
- heaviest reptile – leatherback turtle
- largest antelope – eland
- heaviest flying bird – kori bustard.

It is also home to:

- 900 bird species – 10% of the world's variety on 1% of its land area
- 6 000 different spiders, 175 varieties of scorpion and 100 different snakes
- 23 200 different fynbos plants, making it the richest zone on Earth in terms of species to area.

Cape Town has earned a stamp of approval from the well-known travel company, Lonely Planet, as one of the world's top 10 party cities. This list is part of Lonely Planet's new guide, the *1 000 Ultimate Experiences*.

According to Lonely Planet, with the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ bringing a global audience to South Africa, the partying will only get harder as travellers converge on a city that is already well known for its nightlife.

The guide advises visitors to try South African wine at a Cape Town bar or one of the wineries in the area. Mossel Bay is also recommended as a party destination.

Other cities included in the top 10 are Belgrade in Serbia, Montreal in Canada, Buenos Aires in Argentina, Dubai in the United Arab Emirates and Thessaloniki in Greece.

This voluntary grading system, which was launched in 2001, uses internationally recognised star insignia to rate accommodation establishments and will be extended to include relevant businesses in classified sectors of the tourism industry. Once graded, establishments are encouraged to use the star system for marketing and advertising purposes.

Establishments are assessed according to the type of accommodation they provide. There are currently nine types of establishments:

- B&Bs
- guest houses
- hotels
- self-catering
- backpacker and hostelling
- caravans and camping
- country houses
- meetings, exhibitions and special events
- restaurants.

Grading assessors undergo training to receive the National Certificate in Tourism Grading, a world-first qualification. Assessors are accredited with Theta and registered with the TGCSA before being recommended to the industry.

Larger hotel groups with their own internal assessors are also accredited with Theta. Independent auditors conduct random audits. These auditors also assist in ensuring that the assessors adhere to a code of conduct.

Star grading is the only system recognised by government and the TGCSA.

Star gradings are displayed on most advertising material and at hotel entrances. Participation by hotels is voluntary and indicates a commitment to providing good service and regularly upgrading facilities. Star-graded establishments undergo

annual quality checks to ensure that standards are maintained.

The grading categories are as follows:

- one star – fair to good; modest, clean, comfortable and functional
- two stars – good; quality furnishings, service and guest care
- three stars – very good; better furnishings, service and guest care
- four stars – superior; excellent comfort and very high standard of furnishings, service and guest care
- five stars – exceptional; top-of-the-line quality and luxurious accommodation in line with the best international standards and stringent attention to service.

The TGCSA annually publishes *The Accommodation Guide*.

AA Travel Guide offers another quality check for visitors to South Africa. The AA stamp of approval on promotional material indicates that a venue is highly recommended. Since 1994, the organisation has also been running an annual awards programme based on consumer feedback on some 1 200 AA quality-assured establishments. Qualified assessors visit high-scoring establishments to verify their scores.

The TGCSA was incorporated under SAT as one of its business units in November 2009.

Tourist safety

High-powered plans have been drawn up to reduce violent crimes against tourists, and to support and respect those holidaymakers who do become victims. The idea is to be proactive and to perform a risk analysis to include vulnerable areas such as airports, convention centres, big events, key tourist sites, routes and activities.

Crime has had a negative impact on the country's growing reputation as a desirable travel destination. However, the Department of Tourism is lobbying and working together with safety and security agencies such as the South African Police Service (SAPS), the National Intelligence Agency and the Department of Police.

During 2006, the Tourism Branch established a task team to assist in developing the National Tourism Safety and Awareness Strategy. All nine provinces are represented on the task team.

Agencies such as the IMC have also been identified to help counter international perceptions about crime.

As part of its efforts to combat crime, the SAPS holds joint operations committee meetings with stakeholders at provincial level. A range of stakeholders attend these planning meetings, which previously did not include tourism stakeholders.

The Tourism Safety and Awareness Strategy involves proactive and support measures. A booklet containing safety tips for tourists has been revised and was distributed at the Tourism Indaba.

The department, together with the SAPS, is working on the *Tourism Safety and Awareness Handbook for Practitioners*.

The Regional Tourism Organisation of Southern Africa (Retosa) approved a strategic plan in October 2009, which is aimed at addressing challenges faced by the region in developing and growing tourism. Retosa is responsible for the promotion and marketing of tourism in 14 southern African countries and its mandate is to leverage tourism as a major economic driver for the region.

The participating Southern African Development Community countries are Angola, Botswana, the Democratic Republic of Congo, Lesotho, Madagascar, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

Some of the initiatives highlighted in the strategic plan to address challenges in tourism development include, among other things, the opportunity provided by the 2010 World Cup in South Africa, the 2010 Africa Cup of Nations in Angola, the 2011 All Africa Games in Mozambique and relaunching the King's Golf Cup in Swaziland in 2010.

Tourism in the provinces

Western Cape

The Western Cape lies at the southern tip of Africa. The province is considered one of the most beautiful regions in Africa; it is also the place where two oceans meet and the home of the famous fynbos vegetation.

The paternal presence of Table Mountain, the pristine coastline with its white sandy beaches, the magnificent countryside with its bountiful rivers, vleis and dams, fauna and flora, together with the warm summer climate and friendly community make the Western Cape the perfect holiday destination.

The Western Cape is South Africa's most developed tourism region. The tourism industry in the province has grown faster and created more jobs than any other industry. One in 10 employees in the Western Cape earns a living in the tourism industry and it contributes more than R25 billion to the provincial economy.

The province received 1,63 million international arrivals in 2008. The amount spent by foreign tour-

ists showed an increase of 16,2% from R17,9 billion in 2007 to R20,8 billion in 2008. Visitors from abroad are staying longer and spending more.

Cape Metropole

Tourism in the city of Cape Town centres around the Victoria and Alfred (V&A) Waterfront, a working harbour offering everything from upmarket shopping malls, arts and craft markets, theatres and live music to museums.

Other major attractions in the city include the Bo-Kaap Museum, the Castle of Good Hope, the Company's Garden, the District Six Museum, flea markets, the Grand Parade, the houses of Parliament, the South African Cultural History Museum and the South African National Gallery. Also worth a visit are historical buildings in the Bo-Kaap and District Six.

The Gold of Africa Museum, established by Anglo Gold, houses a celebrated collection of more than 350 gold artefacts.

Air flips and trips are available, as are many boat and yacht trips from Table Bay Harbour, including trips to Robben Island (proclaimed a world heritage site and also the place where former President Nelson Mandela was imprisoned for 18 of his 27 years in prison).

The Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island is in the Clock Tower Precinct at the V&A Waterfront. The gateway houses interactive multimedia exhibitions, an auditorium, boardrooms, the Robben Island Museum and a restaurant.

Jazz is big in Cape Town. From traditional blues through progressive jazz to African-influenced jazz, every taste is catered for at a number of restaurants, jazz cafés, cigar bars, pubs and wine farms. The top jazz event in the Western Cape is the annual Cape Town International Jazz Festival.

Table Mountain, which forms part of the Table Mountain National Park (TMNP), is a popular attraction for visitors and provides a majestic backdrop to the vibrant and friendly Mother City. An ultra-modern cableway takes visitors to the top of the mountain, providing spectacular views.

Newlands is home to the renowned Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden. In summer, various open-air concerts are held here.

The South African Rugby Museum in Newlands reflects the history of the sport as far back as 1891.

The Rhodes Memorial in Rondebosch is on the slopes of Table Mountain. It was built of granite from the mountain as a tribute to the memory of Cecil John Rhodes, prime minister of the Cape from 1890 to 1896. The University of Cape Town is worth a visit for its historic Middle Campus and many buildings designed by Sir Herbert Baker.

Cape Point, part of the TMNP, offers many drives, walks, picnic spots and a licensed restaurant. Care has been taken to protect the environmental integrity of this 22 100-ha reserve of indigenous flora and fauna.

Simon's Town's naval atmosphere and Historic Mile are major attractions in the area. A statue of the famous dog and sailor's friend, Able Seaman Just Nuisance, stands at Jubilee Square.

Other attractions include the South African Naval Museum and the Warrior Toy Museum. One of only two of the mainland African penguin-breeding colonies in the world can be found at Boulders Beach, also part of the TMNP.

Hout Bay is well known for its colourful working harbour. Seafood outlets, round-the-bay trips to the nearby seal colony, shell and gift shops, and a famous harbour-front emporium attract many visitors. Duiker Island is a seal and sea-bird sanctuary. The World of Birds Wildlife Sanctuary is one of the largest bird parks in the world and houses some 3 000 birds.

In Oostenberg, visitors can enjoy some fine wine and flower farms, such as Zevenwacht Wine Estate with its graceful Cape Dutch homestead. Tygerberg Zoo boasts a collection of exotic animals.

Endless stretches of quiet beaches provide popular surfing and windsurfing spots. Big Bay in Bloubergstrand is a surfer's paradise and host to an international windsurfing event. Rietvlei Nature

The New7Wonders Foundation in Zurich, Switzerland, announced the top 28 wonders from around the world in July 2009. The finalists include legendary sites such as the Great Barrier Reef in Australia, the Grand Canyon in the United States of America and the Amazon in South America.

Table Mountain made it into the final round of the New7Wonders of Nature contest and is competing for a place among the top seven wonders to be announced in 2011. Table Mountain is one of only two African sites to have made the prestigious list, along with Mount Kilimanjaro in Tanzania.

Candidates in the Official New7Wonders of Nature Campaign are clearly defined natural sites that have neither been created by nor significantly altered by humans for aesthetic reasons.

The New7Wonders of Nature Campaign aims to raise awareness of the incredible variety and beauty of nature around us.

Reserve is a unique wetland area, with over 110 bird species, including pelicans and flamingos.

Canal Walk Century City is one of the largest shopping centres in Africa, with close to 400 shops, and is home to the largest cinema complex in South Africa.

Tygerberg is a vibrant and fast-growing area with a well-developed business centre, numerous sports fields, an international indoor-cycle track, well-kept golf courses and a racecourse.

New Year in Cape Town is a festive affair, when the Cape minstrels take to the streets with their upbeat music and fancy costumes.

Garden Route

A new multimillion-rand development on South Africa's Garden Route, which is expected to turn the region into a major global tourism and business hub, was unveiled in November 2009.

Known as the Destiny Africa Ecosphere Project, the R28-billion initiative will stand on 437 ha just outside the town of George, located at the eastern end of the Western Cape and in the centre of the Garden Route. The popular Garden Route spans roughly 200 km of South Africa's southern coast.

The Destiny Africa Project will combine business, learning and leisure into a so-called smart city. Components include a top-class conference centre, a business park with an incubator, a university cluster and research centre, about 7 000 residential units, ecotourism and medical tourism facilities, retail opportunities and a waterfront. These interconnected facilities are known as an ecosphere.

Construction could take up to 17 years and will result in at least 50 000 new jobs, both directly and indirectly. The project centres on the Mice concept, which forms the core of sustainable business tourism.

For its small area, the Garden Route is the most biodiverse region in the world.

The Garden Route features the pont at Malgas, which is the only remaining pont in the country, ferrying vehicles and livestock across the Breede River.

Whale-watching attracts tourists at Witsand and Port Beaufort from June to November.

The Grootvadersbosch Nature Reserve outside Heidelberg comprises the popular Bushbuck Trail, a wilderness trail and two mountain-bike trails.

Riversdale is one of South Africa's most important fynbos export areas. Other attractions include the Julius Gordon Africana Museum.

At the historical Strandveld Architectural Heritage Site at Still Bay, visitors can watch tame eels being fed. Ancient fish-traps can be seen at Morris Point and the harbour.

At the aloe factories at Albertinia, aloe juice is extracted for medicine and high-quality skin-care products.

Nearby, bungee-jumping at the Gouritz River Gorge, hiking, mountain-biking and angling are popular pastimes.

The Point in Mossel Bay is not only popular among surfers, but its natural pool formed by rock is also a favourite swimming spot at low tide. The St Blaize trail starts here and is the ideal place from which to watch the whales and dolphins at play in season.

The harbour at Mossel Bay is one of the most modern commercial and recreational harbours on the southern Cape coastline. PetroSA's Information Centre informs visitors about the production of synthetic fuels from Mossel Bay's offshore gas fields. Other attractions include the Attequas Kloof Pass, Anglo-Boer/South African War blockhouses and the Bartolomeu Dias complex.

Great Brak River offers a historic village with many opportunities for whale- and dolphin-watching along the extensive coast.

George is a historically significant location, with features such as the 198-year-old Old Slave Tree, which is a national monument. This huge oak tree is so named because of the chain and lock embedded near the bottom of its trunk. It is not certain if the chain is linked to slavery, or was used merely to prevent things from being stolen.

George is at the heart of the Garden Route. It is the mecca of golf in the southern Cape, as it is home to the renowned Fancourt Country Club and Golf Estate, as well as various other acclaimed golf courses. Board the Outeniqua Choo-Tjoe on its daily trip along the coastline between George and Knysna (except Sundays) at the Outeniqua Transport Museum.

Visitors can also board the Power Van here, and enjoy a glimpse of the Garden Route Botanical Garden from this rail bus.

The George Museum, with its theme of timber history, offers ongoing exhibitions. The Montagu and Voortrekker passes are national monuments, providing spectacular views of the Outeniqua Nature Reserve, which offers several hiking trails.

The George Airport, the Outeniqua Pass, the railway line and the N2 offer convenient access to this region, making George the ideal hub from which to explore the Garden Route and Little Karoo. Victoria Bay and Wilderness are popular for their unspoilt beaches. Wilderness is the western

gateway to the southern Cape lakes area. It is a nature lover's paradise, best known for its beaches, lakes, placid lagoon and lush indigenous forests. Birdwatchers flock to the Langvlei and Rondevlei bird sanctuaries in the Wilderness National Park, which hosts over 230 different bird species.

Sedgefield borders Swartvlei Lagoon, the largest natural inland saltwater lake in South Africa. Activities include beach horse-riding, hiking, angling and birdwatching.

Knysna nestles on the banks of an estuary, guarded by The Heads (two huge sandstone cliffs) and surrounded by indigenous forests, tranquil lakes and golden beaches.

This natural wonderland is home to the largest and smallest of creatures, from the Knysna seahorse to the Knysna elephants, rare delicate butterflies and the endemic Knysna loerie, a colourful forest bird. Over 200 species can be found in the abundant fynbos and forest settings.

Knysna is also famous for its delectable home-grown oysters, enjoyed with locally brewed beer in quaint pubs and restaurants. The Knysna Oyster Festival, a celebration of the good life, has established itself as one of the most popular annual events in the Western Cape. An eclectic mix of art galleries showcases the diversity of talent in the area. There are also lagoon cruises, forest hikes, golf and adventure sports on offer.

Plettenberg Bay is adventure country, offering boat-based whale-watching, black-water tubing, hiking, and forest and cycling trails.

The Keurbooms River Nature Reserve at Plettenberg Bay offers a canoeing trail, while the Robberg Nature Reserve is a treasure trove of land, marine, geological and archaeological wealth.

At 216-m high, the bungee jump from the Bloukrans River Bridge on the border between the Western and Eastern Cape is the highest commercial bungee jump in the world.

Little Karoo

The Little Karoo's spectacular landscape is fashioned almost entirely by water. Its vegetation ranges from lush greenery in the fertile river valleys to short, rugged Karoo plants in the veld. Gorges feature rivers that cut through towering mountains, while breathtakingly steep passes cross imposing terrain. The region is also home to the largest bird in the world – the ostrich. The Little Karoo is rich in culture and history.

Excellent wines and port are produced in the Calitzdorp and De Rust areas. The Swartberg Nature Reserve and Pass with their gravel roads are also worth a visit. Oudtshoorn, the world's ostrich-feather capital, is the region's main town. The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees is held in the town annually. Some 29 km from Oudtshoorn lie the remarkable Cango caves, a series of spectacular subterranean limestone caverns. Bearing evidence of early San habitation, the 30-cave wonderland boasts magnificent dripstone formations. Amalienstein and Zoar are historic mission stations midway between Ladismith and Calitzdorp. Visitors can go on donkey-cart and hiking trails through orchards and vineyards, while the Seweweekspoort is ideal for mountain-biking, hiking, and protea and fynbos admirers.

Calitzdorp has four wine estates, three of which are open to the public. The spring water of the Calitzdorp Spa is rich in minerals and reputed to have medicinal properties. The Gamka Mountain Reserve is home to the rare and endangered Cape mountain zebra.

De Rust lies at the southern entrance to Meiringspoort. The Meiringspoort Gorge extends 20 km through the Swartberg Mountain Range. Halfway through is a beautiful 69 m-high waterfall. Wine farms in the area are open to the public.

Ladismith is home to the Towerkop Cheese Factory. There are various hiking, mountain-biking and 4x4 trails in the area, as well as the Anysberg, Klein Karoo and Towerkop nature reserves.

Uniondale, on the main route between George and Graaff-Reinet, features the largest waterwheel in the country, the Old Watermill. Uniondale Poort is a scenic drive linking Uniondale with Avontuur in the Langkloof Valley.

At Vanwyksdorp, visitors can see how fynbos is dried and packed for the export market. Donkey-cart rides take visitors to Anglo-Boer/South African War grave sites.

Central Karoo

The Central Karoo, a fascinating semi-desert area, lies in the heart of one of the world's most unique and interesting arid zones.

This ancient, fossil-rich land, which is five times the size of Great Britain, is also home to the richest desert flora in the world.

In the Central Karoo, visitors will find the largest variety of succulents found anywhere on Earth.

Beaufort West, the oldest town in the Central Karoo, is often referred to as the "Oasis of the Karoo". The local museum displays awards presented to heart-transplant pioneer, the late Prof. Chris Barnard, a son of this town.

A township route introduces visitors to the Xhosa culture in the area. At the Karoo National Park on the town's doorstep, visitors can expe-

rience the flora and game of the Karoo. A challenging 4x4 route takes them to the escarpment and new areas of ecological discovery. The park is also home to a variety of game, as well as the highly endangered riverine rabbit.

Matjiesfontein, a national monument, offers tourists a peek into yesteryear and the opportunity to overnight in Victorian splendour. The village houses a transport museum and the Marie Rawdon Museum. Next to the transport museum is a large field on which the first international cricket match was played in South Africa.

Experience the vastness of the Great Karoo in Murraysburg, an ecotourist and hunter's paradise.

Laingsburg, a tiny village almost totally wiped out by floods a century after it was established, is the best place to study the geology of the region.

Prince Albert is a well-preserved town at the foot of the Swartberg mountains. It is the ideal place to sample a great variety of Karoo cuisine. See examples of local architecture dating back to the early 1800s, and enjoy several scenic drives.

The Fransie Pienaar Museum introduces visitors to the cultural history of the area. It has a fossil room and an exhibit covering the gold rush in this area in the 19th century. The museum has a licence to distil and sell "witblits" (white lightning). Prince Albert is the closest town by road to Gamkaskloof.

The Hell, a little valley in the heart of the Swartberg mountains, was the home of one of the world's most isolated communities for almost 150 years. Today, Gamkaskloof is a nature reserve and national monument managed by Cape Nature Conservation. It has overnight facilities and can be accessed by a 57-km long (but two-hour-drive) winding road which starts at the peak of the Swartberg Pass.

Cape winelands

The Cape winelands, including the former Breede River Valley, are close to Cape Town. The Cape winelands feature dramatic mountains, rolling farmlands and peaceful vineyards. They are home to Route 62, the world's longest wine route.

Stellenbosch, the oldest town in South Africa, is also known as the "Eikestad" (City of Oaks). Various historical walks delight visitors. The town is a gracious blend of old Cape Dutch, Georgian and Victorian architecture. Dorp Street consists of one of the longest rows of old buildings in the country. The Stellenbosch Village Museum consists of four homesteads and gardens ranging from the late-17th to the middle-19th centuries.

The Spier Summer Arts Festival livens up sultry summer nights from November to March at the Spier Wine Estate near Stellenbosch. The Stellenbosch Wine Route comprises over 100 wine estates, most of which offer cellar tours.

The Freedom Monument at Pniel, which was built in 1992, commemorates the freed slaves who were the first settlers at the mission station, established in 1843.

Franschhoek has become known as the "Gourmet Capital" of the Cape. Originally known as Oliphantshoek, it was renamed after the arrival of Huguenots who were predominantly French. The Huguenot Monument was built in 1944 to commemorate their arrival in 1688.

Visitors can also enjoy various hiking trails and historical walks, as well as the *Vignerons de Franschhoek* Wine Route.

Paarl lies between the second-largest granite rock in the world and the Du Toit's Kloof mountains. It is famous for its Cape Dutch and Victorian architectural treasures found along a 1-km stretch of the main street. The area's fynbos vegetation supports a number of south-western Cape endemics, such as the Cape sugarbird and the orange-breasted sunbird.

The Afrikaanse Taalmonument is situated on the slopes of the Paarl Mountain, while the Afrikaanse Taalmuseum is in the centre of the town.

The town of Wellington lies in a picturesque valley, with the majestic Hawequa mountains on its eastern border. Apart from three renowned cooperative wineries, one can visit several prestigious wine cellars situated on historic Huguenot farms with Cape Dutch homesteads. More than 90% of South Africa's vine-cutting nurseries are found in Wellington. The town is also the home of South Africa's dried-fruit industry.

Experience life as the pioneers lived in years gone by at the Kleinplasie Living Open Air Museum. The KWV Brandy Cellar, the largest of its kind in the world, offers cellar tours and brandy tastings.

Tulbagh is famous for its heritage, historical homesteads and magnificent country living. Church Street, home to 32 national monuments, constitutes the largest concentration of national monuments in one street in South Africa.

Ceres, named after the Roman goddess of fruitfulness, is the largest deciduous fruit-producing region in South Africa. Tours are offered at various fruit farms. The area also offers several 4x4 trails, horse-riding, mountain-biking and abseiling.

The Hex River Valley is the largest producer of table grapes in southern Africa. Visitors can pick

their own grapes at harvest time and can sample the variety of export-quality produce.

The well-known Hex River 4x4 trail and the Ochre San rock art trails are a must for nature lovers. De Doorns is situated in the heart of the Hex River Valley. Situated on the Breede River, Bonnievale features several cheese factories. For the adventurous outdoor enthusiast there are canoe trips, birdwatching and riverboating.

Known as "The Valley of Wine and Roses", Robertson is one of the most beautiful areas in South Africa. Surrounded by vineyards, orchards, delectable fruit and radiant roses, Robertson produces connoisseur-quality wines and is also known for its thoroughbred horses.

Renowned for its muscadel wines, Montagu is the gateway to the Klein Karoo and set in a fertile valley. Relax in the healing waters of the Avalon springs or visit the Montagu Museum, which houses, among other things, original cartoons and books by TO Honiball.

The area also offers several hiking trails, game-viewing drives, guided cultural tours and excellent rock climbs.

The picturesque village of Gouda is renowned for the Parrotts Den Pub, a living museum in the Gouda Hotel.

McGregor has a wealth of fascinating white-washed, thatched cottages and well-preserved Victorian houses, making it one of the best-preserved examples of mid-19th century architecture in the Western Cape.

Prince Alfred Hamlet is the gateway to the Gydo Pass, known for its scenic views. This quaint village lies in an important deciduous-fruit farming area.

Hidden amid vineyards and wine estates lies the picturesque town of Rawsonville, renowned for its array of award-winning wines. Tourists can enjoy an afternoon drive along the awe-inspiring Slanghoek Valley, with its lush vineyards and breathtaking views, or relax in the warm-water mineral springs at Goudini Spa.

West Coast

The West Coast is a region of extreme beauty and contrast. The solitary coast's scenic beauty is challenged only by rich culinary experiences of mussels, oysters, calamari, crayfish and abalone in season, or linefish pulled from the Benguela current's cold waters. The area is a birdwatcher's paradise. In addition, every year migrating whales visit the coastal waters from July.

Within two months of the first good winter rains, wild flowers on the West Coast explode in a brilliant array of colour. The Swartland region is known for its undulating wheat fields, vineyards, wineries and outdoor activities. Further north, visitors encounter the fertile Olifants River Valley and the vast plains of the Knersvlakte with their wealth of indigenous succulent plants.

The town of Darling draws visitors to its country museum and art gallery, annual wild flower and orchid shows, basket factory and wine cellars. The entertainment venue Evita se Perron is situated at the old Darling Railway Station and offers top entertainment from South African entertainers.

Malmesbury is the biggest town in the Swartland. Major attractions include the Malmesbury Museum and the historical walk-about.

The Riebeek Valley is known for its scenic beauty. The area has become a popular haven for well-known artists of various disciplines. Wines and olives can be tasted at various cellars.

Elands Bay is a popular holiday resort and surfer's paradise. Khoi and San rock art can be viewed at the Elands Bay caves.

Moorreesburg and Koringberg are major wheat-distributing towns. Tourists can visit the Wheat Industry Museum, one of only three in the world. Birdwatching, hiking, 4x4 routes, clay-pigeon shooting, mountain-bike trails, canoeing and waterskiing at Misverstand are popular activities.

Yzerfontein is famous for its unspoilt beaches, fynbos, beautiful views and whale-watching. Another major attraction is the historical lime furnaces.

Langebaan is a popular holiday destination. The West Coast National Park, an internationally renowned wetland that houses about 60 000 waterbirds and waders, attracts thousands of visitors each year. The park is also the site where the oldest anatomically modern fossilised human footprints were discovered.

The Langebaan Lagoon forms part of the park and is zoned for specific activities. The Postberg section of the park, across the lagoon, is famous for its wild flowers that bloom mainly during August and September.

Cape Columbine at Paternoster is the last manned lighthouse on the South African coast. The Columbine Nature Reserve is home to many seabird species.

Saldanha is a watersports enthusiast's paradise. Its attractions include Doc's Cave, a landmark on the scenic breakwater drive, and the Hoedjieskoppie Nature Reserve. There are various hiking trails in the SAS Saldanha Nature Reserve.

The Bushmans Kloof Wilderness Reserve, in the Western Cape's Cederberg mountains, was rated the world's best hotel in 2009 by *Travel&Leisure* magazine. Some rooms in the five-star Bushmans Kloof have private swimming pools, outdoor showers, flat-screen TVs, DVD and CD collections, iPod docking stations and underfloor heating.

It scored 98,7 points. Bushmans Kloof, set on a 7 500-ha reserve 270 km north of Cape Town, has received many accolades, including the 2007 *Relais and Chateaux* Environment Trophy for its environmental and conservation projects.

Magazine readers voted on criteria such as the quality of the rooms, facilities, location, service, restaurants, food and value for money.

South Africa has three other hotels in the publication's top 15, namely Mpumalanga's Sabi Sabi Private Game Reserve, which was placed third, Singita Sabi Sands, which came sixth, and Cape Town's Twelve Apostles, at number 15.

St Helena Bay is best known for the Vasco Da Gama Monument and Museum. Fishing (snoek in season), hiking and whale and birdwatching opportunities also draw many visitors.

Vredenburg, the business centre of the area, has a popular golf course with a bird hide where various species can be viewed.

Lambert's Bay is a traditional fishing village, with Bird Island as a tourist attraction. It is a breeding ground for African penguins, the Cape cormorant and other sea birds. Visitors can also watch southern right whales here from July to November.

Piketberg offers arts and crafts, fauna and flora, wine culture and recreation. The Goedverwacht and Wittewater Moravian mission stations are close to the town.

Porterville is famous for its Disa Route (best in January and February). The Groot Winterhoek Mountain Peak in the Groot Winterhoek Wilderness Area is the second-highest in the Western Cape. The Dasklip Pass is popular with hang-gliders.

At Velddrif/Laaiplek, visitors can indulge in bokkems (a West Coast salted-fish delicacy) at factories along the Berg River. Tourists can also visit the salt-processing factory and the West Coast Art Gallery in town.

The citrus area in the Olifants River Valley is the third-largest in South Africa. The wine route from Citrusdal to Lutzville produces a selection of internationally acclaimed wines. The world-renowned rooibos tea is also produced here.

Citrusdal is famous for its citrus products and wines. The Citrusdal Museum depicts the pioneering days of the early colonists. The Goede Hoop Citrus Co-op is the largest single packing facility in South Africa. The annual Citrusdal Outdoor Calabash features, among other things, 4x4 outings, lectures and visits to rock-art sites, and an arts and crafts market.

The oldest orange tree in the country, calculated to be more than 250 years old, grows in the Citrusdal Valley. The Sandveldhuisie is a recently built example of a typical Sandveld dwelling. There are several recognised mountain-biking, walking, hiking and canoeing trails and a sky-diving club.

Annually, scores of sky-diving enthusiasts visit Citrusdal for a skydiving "boogie" that lasts several days.

The Cederberg Wilderness Area features the elephant's foot plant, the rare snow protea and some of the best examples of San rock art in the Western Cape.

Visitors to Clanwilliam can visit the rooibos and velskoen factories and the grave of the well-known South African poet Louis Leipoldt. Various historical buildings can also be viewed. The Clanwilliam and Bulshoek dams are popular among watersports enthusiasts.

Wuppertal, at the foot of the Cederberg mountains, features the oldest Rhenish Mission Station. Proceeds from 4x4 trails in the area fund the creation of new hiking trails and the building of more overnight huts and guest houses.

Vredendal is the centre of the Lower Olifants River Valley. Major attractions include marble-processing and manufacturing, industrial mines (dolomite and limestone), the KWV Grape Juice Concentrate Plant and Distillery and the South African Dried Fruit Cooperative. The town is also home to the Vredendal Wine Cellar, the largest cooperative wine cellar under one roof in the southern hemisphere.

The picturesque town of Doringbaai with its attractive lighthouse is well known for its seafood.

Strandfontein, about 8 km north of Doringbaai, is essentially a holiday and retirement resort with a breathtaking view of the ocean.

Klawer was named after the wild clover growing in the area. During the flower season, the area is a kaleidoscope of colour. There are hiking trails as well as river-rafting along the Doring River.

Lutzville and Koekenaap are synonymous with wine and flowers in season.

Visitors can also view the Sishen-Saldanha Railway Bridge. Where the railway line spans the Olifants River, it is divided into 23 sections, each 45 m long. The 14 100-ton deck was pushed into

position over teflon sheets with hydraulic jacks from the bridgehead. It is the longest bridge in the world built using this method.

Vanrhynsdorp houses the largest succulent nursery in South Africa. The Latsky Radio Museum houses a collection of old valve radios, some dating back to 1924. Birdwatching, mountain-biking, day walks, and hiking and 4x4 trails abound. The Troe-Troe and Rietpoort mission stations are a must-see for historians.

Overberg

In the most southerly region of Africa, just over an hour's drive east of Cape Town, lies a fertile area surrounded by mountains and sea, called the Overberg.

The Hangklip-Kleinmond area comprises Kleinmond, Betty's Bay, Pringle Bay and Rooiels. It is a popular holiday region, ideal for whale-watching, and includes the Kleinmond Coastal Nature Reserve and the Harold Porter Botanical Garden.

The Penguin Reserve at Stoney Point, Betty's Bay, is one of two breeding colonies of the jackass penguin on the African continent.

South Africa's first international biosphere reserve, the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, was proclaimed by the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation in 1999. It runs along the coast from Gordon's Bay to the Bot River Vlei, stretching 2 km out to sea, and inland to the Groenlandberg mountains near Grabouw.

Hermanus is a popular holiday resort, famous for the best land-based whale-watching in the world.

Stanford is one of the few villages in South Africa where the market square has been retained. The central core of the village has been proclaimed a national conservation area. Award-winning wines are produced in the area.

Gansbaai is known for its excellent rock and boat angling, diving, shark-cage diving and whale-watching. The Danger Point Lighthouse, named as such because of the ships that have been wrecked and lives that have been lost on this dangerous coast, is open to the public.

De Kelders is the only freshwater cave on the African coast. Spectacular views of southern right whales can be enjoyed from the cliffs at De Kelders and along the coast to Pearly Beach. Also popular are white-shark tours, diving safaris and fishing trips.

Elim was founded by German missionaries in 1824, with its only inhabitants being members of the Moravian Church. Visitors are welcome to attend services. The Old Watermill (1833) has been restored and declared a national monument.

Popular sites in Napier include the Militaria Museum and Rose Boats and Toy Museum. The Shipwreck Museum in Bredasdorp, founded in 1975, specialises in shipwrecks found along the South African coastline. The town also boasts the Audrey Blignault Museum.

De Mond Nature Reserve is home to some rare bird species, including the damara tern and giant tern.

The Geelkop Nature Reserve derives its name from the mass of yellow flowering plants that cover the hill during spring.

The lighthouse at L'Agulhas, which forms part of the Agulhas National Park, is the country's second-oldest working lighthouse. It celebrated its 150th anniversary in 1999.

The Agulhas National Park, home to a rich and diverse plant population, boasts more than 110 *Red Data Book* species. Among these are the endangered Cape platanna and microfrog, and rare coastal birds such as the African oystercatcher. The damara tern finds the area ideal for breeding.

At Cape Agulhas, the southernmost tip of the continent, the waters are cleaved into the Indian and Atlantic oceans. The wrecks of some 130 seafaring craft – yachts, Spanish galleons, Dutch East Indiamen, the legendary Birkenhead, and even modern-day fishing trawlers – have found a watery grave around the notorious Cape of Storms.

Struisbaai has the longest white coastline in the southern hemisphere.

Arniston was named Waenhuiskrans (coach-house cliff) by the local fishers in honour of the huge sea cave capable of housing several ox-wagons. For outsiders, it was named after the *Arniston*, a ship wrecked there in 1815. The Waenhuiskrans Cave can be explored at low tide.

The De Hoop Nature Reserve on the way to Swellendam includes an internationally renowned wetland and bird sanctuary. It is a winter retreat for the southern right whale and the Western Cape's only Cape griffen vulture colony.

The red Bredasdorp lily and many species of protea and erica are found in the Heuningberg Nature Reserve.

Swellendam is well known for its youngberries and eclectic architecture. The Drostdy Museum consists of a group of buildings containing a huge selection of period furniture. The Bontebok National Park, about 7 km from Swellendam,

provides sanctuary to the threatened bontebok and other species.

Known for its world-class wine, Barrydale offers the visitor fruit and fresh air in abundance.

Situated on the N2, about 160 km from Cape Town, Riviersonderend offers beautiful mountain and river scenery, a nine-hole golf course and sightings of the blue crane.

Caledon is famous for its natural mineral waters, hot springs and wild-flower shows. Southern Associated Maltsters is the only malt producer for the South African lager beer industry and the largest in the southern hemisphere.

Genadendal is the oldest Moravian village in Africa, with church buildings and a school dating back to 1738. The Genadendal Mission and Museum Complex documents the first mission station in South Africa.

The Theewaterskloof Dam outside Villiersdorp is the seventh-largest dam in the country. The Villiersdorp Wild Flower Garden and Nature Reserve has an indigenous herb garden and a reference library.

The Grabouw/Elgin district produces about 60% of South Africa's total apple exports and fine wines. The valley is also renowned for cultivating fresh chrysanthemums, roses and proteas. The Elgin Apple Museum is one of only two in the world. Sir Lowry's Pass offers spectacular views of False Bay from Gordon's Bay to Cape Point.

Northern Cape

Characterised by its vast expanses of space and silence, blazing summer sunshine and interesting and friendly people, the Northern Cape is a province rich with culture.

Diamond fields

The Big Hole in Kimberley is the largest hand-dug excavation in the world. In 1871, diamonds were discovered at the site and mined manually by prospectors. The Kimberley Tram Service dates back to the beginning of the 20th century and still transports passengers from the City Hall to the Mine Museum.

Underground mine tours are a big attraction, as are the famous ghost tours, during which many historical buildings are seen from a different perspective. Hand and mechanical diamond-digging by private diggers can be viewed by appointment.

The McGregor Museum houses invaluable collections of the archaeological finds in the area, as well as San art works. The house where Sol Plaatje (African National Congress founding member and human-rights activist) lived in Kimberley, boasts a library of Plaatje's and other black South African writers' works, and several displays, including a portrayal of black involvement in the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

The Paterson Museum near the Kimberley Airporthouses a replica of a Paterson biplane, which was used for pilot training by the flying school operated by the Paterson Aviation Syndicate at Alexandersfontein. A township tour of Galeshewe provides a fresh perspective on South Africa's socio-historical realities. Pan African Congress founder Robert Sobukwe's house is situated there.

The Magersfontein Battlefield outside Kimberley, with its original trenches and other defences intact, is the site of the Boers' crushing defeat of the British during the Siege of Kimberley. A cultural centre at Wildebeestkuil outside Kimberley features !Xun and Khwe artwork for sale and a tour of rock engravings by these indigenous people.

A short distance from Kimberley is the mining town of Barkley West, which, owing to its proximity to the Vaal River, is a favourite spot for many water-sports enthusiasts and anglers.

Tucked along the Vaal River near Barkley West lies the Vaalbos National Park. The park is not only home to large raptors, but is also a breeding centre for endangered African herbivores such as rhino, roan and sable antelope and disease-free buffalo.

Kalahari

At Black Rock, visitors have the opportunity to view a worked-out manganese mine.

Danielskuil lies at the foot of the Kuruman hills. The Tswana people occupied the area before it became home to the Griquas. Boesmansgat, on the farm Mount Carmel outside Danielskuil, is a unique natural sinkhole – the second-deepest and largest of its kind in the world.

Known as the "Oasis of the Kalahari", Kuruman is blessed with a permanent and abundant source of water that flows from Gasegonyana (Tswana for "the little water calabash") – commonly called the "Eye of Kuruman".

Moffat's Mission in Kuruman is a tranquil place featuring the house of missionary Robert Moffat, the church he built, and several other buildings. Moffat translated the Bible into Setswana – the first African language in which the Bible was made accessible.

The printing press on which he printed the first 2 000 copies can still be viewed. The church he

built seats 800 people and is still in use. David Livingstone married Moffat's daughter and started many famous travels from this mission station.

The Wonderwerk Cave at Kuruman features extensive San paintings that may be viewed by appointment.

The Kalahari Raptor Centre cares for injured birds. Many of these majestic creatures can be seen at close quarters. Another marvel is the Witsand Nature Reserve, situated about 80 km southwest of Postmasburg, which features a 100-m high dune of brilliant white sand. It stretches for about 9 km and is about 2 km wide.

Green Kalahari

The roaring sands on the farm Doornaar near Groblershoop are an interesting site. The white dunes, surrounded by typically red Kalahari dunes, are said to "roar" when the wind blows.

Eleven waterwheels are still used today along the hand-built irrigation canals at Kakamas.

Kanoneiland is a settlement on the biggest island in the Orange River.

At Keimoes, the Orange River flows at its widest. The Tierberg Nature Reserve offers spectacular views of the Keimoes Valley and the many islands in the Orange River. The original irrigation canal system is still in use. The Orange River Wine Cellars largest cellar is situated here.

Kenhardt is the oldest town in the Lower Orange River area. The Quiver Tree Forest and Kokerboom Hiking Trail, consisting of between 4 000 and 5 000 quiver trees, are within easy driving distance of the town. Upington is the commercial, educational and social centre of the Green Kalahari, owing its prosperity to agriculture and its irrigated lands along the Orange River. A camel-and-rider statue in front of the town's police station pays tribute to the "mounties", who patrolled the harsh desert territory on camels.

The Orange River displays its impressive power at the Augrabies Falls, also known as the "Place of Great Noise", in the Augrabies Falls National Park. Visitors can hire canoes to ensure closer contact with the natural heritage surrounding the world's sixth-largest waterfall.

The Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park comprises 38 000 m^2 of land, making it one of the largest conservation areas in the world. Straddling the Green Kalahari and Botswana, the park is a two-million-ha sanctuary for various raptors, antelope, gemsbok, springbok, blue wildebeest, red hartebeest, eland, Kalahari lion, black-maned lion, brown and spotted hyena, leopard, cheetah, and smaller game, including mongoose, porcupine and the endangered honey badger.

The names of various landmarks within the park reflect its long history as a crossroads of many cultures, which have included the San, the Mier, the Huguenots and the Scottish at various times.

The park is an important element of the first phase of the Transfrontier Conservation Area 2010 Strategy, which is a priority of the SADC.

Namaqualand

The indigenous people of the Namaqualand region are the Namas. Their traditional Nama reed huts still abound in Leliefontein, Nourivier and Steinkopf.

Namaqualand is famous for a spectacular annual show in spring when an abundance of wild flowers covers vast tracts of desert. The flowers sprout and survive for a brief period before they wilt and disappear in the blistering heat and dry conditions just as suddenly as they had appeared.

The small town of Garies is the centre for those setting out to enjoy spring's show of exuberance in the Kamiesberg.

After diamonds were discovered along the West Coast in 1925, Alexander Bay was known for its mining activities. The town is no longer a high-security area and no permits are needed to enter. The Alexkor Museum paints a picture of the history of the area. The town also features the world's largest desert lichenfield, which has some 26 species.

At Hondeklip Bay, visitors can dive for crayfish and watch the local fisherfolk conduct their trade.

Established as a small-vessel harbour and railway junction in 1954 for the copper-mining industry, Port Nolloth is a centre for the small-scale diamond-recovery and crayfish industries. It is the only holiday resort on the Diamond Coast. The local factory sells fish and crayfish in season.

Set in a narrow valley bisecting the granite domes of the Klein Koperberge lies Springbok.

South of Springbok, near Kamieskroon, lies the Skilpad Wild Flower Reserve, part of the Namaqua National Park, which captures the full grandeur of the flower season. The 1 000-ha reserve operates only during the flower season.

The Goegap Nature Reserve comprises 15 004 ha of typically granite, rocky hills and sandy flats. The reserve also offers a 4x4, and several hiking and mountain-biking trails.

Namaqualand is also home to the Ais-Ais/Richtersveld National Park. It is managed jointly by the local Nama people and South African National Parks.

Upper Karoo (Bo-Karoo)

Flanked by the Towerberg, Colesberg is one of the Northern Cape's most beautiful towns.

The town features one of the country's last working horsemills. An Anglo-Boer/South African War tour is also on offer. A weekend tour includes a visit to the Norvalspont prisoner-of-war camp and cemetery. Colesberg has bred many of the country's top merino sheep. It is also renowned for producing high-quality racehorses.

De Aar is the most important railway junction in South Africa. The author Olive Schreiner lived in the town for many years. Visitors can dine in her former house, which has been converted into a restaurant.

Hanover is known for its handmade shoes and articles made mostly from sheepskin and leather.

The "Star of South Africa" diamond was discovered at Hopetown. The town, which is steeped in history, also features an old toll house and a block house dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

At Wonderdraai near Prieska, visitors can see the horseshoe-shaped island formed by the flow of the Orange River. It seems as if the river turns to flow uphill.

Vanderkloof was built to house the people building the Vanderkloof Dam. Today, it is a flourishing holiday resort. Visitors can enjoy waterskiing, boardsailing, boating and swimming, or visit the Eskom Hydroelectric Power Station situated within the dam's wall.

Victoria West is home to the Apollo Theatre, South Africa's last operational art deco movie theatre from the 1950s. The theatre comes alive each September with the Apollo Film Festival.

The rare riverine rabbit is found in the Victoria West Nature Reserve.

Hantam Karoo

Near the small town of Brandvlei lies Verneukpan, where Sir Malcolm Campbell unsuccessfully attempted to break the world land-speed record in 1929.

Carnarvon is well known for its corbelled dome-roofed houses built of flat stones because of a lack of wood.

The floors of these interesting houses were smeared and coloured with a rich red mixture of fat and oxblood and polished with smooth stone.

A few kilometres outside Fraserburg lies the Gansfontein Palaeosurface.

Discovered in 1968, it comprises several trackways of large, four-footed and five-toed mammalian reptiles. The prints are estimated to be some 190 million years old.

Sutherland, birthplace of well-known Afrikaans author and poet NP van Wyk Louw, is known for its brilliant night skies and cold, biting winters.

The sterboom (star tree), which blossoms in September, is found only in Sutherland.

The South African Astronomical Observatory's (Saao) observation telescopes, including the Southern African Large Telescope (Salt), are in Sutherland.

From Monday to Saturday, the Saao offers two guided tours a day and two night tours a week. Day tours entail a guided walk through the visitors' centre adjacent to the telescope sites on the mountainside and a guided tour of selected telescopes, including the Salt.

During night tours, visitors can view interesting objects in the sky through two dedicated visitors' telescopes. Booking is essential.

South Africa's so-called Big Five will soon become the Big Seven, when the whale and the shark are officially added to this tourist attraction. South Africa will be the only country in the world to boast the Big Seven by adding the two ocean predators to the current Big Five, which are the lion, leopard, elephant, rhinoceros and buffalo.

Free State

The Free State lies in the heart of South Africa, with the Kingdom of Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape.

Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

This central region is characterised by endless rolling fields of wheat, sunflower and maize, and forms the principal bread basket of South Africa.

Motheo

With its King's Park Rose Garden containing more than 4 000 rose bushes, the Free State's major city, Bloemfontein, has rightfully earned the nickname "City of Roses". The city also hosts an annual rose festival.

The Eerste Raadsaal (First Parliament Building), built in 1849 as a school, is Bloemfontein's oldest surviving building. Still in its original condition,

this historical building is used as the seat of the Provincial Legislature.

The National Afrikaans Literary Museum and Research Centre has a repository of works by prominent Afrikaans authors. Exhibits in the Afrikaans Music Museum and the Theatre Museum (part of the centre) include old musical instruments, sheet music, costumes, photographs and furniture.

The national museum is notable for its wide collection of fossils, cultural-historical exhibits and archaeological displays, including the Florisbad skull, which was discovered in the 1930s at the Florisbad Spring, about 50 km north of Bloemfontein.

The National Women's Memorial is a sandstone obelisk, 36,5 m high, which commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War from 1899 to 1902. Visitors get a glimpse of life in the concentration and prisoner-of-war camps. The research library contains an extensive collection of Africana.

The Old Presidency dates back to 1885 and was the official residence of three presidents of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. It houses a museum depicting their respective terms of office, and a cultural centre for art exhibitions, theatrical productions and musical events.

The Observatory Theatre in Bloemfontein's game reserve is a unique attraction. Watching the sunrise from Naval Hill in the middle of the town, gives an idea of the size of the town. Naval Hill is the biggest game reserve that is completely surrounded by a city.

Bloemfontein has a busy cultural and social-events calendar. One of the annual events not to be missed is the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly known as the Macufe Arts Festival, in September.

The Sand du Plessis Theatre and Art Gallery at Oliewenhuis is also worth visiting.

Botshabelo (Place of Refuge), 45 km from Bloemfontein on the N8 road to Lesotho, is believed to be the largest township settlement in the Free State – and the second-largest in South Africa after Soweto.

Nearby, the town of Thaba Nchu features luxury hotels and a casino, with the Maria Moroka Nature Reserve surrounding Thaba Nchu Sun and the Setlogelo Dam.

Xhariep

Bethulie used to be a London Missionary Society station. The original mission buildings still stand.

The Pellissier House Museum depicts the history of events in the area.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War concentration camp cemetery in Bethulie worth a visit.

The Gariep Dam, more than 100 km long and 15 km wide, is part of the Orange River Water Scheme, the largest inland expanse of water in South Africa.

Between the dam and Bethulie is the Gariep Dam Nature Reserve. On the southern side of the dam lies the Oviston Nature Reserve.

Philippolis, the oldest town in the Free State, was founded as a London Missionary Society station in 1824. It was the first mission station in the province.

Trompsburg is the hub of the Free State Merino sheep-farming industry.

The Tussen-die-Riviere Nature Reserve reputedly supports more game than any other sanctuary in the Free State and receives hunters in autumn and winter.

A fountain near Koffiefontein was a favourite outspan for transport riders in the 19th century. In June 1870, one of these transport riders picked up a diamond near the fountain. This prompted a rush, and by 1882 Koffiefontein was a booming town with four mining companies.

Thabo Mofutsanyana

With its beautiful snow-capped mountains providing a backdrop to numerous romantic hideaways, this untouched, pristine area with its breathtaking scenery possesses grandeur of majestic proportion.

The Basotho Cultural Village in the QwaQwa Nature Reserve is a living museum where visitors can witness the Sotho traditions and lifestyle in the chief's kraal.

Clocolan is known for its cherry trees, which provide a spectacular sight when they blossom in spring. San rock paintings and engravings are also found in the area.

Clarens is often described as the "Jewel of the Free State", owing to its spectacular scenery. San paintings are found on farms in the area.

Close by, the Highlands Route meanders along the foothills of the Maluti mountains. One can also explore the magnificent mountain scenery by bike. The town is known for the many arts and crafts shops, which offer the visitor a wide range of curios and original artwork.

Ficksburg is known for its cherry and asparagus farms. Every November, a cherry festival is held there. The town is a gateway to the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho.

The Golden Gate Highlands National Park, known for its beautiful scenery, is a very popular holiday destination. A vulture restaurant allows visitors to observe these scavengers closely. San paintings can also be viewed.

The Highlands Route follows the Lesotho border via Ladybrand and ends at Zastron in the south. San caves and rock art are some of the main features of the route.

The birdwatching mecca of Seekoeivlei Nature Reserve near Memel constitutes a wetland with Ramsar status, and is surrounded by private game and holiday farms.

Ramsar sites are wetlands of international importance designated under the Ramsar Convention.

Lejweleputswa region

Bethlehem lies on the banks of the Jordaan River and was founded by the Voortrekkers during the 1840s.

The museum in Miller Street depicts the history of the area. The banks of the Jordaan River form part of the Pretoriuskloof Nature Reserve – a sanctuary for birds and small game.

Van Reenen's Pass winds through the Drakensberg, and was originally used by migrating herds of zebra, hartebeest, blesbok and wildebeest. The Llandaff Oratory in the nearby village of Van Reenen is believed to be the smallest Roman Catholic Church in the world.

At Harrismith, there are various memorials in honour of those who fought in the Anglo-Boer/South African War and World War I. Of particular interest is a memorial for the Scots Guards and Grenadier Guards.

Platberg, the 2 394-m "flat mountain", is the town's landmark. A well-known race, claimed by some to be the toughest in the country, is run annually up, along and back down the mountain. Sterkfontein Dam is ideal for water sports and fishing.

The Riemland Museum in Heilbron depicts the heritage and agricultural activities of the region.

The QwaQwa district is a traditional home to the Basotho people. Karakul carpets, mohair, wall hangings, copper, glassware and brass are made and sold at Phuthaditjhaba. The nearby Metsi Matsho and Fika Patso dams are renowned for trout-fishing.

Welkom is known for its gold mines. It is also the only city in the country where traffic circles are used instead of traffic lights.

The world's deepest wine cellar is at the St Helena Mine, which is 857 m below the Earth's surface.

Bothaville is regarded as the centre of the Free State Maize Route. The Nampo Harvest Farm and Festival attracts more than 20 000 visitors each year and is the second-largest private agricultural show in the world. Bothaville also hosts the annual Food and Witblits Festival, drawing visitors from all over South Africa.

The sandstone church in Kestrell is possibly the most impressive of all the Eastern Free State's sandstone buildings.

Winburg is the oldest town and first capital of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. The Voortrekker Museum, using life-size models, depicts the daily routine of the trekkers. A concentration camp cemetery is situated close by.

Sasolburg originated in 1954 with the establishment of Sasol, the synthetic fuel producer.

Parys, which is situated on the banks of the Vaal River, is a popular holiday destination.

The nearby Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site was caused by the collision of a meteorite with the Earth many years ago. The meteorite is visible and looks like a small hill between Parys and Vredefort. It is the only world heritage site in the Free State.

It features unique fauna and flora, including 100 different plant species, more than 300 types of birds and a variety of small mammals. Various hiking and mountain-bike trails are also on offer.

Jukskei is the first indigenous game, which has developed to international participation. The Jukskei Museum in Kroonstad has over 3 500 objects that depict the development of the game.

Jagersfontein has the deepest man-made hole in the world. The Excelsior diamond of 971 carats was found in this open-cast mine in 1893. Eagles nest against the cliffs of the mine.

Eastern Cape

The main feature of the Eastern Cape is its magnificent coastline. With its wide open sandy beaches, secluded lagoons and towering cliffs, the Indian Ocean coastline provides the province with a rich natural tourist attraction, which is also a paradise for watersports enthusiasts.

Added to the diverse coastal experiences are more than 60 state-owned game reserves and more than 30 private game farms, which collectively cover an area greater than the Kruger National Park.

Just 75 years after the proclamation of the Addo Elephant National Park in the Eastern Cape to protect the 11 elephants that remained in the area, Addo is now a world-renowned mega park. Elephant numbers have swelled to over 450 – making this one of the densest elephant populations on Earth. There are buffalo, lion, leopard and rhino completing the Big Five. With great white sharks and southern right whales in the marine section of the park, it means that Addo now boasts the Big Seven of Africa.

Amatola mountain region

The Amatola mountains are famous for their scenery and history, and stretch from Adelaide in the east to Stutterheim in the west. With its lush forests and ancient battlefields, it is an area steeped in Xhosa culture and early settler history.

The dense forests of the Amatolas are a haven for the endangered Cape parrot, and were also home to the first dinosaur to be identified in South Africa, the Blinkwater Monster, a large fossilised reptile discovered near Fort Beaufort.

Outdoor enthusiasts enjoy Cathcart, where trout-fishing, hiking, riding and birdwatching are among the attractions. The Amatole Hiking Trail is a well-known scenic, but strenuous, trail.

The coastal city of Port Elizabeth, which has earned the name "Friendly City", is a superb holiday destination offering a diverse mix of eco-attractions. The Isuzu National Sailing Week is held annually in April in the waters of Algoa Bay.

The Red Location Museum of the People's Struggle in New Brighton – winner of three international awards – was designed to be both a monument to South Africa's struggle against apartheid and an integral part of community life in a township that acted as a crucible for the struggle.

The city boasts various scuba-diving sites. Visitors can also visit Bay World with its oceanarium and snake park, and many splendid museums. Other attractions include the Greater Addo Elephant National Park and game reserves; the traditional healing village, Kaya Lendaba; bird-watching; air tours; canoeing; various mountain-bike and horse-riding trails; and organised outdoor excursions.

Within the city there are some beautiful parks with well-landscaped gardens, including the St George's Park, which covers 73 ha and houses the famous Port Elizabeth Cricket Club, the oldest bowling green in South Africa; Prince Alfred's Guard Memorial, the 1882 Victorian Pearson Conservatory; and the 54-ha Settlers' Park.

Tourists can also explore the Donkin Heritage Trail, take a ride on the famous Apple Express, and hike along the site of ancient shipwrecks on the Sacramento Trail. At King William's Town, tourists can visit the Amathole Missionary Museum. The grave of Black Consciousness activist, Steve Biko, is also in the town.

Wild Coast

Since Portuguese mariners first pioneered the sea route around the Cape to India, this notorious coast has claimed countless ships.

Southern right and humpback whales and their calves are regularly spotted from the high dunes, usually between May and November, while common and bottlenose dolphins are often seen close to shore.

The entire region, once known as the "Transkei homeland", is the home of a major section of the Xhosa-speaking southern Nguni (or Pondo) tribes. Brightly coloured examples of their beadwork, together with traditional pottery and basketry, can be bought from roadside vendors and at some trading posts.

Visitors to the rural village of Qunu can view the childhood home of former President Mandela. In the city of Mthatha, the Nelson Mandela Museum tells the story of this great figure. The museum is a collection of heritage sectors spread across three locations: Qunu, Mveso and Mthatha. A display reflecting the life and times of Mandela can be found at the Bhunga Building section of the Nelson Mandela Museum in Mhatha. Mandela has received thousands of gifts from presidents, groups and ordinary people. Accepted on behalf of the people of South Africa, they are in safekeeping at the museum for the benefit and appreciation of the nation. Artefacts range from children's letters to bejewelled camel covers.

The alignment of the N2 national route along the Wild Coast will help open up investment opportunities in this area.

Coffee Bay is popular among surfers, anglers and shell collectors.

To the south is the prominent rock formation, the Hole in the Wall. The local Xhosa call this place Izi Khaleni (Place of Thunder). During high tide, the waves move through the hole in such a way that the concussion can be heard throughout the valley.

Karoo

The vast plains of the Karoo have an air of grandeur, and its many picturesque towns are steeped in history.

The Owl House in Nieu Bethesda displays the creative talent of the late Helen Martins. Statues of mermaids, wise men, camels, owls and churches create a wonderland in the garden. All the artworks were created with broken bottles, bits of mirror and cement.

More than 200 houses in Graaff-Reinet have been restored to their original Victorian appearance, and proclaimed national monuments. The Old Library Museum houses the Lex Bremner Fossil Collection of Karoo reptile fossils and a collection of Khoi and San art reproductions. Urquhart House has a popular genealogical research centre.

Almost 50 km south-west of Graaff-Reinet is the Kalkkop Crater, a gigantic circular impact that is of major scientific importance.

To the north-west of Graaff-Reinet lies the Valley of Desolation. A steep and narrow road leads into the mountains that surround the valley.

The Valley of Desolation is a national monument within the Karoo Nature Reserve, and was formed millions of years ago by weathering erosion.

The first evidence of the presence of dinosaurs in South Africa can be viewed at Maclear.

The Mountain Zebra National Park is a haven for the Cape mountain zebra species, which at one time inhabited most of the Cape. The park saved these animals from extinction and today their population stands at about 350.

Other species found in the park include various antelope such as eland, the African wildcat, bat-eared fox, and more than 200 bird species, including the pale-winged starling, the booted eagle and the blue crane.

N6 Route

This route runs from Bloemfontein to East London. Popular attractions include the slopes of the Tiffindell Ski Resort and the trout-filled streams, as well as the many caves adorned with ancient rock art.

Several historic towns can be found in the region, including Barkly East, Rhodes, Lady Grey, Elliot, Aliwal North, Burgersdorp and Queenstown.

Sunshine Coast

The Sunshine Coast comprises miles of unspoilt, sun-drenched beaches.

Port Alfred lies at the mouth of the Kowie River. Coastal hills are home to the oribi – a small territorial buck that was recently near extinction.

Inland, Grahamstown is sometimes referred to as the "City of Saints", because of the more than 40 churches found in the town. It is also known for the National Arts Festival, which is held annually. During the festival, Grahamstown is transformed into a dedicated arts venue where performers, visual artists, audiences, writers and craftspeople fuse in a celebration of creative energy.

Other attractions include various museums and historical buildings, the oldest postbox in South Africa, botanical gardens, the cathedrals of St Michael and St George, nature reserves and hiking trails. Situated north-east of Grahamstown, the Great Fish River Reserve consists primarily of valley bushveld habitat and is surrounded by both tribal land and commercial game reserves and farms.

The reserve boasts abundant wildlife such as white rhino, giraffe, waterbuck, Cape buffalo, hippo, kudu, springbok and eland.

There are several historic forts and remains from the legendary frontier wars located in the area.

East London, South Africa's only river port city, was originally established as a supply port to serve the colonial British military headquarters at King William's Town. The city's own waterfront development, Latimer's Landing, is situated on the banks of the Buffalo River. The East London Aquarium houses approximately 400 different marine and freshwater species.

The East London Museum depicts the natural environment and rich heritage of the region. Best known for the prehistoric coelacanth, the museum also displays reconstructions of the extinct dodo of Mauritius, along with the only extant dodo egg in the world.

The Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area is the largest of the inland protected areas and provides opportunities to visit spectacular fynbos-covered mountains on foot or in off-road vehicles.

There is a fascinating shell collection at the Shell Museum at Kei Mouth.

Tsitsikamma

This region, stretching from Plettenberg Bay to Jeffreys Bay, is renowned for its dense forests, majestic mountains and deep river gorges. It forms the eastern end of the Garden Route.

The word "tsitsikamma" is derived from the Khoekhoen words "tse-tsesa" meaning clear, and "gami" meaning water.

South Africa's first marine park, the Tsitsikamma National Park, extends along a rocky coastline of 50 km, and 3 km out to sea.

Inland, adventure-seekers will find deep gorges and temperate evergreen forests criss-crossed by

six hiking trails, including the five-day Otter Trail. The varied wildlife includes dolphins and whales, caracal, genet, chacma baboon, dassie and mongoose. Another popular adventure is a black-water tubing experience on the Storms River.

Prominent bird species in the area are the African black oystercatcher, the orange-breasted sunbird, the Nerina trogan and the colourful Knysna loerie. A lucky few may catch a glimpse of the rare Cape clawless otter, which the Otter Trail is named after.

Limpopo

Limpopo is a land of dramatic contrasts characterised by hot savanna plains and mist-clad mountains, age-old indigenous forests and cycads alongside modern plantations, and ancient mountain fortresses and the luxury of contemporary infrastructure and modern-day facilities.

Steeped in history, Limpopo celebrates a rich cultural heritage, and at many archaeological sites the mysteries of the past and ancient peoples are still being unearthed. The present tranquillity of the province belies a turbulent past, to which many monuments and museums attest. Much of the land, particularly in the Kruger National Park and other game and nature reserves, is unspoilt, and provides sanctuary to large numbers of game.

Waterberg

The Nylsvley Nature Reserve boasts one of the greatest concentrations of waterfowl and bushveld birds in South Africa. More than 400 species frequent the area. The Mokopane vicinity has several nature reserves. The Arend Dieperink Museum features a fine cultural-historical collection. The Makapan caves are notable for their fossils and the caves are being developed into an archaeological site. Makapan Valley is an extension of the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site. The Makapansgat caves and limeworks near Mokopane represent an archaeological site of global importance.

The Thabazimbi district has a large concentration of private game reserves and is one of the fastest-growing ecotourism areas in the country. The Marakele National Park is home to some rare yellowwood and cedar trees and the world's largest colony of Cape vultures. It is also a leader in the conservation of the black rhino outside of the Kruger National Park and the KwaZulu-Natal parks. Bela-Bela is known for its hot springs. There are also a number of game reserves and leisure resorts in the area.

The Waterberg range is rich in indigenous trees, streams, springs, wetlands and birdlife. Cliffs known as the "Palace of the Vultures" harbour a large breeding colony of Cape vultures. Modimolle is the region's main town.

Capricorn district

The Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum outside Polokwane is a traditional Northern Sotho kraal. Men and women practise traditional skills such as making baskets, clay pots, furniture and utensils, and preparing hides.

Polokwane is considered the premier game-hunting destination in South Africa. It is ideally located near the neighbouring countries of Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland. Zion City at Moria near Polokwane is the headquarters of the Zion Christian Church, which attracts more than a million pilgrims every Easter.

Polokwane hosts a great variety of museums and art galleries.

Vhembe district

The Mapungubwe Archaeological Site, situated 80 km west of Musina, lies within the boundaries of the Mapungubwe National Park. It is one of the richest of its kind in Africa and a world heritage site. Excavations in the 1930s uncovered a royal graveyard, which included a number of golden artefacts, including the famous gold-foil rhinoceros.

The Schoemansdal Voortrekker Town and Museum, west of Makhado, is built on the site of an original Voortrekker village and depicts their lifestyle between 1848 and 1852.

Also worth visiting is the Big Tree in the Mutale Municipality, the Tshatshingo potholes, the mystical lake of Dzivhafundudzi and the holy forest and waterfalls at Phiphidi.

Mopani district

The Modjadji Nature Reserve, north of Tzaneen, is named after the legendary Rain Queen, Modjadji, who is believed to have settled in the area early in the 16th century. The reserve encompasses the world's largest concentration of the cycad species *Encephalartos transvenosus*, also known as the Modjadji cycad.

The Hans Merensky Nature Reserve and Mineral Spa on the southern banks of the Great Letaba River supports a large variety of game. At the adjoining Tsonga Kraal Open-Air Museum, arts, crafts and traditional huts reflect the Tsonga lifestyle of 100 years ago.

The sunland's baobab is the world's largest baobab tree, measuring about 47 m in circumference and stretching 22 m high.

At 6 000 years old, the tree is older than the pyramids of Giza. The tree is a premier Limpopo tourist attraction and is found in Modjadjiskloof. In 1993, the farm owners cleared out the hollow centre of the tree and discovered evidence of both the bushmen and Voortrekkers. The natural floor inside the trunk, about a metre below ground level, has a railway sleeper pub, which holds close on 60 people. The tree is famous around the world and has even appeared on the cover of the *Wall Street Journal*.

The largest baobab in the world blooms in spring and is home to a variety of bird life.

The Kruger National Park (northern section) is one of South Africa's major tourist attractions. The park is home to a large number and wide variety of amphibians, reptiles and birds, as well as 147 mammal species, including the Big Five.

Thulamela, in the northern part of the Kruger National Park, was opened to guided groups in June 1997. This followed seven years of archaeological excavations, which brought to light the skeletons of two ancient royals and a multitude of artefacts, including gold bangles, beads and a double gong.

Bohlabela district

On the way to the Kruger National Park, visitors can enjoy wildlife experiences at Manyeleti, home to the Big Five. Adventurers can attempt mountain-climbing at the Mangwazi Nature Reserve and enjoy the Mapulaneng Trail at Zoeknog. The Inyaka Dam at Bushbuckridge is also worth a visit.

North West

North West is blessed with several cultural villages that entertain and enrich visitors.

A number of excellent game reserves have been established, including the Pilanesberg National Park, known as the "Jewel of the North West". It is set in a crater on an extinct volcano and is home to the Big Five as well as a wide variety of smaller game and birds.

Central district

The historic route of Mafikeng includes an Anglo-Boer/South African War siege site, the Molema House where Sol Plaatje lived while writing his *Mafikeng Diary*, and the Mafikeng Museum.

The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre and the Botsalano Game Reserve are well worth a visit.

The Groot Marico region is known as mampoer country and visitors can embark on a tour of the Mampoer Route. The Kortkloof Cultural Village is dedicated to the Tswana people.

Other attractions include the Wondergat; the Bosbult Monument, which commemorates a battle fought during the Anglo-Boer/South African War; the Kaditshwene Iron Age village ruins; and various hiking trails.

Ottosdal is situated in the centre of the North West and was established as a Dutch Reformed Church parish on the farm Korannafontein in 1913 and named after its owner, GP Otto. Ottosdal is the only place in South Africa where the unique "wonderstone", or pyrophyllite, is found and mined.

The annual agricultural show in Ottosdal is one of the oldest in the province. Trenches and cemeteries dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War can be found on the farms Gestoptefontein and Driekuil. San-rock engravings, Stone-Age implements and structures are found on farms such as Witpoort, Gestoptefontein, Driekuil and Korannafontein. The Garden of Remembrance contains graves of soldiers killed during the war. The Old Farmhouse was built in 1910 and houses a unique African collection. The Old Water Mill that was built around 1860 is a national monument.

The Ottosdal Night Race is organised in conjunction with the Diamond Marathon Club. The event consists of 42,2-km, 21,1-km,10-km and 5-km fun runs.

Eastern district

The Hartbeespoort Dam is a popular spot for weekend outings, breakfast runs and yachting. The Hartbeespoort Reptile and Animal Park is situated on the banks of the dam.

Cultural experiences in the area include the popular Mapoch and Gaabo Motho cultural villages as well as the Ring Wagon Inn.

The De Wildt Cheetah-Breeding and Research Centre specialises in breeding cheetah and other endangered wildlife species. Other places of interest include the Borakalalo Game Reserve, the Margaret Roberts Herb Farm and the Phaladingwe Nature Trail.

There are several golf courses in the area.

Bophirima district

The Taung Skull Fossil Site and Blue Pools are renowned for the Taung skull found in the Buxton

quarries. In July 2005, the World Heritage Committee declared the Taung Skull Fossil Site an extension of the Sterkfontein Fossil Hominid Site. This region is popular with adventure-seekers – especially those who enjoy the 4x4 routes and hunting farms.

Rustenburg district

The Pilanesberg National Park supports more than 7 000 head of game and 350 bird species.

The 60 000-ha Madikwe Game Reserve is home to 66 large mammal species. Over 10 000 animals of 27 major species have been reintroduced under Operation Phoenix. A hot-air balloon ride, day and night game drives and bushwalks are available. Sun City and the Palace of the Lost City are very popular tourist attractions, offering gambling, golf, extravaganza shows, watersports and an artificial sea. There are various hiking trails in the region. The Heritage Route starts at the Sterkfontein Caves World Heritage Site and ends at Pilanesberg.

Southern district

The OPM Prozesky Bird Sanctuary in Potchefstroom has over 200 bird species and is situated adjacent to the Mooi River. The Oudorp Hiking Trail takes visitors through the old part of Klerksdorp where 12 Voortrekker families settled.

Other attractions in the region include the Potchefstroom Lakeside Resort, the Faan Meintjies Nature Reserve in Klerksdorp, mine tours at Orkney, the Diggers Route at Wolmaransstad and the Bloemhof Dam Nature Reserve.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga – "the Place Where the Sun Rises" – epitomises every traveller's dream of the true African experience. Located in the north-eastern part of South Africa, the province is bordered by Mozambique to the east and the Kingdom of Swaziland to the south and east.

The climate and topography vary from cool highland grasslands at 1 600 m above sea level, through the middleveld and escarpment, to the subtropical Lowveld towards the Kruger National Park and many private game reserves. Scenic beauty, climate and wildlife, voted the most attractive features of South Africa, are found in abundance in this province.

Attractions range from game viewing and bird-watching to scenic drives across the valleys and peaks of the vast Drakensberg escarpment, and include agritourism, industrial and adventure tourism and cultural experiences.

Historical sites and villages, old wagon routes and monuments mark events and characters who passed this way in search of adventure and wealth.

The cultural heritage of the province is varied and fascinating. The Ndebele beadwork and wall-painting in the north-west, the arts and crafts of the Lowveld and the different traditional villages throughout the province offer a unique insight into the people's history.

Nelspruit

Nelspruit is the capital of Mpumalanga and the commercial and administrative hub of the Lowveld. The Nelspruit Historical Trail is an hour-long route stretching from the Promenade Centre to the Civic Centre.

The Blue Train runs between Pretoria and Nelspruit from May to September on a trip called the "Lowveld Experience". Rovos Rail's trains also travel to Nelspruit.

The Green Heritage Hiking Trail in the Nelspruit Nature Reserve is one of several walks in the reserve and one of many in the region.

Not to be missed is the Lowveld Botanical Garden, as well as the Reptile Park, the Sudwala caves, PR Owen Dinosaur Park and the tranquil town of White River. Well known as an artists' haven and a gateway to the Kruger National Park, White River also boasts an orange winery.

Panorama

Barberton features many reminders of the early gold-rush era. Museums include Belhaven, Fernlea House and Stopforth House. The only known verdite deposits in the world are found in the rocks of the Barberton district. The annual Diggers Festival is held in September.

The Blyderivierspoort Nature Reserve near Graskop is characterised by striking rock formations and a rich diversity of plants. Within the reserve, the Bourke's Luck potholes were formed by river erosion and the action of flood water.

The spectacular Blyde River Canyon is a 26-km-long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment, and is one of the natural wonders of Africa. The canyon is the third-largest in the world, the only green canyon, and hosts three rivers that feed the Blydepoort Dam at Swadini.

God's Window provides a magnificent panoramic view across miles of densely forested mountains, the green Lowveld and the canyon. The Blyderivierspoort Hiking Trail is one of the most popular in the country. A number of other hiking trails are also available.

The southern section of the Kruger National Park, which is a major tourist attraction, falls within this region.

Kaapsehoop is a quaint historical village known for the wild horses that frequent the district. Blue swallows are regular visitors from September to April.

The Lydenburg Museum is situated in the Gustav Klingbiel Reserve, which is the site of archaeological ruins from the Later Iron Age. The Lydenburg heads, human-like masks dated to 500 AD, were discovered in this area.

Sabie is the centre of the largest man-made forest in South Africa. The Cultural Historical Forestry Museum depicts various aspects of the country's forestry industry. The Bridal Veil, Horseshoe and Lone Creek waterfalls, and Mac Mac pools and falls just outside Sabie are well worth a visit.

The 69-km Prospector's Trail starts at the Mac Mac Forest Station and leads to the Bourke's Luck potholes.

At the Montrose Falls in Schoemanskloof, the Crocodile River cascades 12 m into a series of rock pools. It is also the starting point of the annual Lowveld Crocodile Canoe Marathon, held in February.

Pilgrim's Rest is a living museum and a replica of the early gold-mining town. The Alanglade House Museum offers guided tours of the former mine-manager's house, while the Diggings Museum just outside the town arranges guided tours of gold-panning activities. This area was the setting for *Jock of the Bushveld*, the novel by Sir Percy Fitzpatrick about the experiences of a man and his dog as they shared adventures in the world of African gold mining. The Dredzen Shop Museum features a range of items in use nearly a century ago. The Pilgrim's Rest Festival is held every December.

Mount Sheba Nature Reserve, south of Pilgrim's Rest, is best known for its indigenous forest – one of few left in the region.

Highlands Meander

The Highlands Meander is a mecca for fly-fishers. It is in the placid and pristine waters of this region that one finds various stocks of fish, with trout as the major drawcard. The meander also offers numerous other activities.

At the Verloren Vlei and Steenkampsberg nature reserves at Dullstroom, one can get a rare glimpse of the endangered blue, wattled and crowned cranes.

The Loskop Dam Nature Reserve offers game watching, boating and fishing.

A large number of hiking trails is available, such as the Elandskrans Trail, which includes a 30-minute train ride between Waterval-Boven and Waterval-Onder.

Cultural Heartland

Visitors to the Cultural Heartland can immerse themselves in the true cultural heritage of Mpumalanga. Here, one can learn about the proud and welcoming Ndebele people, revered for the striking and colourful geometric patterns on their houses, clothing and beadwork.

This region also has illuminating historical sites such as the Botshabelo Historical Village, near Middelburg.

Cosmos Country

Cosmos Country covers parts of what is known as the energy belt of Mpumalanga, which is home to a number of power stations. This region also has the world's largest underground coal-mining complex and the Sasol plant that is renowned for its oil-from-coal technology.

The carpet of cosmos flowers that blossoms in late summer lures visitors to this region.

Wild Frontier

Various archaeological discoveries dating back almost three billion years were made in the imposing mountains of this region. Visitors can enjoy a rare glimpse of the inimitable San paintings embossed in some rocks.

The region also holds rich historical sentiments centred on the monument of the late Mozambican President Samora Machel, constructed in the village of Mbuzini. The year 2006 saw the 20th anniversary of Machel's death in an aircraft crash.

While they are in this region, visitors have the opportunity to visit Swaziland and Mozambique, which are nearby.

Grass and Wetlands

Grass and Wetlands is a paradise, with its variety of bird species. This region stretches across the deep valleys and mountains of the east where thermal springs bubble to the surface.

There are 270 pans and lakes within a 20-km radius of Lake Chrissie. In this region, visitors can take part in the unusual "frogging expedition" or simply gaze at the stars during "star-gazing weekends".

Gauteng

Gauteng, the "Place of Gold", is the economic powerhouse of South Africa. It is characterised by

a cosmopolitan, multicultural mix of people from all walks of life. The province's unique cultural and social legacy is evident from the many excellent museums, theatres, cultural precincts and craft markets. To strengthen Gauteng's position as a tourism destination of choice, the province must continue to increase the appeal of special destinations such as the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site and the Dinokeng Game Reserve and improve tourism offerings in the areas of competitive sport and the creative industries.

Tourism attractions in and around the Cradle of Humankind have grown to more than 380, with over half of these offering graded accommodation. Dinokeng attractions continue to grow.

The Vaal Dam, which supplies water to most of Gauteng's residents, covers some 300 km^2 and is a popular venue for watersports. Numerous resorts line the shore. The dam also attracts diverse bird species.

Vanderbijlpark was built during the late 1940s by the then Iron and Steel Corporation to accommodate its employees.

The Sterkfontein caves near Krugersdorp are the site of the discovery of the famous skull of Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton some 3,3 million years old.

The broader Cradle of Humankind site consists of 47 000 ha, with numerous caves, the most famous of which are the Sterkfontein caves.

In 1999, Sterkfontein and its environs were declared a world heritage site.

Forty percent of all the world's human ancestor fossils have been found here, including several of the world's most famous and important fossils.

A further 500 hominid fossils and more than 9 000 stone tools have been excavated in the area, and work is ongoing.

The Krugersdorp Game Reserve provides sanctuary for several game species, including four of the Big Five. The African Fauna and Bird Park houses various species of wildlife and birds.

The South African National Railway and Steam Museum at Randfontein Estates Gold Mine outside Krugersdorp houses some of the country's old steam locomotives, a diesel-electric locomotive, and more than 50 vintage passenger coaches. Train rides are offered once a month.

A team of Lippizaner stallions performs every Sunday at the South African National Horsemanship Centre in Kyalami, near Johannesburg.

Visitors to Roodepoort can go on walks and trails through the Kloofendal Nature Reserve, or enjoy a picnic or a show at the popular Kloofendal Amphitheatre. The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden boasts a 70-m-high waterfall and breeding pairs of black eagles.

Forty kilometres north of Pretoria lies a ring of hills a kilometre in diameter and 100 m high. These are the walls of an impact crater left by an asteroid that hit the area some 200 000 years ago. The Tswaing Meteorite Crater is similar in size to the well-known Barringer Meteor Crater in Arizona, in the United States of America. The crater walls at Tswaing were originally about twice as high as they are today.

There is a museum adjacent to the crater. A path leads from the museum to the crater, along the rim, and down to the central lake. The crater is covered with indigenous trees and bushes, which attract a variety of bird life.

The old mining town of Cullinan developed around the Premier Diamond Mine. Many turn-of-the-century houses still stand. The mine has produced some of the world's most famous diamonds, including the Cullinan Diamond, the world's largest at 3 106 carats.

Johannesburg

The Adler Museum of the History of Medicine depicts the history of medicine, dentistry and pharmacy in South Africa. The Pharmacy Museum in Melrose houses a large variety of medicines, including more than 670 traditional medicines that have been collected throughout southern Africa.

There is also a display of old prescription books and dictionaries used by pharmacists.

Newtown is at the heart of initiatives to revitalise the inner city of Johannesburg and to give it soul. Here visitors will find the renowned Market Theatre, jazz bars, dance studios and artists' communes among museums, libraries and a host of places of historic interest.

The Nelson Mandela Bridge is a landmark gateway into Newtown, the arts precinct of Johannesburg. It is the largest cable-stayed bridge in southern Africa.

Museum Africa in Newtown tells the story of life in South Africa from the Stone Age to the Nuclear Age and beyond.

The Market Theatre Complex comprises three theatres, an art gallery, restaurants and pubs.

A bronze statue of the champion of passive resistance, Mahatma Gandhi, can be seen in the city centre.

The Lesedi Cultural Village in the Swartkops hills north of Johannesburg gives visitors the opportunity to meet families of different cultural

Number 8115 Vilakazi Street in Orlando West, Soweto, which used to be the home of former President Nelson Mandela, has been transformed into a museum. It is also the house the anti-apartheid hero returned to after being freed from 27 years in jail.

Mandela did not spend much time in the house as he was often on the run from security forces before his 1962 arrest. The house was petrol-bombed a number of times.

The refurbished house is decorated with photographs and other memorabilia from Mandela's life.

groupings. It features four traditional homesteads where visitors can spend the night with a family of their choice.

The Phumangena Zulu Kraal is home to traditional Zulu people living and working there.

The Melville koppies in Johannesburg was once the site of a Stone Age African village and iron-smelting works. Flora include 80% of the species recorded on the Witwatersrand. It is open to the public from September to April.

Gold Reef City is a theme park based on Johannesburg during the gold-rush era.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg is a state-of-the-art tribute to the rise and fall of apartheid, with 22 exhibition areas that take the visitor on an emotional journey through the state-sanctioned system of apartheid. A team of curators, film-makers, historians, designers and architects assembled the exhibits on a seven-hectare site.

Constitution Hill features the impressive building housing South Africa's Constitutional Court, and offers visitors the chance to view the fort, the so-called native gaol, the women's gaol and the awaiting-trial block. People once imprisoned at these facilities include Gandhi and Albert Luthuli, as well as the only woman to be executed in South Africa's history, Daisy de Melker.

At Santarama Miniland and Entertainment World, visitors can explore models of South Africa's most popular beacons, such as Robben Island, OR Tambo International Airport, East London Harbour, and the Union Buildings in Pretoria.

A large, well-established park surrounds Zoo Lake, which breeding bird colonies frequent. Other attractions include jazz concerts, rowing boats for hire, a tea garden and a restaurant.

Fordsburg, a suburb on the western side of Johannesburg, often called the city's "little India", has grown in recent times, its identity shifting and merging with the different customs and flavours that have made it a centrepiece in the cultural design of the city.

The South African Museum of Military History houses an impressive collection of weaponry and uniforms from the two world wars.

The South African Transport Museum in Heidelberg represents all aspects of South Africa's transport services.

Soweto is a popular tourist destination. It is estimated that some 1 000 foreign tourists visit Soweto every day. Its tourism industry contributes about R143 million to Gauteng's GDP.

The two-bedroom house where former President Nelson Mandela lived before his incarceration has been declared a national monument and converted into a museum.

The Walter Sisulu Square in Kliptown (Soweto) is the place where the Freedom Charter was signed in 1955.

The Kliptown Project comprises a hotel, the recently opened Kliptown Museum, retail outlets, restaurants and offices.

No tour of Soweto would be complete without a visit to the Hector Petersen Museum, which commemorates the people who died during the Student Uprising of 16 June 1976.

The museum was named after the young boy who was the first person to be shot dead by police on that day.

Guest houses and B&B establishments are a fast-growing phenomenon in Soweto.

A tourism and information centre was opened in Soweto in February 2006. The centre provides comprehensive information to tourists. Visitors can book accommodation in Soweto, and plan and book tours and site guides.

Pretoria

A variety of historical buildings are found in the city, which is known as the "Jacaranda City" because of the many jacaranda trees that line its streets. When these are in full bloom in October, they cover the city in a lilac haze, providing spectacular views from the surrounding hills.

Church Square is built around a statue of Paul Kruger, president of the former Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek, and includes buildings such as the Old Raadsaal and the Palace of Justice.

Ten minutes' drive away from Church Square is Freedom Park, which commemorates the country's political history.

Once fully completed in 2010, the 35-ha site will comprise a garden of remembrance, a museum, and statues and sculptures to honour South Africans who have contributed to the country's freedom and development.

The Kruger House Museum contains the personal belongings of President Kruger.

Melrose House is a beautiful example of Victorian architecture. The Peace Treaty of Vereeniging, which ended the Anglo-Boer/South African War, was signed there in 1902.

Demonstrations at the Pioneer Open-Air Museum include cow milking, butter and candle making, bread baking and coffee-bean grinding.

Other museums include the Police Museum, the Coert Steynberg Museum and the Transvaal Museum of Natural History.

The Voortrekker Monument also has a museum and commemorates the Great Trek. Some 260 steps lead to the dome, where spectacular views of the city can be enjoyed. The monument receives about 200 000 visitors a year.

Fort Schanskop has been refurbished and has a 375-seat amphitheatre.

The Union Buildings were designed by Sir Herbert Baker and completed in 1913. They were the setting for the presidential inauguration of Dr Mandela in 1994, those of Thabo Mbeki on 16 June 1999 and 27 April 2004, and of Jacob Zuma on 9 May 2009.

The Sammy Marks Museum near Pretoria dates from 1885. Rooms in the house are filled with Victorian paintings, furniture, silver and porcelain. Visitors can relax at the tea garden and restaurant on the premises.

The General Smuts House Museum in Irene, south-east of Pretoria, contains the original furnishings of the Smuts family. A popular arts and crafts market is held here on certain Saturdays.

The Rietvlei Nature Reserve is notable for its grass types, herbs, a large number of game and many bird species.

The Mapoch Ndebele Village, north of Pretoria, is being restored by its residents and the National Cultural History Museum. To develop the project into a viable, living tourist village, the 50 families staying there have undergone tourist-guide and business training. It is the first living cultural village in South Africa owned and managed by its residents.

Mamelodi is about 20 km from the city centre and features the Solomon Mahlangu Square, which is dedicated to this freedom fighter.

The Kievits Kroon Country Estate and Spa in Pretoria and the Maski Bed and Breakfast in Hammanskraal were chosen as winners in their respective categories at the 2009 Tourism Indaba.

The Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum outside Pretoria features a farmstead dating from 1880. Traditional farming activities are demonstrated, and annual events include a prickly-pear festival, a mampoer festival and the Agricultural Museum Show.

The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, the largest in the southern hemisphere.

KwaZulu-Natal

Tourism constitutes about 8% of the provincial GDP and the economic impact of tourism in 2008 was in the order of R22 billion, employing 144 000 people in KwaZulu-Natal.

Also known as the "Zulu Kingdom", KwaZulu-Natal is enticing, spectacular and a fascinating multicultural showpiece destination flanked by the warm Indian Ocean and soaring peaks.

Durban and surroundings

The gateway city of Durban is a pulsating and inviting fusion of East, West and Zulu motifs overlooking Africa's busiest seaport. It is South Africa's domestic tourism leader, highly popular among visitors from throughout Africa and increasingly on the "must-see, must-do" lists of discerning travellers.

These travellers from all points of the globe seek and find a unique blend of sophistication, cultural diversity and excitement – in the most breathtaking setting imaginable.

The Golden Mile skirts the main beaches of the Indian Ocean. Attractions include an amusement centre, paddling pools, paved walkways and fountains.

The uShaka Marine World has a theme park, oceanarium, dolphinarium and oceanographic research institute. It is home to a wide variety of sea life, including sharks, dolphins and seals. One of its main attractions is the long lane of shops and the multitude of restaurants, especially those in the old wreck (a replica of a ship wreck in the centre of the park), and a tourism information office at its entrance.

There is a snorkelling trail and a tubing river around the park.

Durban's most popular fishing spot is at Blue Lagoon beach at the wide Umgeni River mouth. Beyond the river, the La Lucia and Beachwood Mangroves nature reserves offer long, tranquil walks along empty sands.

The Durban area has more than 50 reserves, developed parks and specialised gardens, the most renowned being the Municipal Botanical

Garden. Besides the botanical gardens, Mitchell Park is one of the most popular green spaces and includes an outdoor restaurant and a zoo, plus a sizeable playground for children.

MiniTown is a model city depicting Durban's best-known buildings.

Museums include the Natural History Museum, the Natural Science Museum, the Old House Museum and the Old Fort. One of the most intriguing museums is the Maritime Museum, complete with two floating ships in the harbor.

The Shree Ambalavaanar Alayam Temple (the Second River Temple) in Cato Manor was the first Hindu temple in Africa. It is a national monument.

The Juma Musjid Mosque is the largest mosque in the southern hemisphere. Daily tours are available.

Annual events in and around the city include the popular Comrades Marathon between Durban and Pietermaritzburg, an international surfing competition, the Duzi canoe marathon, the Midmar Mile swimming event, the July Handicap horse-race and the Amashovashova cycle tour, as well as the largest road race in the country, the Spar Mercury Ladies 10-km Challenge.

Umhlanga Rocks, just north of Durban, is notable for its ski-boating facilities and the Ski-Boat Festival held every April. The Natal Sharks Board offers shark dissections and interesting displays. Guided tours of the Hawaan Forest are also on offer. Hawaan is the last relic of coastal forest in the region and contains rare indigenous trees.

The Umgeni River Bird Park overlooks the Umgeni River and ranks among the world's best bird sanctuaries. Many varieties of birds, indigenous and exotic, inhabit walk-in aviaries.

The Millennium Town at the end of the Bluff houses the maritime offices, which control the entry of ships into and out of the busiest port in Africa.

East Griqualand

East Griqualand is an area of great beauty, featuring colourful, living history. Kokstad lies in the Umzimhlava River basin between Mount Currie and the Ngele mountains.

The original town hall – built in 1910 – is a national monument, now serving as the local library. The former library – built in 1907 – is also a national monument and houses the Kokstad Museum.

The Weza State Forest runs through indigenous forests and commercial plantations. The forest is home to several antelope species and a huge variety of birds.

East Griqualand is home to the southernmost portion of the Ukhahlamba Drakensberg World Heritage Site, plus the impressive Swartberg, Bokkiesberg, Cedarberg and Ngele mountain ranges.

Between Kokstad and Matatiele, the hamlet of Cedarville provides tranquil canoe-borne excursions into its surrounding, water-filled hollows. Also nearby, the carp-abundant Umzimvubu River is an ever-popular recreation ground for locals and visitors alike. Steam-train journeys can be undertaken between Swartberg and Creighton.

North Coast

Year-round frolicking dolphins and majestic seasonal whale migrations make the coastline between the Umdloti and the Thukela rivers aptly called the "Dolphin Coast". The larger humpback dolphins are also found here, but rarely seen.

Many of the first Indian immigrants settled here, and the area's markets, mosques and temples give the region an authentic Eastern flavour.

Tongaat is an area where sugar was first planted in 1854. The town's Indian ambience is accentuated by two prominent Hindu temples – the Juggernath Puri and Vishwaroop temples.

Other towns along the Dolphin Coast include Shaka's Rock, Salt Rock, Ballito, Verulam, Stanger, Darnall and Umdloti.

Zululand and the Elephant Coast

Big Five nature reserves of international repute amid Zulu customs in KwaZulu-Natal Zululand are found unbroken from antiquity. Cultural tourism is inextricably linked to economic upliftment in Zululand, and historically disadvantaged communities are applying their traditional skills to meet visitors' interests.

Zululand's north-east quadrant – between Mozambique, Swaziland and the warm Indian Ocean – has its own unique tale to tell. This is the Elephant Coast or Maputaland, named after the mid-17th century king who established dominion here some 200 years before Shaka consolidated his Zulu empire to the south. The Tembe Elephant Park in the far north is home to herds of the massive African elephant.

The Hluhluwe-Imfolozi Park is one of the largest game parks in South Africa and hosts the Big Five as well as the elusive cheetah and wild dog.

The eMakhosini Valley, birthplace of King Shaka, is the venue for a new tourism- and economic-development project. Known as "eMakhosini, the Valley of Zulu Kings", the joint public-private sector project aims to preserve the culture and history of the Zulu people. A sculptured hilltop monument named Spirit of eMakhosini draws many tourists. This heritage park is near a nature reserve that will eventually support the Big Five of the animal kingdom.

At the eMakhosini Memorial Site, seven Zulu kings are buried.

Ulundi lies at the hub of the old Zulu nation. The KwaZulu Cultural Museum houses interesting displays relating to Zulu history and archaeology. The beehive huts and the layout of the original Zulu village have been reproduced.

Umgungundlovu was once the royal capital of King Dingaan and is now being reconstructed. A tour provides the opportunity to observe Zulu building techniques and to experience the social life of the Zulu people. Work will begin on a R20-million multimedia centre, which will include first-rate audiovisual representations of Zulu history and culture.

Authentic Zulu villages such as Shakaland, Kwabhekithunga Kraal, Damazulu and Stewart's Farm offer accommodation and the opportunity to experience traditional Zulu culture.

The coastal iSimangaliso Wetland Park World Heritage Site – due east of pivotal landmarks in Zulu history – has some of the highest forested dunes in the world. The park also has the greatest marine and terrestrial mammals, namely whales and elephants. St Lucia and its surroundings comprise a globally important wetland and has five separate ecosystems. It is a fishing and birdwatching paradise, and boat trips on the lake offer opportunities for crocodile and hippo sightings.

Ophansi entrance bridge in the iSimangaliso Wetland Park enables visitors to enjoy a unique beach and bush experience, with only an hour's drive separating uMkhuze's unique wildlife experience from Sodwana Bay's world-class beaches and diving.

The Kosi Bay Nature Reserve is part of the Coastal Forest Reserve between Mozambique and Sodwana Bay. The adjacent Indian Ocean provides exciting snorkelling and fishing opportunities. On offer is a four-day guided walking trail around the estuarine system.

uMkhuze is a small trade and transport centre. The Mkuze River cuts through the Ubombo mountains before serving as a boundary for Zululand's popular Mkuzi Game Reserve.

The Border Cave, a site of immense archaeological interest on the border of Swaziland, now also has an interpretation centre.

A monument has been erected for the first Zulu martyr, Maqhamusela Khanyili, in Mondi.

Lake Sibaya is South Africa's largest natural freshwater lake, covering some 77 km^2.

Birdwatching and walks through the coastal forest are popular pastimes.

Sibaya Lake Lodge is the first South African ecotourism development jointly owned by private enterprise and the local community.

The coral reef in the Sodwana Bay National Park attracts hundreds of scuba-divers throughout the year, and, in summer, power-boaters arrive for some of the best marlin-fishing in the world.

South Coast

Amanzimtoti is popular for its safe swimming beaches and various other activities and attractions.

The Hibiscus Coast stretches between Umkomaas and the Wild Coast. Margate is the largest resort town along this coast, and is very popular during the holidays. The Hibiscus Festival is held there in July.

The Oribi Gorge Nature Reserve encompasses forest, rivers, rapids and ravines. Prolific bird life, including five kingfisher species and seven eagle species, inhabits the reserve, along with a variety of mammals. There is also a 140-m abseil and gorge swing for adrenalin junkies.

Port Edward is known for its safe swimming and good fishing opportunities. Nearby, the Umthamvuna Nature Reserve is noted for its beautiful scenery, bird life and many rare plant species.

The Shell Museum at Shelly Beach is well worth a visit. Other popular coastal towns include Port Shepstone, Ramsgate, St Michael's-on-Sea, Uvongo and Scottburgh. Nature's annual extravaganza – the unforgettable Sardine Run – strikes the South Coast around the end of June every year, when people flock to the beaches and anglers wait for the game fish, following the sardines, to arrive.

Pietermaritzburg and the Midlands

History-filled towns lead to adventure sports and game viewing, along with outlets for unique arts and crafts. Pietermaritzburg boasts various museums, including the Voortrekker Museum,

the Natal Museum and the Natal Steam Railway Museum, which offers steam-train rides on the second Sunday of every month. The Tatham Art Gallery is also extremely popular.

The Albert Falls Public Resort Nature Reserve and the Albert Falls Dam provide opportunities for sailing, canoeing and fishing. Birdwatching, horse-riding and hiking are also popular activities.

The Howick Falls are situated in the Nature Valley Reserve, where the river tumbles down 100 m in a single fall. There are several climbing routes.

The Midlands Meander is a scenic drive between Hilton and Mooi River, with some 430 ports of call en route, ranging from art studios, potters and painters, to herb gardens and cheese-makers.

Midmar Dam is zoned for yachting and powerboating. The 1 000-ha Midmar Game Park is inhabitated by rhino, zebra, a wide variety of antelope species and waterfowl. The popular yearly Midmar Mile event attracts thousands of swimmers.

Drakensberg

The mountainous "Barrier of Spears" uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park World Heritage Site, adorned with Stone Age cave paintings, forms the north-western border of KwaZulu-Natal. The entire area is a bird sanctuary, featuring, among other species, the endangered lammergeier (bearded vulture). The highest concentration of walks and trails in South Africa is found here.

The Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park was declared a world heritage site in 2001 and consists of almost the entire Drakensberg mountain range from Bushman's Neck in the south to the Royal Natal National Park in the north.

Peaks soar to over 3 000 m and are often snow-covered in winter. The park is administered by Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife. Their trout hatcheries are located in the Kamberg Reserve area. There are also trout hatcheries at Cathedral Peak.

The Lotheni Nature Reserve is notable for its trout-fishing facilities (angling permits are required). Relics of the area's history have been preserved in the Settler Museum.

The Himeville Nature Reserve has two lakes stocked with trout. The Swamp Nature Reserve close by attracts a variety of waterfowl, including the rare wattled crane.

The Ndedema Gorge is located in the Mdedelelo Wilderness Area near Cathedral Peak and contains examples of Khoi and San art.

Sani Pass is the only road across the high escarpment between KwaZulu-Natal and the Kingdom of Lesotho. Sani Pass may be a road, but the top section is only passable in 4x4 vehicles. The Giant's Cup hiking trail, starting at the foot of the pass, is described as one of South Africa's finest. Giant's Castle Game Reserve is especially known for its more than 5 000 San paintings. The Bushman Site Museum is well worth a visit.

The Royal Natal National Park offers many scenic highlights, including the Amphitheatre, Mont-aux-Sources and the Thukela falls.

Battlefields

The KwaZulu-Natal Battlefields Route has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa. The Battlefields Route starts at Estcourt, winding north through Colenso and Ladysmith to Newcastle and Volksrust, and eastwards to Utrecht, Glencoe, Dundee, Nqutu, Paulpietersburg, Vryheid, Babanango and Ulundi.

All the towns along the route have their own unique charm and range of attractions: arts and crafts, scenic hiking trails, farm resorts, Zulu culture and roadside stalls. Game viewing, natural hot springs, horse trails and watersports can also be enjoyed.

The Chelmsford Nature Reserve near Newcastle is a birdwatcher's paradise. Powerboating and carp-fishing are added attractions. Game includes springbok, zebra, rhino and blesbok. Other interesting places to visit are Majuba Hill and O'Neill's Cottage.

The Ladysmith Siege Museum provides insight into the battles of Colenso, Spioenkop, Vaalkrans and Tugela Heights. Museum staff arrange guided tours to nearby battlefields such as Wagon Hill. Other attractions in Ladysmith include the statue of Gandhi, the All Saints Church, the Soofi Mosque and the Spioenkop Dam and Nature Reserve.

Near Dundee, tourists can visit various battlefields, including Ncome-Blood River, Isandlwana, Rorke's Drift and Talana. The Talana Museum depicts various facets of the coal industry, as well as local Zulu, Boer and British history.

Rorke's Drift was the setting for one of the most famous battles of the war. The main attraction is the Rorke's Drift Battle Museum.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Business Day
Business Report
Department of Tourism
www.askzn.co.za
www.bizcommunity.com
www.capetourism.org
www.cape-town.net
www.centralkaroo.co.za
www.clarens.co.za
www.doorway.co.za
www.ectourism.co.za
www.ewn.co.za
www.freestateprovince.co.za
www.gauteng.net
www.gov.za
www.indaba-southafrica.co.za
www.iol.co.za
www.joburg.org.za
www.kzn.org.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com
www.mpumalanga.com
www.nbi.org.za
www.news24.co.za
www.northerncape.org.za
www.sa2010.gov.za
www.saao.ac.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sapfa.org.za
www.sasdi.co.za
www.sati-web.za
www.southafrica.info
www.southafrica.net
www.soweto.co.za
www.tep.co.za
www.travel.iafrica.com
www.travelwires.com
www.tourismboard.org.za
www.tourismgrading.co.za
www.tourismnorthwest.co.za
www.wheretostay.co.za
www.zulu.org.za

Suggested reading

Branch, B *et al*. 2007. *Travellers' Wildlife Guides: Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Double Storey Books.
Cillie, B. 2007. *Pocket Photoguide to Mammals of Southern Africa*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Copeland, M. 2007. *Getaway Guide to South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
George, R (ed). 2007. *Managing Tourism in South Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa.
George, R. 2008. *Marketing Tourism in South Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa.
Erasmus, BPJ. 2007. *On Route in South Africa: A Region by Region Guide*. Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball).
Greenwood Guide to South Africa: Hand-Picked Accommodation. 4th ed. London: Greenwood Guides.
Hottola, P (ed). 2009. *Tourism Strategies and Local Responses in Southern Africa*. Wallingford, UK: Cambridge: CABI.
Ivanovic, M. 2008. *Cultural Tourism*. Cape Town: Juta.
Keyser, H. 2009. *Developing Tourism in South Africa; Towards Competitive Destinations.* 2nd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press.
Loubser, J (ed). 2007. *Southern and East Africa Road Atlas*. Johannesburg: Map Studio.
Loubser, J (ed). 2007. *Ultimate Africa Atlas*. Johannesburg: Map Studio, 2007.
Rogerson, CM and Visser, G (eds). 2007. *Urban Tourism in the Developing World: The South African Experience*. New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction Publishers.
Ross, G. 2007. *South Africa's Top Sites: Arts and Culture*. Cape Town: New Africa Books.
Ross, G. 2007. *South Africa's Top Sites: Ecotravel*. Cape Town: New Africa Books.
Tassiopoulos, D (ed). 2008. *New Tourism Ventures: An Entrepreneurial and Managerial Approach*. Cape Town: Juta.
Viljoen, J and Tlabela, K. 2007. *Rural Tourism Development in South Africa: Trends and Challenges*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Resource Council Press.

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

TRANSPORT

The South African transport sector employs 584 000 people in the formal and informal sectors, representing 4,3% of the active population.

The core values of the Department of Transport are:

- maintaining fairness and equity in all operations
- striving for quality and affordable transport for all
- stimulating innovation in the transport sector
- ensuring transparency, accountability and accessibility
- upholding the Batho Pele principles.

The transport sector is crucial to the successful hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

Government is using the World Cup to revolutionise South Africa's transport system. Transport services and infrastructure are designed to meet the efficiency, safety, quality and cost-effective requirements of the modern era and will be accessible to all, visitors and residents alike.

A total investment of R13,6 billion has been allocated to improve public transportation systems ahead of the World Cup. This was part of an overall investment of R170 billion into the country's transport system in the five-year period from 2005/06 to 2009/10.

Policy and initiatives

Public Transport Strategy (2007 – 2020)

Cabinet approved the Public Transport Strategy and Action Plan 2007 – 2020 in March 2007.

The strategy articulates a vision to shift public transport service delivery away from operator controlled, commuter-based, unimodal routes to user-oriented, publicly controlled, fully integrated, mass rapid public transport networks. The aim is to provide quality services along priority corridors, remove duplicate services and provide integrated mass rapid public transport networks. This includes transforming the bus and rail services into a public transport system integrated with the recapitalised taxi services.

The key areas of the strategy consist of:

- peak frequencies of five to 10 minutes
- off-peak frequencies of between 10 to 30 minutes
- extended hours of operation to between 16 to 24 hours
- safe and secure operation monitoring by intelligent transport system-control centres
- a car-use competitive public transport option, which enables strict peak-period car-use management
- electronic fare integration and single ticketing when making transfers
- integrated feeder service, including walking, cycling, bus and taxi networks.

2010 Transport Action Plan

The Department of Transport, in consultation with the transport sector, developed the 2010 Transport Action Plan. The plan integrates transport, security, emergency response and socio-economic development.

The broad principles of the 2010 Transport Action Plan are to:

- accelerate existing transport plans and maximise existing transport infrastructure
- improve public-transport services
- accelerate implementation of government's economic and sustainable development policies.

Government is using the World Cup to spur a major revolution in South Africa's transport system through investments in:

- public transport and road infrastructure
- rail upgrades
- intermodal facilities
- Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) systems
- innercity mobility systems
- call-centre systems
- airport-city links
- freight services
- passenger safety
- intelligent transport systems.

The Department of Transport is taking an active lead in the transport plans for 2010, by leading the coordination process, and ensuring that operational planning is conducted in a uniform and consistent manner in all the host cities.

By June 2010, the BRT is expected to be operational in Johannesburg, Pretoria, Bloemfontein, Port Elizabeth and Cape Town.

For 2010, some 2 000 train coaches have been refurbished and major train stations at Cape Town, Nasrec, Mabopane and Doornfontein have been upgraded.

In 2009, the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (Prasa) was building new-generation stations at Bridge City (eThekwini), Moses Mabhida (eThekwini) and Orlando Station in Soweto. The country's trains carry between 2 000 and 2 500 passengers a trip and the department

is planning rail usage in unison with the host cities.

All Airports Company South Africa (Acsa) upgrades at OR Tambo, Cape Town, Bloemfontein, Port Elizabeth and La Mercy airports will be complete for the World Cup. At the smaller constrained airports, temporary infrastructure will be installed to process the increased number of passengers.

The Department of Transport will be facilitating the increase in traffic into the country through bilateral air services agreements with a number of countries. There will be additional frequencies on existing routes and sufficient size and number of aircraft will be available for the event.

The existing national signage design guidelines will be extended to ensure consistency between host cities and regional bodies. Shortcomings from the 2009 Confederations Cup, such as inadequate signs at park-and-ride facilities, transportation hubs, railway stations and airports will be addressed.

The BRT system is part of 2010 World Cup plans but is also an immediate legacy of the 2010 World Cup. The BRT system's benefits outweigh its total cost. It addresses congestion, drives economic growth, is world-class and affordable.

The BRT system will run for 18 hours a day, from 05:00 to 23:00, and the plan is to eventually extend this to 24 hours a day. There will be bus stations every 500 metres, with security officers and CCTV cameras linked to a BRT control room. Once the system is complete, no commuter will walk more than 500 metres to a BRT stop. Minibus taxis will therefore be an integral part of the BRT and the public transport system. Minibus taxis are also an integral part of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ transport plan.

Shosholoza Meyl, the long-distance rail service will provide additional trains for Polokwane, Bloemfontein, Nelspruit, Rustenburg, Durban and Cape Town.

By the end of September 2009, airport demand was converted into airline schedules and landing slots were allocated to airlines.

Government is coordinating a national communication programme through the Department of Transport's web page, which has a link on the FIFA website. This programme will ensure maximum and appropriate promotion of public transport. The information and messages will be consistent and complementary nationally, provincially and for host cities. These will include information on airports and air travel, intercity travel, city and provincial transport, the national road network, vehicle hire and charter, what to expect at stadiums, park-and-ride sites and trip planners. Electronic brochures will be supported by newspapers, radio and TV campaigns to publicise this information.

For 2010, Johannesburg plans an additional 63 km of BRT infrastructure with an additional 78 stations and an additional 637 buses, linking Soweto, the central business district (CBD), Sandton, Sunninghill, Alexandra, Roodepoort, etc. The city has committed an additional R2 billion worth of infrastructure for this purpose. This is in addition to the June 2009 Phase 1a system, which will continue operations in 2010.

For 2010, Cape Town plans to deploy a BRT trunk and feeder system comprising 25 trunk stations and 139 feeder stops, using 156 vehicles carrying 115 000 passengers a day and serving the CBD, stadiums and hotel precincts, airport and West Coast areas, including Mamre, Atlantis, Table View, Du Noon, Milnerton and Century City. Cape Town has committed R508 million to six infrastructure contracts and another R1 billion expected to be spent by April 2010.

Nelson Mandela Bay plans to implement an integrated network across the entire city with R900 million worth of infrastructure committed until 2010.

Tshwane is planning to have the first of two BRT lines running in 2010. This will run from Mabopane to the CBD and comprise 37 km of BRT lanes, 17 stations and a fleet of 58 BRT vehicles carrying 40 000 passengers a day. For the 2010 event, Tshwane plans to use special shuttle ser-

The Rea Vaya (Rea Vaya means "we are going") Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) system was officially launched by the Minister of Transport, Mr Sibusiso Ndebele, on 30 August 2009 in Johannesburg. It represents a major turning point in how the country deals with congestion, pollution and greenhouse gases as a result of transportation.

Among other things, the BRT system consists of 90-seater capacity trunk buses and 32-seater feeder buses, which will bring people from outer areas to the trunk routes. Over time, Rea Vaya will cover more than 300 km of trunk routes across the city and is expected to transport 430 000 passengers daily.

The BRT routes are designed to link up with the interinnercity distribution systems and various other development nodes and residential areas. Various public-transport interchange facilities along the routes will provide connection to other road-based public transport services servicing other areas of the city.

vices running on temporary dedicated lanes from the CBD to the stadium precinct. It plans to spend R2 billion on infrastructure by March 2011 and has contracted the South African National Road Agency Limited (Ltd) (Sanral) to manage the infrastructure programme on the city's behalf.

Just after 2010, Tshwane plans to complete its second BRT line from the CBD to Mamelodi via Menlyn, which will comprise 33 km of BRT lanes, 28 stations and 90 BRT buses.

Electronic National Traffic Information System (eNaTIS)

In April 2007, the Department of Transport replaced the 14-year-old National Traffic Information System with the eNaTIS, which uses state-of-the-art technology.

The eNaTIS stores, records, manages and enforces the requirements of the National Road Traffic Act, 1996 (Act 93 of 1996), and the national road-traffic regulations.

It provides for the registration and licensing of vehicles, and manages and records applications for and authorisation of driver's and learner's licences.

The eNaTIS is also a law-enforcement tool that is used to ensure that details of stolen vehicles are circulated to prevent the irregular or fraudulent re-registration of such vehicles.

The South African Bureau of Standards (SABS) is linked to the eNaTIS, ensuring that only vehicles that meet South Africa's stringent safety standards are allowed to be registered.

The eNaTIS provides the following immediate advantages:

- centralised road-traffic management data
- eliminating fragmented small systems
- reducing queues due to the implementation of online transactions
- improved system security
- lower operating costs
- convenient, easy interaction by members of the public
- rapid deployment of new software.

In 2008/09, the department received R140,9 million from transaction fees collected at driving licence testing centres.

Following the effect of the municipal strike at the end of July 2009, eNaTIS transaction volumes normalised during August and two new record totals were recorded as a result of the overflow from the preceding month: 63 726 vehicle licensing transactions and 589 420 user transactions were recorded on 4 August.

In April 2009, the National Land Transport Act, 2009 (Act 5 of 2009), was signed into law by former President Kgalema Motlanthe. For the first time, there is legislation that clearly outlines the functions of national, provincial and local government with respect to land transport.

The Act has far-reaching implications for municipalities, particularly the metros and secondary cities, as well as provinces. It includes a significant shift of powers and functions in relation to especially public transport to municipalities, including subsidies and operating licence functions.

The total transaction count rose by 1,06% in August 2009 as compared to the previous month, and by 14,76% compared to August 2008.

The Johannesburg user group performed the most transactions (886 032) followed by Ekurhuleni (770 347), Pretoria (724 006), Cape Town (591 329) and Durban (325 444).

Black Economic Empowerment (BEE)

The Draft Transport Charter was gazetted as integrated sector codes, in terms of Section 9(1) of the Broad-Based BEE (BBBEE) Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003). The gazetting of the transport sector codes means that codes for eight subsectors, excluding the foreign airline component of the aviation subsector, are now final and binding across the spectrum of the national transport industry.

The integrated transport sector codes will be up for review every five years.

Among other areas of development, the transport sector codes commit to:

- training and skills development, to increase the number of black pilots in the aviation industry, as per the Aviation Subsector Code
- achieving a black-ownership target of 35% in the Bus Commuter Service Subsector Code within five years
- empowering of and pursuing worker rights in the taxi industry and imparting these individuals with the requisite skills to enter into management positions
- ensuring that the taxi industry provides commuters with reliable, safe, affordable, efficient and quality public transport services.

Non-motorised transport (NMT)

The promotion of NMT primarily aims to increase transport mobility and accessibility, mainly in rural areas.

The Department of Transport has broadened its Shova Kalula "Pedal Easy" Project into a more comprehensive NMT project that incorporates among other things, cycling and animal-drawn carts.

The department aims to distribute a million bicycles countrywide by 2015, in line with the resolution and action plan of the African Ministers' Transport Summit held in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, in 2005.

The Department of Transport issued an "expression of interest" to establish a bicycle manufacturing plant in South Africa to produce bicycles for the Shova Kalula Project.

The project forms part of government's action programme and is expected to contribute to government's anti-poverty strategy and second-economy interventions.

A total of 26 100 bicycles were distributed during 2008/09 and the department intends distributing 15 000 by April 2010.

It is believed that these initiatives improve the mobility of and access to economic opportunities by rural communities.

The Shova Kalula Project also incorporates the establishment of micro-businesses, which sell, repair and maintain bicycles to ensure the sustainability of the project.

In August 2009, the Department of Transport received the completed prototypes of non-motorised modes of transport from the SABS.

This followed a meeting of designers from South Africa and 16 other international countries, which also included local communities.

A number of innovative NMT prototype designs were on exhibition during the official handover event, including refurbished donkey carts, bicycles, load-bearing tricycles, single and double axle donkey carts and wheeled platform trolleys.

New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)

From a transport point of view, key issues in creating an effectively coordinated African response to global market challenges are market access, mobility and systems integration.

The Department of Transport is contributing actively to the practical realisation of Nepad and the Southern African Development Community (SADC) development goals in several major areas, by promoting:

- efficient and effective maritime transport services
- rail-systems integration
- road-systems development and infrastructure maintenance.

Public entities and other agencies

The Department of Transport has established different bodies to take over certain elements of government's operational activities. They include Sanral, the South African Maritime Safety Authority (Samsa), Cross-Border Road Transport Agency (CBRTA), Transport Appeal Tribunal, Road-Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC), National Railway Safety Regulator, the South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA), Road Accident Fund (RAF), Air-Traffic Navigation Services (ATNS) and Acsa.

South African National Roads Agency Limited

Sanral is an independent, statutory company responsible for the design, construction, management and maintenance of South Africa's national road network, including toll and non-toll roads.

Sanral's responsibilities are to:

- strategically plan, design, construct, operate, rehabilitate and maintain South Africa's national roads
- deliver and maintain a world-class primary road network
- generate revenue from the development and management of its assets
- undertake research and development to enhance the quality of the country's roads
- upon request of the Minister of Transport and in agreement with a foreign country, provide, operate and maintain roads in that country.

Sanral is responsible for the existing national road network of 16 170 km, at an estimated value of over R40 billion. This is expected to grow to 20 000 km in 2010.

In 2009, Sanral and local governments started implementing the Intelligent Transport System (ITS) Project, whereby technologies are used to

The Gauteng Freeway Improvement Project (GFIP) is planned to be completed in time for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

The GFIP aims to provide an interconnected network of inner and outer ring roads as a solution to the traffic congestion experienced in Gauteng. The 185 km of new toll infrastructure will see the N1 to Pretoria, Johannesburg ring roads and the R21 to Pretoria become electronic tolling zones. Roads will be operated on the user-pays principle after October 2010.

manage traffic and provide road users with traffic conditions on a real-time basis.

The pilot ITS Project aims to:

- improve incident management
- reduce congestion
- increase road safety
- provide information to public-transport role players for public transport management
- evaluate the effectiveness of ITS technologies with a view for possible further deployment.

These aims will be achieved by deploying several forms of ITS technology, including a centralised network management centre, closed circuit television cameras, variable message signs, loops and other traffic detection and traffic information devices, as well as continuous monitoring of the systems and their impact on improved road-network operations.

Sanral plans to roll out the system to cover some 2 300 km of existing toll roads in South Africa, including the N2 Tsitsikamma toll road, the N17 East toll-road extension, the N1 South and R30 Bloemfontein-Kroonstad road, the N1 Polokwane bypass, the Marianhill extension and the Dube Trade Port interchange.

Sanral awarded a 30-year concession to Trans African Concessions (TRAC) to build and operate the N4 route between Pretoria and Maputo. The route will provide a high-mobility alternative to through traffic, especially heavy vehicles using the N4 through the CBD of Nelspruit.

The route forms part of an important link for traffic from Mozambique, Swaziland, Nsikazi and Nkomazi to the 2010 Mbombela Sport Stadium, located west of Nelspruit.

South African Maritime Safety Authority

Samsa is a statutory body that reports to the Minister of Transport. Its responsibilities include promoting safety of life and property at sea, preventing marine pollution by pollutants emanating from ships and coordinating overall technical operations. It also develops policy on legal issues, foreign relations, marine pollution and certain specific safety matters.

Samsa's main functions are to:

- provide shipping competence and pollution services in a regional context
- manage marine incidents, casualties and wrecks, and participate in search-and-rescue missions
- control standby tugs and pollution stores
- maintain seafarers according to standards of training and staffing criteria
- provide a shipping-administration support service
- manage the registration of ships
- manage a coastal patrol service
- manage vessel traffic, including navigation aids
- provide lighthouse services.

Funding comes from, among other sources, levies on ships calling at South African ports, direct user charges and government service fees.

The month of October is commemorated annually as Transport Month. The theme for 2009's Transport Month focused on safety, with a particular emphasis on road safety.

Cross-Border Road Transport Agency

The CBRTA regulates and controls cross-border passenger, freight and road transport. It also facilitates the establishment of cooperative and consultative relationships and structures between public and private-sector institutions, with an interest in cross-border road transport.

The CBRTA fosters investment in the cross-border road-transport industry and provides high-quality cross-border freight and passenger road-transport services at reasonable prices. The agency works on a cost-recovery basis and any profits from cross-border permit fees are ploughed back into the system through a price reduction on permits in the following financial year. It encourages small-business development in the industry.

The CBRTA is also involved in collecting, processing and disseminating relevant information; providing training and capacity-building; and promoting entrepreneurship, focusing on small, medium and micro-enterprises with an interest in cross-border road transport.

The functions of the agency include:

- advising the Minister of Transport on cross-border transport matters and assisting in the process of negotiating and renegotiating cross-border road-transport agreements on request
- regulating the road-transport industry's access to the cross-border road-transport market
- undertaking road-transport law enforcement.

The main source of income for the CBRTA is fees charged for cross-border permits.

Road Accident Fund

The RAF is a public entity that compensates victims of motor-vehicle accidents for bodily injuries

and/or loss of financial support caused by the death of a breadwinner. The rights for compensation are prescribed by the RAF Act, 1996 (Act 56 of 1996).

The RAF derives its income from a tax levied on petrol and diesel sold in South Africa.

The RAF pays out numerous claims each year in respect of accidents caused by recklessness; and inconsiderate, negligent, aggressive and drunken driver behaviour.

On 1 August 2008, the RAF Amendment Bill was promulgated. The legislative amendments to the original RAF Act, 1996 will replace the compensation system that promoted inequality and threatened the sustainability of the fund with a system that is more equitable, fair and transparent for the victims of road accidents.

All claims in respect of accidents that occur from 1 August 2008 onwards will be administered under the new Act. Claims in respect of accidents that occurred prior to this date will continue to be dealt with in terms of the original Act. The key amendments in this regard include, among other things, the following:

- Claims are limited to a maximum of R160 000 per year for loss of income, or R160 000 per year for each deceased breadwinner in the case of a claim for loss of support. This amount will be adjusted quarterly in line with inflation.
- "General damages" refer to compensation for pain and suffering, disfigurement and scarring, loss of pleasures of life (such as where the injured can no longer participate in sport), loss of life expectancy and emotional shock resulting from injury sustained in the accident. The RAF's obligation in terms of general damages will be limited to compensation for serious injuries, which will be assessed in accordance with the prescribed method.
- Tariffs for emergency medical treatment will be based on private-sector rates negotiated between the RAF and medical service-providers. This means that in case of emergencies, even the indigent victims of accidents can be treated at private hospitals because the hospitals will be paid at private-sector rates. However, in cases other than emergencies, the tariffs applicable in the public sector will apply.

The statutory limit of R25 000 per person in respect of claims from passengers in the offending car will fall away, meaning that passengers in the offending car will have the same rights to compensation as other victims.

South African Civil Aviation Authority

Established in 1998, the SACAA is an independent regulatory entity tasked with regulating the civil aviation industry in South Africa.

The primary purpose of the SACAA is to promote, regulate and support high levels of safety throughout the South African civil aviation industry. The organisation's core activities include, among other things, aviation safety and security oversight in terms of operations, aircraft, personnel, airports and airspace. The SACAA achieves this through various ways, such as by developing relevant legislation that supports and ensures delivery on this mandate and by overseeing all personnel and operators within the industry to ensure compliance with applicable regulations and standards.

South Africa is a signatory state to the International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO) Convention of 1944 and it is expected to meet its international obligations in terms of the ICAO standards and recommended practices.

The SACAA is subjected to various audits by the ICAO to ensure compliance to these standards and recommended practices.

The SACAA is financed through a combination of user fees, aircraft passenger safety charges, a fuel levy on general aviation and government funding, specifically for the investigation of aircraft accidents and serious incidents.

The SACAA is responsible for regulating all individuals or organisations involved in civil aviation in South Africa, including:

- airports
- aircraft owners and operators
- aircraft designers and manufacturers
- aircraft maintenance organisations
- air cargo
- airline operators
- licensed aviation personnel
- aviation training organisations
- air-traffic services units
- air-cargo operators.

The SACAA endeavours to ensure that South Africa continues to be rated among the top aviation countries worldwide through excellent performances in international audits, such as those conducted by the ICAO, Federal Aviation Administration and Tourism Satellite Account.

The SACAA increased its oversight capacity to address aircraft safety. Until October 2008, the industry's accident rating was considerably low, until a spate of aircraft accidents occurred. The

only common thread linking these accidents was human error, which was difficult to address.

The SACAA has created a new safety advisory panel, which will investigate the root causes of accidents, with a particular emphasis on the human factor. It will also publish accident reports, at least preliminary ones, within three months.

Another safety entity is the Recreation and Aviation Administration South Africa (RAASA), which will oversee the recreational aviation sector on SACAA's behalf.

The duties of the RAASA include issuing licences to fly light sport aircraft and national pilot licences for micro-lights, gyroplanes and light sport aircraft. RAASA started carrying out its official duties in February 2009.

The SACAA continues to place priority on the need to have regional integration with the intention of ensuring the safety of African skies. The SACAA is enthusiastic about assisting other countries on the continent with setting up their respective civil aviation organisations. The SACAA firmly believes that the continent needs to work hand-in-hand to tackle challenges that face the aviation industry, including:

- developing and retaining highly skilled personnel
- harmonising regulations
- developing infrastructure
- doing away with ageing aircraft fleet
- instilling a culture of voluntary compliance by role players.

Airports Company of South Africa

Acsa has embarked on a R20-billion infrastructure development programme, in anticipation of the increase in the number of passengers travelling to South Africa by 2010. Acsa handles more than 32 million passengers annually.

The number is expected to total 43 million in 2010. At the end of 2011/12, the 10 airports under the Acsa network should facilitate 44,4 million passengers and handle 611 631 aircraft landings.

The 10 airports handle over 98% of the country's commercial air traffic. In the 2008 financial year, this network processed more 291 000 aircraft landings from nearly 50 international destinations, connecting Africa with other continents.

Major airport developments are taking place at OR Tambo, La Mercy, Cape Town, Polokwane and Bloemfontein.

In the last five years, Acsa paid dividends in excess of R2 billion to its shareholders, 74,6% of which went to the main shareholder, the South African Government. The Government also received an additional R1,3 billion in taxes from Acsa in the period. In the 2007/08 financial year, commercial revenue grew by 23% to R1 342 billion.

Airports

Acsa owns and operates South Africa's 10 principal airports, including the three major international airports in Johannesburg, Cape Town and Durban. Acsa also has a 35-year concession to operate the Pilanesberg Airport near Sun City in North West. The other six airports are in Bloemfontein, Port Elizabeth, East London, George, Kimberley and Upington.

Acsa's three core activities are:

- airport services, including the development of airport infrastructure, such as providing and maintaining runways, taxiways and aprons; terminal facilities; and aviation security, fire and rescue services
- retail and advertising activities, including the provision of space within terminals to appropriate retailers; providing other sites to operations such as car-hire firms and banks; and space for advertisers
- property activities, including providing retail and office premises, and car-parking facilities, as well as functioning as commercial landlords.

Air-Traffic Navigation Services

The ATNS is responsible for the efficient running of South Africa's air-traffic control systems and the maintenance of navigation equipment, including the deployment of air-traffic controllers and aviation technical staff.

The company's college is a well-established facility that is used by several African countries for air-traffic services' training and technical training for equipment support.

The ATNS does not receive government transfers and derives its funding from its operations.

A joint operations' centre at the OR Tambo International Airport is the nerve centre of all airport communications and operations. From here, all activities related to maintenance and building management are coordinated. The centre serves as a control office, crisis-control centre for emergencies and an information technology (IT) centre.

Transnet Limited

Transnet is a focused freight-transport and logis-

The Minister of Transport, Mr Sibusiso Ndebele, introduced the Air-Traffic-Flow Management Tool (ATFM) as part of the October Transport Month 2009 Campaign.

This highly integrated system will assist with, among other things, collaborative information flow between air-traffic control, airport operations and the aircraft operators regarding strategic and tactical real time and future use of any airspace and airport situations. The project will also support Green ATFM by ensuring the achievement of lesser fuel burning for the majority of flights, thus reducing greenhouse-gas emissions.

tics company wholly owned by the South African Government. It comprises the following operating divisions:

- Transnet Freight Rail (TFR) – the freight rail division
- Transnet Rail Engineering – the rolling stock maintenance business
- Transnet National Ports Authority (TNPA) – fulfils the landlord function for South Africa's port system
- Transnet Port Terminals – manages port and cargo terminal operations in the country's leading ports
- Transnet Pipelines – the fuel and gas-pipeline business pumps and manages the storage of petroleum and gas products through its network of high-pressure, long-distance pipelines.

The initiatives in the transport sector reflect the priorities government has set for itself. Transnet will be spending R80 billion in capital expenditure on its ports, port operations and its freight rail network over the next five years, of which R40,8 billion is being spent on upgrading freight rail infrastructure and rail engineering. The upgrading of the freight rail infrastructure is key to the objective of shifting more freight from the road network to the rail network as well as finding the balance between road and rail in respect of the transportation of goods.

Transnet is converting its passenger coaches to a stainless steel body structure that will reduce costs and extend the lives of coaches. In 2008, it converted 342 out of 4 500 suburban coaches and it was planning to increase the number to 500 in 2009.

The stainless steel interiors and seats make the coaches vandal-proof and graffiti can be washed off the coach walls. The new coaches have safety features such as doors that cannot open while the train is moving, and windows that only open halfway. The overhaul includes design modifications that will minimise rust and corrosion.

The company's "green" commitments mean that it recycles the scrap from the overhaul and sells it to metal dealers or steel mills.

Road infrastructure

National roads

In terms of the National Roads Act, 1998 (Act 7 of 1998), government is responsible for overall policy, while road-building and maintenance are the responsibility of Sanral.

The Department of Transport continues to improve the road network by ensuring that it is well maintained and safe. A new national roads plan is being developed, acknowledging the importance of roads to the economy.

For the next three years, R70 billion will be used for road infrastructure, maintenance and upgrading and an additional R3 billion for the Expanded Public Works Programme for access roads, all of which is an attempt by government to alleviate traffic congestion.

Provincial roads

Provincial governments are responsible for planning, constructing and maintaining roads and bridges, except those falling under Sanral or local governments. The Department of Transport assists provincial and local governments to improve and develop the state of their roads.

Municipal roads

The construction and maintenance of most roads and streets within the municipal boundaries

Government has invested over R440 million in the upgrading of Wonderboom Airport, Pretoria, through the City of Tshwane. In the construction process, 1 629 jobs were created.

Wonderboom Airport expects to handle 6 800 general aviation and helicopter passengers a year. It is also expected to:

- operate scheduled flights from host city to host city during the 2010 World Cup to cater for travelling fans
- charter flights between host cities and places of accommodation
- accommodate media flights and facilitate FIFA movements from Pretoria and Rustenburg
- serve as a refuelling centre for aircraft.

It is anticipated that this airport will help the country deal with expected increases in general aviation and charter movements.

of cities and towns are the responsibility of the municipality concerned.

Toll roads

The "user-pay" principle is an equitable means of raising funds for improving the national road network.

The current toll road network comprises about 19% (3 120 km) of the current national road grid.

About 1 832 km of these toll roads are managed by Sanral. In its endeavour to continue with the expansion and maintenance of the comprehensive national road network, Sanral will continue with selective expansion of the toll road network.

About 1 288 km of the tolled sections of the national road have been concessioned to private companies to develop, operate and maintain.

The three concessioned routes are: the N1/N4 highway is operated by Bakwena Platinum Corridor Concession, between Pretoria and Bela Bela and between Pretoria and the Botswana border on the N4; the N3 between Heidelberg in Gauteng and Cedara in KwaZulu-Natal is operated by the N3 Toll Concession; and the N4 East, Maputo Development Corridor is operated by TRAC. The upgrading of the road between the Belfast and Wonderfontein section of the N4 was expected to be completed at the end of August 2009. The single carriageway has been upgraded to a double carriageway in both directions to accommodate increased traffic.

Public transport

In terms of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, legislative and executive powers in respect of public transport are a provincial competency. National government, however, is responsible for policy-formulation, monitoring and strategic implementation. The Department of Transport continues to administer subsidies for buses and other subsidised forms of public transport.

According to the *National Household Travel Survey, 2003*, there were about 3,9 million public-transport commuters in mid-2003. The 2,5 million taxi commuters accounted for over 63% of public-transport work trips. Bus services accounted for another 22% of public-transport commuters and the rest were carried to work by train. In addition to the 2,5 million commuters who used minibus taxis as the main mode of travel, there were another 325 000 commuters who used taxis either as a feeder mode to other public-transport services, or as a distribution service from the main mode to their places of work.

The Department of Transport is moving fast towards an integrated public transport system. This is necessary to ensure efficiency and move the country closer to the status of a developed economy. The integration of taxis, buses and rail transport in all municipalities is one of the priorities.

The transport modes must be integrated to deal with the challenge of the last mile. The last mile refers to people not being able to get home because, for instance, they arrive at a train station when the taxis and buses have already stopped operating.

This could be avoided through better integration of the various modes. Distances between these modes must also be cut down drastically.

The department is implementing integrated ticketing to facilitate the movement of various transport modes in municipalities. The integrated rapid public transport networks are in eight major cities, namely Johannesburg, Pretoria, Cape Town, Durban, Polokwane, Port Elizabeth, Nelspruit and Bloemfontein

Urban transport

Metropolitan transport advisory boards govern urban areas, which have been declared metropolitan transport areas. Both short- and long-term programmes for adequate transportation development are drawn up by the core city of each area and are revised and adjusted annually.

Nine such core areas exist, namely Johannesburg, Cape Town, Pretoria, Durban, Pietermaritzburg, Port Elizabeth, the East Rand, Bloemfontein and East London.

The planning of transport for metropolitan and major urban areas must be done in accordance with a growth-management plan, and travel modes should not compete with one another.

In urban areas, passenger road-transport services are provided by local governments; private bus companies, which operate scheduled bus services between peripheral areas and city centres; and minibus taxis. The Department of Transport supports provincial departments of transport and public works in constructing intermodal facilities and in their efforts to achieve integration between bus and taxi operations.

The minibus-taxi industry has shown phenomenal growth during the last few years, leading to a decrease in the market share of buses and trains as modes of transport.

Rural transport

The deep rural areas are still isolated from major

road and rail routes. However, the Rural Transport Strategy, approved by Cabinet in December 2007, is promoting mobility in such areas.

In implementing the Rural Transport Strategy, the Department of Transport established the Integrated Rural Transport Development Programme in six rural districts. About R8,9 million has been transferred to the relevant municipalities.

The objective is to promote rural transport infrastructure and services.

This will include NMT infrastructure, provision of rural transport passenger facilities and rural freight transport logistics.

Motor vehicles

The number of registered vehicles increased from 9 162 840 at the end of February 2008 to 9 506 138 in August 2009.

Taxi Recapitalisation Programme (TRP)

Government's TRP is underpinned by a strong desire to have an integrated public-transport system. The main objectives are to have a taxi industry that supports a strong economy, that puts the passenger first and that meets the country's socio-economic objectives.

Government recognises the critical role played by the industry, and endeavours to ensure its growth and sustainability.

The TRP is not only about scrapping old taxi vehicles, but also about the sustainability and effective regulation of the industry. It is a direct response to the recommendations of the National Taxi Task Team, to consider specific interventions to turn around the taxi industry.

Compliance with the necessary basic requirements include possession of legitimate documentation and securing the appropriate type of vehicles, specifically new taxi vehicles that comply with safety specifications.

The TRP is part of government's broad integrated public-transport network system, which is aimed at forming part of the larger public transport feeder systems.

By October 2009, more than 27 800 old taxi vehicles had been scrapped, with more than R1,4 billion paid out to operators. A total of R7,7 billion has been allocated for the TRP.

Bus Rapid Transport

BRT systems provide an exciting and innovative mechanism for implementing high-quality public transport networks that operate on exclusive right of way and incorporate current bus and minibus operators with no source of income or jobs.

The BRT system is a key component of the Department of Transport's integrated transport network plan, which government is implementing in the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ host cities.

The system will feature dedicated and segregated bus-only lanes, as well as bus stations that are safe, comfortable, weather-protected and friendly to disabled passengers. It will run for 18 hours a day from 5:00 to 23:00 and the plan is to eventually extend this to 24 hours a day.

The enclosed stations will have high security features, including security surveillance on buses and stations. Commuters from low-income areas will have equal access to economically active regions as BRT bus routes will service townships.

Some benefits are:

- contactless electronic ticketing will be used at station access gates
- a single automated electronic ticketing system will be used for all modes of public transport
- BRT buses and Gautrain routes and timetables will be coordinated to enable commuters to enjoy door-to-door transport convenience
- new planning strategies will limit car access to high-density areas
- when exchanging private cars for buses, greenhouse-gas emissions are drastically reduced.

Through the National Joint Working Group on Public Transport, the department will continue its intensive engagement with the taxi industry on many issues, including the BRT, TRP as well as the regulation and legislation of the industry.

Road-traffic safety

There are about 700 000 road crashes in South Africa every year, resulting in about 15 000 deaths and 50 000 serious injuries, at a cost of almost R43 billion.

The RTMC Act, 1999 (Act 20 of 1999), provides for the establishment of the RTMC to:

- enhance the overall quality of road-traffic management and service provision
- strengthen cooperation and coordination between the national, provincial and local spheres of government in the management of road traffic
- maximise the effectiveness of provincial and local government efforts, particularly in road-traffic law enforcement
- create business opportunities, particularly for the historically disadvantaged sectors, to supplement public-sector capacity
- guide and sustain the expansion of private-sector investment in road-traffic management.

The RTMC oversees the training of traffic law-enforcement personnel, road-traffic information, crash investigation and recording, communication and education and infrastructure safety audits.

The role of the RTMC is to guide and sustain the expansion of private-sector investment in road-traffic management. The South African Government has recently become a contracting party to the United Nation's 1998 Global Agreement on Harmonised Vehicle Technical Rules.

Government has implemented the road-safety strategy with the RTMC as its lead agency. The World Health Organisation's *Report on South African Road Safety* notes that the country has the necessary legislation in place. This includes, among other things, the wearing of helmets by motorcyclists, the wearing of seat belts, drunken-driving legislation and the setting of speed limits.

The RTMC will continue with the zero-tolerance approach against traffic offenders. The corporation is committed to implementing the Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences (AARTO) throughout the country in 2010. AARTO seeks to create an efficient road traffic-management environment in the country, and enhance a culture of compliance through the points demerit system.

Sanral has adopted the Road-Safety Management System, which allows safety considerations to direct decisions on design, construction, maintenance, operation and the management of the road network.

Arrive Alive

Government's Arrive Alive Road-Safety Campaign aims to:

- reduce the number of road-traffic accidents in general, and fatalities in particular, by 5%, compared to the same period the previous year
- improve road-user compliance with traffic laws
- forge an improved working relationship between traffic authorities in the various spheres of government.

The number of fatalities over Easter 2009 decreased by 76 (23,82%) from 297 in 2008 to 173 in 2009.

Cross-border transport

Multilateral

The SADC Protocol on Transport, Communications and Meteorology provides a comprehensive framework for regional integration across the entire spectrum of the transport, communications and meteorology sectors. The general objective is to promote the provision of efficient, cost-effective and fully integrated infrastructure and operations in these fields. The protocol also specifically addresses road transport, and aims to facilitate the unimpeded flow of goods and passengers between and across the territories of SADC member states.

It aims to promote the adoption of a harmonised policy, which lays down general operational conditions for carriers. Cross-border transport within the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) is undertaken in terms of the Sacu Memorandum of Understanding (MoU), which facilitates transport between member countries through the use of the single-permit system. The MoU provides the framework for cooperation between the signatory countries, which has resulted in the establishment of technical working groups for traffic standards, road-user charges and passenger transport.

The activities of the passenger-transport working groups have led to the establishment of joint route-management committees for certain cross-border passenger routes within the Sacu. These committees comprise representatives from the public and private sectors of the countries concerned, and are aimed at jointly managing the routes in consultation with all stakeholders.

Bilateral

Bilateral agreements facilitate and encourage cross-border road transport in support of regional trade. The Maputo Development Corridor between South Africa and Mozambique is a good example.

The two governments also signed agreements dealing with road freight and passenger transport between the two countries, to facilitate the movement of goods and people by road, and to eliminate bureaucratic proceedings at border posts.

The project also includes the upgrading and modernisation of the railway line between the two countries and of Maputo Harbour, at a cost of about R150 million.

On 29 September 2003, South Africa, Namibia and Botswana signed an MoU on the development and management of the Trans-Kalahari Corridor (TKC). The TKC was formally established in 1998 following the completion of the Trans-Kgalagadi highway in Botswana. One of the benefits of the TKC is that it links the hinterlands of Botswana, Namibia and South Africa (especially Gauteng) by road with the Port of Walvis Bay. This port is the western seaboard port in southern Africa and is closest to shipping routes to and from markets in the Americas and Europe.

The development of the TKC has the potential of significantly reducing transaction costs for SADC exporters and importers. This is expected to enable economic operators to become increasingly competitive internationally by enhancing their ability to exploit the benefits of preferential trade agreements with the United States of America (USA) and the European Union.

Rail transport

With over 2,4 million passenger journeys being made every day, South Africa has the fastest growing railway in Africa. Government invested R25 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework to upgrade passenger rail-transport services in the country. Of this, R14 billion was spent to upgrade rail passenger infrastructure and rolling stock.

Since 2006/07, the South African Rail Commuter Corporation (SARCC), now Prasa, has accelerated the rolling stock investment programmes. This has led to over 1 500 coaches being refurbished at a total of R5 billion. An additional 700 coaches will follow this programme at an estimated cost of R2 billion.

The Department of Transport developed regional rail plans in consultation with provinces and metropolitan authorities.

In August 2009, the Road-Traffic Management Corporation hosted the first International Road-Traffic Safety Management Conference in partnership with the Institute of Traffic and Municipality Police Officers of Southern Africa and the Western Cape.

The objective of the conference was to address critical road-traffic safety issues and to find solutions, share expertise, identify best-practice models and experiences, and improve the image as well as professionalism of the road-traffic fraternity. This platform was used to communicate and clarify the administrative adjudication of road-traffic offence-related matters.

Other major areas of road-traffic management that were discussed during the conference included:

- traffic law enforcement
- road-safety education and communication
- accident investigation and reconstruction
- training of traffic personnel
- traffic-quality management and evaluation.

The conference also formed part of the initiatives that road-traffic authorities undertook to realise a millennium development goal of halving road fatalities by the year 2014 as set by the African Union.

These clarified the role that commuter rail should play in the context of an integrated approach to public transport.

The Department of Transport has embarked on a comprehensive recapitalisation programme to improve rail safety and revive rail transport as a viable public-transport alternative.

Passenger rail safety

The Department of Transport is implementing the National Rail Passenger Plan, which charts the way for the future of passenger-rail services in South Africa.

The following different options have been proposed:

- full recovery, where the whole rail network would be restored
- a limited system, where all but efficient lines/routes would be closed
- priority rail corridors, where the socio-economic planning objectives would be balanced on existing rail strengths.

The National Railway Safety Regulator (RSR) Act, 2002 (Act 16 of 2002), is the enabling legislation for the setting up of the independent RSR, reporting and accountable to the Minister of Transport. The mandate of the RSR is to:

- oversee safety in railway transport, while operators remain responsible for managing the safety of their operations
- develop an appropriate regulatory framework through the development of regulations and standards for safe railway operations
- monitor and ensure safety compliance by conducting audits, inspections, safety assessments and occurrence investigations
- collect and disseminate information relating to safe railway operations
- promote the harmonisation of the railway safety regime of South Africa with SADC railway operations
- promote improved safety performance to promote the use of rail.

In pursuance of this mandate, the RSR has, in collaboration with the railway industry and the SABS, developed a series of standards to ensure a common and consistent approach to railway safety in areas such as safety management, technical and operational requirements as well as human factors management.

A key to the successful regeneration of the railway system in South Africa, and indeed the subregion, is the interoperability of the railways. This implies consistent standards and common

Gautrain facts

- During peak periods, there will be a train at each station every 10 minutes.
- Benefits of the Gautrain project far outweigh costs – the projected increase in business sales in new markets for products, goods and services to deliver the Gautrain are R6 billion.
- A key objective of the Gautrain is to link the Pretoria Ring Rail Project, which will link Mamelodi, Atteridgeville, Soshanguve and Mabopane.
- 260 000 concrete sleepers will be manufactured for use on the track.
- Six million m^3 of soil will be removed.
- 10 stations will be built – three underground, three elevated on viaducts and four at street level.
- 750 000 m^3 of concrete will be used.
- Each stop will vary between 30 and 45 seconds.
- More than 210 Black Economic Empowerment companies had benefitted from the Gautrain Project by July 2008.
- The Gautrain is fitted with a fully integrated audio and visual passenger information system.
- As the car bodies are manufactured mainly from aluminium, they have a relatively low mass and are therefore more energy-efficient than South Africa's present rolling stock.

Source: *www.gautrain.co.za*

usage of technology where railway infrastructure is used by more than one operator. The RSR and the railway industry continue to collaborate in developing the overarching broad technical and operating standards.

The need for harmonisation of safety standards within the SADC region is of strategic importance. The RSR is facilitating efforts to adopt and align the current railway safety standards by regional railway operators through the Southern African Railway Association (Sara).

The Sara Board has adopted the safety-management system as a framework to guide safety-management practices by operators in the region. The RSR is working closely with the Bombela Concession Company regarding the proposed standards for the Gautrain Rapid Rail Link Project.

The regulator also oversees safety by conducting audits and inspections; undertaking occurrence investigations; analysing occurrence statistics, operator-safety plans and accident reports; and issuing notices to operators to cease an activity or to improve an unsafe activity. Failure to respond to a notice could result in the operator, including the top management and even the board, being prosecuted.

Since the reintroduction of the railway police, there has been a significant drop in crime on trains and at train stations.

Through its cooperative agreement with the South African Police Service (SAPS), the Department of Transport is building security-related infrastructure required for the roll-out of a dedicated rail police unit. In 2009, the roll-out was on course with more than 1 700 rail police active in patrols in the rail environment.

In 2009, the construction of rail police stations in Cape Town, Retreat, Belville and Phillipi in the Western Cape was completed.

In July 2009, construction was advanced in Durban, Reunion, Cavendish and KwaMashu in KwaZulu-Natal; and in Pretoria, Denneboom, Mabopane, Germiston, new Canada and Johannesburg in Gauteng. The Cape Town network has seen a 32% reduction in crime-related incidents and fare evasion has reduced from 9% to 4%.

The introduction of railway police, with the deployment of 2 500 officers in the rail industry, had reduced crime in trains by more than 38%.

Gautrain

Construction on the Gautrain began in September 2006, and part of this project requires the construction of the OR Tambo external shell for the station. The central terminal building will be connected to the Gautrain Rapid Rail Link, of which construction of the external shell of the OR Tambo station concourse is complete.

The Gautrain Rapid Rail Link is a state-of-the-art rapid rail network that comprises two links, namely a link between Pretoria and Johannesburg and a link between OR Tambo International Airport and Sandton. Apart from the three anchor stations on these two links, seven other stations will be linked by about 80 km of rail along the proposed route.

The three anchor stations will be located at: OR Tambo International Airport, Pretoria and Johannesburg. The seven other stations will be

In February 2009, about 150 special guests and members of the media became the first non-Gautrain officials to board the high-speed Gautrain, in a special event marking the homecoming of the train's first completed rail car. The state-of-the-art train with its trademark blue, white and gold design gave guests a first-hand experience of the comfort of world-class public transport.

The Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (Prasa) has a policy in place for special needs passengers (SNPs), which entails the identification of specific stations per region that would be universally accessible to all passengers. Prasa is working closely with the National Council for People with Disabilities in South Africa and other organisations to develop and refine the concept of universal accessibility to rail transport.

All the new or upgraded stations are being made SNP-friendly at a cost of R33 million. By September 2009, the following stations had been modified: Mandalay, Phillipi, Cape Town, Tembisa, Lentegeur, Mabopane, Stretford, Ikwezi, Daveyton, Nasrec, Doornfontein, Duff Road, Reunion, Isipingo, Clairwood, Monteleur, Lindokuhle, Amanzimtoti and Rossburgh.

located at Rosebank, Sandton, Marlboro, Midrand, Centurion, Hatfield and Rhodesfield (Kempton Park).

This modern train will offer international standards of public transport with high levels of safety, reliability, predictability and comfort. Travelling at a maximum speed of 160 to 180 km per hour, it will reach Pretoria from Johannesburg in less than 40 minutes. The minimum frequency between Johannesburg and Pretoria will initially be six trains per hour per direction and it will operate about 18 hours a day. This public transport service will include dedicated, exclusive bus services to transport passengers to and from stations.

The Gautrain system will have 24 train sets, each consisting of four cars, which is equivalent to 96 rail cars designed to run at an operational speed of 160 km per hour. Of the 96 rail cars, 10 are specially customised for use on the airport link, and contain additional features such as extra luggage space and wider seats. The other 86 rail cars are designed for commuter services.

The Gautrain Project is expected to reduce the severe traffic congestion along the Johannesburg-Pretoria traffic corridor, which sees 300 000 vehicles per day, growing at an estimated 7% per year. The estimation indicates that the Gautrain Rapid Rail Link will reduce this amount by 20%.

Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa

Prasa was launched in March 2009. It replaced the SARCC. The establishment of Prasa brought the possibility to provide integrated transport solutions through its control of commuter rail, intercity, long-distance rail and road-based long-distance buses.

The presence of buses within Prasa gives it the kind of flexibility to respond effectively to passenger demands with the real option to provide feeder and distribution services.

Prasa is tasked with transforming the country's public transport system. The agency, which was established by the consolidation of state-owned passenger rail entities, a road-based bus passenger carrier and an asset-management entity, invested R25 billion to improve the local public transport system.

About R14 billion of the money was spent on capital programmes while more than R9 billion went to operational costs.

The agency creates a platform from which its business units, including Metrorail, Shosholoza Meyl, Autopax and Intersite, deliver high-quality and low-cost transport services. Prasa employs 13 000 people and had refurbished over 1 489 coaches at a cost of R4 billion, as part of its accelerated rolling stock programme.

Freight transport

The fourth *State of Logistics Survey (2007)* shows that about 87% of all land freight tonnage is carried by road, with the remainder carried by rail. Generally, road transport costs anything between 30% and 50% more than rail transport in additional costs, which cargo owners and end customers have to bear.

The National Freight Logistics Strategy is being implemented and seeks, among other things, to integrate first and second economies, and support the integration of marginalised local economies with the main logistics corridors.

The key objective is to reduce the costs of doing business and remove inefficiencies placed on businesses and their long-term sustainability.

The Department of Transport, in close co-operation with the provincial road-traffic authorities, is implementing the National Overload Control Strategy to protect road infrastructure, improve road safety and ensure seamless movement of cargo. The department has also developed guidelines in cooperation with the SABS as part of promoting self-regulation in the heavy-vehicle industry. This is aimed at fostering a partnership to ensure proper load management, vehicle road worthiness and driver fitness.

Transnet Freight Rail

TFR (previously called Spoornet), the largest operating division of Transnet, has as its primary purpose the transportation of rail freight. Core freight activities account for about 95% of its revenues. It is a world-class heavy haul freight rail company that specialises in the transportation of freight.

TFR has about 25 000 employees. The company maintains an extensive rail network across South Africa that connects with other rail networks in the sub-Saharan region, with its rail infrastructure representing about 80% of Africa's total.

The company is proud of its reputation for technological leadership beyond Africa as well as within Africa, where it is active in some 17 countries.

TFR has positioned itself to become a profitable and sustainable freight railway business, assisting in driving the competitiveness of the South African economy.

TFR operates freight trains serving customers in the following major segments:

- mining: coal, iron ore, manganese, granite, asbestos, chrome and non-ferrous metals
- manufacturing: chemicals, fuel and petroleum, fertiliser, cement, lime, iron steel and scrap
- agriculture and forestry: grain, stockfeed and milling, timber, paper and publishing, and fast-moving consumer goods
- containers and automotive: intermodal wholesale, automotive and industrial.

Civil aviation

Civil aviation will play a pivotal role during the 2010 World Cup and the civil aviation fraternity has placed a huge emphasis on its preparations for the tournament.

With statistics showing that South Africa is home to more than 70% of aviation activities in the SADC region, it is not surprising that most regard the country as the aviation powerhouse in Africa.

South Africa's aviation industry has experienced significant growth over the past 10 years. In recent years, the SACAA has witnessed a substantial growth in the number of foreign aviation entities plying their businesses in South Africa.

In 1993, fewer than 12 international airlines flew into South Africa. By 2009, more than 70 international airlines flew into the country regularly. In addition, there has been an increase in the number of aircraft and personnel registrations and industry representative organisations. Moreover, passenger numbers have been growing by more than 10% annually. Despite all the growth, the SACAA has managed to maintain the rate of accident and serious incidents at a constant and acceptable level for a number of years.

An important area for the Department of Transport has been to drive the capacity of the aviation sector and it has embarked on a programme to prepare for 2010 and beyond. Revenue is expected to grow from R3 billion in 2007/08 to over R4,3 billion by 2010/11. This growth averages an increase of 12,1% per year.

Acsa, in turn, continues with its concerted infrastructure expenditure through developments at OR Tambo International Airport, Cape Town and Durban and other airports at a cost of over R20 billion to provide for the expansion of airport infrastructure.

Airlift Strategy

The five-year Airlift Strategy was approved by Cabinet in July 2006, to introduce effectively structured regulatory measures for increasing tourism growth for South Africa.

In particular, this strategy is based on aviation policy directives and contributes to the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa by:

- aligning with the Tourism Growth Strategy and industry
- prioritising tourism and trade markets
- unblocking obstacles to growth through regulatory mechanisms, and bilateral and multilateral air-services negotiations.

In particular, the strategy supports the millennium development goals and the objectives of Nepad to increase African connectivity and access through the accelerated implementation of the Yamoussoukro Decision of 1999 on the liberation of intra-Africa air-traffic services.

The overall objective of the Airlift Strategy is to increase aviation's contribution towards sustainable economic growth and job creation. This requires the creation and maintenance of an enabling framework, within which both suppliers and consumers of air-transport services may exercise reasonable flexibility and choice.

The strategy enhances the prospects of South Africa as a preferred air-travel destination and synchronises the basis for bilateral air-services negotiations with other priorities.

The strategy also provides specific guidelines for various unique markets, with emphasis on the needs of intra-African air services, and aims to improve the regulation of particularly the supply-side of air-transport services.

The department also developed the Airlift Implementation Plan, which provides a clear framework and capacity targets to be met. The Airlift Strategy is expected to promote the provision of adequate air-service capacity and infrastructure to cater for the projected growth in air movements within South Africa, and between South Africa and its key international partners.

By June 2009, the Department of Transport had achieved a 40% increase in air-traffic frequencies being granted within the various bilateral air-services agreements, which were concluded with other countries.

Airlines

Major domestic airlines operate in the country, as well as a number of smaller charter airline companies.

South African Airways (SAA), British Airways (BA)/Comair, SA Express, SA Airlink and Inter-air operate scheduled air services within South Africa and the Indian Ocean islands. In addition to serving Africa, SAA operates services to Europe, Latin America and the Far East.

Scheduled international air services are also provided by Air Afrique, Air Austral, Air Botswana, Air France, Air Gabon, Air Madagascar, Air Malawi, Air Mauritius, Air Namibia, Air Portugal, Air Seychelles, Air Tanzania, Air Zimbabwe, Airlink Swaziland, Alliance Express, BA, Cameroon Airlines, Delta Airlines, El Al, Egyptair, Emirates, Ethiopian Airlines, Ghana Airways, Iberia, KLM, Kenya Airways, LAM Mozambique Airlines, LTU International Airways, Lufthansa, MK Airlines, Malaysia Airlines, Martinair Holland, Northwest Airlines, Olympic Airways, Qantas, Royal Air Maroc, Saudi Arabian Airlines, Singapore Airlines, Swissair, Taag, Thai International, Turkish Airlines, Uganda Airlines, United Airlines, Varig, Virgin Atlantic, Yemenia, Zambian Air Services and Zambian Skyways.

South African Airways

SAA is by far the largest air carrier in Africa, with the OR Tambo International Airport being on the busiest routes in Africa. Nearly 75% of air-traffic activity in Africa takes place in the region.

SAA is the only non-stop service from the USA to South Africa, with daily departures from Washington, DC and a daily direct service from New York. The airline upgraded its in-flight entertainment on these flights, increasing the number of movies available from 15 to 44, ranging from global blockbusters to more culturally diverse options that include South African and Hindi choices. There are a number of channels with TV programmes and music from many different genres on offer.

Each seat on board includes a personal, on-demand entertainment system with a full range of upgraded content. Travellers in premium class enjoy 180-degree fully flat-bed seats. SAA's local network includes connections to more than 20 South African destinations and more than 20 cities across the rest of the continent. As a Star Alliance member, SAA also offers its customers 975 destinations in 162 countries and 18 100 flights daily, including convenient connections from more than 30 cities in the USA through code-share services with Star Alliance member United Airlines. Members of United Airlines' Mileage Plus, US Airways' Dividend Miles and Air Canada's Aeroplane programmes can earn and redeem miles on all SAA flights.

In 2008/09, SAA made a net profit of R398 million. This is compared to a net loss after restructuring costs of R1 085 billion in 2007/08.

Ports

Commercial ports play a crucial role in South Africa's transport, logistics and socio-economic development. About 98% of South Africa's exports are conveyed by sea. The National Ports Regulator was established in terms of the National Ports Act, 2005 (Act 12 of 2005). Its primary function is the economic regulation of the ports system, in line with government's strategic objectives to promote equity of access to ports and to monitor the activities of the TNPA. The regulator also promotes regulated competition, hears appeals and complaints, and investigates such complaints.

The TNPA is the largest port authority on the continent. It owns and manages South Africa's ports at Richards Bay, Durban, East London, Port Elizabeth, Mossel Bay, Cape Town, Saldanha and Ngqura.

The TNPA provides suitable infrastructure as a conduit for the country's imports and exports. As port landlord, it is responsible for:

- developing and managing port properties
- developing, advising and implementing national port policies
- providing and maintaining port infrastructure (i.e. breakwaters, seawalls, channels, basins, quay walls and jetties), and the sustainability of ports and their environments
- coordinating marketing and promotional activities for each port.

The TNPA also has a control function, which includes:

- providing vessel-traffic control and navigational aids
- licensing and leasing terminals to operators
- monitoring the performance of port operators
- ensuring the orderly, efficient and reliable transfer of cargo and passengers between sea and land.

Transnet Freight Rail increased its number of container trains from six to between 16 and 22 trains a day, since the inception of its national control centre (NCC) in 2008.

The NCC caters for four rail corridors, namely the Cape, Central, Natal and Eastern corridors. Each of the corridors has a multidisciplinary team that monitors and controls the trains moving in a particular corridor. The teams are also equipped for rail engineering, infrastructure development and train planning.

Based on the *White Paper on the National Commercial Ports Policy (2002)*, the vision for South African ports is to become a system of ports, seamlessly integrated in the logistics network, that is jointly and individually self-sustainable.

This will be achieved through the delivery of high levels of service and increasing efficiency for a growing customer base. It will result in the enhancement of South Africa's global competitiveness and facilitate the expansion of the economy through socially and environmentally sustainable port development. The TNPA business consists of the following divisions:

Trade and Logistics

This division is the strategic business arm of the TNPA. It is responsible for customer-relationship marketing, in combination with technology and human resources (HR).

Landlord Services

Landlord Services ensures the planning, development and optimal use of port property and infrastructure, as well as a safe, secure and healthy port environment.

The division consists of property, engineering, and planning and development. Landlord Services has traditionally been the TNPA's major revenue earner, initially through wharfage, and currently through cargo dues.

Maritime Services

Maritime Services includes improving efficiency in shipping services, dredging navigational waterways, and ensuring a safe shipping environment through vessel-tracing services, pilotage and lighthouse services.

The ports provide:

- pilotage, tug and berthing services
- bulk-handling installations to handle dry and liquid bulk, complemented by storage facilities
- container-handling facilities
- multipurpose terminals for the handling of break bulk and containers
- access to rail and road links
- ship-repair facilities
- feeder services.

Lighthouse Services

Lighthouse Services operates 45 lighthouses along the South African coastline.

The TNPA has vessel-traffic systems in all ports, ensuring improved safety of navigation within the port and port limits, and enhancing the service provided to the port user.

Marine Services

Marine Services operates 24 large tugs, eight work boats, four pilot boats and 14 launches in South Africa's commercial ports. The ports of Durban and Richards Bay provide 24-hour services.

Portcon International

This division provides a consultancy and training service appropriate to ports operating within the African context.

Port and Corporate Affairs

This division is responsible for the efficient and profitable running of the ports as service-delivery platforms.

Deepwater ports

The Port of Richards Bay is South Africa's leading port in terms of cargo volumes, handling in excess of 80 metric ton (mt) of cargo annually. In 2008, the port handled 7 589 891 mt of cargo, of which 7 226 772 mt was bulk cargo and 363 119 mt break bulk. During the 2008/09 financial year, Richards Bay's coal terminal handled 61,79 mt of export coal. Over the same period, the port handled a total of 1 750 ships with a gross tonnage of 59 mt.

The port covers a surface area of 2 157 ha on land and 1 495 ha on water, making it the biggest port in South Africa in terms of size. It also offers easy access to South Africa's national rail network.

One of the port's inherent strengths is its deep-water infrastructure, with a maximum permissible draught of 17,5 m. This, coupled with the high-tech state-of-the-art terminal infrastructures, allows for high-speed, high-volume cargo handling and a fast turnaround of vessels.

The port with its immediate region has become a popular call for international cruise ships because of the close proximity to game parks and the iSimangaliso Wetlands Park.

The facilities at Richards Bay's Port comprise a dry-bulk terminal, a multipurpose terminal and

the privately operated coal terminal. Other private operators within the port include several woodchip export terminals and a bulk liquid terminal.

Richard's Bay Dry Bulk Terminal is a unique terminal that handles a variety of commodities on its conveyor system.

To avoid contamination, every belt, transfer point, rail truck and vessel loader/unloader is washed thoroughly before the next product is handled. A high-volume woodchip loader has made this terminal one of the world's best and most efficient woodchip-loading facilities.

Saldanha Port, situated on the West Coast, is the deepest and the largest natural port in southern Africa. The port is unique in that it has a purpose-built railroad serving a bulk-handling facility, which is connected to a dedicated jetty for the shipment of iron ore. Saldanha also serves as a major crude-oil importation and transhipment port. It is the only iron ore-handling port in South Africa.

Hub ports

The Port of Durban is a full-service general cargo and container port. It is the most conveniently situated port for the industrialised Durban/Pinetown and Gauteng areas and cross-border traffic.

The Port of Durban is one of the busiest in southern Africa. It has a surface land area of 1 854 ha. The container terminal is the largest such facility in the southern hemisphere and is geared to expand in terms of cargo handling.

It is especially effective as a hub port for cargo to and from the Far East, Europe and the Americas, serving South Africa, as well as west and east African countries. The port is also the premier port for a wide range of commodities, including coal, mineral ores, granite, chemicals, petrochemicals, steel, forest products, citrus products, sugar and grain.

Plans are underway to further expand the Port of Durban, with the addition of a new R70-million rail facility attached to the container terminal, the widening of the harbour mouth, and other major projects.

The rail terminal was commissioned by the port's operator, Transnet Port Terminals, at the end of June 2009 and is part of a multibillion-rand capital investment programme. By the end of 2009, construction was underway on a R164-million expansion of the historic 15-berth Maydon Wharf, which handles bulk goods such as sugar, grain, fruit and fertiliser. The improvements include storage for 80 000 tons of maize.

Other improvements include the R140-million truck staging area at the six-berth Durban Container Terminal, which alleviates the problem of queuing, and the R2-billion first stage of the conversion of Bayhead Pier One into a container terminal.

Phase Two of the Pier One project is at the feasibility stage and involves the conversion of the former naval base, Salisbury Island resulting in an additional capacity. Pier One is expected to be fully operational by July 2010.

The Durban Harbour-Widening Project is at an advanced stage. From its 122-m width, the entrance channel will span 220 m at its narrowest point. The current depth of 12,8 m will sink to between 18 m and 19 m, allowing modern container super-ships to enter the harbour.

Transnet's investment in the Durban Port covers a number of other key areas – upgrading the staff car park, resurfacing the quayside and relocating staff facilities and workshops, increasing container stacking capacity from 13 691 to 17 262 ground slots, and upgrading the seats of the container terminal's 120 straddle carriers.

A R648-million expansion of the car terminal was also on the cards in 2009. Durban's car terminal handles two thirds of South Africa's motor-vehicle imports and exports. The allocation of 13 200 bays is to be increased to 14 000, of which 4 500 will be under cover.

The Port of Cape Town is the other hub in South Africa. It offers multipurpose dry, and liquid and dry terminals, as well as fully serviced dry docks. The port is renowned for its deciduous fruit and frozen-product exports. A major fishing industry is also based here. The Port of Cape Town is strategically positioned and ideally situated to serve as a hub for cargoes between Europe, the Americas, Africa, Asia and Oceania. The port provides a complex network of services to its clients and a favourable environment for all stakeholders, maximising benefits to the local and national economy. In 2008/09, the port handled a total of

In May 2009, Transnet announced that it had concluded the disposal of South African Express (SAX) and Shosholoza Meyl, completing its transformation as a freight transport and logistics business. SAX was sold to the Department of Public Enterprises for R140 million. Shosholoza Meyl was sold to the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa. The deal, which also includes the coach maintenance business of Transnet Rail Engineering, became effective on 31 March 2009. The SAX transaction was effective from April 2007.

297 988 mt in cargo, of which 265 613 mt was bulk cargo and 32 375 mt breakbulk cargo.

Integrated intermodal cargo systems, ship repair, bunkering facilities and the reefer trade are examples of these services.

Multipurpose ports

The Port of Port Elizabeth, with its proximity to heavily industrialised and intensively farmed areas, has facilities for handling of all commodities – bulk, general and container cargo.

Being situated at the centre of the country's motor-vehicle-manufacturing industry, the port imports large volumes of containerised components and raw material for this industry.

The bulk of exports comprises agricultural products. Apart from agricultural produce, manganese ore, motor-vehicle-industry-related products and steel are exported.

The container terminal has maintained the highest handling rates in Africa in recent years and is accredited to International Standards Organisation 9002. Located mid-way between Cape Town and Port Elizabeth, the Port of Mossel Bay has in the past specialised in serving the local inshore and deep-sea fishing industry, as well as limited commercial cargo. However, it now serves the oil industry as well as other client-orientated marine cargo.

This port is the only South African port that operates two offshore mooring points within port limits. Both mooring points are used for the transport of refined petroleum products.

The Port of East London is situated at the mouth of the Buffalo River on South Africa's east coast, and is the country's only commercial river port.

It boasts a large container terminal and grain elevator, and it is the largest exporter of maize.

With a world-class R80-million car terminal, the port has become one of the major motor-vehicle export and import terminals in South Africa.

Through Transnet, government is investing close to R50 billion on rail- and port-infrastructure improvement.

Pipelines

Transnet Pipelines owns, maintains and operates a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines.

Continued investment is also being made in the pipeline sector.

Construction on a R5,8-billion fuel pipeline between the Mozambican Port of Matola in Maputo and Kendal in South Africa was expected to start in 2009. The 450-km-long pipeline will transport up to 3,5 Ml a year and is expected to prevent potential fuel shortages in South Africa.

The multiproduct pipeline will take just six months to build, as project operator Petroline intends to have it operating in 2010. Petroline is a locally registered company that also owns the sections of the line that runs through South African soil.

When completed, the pipeline will facilitate the importation of petrol and diesel from Mozambique, which has extensive natural gas and coal reserves but no oil reserves. Of the pipeline's total capacity of 3,5 Ml of fuel and diesel, a maximum of 1,5 Ml will be diverted to Nelspruit while the remainder will be transported to Kendal.

Maritime affairs

Maritime administration, legislation and shipping

Marine transport encompasses all forms of transport by sea, intermodal links and inland ports. It caters to a large degree for the freight market, and in the South African context offers no significant passenger-carrying ability.

The Department of Transport is responsible for South Africa's maritime administration and legislation, which Samsa controls on its behalf in terms of the Samsa Act, 1998 (Act 5 of 1998).

The broad aim of Samsa is to maintain the safety of life and property at sea within South Africa's area of maritime jurisdiction, and to ensure the prevention of marine pollution by oil and other substances emanating from ships. The Department of Environmental Affairs is responsible for combating pollution and uses *Kuswag* coast-watch vessels to perform this function. Samsa is responsible for introducing and maintaining international standards set by the International Maritime Organisation (IMO) in London, with respect to:

- ship construction
- maritime training and training curricula
- watch-keeping
- certification of seafarers
- manning and operation of local and foreign ships
- maritime search-and-rescue
- marine communications and radio navigation aids
- pollution prevention.

Samsa has an operations unit, a policy unit and a corporate support division to handle all financial, HR and IT issues.

Other functions include registering ships, establishing a coastal patrol service and managing marine casualties and wrecks.

Samsa is steadily improving its capacity to monitor safety standards of foreign vessels. A considerable number of ships calling at South Africa's major ports is inspected, and those not complying with international safety standards are detained until the deficiencies are corrected.

The South African Marine Corporation (Safmarine), Unicorn Lines and Griffin Shipping are South Africa's predominant shipping lines. Their fleets of container, oil tanker, general cargo and bulk cargo vessels operate not only between South African ports, but also as cross-traders to other parts of the world.

South Africa signed an agreement to establish the subregional Maritime Rescue Coordination Centre (MRCC) in South Africa and subregional maritime subcentres in the Comoros, Madagascar, Mozambique and Namibia. South Africa also contributed R100 000 to be used in the operations of the International Maritime Security Fund.

Training

The South African Maritime Training Academy at Simonstown in the Western Cape provides advanced training to the broader maritime sector, including the merchant navy, harbour-craft operations, the fishing industry and the South African Navy. The South African Merchant Navy Academy, General Botha, established at Granger Bay, is integrated with the Cape Peninsula University of Technology, with a similar training facility at the Durban Institute of Technology. Deck and engineering students and officers complete their academic training at the Cape Peninsula University of Technology and the Durban Institute of Technology, while lower classes of certificates are offered at the Training Centre for Seamen, situated in the Duncan Dock area in Cape Town. This training institution also caters for deck, engine-room and catering department ratings.

Samsa is responsible for setting all standards of training certification and watch-keeping on behalf of the Department of Transport, while the Maritime Education and Training Board is responsible for accrediting all maritime courses.

Other maritime training organisations offer a wide range of courses that have been developed within the South African maritime industry. These are situated mainly in the ports of Cape Town and Durban and, to a lesser degree, Port Elizabeth.

As part of Transport Month, the Minister of Transport, Mr Sibusiso Ndebele, launched the Centre for Sea Watch and Response (CSWR) at the South African Maritime Authority offices in Cape Town in October 2009.

The CSWR has the capacity to identify and track vessels up to 1 000 miles from the coastline as well as South African-flagged vessels anywhere in the world. This data, automatically transmitted every six hours, can be displayed on an electronic chart, which is accessible via a secured website. Once a vessel is identified, full details of the vessel can be accessed via a ship's database.

The CSWR has access to an automatic identification system of ships on the coast in the areas around the major ports of South Africa, which means the vessel's every move can be tracked.

The centre's mission is to comply with national maritime regulations and agreements as well as international conventions such as the International Maritime Organisation's Safety of Life At Sea and Search and Rescue requirements with respect to maritime security and the protection of the marine environment.

Search-and-rescue services

The Southern African Search and Rescue (Sasar) has been in existence since 1957. It was formalised through the enactment of the South African Maritime and Aeronautical Search and Rescue Act, 2002 (Act 44 of 2002). The Act gave the organisation a statutory mandate to coordinate all search and rescue (SAR) activities with South Africa's area of responsibility (SAR Region).

South Africa is responsible for a huge SAR area, representing about 10% of the globe and about 28,5 million square kilometres in total. To manage this vast area, the South African area is divided into two SAR regions, namely the aeronautical and maritime SAR regions.

The Aeronautical SAR Region covers South Africa, Namibia, Swaziland, Lesotho and associated flight information regions. The Maritime SAR Region stretches about halfway between South Africa and South America on the western side, about halfway between South Africa and Australia on the eastern side.

It also borders on Namibia, Angola, South Africa and Mozambique on the northern side and then extends to the South Pole. Relevant operational structures and substructures were established for Sasar to execute its mandate successfully.

The Aeronautical Rescue Coordination Centre (ARCC) and the MRCC are the primary structures responsible for the execution of Sasar's statutory

mandate. The ARCC and the MRCC are based at the ATNS and Samsa.

SAR only works when several countries and all stakeholders collaborate across borders. This culture of collaboration dates back to 1959 when the Convention on International Civil Aviation first made provision for cooperation between states.

According to this provision, states will individually or in cooperation with other states, arrange for the establishment and prompt provision of SAR services within their territories to ensure that assistance is rendered to persons in distress.

Regional cooperation also uses scarce resources and helps nations to avoid duplicating efforts and facilities. Through this collaboration, services are provided for poor states in a uniform manner across a wide area. Collaboration also reduces the overall cost of SAR operations. This is the only way to provide a worldwide SAR system.

In 2007, South Africa orchestrated the signing of the multilateral agreement on the coordination of maritime SAR services by five countries. The Cape Town office of MRCC was also commissioned as the regional MRCC immediately after the signing of the multilateral agreement.

The SADC approached ICAO and the IMO to consider funding the training requirements identified for the region. Together with the Department of Environment Affairs, the Department of Transport is planning to create SAR capacity at the Antarctic region.

The Department of Transport, the South African National Defence Force, Telkom, Portnet, Samsa, SACAA, ATNS, SAPS, the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa, SAA and the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs are members of Sasar and contribute their services and/or facilities.

Voluntary organisations such as the 4x4 Rescue Club, the Mountain Club of South Africa, Hamnet and the National Sea Rescue Institute are also members of Sasar.

The African Maritime Transport Charter was adopted at the Second African Union Conference of Ministers Responsible for Maritime Transport, under the theme *Creation of a Safe, Secure and Clean Maritime Transport Industry*, held in Durban, South Africa, from 15 to 16 October 2009.

The Aeronautical Rescue Coordination Centre is an operational facility of Sasar that promotes the efficient organisation of SAR services and coordinates aeronautical SAR operations. This plays a significant role in improving the safety of South African airspace.

Maritime safety

An estimated 7 000 vessels pass around South Africa's coastline annually, of which many are laden tankers carrying in excess of 30 mt of crude oil. South African weather conditions present regular challenges to vessels, often resulting in distress calls to the Cape Town-based MRCC.

The MRCC is enabling South Africa to exercise its responsibilities to the international community by employing state-of-the-art SAR infrastructure and services. Various laden, very large crude-oil carriers have been assisted to safety, their cargo safely transferred by means of ship-to-ship transfers, and the affected vessels repaired or temporarily repaired to enable them to proceed to other ports for permanent repairs.

South Africa has a well-established Pollution Prevention Strategy, and is ready to respond in case of threats to the environment or to provide assistance to vessels at risk.

South Africa also acts in terms of the Indian Ocean MoU on Port State Control and has a similar agreement with the states of west Africa in the form of the Abuja MoU.

Acknowledgements

Airports Company South Africa
Acsa Annual Report 2008/09
BuaNews
Business Day
Department of Transport
Estimates of National Expenditure 2009, published by National Treasury
National Household Travel Survey, 2003
Sabinet
National Ports Authority of South Africa
Pretoria News
South African Rail Commuter Corporation
Transnet Freight Rail Limited
Road Accident Fund
Sapa
www.acsa.co.za
www.arivealive.co.za
www.atns.co.za
www.buanews.gov.za
www.enatis.com
www.engineeringnews.co.za
www.gautrain.co.za
www.gov.za
www.iol.co.za
www.itweb.co.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com
www.mg.co.za
www.news24.com
www.polokwane.org.za
www.ports.co.za
www.sa2010.gov.za
www.saa.co.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.samsa.org.za
www.sanral.co.za
www.shine2010.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.spoornet.co.za
www.tradeinvestsa.co.za
www.transnet.co.za
www.transport.gov.za
www.umdloti.org

Suggested reading

Louw, B. 2008. *The Gibson Brothers of the Red Star Line*. Welgemoed: JBZ Louw.
Rorke, WB. 2007. *Trek Airways: A South African Adventure.* London: Athena Press.
Ross, G. 2007. *The Romance of Cape Mountain Passes.* Cape Town: New Africa Books.
South Africa. Department of Transport. 2007. (e-resource). *Moving South Africa: A Transport Strategy for 2010: Report and Strategy Recommendations.*

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

WATER AFFAIRS

While striving to ensure that all South Africans gain access to clean water and safe sanitation, the water sector also promotes effective and efficient water-resource management to ensure sustainable economic and social development.

In 2009, following the appointment of a new administration, the former Department of Water Affairs and Forestry became the Department of Water Affairs.

In 2009, South Africa embarked on a number of programmes to conserve and diversify its water sources. These included desalinating sea water in coastal areas and increasing effluent recycling.

The department also adopted a "zero tolerance" stance on environmental and water crimes. The campaign was expected to be strengthened by the commitment to return environmental courts.

Water is not only central to but is also an excellent catalyst for development. It is for this reason that the Water-Allocation Programme plays a pivotal role in supporting government's priorities in rural development and land reform.

In 2009, the department announced a framework to ensure that South Africa's water resources are managed sustainably to meet future demands. Within the context of this strategy, the department embarked on programmes to:

- diversify water-mix, ensuring that other sources of supply, for example, desalination of sea water in coastal areas and strengthening effluent reuse are explored
- intensify public awareness about the value of water to instil a culture of responsibility and change of attitude and behaviour to water
- conserve water by curbing water losses by at least 20% in 2014
- act decisively against defaulters and punish wrongdoing
- strengthen the regulatory capacity and assist municipalities.

Hydrological conditions

South Africa is classified among the driest countries by world standards. It is located in a predominantly semi-arid part of the world.

The country's climate varies from desert and semi-desert in the west to sub-humid along the eastern coastal area, with an average rainfall of about 450 mm per year.

This is well below the world average of about 860 mm per year, while evaporation is comparatively high.

South Africa's inland water resources include 22 major rivers, 165 large dams, more than 4 000 medium and small dams on public and private land, and hundreds of small rivers.

The country's water resources are, in global terms, scarce and extremely limited. The total flow of all the rivers in the country combined amounts to about 49 200 million cubic metres (m^3) per year. This is less than half of that of the Zambezi River, the closest large river to South Africa. Groundwater plays a pivotal role, especially in rural water supplies.

However, owing to the predominantly hard-rock nature of South Africa's geology, there are few major groundwater aquifers that can be used on a large scale.

The poor spatial distribution of rainfall means that the natural availability of water across the country is also highly uneven. This is compounded by the strong seasonality of rainfall over virtually the entire country, and the high within-season variability of rainfall, and, consequently, of run-off.

As a result, stream flow in South Africa's rivers is at relatively low levels for most of the time, with sporadic high flows occurring – characteristics which limit the proportion of stream flow that can be relied upon to be available for use, and which also have implications for water-related disasters such as floods and droughts.

To aggravate the situation, most urban and industrial development, as well as some dense rural settlements, have been established in remote locations away from large watercourses. As a result, the requirements for water already far exceed its natural availability in several river basins. Widespread and often large-scale transfers of water across catchments have, therefore, been implemented in South Africa.

To facilitate the management of water resources, the country has been divided into 19 catchment-based water-management areas. Eleven of these water-management areas share international rivers.

Over the years, water-resource development and management in South Africa have con-

Important dates:

World Wetlands Day:	2 February
National Water Week:	19 to 25 March
World Water Day:	22 March

tinuously evolved to meet the needs of a growing population and a vibrant economy, within the constraints imposed by nature. These developments have largely been made possible by recognising water as a national asset, thereby allowing its transportation from where it is available to where the greatest overall benefits for the nation can be achieved.

Sufficient water resources have been developed and are available to ensure that all current requirements for water can reasonably be met, without impairing the socio-economic development of the country.

Where feasible, special management techniques may be applied to improve water quality to appropriate standards for particular uses. The quality of groundwater varies according to hydrogeological conditions and anthropogenic impact. However, most major aquifer systems contain potable-quality water.

Measures will also be introduced to ensure the most beneficial and efficient use of water in the country from a social and economic perspective.

Provided that South Africa's water resources are judiciously managed and wisely allocated and used, sufficient water of appropriate quality will be available to sustain a strong economy, high social standards and healthy aquatic ecosystems for many generations.

South Africa depends mainly on surface-water resources for the urban, industrial and irrigation water supplies in the country. In general, surface-water resources are highly developed over most of South Africa.

Groundwater is also extensively used, particularly in the rural and more arid areas, contributing to some 60% of newly serviced households (since 1994).

The Department of Water Affairs plans to spend about R30 billion between 2014 and 2017 on the continuing construction and establishment of the 15 mega-water-resource infrastructure projects. This will increase the capacity of existing water-resource infrastructure to provide water to strategic installations such as the energy sector (Eskom), the industrial sector (Sasol), the mining sector and for domestic purposes.

Additional infrastructure programmes include an accelerated programme for the construction of the De Hoop Dam, the continued partnership with the Government of Lesotho for the implementation of the proposed Phase Two of the Lesotho Highlands Water Project and implementation of the project to augment water supply to Lephalale for use by Eskom and other petrochemical industries.

In the northern parts of the country, both surface and groundwater resources are nearly fully developed and used. Some overexploitation occurs in localised areas, with little undeveloped resource potential remaining. The reverse applies to the well-watered south-eastern region of the country where there are still significant undeveloped and little-used resources.

The total mean annual run-off of water in South Africa under natural (undeveloped) conditions is estimated at a little over 49 200 million m^3 per year, including about 4 800 million m^3 per year of water originating from Lesotho, and about 700 million m^3 per year originating from Swaziland, which naturally drain into South Africa. Agricultural irrigation represents close to 60% of the total water requirements of the country, while urban requirements constitute about 25% as the second-largest user sector. The remaining 15% is shared by the other sectors (all standardised to 98% assurance of supply).

The total net abstraction of water from surface water resources amounts to about 10 200 million m^3 per year for the whole of South Africa, after allowing for the reuse of return flows. This represents about 20% of the total mean annual run-off of 49 200 million m^3 per year (all standardised to 98% assurance of supply). A further 8% is estimated to be lost through evaporation from storage and conveyance along rivers, and 6% through land-use activities. As a national average, about 66% of the natural river flow (mean annual run-off) therefore still remains in the country's rivers.

Water-resource management and development

Government's goal is to ensure that all people in South Africa have access to potable-quality water and basic sanitation facilities by 2014.

By April 2009, the Department of Water Affairs was managing a cross-sectoral approach to water management in South Africa through its Framework on Water for Growth and Development. The framework represents the Government's commitment to water security for the people, the economy and the environment.

The framework placed emphasis on the life-sustaining importance of water as a scarce resource. Unless the continuous judicious use and effective management of South Africa's water resources are taken on board by every stakeholder, water availability could become a constraint on growth and development in the future.

South Africa's water-management policies and legislation provide for participative water govern-

ance and through the established water-management and water-services institutions, powers and responsibilities are delegated to relevant levels.

The Department of Water Affairs aims to ensure that South African water is protected from pollution, conserved and used efficiently. This requires the careful management of this valuable resource so that the department can ensure universal access to basic water services to every citizen while also meeting the needs of economic growth in a way that does not threaten the environmental integrity of water resources.

The Department of Water Affairs constantly has to balance the increasing and competing demands on the country's limited water resources, mindful of the fact that water for social development, economic growth and environmental sustainability are all equally important for the success and prosperity of the country.

The Framework on Water for Growth and Development, developed in 2008, is the result of two years of consultations with key players in the water sector. It has been considered and approved by Cabinet.

The framework is a ground-breaking initiative that aims to set in motion a course of action to ensure that there is sufficient water, in both qualitative and quantitative terms, to support South Africa's growth trajectory and development. The department has to ensure that there is sufficient water available for South Africa to achieve its economic-growth targets. At the same time, it has to ensure it meets its 2014 target for universal access to water and basic sanitation.

The framework aims to address specific challenges associated with water-resource availability to enable projected economic growth and social service-delivery programmes. The framework ensures water security until 2030.

It looks at a number of aspects of water, including its availability, usage, threats and people's behaviour. It is premised on the 6% economic-growth target, while aiming to ensure that every person in South Africa has access to safe drinking water.

These two goals should be achieved without compromising the environmental sustainability of the resource. The department is undertaking studies on water reconciliation to achieve a balance in supply and demand for both water-scarce areas as well as areas where there are high levels of use.

In 2009, the Department of Water Affairs was exploring the most cost-effective and appropriate options to augment the country's water supply as complementary alternatives to the traditional but expensive augmentation schemes such as the construction of dams and inter-basin water transfers.

These alternatives include water-loss control, water conservation and demand management, effluent reuse or effluent recycling, desalination for coastal locations and groundwater abstraction.

Major dams iof South Africa

Dam	Full supply capacity (10^6 m^3)	River
Gariep	5 341	Orange
Vanderkloof	3 171	Orange
Sterkfontein	2 616	Nuwejaarspruit
Nuwejaarspruit Vaal	2 603	Vaal
Pongolapoort	2 445	Pongolo
Bloemhof	1 264	Vaal
Theewaterskloof	480	Sonderend
Heyshope	451	Assegaai
Woodstock	380	Tugela
Loskop	361	Olifants
Grootdraai	354	Vaal
Kalkfontein	318	Riet
Goedertrouw	304	Mhlatuze
Albert Falls	288	Mgeni
Brandvlei	284	Brandvlei
Spioenkop	277	Tugela
Mthatha	253	Mthatha
Driekoppies	250	Lomati
Inanda	241	Mgeni
Hartbeespoort	212	Crocodile
Erfenis	207	Groot Vet
Rhenosterkop	204	Elands
Molatedi	22	Groot Marico
Ntshingwayo	198	Ngagane
Zaaihoek	192	Slang
Midmar	175	Mgeni

Source: Department of Water Affairs

The department engages extensively and intensively with water-sector users to:

- ensure the mainstreaming of water-use requirements in the critical sectoral planning decisions
- effect a change in water-use behaviour among those who negatively affect water resources
- set targets per water-use sector
- implement a mix of mechanisms to effect these changes, which will include regulatory and market-based instruments, self-regulation, awareness and education.

The substantial restructuring of the Department of Water Affairs, which is expected to be completed by 2010/2011, includes:

- establishing catchment-management agencies (CMAs) to perform water-resource management functions
- transferring water-service delivery and operations to water-services authorities (WSAs).

As WSAs are providing water services, the department's role is to:

- act as custodian of the country's water resources
- provide water-services policy and guidelines
- provide ongoing support to the water sector
- act as a water-sector regulator.

To ensure that WSAs have the correct water-resources planning information available to complete their water-services development plans and integrated development plans, the department has initiated the All Towns Reconciliation Study, which is targeting 134 towns in the Eastern Cape, of which 48 were flagged as urgent, and 10 were flagged as extremely urgent.

The focus of the study was on the reconciliation of water requirements and the available resources for each town to be able to provide for water needs in terms of the right "water mix" for each municipality, be it groundwater, surface water, return flows, recycling or rainwater harvesting. A strategy will be developed for each town.

The department remains focused on the phased implementation of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998), with a particular emphasis on implementing a new organisational structure, which includes:

- establishing the National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS), which will set out the procedures, guidelines and overall strategy for managing water resources
- developing and testing a strategy for compulsory water-use licensing to facilitate equitable access to water resources for historically disadvantaged individuals (HDIs)
- enhancing water-use efficiency
- ensuring compliance with dam-safety regulations and enhancing public safety at water-resource installations
- investigating and implementing appropriate institutional arrangements for the optimal management of the Working for Water (WfW) Programme
- building national capacity to monitor the state of water resources, so that accurate information is used in decision-making about the use and management of water resources
- creating the National Water-Resource Infrastructure Agency to manage and develop national infrastructure and which will incorporate the work of the Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority.

In accordance with the international best practice of decentralising and democratising water-resource management, the Inkomati CMA (ICMA) has been established. It is the first to be formed by government and is responsible for the protecting, conserving, developing and managing the water resources in South Africa at water-management area (WMA) level.

The central objective of the ICMA is to ensure that water is used to support equitable and sustainable social and economic transformation and development in South Africa.

Water-quality management

The Directorate: Water-Quality Management of the Department of Water Affairs is responsible for the quality management of national water resources in South Africa.

The challenge of water-quality management, within the context of integrated water-resources management, requires a multidisciplinary approach in a multisectoral environment to ensure sustainable total water management from source

New legislation to establish the specialist "Green Scorpions" environmental crime-fighting unit, which will include the "Blue Scorpions", a unit to tackle water-related crime, was completed by mid-2009, while environmental courts were expected to be established in South Africa by 2010. The prospect of a single enforcement unit, from the possible integration of the "Blue Scorpions" and "Green Scorpions", is expected to strengthen the resolve against wrongdoers. The Department of Water Affairs aims to ensure, through the "polluter-pays" principle, that behaviour such as pollution and illegal water use do not go unpunished.

In 2009, the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs, Ms Buyelwa Sonjica, anounced that the Department of Water Affairs was investing R500 million in a programme to intervene in high-risk rural and poor areas where there are water challenges. This special intervention programme focuses on:

- aging infrastructure that leads to discharge of sewerage into rivers
- water conservation in stressed systems such as the Vaal and Umgeni
- areas where there is illegal abstraction, for example, Upper Vaal
- areas where there is no infrastructure and communities are vulnerable to water-borne diseases.

This investment will address sewerage spillages, target specific treatment facilities and asset management, as well as provide technical assistance to municipalities. The department has identified nodal areas for focused interventions which were chosen based on the extent of need for refurbishment, the extent of sewage spillages and the age and dilapidation of the infrastructure.

to supply, including meeting the demands with regard to fitness for use from various sectors.

From a regulatory point of view, water-quality management entails the ongoing process of planning, developing, implementing and administering water-quality management policy; authorising water uses that have, or potentially have, an impact on water quality; as well as the monitoring and auditing of the aforementioned.

The National Water Act, 1998 further enables the Department of Water Affairs to manage water quality through source-directed and resource-directed measures. Source-directed measures include the issuing of licences to water users with a potential impact on the resource.

The Act requires that all significant water resources be classified in accordance with the prescribed classification system.

Drinking-water quality management is the responsibility of municipalities, while the Department of Water Affairs has an oversight and regulatory role in the quality of tap water. The department implemented a countrywide system to assist with the overall management of drinking-water quality.

The department deployed the Municipal Drinking-Water Quality Management System in all WSAs, and completed a pilot of the Waste Water Treatment System in 2007/08.

Special investigations into water-supply interruptions are underway, and every effort is being made to improve WSAs' management and control systems.

Progress has been made since April 2008, and all WSAs are loading data from more than 3 200 drinking-water sampling points on the Information Management System.

About 94% of the sample points complied with the health requirements of the national standard. As part of its regulatory mandate for drinking-water quality, the Department of Water Affairs will be introducing a new incentive system for municipalities over the 2009, Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

The department has commenced with its incentive-based regulation programme, the Blue Drop Certification Programme, with the objective of awarding excellent drinking-water quality management in different towns.

Blue Drop certificates will be issued to municipalities that meet drinking-water standards and Green Drop certificates to those that meet the requirements for treating waste water.

The secondary objective is to allow the general public to be adequately and responsibly informed on the regulator's confidence levels in drinking-water quality-management levels per service system (town or city).

Water and sanitation

The percentage of households with access to water infrastructure above or equal to the Reconstruction and Development Programme standard increased from 61,7% in 1994 to 91,8% in March 2009. This means that South Africa has surpassed the Millennium Development Goal (MDG) of halving the proportion of people without sustainable water and is likely to achieve the 2014 goal of universal access to potable water, despite the challenge of ever-increasing number of households.

Government is deploying the municipal drinking-water management system in all WSAs to ensure that the water is of good quality across municipalities.

As of March 2009, more than 10 million households (77%) had access to sanitation compared to about five million (50%) in 1994.

Government has moved closer to attaining its objective of eradicating the bucket system in formally established settlements. In 1994, 609 675 households used the bucket system, while in March 2009, 9 044 households were using the bucket system. The target date for universal access to sanitation is 2014.

Freshwater Ecosystem Programme

The Freshwater Ecosystem Programme aims to expand and consolidate the freshwater activities within the South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi).

This includes the management of the Working for Wetlands Programme on behalf of the departments of water affairs; of environmental affairs; and of agriculture, forestry and fisheries. Working for Wetlands champions the protection, rehabilitation and sustainable use of South Africa's wetlands through cooperative governance and partnerships.

In 2008/09, Working for Wetlands rehabilitated 91 wetlands, employing 1 710 people and providing 28 547 training days.

Sanbi is a partner in a nine-year research programme on wetlands that was initiated in 2002 to look at wetland rehabilitation, wetland health and integrity, and the sustainable use of wetlands.

Sanbi and the Water Research Commission funded the development of the Whole Effluent Toxicity Management Series, a set of tools designed to help wetland workers assess the goods and services that wetlands provide, and to measure wetland health.

The National Wetlands Inventory, a pioneering project to map and characterise the wetlands of South Africa, developed a second version of the wetlands map and was working on an improved third version in 2009 to provide higher accuracy and better attribute data. The project has mapped over 114 000 wetlands.

Monitoring water resources

River flow is monitored at 1 200 flow-gauging stations and some 260 major reservoirs are monitored. The evaporation and rainfall station network comprises 360 stations.

The oldest flow-gauging station still in operation in South Africa is on the Mooi River near Potchefstroom in North West.

A new initiative to monitor precipitation in mountainous areas has been launched. There are 21 operational rainfall stations in the mountains of the Western Cape and five stations are operational in the Mpumalanga escarpment. Observations are relayed through the cellular short-message system. The data is updated daily on the department's website at *www.dwaf.gov.za*.

Water levels are monitored at some 1 000 observation boreholes across South Africa. Particular attention is given to monitoring in dolomitic areas. In addition, a small network of rain gauges is in operation to monitor rainwater quality.

The importance of qualitative information on South Africa's water resources has led to an increasing drive towards creating a national water-quality monitoring network.

National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme (NAEHMP)

The NAEHMP, initially known as the National Aquatic Ecosystem Biomonitoring Programme, is responsible for managing aquatic ecosystems.

Until recently, the programme focused mainly on riverine ecosystems. The short name, River Health Programme (RHP), was adopted for this component of the NAEHMP. However, the original broader focus of the monitoring programme remains valid, namely, monitoring the ecological health of all aquatic ecosystems (estuarine and riverine ecosystems) managed by the department.

The NAEHMP focuses on the biological attributes of a river that serve as indicators of its ecological health. The rationale for initiating a biomonitoring programme is that the classic approach of monitoring only physical and chemical water-quality attributes was inadequate for generating information on the overall health of an aquatic ecosystem. Monitoring chemical attributes alone was found to be insufficient to detect, for example, the cumulative effects on aquatic ecosystems of extended exposure to multiple stressors.

Such stressors include habitat alteration, barriers that alter stream flow, water abstraction and alien species being introduced. Aquatic communities (for example, fish, riparian vegetation and aquatic invertebrate fauna), however, are adapted to live within a certain range of environmental conditions.

These organisms' biological communities integrate, respond to and reflect the effects of chemical and physical disturbances that occur in aquatic ecosystems over extended periods, and provide a direct, holistic and integrated measure of the ecological integrity of a river.

If healthy and diverse biological communities inhabit a watercourse, the watercourse as a whole is considered to be ecologically resilient and healthy. However, from an RHP point of view, a healthy water resource does not guarantee the fitness of that resource for domestic, recreational, industrial and agricultural use.

The NAEHMP's main objectives are to:

- generate a national perspective of the health of aquatic ecosystems in South Africa
- develop the capacity and information base required to enable the department and other

role players to report on the status of and trends in the ecological health of South Africa's river systems, in an objective and scientifically sound manner
- generate information products and audit-management strategies that could assist in distinguishing between aquatic ecosystems exposed to sustainable use and those experiencing ecological deterioration.

The NAEHMP, and in particular the RHP, is regarded as the "flagship" for water-resource quality monitoring in South Africa. Products of the RHP have attracted wide attention and recognition, and provide strategic water-resource management information and training material for use in schools and universities, as well as in awareness creation.

The National Chemical Monitoring Programme assesses and reports on the chemical status of water resources in South Africa. Based on a report produced in 2002, the main water-quality challenges for domestic water users are high levels of dissolved salts and, in some places, high fluoride concentration. The other challenges facing irrigated agriculture are the high sodium absorption ratio, high electrical conductivity, high pH and high levels of chloride.

Another global challenge affecting South Africa is eutrophication or excessive plant (including algae) growth in dams. This is due to high levels of nutrient input from point sources of pollution and diffuse sources of pollution from catchments. Annual reports indicate that 50% of dams in South Africa are seriously affected (hypertrophic), while the rest range in quality from good (oligotrophic) to poor (mesotrophic).

Another problem is the sporadic outbreak of cholera and other water-borne diseases, mainly due to poor sanitation and hygiene at household level. The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are especially prone to cholera outbreaks.

The Department of Water Affairs is designing water-resource monitoring programmes to assess and report on the radiological (radioactivity) and toxicological quality status of South African water resources. The National Toxicity Monitoring Programme also reports on the status of DDT (dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane) and other persistent organic pollutants. This information is reported internationally to the Stockholm Convention through the Department of Environmental Affairs.

The department has introduced the electronic Water-Quality Management System to WSAs.

Through the department's efforts alongside the Institute of Municipal Engineers and with the support of the South African Local Government Association (Salga), a challenging two-year project to monitor all 169 WSAs on their drinking-water quality has been successfully put in place. By June 2008, close to 90% of all WSAs submitted their drinking-water data on a timeous and ongoing basis. The result was an overall improvement in the quality of drinking water and the creation of an enabling environment to ensure the effective management of drinking water. Of those municipalities on the system, close to 95% reported that their water quality complied with the national drinking-water standard.

Another international obligation is reporting on chemical water quality through the Global Environmental Monitoring System's Water Programme. The department started bringing in the aspect of voluntary monitoring in the form of the adopt-a-river initiative.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)

The MIG, a conditional grant from national government to local government to support investment in basic municipal infrastructure to eradicate backlogs, was implemented in April 2004.

The purpose of the MIG is to facilitate and ensure more effective and integrated service delivery by local government and the Department of Water Affairs, working with the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs in seeking to ensure that funds are made available. (See Chapter 11: *Government system*.)

The department's support to municipalities comprises:
- planning support regarding integrated development plans (IDPs) and water-services development plans (WSDPs)
- monitoring the water-purification and wastewater treatment works' operations
- facilitating project selection, feasibility studies and service-level options
- supporting the implementation of a tariff structure and the Free Basic Water (FBW) Policy
- supporting the Section 78 process (division of powers and functions for water services between district and local municipalities) and selecting water-services providers
- training councillors and officials in water-services and water-demand management
- mobilising resources to support municipalities.

Policy and legislation

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, and the Bill of Rights enshrine the basic human right to have access to sufficient water and a safe and healthy environment. The two Acts that enable government to fulfil these rights through the Department of Water Affairs are the:

- Water Services Act, 1997 (Act 108 of 1997), which created a regulatory framework within which water services could be provided. Schedule Four of the Constitution vests the responsibility for water and sanitation services in local government. National government, however, is responsible for the regulatory function.
- National Water Act, 1998, which aims to ensure that water resources are protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable manner, for the benefit of everyone in South Africa.

National Water Act, 1998

The Act provides for:

- integrated management and sustainable use of surface water and groundwater
- devolution of surface and groundwater to catchment and local level
- government to play a support role through functions such as promoting awareness, providing information and building capacity.

The Act aims to control the use of water resources, protect them from being impacted on or exploited and polluted, and ensure that every person has equitable access to them.

The Act gives the Department of Water Affairs the tools to gather the information it needs to optimally manage the country's water resources. The registration of water use is one of these tools.

All water users instructed to register have the statutory obligation to do so. There are strict penalties, prescribed in the Act, for those who do not comply.

All water users who do not receive their water from a service-provider, local authority, water board, irrigation board, government water scheme or other bulk supplier, and who use water for irrigation, mining purposes, industrial use, feedlots or in terms of a general authorisation, must register. This includes the use of surface and groundwater.

Other uses of water that must be registered include:

- Diversion of rivers and streams.
- Discharge of waste or water containing waste.
- Storage, which includes any person or body storing water for any purpose (including irrigation, domestic supply, industrial use, mining, aquaculture, fishing, water sports, aesthetic value, gardening, landscaping, golfing, etc.) from surface run-off, groundwater or fountain flow in excess of 10 000 m^3, or where the water area at full supply level exceeds one hectare (ha) in total on land owned or occupied by that person or body, and who is not in possession of a permit or permission.
- Local authorities and other bulk suppliers with their own water sources and purification works.
- Controlled activities such as irrigating with waste, power generation with water, atmospheric modification or recharging of aquifers.

An assessment of the environmental requirements of the rivers and streams concerned is conducted before a licence can be issued.

The implementation of the National Pricing Strategy for Raw Water began in 2002 to ensure that, as far as possible, the costs of the management of water resources and water-supply infrastructure are borne by water users.

The majority of water users pay the water-resource charge or cost for which they are billed. However, underrecovery of costs remains considerable.

Action has been taken against a number of illegal water users across South Africa in response to growing concern about an apparent increase in the rate of illegal water use in some catchment areas.

National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS)

The NWRS is an assessment of the supply-demand ratio in relation to water resources, which was initiated in 2004. The assessment is conducted on a five-yearly basis in each of South Africa's WMAs.

The strategy also proposes options for increasing the supply of water in each WMA. The NWRS determines how water resources will be protected, used, managed and conserved.

Elevating the status of water as a scarce and vulnerable resource requires the department to strengthen its regulatory role, provide support and guidance to relevant stakeholders, and influence the behaviour of economic sectors. In ensuring that water supply is of the appropriate quality for consumption and productive use, the department is finalising the water-classification system and regulations.

The Department of Water Affairs has a dedicated team of specialists developing a comprehensive response strategy for the water sector.

The development of the strategy is necessitated by a strong call for the sector to adapt to potential effects of climate change.

Proposals from the strategy will be integrated into the revision of the NWRS and will form part of a plan to ensure that water resources are protected, developed and conserved to meet future needs. Among other things, the strategy will look at developing:

- Tools for data modelling to track emerging hydrological patterns and the impact on water resources. These instruments will provide the information to plan confidently.
- Mechanisms for early-warning systems, including predicting floods and responding to potential risks.
- Adaptation initiatives that target those catchments that are most vulnerable to climate risks based on predictions.
- Reconciliation strategies to manage demand in urban centres, where increased urbanisation and industrial development are putting pressure on water resources.
- Investment strategies to expand the necessary infrastructure for water storage and flood management.
- New technologies for water treatment to respond to chemical changes caused by high temperatures.
- Water-conservation and -demand strategies to ensure efficient water use.
- Measures to assess carbon footprints from the infrastructure and propose ways of reducing these.

Water Services Act, 1997

The Act aims to:

- set out the rights of consumers, and the rights and duties of those responsible for providing water services
- provide for the right of access to basic water supply, and the right to basic sanitation necessary to secure sufficient water and an environment not harmful to human health or well-being
- allow the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs to set national standards (including norms and standards for tariffs) to ensure efficient, equitable and sustainable water services
- promote the effective and sustainable use of financial and natural resources
- establish effective and financially viable statutory institutions to assist local government to fulfil its obligations
- ensure the production by WSAs of WSDPs required by municipal legislation within the framework of IDPs
- provide a comprehensive framework for the oversight and regulation of water boards under the authority of the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs
- provide a framework for the collection and publication of information about water services.

Water Allocation Reform (War) Programme

The War Programme is a proactive approach towards redressing race and gender inequities regarding water use – where "water use" refers to promoting access to water for productive purposes (and not to the provision of basic water services).

This includes actions ranging from promoting applications from HDIs to supporting the licence-evaluation process to promote equity, as well as implementing the compulsory licensing process itself. Through this programme, the Department of Water Affairs is developing and overseeing the implementation of frameworks (policies, strategies, guidelines and procedures) for compulsory licensing, and the allocation of water between and among users.

Awareness material on the programme has been developed and is available in the appropriate official languages where the programme is being implemented. The material includes pamphlets on compulsory licensing and understanding the verification and validation of water use, and a booklet on the productive use of water.

A toolkit of methodologies in support of the War Programme has also been developed. The toolkit uses the position paper as its basis, and outlines practical implementation methods that promote the goals of the programme. The department's intention is to speed up the process and to improve the efficiency with which licences are evaluated within the Batho Pele prescripts.

As key role players in the programme, provincial and local governments, through their provincial growth and development plans and IDPs, are central to informing, and being informed by, the way water allocations are made in their areas of jurisdiction. The awareness material and toolkit assist municipalities in determining water requirements in IDPs – in terms of WSDPs, and other plans, for example local economic development, land use, agriculture and the environment.

The Olifants Basin is one of the pilot projects of the War Programme, and aims to re-allocate water to deal with the imbalances of the past.

One of the major challenges for the Olifants Basin is the issue of water pollution owing to mining activities, power generation and other land-use activities. These challenges are worsened by limited capacity to monitor and intervene.

Water-management institutions

The National Water Act, 1998 sets the framework for the management of South Africa's water resources. This framework provides for the establishment of water-management institutions, which include CMAs and water-user associations (WUAs).

Catchment-management agencies

Through the Institutional Realignment Project, the Department of Water Affairs has begun to rationalise water-management institutions. The originally planned 19 CMAs have been reduced to nine, and will fall under the department's leadership and control.

One of the primary objectives of the project is to rationalise the number of institutions reporting to the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs and the department for effective regulation and accountability in the implementation of the National Water Act, 1998 and the Water Services Act, 1997.

New proposals for institutional models have been developed. These rationalised and streamlined institutions will ensure that water-resources infrastructure is developed, operated and maintained in a way that takes into account enterprise-wide risk management, improved asset-maintenance and management programmes, and improved revenue management.

In addition to the Framework on Water for Growth and Development, the implementation of the strategic framework for water services continues. Water-service functions are performed by the WSAs, municipalities designated as WSAs in terms of the Water Services Act, 1997. There are 145 WSAs and it is the duty of each one to ensure that all citizens within its area of jurisdiction have efficient, economical, affordable and sustainable water services in terms of Section 11 of the Water Services Act, 1997.

The significant developments in the sector since the Act was passed, such as policy and legislation as well as legal developments, particularly in the sphere of local government, have prompted the need for a review of the Act. The new National Water Services Bill has been drafted and is awaiting the completion of the restructuring of a number of CMAs.

Water boards

Water boards have been established as service-providers that report to the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs. The boards manage water services in their supply areas and provide potable water at cost-effective prices.

These water boards include: Albany Coast Water, Ikangala Water, Overberg Water, Amatola Water, Lepelle Northern Water, Pelladrift Water, Bloem Water, Magalies Water, Rand Water, Botshelo Water, Mhlathuze Water, Sedibeng Water, Bushbuckridge Water, Namakwa Water and Umgeni Water.

The impact of their financial performance on the Department of Water Affairs has been limited. Apart from providing seed funding to some of the newly formed water boards, and rendering operating subsidies where they have undertaken specific functions on behalf of the department, the department has only had to provide financial assistance in exceptional circumstances.

Water-user associations

A WUA is a cooperative association of individual water users who wish to undertake water-related activities for their mutual benefit. The specific nature of the service that a WUA provides differs from case to case. A WUA serves its members and its design conforms to its members' specifications.

A WUA may be established for a range of activities, including stream-flow reduction, treatment of effluent and waste and its disposal and control of the use of water for recreational and/or environmental purposes. Upon establishment, a WUA carries out its principal functions as contained in its constitution.

Alongside its principal functions, a WUA may have a range of other functions that affect its structure and management. In terms of the National Water Act, 1998, such functions may be performed only if they do not limit the capacity to perform the organisation's principal functions or financially prejudice the institution and its members.

A common example of such an ancillary function is the provision of management services and training to water-services institutions and rural communities.

Water-related research

Being a water-stressed country, South Africa progressively needs to find innovative ways of managing water resources to ensure that the basic needs of its citizens are met, that social and economic development is not restricted by a lack of or a poor quality of water, and that sustainability of water resources and water-dependent ecosystems is achieved.

As reflected in the Water Research Commission's (WRC) mission and its various undertakings, the WRC functions as a "hub" for water-centred knowledge.

It is a networking organisation linking the nation and working through partnerships. The organisation continuously provides novel (and practical) ways of packaging and transferring knowledge into technology-based products for the water sector and the local and international community.

The WRC continues to play the leading role in building a sustainable water-related knowledge base in South Africa by:

- investing in water research and development
- building sustainable and appropriate capacity
- developing skills for the water sector
- being adept in forming strategic partnerships to achieve objectives more effectively while making optimal use of the latest global information and knowledge and other technologies available.

The Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971), provides for the establishment of the Water Research Fund, which derives income primarily from levies on water consumption.

In supporting the creation, dissemination and application of knowledge, the WRC focuses on five key strategic areas:

- water-resource management
- water-linked ecosystems
- water use and waste management
- water in agriculture
- water-centred knowledge.

The WRC also calls for specific mechanisms to address key strategic issues of national importance. These are dealt with in four cross-cutting domains:

- water and society
- water and the economy
- water and the environment
- water and health.

To ensure that research results are relevant to the broader objectives of water-resource management, the applicability of research in each key strategic area is maximised by addressing the relationships between water and society, the economy, health and the environment.

The WRC's key objective is supporting the development of human resources in the water sector. Involvement in research is recognised as an important vehicle for building and developing expertise among water-resource practitioners. Every research project is required to incorporate a strong element of capacity-building, especially among HDIs.

Natural mean annual run-off and ecological reserve (million m^3 per anum)

Water management	Natural mean annual run-off[1]	Ecological reserve[1,2]
Limpopo	985	156
Luvuvhu/Letaba	1 185	224
Crocodile West and Marico	855	165
Olifants	2 042	460
Inkomati [3]	3 539	1 008
Usutu to Mhlatuze [4]	4 780	1 192
Thukela	3 799	859
Upper Vaal	2 423	299
Middle Vaal	888	109
Lower Vaal	368	48
Mvoti to Umzimkulu	4 798	1 160
Mzimvubu to Keiskamma	7 241	1 122
Upper Orange	6 981	1 349
Lower Orange [5]	502	69
Fish to Tsitsikamma	2 154	243
Gouritz	1 679	325
Olifants/Doring	1 108	156
Breede	2 472	384
Berg	1 429	217
Total	49 228	9 500

1) Quantities refer to the water-management area under consideration only (water that originates or is required in that water-management area).
2) Total volume given, based on preliminary estimates, impact on yield being a portion of this.
3) Includes Komati catchment in Swaziland (mean annual run-off = 517 million m^3/a).
4) Includes Pongola catchment in Swaziland (mean annual run-off = 213 million m^3/a).
5) Includes contributions from Sengu and Caledon rivers in Lesotho (mean annual run-off = 4 765 billion m^3/a).

Source: Department of Water Affairs

The Department of Science and Technology and the National Research Foundation are partners with the Department of Water Affairs and the WRC in ensuring that approaches to water research are consistent with South Africa's broad policy on science and innovation.

Working for Water (WfW) Programme

Invasive alien species are causing billions of rands of damage to South Africa's economy every year, and are one of the biggest threats to the country's biological biodiversity.

Invasive alien species are plants, animals and microbes that are introduced into countries, and then out-compete the indigenous species.

Invasive alien plants (IAPs) pose a threat not only to South Africa's biological diversity, but also to water security, the ecological functioning of natural systems and the productive use of land.

They intensify the impact of fires and floods and increase soil erosion. IAPs can divert enormous amounts of water from more productive uses and invasive aquatic plants such as the water hyacinth, agriculture, fisheries, transport, recreation and water supply.

It is estimated that between 6% and 7% of South Africa's annual water run-off is being consumed by IAPs.

Of the estimated 9 000 plants introduced to this country, 198 are classified as being invasive. It is estimated that these plants cover about 10% of the country and the problem is growing at an exponential rate.

The fight against IAPs is spearheaded by the WfW Programme, which is administered through the Department of Water Affairs. This programme works in partnership with local communities, to whom it provides jobs, and also with government departments, including the departments of environmental affairs; tourism; agriculture, forestry and fisheries; trade and industry; provincial departments of agriculture, conservation and environment; research foundations; and private companies.

WfW runs over 300 projects across South Africa. Scientists and field workers use a range of methods to control IAPs. These include:

- Mechanical methods: Felling, removing or burning IAPs.
- Chemical methods: Using environmentally safe herbicides.
- Biological control: Using species-specific insects and diseases from the IAP's country of origin. Some 76 biocontrol agents have been released in South Africa against 40 weed species.
- Integrated control: Combinations of the above three approaches. An integrated approach is required to prevent enormous impacts.

The core business of the programme is to contribute to the sustainable prevention and control of IAPs, thereby optimising conservation and the use of natural resources. In doing so, it addresses poverty relief and promotes economic empowerment and transformation within a public-works framework.

WfW is recognised internationally as one of the most effective programmes for addressing the problem of IAPs, combining environmental issues with social-development objectives.

In 2009, the WfW was in its 14th year, had more than 30 000 employees across South Africa and had cleared about two million ha of land of IAPs.

Flood and drought management

The South African Disaster-Management Policy and ensuing legislation brought about a major shift in focus from reactive to preventative and mitigative disaster management.

From a flood-management perspective, the South African focus has shifted from primarily structural to non-structural, accentuating the value of, for example, floodplain zoning and flood warnings.

Draft regulations for support to resource-poor farmers were published, and support to these farmers was expected to be increased during 2009.

On 1 April 2009, the former Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry, Ms Lindiwe Hendricks, hosted an event to celebrate the achievement of significant milestones with the implementation of the R2,7-billion Vaal River Eastern Subsystem Augmentation Project (Vresap), aimed at securing water delivery to the Eskom power stations and to Sasol industries located in the Mpumalanga highveld.

Communities residing along the route of the pipeline have benefited from the project. Many previously unemployed adults and youth at Vaal Marina and in the area of Charl Cilliers, situated along the pipeline route of about 30 km south of Sasol's plant outside Secunda, were trained and employed.

This project contributed to the achievement of government's objectives for promoting Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment. Socio-economic policies were implemented to maximise employment, procurement and training opportunities for local communities.

Other achievements of the Vresap include the rescuing of endangered plants, rehabilitating roads, dust control and rehabilitating working areas and quarries.

Dams and water schemes

The central objective of managing water resources is to ensure that water is used to support equitable and sustainable social and economic transformation and development.

Dams and water schemes form an integral component of the strategy to meet these objectives. The NWRS provides details on possible major water schemes to be developed in the next 25 years, amounting to about R21 billion at 2004 price levels.

The Department of Water Affairs follows an integrated approach to managing South Africa's water resources. Proposed new water schemes need to comply with the NWRS, requiring that water-demand management programmes be implemented before embarking on new infrastructure development.

Strict environmental impact assessments (EIAs) must also be performed in accordance with laws and regulations administered by the Department of Environmental Affairs. The guidelines issued by the World Commission on Dams must be followed.

Bulk infrastructure is a critical element of water-services infrastructure and an integrated part of water-services management. In the previous two years a total budget of about R750 million has been utilised.

The committed budget for 2009/10 was R611 million and the budget allocated for 2010/11 is R839 million.

In 2009, five projects were completed, 23 were in construction phase, 11 in tender/design phase, and 47 feasibility studies were undertaken. The budget allocated may appear a lot but it is a mere fraction of the total need for regional bulk infrastructure in South Africa, which is estimated to exceed R70 billion.

Initiatives to identify and establish new water resources are occurring for both surface and groundwater. In 2009, the De Hoop Dam was under construction at a cost of R5,5 billion, the Nandoni Dam was being completed at R403 million, the Olifantspoort schemes were being implemented and the Lephalale Transfer Scheme was underway with an estimated cost of R20 billion.

The allocations for the implementation phase of the De Hoop Dam Project was fully provided for in the department's budget for the Orange River Water-Resource Development Project.

The De Hoop Dam Project aims to provide water to various communities in the Nebo Plateau area, and to mines and industry. In mid-2009, the relocation of graves was completed, a site office was established, and the realignment of the P-169 (R555) road was underway.

The Orange River Water-Resource Development Project aims to develop distribution links to Steelpoort, Olifantspoort, the Lebalelo WUA, Roossenekal, Jane Furse, and the Nebo Plateau and Mokopane areas. A record of implementation decisions for Phases Two B to D and H was issued to the Department of Water Affairs.

A draft directive to the Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority has been prepared to fund and implement the commercial component of phases two B to I. The Minister of Water Affairs has approved and signed the memorandum of agreement addendum with individual mines and the Joint Water Forum, and a process has been initiated to draw up the associated off-take agreements with the water users, which are a prerequisite for secure project funding from the private sector.

Nandoni Water Treatment Works and Distribution Scheme (60 megalitres/day) aims to supply water to the Vhembe District Municipality. In mid-2009, civil structures of the water-treatment works were completed to allow access for work on the mechanical contracts. Civil work on three pump stations was complete. Construction of reservoir NR6 was completed to roof level. The construction of a reservoir at Valdezia had begun.

Nwamitwa Dam aims to provide an additional yield of 50 million m^3 per year to meet growing primary water-supply requirements projected to 2025. In 2009, the dam was in the design phase, with geotechnical investigations, the development of the civil engineering plan for bulk infrastructure, and the scoping phase of the EIAs underway.

Mokolo River's augmentation aims to supply 45 million m^3 per year to increase the water supply to Matimba Power Station, Grootegeluk Mine and Lephalale Municipality, and for irrigation downstream of the dam. For Phase One of the project, designs of a new pipeline from the Mokolo Dam to Lephalale were drafted in 2009.

Mzimkulu River's off-channel storage dam will ensure a reliable water supply to the northern part of the lower south coast in dry periods.

The raising of Clanwilliam Dam will provide an additional yield of 10 million m^3 per year.

The lower Sundays River Government Water Scheme Extension will extend the scheme to expand irrigation, with an emphasis on establishing and supporting resource-poor farmers in identified areas.

Inyaka Pump Station and Water-Treatment Works aim to provide reliable water supply of around 50 megalitres per day to the Bohlabela District Municipality.

The Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme aims to assist dams in need of rehabilitation, namely:

- Majola
- Magwa
- Albert Falls
- Rust de Winter
- Kromellenboog
- Klein Marico
- Elandsdrift
- Nzhelele
- Grassridge
- Glen Brock
- Tsojana
- Mnyameni
- Mhlanga
- Mankanzana

and those in urgent need, namely:

- Nsamo
- Molepo
- Chuniespoort
- Acornhoek
- Bospoort
- Mashashane
- Gcuwa
- Toleni
- Lakeside
- Belfort Dam.

These dams have been identified as having inadequate spillway capacity to handle big floods. About R514 million has been budgeted over the MTEF from 2009/10 onwards for the next three years for the rehabilitation works.

The Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme provides for the rehabilitation of 160 dams in all the provinces. Over the MTEF period, 59 dams were prioritised. The project started in 2007/08 with seven dams. Progress on the programme has been satisfactory.

Groundwater resources

Groundwater, despite its relatively small contribution to bulk water supply (13%), represents an important and strategic water resource in South Africa, since it services between 52% and 82% of community water-supply schemes in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, Northern Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal.

Owing to the lack of perennial streams in the semi-desert to desert parts, two thirds of South Africa's surface area are largely dependent on groundwater. Although irrigation is the largest user, the supply to more than 300 towns and smaller settlements is also extremely important.

Through government's commitment to meeting the basic water needs of communities, groundwater has become a strategic resource for village water supply in the wetter parts of the country, because of its cost-effectiveness in a widely scattered small-scale-user situation.

Groundwater also contributes a considerable portion to river flow. This requires reserving a significant share of groundwater resources to protect aquatic ecosystems in terms of the National Water Act, 1998. The maximum quantity of groundwater that can be developed economically is estimated at about 6 000 million m^3 a year, while some 4 000 million m^3 of groundwater (mainly in the dry season) contributes to surface-water flow annually.

The Berg Water Project in Franschhoek in the Western Cape was officially inaugurated by former President Kgalema Motlanhle in March 2009.

The Berg Water Project is the culmination of a 14-year strategic integrated planning process by the Department of Water Affairs to identify appropriate measures to address the water shortage in the Western Cape.

Implemented by the Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority, the project increases Cape Town's water supply to 523 million m^3 per year.

The dam supplies an incremental historical firm yield to the Western Cape water system of 56 million m^3 per year.

Cabinet approved the construction of the R1,5-billion project in 2002, which comprises the Berg River Dam and the Supplement Scheme.

Regional and international cooperation and initiatives

South Africa has signed cooperative agreements with a number of countries in the southern African region with which it shares water resources, such as:

- Mozambique and Swaziland on the Inkomati and Maputo rivers
- Botswana, Lesotho and Namibia on the establishment of the Orange Senqu River Commission
- Botswana, Zimbabwe and Mozambique on the establishment of the Limpopo Watercourse Commission
- Lesotho on the Lesotho Highlands Water Project (LHWP)

- Swaziland on the Komati River Development Project.

These cooperative agreements improve South Africa's bilateral and multilateral relations in the African Union. All the countries involved benefit, while sharing development costs.

South Africa is increasingly seen as a leader in addressing the pressing water and sanitation challenges faced by the poor and by people living in rural areas. This view was supported during the launch of the 2006 United Nations Development Programme's *Human Development Report* in the Western Cape.

In addition to participating in the African Ministers' Council on Water, South Africa is active in watercourse commissions that have been established to manage the rivers it shares with Lesotho, Swaziland, Namibia, Mozambique, Botswana and Zimbabwe.

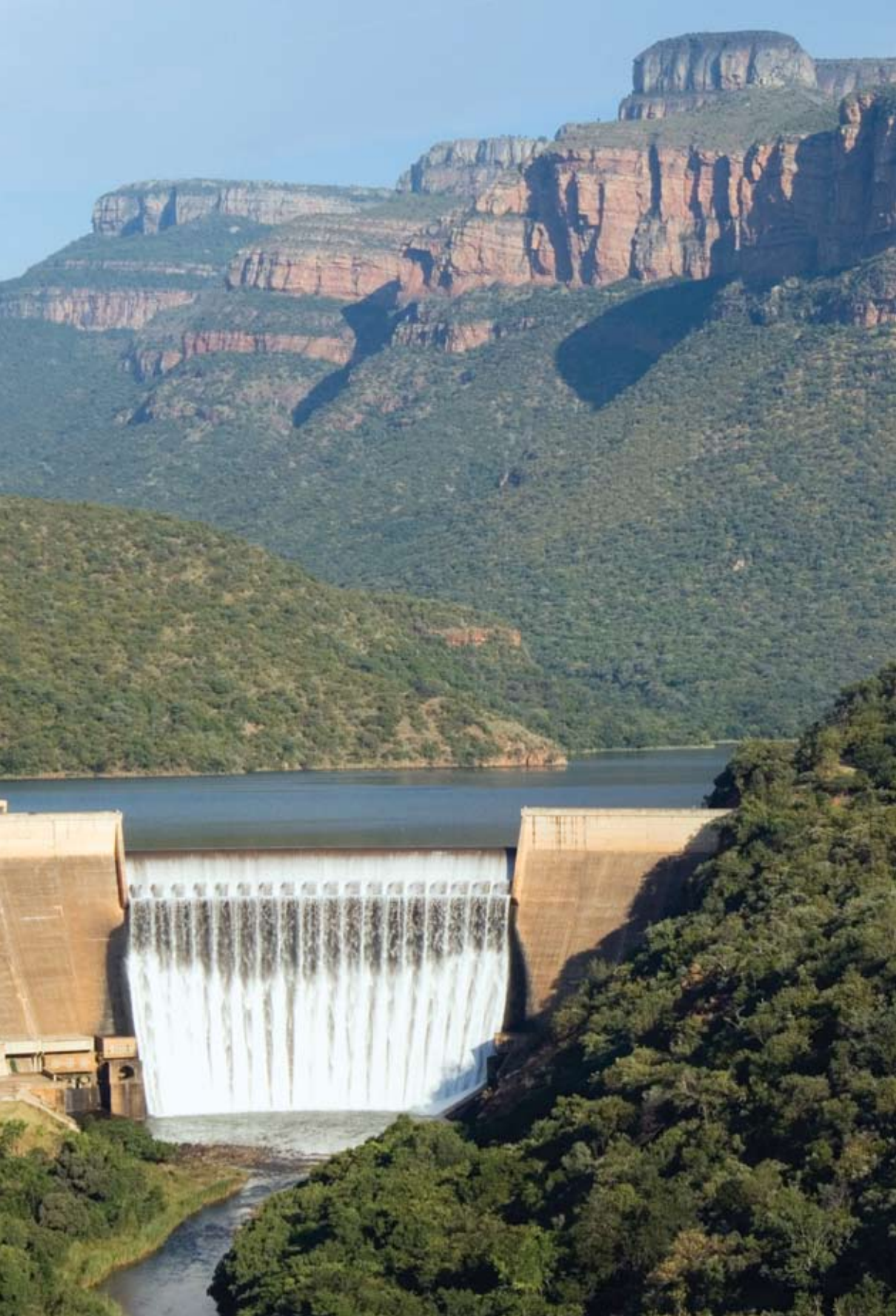
In December 2008, Cabinet approved the second phase of the LHWP. Construction of a 2,3 million m^3 dam would start from 2011 in the Maluti mountains. The LHWP supplies about 46 million m^3 water a year. The second phase will raise this to 70 million m^3.

Acknowledgements

Business Report
Development Indicators, 2009
Estimates of National Expenditure, 2009, published by National Treasury
Water Research Commission
BuaNews
Beeld
www.csir.co.za
www.dwaf.gov.za
www.gov.za
www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Burke, J. 2007. *Integrated Water Resource Management Plan Guidelines for Local Authorities*. Gezina: Water Research Commission (WRC).
Haarhoff, J and Cassa, AM. 2009. *Introduction to Flood Hydrology*. Cape Town: Juta.
Henning, D *et al.* 2007. *Guideline to Develop a Sustainable Urban River Management Plan*. Gezina: WRC.
Rouault, M *et al.* 2008. *Hydroclimatic Variation over Southern Africa at Intra-Annual and Inter-Annual Time Scales with Special Reference to the Role of the Oceans*. Gezina: WRC.
Thomas, V, Moll, E and Grant, R. 2008. *Sappi Tree Spotting: Cape: From Coast to Kalahari*. Johannesburg: Jacana.



The index is arranged word-by-word. All Acts and legal documents are listed alphabetically in shortened form under the entry "Acts".

4x4 regulations, 75, 223
2010 FIFA World Cup™, 39, 130, 260, 273
- broadcasting, 108, 117
- Development Bank (DBSA), 250
- energy supply, 182, 199
- health care, 288, 291
- host cities (list of), 497–498
- information centres, 499
- justice services, 360, 369
- legacy projects, 88, 89
- marketing, 278, 497
- marketing and roadshows, 172, 480, 497
- preparations, 8, 10, 18, 19, 80, 344, 345
- in provinces, 22
- public viewing areas, 8, 10, 12, 14
- safety and security, 20, 404, 407
- Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA), 478, 479, 481, 483
- stadiums, 8, 10, 15, 16, 18, 20, 22, 482
- tourist accommodation and guiding, 201, 497, 501–502
- tournament plan, 482
- transport, 185, 531–533, 536, 539
- visas, 282

2010 Transport Plan, 10, 530–532

A

Aardklop, Potchefstroom, 92
abalone, 7, 53, 75, 76
Absa Museum and Archives. Johannesburg, 101
Abuja Treaty, 138, 549
Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA), 38, 59, 67, 68, 90, 130, 232, 239, 250, 344
Acts
- Administration of Estates Act, 1965, as amended, 377
- Adult Basic Education (Abet) Act, 2000, 170
- African Growth Opportunity Act (AGOA), 342
- Agricultural Pests Act, 1983, 55, 66
- Agricultural Research Act, 1990, 63
- Air Quality Act, 2004, 225
- Amendment of Certain Laws Amendment Act, 2008, 368
- Animal Identification Act (Aida), 2002, 54
- Armaments Corporation of South Africa, Limited (Ltd) Act, 2003; Amendment Act, 2005, 422
- Armaments Development and Production Act, 1968, 422
- Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act, 2007, 441
- Attorneys Amendment Act, 1993, 372
- Black Administration Act, 1927, 367, 368
- Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Act, 2003, 59, 151, 237, 532
- Broadcasting Act, 1999, 115
- Child Care Act, 1983, 165, 468
- Child Justice Act, 2008, 373, 374, 375
- Children's Act, 2005; Amendment Act, 2007, 282;374–375, 460, 461
- Commission for the Restitution of Land Rights, 429
- Communal Land Rights Act, 2004, 433
- Companies Act, 1973; Act, 2008, 125, 150, 268
- Competition Act, 1998, 147
- Competition Amendment Act, 2009, 147
- Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983, 226
- Constitution 14th Amendment Act, 2008; 15th Amendment Act, 376
- Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, 260, 370
- Construction Industry Development Act, 2000, 154
- Consumer Protection Act, 1998; 2008, 150, 316
- Cooperative Banks Act, 2007, 234
- Correctional Services Act, 1998, 383
- Council for Medical Schemes Levies Act, 2000, 294
- Council for the Built Environment (CBE) Act, 2000, 155
- Council of Traditional Leaders Act, 1997; Amendment Act, 1998, 262
- Credit Agreements Act, 1980, 249
- Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007, 365
- Criminal Procedure Act, 1977; Amendment Act, 2008, 376, 383
- Cultural Institutions Act, 1998, 88, 100
- Currency and Banking Act, 1920, 245
- Deeds Registries Act, 1937, 432
- Defence Act, 2002, 414
- Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA) Act, 1997, 250
- Diamond Act, 1986; Amendment Act, 2005, 390
- Disaster Management Act, 2002; 2005, 58, 266, 271, 295
- Domestic Violence Act (DVA), 1998, 365, 404
- Dumping at Sea Control Act, 1980, 76
- Education Laws Amendment Act, 2005, 170
- *Education White Paper 3 on Higher Education (HE) (1997)*, 170
- *Education White Paper 4 on FET (1998),* 170
- *Education White Paper 5 (2001),* 164
- *Education White Paper 6 (2001),* 165
- Electricity Act, 1987, as amended, 183
- Electricity Regulation Act, 2006, as Amended, 183
- Electronic Communications Act, 2005; Amendment Act, 2006, 115, 127
- Electronic Communications and Transactions (ECT) Act, 2002, 114

Employment Equity Act, 1998, 158, 366
Employment of Educators Act (EEA), 1998, 170
Environmental Conservation Act, 1989, 220, 224
Explosives Act, 2003, 423
Film and Publications Act, 1996; Amendment Act, 2009, 99
Financial Advisory and Intermediaries (FAIS) Act, 2002, 251
Financial Intelligence Centre Act (FICA), 2001; Amendment Act, 2008, 237
Financial Markets Control Act, 1989, 256
Financial Services Board (FSB) Act, 250
Fund-Raising Act, 1978, 475
Further Education (FET) Colleges Act, 2006, 170
Gas Act, 2001, 183
General Laws Loss of Membership of National Assembly, Provincial Legislature or Municipal, 2008, 376
Genetically Modified Organisms Act 1997, 44
Geoscience Act, 1993, 451
Geoscience Amendment Bill, 391
Hazardous Substances Act, 1973, 188
Heraldry Act, 1962, 82
High Courts Act, 2008, 361
Higher Education (HE) Act, 1997, 166, 169
Housing Act, 1997, 309, 313
Housing Development Agency (HDA) Act, 2008, 310
Immigration Act, 2002; Amendment Act, 2004, 281, 283, 501
Implementation of the Rome Statute of the ICC Act, 2002, 377
Import and Export Control Act, 1963, 228
Income Tax Act, 1962; 1994, 156, 240
Independent Broadcasting Authority Act, 1993, 122
Independent Electoral Commission (IEC) Act, 1996, 274
Integrated Coastal Management Bill, 75
Intellectual Property Rights (IRP) from Publicly Financed Research and Development Act, 2008, 438
Intelligence Services Act, 2002, 425
Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005, 266, 272
International Health Regulations Act, 1974, 304
Interpretation Act, 1957, 380
Intestate Succession Act, 1987, as amended, 377
Judicial Service Commission (JSC) Amendment Act, 2008, 367
Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008, 362
Labour Relations Act (LRA), 1995, 158
Land Survey Act, 1997, 432
Legal Deposit Act, 1997, 103
Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998; Structures Act, 1998, 266, 268, 269
Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000, 269
Long-Term Insurance Act, 1998, 525
Magistrates' Act, 1993, 362
Magistrates' Courts Act, 1993; 1944, 263, 310
Maintenance Act, 1998, 364
Manpower Training Act, 1981, 156
Marine Living Resources Act, 1998, 76
Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996, 53, 55, 56
Meat Safety Act, 2000, 67
Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA) Act, 2002, 126–127
Mediation in Certain Divorce Matters Act, 1987, 379
Medical Research Council (MRC) Act, 1991, 293
Medical Schemes Act, 1998; Amendment Act, 2001, 294, 295
Medicines and Related Substances Act, 1965; Amendment Bill, 289
Mental Healthcare Act, 2002, 289–290, 378
Military Veterans Affairs Act, 1999, 421
Mine Health and Safety Act (MHSA), 1996, 157, 394
Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRDA), 2002; Amendment Act, 2008, 223, 390, 391, 393
Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA), 2003, 234–235, 237, 266
Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004, 266
Municipal Structures Act, 1998, 266
Municipal Systems Act, 2000, 266
National Archives and Records Service of South Africa Act, 1996, 102
National Conventional Arms Control Act, 2002, 421
National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS) Act, 2001, 103
National Credit Act (NCA), 2005, 248, 379
National Development Agency (NDA) Act, 1988, 475
National Education Policy Act, 1996, 162, 167, 169
National Energy Act, 2008, 183, 187
National Energy Regulator (NER) Act, 2004, 183
National Environmental Management Act (Nema), 1998; Amendment Act, 2008, 223, 291
National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004, 204, 210, 213
National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003; Amendment Act, 2004, 204, 218
National Environmental Management: Waste Bill, 2005; Waste Act, 2008, 205, 223, 224
National Forests Act, 1998, 68, 71, 72
National Gambling Act, 1996; 2004, 243
National Health Act, 2003, 289
National Heritage Council Act, 1999, 80
National Heritage Resources Act, 1999, 80

National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 1997; Amendment Act, 2000, 262, 264
National Land Transport Act, 2009, 532
National Library of South Africa (NLSA) Act, 1998, 103
National Nuclear Regulator (NNR) Act, 1999, 188
National Occupational Health and Safety Bill, 155
National Prosecuting Authority (NPA) Act, 1998; Amendment Act, 2008, 370, 372, 376
National Qualifications Framework (NQF) Act, 2008, 168
National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute Act, 2008, 183
National Radioactive Waste Management Agency Bill, 2008, 224
National Road Traffic Act, 1996, 532
National Sport and Recreation Amendment Act, 2007, 482
National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994, 424
National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998, 72
National Water Act, 1998, 198, 557, 558, 561
Non-profit organisations (NPO) Act, 1997, 475
Nuclear Energy Act, 1999, 188, 190
Nursing Act, 2005, 289
Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1993, 157
Occupational Health and Safety (OHS) Act, 1993, 157
Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993, 157, 158
Older Persons Act, 2006, 460
Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP) Act, 1999, 54
Organised Crime Act, 1998, 371
Organised Local Government Act, 1997, 267
Pensions Funds Act, 1956, 252
Petroleum Pipelines Act, 2003, 183
Pharmacy Act, 1974, 291
Postal Services Act, 1998, 113
Precious Metals Act, 2005, 390
Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (PPPFA), 148, 237
Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998, 237, 378
Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000, 366
Protection of Constitutional Democracy against Terrorist and Related Activities Act, 2004, 237
Provision of Land and Assistance Amendment Act, 2008, 433
Public Audit Act, 2004, 244
Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999, 149, 234, 311, 420
Public Investment Corporation (PIC) Act, 2004, 238
Public Service Act, 1994, enacted in 2007, 274
Radio Act, 1926, 115
Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act, 1963, 377
Refugees Act, 1998, 281, 282
Regulation of Interception of Communication-Related Information (RICA) Act, 2002; Act, 2008, 112, 376, 19, 425
Regulation of the Interception of Communications and Provision of Communications Act, 2002/8, 112, 376, 425
Renaming of the High Courts Act, 2008, 361
Rent Control Act, 1976, 310
Rental Housing Act, 1999; Amendment Act, 2007, 310
Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994, as amended, 432
Right of Appearance in Courts Act, 1995, 372
Road Accident Fund (RAF) Act, 1996, 535
Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC) Act, 1999, 539, 540
Rules Board for Courts of Law Act, 1985, 378
Scientific Research Council Act, 1998, as Amended,1990, 447
Seashore Act, 1935, 75
Second-Hand Goods Act, 2009, 414
Sectional Titles Act, 1986, 432
Sentech Act, 1996; Amendment Act, 1999, 117
Short-Term Insurance Act, 1998, 252
Skills Development Act, 1998; Amendment Bill, 2008, 156, 500
Skills Development Levies Act, 1999, as amended, 156
Small Claims Court Act, 1984, 366
Social Assistance Act, 2004; Amendment Act, 2008, 460, 463
Social Housing Act, 2008, 311
South African Boxing Act, 2001, 478
South African Citizenship Act, 1995, 280
South African Community Libraries Bill; Act 1973, 103, 423
South African Companies Act, 1973, 423
South African Council for Educators (SACE) Act, 2000, 169
South African Express (SAX) Act, 2007, 153
South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC) Act, 80–81
South African Human Rights Commission Act, 1994, 381
South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport Act, 1997, 478
South African Judicial Education Institute Act, 2008, 367
South African Law Reform Commission (SALRC) Act, 1973, 380
South African Maritime and Aeronautical Search and Rescue Act, 2002, 549
South African Maritime Safety Authority (Samsa) Act, 1998, 548
South African National Space Agency Act, 2008, 438, 441
South African Police Service (SAPS) Act, 1995; Amendment Act, 2008, 404, 413

South African Qualifications Authority (Saqa) Act, 1995, 156, 162
South African Reserve Bank (SARB) Act, 1989, 246
South African Revenue Service (SARS) Act, 1997, 239
South African Schools Act, 1996, 162, 169
South African Social Security Agency (Sassa) Act, 2004, 464
Special Investigating Unit (SIU) and Special Tribunals Act, 1996, 369
Standards Act, 2008, 452
Superior Courts Bill, 361
Technology Innovation Agency (TIA) Act, 2008, 438
Telecommunications Amendment Act, 2001, 111, 113
Tobacco Products Control Amendment Act, 2008, 289
Tourism Second Amendment Act, 2000, 501
Traditional Courts' Bill, 368, 375
Traditional Leadership and Governance Frame work Act, 2003, 264, 266
Unemployment Insurance Amendment Act, 2003, 157
Unemployment Insurance Contributions Act, 2002, 157
Usury Act, 1968, 249
Water Research Act, 1971, 454, 564
Water Services Act, 1997, 561, 562
Weather Service Act, 2001, 455, 456
White Paper for Social Welfare (1997), 468
White Paper on Defence (1996), 414
White Paper on E-Education (2003), 170
White Paper on Integrated Pollution and Waste Management, 223
White Paper on Local Government (1998), 266
White Paper on Promotion of Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development (2002), 200
White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development, 199
White Paper on the Conservation and Sustainable Use of South Africa's Biological Diversity, 204, 205, 206
Witness Protection Act, 1998, 370
World Heritage Convention Act, 1999, 204, 219
Addo Elephant National Park, 217
Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences (AARTO), 540
Adult Basic Education and Training (Abet), 87, 162–164, 168
Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy (AMTS), 438, 440
Metals Initiative, 438
advertising, 122, 127
Advertising Standards Authority (ASA), 127
Africa, hydroelectric energy projects, 198
African
economic development, 137, 138
indigenous churches, 4
nationalism, 29
Peer Review Mechanism, 138, 142
Renaissance, 38
traditionalists, 4
African, Caribbean and Pacific (ACP) States-European Union relations, 344–345
African Association for Public Administration and Management South Africa, 276
African Biosciences Initiative, 440
African Botanic Gardens Network, 210
African Institute for Mathematical Sciences (Aims), 443
African Laser Centre (ALC), 443
African Mining Partnership (AMP), 392, 449
African Ministerial Conference on Housing and Urban Development (AMCHUD), 319
African National Congress (ANC), 31–36, 326
African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM), 324–326
African Renaissance, 26
African Union (AU), 38, 57, 64, 90, 91, 138, 393
establishment, structure and objectives, 322–324
Second Decade of Education Plan of Action (2006 – 2015), 176
African Union Commission (AUC), 138
African Union (AU) Standby Force, 408
Afrikaanse Taalmuseum, Paarl, 100
Aggeneys copper mine, 13, 397
Agri Black Economic Empowerment Project (AgriBEE), 59, 60
Agri South Africa (AgriSA), 62
Agribusiness, 63
agricultural
marketing, 55 – 56
production, 56 – 57
Agricultural Business Chamber (ABC), 62
Agricultural Disaster Risk-Management Plan, 58
Agricultural Drought Management Plan, 58
Agricultural Fires Information System, 45
Agricultural Geo-Referenced Information System (AGIS), 45
agricultural products inspection services (APIS), 65
Agricultural Research Council (ARC), 18, 45, 51, 52, 55, 63, 70, 100, 215, 446–447
agriculture/agricultural sector – see also Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
asparagus, 14, 15
barley, 45, 48
cabbages, 50
Canola, 48
cattle, 9, 21, 45, 52
cherries, 14
chicory, 9

citrus, 9, 11, 20, 45, 49
coffee, 21
cotton, 13, 20, 45, 50
dairy farming, 9, 18, 19, 47, 51–52
deciduous fruit, 45, 49
dried fruit industry, 12
dry beans, 48
Eastern Cape, 9, 48, 49, 51
economy, 131
eggs, 18
fields crops, 45, 47–48
floriculture, 15, 51
flowers, 18
forestry plantations, 21, 67–69
Free State, 14, 15, 48, 49
fruit, 9, 13, 18, 45, 47
game farming, 53
Gauteng, 18, 48, 49
genetically modified organisms (GMOs), 44, 45
goat farming, 52
grapes, 7, 13
groundnuts, 45, 48, 49
hay, 45
honey, 53
horticulture, 14, 45, 47–48, 49
indigenous food crops 53-54
KwaZulu-Natal, 11, 48
Limpopo, 21, 22, 48
livestock, 19, 51–52, 54
maize, 9, 13, 17, 18, 20, 45–49
meat, 18, 52, 67
Mpumalanga, 19, 20, 48, 49
North West, 16, 17, 48
Northern Cape, 12, 13, 48
nuts, 21
onions, 50
oranges, 11
ostrich farming, 7, 9
paprika, 9, 48
peanuts, 13, 20
pigs, 45, 52
potatoes, 15, 20, 45, 47, 49–50
poultry, 45, 47, 52
prices, 47, 48, 51
production, 44–54
research, 446, 447, 454
rooibos, 51
sheep farming, 12, 13, 19, 20, 45, 47, 52
sisal, 150
sorghum, 9, 15, 45, 48
soya, 15, 45, 48
subtropical fruit, 20, 45, 49
sugar, 11, 19, 45, 47, 48–49
sunflowers, 15, 20, 45, 47, 48
tea, 9, 11, 21, 51
tobacco, 20, 45, 50–51
tomatoes, 21, 50
tropical fruit, 9, 11, 19, 20, 21
vegetables, 15, 18, 45, 47, 50
viticulture, 45
Western Cape, 7, 48
wheat, 13, 15, 20, 45, 47, 48, 49
wine, 13, 49, 66–67
Agri-Systems, 66
agritourism, 21
Agulhas current, 5, 206
Agulhas National Park, 208, 217, 510
Ai-Ais Hot Springs Game Park, Namibia, 13
Ai-Ais-Richtersveld Transfrontier National Park, 13, 218
Air Force Acquisition, 419
air pollution, 20, 200, 225–226
air quality 225-226, 225–226
Airlift Strategy, 544–545
airlines, 545
South African Airways (SAA), 151, 153, 545
South African Express (SAX), 153
air-passenger departure tax, 242
airports, 535–536
Bloemfontein, 15
Eastern Cape, 10
Gauteng, 17, 19
KwaZulu-Natal, 10, 12
Limpopo, 20, 22
Mpumalanga, 19
Northern Cape, 12
OR Tambo International Airport, 17, 19, 65
Western Cape, 6, 8
Airports Company of South Africa (Acsa), 536
Air-Traffic Navigation Services (ATNS), 533, 536
Alexander Bay, 13
Alexandra Renewal Project (ARP), 315
Alexandria-Grahamstown, 9
Alexkor, 151, 152
Algoa Bay, 8
Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa (AHPCSA), 288
Amatola mountain region, 516
Americas, trade with, 140
Anglo Coal, 20
Anglo Platinum Limited, 308, 314, 393
Anglo-Boer/South African War 1899-1902, 30–31, 511, 515, 519
Angola, 54, 77, 185, 198, 326, 411
animal disease control, 54, 55, 58, 65
Anti-Corruption Summit, 276
antiretroviral therapy (ART), 297–298, 301
antiretrovirals (ARVs), 146
apartheid, 17, 32–36
Apartheid Museum, Johannesburg, 101, 523
Apex Fund, 149

aquaculture, 52–53
aquaria, 222
ArcelorMittal, 453
architecture, 9, 14, 95, 101, 102
archives, 95
Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armscor), 422–423
Army Acquisition, 418–419
Arrive Alive Road-Safety Campaign, 540
art galleries, 94–96
  African National Gallery, Cape Town, 94
  Durban Art Gallery, 94
  Johannesburg Art Gallery, 94
  Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Art Museum, Port Elizabeth, 94
Arts Alive International Festival, Johannesburg, 92
arts and culture initiatives, 86–89, 91
  festivals, 91, 92, 97
  institutions, 81
Arts and Culture Trust (ACT), 87
ArtsCape, Cape Town, 81
Asia, trade and foreign relations, 336–340
Asia, trade with, 140–141
Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU), 371
Association of Independent Publishers (AIP), 121
Association of South-East Asian Nations (Asean), 140
astronomy, 441, 445
asylum, 284
Asylum Seekers Unit and Country of Origin Information Unit, 282
athletics, 479, 485
Atlantic Ocean, 6, 12
Auditor-General of South Africa (AGSA), 245
Augrabies Falls National Park, 13, 217, 512
Australia
  international relations, 340–341
  trade with, 140
Awesome Africa Music Festival, Durban, 92

B

Baberton mountain land, 399, 520
Bakone Malapa Museum, 21
Bakone Malapa Museum, Polokwane, 21, 102, 518
banking industry, 17, 249–250
Batho Pele ("People First"), 265, 275
Battle of Blood River/Ncome Project, 88
battlefields, 102, 527
Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area, 217
beaches, 495, 503
beekeeping, 53, 70
Bela-Bela, 20, 21, 518
Benguela current, 5, 7, 206
Bhisho, 8, 9
Bhisho Airport, 10
bilateral agreements, 2008-2009, 355–357
Biobank South Africa, 209–210
Biochemical Radiological Defence System, 420
Biodiversity Conservation and Sustainable Development Project, 214
Biodiversity Geographical Information System (BGIS), 215
Biodiversity Monitoring Transect Analysis in Africa Project, 215
biodiversity/biological diversity, 65, 205–208
  aquatic, 445
  assessing and monitoring flora and fauna, 215–217
  bioregional programmes, 213–217
  Biosystematics Initiative, 209
  Cape Floristic Region, 205, 206, 214, 219
  conserving biodiversity, 208–217
  Desert Biome, 208
  environmental observation network, 209
  Forest Biome, 208
  Fynbos Biome, 7, 207–208
  genebanks and genetic information, 210
  Grassland Biome, 207, 213
  herbaria and taxonomic research, 211
  knowledge and information management, 215
  marine, 214, 217
  multilateral agreements, 208
  Nama-Karoo Biome, 206–207
  research, 211–216
  Savanna Biome, 206
  South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi), 210–211
  spatial provincial biodiversity planning, 215–217
  Succulent Karoo Biome, 205–206, 207, 214
  sustainable use of species and ecosystem services, 211–121
  Thicket Biome, 208
  wildlife biodiversity resources, 209–210
Biofuel Industrial Strategy for South Africa, 192
biofuels, 15, 192–193
biomass, 195 –196
biosphere reserves, 218–219
biotechnology, 437, 440
Biotechnology Partnership for Africa's Development (Biopad), 440, 453
Black Business Supplier Development Programme (BBSDP), 144, 151
Black Economic Empowerment (BEE), 49, 59, 61, 112, 145, 147, 151, 312, 393, 498
BlindSA, 104
Bloemfontein, 14, 15, 81, 98, 361, 497, 513
Bloemfontein Airport, 15
Blouberg, 219
Blyde River Canyon, 219, 520
Blyde River National Park, 217
Bohlabela district, 519

Bond Exchange of South Africa (Besa), 236, 253, 254, 255, 256
Bontebok National Park, 217
border
control, 411
safeguarding, 416
Border Control Coordinating Committee (BCOCC), 406
Botshabelo Historical Village, 521
Botswana, 64, 198, 327
Boxing South Africa (BSA), 478, 484
Brazil, 91, 141, 338
breeding centres, 221–222
Broadband Infraco, 117, 152
Broadband Strategy, 109, 110, 117
Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE), 68, 69, 113, 136, 150–151
Codes of Good Practice, 148, 151
National Empowerment Fund, 148
Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa, 122
Broadcasting Digital Migration (BDM) Policy, 108
Broadcasting Monitoring Complaints Committee (BMCC), 122
broadcasting role players, 115–117
commercial radio, 115–116
free-to-air television, 117
M-Net, 116
radio, 115–116
Bronkhorstspruit, 5, 17, 18, 101
Buddhism, 4–5
Budget Council, 238
budget evaluation, 236
Budget Forum, 268
Burden of Disease (BoD), 299, 322
Bureau for Economic Research (BER), 453
Bureau of Heraldry, 82–84
Burundi, 38, 325, 331, 417
Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) system, 530, 531, 539
Business Against Crime South Africa (BACSA), 413–414
Business and Arts South Africa (Basa), 81, 82
Business and Entrepreneurial Development (BED), 59
Business Partners Limited, 149
Business process outsourcing and offshoring (BPO&O), 151
Business South Africa, 62

C

Cabinet, 262, 263
Cadastral Surveys Management, 432
Canada
foreign relations, 342–343
trade with, 140
Cape Action for People and the Environment (CAPE), 213, 214
Cape Agulhas, 5
Cape Biotech, 440
Cape Craft and Design Institute, 96
Cape Floral Kingdom, 7, 220
Cape Floristic Region, 205, 206, 214, 219
Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site, 7, 220
Cape Peninsula, 7, 401
Cape Peninsula University of Technology, 7
Cape Town, 81
harbour, 26
history, 28, 29
International Airport 8
International Jazz Festival, 92
legislative capital, 6
museums, 504–505
South African National Gallery, 94
tourism, 497
Cape Town International Airport, 6
Cape Town International Jazz Festival, 92
Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve, 219
Cape winelands, 507–508
Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve, 219
Capricorn district, 518
Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety, 208
Cederberg Wilderness Area, 217
Cell C, 111, 113
Census 2001, 2
central Africa, foreign relations, 330–331
Central Energy Fund (CEF), 183–184, 225
Central Karoo, 9
tourism, 506–507
Central University of Technology, 14
Centre for Advanced Manufacturing (CFAM), 16
Centre for High-Performance Computing (CHPC), Cape Town, 442, 443
Centre for Public-Service Innovation (CPSI), 275–276
Centre of Hope, Khayelitsha, 8
Chamber of Mines, 393, 396
chemicals, 15, 351
Chief Albert Luthuli's house, KwaDukuza, 88
Chief of the South African National Defence Force (SANDF), 418
child
abuse and neglect, 99
health, 296, 301
justice, 364–365, 373–375
pornography, 99
protection, 468–469
childcare legislation, 460–461
Childline South Africa, 470
Child-Support Grant (CSG), 463, 464
China, 64, 91, 143
foreign relations, 336–337
trade with, 141
cholera, 299
Chris Hani-Baragwanath Hospital, 17

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

Christian churches/Christianity, 3–4
churches
African independent (AICs), 4–5
African traditionalists, 4
Afrikaans churches, 4
Christian, 4–5
Roman Catholic, 4
Zion Christian Church (ZCC), 3
citizenship matters, 280
civil
aviation, 544–545
jurisdiction, 366–367
clean development mechanism (CDM) projects, 187, 199
climate, 5, 6, 11, 12
climate change, 58, 199, 200, 216, 217, 225–226, 227
Climate-Change Long-term Mitigation Scenario (LTMS), 225
clothing and textile industry, 8, 50, 143, 146, 147
CNN MultiChoice Africa Awards, 125
coal
energy resource, 188, 199
mining industry, 10, 11, 15, 19, 46, 398
coal-to-liquids (CTL) technology, 191
coastal
birds, 228
forests, 11
patrol, 534
research, 53, 456
coastline, 5, 7, 8, 10, 75, 76, 77, 217
coasts, 75–77
Coega, 9, 10, 191
Coega Industrial Development Zone (IDZ), 146
Coert Steynberg Museum, Pretoria, 100
collective bargaining, 158
Collective investment schemes (CIS), 251, 254
collective investment schemes (CIS), 236
Columbus Stainless, 20
Command and Management Information System, 419
commercial crime, 412
Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration (CCMA), 158
Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities, 86
Commission on Gender Equality (CGE), 360
Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD), 228
Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights, 70, 432–433
Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims, 264
Community Services Network (CSN), 116
Common Market of the South,64, 139, 343
Commonage Grant, 430
Commonwealth, 354
Communications, 108–127
broadcasting, 115–117
centres of excellence (CoEs), 112
Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (Icasa), 108, 109, 110, 111, 115, 122
media, 114–127
mobile communications, 112–113
postal sector, 113–114
print, 117–127
telecommunications, 108–110, 117
Telkom, 112
Universal Services and Access Agency of South Africa (Usaasa), 111
community
development, 465
newspapers, 119, 122
policing, 410
radio stations, 116
Community Caregiver (CCG) Policy, 303
community courts, 363–364
community development workers (CDWs), 266
Community Residential Unit (CRU) Programme, 312
Comoros, 323, 330
compact fluorescent lamps (CFLs), 184, 185
Compensation Fund (CF), 158, 236, 238
Competition Appeal Court, 361
Competition Commission, 147
Competition policy, 147–148
Comprehensive Agriculture Support Programme (CASP), 13, 56
Comprehensive Housing Plan for the Development of Integrated Sustainable Human Settlements, 308, 309
Comprehensive Programme for HIV and AIDS Care, Management and Treatment (CCMT), 297, 302
Comprehensive Rural Development Programme, 428–429
computer-aided design (CAD), 96
Confederations of School Sport Association (Cossassa) Ball Games, 482
conservation, 75, 76, 208–217
aquaria, 222
areas, 12, 13, 215, 219
biodiversity, 208–217
biosphere reserves, 218–219
breeding centres, 221–222
challenges, 223–227
habitat- and wildlife-management areas, 220
national and cultural monuments, 219
national parks and equivalent reserves, 11
private-sector involvement in conservation, 228
protected land and seascapes, 220
snake parks, 222–223
sustainable-use areas, 220–221
wetlands, 221

world heritage sites, 219–220
zoological gardens, 221
Conservation on Biological Diversity (CBD), 217
Constitution, 122, 160
fundamental rights, 114
Constitution Hill Project, 88, 523
Constitutional Court (CC), 39, 88, 103
Constitutional development, 361
Construction and Property Industry Development Programme, 154
Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB), 154, 155
consumer
protection, 150
consumer price index (CIPX), 134
Continuing Professional Development (CPD) system, 291
Continuing Professional Teacher Development (CPTD), 169, 175
control
of sojourn, 282–283
of travellers, 282
Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), 208
Convention on Combating Bribery of Foreign Public Officials in International Business Transactions, 2007, 276
Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species (Cites), 208, 228
Convention on Migratory Species., 208
Convention to Combat Desertification (CCD), 65, 208
Cooperative Development Policy and Strategy for South Africa, 62
cooperative governance, 264–268, 272
Correctional Services
See Department of Justice and Correctional Services
Cosmos Country, 521
Côte d'Ivoire, 323
Council for Geoscience (CGS), 391, 451–452
Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), 18, 50, 96, 391, 440, 442, 447–448
Council for the Built Environment (CBE), 154
Council of Education Ministers (CEM), 162, 167
Council on Higher Education (CHE), 167, 169
court system
See judicial system
Cradle of Humankind, 220, 522, 4001
Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site, 518
crafts, 10, 14, 96, 499, 520
Creative Research Education and Training Enterprise South Africa (Create SA), 89
cricket, 486
crime
categories of, 385
investigations, 412
organised, 412
prevention, 404–414, 470–471
crime and crime prevention, 351, 373
crime intelligence, 412–413
Crime Intelligence Information System, 408
Crime-Combatting Operations, 411
criminal jurisdiction, 363
Criminal Justice Review and Improvement Programme, 414
Critical Infrastructure Programme (CIP), 144
Cross-Border Road Transport Agency (CBRTA), 533, 534
cross-border transport, 534, 540–541
Cullinan, 17, 18, 398, 522
cultural
agreements between African states, 91
agreements between South Africa, India and Brazil, 91
industries, 90
tourism, 89, 90, 525
villages, 90, 212, 514, 522, 524
curatorships, 378
cycling, 479, 486

D

Dafur, 417
dance, 94
Dassen Island, 217, 219
De Beers Consolidated Mines, 13
De Beers Museum, Kimberley, 101
De Wildt Cheetah-Breeding and Research Centre, 222, 519
De Wildt Vulture Unit, 222
debt management, 234–235
deceased estates, 377–378
deeds registration, 432
Defence
See Department of Defence and Military Veterans
Defiance Campaign 1952, 34
Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), 38, 39, 54, 198, 323, 325, 327, 417
Denel, 151, 152, 423–424
Denel Aviation, 152
Denmark, 226
Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, 44–77
see also agriculture/agricultural sector; fisheries/fishing industry; forests/forestry
Agri South Africa, 62
agricultural economy, 44, 45
credit and assistance, 58–60, 61, 62
drought management, 58
export, 47, 51, 64, 65
farm income, 47
field crops and horticulture, 47–48
fisheries, 75–77

food security, 57
forestry, 67–75
genetically modified organisms (GMOs), 44–45
import and export control, 46, 65–67
international agreements and conventions, 65, 66
international trade, 64–65
land settlement, 56–57
LandCare Programme, 60–61
marketing, 55–56
National LIvestock Development Strategy (NLDS), 51
natural agricultural resources, 45
pest control, 55, 58, 66
prices, 47
production, 47
research, 45–47, 63–64
risk management, 58, 66
soil degradation, 46
sustainable resource management and use, 45, 53, 65
veterinary services, 54
water use, 46–47
Department of Arts and Culture, 80–105, 174
archives, 95
arts festivals, 91, 92
crafts, 87, 88, 96
cultural industries, 90
cultural tourism, 89, 90
design, 96, 97
education and training, 89
film, 98, 99, 102
heraldry, 82–84
initiatives, 86–88, 89, 91
institutions, 81
international relations, 90, 91
languages, 84, 86
legacy projects, 88–89
libraries, 102–104
literature, 97–98
museums, 74, 75, 98, 100–102
music, 81, 84, 89, 93, 94
national symbols, 82–84
natural history museums, 101–102
organisations, 80–81
rock art, 65, 80, 82, 95, 96
theatre, 89, 91, 92
visual arts, 94–97
Department of Basic Education, 162–165, 170, 172, 173
Adult Basic Education and Training, 162–164, 168
Early Childhood Development (ECD), 162, 164–165
General Education and Training, 163–164
learners with special needs, 165
legislation, 169–170
national and provincial departments of education, 162
social and school enrichment, 163
systems planning and monitoring, 162–163
Department of Communications, 108–127
see also Communications
Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs, 264–268
local government, 267–268
provincial government, 267
strategic priorities, 266–267
Department of Correctional Services, 383–386
care and development of inmates, 386
Compliance Improvement Plan, 384–385
departmental achievements, 383–384
enhancing security, 386
improving service delivery, 384–385
inmate profile, 383
Integrated Human-Resource Strategy, 384
key strategic projects, 385
Museum, Pretoria, 100
overcrowding, 383
policy development, 383
risk-management framework, 385
Service-Delivery Improvement Plan, 385–386
Department of Defence and Military Veterans, 414–424
2010 FIFA World Cup HR Strategy, 420
Air Force Acquisition, 419
Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armscor), 422–423
Army Acquisition, 418–419
bases, 420
Biochemical Radiological Defence System, 420
Chief of the SANDF, 418
Command and Management Information System, 419
Defence Secretariat, 418
defence transformation, 420
Denel, 423–425
facilities, land and environment, 421
force employment, 415, 416–417
force preparation, 415
force support, 415
international agreements, 417
Military Health Service, 419
Military Skills Development System (MSDS), 420
military strategic capabilities, 416
military strategic concepts, 416
military strategic objectives, 415
Military Strategy, 415
military veterans, 421
mission, functions and defence strategy, 414–415
missions, 415–416
One Force, 420
Organisational structure, 417–418

peace operations, 417
resettlement, 420–421
shared defence values, 420
Department of Energy
biofuels, 188, 192–193
biomass, 195–196
Central Energy Fund (CEF), 183–184
Climate Change Strategy, 199–200
coal, 188
economy, 183
efficiency, 184–187
electricity, 193–194
Electricity and Nuclear Branch, 182
energy demand and access, 188
environmental issues, 199–200
households, 183, 186, 188, 200
hydrocarbon gas industry, 184
Hydrocarbons and Energy Planning Branch, 182
hydropower, 197–198
import and export of fuel products, 192
Integrated Energy Centre (IEC) Programme, 188
liquid fuels, 190–191
liquified petroleum gas (LPG), 184, 186–188, 192
National Energy Regulator of South Africa (Nersa), 183, 189, 190
nuclear, 188–190
Nuclear Energy Corporation of South African (Necsa), 190
oil and gas, 191–192
policy and legislation, 182–183
renewable energy, 183, 194–200
Sasol, 191–192
security of supply in Southern Africa, 198–199
solar, 196–197
Southern African Power Pool (SAPP), 189–199
statistics, 187
wind, 197
Department of Environmental Affairs, 53, 204–229
air-quality management, 225–226
aquaria, 222
biodiversity research, 211–216
biodiversity-related multilateral agreements, 208
biological diversity, 205–208
breeding centres, 221–222
conservation challenges, 223–227
conserving biodiversity, 208–217
environmental impact management, 223
erosion and desertification, 226–227
herbaria, 210–217
international cooperation, 227–229
National Framework for Sustainable Development (NFSD), 205
policy and legislation, 204–205
private-sector involvement in conservation, 228
protected areas, 217–223
snake parks, 222–223
South African Environmental Observation Network (SAEON), 208–209, 445
urban environmental management, 213, 226
waste management strategy, 204–205, 223–225
wetlands, 212, 221
World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD), 205
zoological gardens, 221
Department of Finance
See National Treasury
Department of Foreign Affairs
See Department of International Relations and Cooperation
Department of Health, 288–304
2010 FIFA World Cup, 288, 291
affordable medicines, 301–302
communicable and non-communicable diseases, 288, 297–300
health information and research, 302
health insurance system, 288, 290–291
health professionals, 291–293
human resources, 303–304
international relations, 304
legislation, 289–290
lifestyle and nutrition, 300
local government healthcare, 294
medical schemes, 288, 294–295
national health authorities, 288
primary healthcare, 295
provincial health departments, 288
quality of care, 302–303
research, 293–294, 297
School Health Policy, 290
statutory bodies, 288
Department of Higher Education and Training, 162, 165–178
curriculum, 170–171
education infrastructure, 174–175
education policy, 169–170
education portal, 175
educator development, 174
expenditure and equity, 162, 165, 168, 169
Further Education and Training, 167
gender equity, 176–177
health promotion, 173–174
human resource development strategy, 177–178
management and governance development, 174
mathematics, science and technology, 167, 171–172, 174
Ministry of HE and Training, 167
National Plan for Higher Education, 166–167
National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS), 167–168
partnerships – public sector and internationally,

175–6
rural education, 177
school safety measures, 172
school sport, 172
Statutory bodies, 167–169
unions, 175–176
Values Initiative, 174
Department of Home Affairs, 279–284
citizenship matters, 280
civic services, 280
control of sojourn, 282–283
control of travellers, 282
immigration, 280–282
permanent residence, 283
Population Register, 280
removal of undesirable persons, 284
temporary residence, 283–284
visas, 282
Department of Housing
See Department of Human Settlements
Department of Human Settlements, 303–319
capacity building, 312
emergency housing, 312–313
housing subsidies, 312–314
human-settlement planning, 314–315
international relations, 319
legislation, policy and initiatives, 309–312
rental housing for the poor, 311
stakeholder management, 315–319
sustainable human settlements, 308–309
Department of International Relations and Cooperation, 322–357
African Union, 322–324
Americas, 242–244
Asia and Middle East, 336–338
Australasia and Pacific Islands, 340–341
bilateral agreements, 2008-2009, 355–357
Central Africa, 330–331
Commonwealth, 354
Europe, 344–348
Indian Ocean Rim-Association for Regional Co-operation (IOR-ARC), 338
international law, 353–354
Middle East bilateral relations, 341–342
multilateral diplomacy, 349–353
New Partnership for Africa's Development, 326
Non-Aligned Movement (NAM), 354
North and West Africa and the Horn of Africa, 331– 336
peacekeeping operations, in Africa, 323–325
Russian Federation, 348–349
South Africa, India and Brazil (IBSA), 338
South Asia, 339
South-East Asia, 339–340
southern Africa, 326–330
Department of Justice and Correctional Services, 360–383
court services, 361–367
crime prevention, 373
human rights, 373
Integrated Justice System, 373–376
international relations, 376
judicial system, 373–376
judiciary, transformation of, 361, 367–372
Justice College, 378–379
legal practitioners, 372
legal structures, 377–378
legislation, 360–361
legislative development, 376
litigation services, 376
Department of Labour
Collective Bargaining, 158
Compensation Fund (CF), 158
dispute resolution, 158
employment and skills development, 156
employment equity, 158
Human-Resource Development Strategy, 156, 157
labour market policy, 158
Labour programmes, 155–158
legislation, 156
National Skills Authority (NSA), 157
National Skills Fund, 157
Occupational Health and Safety, 157–158
sector education and training authority (Seta), 157
Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF), 157
Department of Mineral Resources, 390–401
Black Economic Empowerment (BEE), 393
Chamber of Mines, 393, 396
geology, 399–401
mine environmental management, 391–392
mine health and safety, 394
mineral wealth, 395–399
mineworkers, 393–395
mining industry, 393
Mining Qualifications Authority (MQA), 394–396
policy and legislation, 390–391
small-scale mining, 396
WSSD mining outcomes, 392–393
Department of Police, 404–414
2010 FIFA World Cup™, 404, 407
Business Against Crime South Africa (BACSA), 413–414
Independent Complaints Directorate (ICD), 404–405
Secretariat for Safety and Security, 404
South African Police Service (SAPS), 281, 405–413
Department of Public Service and Administration, 274–279
African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM), 274
Batho Pele ("People First"), 275, 278

Centre for Public-Service Innovation, 275–276
conditions of service, 275
Employment Health and Wellness Policy Frame work, 275
fighting corruption, 276
governance monitoring, 278
Government Employees Medical Scheme (Gems), 274, 275
Government Information Technology Officers Council, 276
Human-resource management (HRM), 275
International and African affairs, 276
labour-relations improvement, 277–278
leadership and human resource reviews, 277
medical assistance, 275
professional ethics, 278–279
Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy, 279
public administration investigations, 278
Public Service Commission (PSC), 277
service delivery and compliance evaluations, 278
Single Public Service, 275
size of, 274
State Information Technology Agency (Sita), 276
Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, 56, 70, 71, 428–433
cadastral surveys, 432
Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights, 432–433
Comprehensive Rural Development Programme, 428–429
deeds registration, 432
land and tenure reform, 429–430
land planning and information, 431–432
land reform, 429–431
land-reform implementation, 430
policy and legislation development, 432–433
surveys and mapping, 431–432
vesting and disposal of state land, 430–431
Department of Science and Technology, 53, 436–446
indigenous knowledge systems, 437
information and communications technology, 442–443
international science and technology cooperation, 443–444
Legislation, 438
National Research Foundation, 444–446
policy and expenditure, 436–437
science bodies, 438–442
science councils, 446–457
Ten Year Innovation Plan, 437
Department of Social Development, 165, 460–475
care and support to families, 471–472
Childline South Africa, 470
comprehensive social security, 463
improving community development and service delivery, 465
international social services (ISS), 469–470
Legislation, 460–461
people with disabilities, 472–473
poverty and interventions, 462–463
protecting the rights of vulnerable groups, 468–469
responding to impact of HIV and AIDS, 465–467
social assistance, 463–465
social crime prevention, 470–471
statutory bodies, 474–475
substance and drug abuse treatment/prevention, 472
sustainable livelihoods, 460–462
welfare services, 474
youth development 473–474
Department of Tourism, 492–527
see also tourism
2010 FIFA World Cup, 496–498
accommodation, 502
adventure sport tourism, 493–494
business tourism, 492–493
domestic tourism growth, 495–496
Human-resource development (HRD), 500–501
Indaba 2009, 499–500
industry transformation, 498
infrastructure development programme, 498
international tourism, 496
medical tourism, 493
Meetings Africa, 500
policy and initiatives, 494–495
quality assurance, 502
research, 501
South African Tourism (SAT), 496
Tourism Enterprise Partnership (TEP), 498–499
tourism in the provinces, 503–527
tourist guiding, 501
tourist safety, 503
Department of Trade and Industry, 62
Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA), 130
African economic development, 137, 138
Black Business Supplier Development Programme (BBSDP), 144, 151
Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE), 136, 150–151
Business process outsourcing and offshoring (BPO&O), 151
competition policy, 147, 148
Consumer and Corporate Regulation, 150
domestic expenditure, 132–133
domestic output, 131–132
economic indicators, 131–133
employment equity, 136, 158

enterprise and industry development, 144–145
The Enterprise Organisation (TEO), 144–145
European Union (EU), 139–140
exchange rates, 134
export development and promotion, 143–144
foreign trade and payments, 134–136
global positioning and integration, 137
industrial development, 145–147
Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP), 145, 146
institutional support framework, 148
International Trade and Economic Development (ITED), 137
investment facilitation, 144
Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa), 130–131
manufacturing, 147
Ministry of Economic Development, 130–136
multilateral economic relations, 141
National Industrial Participation Programme (NIPP), 145, 146
New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad), 136, 138
price inflation, 133–134
promoting and facilitating investment, 144
public works programmes, 154–155
small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs), 148–150
Southern African Customs Union (Sacu), 139
Southern African Development Community (SADC), 138–139
State-owned enterprises (SOEs), 151–153
Trade and Investment South Africa (Tisa), 143, 144
trade with Americas, 140
trade with Asia, 140–141
trade with Europe, 139–140
United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (Unctad), 141–142
Workplace Challenge Programme, 145
World Economic Forum (WEF), 137, 142–143
World Trade Organisation, 142
Department of Transport, 530–550
2010 Transport Action Plan, 530–532
Airports Company of South Africa (Acsa), 531, 536
Black Economic Empowerment (BEE), 532
Bus Rapid Transport (BRT) system, 530, 531, 539
civil aviation, 544–545
Cross-Border Road Transport Agency (CBRTA), 534
cross-border transport, 540–541
Electronic National Traffic Information System (eNaTIS), 532
freight transport, 543–544
Gautrain, 542–543
infrastructure development, 11–12
maritime affairs, 548–550
motor vehicles registered, 539
New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad), 533
Non-motorised transport (NMT), 532–533
pipelines, 548
policy and initiatives, 530
ports, 545–548
public transport, 538
rail transport, 541–544
Road Accident Fund (RAF), 534–535
road infrastructure, 573–574
Road-traffic safety, 539–540
rural transport, 538–539
South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA), 535–536
South African Maritime Safety Authority, 76, 534
South African National Roads Agency Limited, 532, 533–534
Taxi Recapitalisation Programme (TRP), 539
Transnet, 536–537
urban transport, 538
Department of Water Affairs, 69, 545–568
catchment-management agencies, 557, 563
dams and water schemes, 566–567
flood and drought management, 565
Framework on Water for Growth and Development, 556–557
Freshwater Ecosystem Programme, 559
groundwater resources, 567
hydrological conditions, 554–555
monitoring water resources, 559
Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG), 560
National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme (NAEHMP), 559–60
National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS), 561–562
policy and legislation, 561–563
Regional and international cooperation and initiatives, 567–568
Water Allocation Reform (War) Programme, 562–563
water and sanitation, 558
water boards, 563
water-quality management, 557–558
water-related research, 564–565
Water-resource management, 555–557
water-user associations (WUA), 563
Working for Water (WfW) Programme, 565
deportation, 284
Deputy President, 261
Desert Biome, 13, 208
desertification, 226–227
design, 96, 97
Design Indaba Conference and Expo, 96
Designated National Authority (DNA), 187
Destiny Africa Ecosphere Project, 505

detective services, 411–413
Development and Innovation Strategy of South Africa, 438
Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA), 48, 250, 308
diamond
fields, 12, 29, 400, 511
industry, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 351–352, 390, 391, 398
disability strategy, 472–473
disaster management, 58, 72, 271–272, 295, 565
Disaster Management Framework, 295
dispute resolution, 158
domestic
bonds, 253–254
currency market, 254
tourism, 495–496
Drakensberg, 5, 8, 10, 11, 399–400, 527
escarpment, 11, 520
drought management, 58
drug abuse, 472
Dukuduku, 11
Dulcie September Legacy Project, 88
dune forests, 9
Durban, 5, 28, 29, 81, 92
Art Gallery, 94
habour, 10
harbour, 11
King Shaka
International Airport, 10, 12
Local History Museum, 101
Museum of Natural History, 101
public transport projects, 12
tourism, 479, 524–525
Durban Institute of Technology, 11
Durban-Gauteng Corridor, 182
Dwesa, 9

E

Early Childhood Development (ECD), 162, 164–165
Early Warning System, 236
East Coast, 5, 75
East Griqualand, tourism, 525
East London, 8, 9, 10, 29, 146
Industrial Development Zone, 10
museum, 101
Eastern and Southern Africa Anti-Money Laundering Group, 238
Eastern Cape 6, 8–10
2010 FIFA World Cup, 10
agriculture, fishing and forestry, 9
industry, 9, 10
people 9
tourism, 515–516
universities, 8
Eastern Cape Bioregional Programme, 213, 214
economic indicators 131–133
ecosystems, 211, 212, 445
Freshwater Ecosystem Programme, 559
management, 13, 213–217
National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme (NAEHMP), 559–560
Eco-Technology Programme (ETP), 60–61
ecotourism, 217
Edoardo Villa Museum, 95
Education
see also Department of Basic Education; Department of Higher Education and Training
education and training
levels of formal education, 162
quality-assurance bodies (ETQAs), 168
spending on formal education, 162, 165, 168, 169
Education for All (EFA), 176
Education Labour Relations Council (ELRC), 167
Education Management Service (EMS), 176
e-education, 109
e-filing, 242
e-justice, 376
elections, 274
Electoral Court, 361
electricity, 183, 188, 193–194
demand for, 193–194
Integrated National Electrification Programme (INEP), 194
smart metering for residential customers, 186
Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd (Comsec), 425
Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT), 364
Electronic National Traffic Information System (eNaTIS), 532
Electronic Vehicle Monitoring for Command and Control (Automated Vehicle Location System), 407
Elephant Coast, 525–526
emergency
housing, 312–313
medical care, 295
medical services (EMS), 288
response services, 410
Emergency Medical Technician Programme, 303
employment, 7, 9, 16, 37, 68, 69, 136, 137, 146
equity, 136, 158
skills development, 130–131
Employment and Skills Development Services (ESDS), 156
Energy
see also Department of Energy
energy
nuclear, 153
research, 454
Energy Development Corporation (EDC), 183

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

Energy Security Strategy, 182, 437
Energy-Efficiency Strategy, 184, 185
Engelenburg House Art Collection, Pretoria, 100
enterprise and industry development, 144–145
Enterprise and Industry Development Division (EIDD), 144
environmental
impact management, 223
research, 445, 455–456
Environmental Affairs
see also Department of Environmental Affairs
Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 223
epidemiology, 302
equality courts, 361, 366
Equitable Shares Formula (ESF), 169
Eritrea, 323, 325
erosion, 226–227
Eskom, 20, 151, 153, 182, 183, 184, 187, 233, 453
Eskom Build Programme, 193
estate duty, 241
Ethiopia, 310, 323, 325, 329, 417
e.tv, 117
Europe
foreign relations, 344–348
trade with, 64, 139, 140
European Free Trade Association (EFTA), 139, 140
European Union (EU), 9, 54, 67, 139, 344
European Union (EU)-AU Strategic Partnership, 324
Eurorand bonds, 253
exchange rates, 134
exchange-control, 254, 255
exchange-control reforms, 235–236
excise duty, 241
Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP), 154, 164, 462
export, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 16, 47, 65–67, 143–144
agricultural products, 44, 45

F

family courts, 364
farming
see also agriculture/agricultural sector; Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
ferrous minerals, 398, 448
FIFA 2010 World Cup™
international relations, 322
film, 98, 99, 102
Film and Publication Board (FPB), 98, 99, 122
Finance See National Treasury
Financial Action Task Force (FATF), 238
Financial and Fiscal Commission (FFC), 238, 268
Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC), 237
financial markets, 252–254
financial service providers (FSP), 251
Financial Services Board (FSB), 251–252
financial-sector continuity planning, 257
Firearm Control System, 408, 410, 411
fires, agricultural, 45, 68, 72
First Decade of Freedom, 36–38
First National Bank (FNB) Dance Umbrella, 94
Fish River Canyon, 13
Fish River Spatial Development Initiative (SDI), 10
fisheries/fishing industry/sector, 6, 7, 9, 75–77
see also marine
Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), 76, 77
partnerships, 76
protecting the waters, 76
research, 445, 456
subsistence fishing, 76
vessel monitoring, 77
food
safety and quality assurance, 66–67
security, 56–57, 428, 430, 461
Food and Agriculture Organisation (FAO), 54, 63
Food and Trees for Africa (FTFA), 75
Food Price Monitoring, 56
foreign
investment, 144
trade payments, 134–136
Foreign Correspondents' Association of South Africa, 122
Foreign Direct Investment (FDI), 144, 236, 255, 327
forensic sciences, 412
Forest Biome, 208
Forestry Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Charter, 67, 68, 70
forests/forestry, 9, 11, 19, 21, 67–75 –
see also Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
afforestation, 68
commercial, 68, 69, 70–71, 73, 74
community forests, 74
Food and Trees for Africa (FTFA), 75
forestry initiatives, 68, 69–70
indigenous, 208
indigenous forests, 11, 68, 72–73
industry and exports, 70–72, 73, 74
legislation, 72
National Arbour Week, 69
Natural Forests Protected Areas System, 73
plantation yields, 73, 74
primary wood-processing, 74
pulp and paper, 70, 71, 74
research and training, 74
socio-economic reform and growth, 70
South African Forestry Company Limited (Safcol), 70, 71, 73, 153
sustainable forest management, 68, 71–72, 74
woodlands, 73
Forum for Africa-China Partnership, 324

Forum of Black Journalists, 121
Forum of Community Journalists (FCJ), 122
fossils, 80, 101, 220, 401, 506, 519, 520
Free Basic Water (FBW) Policy, 560
Free State, 14–15
  2010 FIFA World Cup™, 15
  agriculture, 14–15
  mining, 15
  people, 14
  tourism, 14, 513–515
free trade agreement (FTA), 39, 137–140, 326, 343, 421
Freedom Charter, 34, 390
Freedom of Commercial Speech Trust, 122
Freedom of Expression Institute (FXI), 122
Freedom Park Project, 88
free-to-air television, 117
freight transport, 543–544
Freshwater Ecosystem Programme, 213–215
Further Education and Training (FET), 162, 164
  colleges, 167, 168, 177
  levels, 162, 167
Fynbos Biome, 7, 207–208
Fynbos Node, 212
Fynbos Programme, 213, 214

G
G77, 39
gambling, 243–245
game farming/industry/ranching, 9, 11, 12, 13, 21, 53
game parks, 21
Garden Route, 69, 505–506
Garden Route National Park, 219
gas and oil reserves, 191, 192
gas trade agreements, 192
gas-to-liquids (GTL) plant, 191
Gateway International Airport , Polokwane, 20
Gauteng, 17–19
  2010 FIFA World Cup™, 18
  agriculture and industry, 18
  manufacturing, 18
  people, 18
  technology, 18
  tourism, 17, 18, 521–524
Gautrain, 542–543
Gemsbok National Park (Botswana), 12
gender equity, 176–177
genebanks reference collections, 210
General Education and Training (GET), 162, 163–164
Genetically modified organisms (GMOs), 44–45
Geneva Convention Relating to the Status of Refugees, 1951, 350
Geographical Information System (GIS), 408
geology, 399–401, 451–452
Gertrude Posel Gallery, 95
Giant's Castle, 11
Girls Education Movement (GEM), 176
Glass-Recyclers Association of South Africa, 224
Global Atmospheric Watch Programme, 456
Global Change Science, 437
Global Earth Observation System of Systems (GEOSS), 443
Global Environmental Facility (GEF), 213, 214
global finance, international partnership, 352
global trade and economic development, 137–139
Gold Fields Environmental Education Centre, 210
Golden Gate Highlands National Park, 14, 206, 217, 399–400, 515
gold-mining industry, 14, 15, 29, 397, 448
research, 456
golf, 486
governance monitoring, 278
government bonds, 252–253
Government Communications and Information System (GCIS), 272–273
Government Employee Pension Fund (GEPF), 236, 238
Government Information Technology Officers' (Gito) Council, 276
government system, 260–285
  Cabinet, 262, 263
  Constitution, 260
  cooperative governance, 264–268, 272
  Deputy President, 161
  disaster management, 271–272
  elections, 274
  Government, 260
  Government Communications, 272–273
  Home Affairs, 279–284
  International Marketing Council, 273–274
  local government, 267–272
  Parliament, 261
  President, 261
  provincial government, 265, 266, 267
  Public Service, 274–279
  traditional leadership, 262, 264
Graaff-Reinet, 9
Grahamstown, 9, 91, 92, 98, 517
Graskop, 19
grass and wetlands, 521
Grassland Biome, 9,14, 19, 21, 207, 213
Grasslands Programme, 213–214
Great Escarpment, 5, 399–400
Great Karoo, 7, 8, 9
Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park, 218
Great North Road, 20
Great Trek, 28
Greater Mapungubwe (former Limpopo-Shashe) Transfrontier Conservation Area, 218
Green Kalahari, 512
Green Transport Programme, 185

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

greenhouse-gas (GHG) emissions, 187, 199, 227, 438, 456, 484
inventory, 226
Greening the Nation Programme, 212
Groot Constantia, Western Cape, 101
Gross Domestic Product by Region (GDP-R), 9, 16, 17
Group of Seven Most Industrialised Nations plus Russia (G8), 324
Guardian's Fund, 378

H
H1N1 Influenza pandemic, 299
Hantam Karoo, 513
Hantam National Botanical Garden, 207
harbours
see also ports
Harmony Gold Refinery, 15
Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park, 222
Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory (HartRAO), 445
Heads of Education Departments Committee (Hedcom), 162, 167
Health
see also Department of Health
health
information, 302
insurance, 290–291
professionals, 291–293
Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA), 288, 291
Healthcare Risk Waste Regulations, 205
Heidelberg, 18
herbaria, 210, 211
Heritage Month celebrations, 89
Hermanus Magnetic Observatory (HMO), 445
high courts, 361–362
higher education
colleges, 18
libraries, 103
universities, 7, 9, 18, 165–166
Higher Education (HE)
levels, 162
Highlands Meander, 521
Highveld, 20
historically disadvantaged South Africans (HDSAs), 393, 557
history, 26–39
Anglo-Boer/South African War and its aftermath, 30–31
apartheid, 32–36
British colonial era, 27–28
early colonial period, 26–27
early inhabitants, 26
end of apartheid, 34–36
First Decade of Freedom, 36–38
mineral revolution, 29–30
Second Decade of Freedom, 38–39
segregation, 31–33
HIV and AIDS, 121, 173, 176, 233, 294
advocacy, awareness and outreach, 466–467
antiretrovirals (ARVs), 146
care and support, 467
comprehensive management and treatment programme, 288, 297–298, 302
national strategic plan, 465–467
orphans, 467
partnerships, 467
programme for farm workers, 292
vaccine research, 450
Workplace Policy and Strategy, 275, 466
Youth Programme, 466
Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, 206, 525
Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre, 222
Home Affairs
see also Department of Home Affairs
hospitals, 295, 296, 302
Household Food Production Programme, 57
houses of traditional leaders, 264
Housing
see also Department of Human Settlements
Housing Development Agency (HDA), 310
housing subsidies, 313–314
Human Resource (HR) Connect 275
Human Resource Development (HRD)
HRD Strategic Framework, 275
Human and Social Dynamics, 437
HR 2010 Strategy, 420
HRD, 168, 395
human rights, 373
Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC), 18, 99, 450–451
human-settlement planning, 314–315
hydrocarbon gas industry, 184
Hydrogen and Fuel Cell Research, 438
hydrological conditions, 554–555
hydropower, 197–199

I
Ilima/Letsema Campaign, 56–57
immigration, 280–282
income tax, 233, 240–243, 242–243, 364
Indaba 2009, 499–500
Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (Icasa), 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 115, 122
Independent Complaints Directorate (ICD), 404–405
Independent Electoral Commission (IEC), 273, 274
India, 64, 91, 141
India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA)
cultural cooperation, 91
trilateral consultations, 338

India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA) Forum, 141
Indian Ocean, 8, 10
Indian Ocean Islands, 330
Indian Ocean Rim-Association for Regional Cooperation (IOR-ARC), 338
indigenous games, 481
Indigenous Knowledge System (IKS), 96, 437
Industrial Development Corporation (IDC), 49, 143, 150, 193
industrial development zones (IDZs), 9, 10, 16, 146
industrial minerals, 398, 448, 449
Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP), 145–146
industry, 9, 11, 13–14, 18, 20, 22
  see also Department of Trade and Industry, industrial development
Infield Rainwater Harvesting (IRWH), 60, 61
inflation, 133–134
information and communications technology (ICT), 8, 108–109, 442–443
Innovation Fund (IF), 438–439
Innovation Hub, 18
Inspector-General, 424–425
Institute for Economic Research on Innovation (Ieri), 454
Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops, 20
institutional investors, 254–255
insurance companies, 8, 251–252
Integrated case-flow management (CFM), 368–369
integrated development plan (IDP), 270
Integrated Energy Centre (IEC) Programme, 188
Integrated energy planning (IEP), 185
Integrated Financial Management System (IFMS), 237
Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme (IFSNP), 57
Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses (IMCI), 296
Integrated Manufacturing Strategy (IMS), 143
Integrated National Electrification Programme (INEP), 194
Integrated Provincial SMME Strategy, 13
Integrated Rapid Transport System, 8
Integrated Registration and Genetic Information System (INTER-GIS), 52
Integrated Residential Development Programme, 313
Integrated Rural Development Programme, 68
intelligence services, 424–425
  Electronic Communication Security (Comsec), 425
  Inspector-General, 424–425
  Intelligence Services Council (ISC), 425
  Joint Standing Committee on Intelligence Oversight (JSCI), 424
  National Communications Centre (NCC), 425
  National Intelligence Agency (NIA), 424
  Office of Inception Centre (OIC), 425
  South African National Academy of Intelligence (SANAI), 425
  South African Secret Service (SASS), 424
Intelligence Services Council (ISC), 425
Inter-African Phytosanitary Council, 57, 66
interest rate market, 257
International Agenda for Botanic Gardens in Conservation, 210
International Agricultural Strategy, 63
International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA), 346, 351
International Centre for Genetic Engineering and Biotechnology (ICGEB), 440
International Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities, 350
International Council for Science (ICSU), 443
International Criminal Court (ICC), 377
International Ferro Metals, 16
International Labour Organisation (ILO), 155
international law, 353–354
International Legal Relations, 376–377
International Marketing Council, 273–274
International Marketing Council (IMC), 273
International Monetary Fund's Development Committee, 38
International Organisation of Vine and Wine (OIV), 63, 67
international relations
  see also Department of International Relations and Cooperation
  agriculture, 63–64
  health, 304
  housing, 319
International social services (ISS), 469–470
International tax agreements, 240
international tourism, 496
international trade, agricultural, 64–65
International Trade and Economic Development (ITED), 137
Internet, 111, 117, 121, 123–124, 126
Irish and South African Heritage Project, 346
Iron-Age, 26
iSimangaliso Wetland Park, 11, 206, 220, 526
Isivande Women's Fund (IWF), 149
iThemba Laboratories, 189, 446
Iziko museums, Cape Town, 100, 101

J

Japan, International relations and trade, 337
Johannesburg, 18, 81, 92, 94
  Art Gallery, 94
  museums, 101, 522–523
  OR Tambo International Airport, 17, 65, 536
  tourism, 497, 522–523
  universities, 18
Johannesburg Art Gallery, 101
Johannesburg Fresh Produce Market, 21

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

Johannesburg Zoological Gardens, 221
Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa), 130–131, 344
Joint Standing Committee on Defence (JSCD), 418
Joint Standing Committee on Intelligence (JSCI), 424
journalism awards, 125
Joy of Jazz International Festival, 92
JSE Limited (Ltd), 236, 241, 255, 256
Judicial Service Commission (JSC), 380–381
judicial system
civil jurisdiction, 366–367
community courts, 363–364
Constitutional Court (CC), 361
courts for income tax offenders, 364
criminal jurisdiction, 363
domestic violence, 365
equality courts, 361, 366
family courts, 364
high courts, 361–362
Integrated case-flow management (CFM), 368–369
magistrates' courts, 362–363
mediation in maintenance matters, 364–365
regional courts, 362
sexual offences courts, 365–366
small claims courts, 366–367
Supreme Court of Appeal (SCA), 361
transformation, 367–372
Justice
see also Department of Justice and Constitutional Development
Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster, 373, 404, 406
Justice College, 378–379

K

Kalahari, 13
tourism, 511–512
Kalahari Gemsbok National Park, 12, 217
Kamberg Nature Reserve, 11
karakul sheep industry, 13
Karoo, 9, 13, 207, 396
tourism, 516–517
Karoo Array Telescope, 441
Karoo National Park, 217
Kavango-Zambezi Transfrontier Park, 218
Keiskamma, 8
Keiskammahoek, 9, 48
Kenya, 149, 329
Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, 12, 206, 217, 218, 512
Khoekhoen, 26
Khoikhoi, 26
Khoisan, 26, 27, 28, 82, 115
Khoisan Legacy Project, 88
Khula Enterprise Finance Limited, 62, 148, 149
Kimberley, 12, 13, 14, 29, 101, 511
Kimberley Process Certification Scheme (KPCS), 351–352
King Shaka International Airport, 12
Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden, 7, 210
Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees, Oudtshoorn, 92, 506
Kleinplasie, Worcester, 101
Knysna-Tsitsikamma region, 7, 208, 506
Koeberg Nuclear Power Station, 189, 193, 219
Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, 219
Kosi Bay, 11, 526
Kosi Bay Lake System, 220
Kromdraai, 220, 401
Kruger House Museum, Pretoria, 100, 101
Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport, 19
Kruger National Park, 21, 206, 217, 219, 519
Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve, 219
KwaZulu-Natal, 10–12
2010 FIFA World Cup™, 11–12
agriculture and industry, 11
people, 11
tourism, 524–527
KwaZulu-Natal Battlefields Route, 527
Kyoto Protocol, 199, 225, 351

L

Labour
see also Department of Labour; employment
Labour Appeal Court, 361
Labour Court, 361, 362
Labour-Market Policy Programme, 158
Labour-relations improvement, 277–278
Lake Chrissie, 19, 521
Lake Sibeya, 526
land 5–6
climatic features, 5–6
coasts, 5
frost, humidity and fog, 6
oceans, 5
rainfall, 6
relief features, 5
sunshine, 6
temperatures, 6
Land Affairs
see also Department of Rural Development and Land Reform
Land and Agrarian Reform Project (LARP), 56, 57, 67
Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (Land Bank), 58, 61, 250
land and its people 2–22
land, 5–6
languages, 2, 84, 86
provinces, 6–22
religion, 3–5
Land and Tenure Reform (LTR), 429–430

Land Claims Commission, 70
Land Claims Court, 361, 362
Land Planning and Information (LPI), 429, 431–432
Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development (LRAD) Grant, 430
Land Reform Implementation Management and Co-ordination (LRIMC), 429
Land Reform Programme, 11
Land Restitution Programme, 429
LandCare Programme, 60, 61
land-reform, 428–433
land-reform implementation, 430
land-reform offices (PLROs), 429–430
Langebaan Lagoon, 219
Langkloof, 8, 9, 49
languages, 2, 84, 86
Latin America
  International relations, 343–344
  trade with, 140
Law Society of South Africa, 372
legacy projects, 88–89
Legal Aid South Africa, 360, 379
legal practitioners, 372
legal structures, 377–378
legislation
  Education, 169–170
  health, 289–290
  Justice and Constitutional, 360–361
  National Treasury, 234–235
  rural development and land reform, 432–433
  Science and Technology, 438
  Social Development, 460–461
  Sport and Recreation, 478, 482–483
  Water Affairs, 561–562
legislative development, 376
Lejweleputswa, 515
Lesotho, 5, 11, 54, 64, 327
Lesotho Highlands Water Project, 198
libraries, 102–105, 163, 178
  Library and information services (LIS) sector, 178
  Library Charter, 178
Library and Information Services (LIS) sector, 102–104
Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre, 221
lifestyle, healthy, 300–301
Limpopo, 20–22
  2010 FIFA World Cup™, 22
  agriculture, 21
  industry and mining, 22
  people, 21
  tourism, 20–22, 517–518
Limpopo Basin, 219
Limpopo River, 5, 20
Limpopo Valley, 26
Liquid Fuels Charter, 190
liquid fuels industry, 190–191
liquified petroleum gas (LPG, 184, 186–188, 192
liquor control, 410–411
literacy
  see also Adult Basic Education and Training (Abet)
literature, 97–98
Little Karoo, 506
local economic development (LED), 268, 270, 271
local government
  health care, 293
local government, 267–272
Local Government Strategic Agenda (2006 – 2011), 269
Loerie Awards, 127
Lowveld, 6, 19, 20, 520
Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area, 218
Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza, 100

M

Macroeconomic strategy, 239
Macufe, 14, 92
Madagascar, 149
Madikwe Game Reserve, 16
Mafikeng, 16
Mafikeng Industrial Development Zone (IDZ), 16
Mafisa, 61–62
Magazine Publishers Association of South Africa, 121
magazines, 118–121, 123–125
Magistrates' Commission, 380
magistrates' courts, 362–363
malaria, 298–299, 454, 501
Malawi, 327–328
Mali, 90, 335
Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area, 218
Maluti mountains, 14, 514
Mandela, President Nelson, 17, 33, 34, 36, 37, 88, 100, 413
Mangaung African Cultural Festival (Macufe), Bloemfontein, 14, 92
mangroves, 9
manufacturing, 8, 11, 15, 16, 18, 20
  sector, 144–150
mapping and surveys, 431–432
Mapungubwe, 21, 26, 219, 518
Mapungubwe Heritage Site, 220
Mapungubwe National Park, 217, 218
Maputo, 19, 88
Maputo Development Corridor, 19, 20
Marine
  see also fisheries/fishing industry/sector
  aquaculture, 52–53
  international cooperation, 77
  life, 5
  pollution, 76, 77

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

protected areas, 75–77
research, 456
resources, 7, 13, 53, 75, 76
seals and seabirds, 75, 76
Marine Ecosystem Programme, 213, 214
Marine Protected Areas (MPAs), 76, 214, 217, 220
Marion island, 5, 217, 366
maritime affairs, 548–550
safety, 550
search-and-rescue services, 549–550
South African Maritime Safety Authority (Samsa), 76, 533, 534, 548
training, 549
transport, 548–549
Maritime Rescue Coordination Centre (MRCC)
Market Theatre, Johannesburg, 81, 92, 94
Master of the High Court, 377–378
Mathematics, Science and Technology (MST), 167, 171, 172, 174
Mbeki, President Thabo, 37, 38, 84
McGregor Museum, Kimberley, 13, 101, 511
measles, 299
media, 114–127
advertising, 122
broadcasting, 115–117
broadcasting role players, 115–117
diversity, 126–127
freedom, 114, 122, 126
free-to-air, 117
journalism awards, 125
magazines, 118–121, 123–125
M-Net, 116
news agencies, 122–125
newspapers, 117–119, 124
online media, 121
organisations and role players, 121–122
print, 117–127
radio, 115–116
satellite broadcasting, 116–117
signal distribution, 116, 117
South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC), 62, 99, 110, 115, 116, 122, 125, 172
television, 108, 116–117
training centres, 125
Media, Advertising, Publishing, Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority (Mappp-Seta), 87, 89, 125
Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA), 126–127, 273
Media Institute of Southern Africa, 122
Media Workers' Association of South Africa, 122
Media24, 118, 119, 123, 124, 125
medical
research, 293–294, 297
schemes, 288, 294–295
Medical Research Council (MRC), 293–294, 297, 451
medicine
access to affordable, 301–302
administration, 288, 289, 301–302
MeerKAT, 441
Meetings Africa, 500
Melrose House, Pretoria, 101
Memorandum of Understanding (MoU), 224, 550
Mercosur, 64, 139, 343
meteorite impact sites, 400
metropolitan municipalities, 269
Buffalo City (East London), 269
City of Cape Town, 269
City of eThekwini (Durban), 269
City of Johannesburg, 269
City of Tshwane (Pretoria), 269
Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand), 269
Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein), 269
Msunduzi Municipality (Pietermaritzburg), 269
Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth), 269
Mfecane, 27, 28
Michaelis Collection, 100
Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa (Mafisa), 61–62
Micro-Economic Reform Strategy, 143
microlending industry, 249–250
Middle East, International relations, 336, 341–342
Middle-Eastern countries, 64
Midem 2009, France, 93
Midlands, 526–527
Military Skills Development System (MSDS), 420
military veterans, 417, 421
Millennium Development Goals (MDGs), 295, 324
Millennium Seed Bank (MSB), 212
project, 121
environmental management, 391–392
safety research, 454
Mine Health and Safety Council (MHSC), 394
Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate (MHSI), 390, 394
Mineral Resources
see also Department of Mineral Resources
Mineral Sector Skills Plan, 395
mineral wealth, 16, 395–397
diamonds, 13
ferrous metals, 16, 22
platinum-group metals, 16, 22
reserves, 13, 14
minerals revolution, 29
mineworkers, 393–395
mining, Northern Cape, 12
Mining Charter, 393
mining industry, 131, 393

mine health and safety, 394
small-scale mining, 396
sustainable development strategy, 392–4
Mining Industry Growth, Development and Employment Task Team, 390
Mining Qualifications Authority (MQA), 394–396
mining wealth production, 397–399
Minister and MEC (MinMec) Forum, 268
Ministry of Rural Development and Land Reform, 177
Mintek, 391, 396, 442, 448–450
Mittal Steel, 187
Mmino, 81
M-Net, 116, 122
mobile communications, 112–113
Modimolle Grape Festival, 21
Modjadji Nature Reserve, 518
Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, 221, 222
Moloto Rail Development Corridor, 20
Mondi, 187
Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards, 125
monetary policy, 246, 247, 248–249
Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer, 228
Mopani district, 518–519
Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition, 93
Mossel Bay, 69, 183, 191
Motheo, 513–514
Mother City, 6, 504
Motlanthe, President Kgalema, 38, 84, 150, 223, 329
motor cars/vehicles, 10, 16, 18, 132, 133, 146, 147
carbon emissions, 186
licensing system, 532
manufacturing, 9
policing, 408
motoring magazines, 120
Mozambique, 5, 19, 77, 328
Mozambique-Agulhas current, 5
Mpumalanga, 19–20
2010 FIFA World Cup™, 20
agriculture and forestry, 19, 20
industry and manufacturing, 20
people, 19
tourism, 19, 520–521
Mrs Ples, 101
Mthatha, 8, 9, 10, 88
MTN, 111, 152
MultiChoice, 116, 117, 125
multilateral
diplomacy, 349–353
economic relations, 141
Municipal Demarcation Board, 268
Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG), 269, 270, 560–561
municipalities, 270–271
Museum Africa, Johannesburg, 101, 172
Museum of the Council for Geoscience, Pretoria, 100
museums, 74, 75, 98, 100–102
sport, 15
music, 89, 93, 94
Musina, 20, 21
Muslims, 4, 27
Mzimvubu Project, 9

N

N2 Gateway Project, 308, 312
Nama-Karoo Biome, 21, 206–207
Namaqua Development Corridor, 13
Namaqua National Park, 206, 207, 218
Namaqualand, 12, 215, 512–513
Namibia, 13, 64, 77, 91, 198, 304, 328–329
nanotechnology, 442, 444
Nat Nakasa Award for Courageous Journalism, 125
Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg, 100, 101
National Advisory Council on Innovation (Naci), 438, 439
National African Farmers Union of South Africa (Nafu), 63
National Agricultural Marketing Council (NAMC), 55–56
National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF), 454
National Anti-Corruption Hotline (NACH), 278
National Anti-Corruption Summit, 2008, 278
National Archives, Pretoria, 102
National Archives and Records Services of South Africa, 102
National Arts Council of South Africa (NAC), 81, 89, 92, 93
National Arts Festival, Grahamstown, 91, 92, 97
National Assembly, 262, 274
National Association of Broadcasters, 122
National Automated Archival Information System, 102
National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP), 209
National Board for Further Education and Training (NBFET), 167
National Climate Change Strategy, 199
National Climate-Change Summit, 2009, 226
National Communications Centre (NCC), 425
National Community Radio Forum (NCRF), 122
National Conventional Arms Control Committee (NCACC), 421–422
National Core Library, Pretoria, 451
National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS), 103
National Council of Provinces (NCOP), 261, 265, 266, 268
National Craft Awards, 96
National Crime-Prevention Strategy (NCPS), 373
National Cultural History Museum (NCHM), 100, 101
National Curriculum Statement (NCS), 164, 170, 171, 173, 174

National Development Agency, 474–475
National Disaster-Management Centre, 271
National Education Infrastructure Management System, 174–175
National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (Nemisa), 110, 125
National Energy Regulator of South Africa (Nersa), 183
National Energy-Efficiency Agency (NEEA), 185
National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown, 100
National Film, Video and Sound Archives, Pretoria, 102
National Film and Video Foundation (NFVF), 89
National Fire Danger Rating System, 72
National Forests Advisory Council (NCAC), 71, 72
National Framework for Sustainable Development (NFSD), 205
National Gambling Board (NGB), 243–244
national health, 296–301
  improving quality of care, 302–303
National Health Council, 304
National Health Insurance (NHI), 288, 290–291
National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS), 292–293, 543
National Herbarium of South Africa, 210, 211
National Heritage Council, 80
National Home-Builders Registration Council (NHBRC), 316–317
National House of Traditional Leaders, 264
National Housing Finance Corporation (NHFC), 308, 317
National Housing Interdepartmental Task Team, 200
National Housing Programme for Housing Assistance in Emergency Housing Circumstances, 312–313
National Human Resource-Development Strategy (NHRDS)., 162
National Human-Resource Development Strategy (NHRDS), 156, 177
National Industrial Policy Framework (NIPF), 145, 146, 391
National Information Society and Development Plan, 108, 111
National Institute for Tropical Diseases, Tzaneen, 453–454
National Integrity Framework for South Africa, 278
National Intelligence Agency (NIA), 424
National Land Type Survey, 45
National Language Service (NLS), 84
National Learners' Records Database (NLRD), 168
National Library of South Africa (NLSA), 98, 102, 103
National Livestock Development Strategy (NLDS), 51
National Lotteries Board (NLB), 244–245
National Municipal Biodiversity Programme, 213
National Museum, Bloemfontein, 100, 101
national parks, 12, 14, 16, 206, 207
  list of, 217–218
National Plan for Higher Education, 166–167
National Plants and Plant Products Inspection Services, 65
National Policy Framework for Teacher Education and Development, 174
National Policy on the Thermal Treatment of Hazardous and General Waste, 224
National Product Development Centre, 96
National Prosecuting Authority (NPA), 360, 370–371
National Prosecutions Service (NPS), 370
National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy (NPAES), 213, 217
National Qualifications Framework (NQF), 87, 162, 465
National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute (NRWDI), 224
National Railway Safety Regulator, 533
National Research and Development Strategy (NRDS), 436
National Research Foundation (NRF), 209, 437
  role in research and innovation, 444–446
National School Health Policy, 290
National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP), 163, 212
National School Winter Games Championships, 172, 482
National Senior Certificate (NSC) examination, 162
National Skills Authority (NSA), 157, 165
National Skills Fund (NSF), 156, 157, 165, 396
National Small Business Advisory Council (NSBAC), 148
National Space Agency, 437
National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment (NSBA), 217
National Strategic Plan for HIV and AIDS and Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) 2007–2011, 173, 466
National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS), 167–168
national symbols, 82–84
  animal, 82, 83
  anthem, 82, 83, 85
  bird, 82, 83
  coat of arms, 82, 83
  fish, 82, 83
  flag, 82
  flower, 82, 83
  orders, 82–84
  tree, 82, 83
National Treasury, 232–257
  Auditor-General of South Africa (AGSA), 245
  Budget Council, 238
  budget evaluation, 236
  debt management, 234–235
  Early Warning System, 236
  exchange-control reforms, 235–236
  expenditure 2009/2010, 233–234
  Financial and Fiscal Commission (FFC), 238
  financial expenditure, 235
  Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC), 237–238
  financial sector, 245–257

financial systems, 236–237
financial-sector continuity planning, 257
fiscal policy framework, 232–234
gambling, 243–245
international tax agreements, 240
legislation, 234–235
macroeconomic strategy, 239
norms and standards, 236
Public Investment Corporation (PIC), 238–9
public services expenditure, 233–234
retirement fund reform, 236
sources of revenue, 240–243
South African Revenue Service (SARS), 239–240
Supply Chain Management (SCM), 237
tax proposals 2009/10, 233
tax system, 240, 242–243
National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency (Nurcha), 317–318
National Waste-Management Strategy, 205, 223
National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS), 557, 561–562
National Writers' Guild of South Africa (NAWGSA), 86
National Zoological Gardens (NZG), 221, 445
natural history collections, 101–102
nature reserves, 17, 19, 217–218, 219, 506
Ncome Museum, 88
Ndebele Museum, Middelburg, 102
Nelson Mandela International Day, 37
Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, 9
Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha, 88, 100
Nelspruit, 20, 497, 520
Neotel, 152
New Asian-African Strategic Partnership (NAASP), 324, 338
New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad), 38, 64, 90, 91,109,135, 198, 250, 276,393,440,533
New Zealand, 340–341
Newcastle, 11
news agencies, 122–125
Newspaper Association of South Africa, 121
newspapers, 117–119, 124, 126
Ngqura, 10
Nigeria, 334
Non-Aligned Movement (NAM), 35, 38, 354
non-communicable diseases (NCDs), 299–300
non-ferrous minerals, 398, 448–449
non-governmental organisations (NGOs), 99
healthcare, 294, 303
non-motorised transport (NMT), 532–533
non-profit organisations, 475
non-proliferation and arms-control, 351
North Africa, International relations, 331–336
North America, trade with, 140
North Coast, tourism, 525
North West, 16–17
2010 FIFA World Cup, 17
agriculture, 16–17
manufacturing, 16
people, 16
tourism, 16, 519–520
North West University, 165
Northern Cape, 12–14
2010 FIFA World Cup, 14
agriculture and industry, 13
airports, 12
mining, 13–14
people, 13
tourism, 13, 511
Northern Flagship Institution, Pretoria, 100
North-South cooperation, 352
nuclear energy, 188–190
Nuclear Energy Corporation of South African (Necsa), 183, 189, 190
Nuclear Energy Policy, 188
Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty (NPT) Review Conference, 2005, 351
Nufcor, 189
nurses, 288, 292, 293
nutrition, 301
Nylsvley Nature Reserve, 518

O

OAU Convention Governing the Specific Aspects of Refugee Problems in Africa, 350
occupation specific dispensation (OSD), 167, 175, 275, 303, 304
Occupational Health and Safety (OHS), 155, 157–158
ocean energy, 197–198
oceans, 5
Office of Interception Centre (OIC), 425
Office of the Family Advocate, 379
official development aid (ODA), 324
official publications depositories (OPDs), 103
oil and gas reserves, 191, 192
Oil Pollution Control South Africa, 184
Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP), 54
Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute, 18, 63
One City Festival,Taung, 92
One Force, 420
online media, 121
Oppikoppi, 92
OR Tambo International Airport, Johannesburg, 17, 19, 65, 536
Oral health professionals, 288, 291
Oral History Project, 89, 102
Orange River, 5, 12, 13, 14, 49, 207, 400, 512
Orange River Mouth Wetland, 221
Orange River Valley, 6, 13, 208
Order of Ikhamanga, 83, 84
Order of Luthuli, 83, 84

Order of Mapungubwe, 83, 84
Order of the Baobab, 83, 84
Order of the Companions of OR Tambo, 83, 84
Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), 276, 324, 352
ostrich farming/industry, 7, 9
Overberg, 7, 510–511

P

Pacific Islands, international relations with, 340–341
Pan South African Language Board (PanSALB), 2, 86
Pan-African Conference of African Ministers of Public Service, 276
Pan-African Film Summit, 98
Pan-African Mathematics Olympiad, 172
Pan-African Parliament (PAP), 322
Pan-African Vaccine Network, 54
parenting magazines, 120
Parliament, 261
Partnership for the Delivery of Primary Health Care Programme (PDPHCP), 294
Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (SARCC), 543
peacekeeping operations, in Africa, 323–325, 353
Pebble-Bed Modular Reactor (PBMR), 151, 153
People's Housing Process (PHP), 314
Performing Arts Centre of the Free State, Bloemfontein, 14, 81
Perishable Products Export Control Board, 63
permanent residence, 283
pest control, 55, 58, 66
Pest Risk-Analysis (PRA) Division, 66
Petroleum Agency South Africa, 184
PetroSA, 183, 185, 191, 192
Phalaborwa, 20, 21
Phalaborwa Igneous Complex, 379
pharmaceuticals, 437
pharmacists, 288, 291–292
photography, 95, 122
Phuthaditjhaba, 14, 103
physicians, 291
Pietermaritzburg, 10, 626–627
Pilanesberg Complex, 400
Pilanesberg National Park, 16, 519
Pilgrim's Rest, Mpumalanga, 101, 521
mining museum, 101
Pioneer Open Air Museum, Pretoria, 100
Plant Biotechnology Innovation Centre, 440
plant protection, 57, 58, 65, 66
platinum-group metals, 398, 448
Playhouse Company, Durban, 81
Policy on Incapacity Leave and Ill-Health Retirement (Pilir), 275
Polokwane, 497
Polokwane International Airport, 22
population, 2, 7, 8, 11, 12, 15, 16, 18, 19, 21
Population Register, 280
Porcinarium, Irene, 100
pornography, 99
Port Elizabeth, 8, 10, 29, 94, 145, 498, 516
  museum, 101
  oceanarium, 222
  snake Park, 222
Port Nolloth, 5
Port St Johns, 9, 10
  festival, 92
ports, 10, 65
  Alexander Bay, 13
  Cape Town, 6, 8, 547, 548
  commercial, 545–548
  deepwater ports, 546–547
  Durban, 5, 10, 11, 547
  East London, 8, 9, 10
  hub ports, 547
  landlord services, 546
  lighthouse services, 546
  marine services, 546
  maritime services, 546
  Mossel Bay, 6, 69, 548
  multipurpose ports, 548
  Ngqura, 10
  pipelines, 548
  port and corporate affairs, 546
  Port Elizabeth, 8, 10, 145, 548
  Port Nolloth, 13
  Port St Johns, 9, 10
  Portcon International, 546
  Richards Bay, 10, 11, 546
  Saldanha Bay, 6, 547
  trade and logistics, 546
  Transnet National Ports Authority (TNPA), 537
  Walvis Bay, 16
postal sector, 113–114
Potchefstroom, 16
poverty
  anti-poverty interventions, 462–463
  relief projects, 494
power stations, 20, 194, 199
Presidential hotline, 261
Presidential National Commission on Information Society and Development (PNC on ISAD), 111

President's Coordinating Council (PCC), 267, 268, 272
press
  see also media; print
Pretoria, 17, 88, 498
  Art Museum, 101
  museums, 101, 523–524
  National Botanical Garden, 210, 212
  State Theatre, 81
  tourism, 523–524

primary
capital-market activity, 252–253
healthcare (PHC), 288, 289, 291, 294, 295
Prince Edward islands, 5, 76, 77, 217, 218, 366
print, 117–127
circulation, 117 – 119
distribution, 118, 119, 123, 124
industry, 8, 117, 118, 121–126
magazines, 62, 118–121, 123–125
newspapers, 117–119, 124
organisations and role players, 121–122, 122–125
Print Media South Africa (PMSA), 121, 122
Printing Industries Federation of South Africa, 122
Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU), 370, 371–372
Pro-Active Land Acquisition Strategy (PLAS), 430
processed minerals, 398–399
Productivity SA, 156
Professional Photographers of South Africa, 122
protected areas, 80, 217–223
provinces 7 – 22
Eastern Cape, 6, 8–10
Free State, 6, 14–15
Gauteng, 6, 17–19
KwaZulu-Natal, 6, 10–12
Limpopo, 6, 20–22
Mpumalanga, 6, 19–20
North West, 6, 16–17
Northern Cape, 6, 12–14
Western Cape, 6–8
provincial
government, 265 – 267
health departments, 288
library services, 103
Public Investment Corporation (PIC), 238–239
Public Land-Support Services (PLSS), 430
Public Protector, 360, 379–310, 379–380
Public Service, 274–279
see also Department of Public Service and Administration
Public Service Commission (PSC), 277–278
public transport, 12, 538–540
busses, 538, 539
mini-bus taxis, 538
motor vehicles, 532, 538, 539
train, 541–543
Public Transport Strategy (2007 – 2020), 530
public works programmes, 145–155
Construction and Property Industry Development Programme, 154
Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB), 154, 155
Council for the Built Environment (CBE), 154
Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP), 154
publishing,
see also media; print

Q

Quality Improvement, Development, Support and Uplift-ment Programme (QIDS-UP), 170
Quality Learning and Teaching Campaign (QLTC), 174

R

radio, 115–116, 122, 126
commercial, 116
Radioactive Waste Management Policy, 224
rail transport, 536–537, 541–544
railway policing, 413
rainfall, 14, 20, 554
Ramsar Convention, 208, 219, 221
Rand Refinery, 15
recycling, 224, 227
Red Location Museum, Port Elizabeth, 101
Reef Atlas Project, 214
Refugee Appeals Authority, 282
refugees, 282
Regional Advisory Committee (RAC), 57
regional courts, 361–362
regional economic communities (RECs), 323
Regional Food Security Training Programme (RFSTP), 57
Registrar of Brands, 63
Registrar of Livestock Improvement and Identification, 63
religion
African independent churches, 3–4
African traditionalists, 4
Afrikaans churches, 4
Buddhism, 4–5
Christian churches, 3–4
Hinduism, 4
Jewish, 4
Muslim, 4
Roman Catholic Church, 4
religious groups, 3
removal of undesirable persons, 284
renewable energy, 183, 194–200
Research and Innovation Support and Advancement (Risa), 444, 445
retirement funds, 236, 252, 254
Rhodes University, 165
Richards Bay, 11
Richards Bay Coal Terminal, 11
Richards Bay Industrial Development Zone (IDZ), 146
Richards Bay Minerals, 11
Richtersveld, 152, 207
Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape, 220
Richtersveld National Park, 13
risk management, 58, 66
Road Accident Fund (RAF), 533, 534–535
Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC), 539, 540

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

road transport, 8
infrastructure, 19, 530, 573–574
municipal roads, 537–538
national roads, 10, 11, 537
provincial roads, 537
public transport, 538–540
safety
toll roads, 538
Road-Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC), 533
road-traffic safety, 534, 535, 539–540
Robben Island, 220, 504
Robben Island Museum, Cape Town, 100
rock art, 65, 80, 82, 95, 96, 219
Royal Natal National Park, 11, 527
Rufford Maurice Laing Centre for Biodiversity Conservation, 210
rugby, 487
Rules Board for Courts of Law, 378
rural development, 68, 70, 428–433
Rural Education Directorate, 177
Rural Housing Loan Fund (RHLF), 318–319
Rural Transport Development Programme, 429
Russia, 64
Russian Federation, International relations, 348–349
Rustenburg, 16, 17, 498, 520
Rwanda, 331

S

SABC NEWS.com, 116
Sabie, 19
Safe Illuminating Paraffin Stove Pilot Project, 191
Safety and Security,
see also Department of Police
Saldanha Bay, 5, 6
Saldanha Steel Project, 8
Sammy Marks Museum, Pretoria, 100
Samora Machel Project, 88
San people, 13, 26, 218, 219
rock art/engravings, 12, 13, 14, 95, 96, 514, 519
Sanef-Wrottesley Award, 125
Sanlam Community Press Awards, 125
Sanlam's Financial Journalist of the Year Award, 125
Sappi, 20, 187, 456
Sappi Magazine Publishers Association of South Africa PICA Awards, 125
Sarah Baartman Centre of Remembrance, Eastern Cape, 88
Sarah Baartman Human Rights Memorial, Western Cape, 88
Sasol, 15, 187, 191, 192, 453
Satellite Applications Centre (SAC), 442
satellite broadcasting, 116, 117
Savanna Biome, 9, 10, 11, 19, 21, 206
school
admission and structure, 170, 171
libraries, 178
National School Health Policy, 290
no-fee schools, 170
nutrition programme, 171
rural learners, 177
safety measures, 172, 176
social enrichment, 163
sport, 172–173, 482
science, engineering and technology (SET), 436, 437, 445
Science and Technology
see also Department of Science and Technology
science and technology (S&T), 444
science councils, 446–457
Second Decade of Freedom, 38–39
Second Economy, 68, 96, 130
Secretariat for Safety and Security, 404
Secretary for Defence, 418
sector education and training authority (Seta), 157, 164, 165, 177, 500
Seda Technology Programme (STP), 150
segregation, 31–32
semi-precious stones, 12, 13
Sentech, 110, 117
Servcon Housing Solutions, 318
Settlement and Production Land Acquisition (SPLA) Grant, 430
Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (SOCA), 365
Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (SOCA) Unit, 372
Sho't Left Campaign, 495
signal distribution, 117
silver, 398
Sishen Mine, 13
skills development, 130, 131, 144, 155, 156, 439
levy, 242
slaves/slavery, 26
small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs), 7, 8, 10, 11, 13, 15, 18, 20, 59,145, 147-150, 212, 221, 224, 439, 440
small claims courts, 366–367
Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda), 13, 148
Small Medium Enterprise Development Programme (SMEDP), 144
snake parks, 222–223
soccer, 488
social
crime prevention, 470–471
development, 460–475
grants, 463, 464
housing, 315–315
security/assistance, 463–465
Social Development
see also Department of Social Development
Social Housing Foundation, 318

Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA), 311
social workers, 474
Soil Protection Strategy (SPS), 60
SoilCare, 60
solar energy, 186–187, 196–197
concentrating solar power (CSP), 196
Solar Water-Heating Programme, 186
solar-passive building design, 197
solar-thermal power generation, 197
South Africa-EU Summit 2009, 139, 344
South Africa-EU Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement (TDCA), 344
South African Agency for Science and Technology Advancement (Saasta), 444, 445
South African Air Force Museum, Pretoria, 100
South African Air Force (SAAF), 415, 419
South African Air-Quality Information System (SAAQIS), 225
South African Airways (SAA), 151, 153, 545
South African Army (SA Army), 415
South African Astronomical Observatory (SAAO), 445
South African Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi), 210–217
South African Biosystematics Initiative (Sabi), 209
South African Book Development Council (SABDC), 97
South African Breweries (SAB) Journalism Awards, 125
South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC), 62, 99, 110, 115, 116, 122, 125, 172
South African Bureau of Standards (SABS), 186, 224, 452–453, 532
South African Carbon Dioxide (CO2) Storage Atlas, 184
South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA), 533, 535–536, 544
South African corporates, 255
South African Council for Social Service Professions (SACSSP), 465
South African Cultural History Museum (Slave Lodge), Cape Town, 101
South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator (SADPMR), 390
South African Environmental Observation Network (SAEON), 209, 212
South African Express (SAX), 153
South African Forestry Company Limited (Safcol), 70, 71, 73, 151, 153
South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC), 80–81
South African Guild of Motoring Journalists, 122
South African Health Products Regulatory Authority (SAHPRA), 289, 302
South African Heritage Resources Agency (Sahra), 80, 95, 102
South African Housing Subsidy Scheme, 312
South African Human Rights' Commission (SAHRC), 360, 381–382
South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (Saiab), Grahamstown, 101, 445
South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS), 478, 484
South African Law Reform Commission (SALRC), 361, 375, 380
South African Library for the Blind (Blindlib), 104
South African Local Government Association (Salga), 268, 269, 560
South African Maritime Safety Authority (Samsa), 533, 534
South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund (Samaf), 148, 149
South African Military Health Service (SAMHS), 303, 415, 419–420
South African Museum, Cape Town, 100, 101
South African Museum for Military History, Johannesburg, 100, 102
South African Music Awards (Samas), 94–95
South African Music Week, 93
South African National Academy of Intelligence (Sanai), 425
South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi), 204
South African National Defence Force, 274
South African National Editors' Forum (Sanef), 121, 122, 125
South African National Energy Research Institute (Saneri), 184, 185
South African National Gallery, Cape Town, 94, 100, 101
South African National Parks (SANParks), 76, 204, 217, 219
South African National Peace Mission Training Centre, 346
South African National Roads Agency Limited (Sanral), 533–534, 540
South African Navy (SAN), 415
South African Navy (SAN) frigates, 418
South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research, 456
South African Nuclear Energy Corporation (Necsa), 189, 200
South African Nursing Council (SANC), 288, 289
South African Pesticide Initiative Programme (Sapip), 66
South African Petroleum Industry Association (SAPIA), 190
South African Pharmacy Council (SAPC), 288, 292
South African Police Service (SAPS), 54, 281, 405–413
Air Wing, 411
annual performance plan, 405–406
borderline control, 411
career development, 406
Code of Conduct, 404
communication and liaison, 408

financial and administration services, 407
information and systems management, 408
Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster (JCPS), 404, 406
legal services, 407–408
organisational profile, 406
personnel services, 407
Reserve Police Force, 409–410
strategic management, 408
strategic plan for 2005 – 2010, 405
training, 406–407
VIP Protection Services, 413
visible policing operations, 408–414
South African Post Office (Sapo), 110, 113–114
community centres, 114
electronic signatures, 114
financial services, 113–114
international and regional cooperation, 113–114
South African Press Association (Sapa), 122, 125, 126
South African Qualifications Authority (Saqa), 125, 168, 271, 437, 465
South African Research Network, 443
South African Reserve Bank (SARB), 245–249
South African Revenue Service (SARS), 65, 143, 236, 239–242, 281, 364
South African Safety and Security Education and Training Authority (SASSETA), 365
South African Schools Football World Cup Partnership, 172
South African Secret Service (SASS), 424
South African Social Security Agency (Sassa), 460
South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee (Sascoc), 483–484
South African Tourism (SAT), 496
South African Typographical Union, 122
South African Union of Journalists, 122
South African Veterinary Council, 63
South African Weather Service (SAWS), 72, 455
South African Wetlands Conservation Programme, 221
South African Women Entrepreneurs Network (Sawen), 149
South African-EU Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement (TDCA), 64
South Coast, tourism, 526–527
South-Sotho Museum, Witsieshoek, 102
Southern Africa, International relations, 326–329
Southern African Customs Union (Sacu), 139, 141, 328, 540
Agreement, 64, 241
Southern African Development Community (SADC) Initiative, 91
SACD Free Trade Area Agreement, 39
SADC, 38, 45, 48, 54, 57, 63, 64, 65, 77, 88, 91, 137, 183, 198, 276, 323, 326–329
free trade agreement (FTA), 138,241
Ministers' Council on S&T, 443
Trade Protocol, 64
SADC-EU Economic Partnership Agreement, 64
Southern African Electronic Music Conference, 93, 94
Southern African Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds (Sanccob), 228
Southern African Power Pool (SAPP), 189–199
Southern African Regional Police Chiefs Cooperation Organisation (SARPCCO), 408
Southern African Search and Rescue (Sasar), 549, 550
South-South cooperation, 352
Soutpansberg mountain range, 21, 219
Soweto, 17, 18, 35, 172, 523
space science and technology (S&T) hub, 438, 441–442
Spatial Development Initiative (SDI), 10
Spatial Planning, 432
Special Investigating Unit (SIU), 360, 369–370
Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU), 371
Specialist Press Association, 122
Spier Summer Festival, Western Cape, 92
Splashy Fen Music Festival, Durban, 92
sport, 8
Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA), 163, 172, 173, 478–487
2009 sports highlights, 485–487
2010 FIFA World Cup™, 478, 479, 481, 483
Football for Boys and Girls Programme, 481–482
indigenous games, 481
international relations, 485
legislation, 478, 482–483
Mass Mobilisation Programme (MPP), 480
objectives and strategies, 478–479
recreation rehabilitation programme, 481
school sport, 482
Siyadlala Mass Participation Programme (SMPP), 480
sport organisations, 483–485
sport tourism, 479–480
women and sport, 480
Springbok, 12
Square Kilometre Array (SKA), 12, 340, 441
St Lucia Estuary, 11, 220, 221
stamp duty, 241
State Diamond Trader (SDT), 390
State Information Technology Agency (Sita), 54, 276
State Legal Services, 376
State Theatre, Pretoria, 81
State Veterinary Services, 54
state-owned enterprises (SOEs), 108, 151, 152, 153
Stellenbosch, 101, 507
Stellenbosch University, 7, 165
Sterkfontein, 220, 401, 520
Sterkfontein caves, 26, 520, 522

Stone-Age, 26, 95, 519, 522
Strate Limited, 257
Strategic Fuel Fund, 183
substance abuse, 472
Succulent Karoo Biome, 207, 214
Succulent Karoo Ecosystem Programme (SKEP), 213, 214
Sudan, 38, 323, 325, 333–334, 411, 417
Sunshine Coast, 517
Supply Chain Management (SCM), 237
surfing, 488, 489
Surveys and Mapping, 431–432
Sustainable Coastal Livelihoods Programme, 76
Sustainable Development Through Mining Programme, 391–394
sustainable livelihoods, 461–463
sustainable resource management
international agreements and conventions, 65
Swartkrans, 220, 401
Swaziland, 11, 19, 64
swimming, 479, 489

T
Table Bay Harbour, 26
Table Mountain, 210, 401, 503
Table Mountain National Park (TMNP), 208, 213, 218, 504
Tankwa Karoo National Park, 206, 207, 218
Tanzania, 77, 329
Taung child, 26, 220, 519
tax system, 240
taxi industry, 532
Taxi Recapitalisation Programme (TRP), 539
taxonomic research, 211
Technology Innovation Agency (TIA), 438
Technology Transfer Programme, 150
telecommunications, 108–110, 117, 126
  policy and initiatives, 108–109
Telephone Interpreting Service of South Africa (Tissa), 84–86
television, 108, 116–117, 126
  free-to-air, 117
  migration to digital, 108
  M-Net, 116
  satellite broadcasting, 116–117
  set-top boxes (STBs), 108
  signal distribution, 116, 117
Telkom, 110, 111, 112, 152
temporary residence, 283–284
tennis, 489
tertiary education
  see also Department of Higher Education; education and training
Thabo Mofutsanyana, 514–515
The Enterprise Organisation (TEO), 144, 145
theatre, 90
Theiler Veterinary Science Museum, Onderstepoort, Pretoria, 100
Thicket Biome, 208
Threatened Species Programme (TSP), 215
Thubelisha Homes, 319
Thulamela, 26, 219
Thusong Service Centres, 266, 272, 273
Thutong educational portal, 175
Timbuktu Manuscripts Project, 90, 335
Tokyo International Conference on African Development (TICAD), 337
tourism, 5, 10, 11, 12, 19, 208
  2010 FIFA World Cup™, 496–498
  accommodation, 502–503
  adventure sports, 493–495
  battlefields, 527
  business travellers, 492–493
  cultural, 89, 90, 525
  domestic/international, 495–496
  hints for tourists, 501–502
  human-resource development (HRD), 500–501
  industry transformation, 498
  marketing, 500, 503
  medical tourism, 493
  Namaqualand, 12
  policy and initiatives, 494–495
  provinces, 503–527
  research, 501
  sport programmes for, 479, 480
  statistics, 492
  tourist guiding, 501
  tourist safety, 20, 503
Tourism
  see also Department of Tourism
Tourism, Hospitality and Sport Education and Training Authority (Theta), 500
Tourism Empowerment Council of South Africa, 498
Tourism Enterprise Partnership (TEP), 498–499
Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA), 497, 502, 503
Tourism Learnership Project (TLP), 500–501
Tourism Satellite Account (TSA), 501
Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement (TDCA), 139, 140
Trade and Investment South Africa (Tisa), 143–144
traditional
  councils, 264
  leadership, 262, 264
transfer duty, 241
transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs), 218
Transnet, 151, 153, 154, 536–537
Multi-Products Pipeline, 182, 183
Transnet Freight Rail (TFR), 182, 537, 543–544
Transport

SA YEARBOOK 2009/10

see also Department of, Department of Transport
Transport Appeal Tribunal, 533
Transvaal Agricultural Union of South Africa (TAU SA), 62–63
Transvaal Museum, Pretoria, 100, 101, 451
trees
See, forests/forestry, forestry initiatives
Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC), 37, 372, 382–283
Tshivhase Tea Estate, 21
Tshumisano, 439–440
Tsitsikamma, 69, 208, 517–518
Tsitsikamma National Park, 218, 517
Tsonga Open-Air Museum, Tzaneen, 21, 518
Tsongakraal, Letsitele, 102
Tswaing, 400, 522
Tswaing Meteorite Crater Museum, Pretoria, 100, 101
tuberculosis (TB), 288, 294, 298
Turkey, foreign relations, 348–349
Two Oceans Aquarium, Cape Town, 222

U

UbuntuNet Project, 443
Uganda, 329
Ukhahlamba Drakensberg World Heritage Site, 525, 527
Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park, 220, 221
Umalusi, 164, 168
Umsobomvu Youth Fund, 308
uncertificated securities tax (UST), 241
Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF), 157, 236, 238
Unesco's World Network of Biosphere Reserves, 219
Union Buildings, 88, 524
United Kingdom, International relations, 346–347
United Nations, 37, 38, 57, 77, 176, 323
and South Africa, 35
United Nations, conventions with, 349–353
United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (Unctad), 141–142
United Nations Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), 1993, 204
United Nations Convention to Combat Desertification (UNCCD), 227
United Nations Country Team (UNCT), 353
United Nations Development Assistance Framework (UNDAF), 353
United Nations Environmental Programme (UNEP), 225
United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC), 216, 225, 226, 227, 346, 351
United Nations General Assembly (UNGA), 349
United Nations Human Rights Council (UNHRC), 350
United Nations Population Fund Agency (UNPFA), 474
United Nations Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, 361
United Nations Public Administration Network, 276
United Nations Security Council (UNSC), 39, 349
United States of America
International relations, 65, 342
Universal Declaration on Human Rights, 350
Universal Services and Access Agency of South Africa (Usaasa), 111
universities
Eastern Cape, 9
Free State, 14
Gauteng, 17, 18
KwaZulu-Natal, 11
list of, 165–166
Western Cape, 7
University of Cape Town, 7, 165
University of Durban-Westville, 95
University of Fort Hare, 9, 89
University of Johannesburg, 18
University of Johannesburg Centre for the Arts, 94
University of KwaZulu-Natal, 11, 89, 98, 166
University of Pretoria, 17, 63, 95, 165, 303
University of South Africa (Unisa), 17, 18, 166
Unisa Gallery, 95
University of the Free State, 14, 165
University of the Western Cape, 7, 165
University of the Witwatersrand, 18, 94, 95, 165, 303
University of Venda, 89
Upper Karoo (Bo-Karoo), 513
Urban Conservation Programme, 213, 220
urban environmental management, 225–226
Urban Environmental Management Programme (UEMP), 226
Uridashi bonds, 253
uShaka Marine World, Durban, 222

V

Vaal Dam, 18
Vaal River, 13, 14, 29, 207, 400
Vaal Triangle, 18, 225
Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme, 13
value-added tax (VAT), 240
VeldCare, 60
veterinary services, 54–55
Vhembe district, Limpopo, 96, 219, 518
Victim-Empowerment Programme (VEP), 375, 470–471
Victoria and Alfred (V&A) Waterfront, 504
violence
prevention, 471
against women and children, 364, 471
Violent Organised Crime Reduction Programme, 414
Virgin Mobile, 112, 113
visas, 282
visual arts, 94–97
Vodacom, 111, 112, 152
Vodacom Awards for Journalism Across All Mediums, 125

Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg, 100
Vredefort Dome, 220, 400

W
Walter Sisulu University, 9, 303
Walvis Bay, 16
War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein, 100, 102
waste information system 224,225
Waste Information System Regulations, 205
waste management, 204–205, 223–225
Waste Management Policy and Strategy, 189
Waste-Tyre Regulations of 2009, 224
Water Affairs
see also Department of Water Affairs
Water Research Commission (WRC), 215, 454–455, 559, 564
Waterberg, 518
Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, 219
Waterberg mountain range, 21
WaterCare, 60
water-management institutions, 563–565
catchment-management agencies (CMAs), 563
water boards, 563
Water Research Commission (WRC), 454–455, 559, 564
water-related research, 564
water-user associations (WUA), 563
Working for Water (WfW) Programme, 565
water-quality management, 557–558, 560
water-resource management, 46, 47, 60, 61, 555–557
catchment-management agencies (CMAs), 557, 563
dams and water schemes, 556, 566–567
flood and drought management, 565
Freshwater Ecosystem Programme, 559
groundwater resources, 567
monitoring water resources, 559
municipal, 560
National Strategy, 561–562
regional and international cooperation, 567–568
Water Allocation Reform (War) Programme, 562–563
wetlands, 559
Welcome Campaign, 494–495
welfare services, 474
West Africa, foreign relations, 331–336
West Coast, 5, 75, 76, 400
tourism, 508–510
West Coast National Park, 218
West Indian Ocean Land-Based Activities Project (WIO-LaB), 77
Westcor, 198
Western Cape 6– 8
2010 FIFA World Cup™, 8
agriculture and marine fisheries, 7
industry, 7–8
people 7
tourism, 503–511
wetlands, 17, 212, 214–215, 219
Wild Coast, 8, 9, 10, 516
Wild Coast National Park, 218
Wild Coast SDI, 10
Wild Frontier, 521
wilderness areas, 217, 218
wildlife, 16, 21, 53
Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum, Pretoria, 100, 101
William Fehr Collection, 100
William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley, 100, 101
wind, for producing electricity, 196, 446
Windybrow Theatre, Johannesburg, 81
Windybrow Theatre Festival, Johannesburg, 92
Witness Protection Programme (WPU), 370–371
Wits Theatre, Johannesburg, 94
Witwatersrand, 396, 399, 400
Witwatersrand Water Basin, 391
women
access to business resources and information, 149, 150
health and maternal health, 296–297, 301
magazines, 120
participation in sport, 480
Women Accessing Realigned Markets (WARM) Project, 55
Women in Agriculture and Rural Development, 59
Women in Housing, 315–316
Women in Science Awards, 437
Women's Justice and Empowerment Initiative (WJEI), 371
Women's Monument, Pretoria, 88
Working for Wetlands, 559
Working for Wetlands Programme, 212, 213, 214–215, 221
Workplace Challenge Programme, 145
World AIDS Day, 289
World Anti-Doping Agency (WADA), 484–485
World Economic Forum (WEF), 142, 143
World Environment Day, 223
World Food Summit Plan of Action, 57
World Health Organisation (WHO), 200, 296, 304
World Heritage Convention, 204
world heritage sites, 7, 11, 26, 100, 219
World Intellectual Property Organisation, 352
World Summit on Arts and Culture, Johannesburg, 2009, 81
World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD), 2002, 38, 205, 228, 349, 350, 392–394
World Trade Organisation (WTO), 64, 66, 141, 142, 352

World Wetlands Day, 221
World Wide Fund for Nature South Africa (WWF-SA), 214
World Wine Trade Group (WWTG), 66–67

X
Xhariep, 514

Y
York Timbers, 20
youth
  development, 473–474
  magazines, 120
  protection, 468–469
Youth in Housing (YiH), 316

Z
.za Domain Name Authority, 110
Zambia, 329
Zanemvula Housing Project, 308
Zimbabwe, 5, 39, 54, 329
Zion Christian Church (ZCC), 3, 518
zoological gardens, 221
Zulu kingdom, 27
Zululand, tourism, 525–526
Zuma, President Jacob, 39, 84, 130, 139, 167, 185, 260, 326, 328, 330, 343, 344, 361, 428